This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

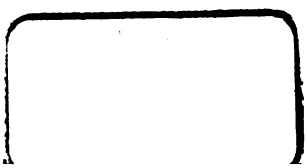
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

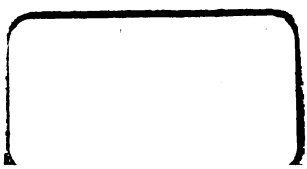
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

3 3433 06925219 9





# DEUTSCH'S LETTERS.

A

PRACTICAL AND GRAMMATICAL COURSE

FOR EASY AND THOROUGH

# SELF-INSTRUCTION

IN THE

# GERMAN LANGUAGE.

PREPARED WITH SPECIAL REGARD TO THE CLOSE AFFINITY EXISTING BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND GERMAN LANGUAGES.

By SOLOMON DEUTSCH, A. M., Ph. D.

*Author of A Practical Hebrew Grammar, Key to the Pentateuch, Biblical History, &c.*

FIRST COURSE: GRAMMATICAL.

NEW YORK:
1879.

232490
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
1901

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1879, by A. DEUTSCH, in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington, D. C.

PRESS OF I. FRIEDENWALD, BALTIMORE, MD.

# Introductory Letter to the Student.

The German Language is one of the noblest and most important in the world. Although the English, if for no other reason than its wide-spread use, properly occupies the first place among modern languages, yet the German certainly ranks next in importance and usefulness. And if this be true in general, how much more so in our country—the United States—where each succeeding year witnesses a rapid increase of the German population, which in many sections of the land makes a knowledge of German almost a necessity. Not only does the merchant find the lack of it a great disadvantage in the conduct of his business, but the members of the various professions also are often seriously inconvenienced by the same cause. Clergymen, physicians and lawyers have frequent occasion in the course of a year to wish for a knowledge of this language; particularly in large cities, where not rarely every sixth or seventh person is a German.

Many advantages are undoubtedly to be derived from the assistance of a teacher in the study of a foreign language, but the expense is so considerable as to exclude many from these benefits, not to mention the uncertainty of obtaining a teacher thoroughly competent. Moreover, the difficulty in finding a stated time for the purpose is also a matter of some importance. It is plain that your business affairs do not always enable you to make a free disposal of your time, and then the humor for study is not always present. You would like to study, but only when it suits your time and pleasure, and not that of a teacher. Satisfied that German can be learned without a teacher, I have prepared this series of letters according to a method which, I believe, will make the student independent of other assistance.

This independence is particularly important in the matter of pronunciation. For this is where, in the study of a foreign language, the help of a teacher is most wanted. But a correct pronunciation of German may in fact be easily acquired without a teacher, as will be plain to you when I say that *German is read just as it is spelled.*

In other words, *every letter* (with the exception of two, which, however, only serve to facilitate a correct pronunciation) *is pronounced*, and always according to fixed and invariable rules. I have moreover little doubt that you will readily find one, among the great number of Germans in this country, who will be obliging enough to pronounce the letters of the German alphabet for you, separately, and in words. Any refined German may be expected to do this most cheerfully, since it cannot fail to be gratifying to him to see his beloved mother-tongue come into more wide-spread use. I have, however, in view of the great importance of a pure and correct pronunciation, endeavored to give precise and full directions on this subject. Each German word when first introduced, is accompanied by its equivalent English sound, and the principal and subordinate accents are distinctly indicated, so that you can hardly go astray. You can moreover easily satisfy yourself of the sufficiency of these written instructions by having one of your German acquaintances hear you pronounce a few sentences.

Concerning the relationship of German to English, I would state that the English language is, in regard to its vocabulary, a mixed one, to which the languages of various nationalities have contributed. Thus, in consequence of the Norman conquest, 1066, the Norman French had a material influence upon it. For centuries this was the language of the rulers of the land, and from them, the French conquerors, it gradually made its way among the masses of the people. And as the words and phrases used by the court and nobility to express a higher range of thought gradually came into general use and became part and parcel of the language, we now find that most of the words used to express more abstract and philosophical thoughts, as well as those applied to the common objects and actions of every day life by the higher ranks of society, are of French origin; while things of the latter class are still described in the language of the common people, by words of Anglo-Saxon derivation. Sir Walter Scott has furnished a fine illustration of this fact in the first chapter of Ivanhoe, in the conversation between Gurth and Wamba.

How much the English is indebted for extensive contributions to its fund of words to *Greek* and *Latin*, can readily be ascertained by referring to any standard etymological dictionary. But the real kernel and the fundamental basis of the English language is the *Anglo-Saxon* or Low-German. Towards the end of the Great Migration a part of two German tribes, the *Angles* and the *Saxons*, sailed over to Britain,

where they subjugated the Romanized Britons. These tribes spoke at that time a peculiar German dialect which is still spoken on the northern shores and *Lowlands* of Germany, situated between the Rhine and the Baltic coast. And this language of the ancient Angles and Saxons is to be considered as the main source, or rather the ground-stock of English, which is indicated by its very name, *English* or the language of the *Angles*. Hence all names of concrete or perceptible things, and consequently such as are indispensable to ordinary conversation and practical use, are derived from this source. Indeed, it may be said without exaggeration that more than one-half of the English words in common use, two-thirds of the root-words and most of the suffixes, prefixes and verbal inflections, as well as the entire grammatical structure of the English language are of German origin.

This intimate relationship of the two languages is in part apparent on the surface, but has to a great extent become obscured in their gradual development. The dialectical differences which originally existed between the High-German (properly the speech of the south-east of Germany, Bavaria, Austria, and some adjacent districts, and now called the German), and the Low-German, (including Dutch, Anglo-Saxon, and the Scandinavian languages), became greater and greater in the course of centuries, and such processes as vowel-coloring, assimilation, double-formation, insertion (of a vowel or consonant), contraction, transposition, permutation of consonants, etc., etc., were constantly going on. Moreover the meanings of related words have in many cases undergone material change, so that the English word and the corresponding German one are no longer identical in signification. Thus we have *knight* (attendant, military follower) and Knecht (servant); *hound* (a dog used for hunting) and Hund (a dog); *to write* (to inscribe) and ritzen (to scratch); *knife* and Kneif (a paring-knife, clasp-knife).

Because of the great advantage afforded by a study of this close affinity between the two languages, not only for acquiring the German, but also for obtaining a better knowledge of the structure and the primitive meaning of English words or syllables, I have sought to pay special attention to this matter from the outset, and as far as possible have kept it constantly in view. I have, therefore, whenever it could be done in a direct manner, pointed out these affinities for the various words, syllables of formation and inflection, and grammatical forms, generally, as they were introduced in the course of the work Thus

the study is not only made more instructive and interesting, but it is also considerably facilitated; since the observation of these resemblances cannot fail to be of great assistance in understanding and remembering the German word. As this comparison can be most successfully made by applying the celebrated rule of *Grimm**, I have deemed it advisable to furnish early in the course a TABULAR VIEW of the laws of the permutation of consonants, and of other changes, to which, for the sake of brevity, I have afterwards merely referred in each particular case by the abbreviation TAB. V.

With regard to the arrangement of these letters in other respects, you will perceive that as they are particularly intended for self-instruction, I have endeavored so to smooth the way which you will have to pursue without any personal guide, that, far from becoming tired or discouraged, you may with every step forward gain in courage and cheerfulness as well as in the conviction that you are making progress and will reach in due time the longed-for goal. Being well aware that nothing is apter to discourage a pupil than requiring too much from him at once, it was an especial principle with me to diminish, as far as possible, the difficulties naturally connected with the study of a language, at any rate not to offer you more than one of these difficulties at a time, to make no leaps, that is not to anticipate or make use of anything which you cannot yet understand, but to lead you forward step by step.

Now the arrangement of these letters and the method pursued by me with regard to them, both in general and in particulars, I tried to bring into accordance with this principle. It is known that in the study of any language, besides the grammatical part, comprising that which is normal and according to established rule, we meet with a second element, which in distinction from the former is called the Idiomatic, or that part which belongs peculiarly to the language and constitutes its characteristic or particular cast. This idiomatical portion is of the greatest importance, as the thorough knowledge of a language cannot be attained unless we think in it, and in order to be able to do this, it is necessary to master at least its most essential peculiarities. It is to

*Jacob Ludwig Grimm, an eminent German philologist, who wrote, besides many other works, a History of the German Language, and a German Grammar and was engaged with his brother, Wilhelm Karl, on a new and very complete German Dictionary at the time of his death in 1863.

the general neglect of this most important requirement, upon which all experienced teachers lay so much stress, that we may ascribe the small success of many in the study of languages.

As this idiomatical portion involves the greatest difficulties in the study of any language, and is at the same time so essential that it cannot be dispensed with, because the conversational expressions are for the most part idiomatic, I have arranged these letters in two courses:

I. THE GRAMMATICAL, which comprises that part of the language which is subject to general laws and rules. Idiomatic expressions occur here exceptionally, and only those which are of such importance that the student must be made aquainted with them as quickly as possible.

II. THE IDIOMATIC AND LITERARY. You have now attained such competency in the knowledge of all that is grammatical or conformable to rule, that your chief attention can be directed to the idiomatic, and that which in the grammatical part is *exceptional.* This part is also called **Literary**, because it contains (to a much greater extent than the first course):

*a.* **Valuable Quotations** from the **German Classics** and fine specimens from the rich store of **Proverbs** of the German people, illustrating the grammatical rules (concerning exceptions and details) just treated upon, and

*b.* **Reading Matter,** progressively arranged. It will embrace fables, tales, historical sketches, poems and extracts from dramatic master-pieces, accompanied by notes, grammatical and explanatory.

So much for the general arrangement, and now a few remarks concerning particulars:

1. The object which I have chiefly in view, viz. to facilitate the work of the student as much as possible, as I have before mentioned, I have sought to attain by employing throughout in the first course—with but few exceptions—only such words as are obviously or in derivation *identical* with the corresponding English word. For experience teaches that by combining the unknown with the known, we are more apt to acquire and remember that which we learn.

2. Guided by the now generally conceded principle that practice should precede theory, or in other words, that principles should be deduced from illustrations, I have usually started from a number of MODEL SENTENCES, which I have placed at the head of every lesson.

Being partly printed in black bold-faced type, they will make a more vivid impression upon the mind, and be readily distinguished as embodying the principle they are intended to illustrate. Then this principle, or the GRAMMATICAL RULE thus established, follows, and is succeeded by GERMAN EXERCISES, composed of sentences illustrating it, with a view to still further impressing it, and by **English Exercises** imitating the model sentences and applying the rule derived from them.

3. As I have already mentioned, the method pursued by me is a *strictly progressive one*, so that starting from the simplest sentences and rules to which they serve as illustrations, I have enlarged them to more complex ones.

4. I have reserved most of that which is **exceptional**, and in particular **the grammatical details**, for the Second Course.

5. In a division entitled LEXICOLOGY, I have given a sort of Commentary on most of the words used in the exercises. I call it a commentary, because it gives an analytical explanation both of the radical and the derivative and compound words, and states the value of their formative elements, especially that of their *prefixes* and *affixes*. It will thus show even the *hidden* affinity between the German and corresponding English word, at the same time training the student to the correct understanding of very many German words without the help of a Lexicon. And I think that by this method the study of the language, which is generally considered dry, will be made more interesting, even furnishing new light with regard to the derivation and original meaning of numerous *English words*.

6. By the division entitled QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW, I intend to prompt the student to frequent repetitions, without which no sure and rapid progress can be secured. "*Repetitio est mater studiorum*," repetition is the mother of studies, says the Latin proverb. To the same end I have referred in the Lexicology when analysing a new word, to words or formative syllables used in previous lessons.

7. In order to impress more deeply by repeated application the grammatical rules and idiomatic forms and phrases, I have made the exercises illustrating them *longer* than is usual in similar works.

8. By a KEY in each letter after the third, furnishing the translation to all the English exercises in the foregoing letter, as well as the answers to the Questions for Review, which relate to all previous portions of the work, the student will be enabled to do all his own correcting, and to dispense entirely with other help.

9. To facilitate the memorizing and retaining of important rules and exceptions embracing numerous details, I have adopted in many cases the method so popular in Germany of presenting them in **rhyme.** Personal experience has taught me that nothing is easier than to forget such rules and exceptions, but that the versified form gives them a strong hold upon the memory and is the most effectual method of preventing their being forgotten.

10. Towards the middle of the First Course, I shall give at the end of each letter a CONVERSATION, followed by an ample VOCABULARY. These Conversations will embrace a great variety of subjects, and will be more or less extensive according to their importance. As they have a special value in familiarizing you with the method of expression, so largely idiomatic, employed on all sorts of conversational topics, it would indeed be highly advisable to commit them to memory. It is hardly necessary to state that the Vocabulary, likewise indispensable to fluent conversation, must also be memorized.

By following out the course of study presented in this work, which, if done *regularly and persistently* will require but a brief portion of time daily, you cannot fail soon to acquire not only facility in the use of the German language, but an acquaintance with its structure and philology.

# INTRODUCTION TO GERMAN READING.

## GENERAL REMARKS.

The Anglo-Saxon portion of the English language represents the *Low German dialect* of 1300 years ago, which is not yet given up by the mass of the rural population of the Baltic Lowlands of Germany. The pupil, therefore, who does not wish to impart to his pronunciation a resemblance to that of the uneducated rather than to the higher classes, must be earnestly cautioned against pronouncing the German with an Anglo-Saxon accent.

Hence the student is seriously recommended to take special care to pronounce the consonants easily and gently, the vowels, however, with the greatest possible power and clearness. He will best attain this by pronouncing the latter with a more decidedly open and rounded position of the mouth. For therein is, to a great extent, the difference in sound between the German and the English. The German is pronounced with a more open and rounded, the English with a more uniformly horizontal position of the mouth. Now the difficulty in correct pronunciation does not lie in those sounds (consonants as well as vowels) which are peculiar to German and not found in English, as for instance, the ch (ch), ü, ö, etc. These will easily be acquired, and then in general well pronounced. But the difficulty occurs for the most part in those sounds, which are common to both languages, and differ only dialectically with regard to a more hard or soft, more distinct or indistinct pronunciation of the one or the other. Thus the pronunciation of the **b, d, g** at the end of words is regularly harder in German, so that they resemble more **p, t, k.** Or the **s** at the beginning sounds softer in German, more nearly resembling **z.**

In order to guard the pupil against errors on these points, we have rendered such letters more easily recognizable by printing them in smaller type (nonpareil) in our directions for pronunciation.

## [1.] THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

| *German Letters.* | *Roman Letters.* | *Names.* | *German Letters.* | *Roman Letters.* | *Names.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 𝔄 𝔞 | A a | a (in father,) | 𝔑 𝔫 | N n | en |
| 𝔅 𝔟 | B b | bay | 𝔒 𝔬 | O o | o (in so) |
| ℭ 𝔠 | C c | tsay | 𝔓 𝔭 | P p | pay |
| 𝔇 𝔡 | D d | day | 𝔔 𝔮 | Q q | koo |
| 𝔈 𝔢 | E e | ay | 𝔯 𝔯 | R r | err (in error) |
| 𝔉 𝔣 | F f | eff | 𝔖 𝔰 ſ | S s | ess |
| 𝔊 𝔤 | G g | gay | 𝔗 𝔱 | T t | tay |
| ℌ 𝔥 | H h | ha (in half) | 𝔘 𝔲 | U u | u (in brute) |
| ℑ 𝔦 | I i | ee | 𝔙 𝔳 | V v | fou (in found) |
| ℑ 𝔧 | J j | yot | 𝔚 𝔴 | W w | vai (in vail) |
| 𝔎 𝔨 | K k | kah | 𝔛 𝔵 | X x | ix (in fix) |
| 𝔏 𝔩 | L l | ell | 𝔜 𝔶 | Y y | ypsilon (short y) |
| 𝔐 𝔪 | M m | em | 𝔷 𝔷 | Z z | tset |

### COMPOUND LETTERS.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ℭ𝔥 𝔠𝔥 | Ch ch | tsay-hah | ß | sz | ess-tset |
| 𝔡 | ck | tsay-kah | ʒ | tz | tay-tset |
| 𝔖𝔱 ſt | St st | ess-tay | 𝔖𝔠𝔥 ſch | Sch sch | ess-tsay-hah |

Notice the difference between:

𝔄 and 𝔘; 𝔅 and 𝔙; ℭ and 𝔈; 𝔊 and 𝔖; ℑ and 𝔗; 𝔇, 𝔒 and 𝔔; 𝔎, 𝔑 and 𝔯; 𝔐 and 𝔚; 𝔟 and 𝔡; 𝔥 and 𝔫; 𝔣 and ſ; 𝔤 and 𝔮; 𝔩 and 𝔱; 𝔪 and 𝔴; 𝔫 and 𝔲; 𝔯 and 𝔵; 𝔳 and 𝔶.

## [2.] CONSONANTS AND VOWELS.

1. The German Alphabet consists, it is seen, of twenty-six letters, the same as the English, which are divided into **Vowels** and **Consonants.**

2 *Vowels* are sounds formed by the emission of the breath and modified by the organs of speech, but not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs.

3. *Consonants* are sounds produced by the contact of the breath with one or other of the organs of speech whereby the stream of the former is wholly or partially stopped.

4. The six letters **a, e, i, o, u, y** are vowels, the remaining twenty are consonants.

## [3.] THE VOWELS.

The above named six vowels are called **simple vowels.** They may be either **long** or **short.** The pronunciation given in the alphabet is the long one. Their short pronunciation will be taught in the following sections, where the long and short pronunciations will be distinguished by the usual signs, as ā, ă.

## [4.] DOUBLE VOWELS.

The vowels **a, e, o,** may be doubled, in which case they are pronounced like a single long vowel.

Aal[ahl], *eel*; See[zā], *sea*; Boot[bōt], *boat*; Haar[hahr], *hair*; Beere [bā'-rᵉ], *berry*; Moos[mōs], *moss*.

*Note.*—The word in brackets gives the pronunciation; ah=a in are; ā=a in cake; ō=o in so. The [ᵉ] indicates the obscure sound, common at the end of many German words, like the e in driven, father.

## [5.] DIPHTHONGS.

Two vowel sounds so united as to be pronounced by a single emission of the voice are called **diphthongs.** The *diphthongs* are: **au, äu, eu, ai, ei.** They are all long and represent the following three different sounds:

**au** like ou in house: Haus[hous], *house*; Maus[mous], *mouse*; laut[lout], *loud*.

**äu** like oi in coin: Häuſer[hoi'-zᵉr], *houses*; Bräute[broi'-tᵉ], *brides*; Mäuſe [moi'-sᵉ], *mice*;

**eu** neun[noin], *nine*: Feuer[foi'-ᵉr], *fire*; neu[noi], *new*.

**ei** like i in fine; Eis[ıs], *ice*; Reim[rım], *rhyme*; mein[mın], *my, mine*; heilen[hı'-lᵉn], *to heal*;

**ai** Mai[mı], *May*; Kaiſer[kı'-zer], *Emperor (Caesar)*.

**ai** occurs only in a few words.

*Caution!*—Do not confound **ei** with **ie.** The latter is no diphthong, but only a lengthened German **i** and is pronounced like e in me.

Compare:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Beine | bı'-nᵉ | *bones.* |
| Biene | bē'-nᵉ | *bee.* |
| meine | mı'-nᵉ | *mine.* |
| Miene | mē'-nᵉ | *mien.* |

## [6.] THE MODIFIED VOWELS.

The vowels **a, o, u** occur blended with the sound of the vowel **e,** and are called the **modified vowels.**

They are pronounced long and short, as follows:

Long ä like ai in fair: Bär[bair], *bear*; Gläſer[glai'-zᵉr], *glasses*; Fähre [fai'-rᵉ (the h being mute)], ferry.

Short ä like a in many : Männer[män'-ner], *men*; Kälte[käl'-te], *coldness* Hämmer[häm'-mer], *hammer*.

Long ö nearly like ea in great, when pronounced with **pointed** lips (French **eu** in peur) : hören[hêâ'-ren], *to hear* ; Oel[êâl], *oil* ; mögen[mêâ'-gen], *may*.

Short ö like u in urge, or like a in can, likewise with **pointed** lips: können[kün'-nen], *can* ; Götter[güt'-ter], *gods* ; Hörner[hür'-ner], horns.

Long ü like ee in feel, with the lips very **slightly rounded** (French **u** in sur) : grün[grêên], *green* ; für[fêêr], *for* ; Brüder[brêê'-der], brothers.

Short ü like i in fill, likewise with the lips very **slightly rounded** : füllen[fül'-len], *to fill* ; Müller[mül'-ler], *miller* ; küssen[küs'-sen], *to kiss*.

[The signs over the vowels within the brackets, in the above examples, are such as will be used throughout the work to mark the sounds here indicated.]

*Note* 1. The dots over the vowel replace the e (rarely i) which is omitted. Capital letters are sometimes followed by the e : as Oel, oftener Öl.

*Note* 2. **Umlaut** [üm- (ü in füll) lout] *i. e. mutation of sound*, is the German expression for 'Modified Vowel' : for the sake of brevity we shall use this expression, and say :

Umlaut a for ä,
Umlaut o for ö,
Umlaut u for ü.

*Take Notice* ! Heed our advice concerning the pronunciation of the ö (long and short), and the ü (long and short) with respectively pointed or slightly rounded lips. This advice is sufficient even for those who do not know how to pronounce the French **eu** and **u**, inasmuch as even educated Germans avoid too great prominence in these sounds as an affectation.

## [7.] SYLLABLES AND WORDS.

1. A vowel (simple, double, modified or diphthong), standing alone, or combined with one or more consonants, and pronounced with a single emission of the voice, is called a **syllable.**

2. One or more syllables make a **word.**

*Words* are articulate sounds or combinations of such sounds used to express perception and thought.

3. The **Root** or **Radical** is that part of a word which contains its primitive elements, and cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form. Thus the word vergolden[fêr-göl'-den (ê=e in nest, ö=o in sob)], *to gild*, has for its radical Gold[gölt], *gold*.

4. When the root is modified by a **prefix**, *i. e.* a syllable *preceding* the root, as Gebet=Ge-bet[gĕ-bät'], *prayer* (from beten[bä'-ten], *to pray*), or by a

**suffix,** *i. e.* a syllable following the root, as beten=bet=en, *to pray*, or by both of them, as anbeten=an=bet=en[ăn'-bā-tᵉn (ă in shărp)], *to adore, to worship*, the word is called a **Derivative.**

5. A word containing two or more roots is called a **Compound,** as Gartenhaus=Garten=Haus [gär'-tᵉn-hous"], *gardenhouse*; Weinglas[ vīn'-glăs], *wineglass.*

6. A word consisting of *one* syllable is called **monosyllabic,** of *two* syllables **dissyllabic,** of many (more than two) **polysyllabic.**

## [8.] THE SYLLABLES AND THE ACCENT

1. In every dissyllabic or polysyllabic word the *radical* syllable is considered as the **chief** or **primary,** and the other or others as the **accessory** or **secondary** syllables. These latter, being in general inflectional or derivational syllables, serve to express the conceptual modifications or changeable grammatical relations of the radical. This difference in the value of the various syllables of a word is indicated by their different pronunciation. The radical syllable is generally more sustained, and pronounced with a raised voice, called the **tonic accent.** Thus in the word Belästigung[bᵉ-läs'-tĭ-gūnᵏ (ĭ=i in chin, ū=u in full)], *molestation*, which is derived from Last [läst], *load, burden*, the second syllable is more accented than the others. In dissyllabic words the first syllable is for the most part the radical syllable, and has accordingly the chief accent, as lernen[lĕr'-nᵉn], *to learn*; geben [gā'-bᵉn], *to give*; hören[hēā'-ren], *to hear.*

2 In order to avoid the succession of two or more syllables of the same tonic character, there is in polysyllabic words, besides the chief or primary accent an accessory or secondary, which is uttered with less stress of voice than the former, as in Gelehrſamkeit=Ge=lehr=ſam=keit[gᵉ-lār'-zăm-kĭt"], *learning*, where the chief stress is on the second, or radical syllable, and a slighter stress on the fourth, while the first and third syllables are wholly unaccented.

*Note.* In German the tonic accent is not indicated by any sign; we shall use in our directions for correct pronunciation the sign [ ' ] for the primary accent and [ " ] for the secondary.

3. With regard to the outward form, the syllables are classified thus: **Open, closed** and **double-closed.**

(a) *Open Syllables* end with a vowel, as ſo[zō], *so.*

(b) *Closed Syllables* end with *one* consonant, as bin[bĭn], *am.*

(c) *Double Closed Syllables* end with *two*, either the same or different, consonants, as Hund[hŭnᵗ], *dog*; kann[kăn], *can.*

## [9.] LONG AND SHORT VOWELS.

The vowels (simple or modified) are pronounced **long** or **short**, according to the following rules:

**Long:** 1. In all *open, monosyllabic words*, as: da[dah], *there*; ſo[zō], *so*.

2. In all open and closed syllables *when accented*, as leben[lā'-bᵉn], *to live*; Tod[tōᵗ], *death*.

3. Before h, and before and after ch, as lahm[lahm], *lame*; Rath[raht], *advice*; That [taht], *deed*.

4. All double vowels, among which is included ie; as See[zā], *sea*; ſie[zē], *she* or *they*; Loos[lōs], *lot*; Haar[hahr], *hair*; Dieb[dēᵇ], *thief*.

5. All the *diphthongs*, as Haus[hous], *house*; Wein[vɪn], *wine*.

**Short:** 1. In all open and closed *syllables* when *not accented*, as Gebet[gĕ-bāt'], *prayer*; beten[bā'-tᵉn], *to pray*.

2. In most double closed syllables even when accented, as Gold [gōlᵈ], *gold*; Hand[hănᵈ], *hand*.

## EXPLANATION OF THE SIGNS

*To be used in our Directions for Pronunciation.*

The mark [—] denotes a long sound: Sohn[zōn], *son*, like o in so.
" [◡] " a short one: kalt[kălt], *cold*, like a in sharp.
ä like a in many.
ēā " ea in great, when pronounced with **pointed** lips.
ü " a in can, when pronounced with **pointed** lips
ēē " ee in feel, with the lips **slightly rounded.**
ɪ " i in fill, likewise with the lips **slightly rounded.**
[ᵉ] " the obscure e in driven, given, father.
[··] over the 2d of two adjacent vowels denotes that this vowel is to be pronounced separately, as beerben[bĕ-ĕr'-bᵉn], *to inherit*; Deiſt[dē-ɪst], *deist*.
[ᶜʰ] the guttural pronunciation of ch.
[ʸ] denotes the soft pronunciation of ch.
[ᵍ] denotes the French g, as logiren[lō-ᵍē'-rᵉn], *to lodge, to dwell*.
[ʰ] indicates that the aspiration is scarcely noticeable, as gehen[gā'ʰᵉn], *to go*; ſehen[zā'-ʰᵉn], *to see*, (almost gān, zān.)
[ᵏ] denotes the soft pronunciation of k for final g.
[ᵖ] denotes the soft pronunciation of p for final b.
[ᵗ] denotes the soft pronunciation of t for final d.
['] in words of two syllables is the sign of the accent, and in polysyllabic words the sign of the **primary** accent.
[ˈ] in polysyllablic words the sign of the **secondary** accent.
[=] the sign of equality:

## [10.] PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

### A. VOWELS.

1. Long **a** (ah) sounds like a in far: **kam**[kahm], *came*; **Bahre**[bah'-re], *hier*; **Name**[nah'-me], *name*.

2. Short **a** (á) sounds like a in sharp: **Kamm**[kám], *comb*; **Salz**[zálts], *salt*; **hart**[hárt], *hard*; **kann**[kán], *can*.

*Caution!* Never pronounce the German **a** like the English a in ball or call; such a sound does not exist in pure German. Neither pronounce it like the English a in cake or in bad. For the former sound, the long **e** is employed, for the latter the Umlaut **a** (ä). The **a** is most purely and distinctly pronounced with an *open* mouth; the long **a** (ah) being more, the short (á) less sustained.

3. Long **e** sounds like a in came: **Weh**[vā], *woe*; **mehr**[mār], *more*; **Seele**[zā'-le], *soul*; **Feder**[fā'-der], *feather, pen*; **Esel**[ā'-zel], *ass*; **Peter**[pā'-ter], *Peter*; **lehnen**[lā'-nen], to lean.

4. *Short* **e** (ĕ) sounds like e in nest: **Bett**[bĕt], *bed*; **denken**[dĕn'-ken], *to think*; **Ende**[ĕn'-de], *end*; **Engel**[ĕn'-gel], *angel*; **Feld**[felt], *field*; **gelb**[gĕlp], *yellow*; **gellen**[gĕl'-len], *to yell*; **Keller**[kĕl'-ler], *cellar*; **Kessel**[kĕs'-sel], *kettle*; **Tempel**[tĕm'-pel], *temple*; **Werk**[vĕrk], *work*.

5. *Obscure* or *almost mute* **e** (°) sounds like e in driven. This obscure or half sounded **e** occurs for the most part at the end of a word, or in an unaccented final syllable (syllable of inflection or derivation): **Wasser**[vās'-ser], *water*; **besser**[bĕs'-ser], *better*; **fehlen**[fā'-len], *to fail*; **Elle**[ĕl'-le], *ell*; **Erde**[ar'-de], *earth*; **Vater**[fah'-ter], *father*; **Sattel**[zāt'-tel], *saddle*.

6. *Long* **i, ie, ih** (ē) sounds like e in me: **mir**[mēr], *me*; **dir**[dēr], *thee*; **sie**[zē], *she*; **fiel**[fēl], *fell*; **ihr**[ēr], *her*; **ihm**[ēm], *him*; **Priester**[prēs'-ter], *priest*; **dieser**[dē'-zer], *this*; **hier**[hēr], *here*.

*Note.* The long **i** is for the most part followed by an **e** perfectly mute. In the words derived from the Latin, the **i** in the endings **ie, ien** is hardened to **y**, as **Familie**[fa-mē'-lye], *family*; **Spanien**[spahn'-yen], *Spain*. Words borrowed from the Greek follow the general rule: **Academie**[ä-kä-de-mē'], *academy*. In a few, but important words, especially the pronouns **ihn**[ēn], *him*; **ihr**[er], *her*; **ihre**[e're], *theirs*; **ihnen**[e'-nen], *to them*, the **i** is made long by insertion of **h** mute.

7. *Short* **i** (ĭ) sounds like i in chin: **Kind**[kĭnt], *child*; **in**[ĭn], *in*; **mild**[mĭlt], *mild*; **Lippe**[lĭp'-pe], *lip*; **ist**[ĭst], *is*; **hinter**[hĭn'-ter], *behind*; **Hirt**[hirt], *herdsman*; **lispeln**[lĭs'-peln], *to lisp*; **missen**[mĭs'-sen], *to miss*; **Pille**[pĭl'-le], *pill*.

8. *Long* **o** (o) sounds like o in so: **Rose**[ro'-ze], *rose*; **so**[zo], *so*; **Tod**[tōt], *death*; **Bohne**[bo'-ne], *bean*; **Loos**[los], *lot*; **bohren**[bo'-ren], *to bore*; **Dom**[dom], *dome*; **Kohle**[ko'-le], *coal*; **Mode**[mo'-de], *mode*; **Monat**[mo'-nat], *month*; **Boot**[bot], *boat*.

9. *Short* **o** (ŏ) sounds like o in gone: Donner[dŏn'-ner], *thunder*; Mord [mŏrt] *murder*; voll[fŏll], *full*; Gott[gŏtt], *god*; Moſt[mŏst], *must, cider*; Bock[bŏk], *buck*; Poſt[pŏst], *post*; Tonne[tŏn'-ne], *tun*; Torf[tŏrf], *turf*; Wolf[vŏlf], *wolf*; Wolle[vŏl'-le], *wool*.

10. *Long* **u** (ū) sounds like u in rule, or oo in fool: Blut[blūt], *blood*; zu [tsū], *to*; du[dū], *thou*; thun[tūn], *to do*; Bruder[brū'-der], *brother*; Huf [hūf], *hoof*; Pudel[pū'-del], *poodle*; pudern[pū'-dern], *to powder*; Ruder [rū'-der], *rudder, oar*; Schuh[shū], *shoe*; Schule[shū'-le], *school*; Ruthe [rū'-te], *rod*; Stuhl[stūl], *chair, stool*.

11. *Short* **u** (ŭ) sounds like u in full: Klumpen[klŭm'-pen], *lump*; Kluft [klŭft], *cleft*; rund[rŭnt], *round*; Pumpe[pŭm'-pe], *pump*; Puls[pŭls], *pulse*; ſchlummern[shlŭm'-mern], *to slumber*; Sturm[stŭrm], *storm*; Suppe [zŭp'-pe], *soup*; Trupp[trŭp], *troop*; Futter[fŭt'-ter], *food, fodder*; Grund [grŭnt], ground.

*Caution!* Never pronounce the German u like the English u in produce, or like the u in but.

12. *Long* **y** (*y*) sounds like e in me; Styl[stēl], *style*; Aſyl['ä-zēl'], *asylum*; Mythe[mē'-te], *myth, fable*; Hymen[hē'-men], *hymen*.

13. *Short* **y** sounds like i in chin: Myrte[mĭr'-te], *myrtle*; Hymne [hĭm'-ne], *hymn*; Cymbel[tsĭm'-bel], *cymbal*; Gyps[gĭps], *gypsum*.

## B. CONSONANTS.

I. The *Consonants* are divided into *simple, double*, and *compound*.

1. All the letters of the alphabet except the six vowels are **simple** Consonants.

2. A consonant occurring twice in succession, is called a **double** consonant. They are pronounced like the simple ones, but render the preceding vowel short:

wenn[vĕn], *when, if*; but wen[vān], *whom?*
Lamm[lăm], *lamb*; but lahm[lahm], *lame*.
ſtill[stĭl], *still*; but Stil (Styl) [stēl], *style*.

The consonants **k, q, v, w, x, z,** are never double.

3. The compound consonants (Digraphs and Trigraphs) are: **ch, ck, pf, qu, ſch, ſs, th, tz.**

II. The following consonants vary from the English pronunciation.

1. **B, b** like b, but at the end of a word or a syllable followed by another consonant, it is pronounced somewhat harder and resembles soft p (p): Rabe[rah'-be], *raven*; Grab[grăp], *grave*.

2. **C, c** before the vowels **e, i, y, ä, ö** is pronounced **ts,** as Procent [prō-tsĕnt'], *per cent*; Cymbel[tsĭm'-bel], *cymbal*; Cicero[tsē'-tsē-rō], *Cicero*; Cäſar[tsä'-zär], *Cæsar*.

| a* | e | i, y | o | u | ä |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ah, shärp | cāke, nēst, drivᵉn. | mē, chīn | sō, gōne | brūte, fūlly | fāīr, māny |

Before a, o, u, ä it has the sound of k, as Credit[krĕ-dĭt'], *credit*: Cocarde[kŏ-kär'-dᵉ], *cockade*; Canal[kă-nahl], *canal*.

3. Ch, ch. *a.* AFTER a vowel has a peculiar sound, not found in the English language. The Lowland Scotch still preserve it in some words for *gh*, as in *lough*, *eight*, etc.; it is the Spanish j.

The general rule for its pronunciation is:

Retain the organs nearly in the same position in which they were when uttering the vowel, and exhale (but not too deep, from the throat) immediately with the vowel an almost audible breath. By doing so, the ch after a, o, u, au, which are produced in the throat, will resemble a deep guttural.

After e, i, and the diphthongs and modified vowels containing e (ä, ö, ü, ei, eu, äu) which are formed more in the fore-part of the mouth, between the flat of the tongue and the palate, it will be a palatal, and sound nearly like an audibly aspirated y (in year).

*Note.* This is one of the points before alluded to (Page 2) on which the pupil will find it useful to get the assistance of some German friend, as the sound can be acquired much more readily by imitation than in any other way. You will find in the reading lessons many examples of both shades of this sound, which you can repeat to such a friend, in order that he may correct your pronunciation if not quite right.

*b.* At the commencement of foreign words it has sometimes the sound of k, as in Charakter[kă-răk'-tᵉr], *character*; Christ[krĭst], *Christian*; sometimes that of the German (guttural or palatal aspirate) ch, as in Chemie [ye-mē'], *chemistry*; China[yē'-nă], *China*.

In words from the French it generally preserves the French pronunciation: Charade[shă-rah'-dᵉ], *charade*.

*c.* When ch is followed by an s, ß, belonging to the same radical syllable, it is pronounced like k, and this letter combined with s, ß produces the sound of x, as: Lachs[lăx], *salmon*; Buchsbaum[bŭx'-boum], *box-tree*.

But if the s, ß does not belong to the same syllable, the ch preserves its peculiar guttural (or palatal) pronunciation. Compare the two articulations: Lachse[lă'xᵉ], *salmon* (pl.), and Lachsucht[lăch'-zūcht], *mania for laughing*; Dachs[dăx], *badger*, and Dachs[dachs], (contraction for Daches[dă'-chᵉs],) *of the roof*; Wachs[văx], *wax*, and wachsam[văch-'zăm], *watchful*.

4. D, d beginning a syllable has the same sound as in English, as: Drohne[drō'-nᵉ], *drone*; Damm[dăm], *dam*; hindern[hĭn'-dᵉrn], *to hinder*; wandern[văn'-dᵉrn], *to wander*.

*Key to the Pronunciation of the Vowels.

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| gr**ö**at, ürge | f**ee**l, f**ü**ll | foul | f**i**ne | coin | coin. |

**b** at the end of words or syllables followed by another consonant, sounds nearly like **t**, (t) as: Brod[brōt], *bread*; Hand[hänt], *hand*; ordnen[ōrt'-nᵉn], *to order*.

5. **G, g** is pronounced in three ways:

*a.* In general it has the guttural sound of the Engish **g** in the word gay. as Gaſt[gäst], *guest*; gegeben[gᵉ-gā'-bᵉn], *given*; Gold[gōlt], *gold*.

*b.* Preceded by the vowel **i** in the unaccented final syllable **ig**, its pronunciation is slightly softened and approaches that of English y, or nearly German **ch** in the word **ich**; as: König[kēā'niy (y=soft ch)], *king*; blutig [blū'-tiy], *bloody*.

*Note.* In some parts of Germany the **g** is pronounced softly after each vowel; in other parts, on the contrary, it is always pronounced hard like the English **g** in gay; but neither the one, nor the other is to be recommended.

*c.* **ng** at the end, and before **ſt, t, te** in verbs, is scarcely softer than **nk**; lang[länᵏ], *long*; verlangſt[fĕr-länᵏst], (*thou*) *longest, desirest*.

**ng** (divided **n-g**) in the midst of a word, like **ng** in longing, as hangen [hän'-gᵉn], *to hang*; mengen[mĕn-gᵉn], *to mingle*.

*Note.* **G, g** before **e** and **i** in words from the French, sounds as in French, (g=g French): logiren[lō-gē'-rᵉn], *to lodge*; Genie[gᵉ-nē'], *genius*; arrangiren[ăr-răn-gē'-rᵉn], *to arrange*.

6. **H, h.** *a.* At the beginning of words and syllables it is strongly aspirated: halten[häl'-tᵉn], *to hold*; hier[hēr], *here*.

*b.* It is mute before a consonant, and at the end of a word, but lengthens the vowel preceding it: hohl[hōl], *hollow*; mehr[mār], *more*; Sohn[zōn], *son*.

*c.* A long vowel before **t** requires this lengthening **h** not before but after the **t**; compare: Mohr[mōr], *moor*, and roth[rōt], *red*; Rahm[rahm], *cream*, and Rath[raht], *advice*.

*Note.* Your attention is called again to the fact that in German every letter is sounded, the only exceptions being where **h**, or **e** are used to lengthen the preceding vowel sound.

*Note* 2. The aspiration of **h** before the obscure or half-mute **e** (°) of a final syllable is almost imperceptible. We shall indicate this pronunciation by a small h (ʰ), as: gehen[gā'-ʰen], *to go*; ſehen[zā'-ʰen], *to see*, pronounce it almost like gān, zān.

7. **J, j** like **y** in yes: Jahr[yahr], *year*; ja[yah], *yes*; Jugend[yū'-gᵉnt] *youth*

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nēst, driv$^{e}$n | i, y mē, chīn | o sō, gōne | u brūte, fūlly | ä fär, mäny |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

8. **K, k** is pronounced like the English **k**: König[kēä'-nĭy], *king*, melken [měl'-k$^{e}$n], *to milk*

*a.* **ck** doubled is written **cke** [tsä'-kah]. The vowel which precedes **cke** is according to § **10**, *Cons.* I, 2, always short: Haken[hah'-k$^{e}$n], *hook*: hacken [häk'-k$^{e}$n], *to hack.*

*Caution!* Never use **cke** after a consonant; for in that case *three* consonants would follow the preceding vowel, as Werck=Werkk. A spelling of this kind is never allowed, hence write Werk[vĕrk], *work*; ſtark[stärk], *strong.*

*b.* **Kn, kn** like **kn**, both letters sounded (no letter is silent in German): Knabe[knah'-b$^{e}$], *boy* (English *knave*=boy [obs.]); Knoten[knō'-t$^{e}$n], *knot.*

9. **L, l** like English **l**: Land[länt], *land*; **lk** like **lk**, **lc** (both letters sounded): Falke[fäl'-k$^{e}$], *falcon*; Kalk[kälk], *chalk.* **lm** like **lm** (both letters sounded): Palme[päl'-m$^{e}$], *palm*; Halm[hälm], *halm, blade.*

10. **Pf, pf** like gentle p-f, being uttered *with compressed lips:* Pfeife [pfī'-f$^{e}$], *pipe*; Pfennig[pfĕn'-nĭy], *penny.* **pf** occuring between two vowels are divided **p-f**: Apfel[äp'-f$^{e}$l], *apple*; Hopfen[hŏp'-f$^{e}$n], *hops.*

**Ph, ph** (Greek) like f (never divided): Philoſoph[fī-lō-zōf'], *philosopher*; Emphaſe[ĕm-fah'-z$^{e}$], *emphasis.*

**Pſ, pſ** (ß) like ps (both sounded): Pſalm[psälm], *psalm*; Pſalter [psäl'-t$^{e}$r], *psalter.*

11. **Q, q** is only employed at the beginning of a word or syllable, and is always followed by an **u**, and these two letters are together pronounced like kv: Quadrat[kvăd -raht'], *quadrate*; Quäker[kvä'-k$^{e}$r], *quaker*; Queckſilber [kvĕk'-zĭl"-b$^{e}$r], *quicksilver.*

12. **R, r** is pronounced more distinctly and rather harder than in English. It should not be a guttural, but formed a little further forward in the mouth than the English **r**, which, when following a vowel, as in *far, tar, star* is scarcely audible. In syllables like these it must be pronounced distinctly, almost like **rr**: hören[hēä'-r$^{e}$n], *to hear*; irren[ĭr'-r$^{e}$n], *to err*; Aehre[ä'-r$^{e}$], *ear (of corn).*

13. **S, ſ, ß** has two forms in German:

*a.* The long **ſ** is employed at the beginning of words and syllables, and has a less hissing sound than the English **s** when initial; it sounds more like z, or like the s in *resign* or *wise.* The final **ß** is placed, as its name

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| greät, ürge | feel, fill | foul | fine | coin | coin |

indicates, at the end of words and has the sound of English s. It is placed also in compound words at the end of the first component, and in derivatives, before final chen and lein: Saal[zahl], *saloon, hall*; Sack[zäk], *sack*; Sonne[zŏn'-n$^{e}$], *sun*; Maus[mous], *mouse*; Ausgang=Aus-gang[ous'-găn$^{k}$], *outgoing, egress*; Häuschen[hois'-$^{chen}$], *little house*; Mäuschen or Mäuslein[mois'-$^{chen}$, mois'-lin], *little mouse*.

*b.* ff belonging to the same syllable is pronounced almost like a single consonant (like ss in kissing), ſſ belonging always to two syllables, each is heard separately. Compare, Claſſe[klăs'-s$^{e}$], *class*; Glasſplitter[glăs'-splĭt"-t$^{er}$], *glass-splinter, shiver of glass*; Eisſäge[ĭs'-zāf"-g$^{e}$], *ice-saw*.

*c.* ß is sometimes a simple letter, sometimes a compound letter and never occurs at the beginning of words.

The simple ß is always preceded by a long vowel, and is pronounced like the English initial s (the s in *see*). This ß is an ancient soft ʒ, called in later times *ess-tset*, on account of its form. The resemblance of this form with that of the final ſʒ has given rise to the confusion of these two letters, entirely different originally.

The compound ß is an abbreviation of ſʒ at the end of words or syllables; it is always preceded by a short vowel, and is pronounced like ff. Standing in the place of ff, it is changed into it, whenever in consequence of inflection or derivation the word is augmented by a syllable commencing with a vowel. Compare: aß[ahs], *ate*; aßen[ah'-s$^{en}$], *ate* (plur.); Haß [hăs], *hatred*; haſſen[hăs'-s$^{en}$], *to hate*; Fuß[fûs], *foot*; Füße[fēē'-s$^{e}$], *feet*; Fluß[flûs], *flux, river*; Flüſſe[flĭs'-s$^{e}$], *rivers*.

*N. B.* The Germans do not write ff at the end of a word or radical syllable, but ß instead. Thus Fluß, *river*, Flüſſe (plur.), das Flüßchen*[flĭs'-y$^{en}$], *the rivulet*.

*d.* Sch, ſch like sh: Schaf[shahf], *sheep*; Schiff[shiff], *ship*: Buſch [bŭsh], *bush*.

*e.* Sp, St are sounded as in English: ſpringen[spring'-$^{en}$], *to spring, to jump*; Speer[spār], *spear*. In a large portion of Germany, they are sounded, *at the beginning*, almost like shp and sht: ſpringen[shpring'-$^{en}$], Strom[shtrōm].

---

*chen a diminutive syllable, equivalent to the English kin in manikin, bodkin, pipkin; in English, however, the diminutive sense is mostly effete.—*Earle, Philosophy of the English Language (No. 337).*

| a<br>ah, shärp | e<br>cāke, nēst, driv$^{e}$n. | i, y<br>mē, chīn | o<br>sō, gōne | u<br>brūte, fūlly | ä<br>fär, mäny |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

14. **T, t** like t in English: Torte[tōr'-t$^{e}$], *tart*.

*a.* Before **ta, tä, to, tu, te,** in **foreign** suffixes it sounds like **ts**: Tertia[tĕr'-tsiă], *third class*; Nation[nä-tsiōn], *nation*.

*b.* **Th, th** (never divided) sounds like t, but lengthens the vowel of the root in which it occurs, both when it precedes and when it follows it: Thal [tahl], *dale, valley*; Thron[trōn], *throne*; Meth[māt], *mead*; Muth[mūt], *mood, courage*.

15. **V, v** sounds like f: compare, viel[fēl], *much*; and fiel[fēl], *fell*; Verſe[fĕr'-z$^{e}$], *verses*, and Ferſe[fĕr'-z$^{e}$], *heel*.

16. **W, w** has almost the sound of the English v, the lower lip *should press less against the upper teeth:* warm[värm], *warm*; Wind[vĭn$^{t}$], *wind*; Wein[vīn], *wine*.

17. **Z, z** is pronounced like **ts**: zehn[tsān], *ten*; zahm[tsahm], *tame*. The **double z** is replaced by **tz**: Katze[kät'-s$^{e}$], *cat*; Netz[nĕts], *net*; Warze[värt'-s$^{e}$], *wart*; Witz[vĭts], *wit*.

*Caution!* Never use **tz** after a diphthong, or a vowel lengthened by **h** or **e**. For the general rule in Orthography is: Use no double consonant (**tz**=**zz**) after a diphthong or long vowel; hence heizen[hīt'-s$^{e}$n], *to heat*; Malz[mälts], *malt* (not Maltz).

## RECAPITULATION OF THE GENERAL RULES

### *with Additions.*

1. Every letter [except the **h** after a vowel or **t** (**th**) and **e** after **i** (**ie**)] must be pronounced distinctly.

2. The accent is on the radical syllable of simple words.

3. In compound words two or more accents are employed; the first, however, is the strongest. This rule is universal, applying to compounds made by the combination of two or more of any of the parts of speech, as Glas-laterne[gläs'-lä-tĕr$^{e}$-n$^{e}$], *glass-lantern*; Bierbrauer[bēr'-brou$^{e}$-$^{er}$], *beer-brewer*; Feuerroth[foi'-$^{er}$-rōt$^{e}$], *fire-red*; Brodbacken[brōt'-bä$^{e}$-k$^{e}$n], *bread baking*; Leiterförmig[lī'-t$^{er}$-fūr$^{e}$-mĭy], *in the form of a ladder*; anbringen [än'-brĭng$^{e}$-$^{en}$] *to bring in, on or about*.

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| gröät, ürge | fëël, fül | foul | fine | coin | coin |

*Note.* There are a few exceptions to this rule, the principal one being in the case of compound particles, which have only one accent, always on the final syllable, as :

herauf=her-auf[hĕ-rouf'], *up (towards the speaker)*;
hinauf=hin-auf[hĭ-nouf'], *up, (upheneefrom the speaker)*;
herab=her-ab[hĕ-räᵇ'], *down (toward the speaker)*;
hinab=hin-ab[hĭ-näᵇ'], *down (away from the speaker)*;
damit=da-mit[dä-mĭt'], *therewith, so that*;
zurück=zu-rück[tsŭ-rĭk'], *backwards.*

4. All accented syllables terminated by a vowel (open syllables § 8, 3) or by a single consonant (simply closed) are long, and syllables terminated by a double consonant or two consonants (doubly closed) are short for the most part, even if accented.

5. Inflectional endings prefixes and suffixes are, with a few exceptions, unaccented.

6. In simple words a single consonant between two vowels, is pronounced with the following and not with the preceding vowel, so that the first syllable becomes an open, and its vowel, if accented, a long one : Feder[fä'-dᵉr], *feather, pen*; ſagen[zah'-gᵉn], *to say*; holen[hō'-lᵉn], *to fetch, draw (to haul, to hale).*

Of two or more consonants between two vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the preceding and the remainder with the following vowel: Mutter[mŭt'-tᵉr], *mother*; Mühlſtein[mëël'-stĭn], *millstone.*

7. When two vowels or consonants come together by inflection, derivation or composition, (or in other words—when inflectional syllables, prefixes, suffixes or particles and words are annexed to a word,) they are pronounced separately :

geendet=ge-endet[gᵉ-ĕn'-dᵉt], *ended*;
beerben=be-erben[bᵉ-ĕr'-bᵉn], *to inherit*;
beurtheilen=be-urtheilen[bᵉ-ŭr'-tᵘ-lᵉn], *to judge*;
angeln=root ang, hence the n *nasal*[äng'-ᵉln], *to angle*; but
angeloben=an-ge-loben[än'-gᵉ-lōᵛ-bᵉn], *to vow*;
dasſelbe=das-ſelbe[däs-zĕl'-bᵉ], *the same, self-same*;
eiskalt=Eis-kalt[ĭs'-kältᵉ], *as cold as ice.*

8. When two consonants come together by contraction (*i. e.* by dropping an inflectional e, as holte for holete, *fetched, hauled*; gabſt for gabeſt, *gavest*; gelebt for gelebet, *lived*) the preceding vowel, if originally long, remains long, contrary to the general rule that a vowel is short before a double consonant, hence: holte[hōl-tᵉ]; gabſt[gahᵖst]; gelebt[gᵉ-läpt].

9. dt in Stadt[stät], *city (stead)*, are pronounced tt as in Statt[stät], *stead*. In many words, however, dt come together by contraction (dropping e), and the preceding vowel is (according to Rule 7) long: todt[tōt], dead (for todet): beredt[be-rät], *eloquent* (for beredet, related with *to read*).

10. Foreign words for the most part receive the accent on the last syllable: Soldat[zōl-daht'], *soldier*; Offizier[ōf-fi-tsēr'], *officer*; Student[stū-dent'], *student*. Many foreign words retain their original pronunciation, as *adieu*, *roast beef*; especially proper names retain the accent on the first syllable, when the word has it there originally: Byron, Shakespeare, Cato[kah'-tō].

## QUESTIONS FOR RECAPITULATION.

*Answers to some, which further impress important points.*

1. In what manner are the vowels a, o, u, e made long? *Ans.* By doubling them or adding h.

2. How is i made long? *Ans.* Generally by the addition of e, and in a few words by h.

3. In long syllables where t occurs, where must the lengthening h be placed?

4. Are b, d, g always pronounced alike?

5. When is t to be pronounced like z (ts)?

6. When has f the soft sound, and when has it the long one?

7. What is the difference between ff, and fz?

8. What is used instead of ff at the end of a word?

9. When is ch guttural and when palatal?

10. What is most essential to the correct pronunciation of ch? *Ans.* Not to consider it as a letter (which requires the action of some organ), but merely as a **loud breathing**, exhaled immediately with the preceding vowel.

11. When is ch pronounced like k, and in what connection like x?

12. When is the aspiration of h scarcely audible? *Ans.* Before the half-mute e (e).

13. When a double f (ff) is required, what letter is employed instead of the first f?

14. By what vowel is q always followed?

15. What is the most important rule concerning the division of words into syllables? *Ans.* The consonant between two vowels must be combined

with the following vowel and not with the preceding one, even if this latter belongs to the same root with the consonant: *e. g.*

Kind [kint], *child*, but Kinder [kin'-der], *children*;
Lob [lop], *praise*, but Lobes [lo'-bes], *of praise*.

16. When is a vowel to be considered long, and when short?

17. What syllable has the primary or strongest accent in all derivative German words?

18. Which word has the strongest accent in compound words?

19. Where is the accent to be placed in words taken from foreign languages?

20. What syllables are invariably long?

21. What syllables are for the most part short, even if accented?

22. When must two adjacent vowels be pronounced separately?

23. When is ß (final s) employed in derivative words?

| e | i, ŷ | o | u | ä | guttural ȝ | palatal ȝ | hard d |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| cāke, nēst, driv=n | mē, chīn | sō, gōne | brūte, fūlly | fāīr, māny | ch | y | t |

# READING EXERCISES.

## GENERAL REMARKS.

The following *Reading Exercises* are arranged in such a manner, as to answer three different purposes.

First. To train the learner from the beginning to the exact pronunciation of German, by presenting to his view many words resembling English words in form, (*i. e.* concerning their vowels and consonants,) but differing in pronunciation, as Gold[gŏl$^{t}$ (and not *gold*,) ], Muſter[mŭs'-t$^{e}$r (and not like the English *muster*) ].

Secondly. To show the student, that he is, unknowingly, already in possession of an immense number of German words.

Thirdly. To illustrate by them, both the relation existing between the English (the Older Low German) and the German (the New High German) languages, and the general laws of the interchange of the consonants (as **Grimm's Law** and others) to which your attention will shortly be called.

### VOWELS.—A, a.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Hammer | hăm'-m$^{e}$r | *hammer* | lang | lăng | *long* |
| fallen | făl'-l$^{e}$n | *to fall* | Mann | măn | *man* |
| warm | värm | *warm* | Mantel | măn'-t$^{e}$l | *mantle* |
| hangen | hăn'-g$^{e}$n | *to hang* | Name | nah'-m$^{e}$ | *name* |
| Land | lănt | *land* | Sand | zănt | *sand* |

*Key to the Pronunciation of the Vowels and Consonants.

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## A, a.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Strand | strănt | *strand* | wachſen | vă'-xen | *to wax, to grow* |
| Arm | ärm | *arm* | hart | härt | *hard* |
| Glas | gläs | *glass* | Sack | zăk | *sack* |
| faſten | fäs'-ten | *to fast* | Glaspapier | gläs'-pă-pēr" | *glass-paper* |
| Flachs | fläx | *flax* | Sacknadel | zăk'-nah"-del | *pack-needle (sack-needle)* |
| harſch | härsh | *harsh* | | | |
| raſch | răsh | *rash* | hacken | häk'-ken | *to hack* |
| ſah | zah | *saw* | Mark | märk | *mark* |
| Plan | plahn | *plan* | Markgraf | märk'-grahf | *margrave* |
| Damm | dăm | *dam* | Landgraf | länt'-grahf | *landgrave* |
| waſchen | vă'-shen | *to wash* | Landgräfin | länt'-grāt"-fin | *landgravine* |
| Paar | pahr | *pair* | Tabakſpinner | tă'-bäk-spin"-ner | *tobacco-spinner or dresser* |
| Waare | vah'-re | *ware* | | | |
| backen | bäk'-ken | *to bake* | Bahre | bah'-re | *bier* |
| ſatteln | zät'-teln | *to saddle* | Palaſt | pă-läst' | *palace* |
| Sattel | zät'-tel | *saddle* | Watte | vät'-te | *wadding* |
| Schwarm | shvärm | *swarm* | waten | vah'-ten | *to wade* |
| Wachs | văx | *wax* | Dame | dah'-me | *dame* |
| wagen | vah'-gen | *to wage, to risk, to venture* | ſparen | spah'-ren | *to spare* |
| | | | Park | pärk | *park* |

| a<br>ah, shärp | e<br>cake, nĕst, driv$^{e}$n | i, y<br>me, chĭn | o<br>sō, gōne | u<br>brūte, fūlly | ä<br>fär, mäny | guttural ch<br>ch | palatal ch<br>v | hard d<br>t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## A, a.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Platz | pläts | *place* | Hand | hänt | *hand* |
| Aal | ahl | *eel* | harm | härm | *harm, hurt* |
| kam | kahm | *came* | harmlos | härm'-lōs | *harmless, inoffensive* |
| Mahl | mahl | *meal (repast)* | | | |
| Maal | mahl | *mole* | Nadel | nah'-d$^{e}$l | *needle* |
| kalt | kält | *cold* | Handschuh | hänt'-shū | *glove (hand-shoe)* |
| Staat | staht | *state* | | | |
| Haar | hahr | *hair* | Haarpuder | hahr'-pū"-d$^{e}$r | *hair-powder* |
| Kanaan | kah'-nä-ăn | *Canaan* | Brustnadel | brūst'-nah"-d$^{e}$l | *breast-pin, breast needle* |
| Asche | ä'-sh$^{e}$ | *ashes* | | | |
| Ahle | ah'-l$^{e}$ | *awl* | Handschuhmacher | hänt'-shū-mä"-ch$^{e}$r | *glover (hand-shoe maker)* |
| all | äl | *all* | | | |
| Alpen | äl'-p$^{e}$n | *Alps* | Garten | gär'-t$^{e}$n | *garden* |
| Angel | äng'-$^{e}$l | *angle* | Gartenhaus | gär'-t$^{e}$n-hous" | *summer-house, garden-house* |
| Anker | än'-k$^{e}$r | *anchor* | | | |
| Acker | äk'-k$^{e}$r | *acre* | Gartenthür | gär'-t$^{e}$n-tēēr | *garden-door* |
| falsch | fälsh | *false* | langarmig | länk"-är'-mĭy | *long-armed* |
| Spanne | spän'-n$^{e}$ | *span* | Schwalbe | shväl'-b$^{e}$ | *swallow* |
| Schwan | shvahn | *swan* | Schwalbennest | shväl'-b$^{e}$n-nĕst" | *swallow-nest.* |
| warnen | vär'-n$^{e}$n | *to warn, caution* | | | |

| ö<br>greât, ürge | ü<br>feel, fill | au<br>foul | ei<br>fine | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute,<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## E, e.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| lernen | lĕr′-nᵉn | *to learn* | Fell | fĕl | *skin, fell (in wool-fell)* |
| Neſt | nĕst | *nest* | | | |
| ſenden | zĕn′-dᵉn | *to send* | Peter | pā′-tᵉr | *Peter* |
| Ende | ĕn′-dᵉ | *end* | Komet | kŏ-māt′ | *comet* |
| Herde | hār′-dᵉ | *herd* | Planet | plă-nāt′ | *planet* |
| Speer | spār | *spear* | Schnee | shnā | *snow* |
| ſtehlen | stā′-lᵉn | *to steal* | Schneeſchaufel | shnā′-shouᵉ-fel | *snow-shovel* |
| Weſpe | vĕs′-pᵉ | *wasp* | Schneeſturm | shnā′-stürm | *snow-storm* |
| Peſt | pĕst | *pest* | merken | mĕr′-kᵉn | *to mark, to note* |
| See | zā | *sea* | mengen | mĕng′-ᵉn | *to mingle* |
| Beere | bā′-rᵉ | *berry* | ſcheren | shā′-rᵉn | *to shear* |
| fett | fĕt | *fat* | ſtecken | stĕk′-kᵉn | *to stick* |
| Feder | fā′-dᵉr | *feather, pen* | Stecknadel | stĕk′-nahᵉ-del | *pin (stick-needle)* |
| Fehde | fā′-dᵉ | *feud* | Reſpect | rĕ-spĕkt′ | *respect* |
| Seele | zā′-lᵉ | *soul* | Lehm | lām | *loam, clay* |
| Reſt | rĕst | *rest* | lehmig | lā′-mĭy | *loamy, clayey* |
| beſte | bĕs′-tᵉ | *best* | Eber | ā′-bᵉr | *boar* |
| Mehl | māl | *meal (flour)* | Erde | ār′-dᵉ | *earth* |
| Sehne | zā′-nᵉ | *sinew* | Theer | tār | *tar* |
| Vater | fah′-tᵉr | *father* | Armee | ăr-mā′ | *army* |
| Elle | ĕl′-lᵉ | *ell* | Armeen | ărᵉ-mā′-ĕn | *armies* |

## E, e.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſehen | sā′-h$^{e}$n | *to see* |
| gehen | gā′-h$^{e}$n | *to go* |
| mehr | mār | *more* |
| fehlen | fā′-l$^{e}$n | *to fail* |
| enden | ĕn′-d$^{e}$n | *to end* |
| beenden | b$^{e}$-ĕn′-d$^{e}$n | *to end, to finish* |
| ernſt | ĕrnst | *earnest* |
| Ebbe | ĕb′-b$^{e}$ | *ebb* |
| Eſpe | ĕs′-p$^{e}$ | *asp, aspen* |
| Keller | kĕl′-l$^{e}$r | *cellar* |
| Kern | kĕrn | *kernel* |
| Kernfrucht | kĕrn′-früch$^{t}$ | *kernel-fruit* |
| kerngeſund | kĕrn′-g$^{e}$-zünt | *thoroughly sound, healthy, kernel-* |
| Maulbeere | moul′-bā″-r$^{e}$ | *mulberry* [*sound* |
| Bett | bĕt | *bed* |
| Bettbehänge | bĕt′-b$^{e}$-häng″-$^{e}$ | *bed-hangings, bed-curtains* |
| Bettfedern | bĕt′-fā-d$^{e}$rn | *bed-feathers* |
| Werk | vĕrk | *work* |
| Werkmeiſter | vĕrk′-mīs″-t$^{e}$r | *work-master* |
| Feld | fĕl$^{t}$ | *field* |
| Feldmarſchall | fĕl$^{t}$′-mär-shäl″ | *field-marshal* |
| Wetter | vĕt′-t$^{e}$r | *weather* |
| Wetterfahne | vĕt′-t$^{e}$r-fah″-n$^{e}$ | *vane, weather-cock* |
| ſpenden | spĕn′-d$^{e}$n | *to spend* |
| Erdenſohn | ār′-d$^{e}$n-zōn″ | *son of the earth* |
| Erdpol | ār$^{t}$′-pōl | *pole of the earth* |
| Seebad | zā′-bä$^{t}$ | *sea-bath* |
| ſeelenvoll | zā′-l$^{e}$n-fŏl″ | *full of soul, feeling* |
| melken | mĕl′-k$^{e}$n | *to milk* |
| Helm | hĕlm | *helm, helmet* |
| Engel | ĕng′-ĕl | *angel* |
| engliſch | ĕng′-lish | *English* |
| engliſch | ĕng′-lish | *angelic(al)* |
| Engländer | ĕng′-län″-d$^{e}$r | *Englishman* |
| Engländerin | ĕng′-län″-d$^{e}$r-in | *Englishwoman, an English lady* |
| ſchwellen | shvĕl′-l$^{e}$n | *to swell* |
| rennen | rĕn′-n$^{e}$n | *to run* |

| ö<br>great, ürge | ä<br>fēēl, fīl | au<br>foul | ei<br>fine | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute,<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## E, e.—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rennen | rĕn'-ner | *runner* | feſt | fēst | *fast, firm* |
| Rennthier | rĕn'-ter | *rein-deer* | Feſt | fēst | *feast, festival.* |
| lehnen | lā'-nen | *to lean* | | | |

## I, i.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bier | bēr | *beer* | ſinken | zĭn'-ken | *to sink* |
| wild | vĭlt | *wild* | picken | pĭk'-ken | *to pick* |
| Winter | vĭn'-ter | *winter* | Pickel | pĭk'-kel | *pickle* |
| hindern | hĭn'-dern | *to hinder* | Fließ | flēs | *fleece* |
| Giebel | gē'-bel | *gable* | trillern | trĭl'-lern | *to trill* |
| Kiel | kēl | *keel* | Biene | bē'-ne | *bee* |
| Knie | knē | *knee* | Pinie | pē'-nĭ-e | *pine* |
| mild | mĭlt | *mild* | ſieden | zē'-den | *to seethe* |
| binden | bĭn'-den | *to bind* | Pinſel | pĭn'-zel | *brush, pencil* |
| finden | fĭn'-den | *to find* | hier | hēr | *here* |
| blind | blĭnt | *blind* | Bitterſalz | bĭt'-ter-zälts" | *bitter-salt* |
| ſpinnen | ſpĭn'-nen | *to spin* | Fingerhut | fĭng'-er-hūt" | *thimble (finger-hat)* |
| Lilie | lē'-lĭ-e | *lily* | | | |
| Hiſtorie | hĭs-tō'-rĭ-e | *history* | blinken | blĭn'-ken | *to blink, to wink* |
| Miene | mē'-ne | *mien* | glimmern | glĭm'-mern | *to glimmer, to shine faintly* |
| Papier | pă-pēr' | *paper* | | | |

| a<br>ah, shärp | e<br>cāke, nĕst, driv$^{e}$n | i, y<br>mē, chĭn | o<br>sō, gōne | u<br>brute, fŭlly | ä<br>fär, mäny | guttural ch<br>ch | palatal ch<br>y | hard d<br>t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## J. i.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| hierin | hēr′-ĭn | *herein, in this* | Schmied | shmēt | *smith* |
| Hirt | hĭrt | *herdsman* | Ring | rĭng | *ring* |
| Hirtin | hĭr′-tĭn | *shepherdess* | Wind | vĭnt | *wind* |
| mittel | mĭt′-tel | *middle* | bitter | bĭt′-t$^{e}$r | *bitter* |
| Mittelclaſſe | mĭt′-tel-klăs′-s$^{e}$ | *middle class* | Finger | fĭng′-$^{e}$r | *finger* |
| niſten | nĭs′-t$^{e}$n | *to nest, to nestle* | Wink | vĭnk | *wink* |
| Prieſter | prēs′-t$^{e}$r | *priest* | winken | vĭn′-k$^{e}$n | *to wink* |
| Rinde | rĭn′-d$^{e}$ | *rind, crust* [*en* | ſingen | zĭng′-$^{e}$n | *to sing* |
| ſchimmern | shĭm′-m$^{e}$rn | *to shimmer, glist-* | ſtill | stĭll | *still, quiet* |
| ſtillen | stĭl′-l$^{e}$n | *to still, to quiet* | bringen | brĭng′-$^{e}$n | *to bring* |
| Triumpf | trĭ-ŭmpf′ | *triumph* | Fiſch | fĭsh | *fish* |
| Wille | vĭl′-l$^{e}$ | *will* | fiſchen | fĭ′-sh$^{e}$n | *to fish* |
| willkommen | vĭl-kŏm′-m$^{e}$n | *welcome* | beginnen | b$^{e}$-gĭn′-n$^{e}$n | *to begin* |
| ſchier | shēr | *sheer* | Buchbinder | bŭch′-bĭn″-d$^{e}$r | *bookbinder* |
| Melodien | mĕ-lō-dē′-$^{e}$n | *melodies* | irren | ĭr′-r$^{e}$n | *to err* |
| Linien | lē′-nĭ-$^{e}$n | *lines* | Linde | lĭn′-d$^{e}$ | *linden, lime-tree* |
| Lippe | lĭp′-p$^{e}$ | *lip* | friſch | frĭsh | *fresh* |
| liſpeln | lĭs′-p$^{e}$ln | *to lisp* | Linie | lē′-nĭ-$^{e}$ | *line* |
| ſchwimmen | shvĭm′-m$^{e}$n | *to swim* | Birke | bĭr′-k$^{e}$ | *birch* |
| ſchwingen | shvĭng′-$^{e}$n | *to swing* | Birkenwein | bĭr′-k$^{e}$n-vĭn″ | *birch-wine* |
| Silber | zĭl′-b$^{e}$r | *silver* | ſchlingen | shlĭng′-$^{e}$n | *to sling, to wind* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g ſ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## J, i.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fiſcher | fĭ′-sh$^{e}$r | *fisher* | Prinz | prĭnts | *prince* |
| Fiſcherhaus | fĭ′-sh$^{e}$r-hous″ | *fisherman's house* | Prinzeſſin | prĭn-tsĕs′-sĭn | *princess* |
| hindern | hĭn′-d$^{e}$rn | *to hinder* | Schild | shĭlt | *shield* |
| klimmen | klĭm′-m$^{e}$n | *to climb* | Springer | spring″-$^{e}$r | *springer, jumper* |
| miſſen | mĭs′-s$^{e}$n | *to miss* | Tiger | tē′-g$^{e}$r | *tiger* |
| nieder | nē′-d$^{e}$r | *nether, lower* | Wildniß | vĭlt″-nĭss | *wilderness* |
| knieen | knē′-$^{e}$n | *to kneel* | wirken | vĭr″-k$^{e}$n | *to work* |
| niederknieen | nē′-d$^{e}$r-knē″-$^{e}$n | *to kneel down* | | | |

## O, o.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sohn | zōn | *son* | Moos | mōs | *moss* |
| Fohlen | fō′-l$^{e}$n | *foal* | Moor | mōr | *moor* |
| Sohle | zō′-l$^{e}$ | *sole* | Zoologie | tsō″-ō-ló-gē′ | *zoology* |
| Tonne | tŏn′-n$^{e}$ | *tun* | Golf | gŏlf | *gulf* |
| Sonne | zŏn′-n$^{e}$ | *sun* | Kohle | kō′-l$^{e}$ | *coal* |
| ſo | zō | *so* | Mord | mŏrt | *murder* |
| Dom | dōm | *dome* | Floh | flō | *flea* |
| Sommer | zōm′-m$^{e}$r | *summer* | Horn | hŏrn | *horn* |
| Bock | bŏk | *buck* | bohren | bō′-r$^{e}$n | *to bore* |
| ſtottern | stŏt′-t$^{e}$rn | *to stutter* | Gold | gōlt | *gold* |
| Stroh | strō | *straw* | Korn | kŏrn | *corn* |
| Drohne | drō′-n$^{e}$ | *drone* | Ton | tōn | *tone* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nĕst, driv$^{e}$n | i, y mē, chĭn | o sō, göne | u brūte, fůlly | ä fäťr, mäny | guttural ch ch | palatal ch y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## O, o.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| koſten | kös'-t$^{e}$n | *to cost* | Ochs | öx | *ox* |
| Roſt | röst | *rust* | Bohne | bō'-n$^{e}$ | *bean* |
| roſten | rös'-t$^{e}$n | *to rust* | Boot | bōt | *boat* |
| gewohnt | g$^{e}$-vönt' | *wont, used, accustomed.* | Bohle | bō'-l$^{e}$ | *bole* |
| | | | Locke | lök'-k$^{e}$ | *lock* |
| wohl | vōl | *well* | Bolle | böl'-l$^{e}$ | *boll* |
| Wohlfahrt | vōl'-fahrt" | *wellfare* | Wolf | völf | *wolf* |
| Wolle | völ'-l$^{e}$ | *wool* | Froſt | fröst | *frost* |
| Ohr | ör | *ear* | Froſtwetter | fröst'-vĕt"-t$^{e}$r | *frosty weather* |
| Ohrring | ör'-ring" | *ear-ring* | kommen | köm'-m$^{e}$n | *to come* |
| Sonntag | zön'-täk | *Sunday* | geſtohlen | g$^{e}$-stō'-l$^{e}$n | *stolen* |
| Montag | mön'-täk | *Monday* | golden | göl'-d$^{e}$n | *golden* |
| Forſt | först | *forest, wood* | Noth | nōt | *need, want* |
| Monat | mō'-năt | *month* | Nothjahr | nōt'-yahr" | *year of distress, of scarcity, of need* |
| Oſtwind | öst'-vint" | *east-wind* | | | |
| roſig | rō-ziy | *rosy* | roth | röt | *red* |
| Sonnenball | zön'-n$^{e}$n-bäl" | *sun-ball or sphere* | Rothbart | röt'-bahrt" | *red beard* |
| rollen | röl'-l$^{e}$n | *to roll* | rothbraun | röt'-broun" | *red-brown* |
| Roſe | rō'-z$^{e}$ | *rose* | rothhaarig | röt'-hah"-riy | *red-haired* |
| Kork | körk | *cork* | bevor | b$^{e}$-för" | *before* |
| Strom | ström | *stream* | Honig | hō'-niy | *honey* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## O, o.—Continued..

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Honigbiene | hō'-nĭy-bē"-n$^{e}$ | *honey-bee, work-bee* | Onkel | ŏn'-k$^{el}$ | *uncle* |
| | | | oft | ŏft | *often* |
| Honigworte | hō'-nĭy-vŏr"-t$^{e}$ | *honied words* | Krone | krō'-n$^{e}$ | *crown* |
| Oſt | ŏst | *east* | Goldſchmied | gōlt"-shmēt" | *goldsmith* |
| Nord | nŏrt | *north* | formen | fŏr'-m$^{en}$ | *to form* |
| Nordwind | nŏrt'-vĭnt" | *north wind, boreas* | hohl | hōl | *hollow* |
| Nordſturm | nŏrt'-stürm" | *storm, hurricane from the north* | modiſch | mō'-dĭsh | *modish* |
| | | | roh | rō | *raw, rude* |
| geſchwommen | g$^{e}$-shvŏm'-m$^{en}$ | *swum* | Sommertag | zŏm'-m$^{er}$-tăk" | *summer-day* |
| geſchworen | g$^{e}$-shvō'-r$^{en}$ | *sworn* | ſpornen | spŏr'-n$^{en}$ | *to spur* |

## U, u.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Wunde | vün'-d$^{e}$ | *wound* | hundert | hün'-d$^{ert}$ | *hundred* |
| Lunge | lün'-g$^{e}$ | *lung* | Pudel | pū'-d$^{el}$ | *poodle-dog* |
| rund | rünt | *round* | Schuh | shū | *shoe* |
| Hund | hünt | *dog, hound* | Buſch | büsh | *bush* |
| Sturm | stürm | *storm* | duſeln | dū'-z$^{eln}$ | *to doze* |
| Truppe | trŭp'-p$^{e}$ | *troop* | Null | nül | *null* |
| Suppe | zŭp'-p$^{e}$ | *soup* | Muff | mŭf | *muff* |
| Spule | spū'-l$^{e}$ | *spool* | ſchmuggeln | shmŭg'-g$^{eln}$ | *to smuggle* |
| Grund | grünt | *ground* | muſtern | mŭs'-t$^{ern}$ | *to muster* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nĕst, drivᵉn. | i, y mē, chĭn | o sō, gŏne | u brute, fŭlly | ä fätr, mäny | guttural ch ch | palatal ch y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## U, u.—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Kuß | kŭss | *kiss* | Mutter | mŭt'-ᵗᵉr | *mother* |
| Hut | hŭt | *hat* | Schulter | shŭl'-ᵗᵉr | *shoulder* |
| Bruſt | brŭst | *breast* | Ulme | ŭl'-mᵉ | *elm* |
| Huf | hŭf | *hoof* | Buſen | bū'-zᵉn | *bosom* |
| Flur | flūr | *floor* | Fluth | flŭt | *flood* |
| Schule | shū'-lᵉ | *school* | Fuchs | fŭx | *fox* |
| Wunder | vŭn'-dᵉr | *wonder* | Futter | fŭt'-ᵗᵉr | *fodder* |
| wundern | vŭn'-dᵉrn | *to wonder* | Grund | grŭnᵗ | *ground* |
| wundervoll | vŭn'-dᵉr-föllʷ | *wonderful* | grundlos | grŭnᵗ'-lōsʷ | *groundless* |
| Wurm | vŭrm | *worm* | Gruppe | grŭp'-pᵉ | *group* |
| Bruder | brū'-dᵉr | *brother* | hungrig | hŭng'-rĭʸ | *hungry* |
| jung | yŭnᵏ | *young* | Hutform | hŭt'-fōrmʷ | *form of hat, hat-shape* |
| Butter | bŭt'-ᵗᵉr | *butter* | | | |
| Butterbrod | bŭt'-ᵗᵉr-brōtʷ | *bread and butter* | Kluft | klŭft | *cleft* |
| Hunger | hŭng'-ᵉr | *hunger* | Klumpen | klŭm'-pᵉn | *clump, lump* |
| Kupfer | kŭp'-fᵉr | *copper* | Kutſche | kŭt'-shᵉ | *coach* |
| Blut | blŭt | *blood* | Kutſcher | kŭt'-shᵉr | *coach-man* |
| Stuhl | stūl | *chair, seat, stool* | Mumie | mū'-mĭ-ᵉ | *mummy* |
| Buttermilch | bŭt'-ᵗᵉr-milʸʷ | *buttermilk* | Munition | mū-nĭ-tsĭōn' | *munition* |
| hundert | hŭn'-dᵉrt | *hundred* | Muſchel | mŭ'-shᵉl | *muscle shell* |
| ſchlummern | shlŭm'-mᵉrn | *to slumber* | Muſik | mū-zĭk' | *music* |

| ö<br>great, ürge | ü<br>feel, fill | au<br>foul | ei<br>fine | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## U, u.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Muſelmann | mu'-zel-măn" | *Mussulman, Mohammedan* | ſtudieren | stŭ-dē'-ren | *to study* |
| | | | Summe | zŭm'-me | *sum, amount* |
| Muskel | mŭs'-kel | *muscle* | trunken | trŭn'-ken | *drunken, intoxicated* |
| Mutter | mŭt'-ter | *mother* | | | |
| Publicum | pŭb'-li-kŭm | *public* | Tulpe | tŭl'-pe | *tulip* |
| Puppe | pŭp'-pe | *puppet, doll* | Uhr | ur | *watch, clock, hour* |
| Purpur | pŭr'-pŭr | *purple* | unartikuliert | ŭn'-ăr-ti-kū-lērt" | *unarticulated* |
| Ruder | rū'-der | *rudder* [*mage* | unbemerkt | ŭn'-be-mĕrkt" | *unremarked* |
| rumpeln | rŭm'-peln | *to rumble, rum-* | undankbar | ŭn'-dănk-bahr" | *unthankful* |
| Ruthe | rū'-te | *rod, switch* | unendlich | ŭn'-ĕnt"-liy | *unending* |
| Schlummerſaft | shlŭm'-mer-zăft" | *sap or juice of slumber, opiate* | ungehindert | ŭn'-ge-hĭn"-dert | *unhindered* |
| | | | ungemähnt | ŭn'-ge-mâînt" | *unmaned* |
| Schnupftabak | shnŭpf"-tă"-bāk | *snuff, s.-tobacco* | unmaskiert | ŭn'-mäs-kērt" | *unmasked* |
| Schwung | shvŭng | *swing, rotation* | unſtät | ŭn'-stät | *unsteady, restless* |
| Sprung | sprŭng | *spring, leap* | unter | ŭn'-ter | *under* |
| Spur | spūr | *track, vestige, spoor* | unterwegs | ŭn"-ter-vāk s' | *under-way, en route.* |

## Au, au.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pauſe | pou'-ze | *pause* | Fauſt | foust | *fist* |
| braun | broun | *brown* | Maus | mous | *mouse* |
| ſauer | zou'-er | *sour* | Haus | hous | *house* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nēst, drivᵉn | i, ɣ mē, chĭn | o sō, gōne | u brūte, fŭlly | ă fâr, mănу | guttural ch ch | palatal ch y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## Au, au.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| tauſend | tou'-zᵉnᵗ | *thousand* | laut | lout | *loud* |
| blau | blou | *blue* | Auſter | ous'-tᵉr | *oyster* |
| Raum | roum | *room* | Schaufel | shou'-fel | *shovel* |
| Gaumen | gou'-mᵉn | *gum* | Brauer | brou'-ᵉr | *brewer* |
| rauben | rou'-bᵉn | *to rob* | ſaugen | zou'-gᵉn | *to suck* |
| ſchaudern | shou'-dᵉrn | *to shudder* | hauen | hou'-ᵉn | *to hew* |
| rauſchen | rou'-shᵉn | *to rush* | Bauer | bou'-ᵉr | *peasant (boor)* |
| faul | foul | *foul* | Baum | boum | *tree (beam)* |
| grau | grou | *gray* | dauern | dou'-ᵉrn | *to endure* |
| Sau | zou | *sow* | Klaue | klou'-ᵉ | *claw* |
| rauh | rou | *raw (harsh)* | lauern | lou'-ᵉrn | *to lie in wait (to lower, bend)* |
| Laus | lous | *louse* | | | |
| kauern | kou'-ᵉrn | *to cower* | Saum | zoum | *seam, selvage* |
| Schauer | shou'-ᵉr | *shower* | Schau | shou | *show, view* |
| Thau | tou | *thaw* | Schnauze | shnou'-tsᵉ | *snout* |
| thauen | tou'-ᵉn | *to thaw* | tauſendjährig | tou'-zᵉntˢ-yâr"-rĭy | *of a thousand years.* |
| ſchlau | shlou | *sly* | | | |

## Ei, ei.—Ai, ai.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Wein | vĭn | *wine* | heilen | hr'-lᵉn | *to heal* |
| fein | fĭn | *fine* | ſcheinen | shr'-nᵉn | *to shine* |
| meinen | mr'-nᵉn | *to mean* | preiſen | prr'-zᵉn | *to praise* |

| ö<br>gréat, ürge | ü<br>feel, ſtill | au<br>foul | ei<br>ſine | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute,<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## Ei, ei.—Ai, ai.—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bein | bın | *bone* | Kaiſer | kī'-zᵉr | *emperor (Cæsar)* |
| Geiſt | gıst | *ghost* | Maid | mıt | *maid* |
| Geiſterſeher | gıst'-ᵉr-zā"-hᵉr | *ghost-seer* | Freitag | frī'-täk | *Friday* |
| allein | ăl'-lın | *alone* | Seite | zī'-tᵉ | *side* |
| frei | frī | *free* | reiben | rī'-bᵉn | *to rub* |
| Freidenker | frī'-dĕn"-kᵉr | *free-thinker* | bei | bī | *near by, by* |
| Meiſter | mıs'-tᵉr | *master* | einpreſſen | ın'-prĕs"-sᵉn | *to press in* |
| Eis | ıs | *ice* | Feige | fī'-gᵉ | *fig* |
| Mai | mī | *May* | Feind | fınt | *enemy (fiend)* |
| Bai | bī | *bay* | Fleiſch | flısh | *flesh, meat* |
| Heil, heilen | hīl, hī'-lᵉn | *hail, to heal* | fleiſchlos | flısh'-lōs" | *fleshless* |
| Preis | prīs | *price, prize, praise* | Meilenſtein | mī'-lᵉn-stīn" | *mile-stone* |
| Pein | pın | *pain* | Meiſterhand | mī'-stᵉr-hänt" | *master-hand* |
| Feile | fī'-lᵉ | *file* | Preisliſte | prīs'-līs"-tᵉ | *list of prices* |
| Schrein | shrīn | *shrine* | Reihe | rī'-hᵉ | *row* |
| Schleim | shlīm | *slime* | Reim | rīm | *rhyme* |
| Schwein | shvın | *swine* | Reis | rīs | *rice* |
| heim | hīm | *home* | Freiſtaat | frī'-staht" | *free state, republic* |
| meiſt | mīst | *most* | | | |
| Stein | stīn | *stone* | freiwillig | frī'-vĭl"-lĭk | *voluntary (free-willing)* |
| ſchneien | shnī'-ᵉn | *to snow* | | | |

## Ei, ei.—Ai, ai.—Continued.

| German Word. | Pronunciation. | Engl. Translation. | German Word. | Pronunciation. | Engl. Translation. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| heil | hīl | *hale, whole, sound* | steinhart | stīn'-härt | *as hard as stone* |
| heilig | hī'-lĭy | *holy* | Veilchen | fīl'-y$^{e}$n | *violet* |
| heilsam | hīl'-zăm | *wholesome* | Veilchenblau | fīl'-y$^{e}$n-blou$^{"}$ | *violet-blue* |
| Leim | līm | *glue (lime)* | weil | vīl | *while* |
| Lein, Leinen | līn, lī'-n$^{e}$n | *linen, flax* | Weile | vī'-l$^{e}$ | *space of time, while* |
| Meinung | mī'-nŭn$^{k}$ | *meaning* | | | |
| Meile | mī'-l$^{e}$ | *mile* | Weinglas | vīn'-gläs | *wine-glass* |
| mein | mīn | *mine* | weise | vī'-z$^{e}$ | *wise, sage* |
| Reissuppe | rīs'-zŭp$^{"}$-p$^{e}$ | *rice-soup* | Weise | vī'-z$^{e}$ | *wise, mode* |
| Schein | shīn | *shine* | Weisheit | vīs'-hīt | *wisdom* |
| scheinen | shī'-n$^{e}$n | *to shine* | weit | vīt | *wide, large* |
| speien | spī'-$^{e}$n | *to spew, spit* | einst | īnst | *once* |
| steif | stīf | *stiff* | einstweilig | īnst'-vī$^{"}$-lĭy | *for a while, temporary* |
| Steifleinen | stīf'-lī$^{"}$-n$^{e}$n | *stiff linen* | | | |
| Steinbohrer | stīn'-bō$^{"}$-r$^{e}$r | *stone-bore* | Heilung | hī'-lŭn$^{k}$ | *healing, cure.* |

## Eu, eu.—Aeu, äu.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Feuer | foi'-$^{e}$r | *fire* | freundlos | froint'-lōs | *friendless* |
| Feuerbrand | foi'-$^{e}$r-brän$^{t"}$ | *fire-brand* | freundlich | froint'-lĭy | *friendly* |
| Feuerflamme | foi'-$^{e}$r-flăm$^{"}$-m$^{e}$ | *fire-flame* | säumen | zoi'-m$^{e}$n | *to seam* |
| Freund | froin$^{t}$ | *friend* | Räuber | roi'-b$^{e}$r | *robber* |

| ö gréat, ürge | ü fēēl, fĭll | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g ʒ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## Eu, eu.—Aeu, äu.—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Räuberei | roi"-bᵉ-rī' | *robbery* | Europa | oi"-rō'-pah | *Europe* |
| Häuſer | hoi'-zᵉr | *houses* | ſcheu | shoi | *shy* |
| neun | noin | *nine* | beuteluſtig | boi'-tᵉ-lūs"-tĭᵏ | *lusting for booty, craving spoil* |
| neu | noi | *new* | | | |
| heulen | hoi'-lᵉn | *to howl* | Bräutigam | broi'-tĭ-găm" | *bridegroom* |
| Mäuſe | moi'-zᵉ | *mice* | Fäuſte | fois'-tᵉ | *fists* |
| Beule | boi'-lᵉ | *boil* | Feuerwerk | foi'-ᵉr-vĕrk | *fire-work, pyrotechnic composi-* |
| Beute | boi'-tᵉ | *booty* | | | |
| Heu | hoi | *hay* | Freundſchaft | froinᵗ'-shäft | *friendship* [*tion* |
| Bräute | broi'-tᵉ | *brides* | Häute | hoi'-tᵉ | *hides, skins* |
| Räume | roi'-mᵉ | *rooms* | ſäugen | zoi'-gᵉn | *to suckle* |
| treu | troi | *faithful, true* | Säugling | zoig'-lĭnᵏ | *suckling* |
| ſteuern | stoi'-ᵉrn | *to steer* | bräunlich | broin'-lĭʏ | *brownish* |
| ſtreuen | stroi'-ᵉn | *to strew* | unfreundlich | ŭn'-froinᵗ"-lĭʏ | *unfriendly* |
| Eule | oi'-lᵉ | *owl* | Neujahr | noi'-yahr | *new-year.* |

## Ae, ä.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bär | bâr | *bear* | ſtählen | stâ'-lᵉn | *to steel* |
| Fähre | fâ'-rᵉ | *ferry* | ſchäbig | shâ'-bĭʏ | *shabby* |
| Häring | hâ'-rĭnᵏ | *herring* | ſtät | stâ't | *steady* |
| Wäſche | vä'-shᵉ | *wash* | hängen | häng'-ᵉn | *to hang* |
| wägen | vâ'-gᵉn | *to weigh* | fällen | fäl'-lᵉn | *to fell* |

## Ae, ä.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Krähe | krä'-he | *crow* | wärmen | vär'-men | *to warm* |
| Mähne | mä'-ne | *mane* | Wäger | vä'-ger | *weigher* |
| mähen | mä'-hen | *to mow* | flächſen | flä'-xen | *flaxen, linen* |
| Mähre | mä'-re | *mare* | hängen | häng'-en | *to hang* |
| Aehre | ä'-re | *ear (of corn)* | Hängelampe | häng'-e-läm"-pe | *hanging-lamp* |
| Häringsfiſcherei | här'-rinks-fi"-she-ri | *herring-fishery* | gähnen | gä'-nen | *to yawn* |
| lähmen | lä'-men | *to lame* | Bärenhaut | bä'-ren-hout" | *bear's skin, hide* |
| kämmen | käm'-men | *to comb* | | | |
| Lämmchen | läm'-yen | *lambkin* | dämmen | däm'-men | *to dam* |
| Männchen | män'-yen | *manikin* | fälſchlich | fälsh'-liy | *falsely* |
| Käppchen | käp'-yen | *a little cap* | häkeln | hä'-keln | *to hook* |
| ſäen | zä'-en | *to sow* | hämmern | häm'-mern | *to hammer* |
| Mäher | mä'-her | *mower* | Hämmerer | häm'-me-rĕr | *hammerer* |
| Wäſcher | vä'-sher | *washer* | Hände | hän'-de | *hands* |
| Sänger | zäng'-er | *singer* | hären | hä'-ren | *hairy, made of hair* |
| klärlich | klär'-liy | *clearly* | | | |
| krähen | krä'-hen | *to crow* | Bäckerei | bäk'-ke-ri" | *bakery* |
| nämlich | näm'-liy | *namely* | Bälle | bäl'-le | *balls* |
| Wärwolf | vär'-wölf | *were-wolf, man-w. (A. S. ver-man)* | Bänder | bän'-der | *bands, ribbons* |
| | | | Bändchen | bänt'-yen | *bandelet* |
| Päckchen | päk'-yen | *a small packet* | Bärme | bär'-me | *barm, yeast* |

| ö gr**éa**t, ürge | ü f**ée**l, f**ĭ**ll | au foul | ei f**i**ne | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g ſ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## Ae, ä.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Dämon | dâ'-mŏn | *demon* | März | märts | *March* |
| Däniſch | dâ'-nĭsh | *Danish* | Pläne | plâ'-nᵉ | *plans, schemes* |
| Märtyrer | mär'-tᵉ"-rᵉr | *martyr* | Präſident | prä"-zĭ-dᵉnt' | *president* |

## Oe, ö.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Flöte | flêâ'-tᵉ | *flute* | pökeln | pêâ'-kᵉln | *to pickle* |
| ſtrömen | strêâ'-mᵉn | *to stream* | Röschen | rêâs'-yᵉn | *little rose* |
| Hölle | hül'-lᵉ | *hell* | Schwörer | shvêâ'-rᵉr | *swearer* |
| Föhre | fêâ'-rᵉ | *fir* | Ströme | strêâ'-mᵉ | *streams* |
| fördern | für'-dᵉrn | *to further* | porös | pŏ-rêâs' | *porous* |
| König | kêâ'-nĭy | *king* | Böcke | bük'-kᵉ | *bucks* |
| röſten | rêâs'-tᵉn | *to roast* | krönen | krêâ'-nᵉn | *to crown* |
| ſchwören | shvêâ'-rᵉn | *to swear* | hölen | hêâ'-lᵉn | *to hollow* |
| löſen | lêâ'-zᵉn | *to loosen* | Höhle | hêâ'-lᵉ | *hole, cavern* |
| können | kün'-nᵉn | *can* | Flöhe | flêâ'-hᵉ | *fleas* |
| hören | hêâ'-rᵉn | *to hear* | Böhmen | bêâ'-mᵉn | *Bohemia* |
| tönen | têâ'-nᵉn | *to tune* | hölliſch | hül'-lĭsh | *hellish* |
| Mörder | mür'-dᵉr | *murderer* | Höllenfeuer | hül'-lᵉn-foi"-ᵉr | *hell-fire* |
| wölfiſch | vül'-fĭsh | *wolfish* | Förderer | für'-dᵉ-rᵉr | *furtherer* |
| Öl | êal | *oil* | Flötiſt | flêâ-tĭst' | *flutist, flute-player* |
| ölen | êa'-lᵉn | *to oil* | | | |

## Oe, ö.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| höher | héä'-h^er | *higher* | Klöſter | kléäs'-t^er | *cloisters, convents* |
| Hörer | héä'-r^er | *hearer* | klöſterlich | kléäs'-t^er-lïy | *cloisteral* |
| Hörner | hür'-n^er | *horns* | Köhler | kéä'-l^er | *char-coal burner* |
| förmlich | fürm'-lïy | *formal* | | | |
| Förſter | für'-st^er | *forrester, forrest-keeper* | Komödie | kŏméä'-dï-e^y | *comedy* |
| | | | königlich | kéä'-nïy-lïy | *kingly* |
| Fröſte | früs'-t^e | *frosts* | körperlich | kür'-p^er-lïy | *corporeal* |

## Ue, ü.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| fühlen | fée'-l^en | *to feel* | Mühlſtein | méél'-stïn | *mill-stone* |
| grün | gréén | *green* | kühl | kéél | *cool* |
| Küſte | kïs'-t^e | *coast* | Krüppel | krïp'-p^el | *cripple* |
| füllen | fïl'-l^en | *to fill* | Füllen | fïl'-l^en | *filly* |
| Trüffel | trïf'-f^el | *truffle* | küſſen | kïs'-s^en | *to kiss* |
| Bündel | bïn'-d^el | *bundle* | für | féér | *for* |
| Hürde | hïr'-d^e | *hurdle* | prüfen | préé'-f^en | *to prove* |
| plündern | plïn'-d^ern | *to plunder* | lüſtern | lïs'-t^ern | *to lust (after)* |
| Süden | séé'-d^en | *south* | Müller | mïl'-l^er | *miller* |
| Brücke | brïk'-k^e | *bridge* | Plüſch | pléésh | *plush* |
| glühen | gléé'-h^en | *to glow* | Schüler | shéé'-l^er | *scholar* |
| Hütte | hït'-t^e | *hut* | Prüfer | préé'-f^er | *prover, examiner* |
| Mühle | méé'-l^e | *mill* | Büchſe | bï'-x^e | *box* |

| ö<br>gr**ö**at, ürge | ü<br>f**ee**l, f**i**ll | au<br>foul | ei<br>f**i**ne | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## Ue, ü.—Continued.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| düngen | dĭng'-en | *to dung* | Büſche | bĭ'-she | *bushes* |
| Füchſe | fĭ'-xe | *foxes* | Büſte | bēē'-ste | *bust* |
| blühen | blēē'-hen | *to blow, to flower* | Dünen | dēē'-nen | *downs (sandhills along the coast)* |
| Brüder | brēē'-der | *brothers* | | | |
| brüderlich | brēē'-der-lĭy | *brotherly* | kühlen | kēē'-len | *to cool, to refresh* |
| Büffel | bĭf'-fl | *buffalo* | fühllos | fēēl'-lōs | *unfeeling* |
| Büffelhäute | bĭf'-fel-hoi"-te | *buffalo-hides* | Fürſt | fĭrst | *prince (the first)* |
| Bürde | bĭr'-de | *burden* | Grütze | grĭt'-se | *grit, groats* |
| Bürger | bĭr'-ger | (*burgher*) *citizen* | Hütchen | hēēt'-yen | *little hat* |

# CONSONANTS.

## PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

By passing even cursorily over the numerous words brought forward in the preceding Reading Exercises, the learner will easily perceive, that:

1. Many English and German words are perfectly alike in form and pronunciation;

2. Many have the same form but a different pronunciation;

3. Many correspond as to their consonants, but vary in their vowels;

4. Some offer a striking similarity, although neither their consonants nor vowels are the very same;

5. Some consonants are silent in the English, some omitted in the one or the other language;

6. The variations of the vowels are by far greater than those of the consonants.

From this general aspect, we may deduce the following facts

Many German and English words are identical, but many more are only similar, *i. e.* varying in their vowels and interchanging their consonants more or less.

The vowels are in their nature so changeable that their variations cannot be brought under special rules, but it may be remarked simply, that concerning a and o both languages correspond in many cases, as: *land*, Land; *God*, Gott. With regard to the others we can state in general, that the *clear vowels* answer in English mostly to the broad and flat in German and conversely.

As to the *Consonants*, the relation existing between the English and German may be correctly expressed as follows:

*The Consonants of High German are generally advanced into the next stage.*

As the learner in general cannot be expected to understand this, thus briefly expressed but most important fact, he is recommended to give his close attention to the following statements:

1. The consonants are classified according to the organ by which they are sounded:

*a.* ***Lipsounds*** (Labials): p, b, w, f (v).
*b.* ***Toothsounds*** (Dentals): t, d, s, ß, z.
*c.* ***Throatsounds*** (Gutturals): k, g, j, ch, h.

2. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit.

If in the production of the Consonant the mouth is completely closed, so that the breath is stopped, as is the case with g, k, b, t, d, z, they are called **Mutes** or **Checks.**

If, in the pronunciation of the Consonant, the organs only approach, without touching each other, so that there is no stopping of the vocal breath, the consonant is uninterrupted and is termed a **Spirant,** as w, f (v), s (ſſ), ß, j, ch, sch.

The consonants l, m, n, r, inasmuch as they can be made to sound continuously, are called **Liquids.**

The mutes are pronounced either soft, hard, or aspirated, so that the following summary results:

| | *Soft.* | *Hard.* | *Aspirated.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Lipsounds:* | b | p | f (ph, v) |
| *Toothsounds:* | d | t | (ß, z) |
| *Throatsounds:* | g | k | ch (h). |

**Grimm's Law**

is, that the consonants in passing from one group of languages to another, belonging to the same family, advance, as we have said, into the next stage; that is to say, that where in the Classical Languages (Sanscrit, Greek and Latin) there is the aspirated pronunciation, we find the soft in the Gothic or Low German group (including the English), and the hard pronunciation in the High German; and again where the classical languages have the soft pronunciation, the Gothic group have the hard, and the High German the aspirated; and thirdly, a hard pronunciation in the classical group passes into the aspirated in the Gothic, and the soft in the High German.

It is, as it were, a circular permutation:

Aspirate, Soft, Hard=ASH
Soft, Hard, Aspirate=SHA
Hard, Aspirate, Soft=HAS.

This law appears most clearly in the Anlaut[ăn'-lout], *the initial sound,* less so in the Inlaut[in'-lout], *the sound in the interior of a word,* and least of all in the Auslaut[ous'-lout], *the final sound, e. g.*

## LIPSOUNDS.

| *Greek.* | *Latin.* | *Gothic.* | *English.* | *ahd.** | *nhd.** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| pater | pater | fador | father | fatar | Vater |
| alopex | vulpes | vulfs | wolf | wolf | Wolf |
| phegos | fagos | boka | beech | puocha | Buche |
| 'uper | super | ufar | over | ubar | über |
| | labi | hlaupan | leap | loufan | laufen |
| | frangere | brikan | break | prechan | brechen |
| | frater | brothar | brother | pruodar | Bruder |
| | piscis | fisks | fish | fisc | Fiſch |

## TOOTHSOUNDS.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| deca | decem | taihun | ten | zehan | zehn |
| treis | tres | threis | three | dri | drei |
| | edere | itan | eat | ezan | eſſen |
| thygater | | dauhtar | daughter | tohtar | Tochter |
| 'edos | sedes | sitan | seat | sizan | ſitzen |
| doman | domare | tamjan | tame | zeman | zähmen |
| duo | duo | tva | two | zwei | zwei |
| thura | | dauro | door | turi | T(h)or |

## THROATSOUNDS.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| gony | genu | kniu | knee | chniu | Knie |
| agros | ager | akrs | acre | achar | Acker |
| zygon | jugum | juk | yoke | joh | Joch |
| kyon | canis | hunds | hound | hunt | Hund |
| chortos | hortus | gards | garden | karto | Garten |
| keras | cornu | haurn | horn | horn | Horn |
| ego | ego | ik | I (A. S. ic) | ih | ich |
| | gelidus | kalds | cold | chalt | kalt |

This tabulated arrangement shows some gaps, from which it follows, that the law is not without some irregularities in particulars. They occur most frequently in the *nhd.*, which often has remained stationary upon the stage of the Gothic, hence so many English and German words are entirely alike. At any rate the above survey shows, that sounds of the same organ and belonging to the same stage of articulation interchange, which can the more easily be understood, as nations, like children, are prone to replace sounds difficult or inconvenient to them by others of the same organ, for which the various dialects and the language of children furnish multifarious examples. Compare: Cherry, *A. S.* cirse, *ohd.* kirsa, *nhd.* Kirſche; fish, *A. S.* fisc, *mhd.* visch, *nhd.* Fiſch.

*These abbreviations will be used throughout the work for *Old High German* (Alt-Hoch-Deutſch), and *Modern High German* (Neu-Hoch-Deutſch).

# READING EXERCISES,

*PRESENTING AT THE SAME TIME A*

## "TABULAR VIEW"

*of dialectical differences and the changes which the German Words have undergone.*



### Lipsounds.

For the German hard **p**, the English soft **b**; for the German soft **b**, the English aspir. **f**, **v**; for the German aspir. **f**, **pf**, the English hard **p**.

1. German **p**=English **b**:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Polſter | pöls'-ter | *bolster* |
| Stoppel | stŏp'-pel | *stubble* |
| Rippe | rĭp'-pe | *rib* |
| Krippe | krĭp'-pe | *crib* |
| plappern | plăp'-pern | *to blab* |
| poltern | pöl'-tern | *to bolt* |
| doppelt | dŏp -pelt | *double* |
| pappeln | păp'-peln | *to babble.* |

2. German **pf**=English **p**:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Pfuhl | pfûl | *pool* |
| Pfühl | pfēēl | *pillow* |
| pflücken | pflĭk'-ken | *to pluck* |
| Pfanne | pfăn'-ne | *pan* |
| Pfeiler | pfī'-ler | *pillar* |
| Pflaſter | pflăs'-ter | *plaster* |
| Pflaume | pflou'-me | *plum* |
| pflügen | pflēē'-gen | *to plough* |
| Dampf | dămpf | *damp* |
| ſtampfen | stăm'-pfen | *to stamp* |
| Hopfen | hŏ'-pfen | *hops* |
| Apfel | ă'-pfel | *apple.* |

## Lipsounds.—CONTINUED.

### 3. German f=English p:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Schlaf | shlahf | *sleep* |
| Seife | zī'-fe | *soap* |
| Saft | zäft | *sap* |
| Haufen | hou'-fᵉn | *heap* |
| Streifen | strī'-fᵉn | *stripe* |
| Hüfte | hĭf'-te | *hip* |
| Schaf | shahf | *sheep* |
| auf | ouf | *up.* |

### 4. German f, ff=English p, pp:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pfeffer | pfĕf'-fer | *pepper* |
| ſchiffen | shĭf'-fᵉn | *to ship* |
| hoffen | hŏf'-fᵉn | *to hope* |
| Waffe | väf'-fe | *weapon* |
| Affe | äf'-fe | *ape* |
| öffnen | üf'-nᵉn | *to open* |
| gaffen | gäf'-fᵉn | *to gape.* |

### 5. German b, b=English f, ff:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Laib | lĭf | *loaf* |
| halb | hälf | *half* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Stab | stahf | *staff* |
| ab | äf | *off* |
| ſchnauben | shnou'-bᵉn | *to sniff* |
| Weib | vīf | *wife* |
| Leben | lā'-bᵉn | *life* |
| Kalb | kälf | *calf* |
| ob | ŏf | *if* |
| rauben | rou'-bᵉn | *to rifle* |
| Vater | fah'-tᵉr | *father* |
| voll | fŏl | *full* |
| Volk (Leute) | fŏlk (loi'-te) | *folk (folks)* |
| vier | fēr | *four.* |

### 6. German b=English v, w:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Bieber | bē'-bᵉr | *beaver* |
| Grab | grāf | *grave* |
| eben | ā'-bᵉn | *even* |
| übel | ēē'-bᵉl | *evil* |
| haben | hah'-bᵉn | *to have* |
| Herbſt | hĕrfst | *harvest* |
| Leber | lā'-bᵉr | *liver* |
| Nabel | nah'-bᵉl | *navel* |

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu | hard g | hard b | h, almost mute, | French g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| gr**ö**at, ürge | f**ü**el, f**ü**ll | foul | fine | coin | coin | k | p | h | g |

**Lipsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Sieb | zēᵖ | *sieve* |
| ſieben | zē′-bᵉn | *seven* |
| ſchaben | shah′-bᵉn | *to shave* |
| ober, über | ō′-bᵉr, ēē′-bᵉr | *over* |
| Rabe | rah′-bᵉ | *raven* |
| falb | fälᵖ | *fallow* |
| Habicht | hah′-blʏt | *hawk* |
| gelb | gĕlᵖ | *yellow* |
| ſchrauben | shrou′-bᵉn | *to screw* |
| Schwalbe | shvăl′-bᵉ | *swallow.* |

7. German **f, v**=English **v, b**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ofen | ō′-fᵉn | *oven* |
| elf | ĕlf | *eleven* |
| Schaufel | shou′-fᵉl | *shovel* |
| Hafen | hah′-fᵉn | *haven* |
| Firniß | fĭr′-nĭs | *varnish* |
| Füchſin | fĭ′-xĭn | *vixen* |
| Weſte | vĕs′-tᵉ | *vest* |
| Wanne | văn′-nᵉ | *van* |
| wetten | vĕt′-tᵉn | *to bet* |
| Welle | vĕl′-lᵉ | *billow* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Tafel | tah′-fel | *table* |
| treffen | trĕfᵖ-ſen | *to drub (to hit upon, to strike).* |

**Toothsounds.**

For the German hard **t**, the English soft **d, dd**; for the German soft **d**, the English aspir. **th**; for the German aspir. **z, tz**, the English hard **t**; for the German aspir. **f, ff, ſſ**, the English hard **t, tt.**

8. German **z, tz**=English **t, tt:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Zähre | tsâĭ′-rᵉ | *tear* |
| Zinn | tsĭn | *tin* |
| zahm | tsahn | *tame* |
| zehn | tsân | *ten* |
| zünden | tsĭn′-dᵉn | *to tind* |
| Zunder | tsün′-dᵉr | *tinder* |
| zu | tsû | *to* |
| Zoll | tsöl | *toll* |
| Zunge | tsüng′-ᵉ | *tongue* |
| zwei | tsvĭ | *two* |
| Zweig | tsvĭᵏ | *twig* |

**Toothsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| zwölf | tsvülf | *twelve* |
| Zuber | tsū'-b$^{e}$r | *tub* |
| Zehe | tsā'-h$^{e}$ | *toe* |
| zwanzig | tsvăn'-ts$^{i}$y | *twenty* |
| zählen, erzählen | tsäẗ'-l$^{e}$n, ĕr-tsäẗ'-[l$^{e}$n | *to tell* |
| Katze | kăt'-s$^{e}$ | *cat* |
| Filz | fĭlts | *felt* |
| schlitzen | shlĭ'-ts$^{e}$n | *to slĭt* |
| schmelzen | shmĕl'-ts$^{e}$n | *to smelt* |
| sitzen | zĭ'-ts$^{e}$n | *to sit* |
| Witz | vĭts | *wit* |
| Grütze | grĭ'-ts$^{e}$ | *grit* |
| Milz | mĭlts | *milt* |
| Netz | nĕts | *net* |
| Salz | zälts | *salt* |
| grunzen | grŭn'-ts$^{e}$n | *to grunt* |
| wetzen | vĕ'-ts$^{e}$n | *to whet* |
| Schnauze | shnou'-ts$^{e}$ | *snout* |
| Warze | văr'-ts$^{e}$ | *wart* |
| Hitze | hĭ'-ts$^{e}$ | *heat* |
| Zucker | tsŭk'-k$^{e}$r | *sugar* |
| Zobel | tsō'-b$^{e}$l | *sable.* |

9. German **d, dd**=English **th:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Bruder | brū'-d$^{e}$r | *brother* |
| Leder | lā'-d$^{e}$r | *leather* |
| Würde | vĭr'-d$^{e}$ | *worth* |
| Nord | nörd | *north* |
| Schmied | shmēd | *smith* |
| Schwaden | shvah'-d$^{e}$n | *swath* |
| Eid | īt | *oath* |
| Erde | är'-d$^{e}$ | *earth* |
| baden | bah'-d$^{e}$n | *to bathe* |
| Herd | härd | *hearth* |
| Scheide | shī'-d$^{e}$ | *sheath* |
| Weide | vī'-d$^{e}$ | *withe* |
| Heide | hī'-d$^{e}$ | *heathen* |
| fürder | fĭr'-d$^{e}$r | *further* |
| beide | bī'-d$^{e}$ | *both* |
| Bude | bū'-d$^{e}$ | *booth* |
| Pfad | pfahd | *path* |
| Bad | bät | *bath* |
| Süden | sēē'-d$^{e}$n | *south* |
| Donner | dön'-n$^{e}$r | *thunder.* |

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu | hard g | hard b | h, almost mute, | French g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| gr*e*at, ürge | f*ee*l, f*i*ll | foul | f*i*ne | coin | coin | k | p | h | g |

**Toothsounds.**—CONTINUED.

10. German **s, ff, ß**=English **t, tt:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation* |
|---|---|---|
| Loos | lōs | *lot* |
| aus | ous | *out* |
| das | dăs | *that* |
| heiß | hīs | *hot* |
| Neſſel | nĕs′-sel | *nettle* |
| beſſer | bĕs′-ser | *better* |
| Fuß | fūs | *foot* |
| haſſen | hăs′-sen | *to hate* |
| grüßen | grē′-sen | *to greet* |
| groß | grōs | *great* |
| beißen | bī′-sen | *to bite* |
| Keſſel | kĕs′-sel | *kettle* |
| Nuß | nūs | *nut* |
| eſſen | ĕs′-sen | *to eat* |
| es | ĕs | *it* |
| Geis | gīs | *goat* |
| Biſſen | bīs′-sen | *bit* |
| ſprießen | sprē′-sen | *to sprout* |
| ſchmeißen | shmī′-sen | *to smite* |
| flößen | flē′-sen | *to float* |
| Schuß | shūs | *shot* |
| Horniß | hŏr′-nīs | *hornet* |
| raſſeln | răs′-seln | *to rattle* |
| Waſſer | văs′-ser | *water* |
| Hirſch | hīrsh | *hart* |
| weiß | vīs | *white* |
| Straße | strah′-se | *street.* |

11. German **t, tt**=English **d, dd, th:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Teufel | toi′-fel | *devil* |
| trommeln | trŏm′-meln | *to drum* |
| trank | trănk | *drank* |
| Traum | troum | *dream* |
| trinken | trĭn′-ken | *to drink* |
| Taube | tou′-be | *dove* |
| tanzen | tăn′-tsen | *to dance* |
| tief | tēf | *deep* |
| Tod | tōt | *death* |
| taub | toup | *deaf* |
| tropfen | trŏ′-pfen | *to drop* |
| treten | trā′-ten | *to tread* |

**Toothsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| weit | vīt | *wide* |
| unter | ŭn'-ter | *under* |
| Wort | vŏrt | *word* |
| Schatten | shăt'-ten | *shade* |
| Spaten | spah'-ten | *spade* |
| Seite | zī'-te | *side* |
| Schulter | shŭl'-ter | *shoulder* |
| Garten | gär'-ten | *garden* |
| Sattel | zät'-tel | *saddle* |
| Futter | fŭt'-ter | *fodder* |
| alt | ält | *old* |
| älter | äl'-ter | *older* |
| laut | lout | *loud* |
| breit | brīt | *broad* |
| Blut | blūt | *blood* |
| Gott | gŏt | *God* |
| Bett | bĕt | *bed* |
| hart | härt | *hard* |
| brüten | brēē'-ten | *to breea* |
| Blatter | blät'-ter | *bladder* |
| Braut | brout | *bride* |
| gleiten | glī'-ten | *to glide* |
| halten | häl'-ten | *to hold* |
| tausend | tou'-zent | *thousand* |
| fort | fōrt | *forth* |
| Monat | mō'-nät | *month* |
| Motte | mŏt'-te | *moth* |
| Wetter | vĕt'-ter | *weather.* |

12. German **Sch, ſch**=English **Sh, sh:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Schulter | shŭl'-ter | *shoulder* |
| Schindel | shĭn'-del | *shindle, shingle* |
| ſchießen | shē'-sen | *to shoot* |
| Schein | shīn | *shine* |
| Schild | shīlt | *shield* |
| ſchieben | shē'-ben | *to shove* |
| Schaufel | shou'-fel | *shovel* |
| Scham | shahm | *shame* |
| ſcheeren | shä'-ren | *to shear* |
| Schale | shah'-le | *shell* |
| ſchier | shēr | *sheer* |
| Schenkel | shĕn'-kel | *shank* |
| Scheibe | shī'-be | *sheave* |

| ö | ü | au | ei | eu | äu | hard g | hard b | h, almost mute, | French g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| great, ürge | feel, fill | foul | fine | coin | coin | k | p | h | g |

**Toothsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Eſche | ĕ'-she | *ash* |
| dreſchen | drĕ'-shen | *to thrash, thresh* |
| Aſche | ă'-she | *ashes* |
| fiſchen | fĭ'-shen | *to fish* |
| Maſche | mă'-she | *mash, mesh* |
| friſch | frĭsh | *fresh* |
| maiſchen | mĭ'-shen | *to mash.* |

13. German **Sch**=English **S**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Schmied | shmēt | *smith* |
| Schnauze | shnou'-tse | *snout* |
| ſchlitzen | shlĭ'-tsen | *to slit* |
| ſchmelzen | shmĕl'-tsen | *to smelt* |
| ſchlafen | shlah'-fen | *to sleep* |
| Schwaden | shvah'-den | *to swath* |
| Schleim | shlīm | *slime* |
| Schlinge | shlĭng'-e | *sling* |
| ſchmieren | shmē'-ren | *to smear* |
| Schnepfe | shnĕ'-pfe | *snipe* |
| Schleuſe | shloi'-ze | *sluice* |
| ſchwören | shvēā'-ren | *to swear* |
| ſchwellen | shvĕl'-len | *to swell* |
| ſchwärmen | shvär'-men | *to swarm* |
| Schwan | shvahn | *swan* |
| ſchnupfen | shnŭ'-pfen | *to snuff* |
| ſchwitzen | shvĭ'-tsen | *to sweat* |
| Schwein | shvīn | *swine* |
| Schwalbe | shväl'-be | *swallow* |
| Schwindel | shvĭn'-del | *swindle* |
| ſchlau | shlou | *sly* |
| ſchnüffeln | shnĭf'-feln | *to sniff* |
| ſchlüpfen | shlĭ'-pfen | *to slip* |
| ſchwamm | shvăm | *swam, swum.* |

14. German **Sch, ſch**=English **sk, sch, sc**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Schule | shū'-le | *school* |
| Schaum | shoum | *scum* |
| Schärpe | shär'-pe | *scarf* |
| Flaſche | flă'-she | *flask* |
| ſcheuern | shoi'-ern | *to scour* |
| ſchelten | shĕl'-ten | *to scold* |
| Schorf | shörf | *scurf* |
| Schafot | shă-fōt' | *scaffold* |
| Schiffer | shĭf'-fer | *skipper* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nēst, driv-n | i, y mē, chĭn | o sō, gōne | u brūte, fūlly | ä fâ̈r, mäny | guttural ch ch | palatal ch y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Toothsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Schanze | shän'-ts-e | *sconce* |
| ſchöpfen | shü'-pf-en | *to scoop* |
| Schwadron | shvăd-rōn' | *squadron* |
| wiſchen | vĭ'-sh-en | *to whisk* |
| Schale | shah'-l-e | *scale* |
| ſchrubben | shrŭb'-b-en | *to scrub.* |

**Throatsounds.**

| *Tenues.* | *Aspiratæ.* | *Mediæ.* |
|---|---|---|
| k, (c) | ch, h, j | g. |

15. German k=English **ch, g:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Kanal | kă-nahl' | *channel* |
| kauen | kou'-en | *to chew* |
| Kinn | kĭn | *chin* |
| kühl | kēēl | *chill* |
| Käſe | kâ̈'-z-e | *cheese* |
| Käfer | kâ̈'-f-er | *chafer* |
| zwicken | tsvĭk'-k-en | *to twitch* |
| ſtärken | stär'-k-en | *to starch* |
| ſtrecken | strĕk'-k-en | *to stretch* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Krücke | krĭk'-k-e | *crutch* |
| Birke | bĭr'-k-e | *birch* |
| Bank | bănk | *bench* |
| Fink | fĭnk | *finch* |
| Hacke | hăk'-k-e | *hatchet* |
| kieſen | kē'-z-en | *to choose* |
| kichern | kĭ'-y-ern | *to giggle* |
| kratzen | krät'-s-en | *to grate* |
| knurren | knŭr'-r-en | *to gnarl.* |

16. German ch=English **k, ck:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sichel | zĭ'-y-el | *sickle* |
| Storch | stŏry | *stork* |
| Woche | vŏ'-che | *week* |
| Joch | yŏch | *yoke* |
| ſuchen | zū'-chen | *to seek* |
| Milch | mĭly | *milk* |
| Lerche | lĕr'-y-e | *lark* |
| ſiech | zēy | *sick* |
| Eiche | ī'-y-e | *oak* |
| Rechen | rē'-y-en | *rake* |
| Buch | bū̆ch | *book* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Throatsounds.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Sache | zä'-che | *sake* |
| brechen | brĕ'-yen | *to break* |
| Kuchen | kū'-chen | *cake* |
| ſtreichen | ſtrī'-yen | *to strike* |
| kochen | kŏ'-chen | *to cook* |
| machen | mä'-chen | *to make* |
| horchen | hŏr'-yen | *to hearken* |
| wachen | vä'-chen | *to wake* |
| hecheln | hĕ'-yeln | *to hackle* |
| Lauch | louch | *leek.* |

17. German ch=English **ch** and **tch**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Küche | kī'-ye | *kitchen* |
| ſtechen | ſtĕ'-yen | *to stitch* |
| wachen | vä'-chen | *to watch* |
| Pech | pĕy | *pitch* |
| reich | rīy | *rich* |
| reichen | rī'-yen | *to reach* |
| Buche | bū'-che | *beech* |
| kriechen | krē'-yen | *to crouch* |
| Kirche | kĭr'-ye | *church.* |

18. German ch, h=English **gh**:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Recht | rĕyt | *right* |
| Schlauch | slouch | *slough* |
| Nacht | nächt | *night* |
| dicht | dĭyt | *tight* |
| hoch | hŏch | *high* |
| Macht | mächt | *might* |
| Tochter | tŏch'-ter | *daughter* |
| lachen | lä'-chen | *to laugh* |
| fechten | fĕy'-ten | *to fight* |
| leicht | līyt | *light* |
| Licht | līyt | *light* |
| ſchlachten | shläch'-ten | *to slaughter* |
| Wicht | vĭyt | *wight* |
| Fracht | frächt | *freight* |
| rauh | rou | *rough* |
| nahe | nah'-he | *nigh* |
| zäh, zähe | tsâĭ, tsâĭ'-he | *tough* |
| doch | dŏy | *though* |
| Gelächter | ge-läch'-ter | *laughter.* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nēst, drivᵉn | i, ŷ mē, chĭn | o sō, gōne | u brūte, fūlly | ă fâr, măny | guttural ḡ ch | palatal ḡ y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Throatsounds.**—CONTINUED.

19. German **j**, **g**=English **y**:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Jahr | yahr | *year* |
| jung | yŭnᵏ | *young* |
| Joch | yŏchˢ | *yoke* |
| ja | yah | *yea, yes* |
| jener | yā′-nᵉr | *yon* |
| Garn | gärn | *yarn* |
| begehren | beᵉ-gā′-rᵉn | *to yearn* |
| gellen | gĕl′-lᵉn | *to yell* |
| gelb | gĕlᵇ | *yellow* |
| gähnen | gâ′-nᵉn | *to yawn* |
| gestern | gĕs′-tᵉrn | *yester (day).* |

20. German **g**, **ig**, **ch** softened to **y**, **i**, **e**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Honig | hō′-nĭᵏ | *honey* |
| Pfennig | pfĕn′-nĭᵏ | *penny* |
| manch | mănʸ | *many* |
| Auge | ou′-gᵉ | *eye* |
| fliegen | flē′-gᵉn | *to fly* |
| Fliege | flē′-gᵉ | *fly* |
| hastig | hăs′-tĭᵏ | *hasty* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| stätig | stâ′-tĭᵏ | *steady* |
| glasig | glah′-zĭᵏ | *glassy* |
| lässig | lăs′-sĭᵏ | *lazy* |
| Felge | fĕl′-gᵉ | *felly* |
| Flegel | flā′-gᵉl | *flail* |
| hageln | hah′-gᵉln | *to hail* |
| Hagel | hah′-gᵉl | *hail* |
| Hügel | hēē′-gᵉl | *hill* |
| Magd | măgᵗ | *maid* |
| Nagel | nah′-gᵉl | *nail* |
| regnen | rāg′-nᵉn | *to rain* |
| Regen | rā′-gᵉn | *rain* |
| Segel | zā′-gᵉl | *sail* |
| Weg | vāᵏ | *way* |
| Riegel | rē′-gᵉl | *rail* |
| sagte | zahᵏ′-tᵉ | *said* |
| siegeln | zē′-gᵉln | *to seal* |
| legte | lāᵏ′-tᵉ | *laid* |
| Kegel | kā′-gᵉl | *kayle* |
| mag | măᵏ | *may* |
| nageln | nah′-gᵉln | *to nail.* |

| ö<br>gr**ö**at, ürge | ü<br>f**ee**l, f**i**ll | au<br>foul | ei<br>f**i**ne | eu<br>coin | äu<br>coin | hard g<br>k | hard b<br>p | h, almost mute,<br>h | French g<br>g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Throatsounds.**—CONTINUED.

21. German **g, ch, f** softened to **gh, w, ow:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Sorge | zŏr'-g$^{e}$ | *sorrow* |
| Morgen | mŏr'-g$^{e}$n | *morrow* |
| folgen | fŏl'-g$^{e}$n | *to follow* |
| genug | g$^{e}$-nūk | *enough* |
| pflügen | pflēē'-g$^{e}$n | *to plough* |
| Pflug | pflūk | *plough* |
| Trog | trŏk | *trough* |
| Teig | tīk | *dough* |
| wägen | vâ'-g$^{e}$n | *to weigh* |
| heiligen | hī'-lī-g$^{e}$n | *to hallow* |
| eigen | ī'-g$^{e}$n | *own* |
| Talg | tălk | *tallow* |
| Mark | märk | *marrow* |
| Galgen | găl'-g$^{e}$n | *gallows* |
| borgen | bŏr'-g$^{e}$n | *to borrow* |
| beugen | boi'-g$^{e}$n | *to bow* |
| ſägen | zâ'-g$^{e}$n | *to saw* |
| Säge | zâ'-g$^{e}$ | *saw* |
| tagen | tah'-g$^{e}$n | *to dawn* |
| nagen | nah'-g$^{e}$n | *to gnaw* |
| Furche | fūr'-y$^{e}$ | *furrow* |
| harken | hăr'-k$^{e}$n | *to harrow* |
| Ferkel | fĕr'-k$^{e}$l | *farrow* |
| flog | flōk | *flew* |
| Hag | hahk | *haw* |
| erſchlug | $^{e}$r-shlūk | *slew.* |

**Liquids.—L, M, N, R.**

22. The Liquids sometimes interchange with each other:

*a.* German **n** with English **l, m, r:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Stengel | stĕng'-$^{e}$l | *stalk* |
| Kind | kīnt | *child* |
| Hanf | hănf | *hemp* |
| Buſen | bū'-z$^{e}$n | *bosom* |
| ſelten | zĕl'-t$^{e}$n | *seldom* |
| morden | mŏr'-d$^{e}$n | *to murder* |
| unten | ŭn'-t$^{e}$n | *under* |
| ordnen | ŏrd'-n$^{e}$n | *to order.* |

*b.* German **l** with English **n** and **r:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Zelt | tsĕlt | *tent* |
| Zwilling | tsvĭl'-lĭng | *twin* |
| ſtammeln | stăm'-m$^{e}$ln | *to stammer* |

**Liquids.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Degen | dā'-g-n | *dagger* |
| Säbel | zā'-bel | *sabre* |
| Feſſel | fĕs'-sel | *fetter* |
| Kümmel | kĭm'-mel | *cummin* |
| Mörtel | mür'-tel | *mortar* |
| Pappel | păp'-pel | *poplar* |
| Waffel | văf'-fel | *wafer* |
| Sperling | spĕr'-lĭn[k] | *sparrow.* |

23. **r** closely allied to **ſ, ȝ:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| frieren | frē'-r-n | *to freeze* |
| fror | frōr | *froze* |
| gefroren | g-e-frō'-r-n | *frozen* |
| verlieren | f-er-lē'-r-n | *to lose* |
| war | vahr | *was* |
| küren, erkieſen | kēē'-r-n, -er-kē'-z-n | *to choose* |
| erkoren | -er-kō'-r-n | *chosen* |
| Eiſen | ī'-z-n | *iron* |
| Haſe | hah'-z- | *hare* |
| hieſig | hē'-zĭy | *of this place (from hier, for hierig)* |
| Beſen | bā'-z-n | *broom.* |

Besides the changes of permutation coming under *Grimm's Law*, others are observed, which take place for the sake of euphony, to prevent the concurrence of sounds of difficult pronunciation. These different changes of which the sounds are susceptible are: REJECTION, INSERTION, TRANSPOSITION.

*Rejection.*—Unaccented syllables easily drop off; thus the participial and generalizing prefix **ge**, by which the past participle of the oldest English was preceded, dwindled down to **y**, **i**, and was ultimately dropped.

24. **g, ge** disappear in English.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Glück (Ge-lück) | glĭk | *luck* |
| gleich (ge-leich) | glĭy | *like* |
| genug | g-e-nūk | *enough* |
| Gelenk (Ge-lenk) | g-e-lĕnk | *link* |
| gemein | g-e-mĭn | *mean* |
| Geſicht (Ge-ſicht) | g-e-zĭyt | *sight* |
| Glied (Ge-lied) | glēt | *limb, member (O. E. lith)* |
| gehört (ge-hört) | g-e-hēârt | *heard* |
| geküßt (ge-küßt) | g-e-kĭst | *kissed* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Liquids.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| geſungen (ge-ſun- | ge-züng'-en | *sung* |
| gelernt [gen) | ge-lĕrnt | *learned* |
| getrunken | ge-trün'-ken | *drunk* |
| getanzt | ge-tănst | *danced* |
| geſtohlen | ge-stō'-len | *stolen* |
| gewispert | ge-vĭs'-pert | *whispered* |
| geſponnen | ge-spŏn'-nen | *spun* |
| geſchworen | ge-shvō'-ren | *sworn* |
| gepreßt | ge-prĕst | *pressed* |
| gemißt | ge-mĭst | *missed* |
| gebracht | ge-brächt | *brought* |
| geraubt | ge-roupt | *robbed* |
| gefüllt | ge-fĭlt | *filled* |
| geſehen | ge-zā'-hen | *seen* |
| gehofft | ge-höfft | *hoped* |
| gegeben | ge-gā'-ben | *given* |
| geliebt | ge-lēpt | *loved* |
| gebrochen | ge-brō'-yen | *broken* |
| gewinnen | ge-vĭn'-nen | *to win* |
| gewonnen | ge-vŏn'-nen | *won* |
| geſprungen | ge-sprŭng'-en | *sprung* |
| gelebt | ge-lāpt | *lived.* |

25. The infinitive termination **en** generally disappeared toward the end of the Fourteenth Century:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| bringen | bring'-en | *to bring* |
| ſingen | zĭng'-en | *to sing* |
| plündern | plĭn'-dern | *to plunder* |
| küſſen | kĭs'-sen | *to kiss* |
| wandern | văn'-dern | *to wander* |
| brechen | brĕ'-yen | *to break* |
| leben | lā'-ben | *to live* |
| lieben | lē'-ben | *to love* |
| ſchwingen | shvĭng'-en | *to swing* |
| machen | mă'-chen | *to make* |
| treiben | trī'-ben | *to drive* |
| denken | dĕn'-ken | *to think* |
| packen | păk'-ken | *to pack* |
| raſſeln | răs'-seln | *to rattle* |
| rauben | rou'-ben | *to rob* |
| hören | hēā'-ren | *to hear* |
| feſſeln | fĕs'-seln | *to fetter* |
| fördern | für'-dern | *to further* |
| halten | hăl'-ten | *to hold* |

| a ah, shärp | e cāke, nēst, driven. | i, y mē, chīn | o sō, gōne | u brūte, fūlly | ä fär, mäny | guttural ch ch | palatal ch y | hard d t |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Rejection.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| haſſen | hăs'-sen | *to hate* | Wunſch | vŭnsh | *wish* |
| hauen | hou'-en | *to hew* | fern | fĕrn | *far* |
| häufen | hoi'-fen | *to heap* | vorn | fôrn | *fore* |
| koſten | kŏs'-ten | *to cost* | mein | mīn | *my* |
| melken | mĕl'-ken | *to milk* | nein | nīn | *no* |
| heizen | hī'-tsen | *to heat* | nun | nŭn | *now* |
| fallen | făl'-len | *to fall* | Haken | hah'-ken | *hook* |
| fällen | fäl'-len | *to fell, to make fall.* | Gaumen | gou'-men | *gum* |

26. The n disappears in English:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Biene | bē'-ne | *bee* | Karpfen | kärp'-fen | *carp* |
| Spinne | spĭn'-ne | *spider (for spinder, from spin)* | Fohlen | fō'-len | *foal* |
| | | | Nacken | näk'-ken | *neck* |
| Zahn (mhd. zant) | tsahn | *tooth* | Hopfen | hŏp'-fen | *hop* |
| Gans | găns | *goose* | Klumpen | klŭm'-pen | *clump* |
| Mund | mŭnt | *mouth* | Haufen | hou'-fen | *heap* |
| fünf | fĭnf | *five* | Birne | bĭr'-ne | *pear* |
| ſanft | zănft | *soft* | Stern | stĕrn | *star* |
| ander | ăn'-der | *other* | Schatten | shät'-ten | *shade* |
| uns | ŭns | *us* | Schlitten | shlĭt'-ten | *sled, sledge* |
| unſer | ŭn'-zer | *our* | Oſten | ōs'-ten | *east* |
| wünſchen | vĭn'-shen | *to wish* | Weſten | vĕs'-ten | *west* |
| | | | backen | bäk'-ken | *to bake.* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Rejection.**—CONTINUED.

27. l is wanting in English :

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Trommel | tröm'-mel | *drum* |
| Stempel | stĕm'-pel | *stamp* |
| Eſel | ā'-zel | *ass* |
| als | ăls | *as* |
| ſolch | zölch | *such* |
| welch | vělch | *which* |
| Wald | vălt | *wood* |
| Dohle | dō'-le | *daw* |
| Raſpel | räs'-pel | *rasp* |
| Droſſel | drös'-sel | *thrush* |
| Zipfel | tsĭp'-fel | *tip* |
| duſeln | dū'-zeln | *to doze* |
| Sprenkel | sprĕn'-kel | *springe.* |

28. r is wanting in English :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Futter | fŭt'-ter | *feed, food* |
| er | ār | *he* |
| mir | mēr | *me* |
| Prieſter | prēs'-ter | *priest* |
| Schrot | shrōt | *shot* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſprechen | sprĕ'-yen | *to speak* |
| Sprache | sprah'-ye | *speech* |
| der | dār | *the* |
| dir | dēr | *thee* |
| warten | vär'-ten | *to wait* |
| wir | vēr | *we* |
| ihr (*plur.*) | ēr | *you, ye* |
| wer | vār | *who* |
| Zwirn | tsvīrn | *twine* |
| Pfirſich | pfĭr'-sĭy | *peach.* |

29. t is wanting in English :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Saft | zăft | *sap* |
| Werft | vĕrft | *wharf* |
| Hüfte | hĭf'-te | *hip* |
| Pfote | pfō'-te | *paw* |
| Axt | ăxt | *axe* |
| Habicht | hah'-bĭyt | *hawk* |
| ſchlicht | shlĭyt | *sleek* |
| Kutſche | kŭ'-tshe | *coach* |
| Kutſcher | kŭ'-tsher | *coachman.* |

**Rejection.**—CONTINUED.

30. **k, c, ch** are wanting in English:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Klumpen | klùm'-pᵉn | *lump* |
| Knoten | knō'-tᵉn | *node* |
| kneipen | knī'-pᵉn | *to nip* |
| Frucht | frūcht | *fruit* |
| Fenchel | fĕn'-yel | *fennel* |
| Ich | ĭy | *I* |
| mich | mĭy | *me* |
| dich | dĭy | *thee* |
| machte | măch'-te | *made* |
| Sklave | sklah'-vᵉ | *slave.* |

31. **s, sch** disappearing in English:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| blaſen | blah'-sᵉn | *to blow* |
| ſchwingen | shvĭng'-ᵉn | *to wing* |
| ſchmelzen | shmel'-tsᵉn | *melt* |
| Hülſe | hŭl'-zᵉ | *hull* |
| ſchlank | shlănk | *lank* |
| Schmutz | shmŭts | *mud* |
| ſchwirren | shvĭr'-rᵉn | *whir* |
| Räthſel | rāt'-zel | *riddle* |
| Kirſche | kĭr'-shᵉ | *cherry.* |

32. The silent **h** denoting the lengthening of the vowel, (§ 10, B, II, 6,) and the almost mute **e** in suffixes and terminations are dropped in English. In the same way the double consonant, which serves to indicate the shortening of the vowel (§ 10, B, I, 2,) is reduced in English to a single one:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Bohne | bō'-nᵉ | *bean* |
| lahm | lahm | *lame* |
| fehlen | fā'-lᵉn | *to fail* |
| fahl | fahl | *fallow* |
| kahl | kahl | *callow* |
| Ohr | ōr | *ear* |
| ihm | ēm | *him* |
| ihr | ēr | *her* |
| hohl | hōl | *hollow* |
| wohl | vōl | *well* |
| Jahr | yahr | *year* |
| Sohn | zōn | *son* |
| Sohle | zō'-lᵉ | *sole* |
| Schuh | shū | *shoe* |
| Mahl | mahl | *meal* |
| Mühle | mēē'-lᵉ | *mill* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Rejection.**—CONTINUED.

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| roh | rō | *raw* |
| zahm | tsahm | *tame* |
| zehn | tsān | *ten* |
| Stahl | stahl | *steel* |
| Sehne | zā'-ne | *sinew* |
| mehr | mār | *more* |
| Krone | krō'-ne | *crown* |
| Schule | shū'-le | *school* |
| Wespe | vĕs'-pe | *wasp* |
| Presse | prĕs'-se | *press* |
| Lampe | lăm'-pe | *lamp* |
| Perle | pĕr'-le | *pearl* |
| alle | ăl'-le | *all* |
| Palme | păl'-me | *palm* |
| Pflaume | pflou'-me | *plum* |
| Spule | spū'-le | *spool* |
| Lippe | lĭp'-pe | *lip* |
| Suppe | zŭp'-pe | *soup* |
| Pumpe | pŭm'-pe | *pump* |
| Bett | bĕt | *bed* |
| Damm | dăm | *dam* |
| doppel | dŏp'-pel | *double* |
| dünn | dĭn | *thin* |
| Fett | fĕt | *fat* |
| Wolle | vŏl'-le | *wool* |
| Flamme | flăm'-me | *flame* |
| Sonne | zŏn'-ne | *sun* |
| Lippe | lĭp'-pe | *lip.* |

## Insertion of Letters.

The insertion of Consonants in English is not rare.

33. The Liquids **m, l, r:**

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Nachtigall | năch'-tĭ-găll" | *nightingale* |
| Fledermaus | flā'-der-mous" | *flinder-mouse* |
| Guitarre | gĭ-tăr'-re | *gittern* |
| Myrte | mĭr'-te | *myrtle* |
| Silbe or Sylbe | zĭl'-be | *syllable* |
| Kern | kĕrn | *kernel* |
| Hürde | hĭr'-de | *hurdle* |
| Achse | ăx'-ze | *axle* |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| [illegible] | [illegible] | [illegible] | so, gone | brute, fully | fair, many | guttural ch | palatal ch | hard d |

**Insertion.** CONTINUED.

| German Word. | Pronunciation. | Engl. Translation |
|---|---|---|
| Borſte | bor'-ste | *bristle* |
| Mitte | mit'-te | *middle* |
| Schafot | shà-fot' | *scaffold* |
| ſäugen | zou'-gen | *to suckle* |
| mengen | mèng'-en | *to mingle* |
| knieen | kné'-en | *to kneel* |
| modern | mō'-dern | *to moulder* |
| niſten | nis'-ten | *to nestle* |
| Bräutigam | broi'-ti-găm" | *bridegroom* (*Goth. guma—man*) |
| heiſer | hī'-zer | *hoarse* |
| Haß | hās | *hatred* |
| nahe | nah'-he | *near* |
| Goſſe | gŏs'-se | *gutter* |
| Fee | fā | *fairy* |
| Klee | klā | *clover* |
| wälzen | väl'-tsen | *to welter* |
| da (origin. dar) | dah | *there* |
| wo (origin. wor) | vō | *where* |
| Blaſe | blah'-ze | *blister* |
| Falke | fāl'-ke | *falcon* |
| Espe | ĕs'-pe | *aspen.* |

34. D and T have a disposition to intrude, especially after N

| German Word. | Pronunciation. | [illegible] |
|---|---|---|
| Ton | ton | *sound* |
| raunen | rou'-nen | *to sound [illegible]* |
| [illegible] | [illegible] | [illegible] |
| Donner | don'-ner | *thunder* |
| leihen | lī'-hen | *to [illegible]* |
| ſtehen | stā'-hen | *to stand* [illegible] |
| Floh | flo | *flea* |
| Erle | er'-le | *alder* |
| Kirche | kir'-ve | *church* |
| Pech | pev | *pitch* |
| gleiſſen | glī'-sen | *to glisten* |
| Tyrann | ti-rān' | *tyrant* |
| Faſan | fā-zahn' | *pheasant.* |

35. N has intruded

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| kratzen | krät'-zen | *to scratch* |
| nieſen | nē'-zen | *to sneeze* |
| quetſchen | kvĕt'-shen | *to squeeze* |
| Rolle | rŏl'-le | *scroll* |
| quieken, quäken | kvē'-ken, kvät'-ken | *to squeak* |
| Inſel | in'-zel | *island.* |

| ö great, ürge | ü feel, fill | au foul | ei fine | eu coin | äu coin | hard g k | hard b p | h, almost mute, h | French g g |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Insertion.**—CONTINUED.

36. **B** has intruded after **m**:

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| Lamm | lăm | *lamb* |
| klimmen | klĭm'-mᵉn | *to climb* |
| Kamm | kăm | *comb* |
| ſchlummern | shlŭm'-mᵉrn | *to slumber* |
| Daumen | dou'-mᵉn | *thumb* |
| Nummer | nŭm'-mᵉr | *number* |
| Kammer | kăm'-mᵉr | *chamber* |
| Krume | krŭ'-mᵉ | *crumb* |
| rummeln | rŭm'-mᵉln | *to rumble* |
| zimmern | tsĭm'-mᵉrn | *to timber* |
| Zimmermann | tsĭm'-mᵉr-măn" | *carpenter (timber-man)* |
| Zimmer | tsĭm'-mᵉr | *room, apartment.* |

**Transposition of Sounds.**

37. Sounds, especially liquids, may change place:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Brett | brĕt | *board* |
| brennen | brĕn'-nᵉn | *to burn* |
| Furcht | fürγt | *fright* |
| Roß | rŏs | *horse* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|
| hundert | hŭn'-dᵉrt | *hundred* |
| dritte | drĭt'-tᵉ | *third* |
| Acker | ăk'-kᵉr | *acre* |
| Bürſte | bĭrs'-tᵉ | *brush* |
| durch | dŭrχ | *through* |
| Sichel | zĭ'-γel | *sickle* |
| Diſtel | dĭs'-tᵉl | *thistle* |
| Pilger | pĭl'-gᵉr | *pilgrim* |
| dreißig | drĭ'-sĭᵏ | *thirty.* |

38. The signification is changed and the original meaning becomes degraded, the word in the one language is more comprehensive than in the other:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Burg (*feudal castle*) | bŭrᵏ | *borough* |
| kratzen (*scratch*) | kră'-tsᵉn | *to grate* |
| tapfer (*brave*) | tăp'-fᵉr | *dapper* |
| Gift (*poison*) | gĭft | *gift* |
| Bein (*leg, bone*) | bĭn | *bone* |
| ſterben (*to die*) | stĕr'-bᵉn | *to starve* |
| Weib (*woman*) | vĭᵂ | *wife* |
| Wald (*forrest*) | vălt | *wood* |

| *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* | *German Word.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Engl. Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Zimmer (*room, apartment*) | tsĭm'-mᵉr | *timber* | bilden (*to form*) | bĭl'-dᵉn | *to build* |
| | | | Kutte (*capouch, cowl*) | kŭt'-tᵉ | *coat* |
| Stuhl (*chair*) | stūl | *stool* | | | |
| weinen (*to weep*) | vī'-nᵉn | *to whine* | Schürze (*apron*) | shĭr'-tsᵉ | *shirt* |
| reiten (*to go on horseback*) | rī'-tᵉn | *to ride* | Tiſch (*table*) | tĭsh | *dish* |
| | | | Hund (*dog*) | hŭnᵗ | *hound* |
| Uhr (*watch*) | ūr | *hour* | Laub (*foliage*) | loup | *leaf* |
| Herbſt (*autumn*) | hĕrbst | *harvest* | Vogel (*bird*) | fō'-gel | *fowl* |
| Thier (*animal, beast*) | tēr | *deer* | Baum (*tree*) | boum | *beam* |
| | | | Fleiſch (*meat, flesh*) | flĭsh | *flesh* |
| Feind (*enemy*) | fīnᵗ | *fiend* | Frack (*dress-coat*) | frăk | *frock.* |

# SUMMARY OF THE TABULAR VIEW.

## LIPSOUNDS.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| No. 1. | German | p=English | | b. |
| " 2. | " | pf | " | p. |
| " 3. | " | f | " | p. |
| " 4. | " | f, ff | " | p, pp. |
| " 5. | " | b, v | " | f, ff. |
| " 6. | " | b | " | v, w. |
| " 7. | " | f, w | " | v, b. |

## TOOTHSOUNDS.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| No. 8. | German | z, ts=English | | t, tt. |
| " 9. | " | d, dd | " | th. |
| " 10. | " | s, ss, ſs | " | t, tt. |
| " 11. | " | t, tt | " | d, dd, th. |
| " 12. | " | ſch | " | sh. |
| " 13. | " | ſch | " | s. |
| " 14. | " | ſch | " | sk, sc, sch. |

### THROATSOUNDS.

No. 15. German ſ=English **ch, g.**
" 16. " ck " **k, ck.**
" 17. " ck " **ch, tch.**
" 18. " ck, h " **gh.**
" 19. " i, g " **y.**
" 20. " g, ig, ch " **y, i, e.**
" 21. " g, ch, ſ " **gh, w, ow.**

### Liquids and Sibilants.

No. 22. German n=English **l, m, r.**
" 23. { " r " **s, z.**
" 23. { " ſ, ȝ " **r.**

### Letters disappearing or wanting in English.

24. **g, ge** disappear in English.
25. The infinitive termination **en** disappears in English.
26. **n** disappears in English.
27. **I** is wanting in English.
28. **r** is wanting in English.
29. **t** is wanting in English.
30. **ſ, c, ck** are wanting in English.
31. **ſch** disappears in English.
32. The silent **h**, the half-mute **e** (e), and the double Consonant are wanting in English.

### LETTERS INSERTED IN ENGLISH.

33. **n, l, r** inserted in English.
34. **d** and **t** intrude after **n.**
35. **s** has intruded.
36. **b** has intruded after **m.**
37. Transposition of Sounds.
38. The original meaning becomes degraded, for the most part, the word in the one language is more comprehensive than in the other.

# GERMAN WRITTEN CHARACTER.

The student having now become familiar with the German text, it is next in order to make him acquainted with the script or alphabet used in *writing.*

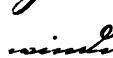
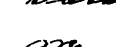
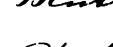
## CAPITAL AND SMALL LETTERS.

| *Ger. Script.* | *Ger. Print.* | *Ger. Script.* | *Ger. Print.* | *Ger. Script.* | *Ger. Print.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | A, a | | J, j | | S, ſ, ß |
| | B, b | | K, k | | T, t |
| | C, c | | L, l | | U, u |
| | D, d | | M, m | | V, v |
| | E, e | | N, n | | W, w |
| | F, f | | O, o | | X, x |
| | G, g | | P, p | | Y, y |
| | H, h | | Q, q | | Z, z |
| | I, i | | R, r | | |

## MODIFIED VOWELS AND COMBINED CONSONANTS.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ä | | ch | | ſt |
| | ö | | ck | | ß |
| | ü | | ſch | | tz |
| | äu | | | | |

## EXERCISES ON THE SCRIPT ALPHABET.

| *German Script.* | *Ger. Print.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Seebär | zā′-bâr | *sea-bear* |
| | Schneeball | shnā′-bâl | *snow-ball* |
|  | windig | vĭn′-dĭk | *windy* |
| | Sommermonat | zŏm′-mer-[mō˝-nät | *summer-[month* |
| | Winter | vĭn′-ter | *winter* |
| | Landwind | länt′-vĭnt | *land-wind* |
| | Braunbier | broun′-bēr | *brown beer* |
| | Mondſchein | mōn′′-shĭn | *moonshine* |
|  | Fiſchmarkt | fĭsh′-märkt | *fish-market* |
| | Vater | fah′-ter | *father* |
|  | Mutter | mŭt′-ter | *mother* |
|  | Tochter | tŏch′-ter | *daughter* |
| | Sohn | zōn | *son* |
| | Bruder | brŭ′-der | *brother* |
| | Schweſter | shvĕs′-ter | *sister* |
| | Onkel | ŏn′-kel | *uncle* |

*Exercises on the Script Alphabet.—Continued.*

| *German Script* | *Ger. Print.* | *Pronunciation* | *Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Neffe | nĕf'-fe | *nephew* |
| | Pfeffer | pfĕf'-fer | *pepper* |
| | Quart | kvärt | *quart (of wine, etc.)* |
| | Cavallerie | kă-văl"-le-rē' | *cavalry* |
| | Schulmeiſter | shul-mis"-ter | *schoolmaster* |
| | Cardinal | kär-di-nahl' | *cardinal* |
| | Nonne | nŏn'-ne | *nun* |
| | Eisbär | is'-bāir | *ice-bear* |
| | Ochs | ŏx | *ox* |
| | Storch | stŏry | *stork* |
| | Anker | ăn'-ker | *anchor* |
| | Flachs | flăx | *flax* |
| | Freund | froint | *friend* |
| | Braut | brout | *bride* |
| | Bräutigam | broi'-ti-găm | *bride-groom* |
| | Wittwe | vit'-ve | *widow* |

*Exercises on the Script Alphabet.—Continued.*

| *German Script.* | *Ger. Print.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Gaſt | gäst | *guest* |
| | freundlos | froint'-lōs | *friendless* |
| | Zapfenbohrer | tsäp'-fᵉn-bō"-[rᵉr | *tap-borer* |
| | Zollhaus | tsöl'-hous | *toll-house* |
| | Dieb | deᵖ | *thief* |
| | England | ĕng'-länᵗ | *England* |
| | Armband | ärm'-bäntᵗ | *arm-band* |
| | Eiſenſchmied | ī'-zᵉn-shmētᵉ" | *iron-smith* |
| | Haar | hahr | *hair* |
| | Katze | kät'-zᵉ | *cat* |
| | Roßfliege | rōs'-flēᵉ-gᵉ | *horse-fly* |
| | Übel | ēē'-bᵉl | *evil* |
| | Steinhaus | stīn'-hous | *stone-house* |
| | Infanterie | īnᵉ'-fän-tᵉ-rē' | *infantry* |
| | Prieſter | prēs -tᵉr | *priest* |
| | Biſchof | bī'-shōf | *bishop* |

*Exercises on the Script Alphabet.—Continued.*

| *German Script.* | *Ger. Print.* | *Pronunciation.* | *Translation.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Roſe | rō′-zᵉ | *rose* |
| | Biber | bē′-bᵉr | *beaver* |
| | Schwein | shvīn | *swine* |
| | Hornfiſch | hŏrn′-fĭsh | *horn-fish* |
| | Theer | tār | *tar* |
| | Kamm | kăm | *comb* |
| | Ohrlappen | ōr′-lăp″-pᵉn | *ear-lap* |
| | Weberſcheere | vā′-bᵉr-shā″-[rᶜ | *weaver's shears* |
| | Feuerhaken | foi′-ᵉr-hah″-[kᵉn | *fire-hook* |
| | Schiffsleiter | shĭfs′-lī″-tᵉr | *ship-ladder* |
| | Haarſieb | hahr′-zēᵖ | *hair-sieve* |
| | Mittelfinger | mĭt′-tᵉl-fĭng″-[ᵉr | *middle-finger* |
| | Bulldogge | bŭl′-dŏg″-gᵉ | *bull-dog* |
| | Großmutter | grōs′-mŭt -tᵉr | *grandmother* |
| | Nachtlampe | nächt′-lăm″-pᵉ | *night-lamp* |
| | Stahlfeder | stahl′-fa″-dᵉr | *steel-pen.* |

# [11.] THE SENTENCE

AND

## THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

### *Introductory.*

1. Man thinks. He expresses his thoughts in words. A thought expressed in words is called a **sentence** (Latin *sentire, to feel, to think*).

2. In every thought we distinguish two conceptions, viz.:

*a.* A conception of the person or thing of which something is asserted, and

*b.* A conception of that which is asserted.

Thus in every sentence we distinguish:

*a.* The **Subject,** representing the person or thing about which the assertion is made, and

*b.* The **Predicate** (Latin *predicare, to assert*), *i. e.* the word or words expressing that which is asserted of the *Subject, e. g.*: I—read. He—goes. The nightingale—sings. The child—is educated. The tree—blossoms. The dog—is faithful. The lark—is a singing bird.

3. This combination of the two conceptions is performed in the sentence in two ways:

*a.* By **Inflection,** *i. e.* by changing the form of the predicate; *e. g.*: The nightingale **sings** (from "nightingale" and "to sing"). The tree **blossoms** (from "the tree" and "to blossom").

*b.* By a certain class of words used as connective, or the **Copula,** *e. g.*: The dog **is** faithful (from "dog" and "faithful"). The lark **is** a singing-bird (from "the lark" and "singing-bird").

## [12.] THE SUBJECT.

1. The *subject* answers to the question, *Who?*—when referring to something that lives; to the question *What?*—when referring to an inanimate object: *The child* (who?) plays. *The sun* (what?) rises.

2. The subject is always a thing (or person), hence the word which expresses it is either a **Noun** (Latin, *nomen, name*), *i. e.* the name of a thing (or person), or a **Pronoun** (Latin *pro-nomen, for a noun*), that is a word used to take the place of a noun: The *cow* (who?) is a useful animal; for *she* (who?) gives us her milk.

## [13.] THE PREDICATE.

1. The *predicate* answers to the following questions:

*a.* *What* does the subject *do?* *What* does the subject *suffer* (*i. e.* passively undergo)? *In what state* or *condition* is the subject? In these three cases the predicate sets forth an *action*, *suffering* or a *state* of the subject, and is expressed by a **Verb** (Latin *verbum*, *word*) *i. e.* a word which serves to make an *assertion* and at the same time to express an action, a suffering, or a state, *e. g.*: The bird *sings*. The song *is sung*. The tree *blossoms*.

*b.* *How is* the subject? In this case the predicate sets forth a *quality* of the subject, and the word used to express this quality is called **Adjective** (Latin *adjectivus*, *added to, or attributed to a thing*), *e. g.*: The sea-water is *saline*. The Alps are *high*.

*c.* *What is* the subject? In this case the predicate states the *genus* (*i. e.* the conception with a wider range or comprehending more attributes), or the *species* of the subject, (*i. e.* the conception with a narrower extent), and is denoted by a *noun*, *e. g.*: The lark is *a bird*. This bird is *a lark*.

2. When the predicate is an adjective or a noun, the connection of the predicate with the subject is made, as before stated, by means of a particular class of verbs, viz.: **werden** [vār'-dᵉn], *to become (O. E. worth)*; **ſein** [zīn], *to be*; **ſcheinen** [shī'-nᵉn], *to seem, to appear (Eng. shine)*; **bleiben** [blī'-bᵉn], *to remain, be left*. This part of the sentence is called **Copula** (Latin *copula*, *ligament*, *bond*), that is *coupler*, because it connects the subject with the predicate. His son *becomes* a soldier. I *am* your friend. I *remain* his friend. The weather *seems* to promise well.

## [14.] OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. The words of the language are divided into different *classes* according to their *contents* or *signification*. This signification appears most distinctly in the *sentence*.

As in every sentence an assertion is made of a *person* or *thing*, there must be certain words by which things (persons, animals or inanimate objects) are *expressed*. Such words are called **Nouns**, or **Substantives** (Latin, *substantia*, that which *stands under*, which is real, in distinction to that which is merely attributed). They answer to the question *Who?* or *What? Whose? Whom? To whom? e. g.*: *Man* (who?) is a rational *being* (what?). Life *of man* (whose?) is short. God gave *man* (to whom?) reason. The pious fear *God* (whom?).

2. The *nouns* are generally accompanied by the following words: **der** [dār], **die** [dē], **das** [dās], *the*; **ein** [īn], **eine** [ī'-nᵉ], **ein** [īn], *a*; which serve to distinguish the nouns as *definite* or *indefinite*. They are called **Articles** (Latin dim. of *artus*, *a joint*), *i. e. joints*, for their being joined with, and considered somewhat as members of, the substantives.

3. It is often necessary to distinguish one object from another by means of a *quality* attributed to it. Words, which state the qualities of things are called **Adjectives.** They answer to the questions "*Which* thing?" "*What kind* or *sort* of a thing?" and when used as a predicate, to the question "*How is* the thing?" *e. g.:* The *white* (which?) lily is the symbol of innocence. *Precious* (what kind of?) metals do not rust. The diamond is *hard* (how is the diamond?).

4. Sometimes we wish to state the number, the quantity or the order of the things spoken of, for which the **Numerals** (Latin *numerus, number*) are used. They answer to the question "*How many?*" *Which one in the series?*" *e. g.: Seven* (how many?) days form a week. *All* (how many?) men are mortal. The *third* (which one in the series?) king of Prussia was called Frederic the Great.

5. If mention is repeatedly made of a thing, we do not always like to repeat its name, but use instead a word which only *hints at, points to*, or *questions about* the object. These words are called **Pronouns.** They answer to the questions *Who?* or *What? Whose? Which? What sort of? e. g.:* A wise man said in speaking of a person *who* had spoken against *him*, without knowing *him:* "I am no more angry with *him* than *I* should be with a blind man *who* would have run against *me*."

6. The predicate often states what the subject is doing, is suffering, what happens to it, or in what condition it is. Such words might be called "*Action-words.*" They are generally, however, termed **Verbs,** for the sake of their importance, as it is by them alone that the assertion is made (§ 18, 1, *a*). In German they are called **Zeitwörter,** *i. e.* **Time-words,** as they state by special form the time in which the action, etc., takes place: The teacher *teaches* (what does he?). The diligent *are praised* (what happens to them?). God created (in former times) the world. Spring will soon appear.

7. It is often desirable to know the *place*, the *time*, the *manner*, etc., of an action, or a state of things, or we wish to know the *special circumstances.* Words serving for this purpose are called **Adverbs,** (Latin *adverbium, added to a verb*), because they are generally added to a verb, in order to define the action, etc., asserted by it, and answer to the questions, *Where? Whither? Whence? When? How long? How?* etc., etc. *Last night* she sang *delightfully.* I wish to arrive *earlier* than *the last time. We* got it copied *correctly.*

8. Not always are the circumstances of the action expressed by a single adverb, but often by means of such words as *in, with, by, through, from, to*, etc., in connection with nouns, or pronouns. These words are called **Prepositions** (Latin *præpositio, placed before*), because they were originally prefixed to the verb, and now for the most part precede the nouns or

pronouns governed by them. They are also called in German **Verhältniswörter** [fer-hält'-nis-vür"-ter], *conditional words*, as they express the *conditions* or *circumstances* of time, space, manner, etc. We came *after* one o'clock. I was *among* friends. She lifted up her eyes *towards* him.

9. There are still other words in the language, by which sentences or parts of them are connected with each other. They are, therefore, called **Conjunctions** (Latin *con*, *with*, and *junctus*, *joined=joined together*). I asked him *whether* he was my father. I shall call on you, *unless* I be detained by some business. He comes, *and* I go.

10. Finally there are sometimes single sounds or words inserted as a sudden expression of a feeling. They are therefore called **Interjections** (Latin *interjectio*, *a throwing in between*): *Oh! Horrid! Hark! Pish! Pshaw! Fie! Courage!*

Hence there are *ten* classes of words, viz.: 1. The *Noun* or *Substantive*. 2. The *Article*. 3. The *Adjective*. 4. The *Numeral*. 5. The *Pronoun*. 6. The *Verb*. 7. The *Adverb*. 8. The *Preposition*. 9. The *Conjunction*. 10. The *Interjection*.

## REMARKS, ADVISORY AND EXPLANATORY.

As you are now about to begin with the practice, the author would beg your attention to a few words, which he deems it suitable to premise:

1. The proper, or so to speak, the natural organ for the study of a language is next to the Tongue the Ear. The Learner is therefore emphatically admonished to pronounce the words placed at the commencement of every lesson as well as the subsequent German sentences containing them, loudly and distinctly, and to repeat them in this manner several times, until the *Ear* and the *Tongue* of the pupil have become thoroughly familiar with the different sounds. It is still more to be recommended that two or more friends or neighbors, filled alike with the desire of acquiring the German language should unite and study together. By turns one could read and the other or others, without looking into the book, hear. Thus a chief object of the study of a foreign language could easily be attained, namely to enable the student to understand others when addressed by them in German.

To insure rapid and successful progress in the portions of the study yet to be entered upon, the rules and exercises already given should be most completely mastered by frequent recurrence to and repetition of them. In this regard the author will assist the pupil greatly by his EXERCISES AND QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW, which will relate especially to the rules and to the phrases illustrative of idiomatic peculiarities.

2. As it was, in accordance with the statement made in the Introductory Letter, the leading principle of the author to diminish the difficulties naturally connected with the study of a foreign language as much as possible, he adhered strictly to the plan set forth therein, viz:

*Firstly.* To commence with the simplest sentences and to progress to more and more complicated ones, and not to anticipate by using forms or structures with which the pupil has not already become acquainted;

*Secondly.* To avoid idiomatic expressions, and

*Thirdly.* To make use in the first course of only such words as are kindred to the English. Moving forward within such narrow limits, the author was unable to make the exercises as interesting as he would like in the beginning, and some of them may even be considered trivial. Therefore the author begs for a little patience, as they will be found to improve in accordance with the student's advanced knowledge. For this patience the student will be more especially rewarded by the rich selection of classical sentences and proverbs contained, as promised in the Introductory Letter, in the *Second Course.*

*Note.* The author made only a single exception to this limitation with respect to parts of speech and grammatical constructions which do not require any more knowledge than the pupil has already attained, as for instance the use of adverbs, numerals, conjunctions, always unchangeable, or of such accusatives as do not differ from their nominatives in form.

3. The grammatical *Observations* may appear sometimes unnecessarily long and explicit. But they will be found highly important and necessary to those not familiar with the rules of grammatical construction in general, while to those who have studied these principles in their application to the English or other languages, they will offer nothing burdensome to the attention or memory. But both classes will find them of value, in as far as they exhibit the similarities and occasionally the divergences between the English and German languages in their grammatical structure.

4. Concerning the German Exercises, for which no Key will be furnished, as it is, in the authors opinion, superfluous, the student is advised to translate them in writing, and, after waiting a few days, to re-translate them into German. A comparison of this translation with the original, and a careful correction of the mistakes that may occur, will be the best and most advantageous repetition the pupil can make.

5. In the Vocabulary preceding every exercise you will find many a word marked with an asterisk. The object of this is to direct the student's attention to the fuller treatment of the word, which he will find immediately after the exercises under the head of "LEXICOLOGY." There we shall give the analytical explanation of words needing it. With *simple words* will be given their presumable derivation, referring especially to Grimm's Law, and to other changes, more particularly detailed in the *Tabular View* heading the *Reading Exercises*, to which reference will be made by numbers corresponding to those in the Tabular View. With *compound words* their formation as well as the value of their single components will be shown. By thus exhibiting the affinity between the German and English languages, at times apparent and immediately striking the eye, and again more hidden, but made to appear to the view by a few explanatory words, the interest of the student will be gratified, and the retention of the words facilitated.

## [15.] THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Albert lernt | äl'-bert lĕrnt | *Albert learns*<br>*Albert is learning*<br>*Albert does learn* |
| 2. Flora ſingt | flō'-rä zĭnkt | *Flora sings*<br>*Flora is singing*<br>*Flora does sing* |
| 3. Feuer brennt | foi'-er brĕnt | *Fire burns*<br>*Fire is burning*<br>*Fire does burn* |
| 4. Lernt Albert? | | *Does Albert learn?* |
| 5. Singt Flora? | | *Does Flora sing?* |
| 6. Brennt Feuer? | | *Does fire burn?* |
| 7. Albert lernt nicht | äl'-bert lĕrnt nĭyt | *Albert does not learn* |
| 8. Flora ſingt nicht | | *Flora does not sing* |
| 9. Brennt Feuer nicht? | | *Does fire not burn?* |

*Observations*:—1. A *sentence* expresses an *assertion* (M. S. 1, 2, 3*), a *question* (M. S. 4, 5, 6), a *command*, or a *wish*, either *affirmatively* (M. S. 1—6), or *negatively* (M. S. 7, 8, 9).

*Note.* On sentences in the form of a *command* or *wish*, we shall treat later.

2. In affirmative sentences the subject must *precede* the verb (M. S. 1, 2, 3).

3. In interrogations (direct questions) the subject is placed *after* the verb (M. S. 4, 5, 6, 9).

4. In negations, **nicht**, *not*, is placed *after* the verb (M. S. 7, 8). In interrogative-negative forms **nicht** follows the subject (M. S. 9).

5. When the predicate is a single word, as in all the Model Sentences placed at the head of this section, it is a verb (**III**, 2, *b*), and its relation to the subject is indicated by inflection: Albert (noun), lernen (verb); sentence: Albert lernt.

6. The **Root** is that part of the word to which the changeable endings of the inflection are added: of ſpringen: **ſpring**; of ſingen: **ſing**; of ſpinnen: **ſpinn**.

7. In all the above Model Sentences the speaker does not assert anything of himself, neither of the person spoken to, but of a third person,

*Hereafter, as in this case, we shall refer for examples to the Model Sentences (M. S.) by their numbers.

**Albert, Flora,** or a thing, **ihre.** The ending or suffix of the third person singular is in German **t,** in English **s**: Albert ſingt, *Albert sings.*

*Note.* The suffix of the third person in English was originally an aspirated *t* or *th.* This, as early as the eleventh Century, was softened to *s; th* archaic is still used in poetry.—*Morris, Outline of English Accidence, No.* 289.

8. The English compound form in questions or in negative sentences, made by the auxiliary **to do,** is rendered in German by the simple form: Singt Flora? **Does** Flora sing? Lernt Albert? **Does** Albert learn? Albert lernt nicht. Albert **does** not learn. Flora ſingt nicht. Flora **does** not sing.

9. In sentences of the simplest forms, that is sentences which contain only subject and predicate, the emphasis lies in German on the *Predicate,* as: Albert **ſingt.** Feuer **brennt.**

10. All German nouns (substantives) are written with a **Capital Initial.**

## I.

Albert[ăl'-bert], *Albert*
ſpringen*[ſprĭng'-en], *to spring*
Robert[rŏ'-bert], *Robert*
ſingen[zĭng'-en], *to sing*
Flora[flō'-ră], *Flora*
ſpinnen[ſpĭn'-nen], *to spin*
Hugo[hū'-gō], *Hugh*
kommen[kŏm'-men], *to come*
Guſtav[gŭs'-tăf], *Gustavus*
lernen[lĕr'-nen], *to learn*
Feuer[foi'-er], *fire*
brennen*[brĕn'-nen], *to burn*
Anna[ăn'-nă], *Anna*
Conrad[cŏn'-răt], *Conrad*
Laura[lou'-ră], *Laura*
Luiſe[lūē'-ze], *Louisa*
nicht*[nĭçt], *not*
ſtottern*[ſtŏt'-tern], *to stutter*
hungern*[hŭng'-ern], *to be hungry*
Karl[kărl], *Charles*
wispern[vĭs'-pern], *to whisper*
Alexander[ă-lĕx-ăn'-der] *Alexander*
lispeln*[lĭs'-peln], *to lisp*
Alfred[ăl'-frĕt], *Alfred*
ſtammeln*[ſtăm'-meln], *to stammer*
Gold[gōlt], *gold*
roſten[rōs'-ten], *to rust*
Silber*[zĭl'-ber], *silver*
Ida[ē'-dă], *Ida.*

1. Albert ſpringt. 2. Robert ſingt. 3. Flora ſpinnt. 4. Hugo kommt. 5. Guſtav lernt. 6. Singt Anna? 7. Springt Conrad? 8. Lernt Ida? 9. Spinnt Laura? 10. Kommt Luiſe? 11. Laura ſpinnt nicht. 12. Luiſe kommt nicht. 13. Hugo ſtottert. 14. Karl hungert nicht. 15. Alexander wispert nicht. 16. Lispelt Alfred nicht? 17. Nein, Alfred ſtammelt. 18. Gold roſtet nicht. 19. Roſtet Silber?

2.

| | |
|---|---|
| trinken*[trĭn'-k$^{e}$n], *to drink* | Eiſen*[ī'-z$^{e}$n], *iron* |
| hören[hē̆'-r$^{e}$n], *to hear* | tanzen*[tän'-ts$^{e}$n], *to dance* |
| oder*[o'-d$^{e}$r], *or* | nein*[nīn], *no.* |

1. Robert drinks. 2. Robert is drinking. 3. Robert does drink. 4. Is Gustavus learning? 5. Laura learns; Gustavus does not learn. 6. Ida sings, and Alfred springs. 7. Albert does not hear. 8. Does Louisa not come? 9. Does Alfred or Hugo lisp? 10. Does silver rust? 11. Iron rusts, silver does not rust. 12. Does not Anna stammer? 13. Laura stammers and Anna stutters. 14. Does not Alexander dance? 15. Alexander studies, but Charles dances.

## LEXICOLOGY.

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

The sections, headed "Lexicology," contain matter which is not absolutely essential to the learner. That is to say, a fair knowledge of the language may be acquired without going into these etymological studies. But in view of the affinities thus disclosed between the German and the English languages, and the familiarity consequently acquired by their perusal with the principles of etymology governing the differences between the two languages, the student desiring to have more than a smattering of German, is strongly advised to give them a good degree of attention; especially as these etymological exercises will greatly assist one in acquiring and retaining the meaning of the words; for, as Goethe says, "Only that which we understand we possess." And not only so, but they will prove of great value in explaining the real meaning of many English words, the root being the same, thus making the student better acquainted with his mother-tongue as well as with German. In those cases where the derivation of the words as given is a questionable one, as well as where it is wholly unknown, a mark of interrogation (?) has been affixed.

**ſpringen**=**ſprung**-en, to **spring.** A. S. *springan.* Tab. View No. 25.
**ſpinnen**=**ſpinn**-en, to **spin.** A. S., Goth. *spinan.* "
**kommen**=**komm**-en, to **come.** A. S. *cuman.* "

**brennen,** to **burn.** A. S. *byrnan.* Tab. V. 25 and 37.

**nicht,** *not,* A. S. *nate,* from negative particle *ni, ne,* and *ickt,* nhd. *ikt,* A. S. *wikt,* a whit, a bit, a thing, hence **nicht**=no-thing, *no aught.*

**ſtottern,** to **stutter.** **hungern,** to **hunger;** **lispeln,** to **lisp.** Verbs in **ern, eln** are *derivatives.* The suffix **eln** generally denotes a diminutive. Compare: lachen[lä'-x$^{e}$n], *to laugh,* and lächeln[lä'-x$^{e}$ln], *to smile;* kranken[krän'-k$^{e}$n], *to be sick,* and kränkeln[krän'-k$^{e}$ln], *to be sickly or ailing;* **ern** denotes a frequentative: wimmern[vĭm'-m$^{e}$rn], *to whimper;* zittern[tsĭt'-t$^{e}$rn], *to tremble* (Prov. Engl. **titter,** *to tremble.*)

**Silber, silver.** A. S. *seolfer.* Tab. V. No. 6.

**trinken,** to **drink.** A. S. *drincan.* Tab. V. 25 and 11.

**oder, or.** Engl. *or* instead of *other*; A. S. *oththe, outher*; O. Engl. *outher, other, ather*; Lat. *out.*

**Eisen, iron.** A. S. *iren,* connected with Latin *aes,* bronze. Tab. V. 25.

**tanzen,** to **dance.** Fr. *danser.* Tab. V. 25 and 11.

**nein, no.** A. S. *na*; from *ni, ne* (old negative particle) and **ein**=*one,* hence **nein**=n i ch t - e i n=*not one.*

## [16.] GENDER.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Er ſingt | ār zĭngt | *he sings* |
| | ſingt er? | | *does he sing?* |
| 2. | ſie tanzt | zē tănst | *she dances* |
| | tanzt ſie? | | *does she dance?* |
| 3. | Es roſtet | ĕs rōs'-tet | *it rusts* |
| | roſtet es? | | *does it rust?* |
| 4. | Wer kommt? | vār kŏmt | *who comes?* |
| 5. | Was roſtet? | văs rōs'-tet | *what rusts?* |

*Observations.*—1. Persons and animals are either of **Masculine** or **Feminine Gender**; inanimate things are properly of no gender, hence they are called **Neuter,** of **neither** gender.

| *Masculine* | *Feminine* | *Neuter* |
|---|---|---|
| Robert | Flora | Gold. |

2. According to §**12,** 2, the subject of the sentence is either (1) a *noun,* or (2) a word that takes the place of a noun. There is one part of speech which most frequently is substituted for the noun, and is used as the subject. It is the **Pronoun,** (§**12,** 2). In the M. S. given above **er, ſie, es, wer? was?** are **pronouns**; the first three are called **Personal Pronouns,** because they not only take the place of the nouns for which they stand, but also, and chiefly, indicate the personal relations between the speaker and the subject (or some other part) of the sentence. By **er, ſie, es,** *he, she, it,* we know that neither the speaker himself is the subject, nor the person spoken to, but a person or thing *spoken of.* **Er,** *he* is Masculine; **ſie,** *she* is Feminine; **es**[ĕs], *it* is Neuter.

3. **Wer?** *who?* **Was?** *what?* are called **Interrogatives** (Latin *interrogare, to ask, to question*) when they are used in asking questions. **Wer?** *who?* is applied to persons; **was?** *what?* is applied to things or actions.

4. Verbs whose root ends in **t** or **d** take for the sake of euphony in third pers. sing. **et**, M. S. 5: **roſt-et.**

*Note.* There is some difference between the English and the German languages with regard to the gender of nouns, especially the names of things. Thus Stahl, *steel*, is masculine in German, so that the pers. pronoun substituting it, must be „er," *he*, whilst in English, which more logically follows the order of nature, this word is considered as *neuter*, and "*it*" is used as its substitute.

## 3.

er*[ar], *he*
Emma[ĕm'-mă], *Emma*
ja*[yah], *yes*
ſie[zē], *she*
aber*[ah'-b$^{e}$r], *but*
es*[ĕs], *it*
ſenden[zĕn'-d$^{e}$n], *to send*
wer*[vār], *who*
was*[vās], *what*
warum*[vah-rūm'], *why*
Stahl[stahl], *steel*
kneten*[knā'-t$^{e}$n], *to knead.*

1. Lernt Robert? 2. Nein, er lernt nicht. 3. Spinnt Emma? 4. Ja, ſie ſpinnt; aber ſie lernt nicht. 5. Hungert Hugo? 6. Nein, er hungert nicht. 7. Roſtet Gold? 8. Nein, es roſtet nicht. 9. Roſtet Eiſen? 10. Ja, es roſtet. 11. Wer ſtottert, Albert oder Flora? 12. Sie ſtottert; aber er ſtottert nicht. 13. Was brennt? 14. Feuer brennt. 15. Brennt es? 16. Ja, es brennt. 17. Warum kommt Luiſe nicht? 18. Sie kommt. 19. Wer wispert, Karl oder Anna? 20. Er wispert, ſie nicht. 21. Roſtet Stahl? 22. Ja, er roſtet. 23. Sie knetet. 24. Er ſendet.

## 4.

Studieren*[stŭ-dē'-r$^{e}$n], *to study*
thun*[tūn], *to do*
raſſeln*[rās'-s$^{e}$ln], *to rattle*
Peter[pā'-t$^{e}$r], *Peter*
ſtammeln*[stăm'-m$^{e}$ln], *to stammer*
warnen[vār'-n$^{e}$n], *to warn*
ſchwören*[shvēā'-r$^{e}$n], *to swear*
lachen*[lă'-ch$^{e}$n], *to laugh*
Wilhelm vĭl'-h$^{e}$lm] *William.*

1. Does Robert sing? 2. No, he does not sing, he studies. 3. What is Anna doing? 4. Anna does dance. 5. Who spins? 6. Louisa spins and Ida kneads. 7. What rattles? 8. Who whispers? 9. Who is coming? 10. Is he not coming? 11. Does she not lisp? 12. No, she stammers. 13. Peter warns and William swears. 14. Who laughs? 15. Does not Robert laugh?

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Er, he.** A. S. *he*, Goth. *his*. Tab. V. 28.

**ja, yea,** *yes.* A. S. *gea, jagese*, Ice. and Goth. *ja.*

**aber,** *but.* ab=*off*, Tab. V. 5, and the comparat. term er; according to others: **aber**=*after, far from (?).*

**es,** *it.* Old Engl. and A. S. *hit;* Gothic *ita;* akin to Lat. *id;* Tab. V. 10

**wer? *who?*** A. S. *hwa;* Goth. *hvas;* Ice. *hver.* Tab. V. 28.

**was? what?** A. S. *hwat*, neuter of *hwa;* Ice. *hvad;* allied to Latin *quid?* Tab. V. 10.

**warum? *why?*** Properly **war?=where?=wor,** or abbreviated and now common **wo?** and um=*for*, hence **warum?=where*fore?*** Accent the *last* syllable! (Page 21, Note.)

**ſtudieren,** to **study.** Lat. *studeo, to pursue.* Accent the last syllable of the root, or **ier** (some write **ir**). (Page 22, 10.)

**thun, to do.** A. S. *don;* Dutch *doen;* perhaps connected with Latin *do*, Sans. *da, to give.* Tab. V. 11 and 26.

**raſſeln,** to **rattle.** Old Germ. ratteln, Dutch *ratelen.* Tab. V. 10.

**ſtammeln,** to **stammer.** A. S. *stamer, stammering;* related to Germ. ſtemmen, *to halt*, Engl. *stem*, to resist. Tab. V. 22.

**ſchwören,** to **swear.** A. S. and Old Germ. *swerian;* perhaps connected with old Germ. *war*=wahr, *true.* Tab. V. 13.

**lachen,** to **laugh.** A. S. *hlihan;* Goth. *hlahjan (?)* probably from the sound. Tab. V. 18.

### [17.] THE PREDICATE, A SUBSTANTIVE OR AN ADJECTIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | **Zucker iſt ſüß** | tsŭk'-kᵉr ist zēēs | *sugar is sweet* |
| 2. | **Honig iſt gelb** | hō'-nıy ist gĕlp | *honey is yellow* |
| 3. | **Karl iſt Bäcker** | kärl ist bäk'-kᵉr | *Charles is a baker* |
| 4. | **Wilhelm iſt Soldat** | vĭl'-helm ist zōl-daht | *William is a soldier* |
| 5. | **Iſt er hier?** | ist ār hēr | *Is he here?* |
| 6. | **Iſt Luiſe nicht alt?** | ist lū-ē'-sᵉ nıvt ălt | *Is Louisa not old?* |

*Observations.*—1. In sentences where the predicate is a *substantive* or an *adjective*, the verb **ſein,** *to be*, serves as the ordinary connective of it with its subject, and is called the **Copula** (§18, 2).

2. In a sentence, consisting of *subject*, *predicate* and *copula*, the regular order of words is :

| | *1. Subject* | *2. Copula.* | *3. Predicate.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| as | Robert | iſt | jung. |
| | Roſa | iſt | nicht alt. |

## 5.

ſtill[still], *still, quiet*
wohl[vōl], *well*
unwohl*[ūn'-vōl], *unwell*
gut*[gūt], *good*
wild[vilt], *wild*
Roſa[rō'-zā], *Rosa*
mild[milt], *mild*
weiſe[vī'-ze], *wise*
treu[troi], *true, faithful*
untreu*[ūn'-troi], *unfaithful, untrue*
hier[hēr], *here*
Joſeph[yō'-zef], *Joseph*
Gras[grās], *grass*
gelb*[gĕlp], *yellow*
grün[grēēn], *green*
Heu[hoi], *hay*
alt*[ält], *old*
jung[yūnk], *young*
Eis[is], *ice*
kalt*[kält], *cold*
warm[värm], *warm*
immer*[im'-mer], *always.*

1. Luiſe iſt ſtill. 2. Flora iſt wohl. 3. Emma iſt unwohl. 4. Sie iſt gut. 5. Es iſt nicht gut. 6. Alexander iſt wild. 7. Roſa iſt mild. 8. Er iſt weiſe. 9. Sie iſt treu. 10. Nein, ſie iſt untreu. 11. Warum wispert Anna? 12. Sie wispert nicht; ſie iſt ſtill. 13. Wer ſingt hier? 14. Joſeph ſingt nicht, aber er wispert. 15. Iſt Gras gelb? 16. Nein, es iſt grün. 17. Iſt es Gras oder Heu? 18. Es iſt Heu. 19. Iſt Emma alt oder jung? 20. Sie iſt jung. 21. Iſt Eis kalt oder warm? 22. Es iſt immer kalt.

## 6.

Queckſilber[kvĕk'-zil'-ber], *quicksilver*
weiß*[vis], *white*
grau[grou], *gray*
warum[vah-rūm'], *wherefore*
Anna[ăn'-nă], *Anna*
auch*[ouch], *also*
und[ūnt], *and*
Waſſer*[väs'-ser], *water*
friſch[frish], *fresh*
wie*[vē], *how*
Zucker*[tsūk'-ker], *sugar*
ſüß*[zēēs], *sweet*
Honig[hō'-nig], *honey.*

1. Who is unwell? 2. Joseph is not well. 3. What is green? 4 Grass is green; hay is yellow. 5. Who is young and who old? 6. How is ice? 7. It is always cold. 8. How are gold, silver, iron and quicksilver? 9. Gold is yellow, silver and quicksilver white, iron gray. 10. Wherefore does Anna not study? 11. She is not well. 12. Rosa is mild, but Robert is wild. 13. Water is not always fresh

and cold. 14. Is William good and faithful? 15. He is faithful, but he is not always good. 16. How is sugar? 17. Sugar is sweet; honey is also sweet.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Wohl** (or wol without h), **well.** A. S. *wela;* Goth. *vaila;* Ice. *vel, velga,* to choose; akin to wollen[völ'-len], *will,* from which wählen[vâl'-len], *to choose.*

**unwohl, unwell.** The prefix **un** answers exactly to the English prefix **un-** *(mis-, dis-, not),* hence unwohl=*not* well.

**treu,** *faithful,* **true.** A. S. *treowe;* Germ. trauen, *to trust.*

**untreu, un***faithful,* **untrue.**

**gut, good.** A. S. *god.* Tab. V. 11.

**gelb, yellow.** A. S. *gelu, geolu;* allied to Lat. *galbus,* yellow. Tab. V. 19 and 6.

**alt, old.** A. S. *eald;* Old Germ. *alen,* to grow; Goth. *alan,* to nourish; Lat. *alo,* to nourish; *altus,* high. Tab. V. 11.

**kalt, cold.** A. S. *ceald, coled,* past partic. of *colian,* to cool, to be cold; Lat. *gelidus—gelu,* frost. Tab. V. 11.

**immer,** *always,* **ever,** derived from the ahd, *io-mer, ie-mer, i. e.* je- *(ev-*er) mehr, *evermore.*

**weiß, white.** A. S. *hwit;* allied to Weizen[vi'-tsᵉn], *wheat, furnishing a white* flour. Tab. V. 10.

**auch,** *also.* Goth. *auk,* from the verb *auk-an, to* **augment,**

**Waſſer, water.** A. S. *water;* Greek *hudor;* Latin *udus,* wet; Sans. *uda,* water. Tab. V. 10.

**wie?** *how?* A. S. *hvu, hu.*

**Zucker, sugar.** Lat. *saccharum;* Greek, *sakcharon;* Pers. *shakar.* Tab. V. 8, 15.

**ſüß,** *sweet.* A. S. *swet;* Goth. *sutis,* akin to Lat. *suavis,* sweet, for *su-advis;* Sans. *svad,* to taste.

## [18.] THE ARTICLES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | **Der** Wolf heult | dăr völf hoilt | *the wolf howls* |
| 2. | **Die** Katze iſt falſch | dē kät'-zᵉ ĭst fälsh | *the cat is false* |
| 3. | **Das** Eiſen roſtet | däs ī'-zᵉn rōs'-tet | *the iron rusts* |
| 4. | **Ein** Fiſch ſchwimmt | ĭn fĭsh shvĭmt | *a fish swims* |
| 5. | **Eine** Birke iſt grün | ī'-nᵉ bĭr'-kᵉ ĭst grēēn | *a birch is green* |
| 6. | Gold iſt **ein** Metall | gōlᵈ ĭst ĭn mᵉ-tăl' | *gold is a metal.* |

*Observations.*—1. There are two sorts of *substantives*, the *substantive proper* or **Proper Name**, and the *substantive common*, also called **Appelative.** The *proper name* is that which is applied to a particular person or thing, as *Robert, Flora, Berlin, Paris.* The *substantive common* is that which belongs to a whole class of objects. Menſch[mënsh], *man*, is a *substantive common* or an *Appelative*, as it is applicable to any individual, viz.: to Albert, or Robert, or Emma.

2. Of the substantives common some are *collective*, and others *abstract.*

*a.* **Collectives** are nouns which even in the singular convey the idea of many or of a *collection* of individuals: eine Armee[ăr-mā'], *an army*; eine Familie[fă-mē'-lyᵉ], *a family.*

*b.* **Abstract** nouns are the names of qualities, actions, conditions, etc., *abstracted* from the objects to which they belong, and considered as having an independent existence, as, *wisdom, folly, beauty, length, surface, etc.*

3. If I say: "I have met **the** man who wishes to see you," I point out a *certain* man; but if I say: "I have met **a** man who wishes to see you," I denote an indefinite man, any one to whom the word *man* is applicable. These words **the** and **a**, which generally precede the *substantive common*, in order to denote it as a *definite* or *indefinite* one, are called **Articles** (14, 2); **the** is called the **definite**, and **a** the **indefinite Article.**

4. *Proper Names*, which by themselves imply a particular person or thing, generally have no article in German as in English.

5. The gender of the nouns is indicated by the endings **r, e, s** of those words which precede the nouns as determinative words of one or the other kind, as:

Der Mann, die Frau, das Haus, *the man, woman, house.*

Dieſer Meiſter, dieſe Mutter, dieſes Brod, *this master, mother, bread.*

Welcher Sohn? welche Tochter? welches Kind? *which son? daughter? child?*

6. The definite article for the masculine is **der**, for the feminine **die**, for the neuter **das.** The corresponding indefinite articles are **ein, eine, ein.**

*Note.* The definite article was originally used as a demonstrative and relative pronoun (of which later), and the indefinite as the numeral (of which later) *one.* They are still used so when receiving a strong emphasis: der Mann—dieſer Mann, *this man*, der alt iſt—welcher alt iſt, *who is old.* Thus in English the definite article was used both as a demonstrative and a relative pronoun, and the indefinite article *an* (a) is developed out of the numeral *one.*

The fuller characteristic terminations for the gender are: for the masc. **er**, for the fem. **e**, and for the neuter **es.** These terminations appearing in the personal pronoun **er, ſie, es** are connected in the definite article with its original stem: **d**=English **th**e (Tab. V. 9); hence der=**d—er**, die=**d—ie**, das=**d—as.**

Not in S. L. ... Reserved



## 7.

Der Bär[bâr], *the bear*
der Mann[măn], *the man*
der Bock[bŏk], *the buck*
der Buſch[bŭsh], *the bush*
der Finger[fĭng'-er], *the finger*
der Huf[hŭf], *the hoof*
der Ring[rĭng], *the ring*
das Kupfer*[kŭp'-fer], *the copper*
das Haus[hous], *the house*
rennen[rĕn'-nen], *to run*
rund[rŭnt], *round*
offen*[ŏf-fen], *open*
jetzt*[yĕtst], *now*

die Pille[pĭl'-le], *the pill*
die Perle[pĕr'-le], *the pearl*
die Linde[lĭn'-de], *the linden(-tree)*
die Roſe[rō'-ze], *the rose*
die Frau*[frou], *the woman*
das Thor[tōr], *the door*
das Neſt[nĕst], *the nest*
das Metall[me-tăl'], *the metal*
das Wetter*[vĕt'-ter], *the weather*
dünn*[dĭn], *thin*
hart*[härt], *hard*
roth*[rōt], *red*
ſchön,* *beautiful, handsome, fine.*

1. Der Bär iſt grau. 2. Iſt der Mann weiſe? 3. Wer iſt alt? 4. Der Bock ſpringt. 5. Der Fiſch ſchwimmt. 6. Alfred ſchlummert. 7. Die Katze iſt hier. 8. Der Buſch iſt grün. 9. Der Finger iſt dünn. 10. Iſt der Huf hart? Ja, er iſt hart. 11. Was iſt rund? Der Ring, die Pille, die Perle, das Neſt. 12. Warum wispert ſie? 13. Iſt nicht das Neſt ein Haus? 14. Warum iſt die Frau nicht hier? 15. Das Wetter iſt nicht ſchön. 16. Wie iſt die Roſe? 17. Sie iſt roth und ſchön. 18. Iſt das Thor nicht offen? 19. Nein, es iſt nicht offen. 20. Was iſt das Kupfer? 21. Das Kupfer iſt ein Metall. 22. Die Linde iſt ein Baum. 23. Roſa iſt jetzt eine Frau. 24. Wilhelm iſt jetzt ein Mann.

## 8

die Natur[nă-tūr'], *the nature*
die Maus[mous], *the mouse*
der Schüler[shēē'-ler], *the scholar*
der Freund[froint], *the friend*
der Baum*[boum], *the tree*
der Wolf[vŏlf], *the wolf*
der Wind[vĭnt], *the wind*
das Bier[bēr], *the beer*
das Haar[hahr], *the hair*
das Linnen[lĭn'-nen], *the linen*
die Lampe*[lăm'-pe], *the lamp*
die See[zā], *the sea*
der Thee[tā], *the tea*
bitter[bĭt'-ter], *bitter*

weit*[vĭt], *wide*
das Horn[hörn], *the horn*
ſehr*[zār,] *very*
voll[fŏll], *full*
welcher, e, es[vĕl'-yer], *what*
was[văs], *what*
der Karpfen*[kärp'-fen], *the carp*
heulen[hoi'-len], *to howl*
ſtürmiſch*[stŭr'-mĭsh], *stormy*
der Stock[stŏk], *the stick*
dick[dĭk], *thick*
der Apfel*[ăp'-fel], *the apple*
die Frucht*[frŭcht], *the fruit*
der Reis[rĭs], *the rice.*

1. The house is wide. 2. The horn is very hard. 3 Is the nest full? 4 Yes it is full. 5. What metal is yellow? 6. Gold is yellow. 7. What is thin? 8. The hair is thin. 9. The linen is white. 10. Is the carp a fish? 11. Yes, it is a fish. 12. Why does the wolf howl? 13. Is a lamp here? 14. No, it is not here. 15. Is the sea stormy? 16. It is stormy. 17. Is the stick thick? 18. It is thin. 19. Is not the apple a fruit? 20. Yes, it is a fruit. 21. Is the rose white? 22. It is red. 23. Is a friend always true? 24. Yes, he is always true. 25. Is not the tea bitter? 26. Yes, it is very bitter. 27. How is the rice? 28. It is white. 29. Is it (the rice) warm? 30. No, it is cold.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Kupfer, copper.** Low Lat. *cuprum;* Gr. *kupros;* probably from Cyprus, once celebrated for its rich copper-mines. Tab. V. 2.

**offen, open** (?). Probably from oben[ō'-bᵉn], **up.** Tab. V. 3.

**jetzt,** *now*, akin to the English **yet.** Tab. V. 8.

**Frau,** *mistress, lady, woman, wife;* from the Goth. *franja;* O. S. *froho, master, lord*, hence Frau, properly *mistress*, akin to frohn, *lordly, holy;* hence Frohnleichnam[frōn"-lī'-nahm], *Christ's holy body;* Frohndienſt, *service due to the lord of the manor, compulsory service.*

**Thor,** *gate,* **door.** A. S. *dor, duru;* Gr. *thura, a door*, allied to Sans *dvar, an opening.* Tab. V. 11 and 38.

**Wetter, weather.** A. S. *weder*; Gr. *aither*; Lat. *æther.* Tab. V. 11.

**dünn, thin.** A. S. *thynne, thin;* Lat. *tenuis;* Sans. *tanu;* Gr. *tunnos, small;* allied to A. S. *thenian* Latin *tendo*, Gr. *teino, to extend, to stretch.* Tab. V. 9.

**hart, hard.** A. S. *heard;* Dutch *hard;* Goth. *hardus.* Tab. V. 11.

**roth, red.** A. S. *red;* Sans. *rohita*, red, *rudhria*, blood. Tab. V. 11.

**ſchön,** *handsome, fair, beautiful;* from the Goth. *skiunan*, to beam, to glitter; related with ſcheinen, *to shine;* A. S. *scinan* to beam, to exhibit brightness.

**Baum,** *tree.* Originally *timber-wood*=**beam.** Tab. V. 38.

**Lampe, lamp.** Gr. *lampas—lampo*, to shine. Tab. V. 32.

**weit, wide.** A. S. *wid.* Tab. V. 11.

**ſehr,** *very.* Originally *to a painful extent;* **sore-***ly;* then in *a high degree, very.* A. S. *sar*, afflictive, severe.

**Karpfen, carp.** Tab. V. 2.

**ſtürmiſch, stormy;** from **Sturm, storm,** from root of **ſtören**[stēā'-rᵉn], to **stir;** Old Germ. *storan*, to move. The adjective suffix **iſch**=the English **ish,** A. S. *isc;* Lat. *iscus*=belonging to, and signifies in general,

*origin, descent, manner:* hündiſch[hün'-dish], (from Hund[hünt], *dog*), the manner of a dog, or *doggish;* diebiſch[dē'-bish], (from Dieb[dēp], thief), *thievish.* This syllable is especially prefixed to Foreign nouns: römiſch[rēā'-mish], (from Rom[rōm], *Rome*), *Roman;* preußiſch[proi'-sish], (from Preußen, *Prussia*), *Prussian;* logiſch[lō'-gish], *logical.*

**Apfel, apple.** Tab. V. 2.

**Frucht, fruit.** Lat. *fructus.* from *fruor, fructus,* and *fruitus,* to enjoy. Tab. V. 30.

## [19.] THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

In German, as in the other languages, the grammatical gender does not always coincide with the natural distinction of sex. At this point we give the general rules for recognizing the gender of nouns, by their *meaning* or their *termination,* leaving to the *Second Course* the more detailed treatment of the subject, especially with reference to the exceptions of these rules. In view of the frequency of such exceptions, the student is recommended to learn with each noun its appropriate definite article.

1. **Masculine are:**

*a.* The substantives which denote a male by *nature,* by *condition,* or *occupation:* Der Sohn, *the son*; der Soldat[sōl-daht'], *the soldier*; der Schuhmacher[shū'-mă"-cher], *the shoemaker.*

*b.* The **larger** and **stronger** animals (including birds and fishes): Der Elephant[ĕ-lĕ-fănt'], *the elephant*; der Tiger[tē'-gᵉr], *the tiger*; der Bär[bāᵉr], *the bear*; der Wolf, *the wolf*; der Adler[ahd'-lᵉr], *the eagle*; der Karpfen, the carp.

*c.* The names of the **winds, seasons, months, days** of the week, and **stones.** Der Nord or Nordwind, *the north-wind*; der Sommer [zŏm -mᵉr], *the summer*; der Januar[yă-nū-ahr'], *January*; der Montag [mōn'-tāᵏ], *Monday*; der Diamant[dī-ă-mănt'], *the diamond.*

*d.* The names of animals ending in **en, er, nk, ling, ing, ig:** Der Karpfen, *the carp*; der Widder[vĭd'-dᵉr], *the ram, wether*; der Fink[fĭnk], *the finch*; der Hering[hā'-rĭng], *the herring*; der Säugling[soiᵏ'-lĭng], *the suckling*; der Sperling[spĕr'-lĭng], *the sparrow*; der Zeisig[tsī'-zĭᵍ], *the siskin, green-finch.*

*e.* Most of the **pure stems,** especially in **ng** and **nk,** and of the lengthened ones with the endings **em, m, en, er:** Der Trank[trănk], *the drink, the beverage*; der Gang[gănᵏ], *the act or mode of going*; der Mord [mōrᵗ], *the murder*; der Garten, *the garden*; der Keller[kĕl'-lᵉr], *the cellar*: der Baum, *the tree, the beam*; der Odem[ō'-dᵉm], *the breath.*

*Note.* Root-forms (§ 4) in use as words, or words formed merely by change of the radical vowel are called *pure stems*. *Lengthened stems* are formed by changing the vowel of the root and the addition of the non-significant affixes el, en, em, er.

*f.* Most of the concrete substantives with the affixes **ling, el, er, en, ig, ich, erich:** Der Schilling[shĭl'-lĭnᵏ], *the shilling*; der Jüngling [yĭng'-lĭng], *youth, young man*; der Klöpfel[klŭp'-fᵉl], *clapper (of a bell)*; der Gärtner[gârt'-nᵉr], *the gardner*; der Gaumen[gou'-mᵉn], *the palate, gum*; der König[kêâ'-nĭᵛ], *the king*; der Moſtrich[möst'-rĭᵛ], *mustard*; der Gänſerich[gän'-sĕ-rĭᵛ], *the gander*.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Of masculine gender are:
The winds, stones, seasons, except **das Jahr** *(the year)*,
The days, months, males and words in **ing**,
In **el, er, en, ig, ich** and **ling**.
Add many words that end in **m**
And most of **monosyllabic** stem.

2. **Feminine are:**

*g.* The substantives which denote a female by *nature*, by *condition* or *occupation*: Die Tochter, *the daughter*; die Hirtin[hĭr'-tĭn], *the shepherdess*.

*k.* The names of the **smaller animals** (*birds*, especially *songbirds*, *insects*): Die Maus, *the mouse*; die Ratte[răt'-tᵉ], *the rat*: die Nachtigall näᶜʰ'-tĭ-găl"], *nightingale*; die Droſſel, *the thrusk*; die Fliege[flê'-gᵉ], *the fly*.

*i.* The names of **forest-trees, fruits** and **flowers** (especially those ending in **e**): Die Eiche[ĭ'-yᵉ], *oak*; die Roſe[rō'-zᵉ], *rose*; die Kirſche[kĭr'-shᵉ], *the cherry*; die Lilie[lē'-lyᵉ], *the lily*.

*k.* The names of rivers terminating in **a, e,** or **au:** Die Elbe[ĕl'-bᵉ], *Elb*; die Donau[dō'-nou], *Danube*. The rivers with other terminations are masculine.

*l.* The names derived from verbs or adjectives ending in **e, d, t, ft:** die Güte[gêê'-tᵉ], *the goodness*; die Schlacht[shläᶜʰt], *the battle* (from ſchlagen[shlah'-gᵉn], *to slay*); die Gabe[gah'-bᵉ], *the gift* (from geben, *to give*); die Jagd[yägᵗ], *the chase* (from jagen, *to chase, hunt*); die Kunſt[künst], *the art* (from können, originally only *to know*, now *to be able, to can*).

*m.* The polysyllabic nouns in general, which, denoting inanimate objects, end in **e** and do **not** commence with the prefix **Ge:** Die Waare [vah'-rᵉ], *ware, merchandise*.

*n.* All words ending in **ie, in, ei, heit, keit, ſchaft, ung, ath, uth, ur, uld, acht:** Die Chemie[yĕ-mē'], *chemistry*; die Freundſchaft[froinᵗ'-shăft], *friendship*; die Hoffnung[hŏf'-nŭnᵏ], *the hope*; die Heimath

[hr'-maht], *home*; die **Armuth**[ăr'-mût], *the poverty*; die **Löwin**[lea'-vin] *the lioness*; die **Reiterei**[rī-te-rī'*], *riding, cavalry*; die **Kindheit**[kint'-hit], *childhood*; die **Dankbarkeit**[dănk'-bahr-kit"], *thankfulness*, die **Tortur** [tŏr-tûr'], *the torture*.

*Take Notice!* All words in **ei** take the accent upon this syllable.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Use femininely **most** flowers and fruits
And forest trees and smaller brutes,
**Most** nouns not denoting males, in **e,**
**ft, ft, cht, end, de** and **te,**
In **ath** and **uth,** and all in **heit,**
In **ei** and **in, ſchaft, ung** and **keit.**

3. **Neuter are:**

*o.* Most **collective** nouns, the nouns of **matter** and more particularly the names of the **metals:** Das Gebirge[g$^{e}$-bīr'-g$^{e}$], *the range of mountains*; das Geräth[g$^{e}$-rāt'], *the furniture*; das Waſſer[vās'-s$^{er}$], *the water*; das Futter[fût'-t$^{er}$], *food for cattle*; das Brod, *the bread*; das Gold, *the gold*; das Eiſen, *the iron*; das Silber, *the silver*.

*p.* The names of **countries, towns** and **villages:** Frankreich [frănk'-rīy], *France*; Berlin[bĕr-lēn'], *Berlin*.

*q.* All words which, without being substantives, are used substantively as abstract or concrete nouns: Das Gehen[gā'-hen], *the going*; das Blau [blou], *the blue*; das Bitter, *the bitter*; das Ja, *the yes*; das Nein, *the no*; das A, das B, *the A, the B.*

*r.* Generic nouns which are used for either sex: Das Kind, *the child* (boy and girl); das Pferd, *the horse*; das Thier[tēr], *the animal.*

*s.* The diminutives in **chen, lein,** and **el:** das Söhnchen[zēan'-y$^{en}$], *the little son*; das Knäblein[knāib'-lin], *the little boy.*

*t.* Almost all nouns ending in **ſal, ſel, thum, tel** and most in **niß:** Das Drittel[drit'-tel], *the third part*; das Räthſel[rāt'-z$^{el}$], *the riddle*; das Chriſtenthum[krīs'-t$^{en}$-tûm"], *Christianity*; das Drangſal[drāng'-zahl], (from Drang, *throng*), *oppression*; das Hinderniß[hin'-d$^{er}$-nis"], *the hindrance.*

*u.* Most of those that begin with the prefix **ge:** Das Gemurmel[g$^{e}$-mûr'-m$^{el}$], *murmur*; das Geheul[g$^{e}$-hoil'], *howling*; das Gebein[g$^{e}$-bīn'], *the bones of an animal*; das Gerippe[g$^{e}$-rip'-p$^{e}$], *skeleton* (from Rippe[rip'-p$^{e}$], *a rib*).

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Employ as neuter all collectives,
With prefixed **ge,** and the diminutives

With affixed **chen**, and **lein** and **el**;
**All** in **thum** and **tel**, and **most** in **niß, ſal, ſel.**
Most names of metals, countries, towns,
And all non-substantives used as nouns.

## [20.] THE GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

1. Compound nouns are mostly formed in the same way as the English words *watchkey*, *townsman*, etc., by prefixing to nouns words of any part of speech (except the Article and Interjection), in order to define or limit them more closely. Of the two members of every compound, the first is the determining or limiting word and always has the principal accent, whilst the second is the fundamental word and decides with but very few exceptions the gender (and the mode of declension) of the compound, as Waſſerglas [vâs'-sᵉr-glâsˇ], *water-glass*; die Feldblume[fêlᵗ'-blûˇ-mᵉ], *field-flower* (das Feld and die Blume); der Feldſtein[fêlᵗ'-stın], *field-stone* (from das Feld and der Stein); die Gartenthüre[gâr'-tᵉn-têêˇ-rᵉ], *the garden-door* (from der Garten and die Thüre).

2. In some cases the first (the limiting or determining) word is joined with the following (the fundamental) one, by means of an **s** (like the so-called Saxon Genitive) as in Geburtstag[gᵉ-bürts'-täkˇ], *birth-day*; Wolfsmilch[völfs'-mılʸ], *wolf-milk*; or it (the first noun) takes the plural form as Blumentopf[blû'-mᵉn-töpfˇ], *flower-pot* (from Blume, plur. Blumen, and Topf).

*Note.* The rule that the compound substantive takes the gender of the last component applies as well to those which, following their meaning, ought to have a different gender from the last word. Thus we say Die Schildwache, *the sentinel, sentry*, although this word indicates a masculine being, and das Frauenzimmer, *the woman* (lit. *woman's room*), although it indicates a female. For the same reason the names of fruit-trees are masculine for their being always compounded with the word Baum (der Baum).

**9.**

der Löwe[lêâ'-vᵉ], *the lion*
brüllen*[brül'-lᵉn], *to growl*
brummen[brüm'-mᵉn], *to snarl*
das Schäfchen*[shâlf'-chᵉn], *the little sheep*
blöken[blêâ'-kᵉn], *to bleat*
der Käfer*[kâr'-fᵉr], *the chafer*
ſummen[züm'-mᵉn], *to hum*
die Lerche*[lêr'-yᵉ], *the lark*
der Rabe*[rah'-bᵉ], *the raven*
krächzen[krâʸ'-tsᵉn], *to croak*
die Glocke[glök'-kᵉ], *bell, clock*
klingen[kling'-ᵉn], *to tinkle, clink*
ſchnattern[shnät'-tᵉrn], *to cackle*
der Froſch*[frösh], *the frog*
das Gänslein*[gäns'-lın], *the little goose*
ſchreien[shrı'-ᵉn], *to cry*
die Nacht[näᶜht], *the night.*

Der Löwe brüllt. Der Ochſe brummt.
Das Schäfchen blökt. Der Käfer ſummt.
Es* heult der Wolf. Die Lerche ſingt.
Der Rabe krächzt. Die Glocke klingt.
Das Gänslein ſchnattert gak, gak, gak!
Der Froſch ſchreit Tag und Nacht quak, quak!

## LEXICOLOGY.

**brüllen,** *to roar.* Dutch *brullen*, Engl, **brawl,** *to make a loud noise.*

**Schäfchen,** *the little* **sheep.** A. S. *sceap*; Dutch *schaap.* Tab. V. 4.

**Käfer, chafer.** A. S. *ceafor.* Tab. V. 15.

**Lerche, lark.** Lit. *the little singer*; Old Engl. *leverock*; A. S. *laferc*, from Old Germ. lären, to sound or sing. Tab. V. 16.

**Rabe, raven.** A. S. *hrefen*; Dutch *raven*, to croak. Tab. V. 6.

**krächzen,** to **croak.** A. S. *cracetan*; Lat. *crocio*; Gr. *krozo*, from the sound. Tab. V. 16.

**Gänslein,** the little **goose.** A. S. *gos*; Ice. *gas*, from gähnen; Gr. *chaino*, to gape, to **yawn.** Tab. V. 26.

**Froſch, frog.** Ahd. and A. S. *frosc*; according to Grimm from Goth. *friskan* (Engl. **frisk**), to leap.

**Nacht, night.** A. S. *niht*; Lat. *nox*, *noctis*; Gr. *nux*, *nuctos.* Tab. V. 18.

## 10.

Arrange these substantives according to the gender, and name them with the definite article.

Biene[bē'-nᵉ], *bee*
Bär[bâr], *bear*
Arm[ärm], *arm*
Freundin[froin'-dĭn], *friend*
Freund, *friend*
Schule[shū'-lᵉ], *school*
Finger[fĭng'-ᵉr], *finger*
Tochter[tŏy'-tᵉr], *daughter*
Metall[mĕ-täl'], *metal*
B and P, *B* and *P*
Nacht[näyt], *night*
Naſe[nah'-zᵉ], *nose*
Böhmen[bēâ'-mᵉn], *Bohemia*
Höhle[hēâ'-lᵉ], *hole, cavern*
Stamm[stăm], *stem*
Rhein[rĭn], *Rhine*
Axt[äxt], *axe*
Knäblein[knâb'-lĭn], *little boy*
Paris[pă-rēs'], *Paris*
Und and Oder, *And* and *Or*

*Es, *it, there.* When one wishes to place the subject *after* the verb, without changing the proposition to an interrogation, es is used as an expletive *subject*, called the GRAMMATICAL SUBJECT, and translated by *there.* Compare der Wolf heult, *the wolf howls*, but es heult der Wolf. Der Knabe ſpringt, *the boy springs*, but es ſpringt der Knabe.

Kupfer[kŭp'-fᵉr], *copper*
Moldau[möl'-dou], *Moldavia*
April[ä-prĭl'], *April*
Kleidung[klī'-dŭnᵏ], *clothing*
Wurm[vŭrm], *worm*
Hoffen[hŏf'-fᵉn], *hoping* (subst.)
Knabe[knah'-bᵉ], *boy*
Häuslein[hois'-līn], *little house*
Bitterkeit[bĭt'-tᵉr-kīt"], *bitterness*
Birne[bĭr'-nᵉ], *pear*
Rubin[rü-bēn'], *ruby*
Gartenbohne[gär'-tᵉn-bō"-nᵉ], *garden-bean*
Blumengarten[blū'-mᵉn-gär"-tᵉn] *flower-garden*
Seeklippe[zā'-klĭp"-pᵉ], *sea-cliff*
Rosenhonig[rō'-sᵉn-hō"-nĭy], *honey of roses*
Brüderschaft[brēē'-dᵉr-shäft"], *brotherhood*
Freundlichkeit[froint'-lĭy-kīt"], *friendliness*
Lähmung[läī'-mŭnᵏ], *lameness*
Hausfliege[hous'-flē"-gᵉ], *house-fly*
Freiheit[frī'-hīt], *freedom*
Gewebe[gᵉ-vā'-bᵉ], *web*
Ochse[ŏ'-xᵉ], *ox*
Gold, *gold*
Deutschland[doitsh'-länᵗ], *Germany*
England[ĕng'-länᵗ], *England*
Adler[ahd'-lᵉr], *eagle*
Hund[hŭnᵗ], *dog*
Haar[hahr], *hair*
März[märts], *March*
Fähre[fäī'-rᵉ], *ferry*
London[lŏn'-dŏn], *London*
Herbst[hĕrpst], *autumn*
Sperling[spĕr'-lĭng], *sparrow*
Jahr[yahr], *year*
Honig[hō'-nĭy], *honey*
Winter[vĭn'-tᵉr], *winter*
Räthsel[räīt'-sᵉl], *riddle*
Pflicht[pflĭvt], *duty*
Tag[täᵏ], *day*
Baum, *tree, beam*
Hammer[hăm'-mᵉr], *hammer*
Säge[zäī'-gᵉ], *saw*
Gebüsch[gᵉ-bĭsh'], *bush*
Lischen[lēs'-yᵉn], *Lizzy*
Mein and Dein, *mine* and *thine*
Schicksal[shĭk'-zahl], *fate, destiny*
Westwind[vĕst'-vĭnᵗ], *west-wind*
Mittel[mĭt'-tᵉl], *means, medium*
Marmor[mär'-mōr], *marble*
Priesterschaft[prēs'-tᵉr-shäft"], *priesthood*
Sturm[stŭrm], *storm*
Sklaverei[sklah-vᵉ-rī'], *slavery*
Neffe[nĕf'-fᵉ], *nephew*
Weltling[vĕlt'-lĭng], *worldling*
Wahrheit[vahr'-hīt], *truth*
Brauerei[brou-ᵉ-rī'], *brewery*
Papstthum[pahpst'-tūm], *papacy*
Wasserlilie[väs'-sᵉr-lē"-lyᵉ], *water lily*
Käfig[käī'-fĭy], *cage*
Seekarpfen[zā'-kärp"-fᵉn], *sea-carp*
Regenwurm[rā'-gᵉn-vŭrm"], *rain-worm*
Weinpresse[vĭn'-prĕs"-sᵉ], *wine-press*
Rothwein[rōt'-vĭn], *red-wine*
Spinnerin[spĭn'-nᵉ-rĭn"], *spinster*
Gärtnerei[gäīrt-nᵉ-rī'], *gardening*
Schwachheit[shväᶜʰ'-hīt], *weakness*
Schwächling[shväᶜʰ'-lĭng], *weakling*
August[ou-gŭst'], *August (name of month)*
August[ou'-gŭst], *August (name of a person)*
Schwarm[shvärm], *swarm*
Irrthum[ĭr'-tūm], *error*
Blümlein[blēēm'-līn], *little flower*
Mittel[mĭt'-tᵉl], *means*

# ALPHABETICAL LIST

*Containing all the new words occurring in the Exercises and explained or referred to in the Lexicology of the Third Letter.*

(The numbers refer to the pages.)

## GERMAN-ENGLISH.

aber, 82
Albert, 79
Alexander, 79
Alfred, 79
alt, 84
Anna, 79
Apfel, 87
auch, 84

Bär, 87
Baum, 87
Bier, 87
bitter, 87
blöken, 92
Bock, 87
brennen, 79
brüllen, 92
brummen, 92
Buſch, 87

Conrad, 79

diebiſch, 89
dick, 87
dünn, 87

Eis, 84
Eiſen, 80
Emma, 82
er, 82
es, 82

Feuer, 79
Finger, 87
Flora, 79
Frau, 87
Freund, 87
friſch, 84
Froſch, 92
Frucht, 87

gähnen, 93
Gänslein, 92
gelb, 84
Glocke, 92
Gold, 79
Gras, 84
grau, 84
grün, 84
Guſtav, 79
gut, 84

Haar, 87
hart, 87
Haus, 87
Heu, 84
heulen, 87
hier, 84
Honig, 84
hören, 80
Horn, 87
hündiſch, 89
Huf, 87
Hugo, 79
hungern, 79

Ida, 79
immer, 84

Ja, 82
jetzt, 87
Joſeph, 84
jung, 84

Käfer, 92
kalt, 84
Karl, 79
Karpfen, 87
klingen, 92
kneten, 82
kommen, 79
krächzen, 92
kränkeln, 80
Kupfer, 87

lächeln, 80
lachen, 82
Lampe, 87
Laura, 79
lernen, 79
Lerche, 92
Linde, 87
Linnen, 87
lispeln, 79
logiſch, 89
Löwe, 92
Luiſe, 79

Mann, 87
Maus, 87
Metall, 87
mild, 84

Nacht, 92
Natur, 87
nein, 80
Neſt, 87
nicht, 79

oder, 80
offen, 87

Perle, 87
Peter, 82
Pille, 87
preußiſch, 89

Queckſilber, 84

Rabe, 92
raſſeln, 82
Reis, 87
rennen, 87
Ring, 87
Robert, 79
römiſch, 89
Roſa, 84
Roſe, 87
roſten, 79
roth, 87
rund, 87

Schäfchen, 92
ſcheinen, 88
ſchnattern, 92
ſchön, 87
ſchreien, 92
Schüler, 87
ſchwören, 82
See, 87
ſehr, 87
ſenden, 82
ſie, 82
Silber, 79
ſingen, 79
ſpinnen, 79
ſpringen, 79
Stahl, 82
ſtammeln, 79
Stock, 87
ſtören, 88
ſtottern, 79
ſtudieren, 87
ſtürmiſch, 87

tanzen, 80
Thee, 87
Thor, 87
thun, 82
trauen, 85
treu, 84
trinken, 80

und, 84
untreu, 84
unwohl, 84

voll, 87

wählen, 87
warm, 84
warnen, 82
warum, 82
was, 82
Waſſer, 84
weiſe, 84
weit, 87
Weizen, 85
welcher, 87
wer, 82
Wetter, 87
wie, 84
wild, 84
Wilhelm, 82
Wind, 87
wiſpern, 79
wohl, 84
Wolf, 87
wollen, 85

zittern, 80
Zucker, 84

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

Albert, 79
Alexander, 79
Alfred, 79
also, 84
always, 84

and, 84
Anna, 79
apple, 87

bear, 87
beautiful, 87
beer, 87
bell, 92
bitter, 87
to bleat, 92
buck, 87

to cackle, 92
carp, 87
chafer, 92
Charles, 79
to clink, 92
clock, 92
cold, 84
to come, 79

Conrad, 79
copper, 87
to croak, 92

to dance, 80
to do, 82
door, 87
to drink, 80

Emma, 82

faithful, 84
fine, 87
finger, 87
fire, 79
Flora, 79
fresh, 84
friend, 87
frog, 92
fruit, 87
full, 87

gold, 79
good, 84
gosling, little goose, 92
grass, 84
gray, 84
green, 84
to growl, 92
Gustavus, 79

hair, 87
handsome, 87
hard, 87
hay, 84
he, 82
to hear, 78
here, 84
honey, 84
hoof, 87
horn, 87
house, 87
how, 84
to howl, 87
Hugh, 79
to hum, 72
to be hungry, 87

ice, 84
Ida, 79
iron, 80
it, 82

Joseph, 84

to knead, 82

lark, 92
to laugh, 82
Laura, 79
to learn, 79
linden, 87
linen, 87
lion, 92
to lisp, 79
Louisa, 79

man, 87
metal, 87
mild, 84
mouse, 87

nature, 87
nest, 87
night, 92
no, 80
not, 79
now, 87

old, 84
open, 87
or, 80

pear, 87
Peter, 82
pill, 87

quicksilver, 84
quiet, 84

to rattle, 82
red, 87
ring, 87
Robert, 79
Rosa, 84
rose, 87
round, 87
to run, 87
to rust, 79

scholar, 87
to send, 82
she, 82
little sheep, 92
silver, 79
to sing, 79
to snarl, 92
to spin, 79
to spring, 79
to stammer, 82
steel, 82
stick, 87
still, 84
stormy, 87
to study, 82
to stutter, 79
sugar, 84
to swear, 82
sweet, 84

tea, 87
thick, 87
to tinkle, 92
tree, 87
true, 84

unfaithful, 84
untrue, 84
unwell, 84

very, 87

warm, 84
to warn, 82
water, 84
well, 84
weather, 87
what, 82
wheat, 85
wherefore, 83
to whisper, 79
white, 84
who, 82
why, 82
wide, 87
wild, 84
William, 92
wind, 87
wise, 84
wolf, 87
woman, 87

yellow, 84
yes, 82
young, 84.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

*Used in the foregoing Letters and throughout the work.*

A. S.—Anglo-Saxon
acc.—accusative
adj.—adjective [bially
adv.—adverb, or adver-
c. of—composed of
comp.—compare
conj.—conjunction
conn.—connected
contr.—contraction or contracted
Dan.—Danish
decl. —declined
dim.—diminutive
e. g.—exempli gratia (for instance)
espec.—especially
etym.—etymology
Engl.—English
O. Engl.—Old English
Ex.—Exercise
fem.—feminine
Fr.—French
Fris.—Frisian
Gael.—Gaelic
Gen.—Genitive
Ger.—German
O. Ger.—Old Germ.
L. Ger.—Low German
Goth.—Gothic
Gram.—Grammar
Gr.—Greek
Ice.—Icelandic
i. e.—(id est) that is
inf.—infinitive
irreg.—irregular
Itl.—Italian
Lat.—Latin
L. Lat.—Low Latin
Lex.—Lexicology
lit.—literally
masc.—masculine
M. S.—Model Sentences
obs.—obsolete
orig.—originally
p.—page
pa. partic.—past participle
plur.—plural
perf. t.—perfect tense
poet.—poetical
pres. partic.—present par-
pron.—pronoun [ticiple
Prov.—Proverb
recipr.—reciprocal
rel.—relative
Sans.—Sanscrit
sep.—separable
insep.—inseparable
sign.—signifying
superl.—superlative
Sw.—Swedish
Switz.—Switzerland
Tab. V.—Tabular View
transp.—transposed
trans.—transitive
intrans.—intransitive.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 2.

1. Robert trinkt. 2. Robert trinkt. 3. Robert trinkt. 4. Lernt Guſtav? 5. Laura lernt; Guſtav lernt nicht. 6. Ida ſingt, und Alfred ſpringt. 7. Albert hört nicht. 8. Kommt Luiſe nicht? 9. Lisbelt Alfred oder Hugo? 10. Roſtet Silber? 11. Eiſen roſtet; Silber roſtet nicht. 12. Stammelt Anna? 13. Laura ſtammelt, und Anna ſtottert. 14. Tanzt Alexander? 15. Alexander ſtudiert, aber Karl tanzt.

## 4.

1. Singt Robert? 2. Nein, er ſingt nicht; er ſtudiert. 3. Was thut Anna? 4. Anna tanzt. 5. Wer ſpinnt? 6. Luiſe ſpinnt, und Ida knetet. 7. Was raſſelt? 8. Wer wispert? 9. Wer kommt? 10. Kommt er nicht? 11. Lispelt ſie nicht? 12 Nein, ſie ſtammelt. 13. Peter warnt, und Wilhelm ſchwört? 14. Wer lacht? 15. Lacht Robert nicht?

## 6.

1. Wer iſt unwohl? 2. Joſeph iſt nicht wohl. 3. Was iſt grün? 4. Gras iſt grün; Heu iſt gelb. 5. Wer iſt jung und wer alt? 6. Wie iſt Eis? 7. Eis iſt immer kalt. 8. Wie iſt Gold, Silber, Eiſen und Queckſilber? 9. Gold iſt gelb, Silber und Queckſilber weiß, Eiſen grau. 10. Warum ſtudiert Anna nicht? 11. Sie iſt nicht wohl. 12. Roſa iſt mild; aber Robert iſt wild. 13. Waſſer iſt nicht immer friſch und kalt. 14. Iſt Wilhelm gut und treu? 15. Er iſt treu; aber er iſt nicht immer gut. 16. Wie iſt Zucker? 17. Zucker iſt ſüß; Honig iſt auch ſüß.

## 8.

1. Das Haus iſt weit. 2. Das Horn iſt hart. 3. Iſt das Neſt voll? 4. Ja, es iſt voll. 5. Welches Metall iſt gelb? 6. Gold iſt gelb. 7. Was iſt dünn? 8. Das Haar iſt dünn. 9. Die Leinwand iſt weiß. 10. Iſt der Karpfen ein Fiſch? 11. Ja, er iſt ein Fiſch? 12. Warum heult der Wolf? 13. Iſt eine Lampe hier? 14. Nein, ſie iſt nicht hier. 15. Iſt die See ſtürmiſch? 16. Sie iſt ſtürmiſch. 17. Iſt der Stock dick? 18. Er iſt dünn. 19. Iſt der Apfel nicht eine Frucht? 20. Ja, er iſt eine Frucht. 21. Iſt die Roſe

weiß? 22. Sie iſt roth. 23. Iſt ein Freund immer treu? 24. Ja, er iſt immer treu. 25. Iſt der Thee nicht bitter? 26. Ja, er iſt ſehr bitter. 27. Wie iſt der Reis? 28. Er iſt weiß. 29. Iſt er warm? 30. Nein, er iſt kalt.

## 10.

| *Masculines.* | *Feminines.* | *Neuters.* |
|---|---|---|
| der Bär | die Biene | das Metall |
| der Arm | die Freundin | das B und P |
| der Freund | die Schule | (das) Böhmen |
| der Finger | die Tochter | das Knäblein |
| der Stamm | die Nacht | (das) Paris |
| der Rhein | die Naſe | das Und und Oder |
| der April | die Höhle | das Kupfer |
| der Wurm | die Axt | das Hoffen |
| der Knabe | die Moldau | das Häuslein |
| der Rubin | die Kleidung | das Gewebe |
| der Blumengarten | die Bitterkeit | das Gold |
| der Roſenhonig | die Birne | (das) Deutſchland |
| der Ochs (Ochſe) | die Gartenbohne | (das) England |
| der Adler | die Seeklippe | das Haar |
| der Hund | die Bruderſchaft | (das) London |
| der März | die Freundlichkeit | das Gebüſch |
| der Tag | die Lähmung | (das) Lischen |
| der Baum | die Hausfliege | das Mein und Dein |
| der Hammer | die Freiheit | das Schickſal |
| der Weſtwind | die Fähre | das Mittel |
| der Marmor | die Säge | das Papſtthum |
| der Sturm | die Prieſterſchaft | das Räthſel |
| der Neffe | die Sklaverei | das Blei |
| der Weltling | die Wahrheit | das Blümlein |
| der Käſig | die Brauerei | das Stöckchen |
| der Seekarpfen | die Waſſerlilie | das Mittel |
| der Regenwurm | die Weinpreſſe | das Jahr. |
| der Rothwein | die Spinnerei | |
| der Schwächling | die Gärtnerei | |
| der Herbſt | die Schwachheit | |
| der Auguſt | die Wiſſenſchaft | |
| der Schwarm | die Schönheit | |
| der Irrthum | die Pflicht | |
| der Sperling | | |
| der Honig | | |
| der Winter. | | |

## [21.] PLURAL OF NOUNS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | Der Wolf heult | völf, hoilt | *the wolf howls* |
| | **die Wölfe heulen** | vül'-fe | *the wolves howl* |
| 2. | das Lamm ſpringt | läm, ſpringt | *the lamb springs* |
| | **die Lämmer ſpringen** | läm'-mer, ſpring'-[en | *the lambs spring* |
| 3. | der Vater kommt | fah'-ter, kömt | *the father comes* |
| | **die Väter kommen** | fäh'-ter, köm'-men | *the fathers come* |
| 4. | die Droſſel iſt ein Vogel | drös'-sel, fö'-gel | *the thrush is a bird* |
| | **die Droſſeln ſind Vögel** | feä'-gel | *(the) thrushes are birds* |
| 5. | die Feder iſt leicht | fa'-der, liyt | *the feather is light* |
| | **die Federn ſind leicht** | | *(the) feathers are light* |
| 6. | der Karpfen iſt ein Fiſch | kärp'-fen, fish | *the carp is a fish* |
| | **die Karpfen ſind Fiſche** | | *(the) carps are fishes* |
| 7. | das Mädchen ſingt | mäh'-yen, zingt | *the girl (maid) sings* |
| | **die Mädchen ſingen** | | *the girls sing* |
| 8. | das Fräulein iſt hier | froi'-lin | *the young lady is here* |
| | **die Fräulein ſind hier** | | *the " ladies are here* |
| 9. | der Knabe liſpelt | knah'-be, lis'-pelt | *the boy (knave) lisps* |
| | **die Knaben liſpeln** | | *the boys lisp* |
| 10. | die Roſe iſt roth | rö-ze, röt | *the rose is red* |
| | **die Roſen ſind roth** | | *the roses are red.* |

*Observations:*—1. The German language has two **Numbers**, a **Singular**—marking one object, and a **Plural**—marking more than one: Lamm[läm], *lamb*; Lämmer[läm'-mer], *lambs.*

2. The *number* is denoted in a more distinct way by **Numerals** (§14, 4).

3. GENERAL RULES on the formation of the *Plural:*

*a.* In forming the plural of nouns of **one syllable**, the **neuters** usually take **er** (M. S. 2), and the **masculines e** (M. S. 1), and in both cases the vowels **a, o, u** and the diphthong **au** take the **Umlaut**:

| MONOSYLLABIC MASCULINES: | | MONOSYLLABIC NEUTERS. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | *Plural.* | *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
| der Wolf (völf) | die Wölfe (vül'-fe) | das Lamm | die Lämmer |
| der Ring (ring) | die Ringe | das Feld (fĕlt) | die Felder |
| der Aal (ahl) | die Aale (ah'-le) | das Haus | die Häuſer (hoi'-zer) |
| der Fiſch (fish) | die Fiſche | das Schwert (shvart) | die Schwerter |
| der Sohn (zön) | die Söhne (zéä'-ne) | das Buch (bûch) | die Bücher (bée'-yer) |
| der Hut (hût) | die Hüte (hée'-te) | das Glas (gläs) | die Gläſer (glär'-zer) |
| der Baum | die Bäume (boi'-me) | das Kind (kint) | die Kinder (kin'-der) |

*b.* **Masculine** and **neuter** nouns of **two** or **more syllables** with the unaccented terminations **el, en, er, chen** and **lein,** take no additional termination, but the vowels are generally modified (M. S. 6, 7, 8).

*c.* **Feminine** nouns on the other hand ending in **el** and **er** take **n** in the plural (M. S. 4, 5).

| DIS- AND POLYSYLLABIC MASC. | | DIS- AND POLYSYLLABIC FEM. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | *Plural.* | *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
| der Vater | die Väter | die Feder | die Federn |
| der Karpfen | die Karpfen | die Nadel | die Nadeln |
| der Vogel | die Vögel | die Droſſel | die Droſſeln. |
| DIS- AND POLYSYLLABIC NEUTERS. | | | |
| das Mädchen | die Mädchen | das Lämmlein | die Lämmlein. |

*d.* Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **e** take **n** in plural and **never** admit the **Umlaut.**

| MASCULINE NOUNS IN **e.** | | FEMININE NOUNS IN **e.** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| der Knabe | die Knaben | die Roſe | die Roſen |
| der Haſe | die Haſen | die Katze | die Katzen. |

*e.* There are important exceptions to the above rules which will be given later in the course in a form for memorizing, and with reference to which it is now sufficient to give the following statements:

There are a small number of monosyllabic and dissyllabic neuters which take **e** without modifying the vowel, as: das Boot, *boat*, plur. die Boote; das Schiff, *ship*, plur. die Schiffe;

And also a few neuters, which have **en** in the plural, as: das Inſect, *insect*, plur. Inſecten; das Bett, *bed*, plur. Betten;

Ten masculines form the plural in **er,** and modify the vowel, as: der Mann, *man*, plur. Männer; der Wald, *forest*, plur. Wälder;

And a few take **es** in the singular and **en** in the plural, as: der Maſt, gen. Maſtes, plur. Maſten; der Staat, gen. Staates, plur. Staaten;

Certain feminines take **e** in the plural and modify the vowel, as: die Maus, *mouse*, plur. Mäuſe; die Sau, *sow*, Säue.

## II.

Sohn*[zōn], *son*
Lamm*[lăm], *lamb*
Schaf*[shahf], *sheep*
graſen[grah'-zᵉn], *to graze*
Bäcker*[bāk'-kᵉr], *baker*
Brauer[brou'-ᵉr], *brewer*
reich*[rīʏ], *rich*
Vogel*[fō'-gᵉl], *bird*
fliegen*[flē'-gᵉn], *to fly*
Feder*[fā'-dᵉr], *feather*
leicht*[līʏt], *light*
Nadel[nah'-dᵉl], *needle*
Feld[fēlᵗ], *field*
hoch*[hōᶜʰ], *high*
Schwert*[shvārt], *sword*
ſcharf*[shärf], *sharp*
Aal[ahl], *eel*
hüpfen*[hĭp'-fᵉn], *to hop*
die Tochter*[tōᶜʰ'-tᵉr], *daughter*
der Freund[froinᵗ], *friend*
der Feind*[fīnᵗ], *enemy*
der Fuchs[fūx], *fox*

ſchlau*[shlou], *sly*
ſchon*[shōn], *already*
Buch*[būch], *book*
Eule[oi'-le], *owl*
Ochs[ōx], *ox*
Kuh[kū], *cow*
Stern*[stĕrn], *star*
ſcheinen[shī'-nen], *to shine*
Lampe[lăm'-pe], *lamp*
glimmen*[glim'-men], *to glimmer*
leuchten*[loiy'-ten], *to light*
nur[nūr], *only*
Lehrer*[lā'-rer], *teacher*
lehren[lā'-ren], *to teach*
Schüler*[shēē'-ler], *pupil*
Sänger[zäng'-er], *singer*
Tänzer*[tän'-tser], *dancer*
eſſen*[ĕs'-sen], *to eat*
nahe*[nah'-he], *near*
hungrig*[hŭng'-rĭy], *hungry*

1. Der Sohn kommt. 2. Die Söhne kommen. 3. Der Bär iſt grau. 4. Die Bären ſind grau. 5. Sind die Roſen roth oder weiß? 6. Der Finger iſt dünn. 7. Die Finger ſind dünn. 8. Das Schaf graſt. 9. Die Schafe graſen. 10. Iſt der Mann ein Müller oder ein Bäcker? 11. Er iſt ein Brauer. 12. Die Müller, Bäcker und Brauer ſind nicht immer reich. 13. Die Nadel iſt dünn. 14. Die Nadeln ſind dünn. 15. Sind die Felder nicht ſchon grün? 16. Die Häuſer ſind nicht immer hoch. 17. Sind die Schwerter ſcharf? 18. Die Lämmer hüpfen, und die Böcke ſpringen. 19. Die Töchter tanzen; die Brüder ſingen; die Väter eſſen; die Mütter trinken. 20. Die Freunde kommen; auch die Feinde ſind nahe. 21. Die Wölfe ſind hungrig und heulen. 22. Die Füchſe ſind ſchlau. 23. Die Eulen heulen. 24. Die Ochſen und die Kühe graſen. 25. Die Sterne ſcheinen. 26. Die Lampen leuchten. 27. Nein, ſie glimmern nur noch. 28. Wer lehrt und wer lernt? 29. Die Lehrer lehren, und die Schüler lernen. 30. Die Sänger ſingen, und die Tänzer tanzen.

## 12.

brauen[brou'-en], *to brew*
zwitſchern*[tsvĭt'-shern], *to twitter*
Bruder*[brū'-der], *brother*
Schweſter*[shvĕs'-ter], *sister*
Droſſel*[drŏs'-sel], *thrush*
Neſſel*[nĕs'-sel], *nettle*
Diſtel*[dis'-tel], *thistle*
Pflanze*[pflän'-tse], *plant*
Rabe*[rah'-be], *raven*
ſtehlen*[sta'-len], *to steal*
Schwalbe*[shväl'-be], *swallow*
Ratte*[rät'-te], *rat*
laufen*[lou'-fen], *to run*
denn*[dĕn], *for*
Affe*[äf'-fe], *ape*
häßlich*[häs'-lĭy], *ugly*
Boot[bōt], *boat*
braun[broun], *brown*
Schiff*[shĭf], *ship*
lang[läng], *long*
breit*[brīt], *broad*
Sonne*[zŏn'-ne], *sun*
flattern[flät'-tern], *to flutter*
backen[bäk'-ken], *to bake*
der Spinner[spĭn'-ner], *spinner*
Spinne*[spĭn'-ne], *spider*
Inſect[in-zĕkt'], *insect*
Knabe*[knah'-be], *boy*

| | |
|---|---|
| Mädchen*[mät'-ʏᴇn], *girl* | Maſt[mäst], *mast* |
| Kind*[kĭnᵗ], *child* | brechen*[brĕ'-ʏᴇn], *to break* |
| fallen[fäl'-lᴇn], *to fall* | Feſſel*[fĕs'-sᴇl], *fetter* |
| Storch*[störʏ], *stork* | Menſch*[mĕnsh], *person* |
| klappern[kläp'-pᴇrn], *to clapper* | raſten[räs'-tᴇn], *to rest* |
| Mühle*[mêê'-lᴇ], *mill* | Bohrer*[bō'-rᴇr], *borer* |
| mahlen*[mah'-lᴇn], *to grind* | bohren*[bō'-rᴇn], *to perforate* |

1. The brewers brew. 2. The birds twitter. 3. The fathers are brothers and the mothers are sisters. 4. What are thrushes? 5. Thrushes are birds. 6. What are nettles? 7. Nettles and thistles are plants. 8. The ravens steal. 9. Do not the swallows twitter? 10. The cats are false. 11. The rats and mice run, for the cat is here. 12. Apes are ugly. 13. Dogs are faithful. 14. The boats are brown. 15. The ships are long and broad. 16. The stars shine. 17. The sun shines. 18. The winds storm. 19. The swallows flutter. 20. The bakers bake. 21. The spinners spin. 22. The spiders are insects. 23. The boys stutter. 24. The girls stammer. 25. The children fall. 26. The storks clapper. 27. The mills grind (mill). 28. The masts break. 29. The fetters rattle. 30. Men rest. 31. The borers bore.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Sohn, son.** A. S. and Old Germ. *sunu*; Sans. *sunu-su*, to beget, bring forth. Tab. V. 30.

**Lamm, lamb.** Tab. V. 36.

**Schaf, sheep.** A. S. *sceap*; Dutch *schaap*. Tab. V. 2.

**Bäcker, baker.** Tab. V. 32.

**reich, rich,** lit. *like a king* in wealth. A. S. *rice*, rich, powerful; Germ. Reich, kingdom; Gael. *righ*, king; Lat. *rego*, to rule. Tab. V. 15.

**Vogel, *bird*, fowl.** A. S. *fugel*. Tab. V. 19 and 36.

**fliegen, to fly.** A. S. *fleogan*. Tab. V. 18.

**Feder, feather, *pen*.** A. S. *fyther*. Tab. V. 9.

**hoch, high.** A. S. *heah*. Tab. V. 16.

**Schwert, sword.** A. S. *sweord*, probably from ſchwären[shvâr'-rᴇn], *to ulcerate*, to give or feel pain, **sore,** hence Schwert, originally the chief weapon of offence, wounding and giving pain. Tab. V. 11 and 9.

**ſcharf, sharp.** Tab. V. 2.

**hüpfen, to hop.** Tab. V. 1.

**ſchon,** *already*, originally the same as ſchön (Ex. 8), a particle of asseveration: *handsomely*, stronger than Engl. *well*, which may also claim a relationship to Latin *belle*, handsomely; most often, *already*, *even*.

**Buch, book,** from die Buche. A. S. *boc*, the beech, because the ancient Germans cut the runic signs, which composed their alphabet, on beechen boards. A *book* contained a number of such boards **bound** together, hence the expression book-**binding**.

**Stern, star.** Old Engl. *sterre*; Goth. *stairno*; A. S. *steorra*; Lat. *stella*, for *sterna* or *sterla*. Tab. V. 26.

**leuchten, to light.** A. S. *leoht, lyht*; Lat. *lux*. Tab. V. 18.

**glimmen, to glimmer,** akin to **gleam.** A. S. *leoman*, to shine. Tab. V. 22.

**nur,** *only, but.* ahd. *nu-er, ni-ware*, originally from *ni wari*, lit. *not were*, or fuller, *if it were not*; comp. the Lat. *nisi*.

**lehren,** *to teach*, comp. **lore.** A. S. *lar*, from root of *learn*.

**Lehrer,** *teach***er.** The suffix **er**=English **er**, forming substantives from verbs and other words, to indicate an *active person* or *instrument*. Compare: *to rob*, raub-en, *the robb***er**, der Räub**er**; *to dance*, tanzen, *dance***r**, Tänz**er**; *to spring*, ſpring-en, *spring***er**, Springer; *to fish*, fiſch-en, *fish***er**, Fiſch**er**; *to drink*, trink-en, *drink***er**, Trink**er**; *to dream*, träum-en, *dream***er**, Träum**er**; thus *lead***er**, Leit**er**; *mill***er**, Müll**er**; *coop***er**, Küf**er**; *hamm***er**, Hammer, etc.

**Schüler, scholar,** *pupil*, from **Schule**[shū'-le], *school*.

**Sänger, singer, songster,** from ſingen, *to sing*.

**Tänzer, dancer,** from tanzen (Ex. 2).

**Bohrer, borer,** through „er," from bohren, *to bore* (see above Lehrer); A. S. *borian*, allied to Lat. *foro*. Tab. V. 32.

**Tochter, daughter.** A. S. *dohter*; Scot. *docter*; Greek *thugater*. Tab. V. 11 and 18.

**Feind,** *enemy*, **fiend.** A. S. *feond—fian*, to hate. Tab. V. 38.

**ſchlau, sly.** Tab. V. 13.

**eſſen, to eat.** A. S. *ettan*; Lat. *edo, esse*; Gr. *edo*; Sans. *ad*, to eat. Tab. V. 10.

**nahe,** *near*, **nigh.** A. S. *neah, neh*. Tab. V. 18.

**hungrig, hungry.** Tab. V. 20. The termination **ig** (from **eig-en, own**) answers to the English *ic, ical* and **y**. It serves for the formation of adjectives from substantives, designating *essence, appurtenance*: dornig [dōr'-nīy], *thorny*; roſig[rō'-zīy], *rosy*; buſchig[bū'-shīy], *bushy*, etc.

**zwitſchern, to twitter.** Tab. V. 8 and 31.

**Bruder, brother.** Lat. *frater*; Sans. *bhratri*. Tab. V. 9.

**Schweſter, sister.** Old Engl. *suster*; A. S. *sweoster*; Sans. *svastri*. Tab. V. 13.

**Droſſel, thrush, throstle.** Tab. V. 9 and 10.

**Neſſel, nettle.** Tab. V. 10.

**Diſtel, thistle.** Tab. V. 9.

**Pflanze, plant.** Tab. V. 2 and 8.

**Rabe, raven.** Tab. V. 6 and 33.

**Schwalbe, swallow.** A. S. *swalewe*. Tab. V. 13 and 6.

**Ratte, rat.** Low Lat. *ratus*, prob. allied to Lat. *rodo*, to gnaw. Tab. V. 32.

**laufen,** *to run*, to **leap,** to **elope,** (**loafer**). Tab. V. 3.

**denn,** *for*, **than,** different from **dann,** *then, at that time.*

**Affe, ape.** Tab. V. 4.

**häßlich,** *ugly*. A. S. **hetelic=hate***ful*. Tab. V. 10. The ending **lich**=English *like, ly* (Tab. V. 16, 20) forms *adjectives* from substantives, adjectives, verbs and adverbs. Added to a verb, **lich** answers to the English suffixes *able, ible, ing*, as in glaub-lich, *believable*; häßlich, lit. *hatable.*

**Schiff, ship.** A. S. *scip*; Old Germ. *skiff*; Lat. *scapha*; Gr. *skaphe*. Tab. V. 4.

**breit, broad,** *wide*. Tab. V. 11.

**Sonne, sun.** A. S. *sunne*; Sans. *sunu*. Tab. V. 32.

**Spinne, spider** (for *spinder*), from ſpinnen, *to spin*. Dan. *spinder*. Tab. V. 26.

**Knabe,** *boy* (**knave,** originally *a boy, a servant*). Tab. V. 6 and 38.

**Mädchen,** *girl*, **maiden.** The suffixes **chen,** and **lein** form diminutive words of the neuter gender; chen=English **kin,** little, as lamb**kin**; lein=English **ling** as dar**ling.**

**Kind, child.** A. S. *cild*, from *cennan*, to bring forth, from root *gan, gin* to beget; Greek, *gonos*, child. Tab. V. 15 and 22.

**Storch, stork,** akin to Dan. *stalken*, to stalk; Fris. *staurke*, to strut, hence Storch, prob. the *strutting bird*. Tab. V. 16.

**Mühle, mill,** from **mahlen,** *to grind*, to **mill,** hence **Mehl, meal,** *i. e.* grain **ground.** Tab. V. 32.

**brechen, to break.** Tab. V. 16.

**Feſſel, fetter,** from **faſſen**[fäs'-sᵉn], *to seize, take hold of*. Tab. V. 10 and 22.

**Menſch, man,** probably *the being that thinks*. Sans. *manushya*, from the root *man*, to think, from which also meinen, *to mean.*

*Questions on the general rules for the Plural of Nouns.*

Tell the difference in forming the plural between the *masculine* and *neuter* nouns ending in **el** and **er**, and the *feminine* nouns with the same endings.

What is the plural ending of most *monosyllabic masculine* nouns?

What of most *monosyllabic neuter* nouns?

What of all *masculine* and *feminine* nouns ending in **e**?

What nouns take no additional endings?

In what masculine and neuter nouns are the vowels generally modified in the plural?

In what nouns are they never modified?

## [22.] THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. THE PRESENT TENSE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Ich bind-e | Iy bĭn'-de | *I bind* |
| 2. Du bind-eſt | dū bĭn'-dest | *thou bindest* |
| 3. er, ſie, es, man bind- | ar, zē, ĕs, măn bĭn'-det | *he, she, it, one* binds* |
| 4. wir bind-en [et | vēr bĭn'-den | *we bind* |
| 5. ihr bind-et | ēr | *you bind* |
| 7. Sie bind-en | zē | *'you† bind* |
| 6. ſie bind-en | | *they bind* |

**lernen** [lĕr'-nen], *to learn.*

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| Ich lern-e, *I learn* | wir lern-en, *we learn* |
| du lern-ſt, *thou learnst* | ihr lernt, *you learn* |
| er, ſie, es, man lernt, *he, she, it one learns.* | Sie lernen, *'you learn* |
| | ſie lernen. *they learn.* |

*Observations.*—1. The inflection which the verbs undergo in order to indicate the different *persons, numbers, tenses, modes*, is called **Conjugation** (Latin *conjungere, to join together*, that is *to bring together* or *to group* the various verb-forms).

---

*man (exceptionally with *short* a, § 9, 2) has proceeded from the substantive Mann, *man*, and is used in the sense of *one, they, people, everybody, all*, just as the French *on* (Old French *om*), from *homme*, man. In Saxon times Mann (written *man* or *mon*) was applicable to both sexes, corresponding to Menſch and used (as now in German) as an *Indefinite pronoun*. Comp. *Earle's Philology of the English Tongue, No.* 33.

† *You*, when it is to be translated by **Sie**, will be marked in the exercises thus: **'you.**

2. The German language employs two means to indicate these different relations: *a.* It simply modifies the form of the Infinitive, especially by replacing the termination **en** by some other termination, as: Infinitive, lernen, Present, lerne, 2nd pers., lernſt, Imperfect, lernte, etc. *b.* It employs certain verbs called **Auxiliaries** (Latin *auxiliare, to help*).

3. The subject of the sentence when represented by a *personal pronoun* is either

*a.* The person (or persons) **speaking**: **ich**, *I*, **wir**, *we*.

*b.* The person (or persons) **spoken to**: **du**, *thou, you*, **ihr**, *you*.

*c.* Persons or things **spoken of**: **er**, *he*, **ſie**, *she*, **es**, *it*, **man**, *one*, **ſie** (plur.), *they*.

4. The forms of the verb used to express the relation of time are called **Tenses** (Latin *tempus, time*). Ich binde, *I bind*, is in the **Present Tense**, which denotes the *present time*.

5. In English there are three forms of the *present tense: a.* I bind (the simple form); *b.* I am binding (denoting that the action is now going on), and *c.* I do bind (the emphatic form). In German the two last forms are not used. [Exceptions concerning the verb **thun**, *to do*, used as an auxiliary, will be given in the **Second Course.**]

6. The relation of person is indicated not only by the personal pronouns, but also additionally by the inflection of the verb, the terminations in the *present indicative** being as follows:

| | *1st pers.* | *2nd pers.* | *3d pers.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Singular.* | **e** | **eſt** or **ſt** | **et** or **t** |
| *Plural:* | **en** | **et** or **t** | **en.** |

7. The vowel **e** in the termination **eſt** and **et** is commonly dropped, unless euphony requires its retention. Thus the **e** of **eſt** is not dropped after **d, t, f, ſ, z**, nor the **e** of **et** after **d** and **t**. Comp. du bindeſt and du lernſt, du ſingſt; er and ihr bindet and er and ihr lernt.

*Note.* The similarity in the form of the English and German present tense is better seen in Old English:

| *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I love | thou loves | he loveth | we loven | you loven | they loven |
| ich liebe | du liebſt | er liebt | wir lieben | ihr liebet | ſie lieben. |

In the modern English all the plural forms have been dropped, and **th** has been changed into **s**, the older form being now only used in more elevated speech, as in worship and in poetry. (Compare Note on page 79.)

8. The **3d person plural Sie** is used in German instead of the 2nd person, either singular or plural (**du** or **ihr**), in addressing a person or

*The explanation of the latter expression will be given later.

persons politely. This formal **Sie** is always written with a capital. The 2nd person (singular and plural, **du** or **ihr**) is used by near relations and very intimate friends.

**13.**

| | |
|---|---|
| hören[hēa'-r$^{e}$n], *to hear* | ſpenden[ſpĕn'-d$^{e}$n], *to spend* |
| danken*[dăn'-k$^{e}$n], *to thank* | mehr[mār], *more* |
| enden[ĕn'-d$^{e}$n], *to end* | genug*[g$^{e}$-nük'], *enough* |
| meinen[mī'-n$^{e}$n], *to mean* | der Onkel[ŏn'-k$^{e}$l], *uncle* |
| ſondern*[zŏn'-ḍ$^{e}$rn], *but* | als*[ăls], *as* |

wie*[vē], *as, like.*

1. Ich ſinge. 2. Du ſingſt. 3. Er, ſie, es, man ſingt. 4. Wir ſingen. 5. Ihr ſinget (or ſingt). 6. Sie ſingen. 7. Du hörſt. 8. Wir hören. 9. Sie hören (2nd p.). 10. Lernſt du? 11. Lernen Sie? 12. Lernen ſie? 13. Nein, ich lerne nicht. 14. Wer lernt? 15. Luiſe lernt. 16. Karl dankt. 17. Er dankt nicht. 18. Warum wiſperſt du? 19. Ich wiſpere nicht. 20. Wiſpert ſie? 21. Auch ſie wiſpert nicht. 22. Anna und Luiſe, wiſpern Sie? 23. Ja, wir wiſpern. 24. Endet das Buch hier? 25. Nein, es endet hier noch nicht. 26. Hört Ihr? 27. Wir hören. 28. Hören Sie? 29. Wir hören nicht. 30. Hören ſie? 31. Sie hören. 32. Wer ſingt? 33. Ich ſinge, und Flora tanzt. 34. Warum tanzt Ihr nicht? 35. Sie meinen, warum tanzen Sie nicht? Wir tanzen. 36. Du bellſt wie ein Wolf. 37. Sie meinen, wie ein Hund; Wölfe bellen nicht, ſondern heulen. 38. Warum ſpendeſt du nicht mehr? 39. Ich ſpende genug. 40. Der Onkel iſt reich; er ſpendet mehr. 41. Stottern ſie nicht? 42. Ja, ich ſtottere, aber nicht ſo ſehr als Karl. 43. Springt man oder tanzt man? 44. Wir tanzen, und die Knaben ſpringen.

**14.**

| | |
|---|---|
| die Mutter*[mŭt'-t$^{e}$r], *mother* | der Räuber[roi'-b$^{e}$r], *robber* |
| hoffen*[hŏf'-f$^{e}$n], *to hope* | rauben[rou'-b$^{e}$n], *to rob* |
| der Vater*[fah'-t$^{e}$r], *father* | der Dieb*[dēᵇ], *thief* |
| ſchießen*[shē'-s$^{e}$n], *to shoot, fire* | denken*[dĕn'-k$^{e}$n], *to think* |
| ſprechen*[ſprĕ'-y$^{e}$n], *to speak* | der Mond*[mōnᵗ], *moon* |
| horchen*[hŏr'-y$^{e}$n], *to hearken* | nun*[nün], *now* |
| grüßen*[grēē'-s$^{e}$n], *to greet* | der Hund*[hünᵗ], *dog* |
| die Maus[mous], *mouse* | bellen*[bĕl'-l$^{e}$n], *to bark* |

1. The mother hopes. 2. Does she hope? 3. Do they hope? 4. Do you (plur.) hope? 5. Do you (thou) hope? 6. Do 'you hope? 7. The fathers and the mothers hope, and we hope. 8. Who

is singing? 9. I sing and the brother sings. 10. Are not the girls dancing? 11. No the girls study, the boys are dancing and springing. 12. Who teaches and who learns? 13. I teach and the scholars learn. 14. Are you (plur.) not fishing? 15. Are 'you shooting? 16. I speak, you (thou) hearken, and he hears. 17. Why do you not greet? 18. Do not the brewers brew and the bakers bake? 19. Wherefore do the mice run? 20. They run, for (the) cats are here. 21. Do the robbers steal and the thieves rob? 22. No, the robbers rob and the thieves steal. 23. What do you (thou) think? 24. What do they think? 25. What do 'you think? 26. I do not think. 27. She is always thinking. 28. People think. 29. One thinks. 30. You (thou) do not think. 31. One sings. 32. They sing. 33. People sing. 34. She does sing. 35. She is singing. 36. Is the child laughing? 37. It is laughing. 38. Do the mice run? 39. They run. 40. Does not the sun shine? 41. It shines. 42. Does not the moon shine now? 43. It does not shine. 44. Is the dog not barking? 45. Yes, it barks. 46. Are the wolves barking? 47. No, the dogs bark; the wolves howl.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**danken, to thank,** allied to denken, *to think, i. e.* to think of a favor and expressing good will or gratitude for it. Tab. V. 9.

**ſondern, but.** from the verb **ſondern, to sunder,** to put **asunder,** *to separate, to make distinct.* **Sondern** is a stronger adversative conjunction than aber (Ex. 3), and is *always* preceded by a *negative* clause, instead of which it is correctively put. In case "but" stands for *yet, however,* use aber, and when for *on the contrary,* use ſondern, *e. g.:* Sie iſt nicht ſchön, **aber** gut, *she is not handsome, but* (=and yet, however) *good.* Sie iſt nicht ſchön, **ſondern** häßlich, *she is not handsome, but* (on the contrary) *ugly.*

**genug, enough.** Tab. V. 24, 21.

**als, as.** Old Eng. *als,* also; A. S. *eall-swa=all-so.* Tab. V. 27.

**wie, as, like.** Ahd. *huieo*; A. S. *hwu, hu*; Engl. *how.*

**Mutter, mother.** Old Engl. *moder*; A. S. *modor,* akin to Latin *mater,* Gr. *meter,* Sansc. *matri-ma,* to produce. Tab. V. 11.

**hoffen, to hope.** Tab. V. 4.

**Vater, father,** lit. the *nourisher*; A. S. *faeder*; Lat. *pater*; Gr. *pater*; Sans. *pitri,* from root *pa,* to feed.

**ſchießen, to shoot,** *to dart.* Tab. V. 10.

**ſprechen, to speak.** A. S. *specan* or *sprecan.* Tab. V. 28.

**horchen, to hearken.** A. S. *heorcnian*; ahd. *horechon*, by means of the ahd. derivative syllable *akh-on*, from ahd. *horan*, our hören, *to hear.* Tab. V. 16.

**Dieb, thief.** Tab. V. 9 and 5.

**denken, to think.** Tab. V. 9. Compare above danken.

**Mond** (Mon, obs., compare Montag, for Mondtag), **moon.** A. S. *mona*; Lat. *mensis*, from the root *ma, to measure, that which measures times.* Tab. V. 34.

**nun, now.** A. S. *nu*; Lat. *nunc.* Tab. V. 26.

**Hund,** *dog,* **hound.** Tab. V. 38.

**bellen,** *to bark,* **to bellow.** Tab. V. 38.

## [23.] PRESENT TENSE OF THE VERB ſein, to be

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Gott iſt! | ist | *God is, exists* |
| 2. Gott iſt heilig | hī'-lĭy | *God is holy* |
| 3. Ich bin glücklich | glĭk'-lĭy | *I am happy* |
| 4. Du biſt ein Kind | | *thou art, you are a child* |
| 5. Wir ſind Mädchen | zĭnt | *we are girls* |
| 6. Ihr ſeid Männer | măn'-ner | *you are men* |
| 7. { Wie alt ſind Sie? | vē, ält | *how old are 'you?* |
| { Wie alt ſind ſie? | | *how old are they?* |
| 8. Iſt ſie reich oder arm? | rĭy, ärm | *Is she rich or poor?* |
| 9. Iſt es hier? | | *Is it here?* |

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| ich bin, *I am* | wir ſind, *we are* |
| du biſt, *thou art* | ihr ſeid, Sie ſind, *you are, 'you are* |
| er, ſie, es iſt, *he, she, it is* | ſie ſind, *they are.* |

*Observations.*—1. An adjective, independent of the noun and used as a *predicate* in the sentence, is called a **Predicative Adjective,** when joined to a noun, an **Attributive Adjective.** In *the man is good,* good is used **predicatively;** in *the good man is here,* good is used **attributively.**

2. The *predicative* form of the adjective is invariable for all genders and numbers, and always accompanies the verb:

Ich bin, er iſt, ſie iſt, ſie ſind **gut.**

3. The verb **ſein**, *to be*, may form by itself both the predicate and copula of a sentence, in predicating the existence of a being: M. S. 1.

For the most part, however, it serves either as a copula, in connecting the predicate of a proposition with the subject: M. S. 2, or it is connected with a verb, in order to *help* to form its *modes* and *tenses*, and is called an **Auxiliary Verb.**

*Note.* The Present Tense of **ſein** forms its persons from two different roots, from the type **b** (to **be**, Lat. **fui**, Greek **phuo**), and the type **ſ** (**is**, Lat. **sum**, Greek **esti**): Ich **bin**, du **biſt**, er **iſt**, wir **ſind**, ihr **ſeid**, ſie **ſind**. (Compare herewith the ancient English form: I be, thou beest, he be, we be, ye be, they be.) In English it is the same. The present tense of *to be* is formed from the fragments of two verbs. See Webster's Dictionary under *Am* and *are*.

## 15

ſo[zō], *so*
wie[vē], *how like, as*
böſe[bēā'-zᵉ], *bad*
die Leiter*[lī'-tᵉr], *ladder*
weder—noch*[vā'-dᵉr—nōᶜʰ], *neither—nor*
der Stammler*[stăm'-lᵉr], *stammerer*
blau[blou], *blue*
Ludwig[lūᵗ'-vĭɣ], *Louis*
faſten[fās'-tᵉn], *to fast*
der Stotterer[stŏt'-tᵉ-rᵉr], *stutterer*
der Mörder[mür'-dᵉr], *murderer*
morden[mör'-dᵉn], *to murder*
hämmern[hăm'-mᵉrn], *to hammer*
der Schmied*[shmēᵈ], *smith*
groß*[grōs], *great, large, big, tall*
der Gärtner*[gârt'-nᵉr], *gardner*
zu*[tsū], *to*
der Flachs[flăx], *flax*
die Schlange*[shlăng'-ᵉ], *snake*
Berlin[bĕr-.ēn'], *Berlin*
die Stadt*[stătᵗ], *town, city*
Spanien[spah'-nĭ-ᵉn], *Spain*
das Land[lăntᵈ], *land*
Aſien[ah'-zĭ-ᵉn], *Asia*
der Welttheil*[vĕlt'-tīl], *continent*
die Eiche*[ī'-ʏᵉ], *oak.*

1. Die Federn ſind leicht. 2. Du biſt nicht ſo leicht wie er. 3. Sie iſt gut, du aber biſt böſe. 4. Die Leitern ſind nicht lang. 5. Iſt die Feder gelb oder grün? 6. Sie iſt weder gelb noch grün; ſie iſt blau. 7. Warum danken ſie nicht? 8. Ich danke ſehr. 9. Ludwig faſtet; faſteſt du auch? 10. Ja, auch ich faſte; wir ſind auch ſehr hungrig. 11. Wer ſtottert ſo ſehr? 12. Ich bin ein Stotterer; auch Karl und Luiſe ſtottern. 13. Die Stammler ſtammeln. 14. Die Mörder morden. 15. Die Bäcker backen. 16. Wer hämmert hier? 17. Ich hämmere nicht; du hämmerſt. 18. Nein, die Schmiede hämmern. 19. Bin ich groß? 20. Ja, Sie ſind groß. 21. Ja, du biſt groß. 22. Sind die Schweſtern groß? 23. Ja, ſie ſind groß. 24. Wer iſt der Gärtner? 25. Ich bin der Gärtner. 26. Wer iſt der Schüler und wer der Lehrer?

27. Sie ſind der Lehrer, und ich bin der Schüler. 28. Ihr ſeid noch zu jung. 29. Wir ſind nicht ſo jung, wie Sie denken. 30. Der Flachs iſt gelb. 31. Das Eiſen iſt ein Metall. 32. Der Käfer iſt ein Inſekt. 33. Iſt der Aal eine Schlange? 34. Nein, er iſt ein Fiſch. 35. Berlin iſt eine Stadt, Spanien ein Land, Aſien ein Welttheil. 36. Was iſt die Eiche? 37. Die Eiche iſt ein Baum. 38. Was iſt die Diſtel? 39. Die Diſtel iſt eine Pflanze, wie die Neſſel.

## 16.

gelehrt[gᵉ-lārt′], *learned*
unwiſſend*[ŭn′-vĭs″-sᵉnᵗ], *ignorant*
krank*[krănk], *sick, ill*
arm[ärm], *poor*
glücklich*[glĭk′-lĭy], *lucky, happy*
liebenswürdig*[lē′-bᵉns-vĭr″-dĭy], *amiable*
willkommen*[vĭl″-kŏm′-mᵉn], *welcome*
läſſig*[lĕs′-sĭy], *lazy, indolent*
fleißig[flī′-sĭy], *industrious, diligent*
kurz*[kŭrts], *short*
das Glas[glăs], *glass*
der Müller[mĭl′-lᵉr], *the miller*
wohlhabend*[vōl′-hah″-bᵉnᵗ], *well off*
ſtark*[ſtärk], *strong*
ſchwach*[shväch], *weak*
wach*[väch], *awake*
ſchwarz*[shvärts], *black*
tief*[tēf], *deep.*

1. Are they learned? 2. They are not learned, but good. 3. They are not learned, but ignorant. 4. He is not rich, but poor. 5. He is not rich, but happy. 6. Are they young or old? 7. They are neither young, nor old. 8. Thou art young, and I am old. 9. She is not young, but amiable. 10. She is not beautiful, but ugly. 11. Are you here? 12. Are 'you here? 13. Are they welcome? 14. The boys are lazy, the girls industrious. 15. How old are you, children? 16. We are ten. 17. Are the days or the nights short now? 18. The days are long, and the nights are short. 19. Are not nests and glasses round? 20. Am I not the father? 21. 'You are the father, and we are the daughters. 22. Are the millers not very rich. 23. They are not rich, but well off. 24. Are you strong? 25. We are not weak. 26. Are 'you awake? 27. I am awake. 28. Are the birds black? 29. They are white. 30. Is the sea not deep? 31. It is deep. 32. Is the chafer brown? 33. It is yellow. 34. The bakers are awake.

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Leiter, ladder.** Tab. V. 11.

**weder—noch,** *neither—nor*; **weder** for originally nĕwĕder or ĕnwĕder, the negative particle nĕ or ĕn having dropped. A. S. *hvæder*; English **whether,** *which of two*; hence **weder** (for nĕwĕder), *neither of two.*

**noch,** *nor*, correlative to weder. Ahd. *noh*, *noch*, from the Goth. *nih*=not, not even.

**Stammler, stammerer,** from ſtammeln, *to stammer*, to *stand* or *halt* in one's speech; akin to ſtemmen, *to halt*. Tab. V. 22. On „er" compare page 103 (Lehrer).

**Schmied, smith.** Tab. V. 13, 9.

**groß, great,** allied to *grow*. Lat. *cresco*. Tab. V. 10.

**Gärtner, gardner,** from Garten, *garden*, lit. *an enclosure*, from Gothic *gairdan*=**gürten**[gïr'-ten], **to gird, girdle,** *enclose*, whence Gothic *gairda*=Gürtel, *girdle*.

**zu, too, to.** Tab. V. 8.

**Schlange,** *snake*, from ſchlingen[shling'-en], *to wind*, **sling,** *turn round*.

**Stadt,** *city, town*, **stead,** from ſtehen[sta'-hen], *to stand*, lit. a *standing place*. Goth. *staths*, place in general. Tab. V. 11.

**Welttheil,** *continent, part* or **deal** of the **world. Theil** from **theilen,** to **deal. Welt,** originally wërlt (the r dropped in German). A. S. *werold, worold*, world, from öld, *age*, and wer, *a man*, hence *age*, then *abode of man*. **Welt** or *world* shows the material world as something existing together with man (mankind).

**Eiche, oak.** Tab. V. 16.

**unwiſſend,** *ignorant, destitute of knowledge*, composed of **un,** on which see Lexicology to Ex. 6, and **wiſſend,** *knowing*, the present participle of **wiſſen,** *to know*, **wit, wot,** from A. S. *witan*, to know.

**krank,** *sick, ill*. A. S. *cranc*; Engl. **crank,** *weak*.

**glücklich, lucky,** *fortunate*, from Glück=Ge-lück, **luck,** *happiness*. Tab. V. 24. The prefix „ge" (Goth. *ga*, ahd. *ka, ki, ke, ga, gi, ge*) answers to the Lat. *co, con (cum)*, English *con=together, with:* Gefährte[ge-fär'-te] (from fahren[fah'-ren], **fare,** *go*), *companion*. It forms a great many *collective nouns:* Geflügel[ge-flëë'-gel] (ge-Flügel=*wing*), birds; Gebirge[ge-bïr'-ge], *mountains*. A very large number of verbs with this prefix express the energetic accomplishment of the action: gehören[ge-hëë'-ren], *belong to*, gebrauchen[ge-brou'-yen], *to employ, use*. On lich, compare p. 104 (häßlich).

**liebenswürdig,** *amiable*, **worthy** of **love** (lieben and würdig).

**lieben, to love.** A. S. *lufian*. Tab. V. 6.

**würdig, worthy,** from **Würde, worth.** Tab. V. 9. On the termination **ig** comp. p. 103 (hungrig).

**willkommen, welcome=come** agreeably to **will** and *wish*.

**läſſig, lazy,** akin to **late,** Engl. *to let*; A. S. *letian*, to retard.

**kurz,** *short*, **curt.** A. S. *sceort*.

**wohlhabend, well** *off, opulent*, a compound expression: **wohl, well,** and **habend, having,** part. pres. of haben, *to have*.

**ſtark**, *strong, stout*, Engl. **stark**, *stiff, gross.* Tab. V. 38.
**ſchwach, weak**, akin to **weich**, *soft*, **weak.** Tab. V. 31, 16.
**wach, awake.** Tab. V. 16.
**ſchwarz**, *black.* A. S. *sweart*; comp. **swarthy, swart.** Tab. V. 8, 38.
**tief, deep.** Tab. V. 11 and 3.

## [24.] IMPERFECT TENSES.

*Model Sentences*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Die Schiffer land-et-en | län'-de-ten | *the skippers landed* |
| 2. Der Knabe bet-et-e | bä'-te-te | *the boy prayed* |
| 3. Der Sturm heul-t-e | hoil'-te | *the storm howled* |
| 4. Die Kinder tanz-t-en | tänts'-ten | *the children danced* |
| 5. du bet-et-eſt | bä'-te-test | *you prayed* |
| 6. du tanz-t-eſt | tänts'-test | *you danced.* |

*Observations:*—1. An action may be stated with reference to time, **Present, Past** or **Future**, as: er fiſcht, *he fishes*; er hat gefiſcht, *he has fished*, and er wird fiſchen, *he will fish*. The forms for the different relations of time are called **Tenses**, *i. e. times.*

2. The principal *tenses* are:

*a.* The **Present.** *b.* The **Past.** *c.* The **Future.**

3. The *tense* is indicated:

*a.* Partly by the *inflection* of the verb, as: fiſch-t, *fishes*; fiſch-te, *fished*; ge-fiſch-t, *fished.*

*b.* Partly by *auxiliary verbs* (§ 22, 2), as: er **hat** gefiſcht, *he has fished*; er **hatte** gefiſcht, *he had fished*; er **wird** fiſchen, *he will fish.*

4. The principal *auxiliaries of time* are the verbs: **haben** [hah'-ben], *to have*; **ſein**, *to be*; and **werden*** [vâr'-den], *to become, to grow.*

5. Those tenses which are formed only by the *inflection* of the verb, are called **Simple Tenses**, and are: *Present*—ich fiſche, *I fish*; *Imperfect*—ich fiſchte, *I fished.*

Those which are formed by the help of *auxiliaries* are called **Compound Tenses**, as: *Perfect*—Ich habe gefiſcht, *I have fished*; *Future*—Ich werde fiſchen, *I shall fish*, and others.

6. Verbs which require the aid of *addition from without to the root*, to form the *Past Tenses* (Imperfect or Past Participle) are called **weak**, in opposition to the **strong** verbs, which express this præterite relation of time *from within, by changing the vowel*, without any addition, as from **ſpringen**, *to spring, Imperfect*, ich **ſprang**, *I sprung*, (*sprang*, obs.); **ſingen**, *to sing, Imperfect*, ich ſang, *I sung or sang.*

*A. S. *weordhan*, a fragment of it in the verb *worth*, *i. e.* to be, to become. See Webster's Dictionary.

7. In the *Imperfect of weak verbs* the root takes the termination **te** (in English **d** or **t**, loved, built), to which are added the personal terminations, M. S. 3, 4, 6. When the root ends in **d** or **t**, the termination **te** is preceded by **e** to keep it audible. M. S. 1, 2, 5.

*Note* 1. Just the same occurs in English where either the **e** of the ending **ed** is not pronounced, or **t** is substituted for the ending, as *lov(e)d*; *bent*, for bended; *gilt*, for gilded; *girt*, for girded.

*Note* 2. The ending te or t (in the past participle) is the remnant of the word that (tat, *did*), formerly appended to the root. In old English the ending of the Imperfect was **de**, as ner-e-**de** (nursed), *preserved*. This **de** represented the primitive **dede—did**: I loved—lufo**de**—I love **did**. Comp. Morris, Outlines, p. 168.

8.

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| Ich lern-**te**, *I learned* | wir lern-**ten**, *we learned* |
| du lern-**teſt**, *thou learnedst* | ihr lern-**tet**, *you learned* |
| er, ſie, es, man lern-**te**, *he, she, it, one learned* | ſie lern-**ten**, *they learned.* |
| Ich ſpend-**e-te**, *I spent* | wir ſpend-**e-ten**, *we spent* |
| du ſpend-**e-teſt**, *thou spentst* | ihr ſpend-**e-tet**, *you spent* |
| er, ſie, es, man ſpend-**e-te**, *he, she, it, one spent* | ſie ſpend-**e-ten**, *they spent.* |

## 17.

| | |
|---|---|
| Deutſchland*[doitsh'-länt], *Germany* | geſtern*[gĕs'-tern], *yesterday* |
| deutſch*[doitsh], *German* | kaufen*[kou'-fen], *to buy* |
| Deutſch,* *German language* | ſchicken[shĭk'-ken], *to send* |
| ſagen*[zah'-gen], *to say, to tell* | wetten*[vĕt'-ten], *to bet* |
| drei* [drī], *three* | Kaffee[kăf'-fā], *coffee* |
| die Stunde*[stŭn'-de], *hour* | Reis[rīs], *rice* |
| der Mönch*[mün], *monk, friar* | träumen*[troi'-men], *to dream* |
| die Nonne*[nŏn'-ne], *nun* | nie*[nē], *never* |
| denken*[dĕn'-ken], *to think* | niemals[nē'-mahls], *never* |
| der Goldſchmied*[gölt'-shmēt], | ſatt*[zăt], *sated, satiated, full* |
| wann ?*[văn], *when?* [*goldsmith* | heute*[hoi'-te], *to-day* |
| reiſen*[rī'-zen], *to travel, set out* | lahm[lahm], *lame* |
| morgen*[mör'-gen], *to-morrow* | irren[ĭr'-ren], *to err, to mistake.* |

1. Die Schüler lernten nicht. 2. Nur Karl lernte. 3. Warum hörteſt du nicht? 4. Ich hörte. 5. Was ſagte der Lehrer? 6. Er ſagte nichts. 7. Die Mädchen tanzten nicht lange. 8. Wie lange tanztet ihr? 9. Wir tanzten drei Stunden. 10. Die Mönche hungerten. 11. Die Nonnen faſteten. 12. Das Eiſen und der Stahl roſten. 13. Roſteten die

Schwerter nicht? 14. Nein, ſie roſteten nicht. 15. Warum heulten die Wölfe ſo ſehr? 16. Ich denke, ſie hungerten ſehr. 17. Sie ſind nie ſatt, ſondern immer hungrig. 18. Warum lerntet ihr nicht geſtern und lernt heute nicht? 19. Wir ſind nicht wohl. 20. Warum tanzte Flora nicht? 21. Sie tanzt nie; ſie iſt lahm. 22. Die Brauer brauten nicht, und die Bäcker backen nicht. 23. Wer lernte, und wer lehrte? 24. Die Lehrer lehrten, und die Schüler lernten. 25. Wer hämmerte geſtern ſo ſehr? 26. Die Goldſchmiede hämmerten. 27. Wer tanzte, du oder er? 28. Er tanzte, und auch ich tanzte. 29. Tanzten Sie nicht? 30. Ich tanze nie. 31. Warum faſteten Sie geſtern? 32. Sie irren; ich hungerte, aber ich faſtete nicht. 33. Warum lernten die Schüler nicht? 34. Die Lehrer lehrten nicht. 35. Wann reiſen Sie? 36. Ich reiſe morgen. 37. Wann reiſte der Vater? 38. Er reiſte geſtern. 39. Wo lernten Sie deutſch? 40. Ich lernte es in Deutſchland. 41. Was ſchickte der Vater? 42. Er ſchickte Kaffee, Thee und Reis. 43. Was kaufte der Onkel? 44. Er kaufte Wein und Honig. 45. Wir ſtudierten, und du träumteſt. 46. Ich ſtudierte geſtern 47 Wer wettete? 48. Karl wettete; er hörte nicht, was der Vater ſagte. 49. Wir wetten niemals.

## 18.

der Donner[dön'-ner], *thunder*
rollen[röl'-len], *to roll*
der Sturm[stürm], *the storm*
weinen*[vī'-nen], *to weep*
reiſen nach, *to set out for*
warnen[vär'-nen], *to warn*
der Weber*[vā'-ber], *weaver*
weben*[vā'-ben], *to weave*
nieſen*[nē'-zen], *to sneeze*
ſo[zō], *so*
freundlich*[froint'-lĭy], *friendly*
ſuchen*[zu'-chen], *to seek*
dort[dört], *there, yonder*
der Schiffer*[shif'-fer], *skipper*
nichts*[nĭyts], *nothing, naught*
heiß*[hīs], *hot*

1. The dogs barked, the wolves howled, and the sheep were grazing. 2. Why do the brewers not brew, the bakers not bake, and the goldsmiths not hammer? 3. The thunders rolled, and the storms howled. 4. Why didst thou weep yesterday? 5. The mother set out for Germany yesterday. 6. I warned, but you never heard. 7. The teacher sneezed, and the scholars laughed. 8. I thanked so friendly, why did you (thou) not thank? 9. What did 'you seek there? 10. We did not seek anything there. 11. When did the skippers land? 12. We were learning. 13. You were dancing. 14. 'You were not laughing. 15. The robbers were robbing. 16. The weavers were weaving. 17. The sheep were grazing, were not the shepherds watching?

18. Did 'you hear* what the men said? 19. Yes, and they heard what I said. 20. Did you (thou) buy paper and pens? 21. I bought paper, but I did not buy pens. 22. Why did she not hear what the teacher was saying? 23. Did Charles study in Berlin or in Leipzic? 24. He studied in Heidelberg. 25. Is the weather very hot in Germany? 26. It is often very hot.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Deutſch,** *German*, derives from the old *thiud, people, nation*, hence the word „Deutſch" means *belonging to the people.* **Deutſche Sprache,** or shortened **Deutſch,** therefore signifies *national or popular* language, in opposition to the official language, which in ancient times was by necessity Latin.

**Deutſchland,** *Germany.* The Romans called the mighty tribes living on the borders of the Rhine and Danube, and formidably known to them for their prowess and war-like virtues, *Germani*, meaning either *warmen*, from German **Wehr**=French *guerre*, war; or more probably "*the shouters*", from Celt. *gairm*, a loud cry.

The German Language is now divided into two branches, the **High-German** and the **Low-German.**

The *High-German Language* embraces:

1. The **Old High-German Language** (Althochdeutſch [ält'-hoᶜʰ"-doitsh]), which flourished from the XI—XII Century.

2. The **Middle High-German Language** (Mittelhochdeutſch [mĭt'-tel-hoᶜʰ"-doitsh]), flourishing from the XIIth Century to the Reformation.

3. The **New High German Language** (Neuhochdeutſch [noi'-hoᶜʰ"-doitsh]), which as the native dialect of Martin Luther, and by his translation of the Bible into it, acquired the ascendancy over all the other German dialects, and possessed itself of the fields of literature and science.

The *Low German Language* comprises:

1. The **Gothic,** from the IV—VIIIth Centuries, in which the most ancient monument of German literature, viz.: a part of a translation of the Bible by Bishop Ulfilas (318—388) is still preserved.

2. The **Old-Saxon** and the **Anglo-Saxon** languages, which form the basis of the modern English dialect.

3. The aforesaid **English** language, which both in grammar and etymology is a pure German tongue.

*In German the second sentence, commencing with **was**, must be separated from the first by a *comma* (,).

4. The **Dutch** and the **Flemish**, spoken in Holland and parts of Belgium ; the **Frisian**, spoken in Friesland, and the so-called **Low-German** dialects (plattdeutſche Mundarten[plät'-doit"-she münt'-ahr"-ten]). Compare Introductory Letter.

**ſagen, to say,** *to tell.* Tab. V. 19.

**drei, three.** Tab. V. 9.

**Stunde,** *hour.* A. S. *stunt*, from Goth. *standan*, to stand, so that Stunde signifies a given *fixed* time.

**Mönch, monk.** Greek *monacos—monos*, alone. Tab. V. 16.

**Nonne, nun,** probably *an elderly lady.* Ital. *nonna*, a grandmother. Tab. V. 32.

**Goldſchmied, goldsmith,** comp. of Gold (Ex. 1) and Schmied (Ex 15).

**reiſen,** *to travel.* A. S. *risan*, to get up, **to rise**; ahd. *reison*=to set out, to depart.

**morgen, to-morrow.** Tab. V. 21.

**geſtern, yesterday.** A. S. *gistran*; Lat. *heri*, for *hesi*, thus *hesternus*. Tab. V. 20.

**kaufen,** *to buy.* A. S. *ceapan*; Goth. *kaupan*, to buy, akin to Engl. **to cope, cheap.**

**wetten, to bet.** A. S. *bad*, a pledge ; Lat. *vas, vadis*, surety. Tab. V. 7.

**träumen, to dream,** akin to Lat. *dormio*, to sleep. Tab. V. 11.

**nie,** *never*, from **ni** or **ne**, old negative particle, and **je**, originally **ie**=*ever*.

**niemals**, from **nie** and **mal**, related with mahlen, *to grind, to divide into small fragments* (from which English **meal** [a part, a fragment, obs.], a portion of food taken at one time, a repast. See Webster).

**ſatt, satisfied, sated.** A. S. *sadian*; Lat. *satis*, to satisfy—*satis*, enough.

**heute,** *to-day.* Ahd. *hiutu*, contraction of *hiu tagu*, on this day (compare the Latin *hodie*, contraction of *hoc die*).

**Donner, thunder.** Tab. V. 11 and 36.

**weinen,** *to weep.* A. S. *van-jan*, to cry, Engl. **whine.** Tab. V. 38.

**Weber, weaver; weben, to weave.** Tab. V. 7.

**nieſen, to sneeze.** Tab. V. 33.

**freundlich, friendly,** c. of Freund (Ex. 8) and lich (Ex. 12, häßlich).

**ſuchen, to seek,** *to search for.* Tab. V. 16.

**Schiffer, skipper,** c. of „er" (Ex. 11) and Schiff (Ex. 12).

**nichts, naught,** *nothing.* Mhd. *nihtes, nihts*, genit ; from the old *ni-icht*, no-thing. Compare Lexicology to Ex. 2.

**heiß, hot.** A. S. *hat*, connected with Lat. *aestus*, heat, Gr. *aitho*. Tab. V. 10.

## [25.] THE PAST PARTICIPLE. THE PRESENT OF haben, to have. THE PERFECT.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Ich habe Bücher | hah'-bᵉ | *I have books* |
| 2. Du haſt Brod | hăst | *thou hast bread* |
| 3. Er hat Häuſer | hăt | *he has houses* |
| 4. Wir haben Gärten | hah'-bᵉn | *we have gardens* |
| 5. Ihr habet Freunde | hah'-bᵉt | *you have friends* |
| 6. Sie haben Feinde | | *they have enemies* |
| 7. Ich habe gebetet | gᵉ-bā'-tᵉt | *I have prayed* |
| 8. Ihr habt gefaſtet | gᵉ-fās'-tᵉt | *you have fasted* |
| 9. Er hat es gehabt | gᵉ-hăpt' | *he has had it* |
| 10. Er iſt hier geweſen | gᵉ-vā'-zᵉn | *he has been here.* |

PAST PARTICIPLE OF haben.

gehabt[gᵉ-hăpt], *had*

PAST PARTICIPLE OF ſein.

geweſen[gᵉ-vā'-zᵉn], *been*

PRESENT TENSE OF haben, to have.

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| Ich habe, *I have* | wir haben, *we have* |
| du haſt, *thou hast* | ihr habet (habt), *you have* |
| er, ſie, es, man hat, *he, she, it, one has* | ſie haben, *they have.* |

PERFECT TENSE OF haben, to have.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich habe gehabt, *I have had* | wir haben gehabt, *we have had* |
| du haſt gehabt, *thou hast had* | ihr habet gehabt, *you have had* |
| er, ſie, es, man hat gehabt, *he, she, it, one has had* | ſie haben gehabt, *they have had.* |

PERFECT OF ſein, to be.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich bin geweſen, *I* have *been* | wir ſind geweſen, *we* have *been* |
| du biſt geweſen, *thou* hast *been* | ihr ſeid geweſen, *you* have *been* |
| er, ſie, es, man iſt geweſen, *he, she, it, one* has *been* | ſie ſind geweſen, *they* have *been.* |

*Observations.—1.* The *Past Participle* adds et (Engl. ed) and the augment ge to the *root* of nearly all the *weak verbs* (§ 24, 6), as from enden [ĕn'-dᵉn], *to end:* p. part. ge-end-et, *ended*; from faſten[fās'-tᵉn], *to fast:* p. part. ge-faſt-et, *fasted*; but usually the e of et drops, hence from fiſchen, *to fish:* p. part. ge-fiſch-t, *fished*; from lernen: p. part. ge-lern-t, *learned.*

*Note.* The P. Participle differs in regard to its ending from the Imperfect, inasmuch as it ends in et, whereas the Imperfect ends in te, just as in Anglo-Saxon the Preterite ended in ed or t, whilst the ending of the Participle was de or te.

*Note.* In the English of the First Period (A. D. 450—1100), the P. Participle was still preceded by the same augment **ge**, especially in the Southern dialect: **gebletsod**, *blessed.* In later times **ge** was softened down to **y** or **i**: **y**broken=*broken*; **i**faren=*gone* (**gefahren**); **y**clad=*clothed.* This augment **ge** in German is also not seldom omitted. (Compare 2.)

2. The augment **ge** is regularly omitted in verbs whose *first* syllable is *accentless*, hence in all verbs beginning with the accentless prefixes: **be, ge, ent** (emp), **er, ver, zer,** or whose root is followed by a foreign termination, especially **ieren** or **ieren,** which, according to p. 22, 10, always requires accentuation, as from **bereiten**[bᵉ-rī'-tᵉn], *to make ready, to prepare*, p. part. **bereit-et** (and not **ge-bereit-et**); from **geloben**[gᵉ-lō'-bᵉn], *to vow*, p. part. **gelob-t** (and not **ge-gelob-t**); from **ſtudieren**[ſtŭ-dē'-rᵉn], *to study*, p. part. **ſtudier-t** (and not **ge-ſtudier-t**).

*Note.* The verb **ſein** has three different roots, of which two are already known to us (comp. p. 110, Note). The Imperfect **war**, *was* and the p. part. **geweſen** are fragments of a third root **was.** Thus we have in the English **to be** at least the fragments of two verbs, whose infinitives in Saxon were **beon** and **wesan.**

3. The *Perfect tense* is formed by the *present* of the auxiliary verbs **haben** or **ſein** and the *past participle* of the principal verb. M. S. 7, 8, 9, 10.

*Note.* The rules for verbs that are to be conjugated with ſein will be given in a future letter.

4. The auxiliary **ſein** is used (instead of *to have* in English) to form the perfect and the preterite forms of the verb **ſein,** *to be.* (*Special Attention* is called to this.)

5. In the **compound preterite** (Perfect and Pluperfect, §26) and **future forms,** the participles and infinitives are placed at the end of principal sentences: M. S. 9, 10.

*Note.* For examples concerning the future forms see four lessons later.

## 19.

| | |
|---|---|
| nirgends*[nĭr'-gᵉnts], *nowhere* | die Sau*[zou], *sow, female pig* |
| krachen*[krä'-ᶜʰᵉn], *to crack, crash* | durſten*[dür'-stᵉn], *to thirst* |
| ſchlecht*[shlĕʏt], *bad, evil, slight* | klar[klahr], *clear* |
| regneriſch*[rāg'-nᵉ-rish], *rainy* | unklar[ün'-klahr], *not clear* |
| der Stier*[stēr], *bull, steer* | müde[mēē'-dᵉ], *tired* |
| der Widder*[vĭd'-dᵉr], *ram, wether* | viel*[fēl], *much* |
| das Schwein*[shvĭn], *swine, hog* | ſauer[sou'-ᵉr], *sour.* |

1. Haſt du heute gefiſcht? 2. Nein, ich habe geſtern gefiſcht. 3. Wer iſt hier geweſen? 4. Ich bin hier geweſen. 5. Du biſt nicht hier geweſen. 6. Wo ſeid ihr geweſen? 7. Wir ſind nirgends geweſen. 8. Warum

habt ihr nicht gelernt? 9. Warum haben Sie nicht gelehrt? 10. Wer hat geſtammelt, der Knabe oder das Mädchen? 11. Haben die Söhne oder Töchter geſtottert? 12. Wer hat gehämmert? 13. Ich habe gehämmert. 14. Haſt du nicht auch gehämmert? 15. Nein, die Männer haben gehämmert. 16. Haben die Müller geklappert? 17. Nein, die Mühlen haben geklappert. 18. Was hat ſo gekracht? 19. Der Donner hat gekracht. 20. Was raſſelt ſo ſehr? 21. Die Feſſeln haben geraſſelt. 22. Sind Wölfe oder Füchſe hier geweſen? 23. Katzen, Mäuſe und Ratten ſind hier geweſen. 24. Iſt das Wetter ſchön oder ſchlecht geweſen? 25. Es war ſehr ſtürmiſch und regneriſch. 26. Haben die Kühe und Ochſen, oder die Böcke und Schafe hier gegraſt? 27. Stiere und Ochſen haben hier, und Lämmer, Widder, Schweine und Säue haben dort gegraſt. 28. Wer hat ſo ſehr gedurſtet? 29. Ich habe gedurſtet. 30. Iſt das Waſſer nicht klar und friſch geweſen? 31. Es war unklar und warm. 32. Habt ihr geſchlummert? 33. Ja, wir waren ſehr müde. 34. Wer hat jetzt gelacht? 35. Wir ſind ſtill geweſen; ich habe nur gewiſpert. 36. Wer hat viel getanzt? 37. Ich habe viel getanzt. 38. Wie iſt der Wein geweſen? 39. Der Wein war gut; doch das Bier war ſauer und ſchlecht. 40. Auch das Brod iſt alt und hart geweſen.

## 20.

wimmern*[vĭm'-mᵉrn], *to whimper*
rudern*[rū'-dᵉrn], *to row, paddle*
der Schäfer*[shâf'-fᵉr], *shepherd*
der Faſttag*[fâst'-tāᵏ], *fast-day*
Frankreich[frănk'-rĭʏ], *France*
plündern[plĭn'-dᵉrn], *to plunder*
drohen*[drō'-ʰᵉn], *to threaten*
warten*[vär'-tᵉn], *to wait*
der Meiſter[mĭs'-tᵉr], *master*
lächeln*[lä'-ʏᵉln], *to smile*
da*[dah], *there*
der Wein[vĭn], *wine*
ſtranden[strän'-dᵉn], *to strand*
ſehr[zär], *very, much, very much*
beten*[bā'-tᵉn], *to pray*
Julie[yū'-lyᵉ], *Julia*

1. Why did (use the Perfect tense in German) the child whimper so much yesterday? 2. It has been unwell. 3. The birds have twittered. 4. Why have 'you laughed? 5. Bertha has laughed; I have studied. 6. Why have the shipmen not rowed? 7. The shepherds rested (perf. t.), and the swine (pl.) and sows grazed. 8. Did (perf. t.) 'you fast yesterday? 9. Why, was yesterday (perf. t.) a fast-day? 10. The enemies have been in France; have they plundered there? 11. Yes, they have robbed and plundered. 12. The teachers threatened (perf. t.), but the scholars did not hear. 13. How long have you been waiting here? 14. Did you (thou) not rest long

enough? 15. Why did you (thou) not study? 16. We were (perf. t.) tired. 17. Has he betted? 18. He has. 19. The fishermen have fasted and prayed. 20. The master has warned, why have you not heard? 21. We have thanked, why have you not heard? 22. Has she danced very much? 23. She has not, she was (perf. t.) too tired? 24. Has the child smiled? 25. It has. 26. Why did (perf. t.) you not hear, when (als) the teacher warned? 27. Why did (perf. t.) you (thou) not learn? 28. The teacher did (perf. t.) not teach. 29. How long have you been in Germany? 30. We have been there three years. 31. Has Flora been sick? 32. Why has she not learned? 33. She was (perf. t.) not sick, but she was (perf. t.) tired, she danced so much. 34. The weather was (perf. t.) very stormy and the ship stranded (perf. t.). 35. We have thirsted very much; the water has not been fresh, and the beer has been warm and sour. 36. Have 'you not had (any) wine? 37. We have not. 38. Where has Julia been? 39. She has been here.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Irgend,** *soever, whatever*, contracted from **je wer-gen,** *wherever*; **wer**=Goth. *hvar*, Engl. *where*; **gen**= Goth. *hun* (= Lat. *cunque*)= **ever.**

**nirgends,** *nowhere*, contracted from ahd. **ni,** mhd. në=not, and **irgend.** Now generally used with the addition of **s: nirgends,** but more common **nirgends.**

**krachen, crack,** from the sound. Tab. V. 10.

**ſchlecht,** *bad*, originally like **ſchlicht,** (**sleek**) *plain, smooth, simple*; now only in a bad sense: *bad, mean, ill*, English **slight.**

**regneriſch, rainy,** from Regen, A. S. *regen, ren*, rain; *rignan, rinan*, Gr. *hraino*, to rain; akin to Lat. *rigo*, to wet (regneriſch for regeniſch, as if supposing a substantive, der Regner, which does not exist); on "iſch" see Ex. 8. Tab. V. 20.

**Stier,** *bull*, English **steer,** with signification somewhat changed. Tab. V. 38.

**Widder,** *ram*, English **wether,** with signification somewhat changed. Tab. V. 38.

**Schwein, swine.** Tab. V. 13.

durſten and **dürſten** (which latter is more correct and more like the English), **to thirst.** Tab. V. 9.

**viel,** *much*. Goth. *filu*, related with **voll, full; fela, feola, fele** (many), were once in common use in English, even as late as the Eighteenth Century. Morris, Hist. Outlines, No. 140.

**wimmern, to whimper.** Scot. *whimmer.* Tab. V. 38.

**rudern,** *to row,* from **das Ruder, rudder,** *oar.*

**Schäfer,** *a pastor,* **shepherd,** from Schaf, *sheep.* The Engl. *shepherd*= Schaafhirt, one who *herds sheep.*

**Fasttag, fast-day,** comp. of Fast, from fasten, Ex. 15, and Tag, *day.* Tab. V. 11 and 20.

**Frankreich,** *France,* properly Reich der Franken, *kingdom of the* **Franks.**

**Reich,** *empire, dominion,* from the Goth. *reiki,* empire; allied with **reich, rich** (p. 102); A. S. *rice,* rich, powerful; Gael. *righ,* king; Lat. *rego,* to rule.

der **Franke,** the **Frank,** a German race, which conquered Gaul, now France, from the Romans.

**drohen,** *to threaten, menace.* A. S. *threagan, threan,* to scold, to vex, to oppress; related with English **throe.**

**warten, to wait.** Ahd. wartên, *to give heed,* to be on the watch, hence Fr. *guard*-er, Engl. **to ward,** related with **wahren,** Goth. *var-jan,* to defend; bewahren, *to beware, save, keep safe.* Tab. V. 28.

**lächeln,** *to smile,* a diminutive verb formed by addition of „el" to the root; lachen (root lach), *to laugh,* lach-**el**-n, *to smile.* Tab. V. 18.

**da,** originally **dar, there.** This original r is preserved in compound words before a vowel, as darin=**dar**—**in**=**therein.** Tab. V. 9.

**beten,** *to pray,* **to bid,** from **bitten,** *to ask, to request.* A. S. *biddian.*

## 21.

Form the Past Participle of:

| | |
|---|---|
| wecken [věk'-ken], *to awake* | hören [hēā'-ren], *to hear* |
| pflanzen [pflän'-tsen], *to plant* | morden [mör'-den], *to murder* |
| fühlen [fēē'-len], *to feel* | sündigen [zün'-dī-gen], *to sin* |
| lieben [lē'-ben], *to love* | rasten [räs'-ten], *to rest* |
| beantworten [be-änt'-vör"-ten], *to answer* | knieen and knien [knē'-en], *to kneel* |
| verdoppeln [vĕr"-döp'-peln], *to double* | küssen [kŭs'-sen], *to kiss* |
| erblinden [er"-blĭn'-den], *to become blind* | rosten [rŏs'-ten], *to rust* |
| dividieren [dĭ"-vĭ-dē'-ren], *to divide* | heulen [hoi'-len], *to howl* |
| meinen [mī'-nen], *to mean* | leiten [lī'-ten], *to lead* |
| nisten [nĭs'-ten], *to nest* | verbessern [fĕr-bĕs'-sern], *to better, improve* |
| gravieren [grä-vē'-ren], *to engrave* | zertanzen [tser-tän'-tsen], *to dance to pieces* |
| | skalpieren [skäl-pē'-ren], *to scalp.* |

## [26.] THE IMPERFECT TENSE OF **ſein, to be,** AND **haben, to have.** THE PLUPERFECT TENSE OF WEAK VERBS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ich **war** hier[vahr], | *I was here* |
| 2. Du **warſt** dort | *You (thou) were there* |
| 3. Er **war** glücklich | *he was lucky* |
| 4. Wir **waren** unglücklich | *we were unhappy* |
| 5. Wo **waren** Sie **geweſen**? | *where had you been?* |
| 6. Ich **war** hier **geweſen** | *I had been here* |
| 7. Was **hatten** die Kinder **gehabt**? | *what had the children had?* |
| 8. Sie **hatten** nichts **gehabt** | *They had had nothing* |
| 9. **Hatten** die Mädchen **geträumt**? | *Had the girls dreamed?* |

*Observations.*

1. THE IMPERFECT OF **ſein.**

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| Ich war, *I was* | wir waren, *we were* |
| du warſt, *thou wast* | ihr waret, *you were* |
| er, ſie, es, man war, *he, she, it, one was* | Sie waren, *you were* |
| | ſie waren, *they were.* |

THE IMPERFECT OF **haben.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich hatte, *I had* | wir hatten, *we had* |
| du hatteſt, *thou hadst* | ihr hattet, *you had* |
| er, ſie, es, man hatte, *he, she, it, one had* | Sie hatten, *you had* |
| | ſie hatten, *they had.* |

2. THE PLUPERFECT OF **ſein, haben,** AND THE WEAK VERBS IN GENERAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich hatte gehabt, *I had had, etc.* | wir hatten gehabt |
| du hatteſt gehabt | ihr hattet gehabt |
| er hatte gehabt | ſie hatten gehabt. |
| Ich war geweſen, *I had been, etc.* | wir waren geweſen |
| du warſt geweſen | ihr waret geweſen |
| er war geweſen | ſie waren geweſen. |
| Ich hatte gefiſcht, *I had fished, etc.* | wir hatten gefiſcht |
| du hatteſt gefiſcht | ihr hattet gefiſcht |
| er hatte gefiſcht | ſie hatten gefiſcht. |

3. The **Pluperfect** is formed by connecting the *past participle* with the *Imperfect* of the auxiliaries **haben** or **ſein**: ich **hatte ge-fiſch-t,** *I had fished*; ich **war geweſen,** *I had been.*

4. The rules 4 and 5, given in the preceding chapter, concerning the Perfect, apply also to this tense.

22.

eßbar*[ĕs'-bahr], *eatable*
trinkbar*[trĭnk'-bahr], *drinkable*
der Boden*[bō'-dᵉn], *bottom*
fruchtbar*[früchᵗ'-bahr], *fruitful*
unfruchtbar*[ün'-früchᵗ"-bahr], *fruitless*
thätig*[tät'-tĭg], *active*
unthätig*[ün'-tät"-tĭg], *inactive*
glücklich*[glük'-lĭch], *happy, lucky*
unglücklich*[ün'-], *unhappy*
ſparſam*[spahr'-zăm], *saving*
dankbar*[dănk'-bahr], *thankful*
undankbar[ün'-], *not thankful*
vorgeſtern*[fōr'-gĕs-tᵉrn], *the day before yesterday*
ſchaudern[shou'-dᵉrn], *to shudder*
der Bettler*[bĕt'-tlᵉr], *beggar*
faul*[foul], *rotten, foul, lazy*
die Woche*[vŏ'-che], *week*
ſieben*[zē'-bᵉn], *seven*
zehn*[tsān], *ten*
zwei*[tsvī], *two*
das Ohr[ōr], *ear*
das Auge*[ou'-gᵉ], *eye*
der Fuß*[fūs], *foot*
die Hand[hänᵗ], *hand*
die Tante*[tän'-te], *aunt*
die Stahlfeder*[stahl'-fā"-dᵉr], *steel pen*
die Goldfeder[gōlᵈ'-fā"-dᵉr], *gold pen.*
fort[fōrt], *off, away, forth.*

1. Hatten ſie gehofft? 2. Wir hatten nicht gehofft; aber wir hoffen nun. 3. Warum ſchaudert die Tante ſo ſehr; waren Wölfe hier? 4. Heute nicht; ſie waren geſtern hier geweſen. 5. Wer hat gewettet? 6. Karl hat gewettet; er hatte nicht gehört, was der Lehrer geſagt (hat). 7. War das Brod friſch? 8. Es war geſtern friſch; aber es war vorgeſtern alt und hart geweſen. 9. Wo haben die Schafe gegraſt? 10. Sie hatten hier gegraſt. 11. Wie hatte er geantwortet? 12. Wie hatteſt du da gelebt? 13. Ich hatte da wie ein Mönch gelebt. 14. Was habt ihr gemacht? 15. Was machſt du hier? 16. Was ſagte das Mädchen? 17. Sie ſchauderte und ſagte nichts. 18. Was hatte er gehabt? 19. Wo waren ſie geweſen? 20. Hatten die Söhne oder die Töchter geſtottert? 21. Die Söhne hatten geſtammelt und die Töchter geſtottert. 22. Der Apfel war nicht eßbar. 23. Das Waſſer war nicht trinkbar. 24. War der Boden fruchtbar? 25. Nein, er war unfruchtbar. 26. Ich war läſſig. 27. Du warſt thätig. 28. Karl war unthätig. 29. Wir waren ſparſam. 30. Ihr waret undankbar. 31. Die Bettler waren ſchlecht und faul. 32. Das Kind hat geweint. 33. Wo waren Sie geſtern? 34. Ich war geſtern in Boſton. 35. Er hatte drei Freunde. 36. Eine Woche hat ſieben Tage. 37. Du haſt zehn Finger, zwei Ohren, zwei Augen, zwei Hände und zwei Füße. 38. Hatten Sie nicht zwei Tanten in New York gehabt? 39. Ich hatte eine Schweſter dort, aber Karl hatte dort zwei Tanten. 40. Wo warſt du ſo lange geweſen? 41. Ich war nicht fort (weg) geweſen; ich war ſtets hier geweſen. 42. Hatteſt du nicht Stahlfedern gehabt? 43. Nein ich hatte Goldfedern.

## 23.

die Birne*[bīr'-nᵉ], *pear*
während[vâ†'-rᵉnᵗ], *while, whilst, during*
noch[nöᶜʰ], *still*
furchtbar*[fürᶜʰᵗ'-bahr], *frightful*
nicht nur—ſondern auch, *not only—but*
der Paſſagier*[päs"-ſä-ſēr'], *passenger*
landen[län'-dᵉn], *to land*
unreif*[ün'-rīf], *unripe*
der Matroſe*[mä-trō'-zᵉ], *sailor*
furchtſam*[fürᶜʰᵗ'-zăm], *afraid*
das Füllen[fül'-lᵉn], *the filly, foal*
ſticken*[ſtĭk'-kᵉn], *to embroider, to stitch*
nähen[nâ†'-ᵉhen], *to sew*
durſtig[dürs'-tĭɣ], *thirsty*
lieben[lē'-bᵉn], *to love*
leben[lā'-bᵉn], *to live.*

1. Was the pear sweet? 2. No, it was still unripe and not eatable. 3. Was the beer good? 4. No, it was sour and not drinkable. 5. The storm was fearful, and not only the passengers, but also the sailors were afraid. 6. We had rested. 7. You have rowed. 8. The ship was stranded. 9. The skippers had landed. 10. The foals spring; they had been grazing. 11. Has Flora been embroidering? 12. No, she has been sewing. 13. The girls had been dancing. 14. Had Louis been rowing? 15. Yes, he rowed. 16. Was the boy hungry or thirsty? 17. He was very thirsty. 18. Was he fishing, whilst I was studying? 19. He fished. 20. Had he been waiting long? 21. Not very long. 22. Have you loved? 23. Had 'you loved? 24. Do you (thou) love? 25. Had he laughed? 26. Has she laughed? 27. Are you laughing? 28. Had they lived here? 29. Had 'you lived there? 30. Had she been in Berlin?

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Eßbar, eatable.** Tab. V. 10. The termination **bar** is derived from **bären** (fuller ge-bären), **to bear,** Goth. *bairan* (comp. die Bahre, *bier*), to carry, to suffer; it forms adjectives from substantives and verbs (and from *one* adjective, offenbar, *manifest, open*), and denotes the *possessing, bearing* or *suffering* of that which the root means, thus: eßbar, what can be eaten, *eatable*; trinkbar, what can be drunk, *drinkable.*

**fruchtbar, fruit-bearing,** *fruitful*; unfruchtbar **unfruit***ful*; for „un" comp. Lexicology to Ex. 16.

**dankbar, thank-bearing,** *thankful.*

**Boden,** *ground, soil,* **bottom.** A. S. *botm*, that on which anything rests or is founded; connected with Latin *fundus.*

**während,** *whilst, during,* properly pres. participle of währen, *to last, dure.* Ahd. *weren*, to remain; Sw. *var-a*; Dan. väre, *to be*; from the type *vas*—weſen, ſein, from which come the English forms *was, wast, were, wert,*

**thätig,** *active,* from **thun, to do.** On „ig" see Lex. to Ex. 12.

**ſparſam,** *saving,* **sparing,** from **ſparen, to spare,** and the suffix **ſam,** from the Goth. *sam,* the same, akin to Latin *similis,* like; **ſam** answers to English *some, ful,* and expresses *likeness, similarity, close connection* or a *disposition* to the action expressed by the primitive word, thus **heilſam, wholesome,** tending or disposed to promote health.

**vorgeſtern,** *day before* **yesterday,** c. of **vor** and **geſtern: vor, before,** in front of, and in specification of time= *ago*; **geſtern, yesterday,** Ex. 17.

**Bettler,** *beggar,* from betteln, *to beg, ask alms*; by means of „el" (Ex. 20, lächeln) from mhd. bëte=Bitte, *demand, request*; Gebet, *prayer,* comp. beten, Ex. 20.

**faul,** *idle, lazy, rotten,* **foul.** Tab. V. 38.

**Woche, week.** A. S. *weoce.* Tab. V. 16.

**ſieben, seven.** Tab. V. 6.

**zehn, ten.** Tab. V. 8.

**zwei, two.** Tab. V. 8.

**Auge, eye.** A. S. *eag*; Lat. *oculus*; Sans. *akshi*; comp. *window*=an *eye* or opening for the wind; Ice. *vindauga.* Tab. V. 19.

**Fuß, foot,** akin to Lat. *pes, pedis*; Gr. *pous, podos,* Tab. V. 10.

**Tante, aunt.** Fr. **tante**; old Fr. **ante**; Lat. *amita*=the father's sister; *tante* (for *ante*) arose from the frequent use of ma ante=my aunt, in which a **t** was inserted for the sake of euphony (as a-t-il). Diez, Wörterbuch 2, 434.

**Stahlfeder, steel** *pen*; c. of **Stahl** and **Feder, steel** and **feather.** Tab. V. 9.

**ſchaudern, to shudder,** for ſchauern, *to shiver with cold* or *dread* (the **d** was inserted in a later period); from the Gr. *skiuran,* to move vehemently; hence der Schauer=Engl. **shower** *of rain,* and more generally what falls copiously and rapidly.

**Birne, pear.** The German Singular is formed from the Plural (mhd. *birn,* plur. of the sing. *bir*), ahd. *pira* and *bira,* Lat. *pirum.*

**unreif, unripe,** c. of „un" (Ex. 16) and reif, *ripe.* Tab. V. 4.

**furchtbar,** *fearful, what must be feared,* **fright***ful.* Tab. V. 18 and 37 c. of Furcht, *fear,* and **bar,** see above.

**Paſſagier, passenger.** Tab. V. 33.

**Matroſe,** *sailor.* Fr. *matelot*; Dan. and Sw. *matros.* Comp. Webster: **Matelote, Matross.** Probably one who sleeps on the **mat** (a coarse cover; Lat. *matta*), *the hammock*; comp. *mattress.*

**furchtſam,** *afraid, timid* (**Furcht** and **ſam**).

**ſticken, to stitch,** connected with **stick.** Tab. V. 17.

**durſtig, thirsty**; c. of „ig" (Ex. 12) and **Durſt, thirst,** and dürſten (Ex. 19). Tab. V. 9 and 20.

**lieben, to love.** (Ex. 16, liebenswürdig.)

**leben, to live.** A. S. *lybban.* Tab. V. 6.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Aal, 100
Affe, 101
als, 107
arm, 111
Aſien, 110
Auge, 124

backen, 101
Bäcker, 100
Bahre, 125
bellen, 107
Berlin, 110
betteln, 126
beten, 120
Bettler, 124
bewahren, 122
Birne, 125
Bitte, 126
bitten, 122
blau, 110
Boden, 124
bohren, 102
Bohrer, 102
Boot, 101
böſe, 110
brauen, 101
Brauer, 100
braun, 101
brechen, 102
Breit, 101
Bruder, 101
Buch, 101
Buche, 103
buſchig, 103

-chen, 104

da, 120
dankbar, 124
danken, 107
dann, 104
darin, 122
denken, 114
denn, 101
deutſch, 114
Deutſch, 114
Deutſchland, [114
Dieb, 107
Diſtel, 101
Donner, 115
dornig, 103
dort, 115
Durſt, 126
durſten, 119
dürſten, 121
durſtig, 125
drei, 114
drohen, 120
Droſſel, 101

Eiche, 110
enden, 107
eſſen, 101
eßbar, 124
Eule, 101

fahren, 112
fallen, 102
faſſen, 104
faſten, 110
Faſttag, 120
faul, 124
Feder, 100
Feind, 100
Feld, 100
Feſſel, 102
Flachs, 110
flattern, 101
fleißig, 111
fliegen, 100
Franke, 122
Frankreich, [120
Freund, 87
freundlich, 115
fruchtbar, 124
Fuchs, 100
Füllen, 125
furchtbar, 125
furchtſam, 125
Fuß, 124

Garten, 112
Gärtner, 110
gebären, 125
Gebet, 126
Gebirge, 112
gebrauchen, [112
Gefährte, 112
Geflügel, 112
gehören, 112
gelehrt, 111
genug, 107
geſtern, 114
Glas, 111
glaublich, 104
glimmen, 101
glücklich, 111
Goldfeder, 124
Goldſchmied, [114
graſen, 100
groß, 110
grüßen, 107
Gürtel, 112
gürten, 112

hämmern, 110
Hand, 124
häßlich, 101
heilſam, 126
heiß, 115
heute, 114
hoch, 100
hoffen, 107
horchen, 107
hören, 107
Hund, 107
hungrig, 101
hüpfen, 100

Inſect, 101
irren, 114

je, 117
Julie, 120

Kaffee, 114
kaufen, 114
Kind, 102
klappern, 102
klar, 119
Knabe, 101
krachen, 119
krank, 111
Küfer, 103
Kuh, 101
kurz, 111

lächeln, 120
lachen, 114
Lamm, 100
Lampe, 101
Land, 110
landen, 125
lang, 101
läſſig, 111
laufen, 101
leben, 125
lehren, 101
Lehrer, 101
leicht, 100
Leiter, 110
leuchten, 101
lieben, 125
liebenswürdig, 111

Mädchen, 102
mahlen, 102
mal, 107
Maſt, 102
Matroſe, 125
Maus, 107
mehr, 107
meinen, 107
Meiſter, 120
Menſch, 102
Mönch, 114
Mond, 107
morden, 110
Mörder, 110
morgen, 114
müde, 119
Mühle, 102
Müller, 111
Mutter, 107

Nadel, 100
nahe, 101
nähen, 125
Neſſel, 101
nicht nur—ſondern auch, 125
nichts, 115
nie, 114
niemals, 114
nirgends, 119
nieſen, 115
noch, 110, 125
Nonne, 114
nun, 107
nur, 101

Ochs, 101
Ohr, 124
Onkel, 107

Paſſagier, 125
Pflanze, 101
plündern, 120

Rabe, 101
raſten, 102
Ratte, 101
rauben, 107
Räuber, 107
Regen, 121
regneriſch, 119
reich, 100
Reich, 102, 122
reif, 126
Reis, 114
reiſen, 111
reiſen nach, [115
rollen, 115
roſig, 103
Ruder, 122

ſagen, 114
Sänger, 101
ſatt, 114
Sau, 119
ſauer, 119
Schaf, 100
Schäfer, 120
Schafhirt, 122
ſcharf, 100
ſchaudern, 124
Schauer, 126
ſchauern, 126
ſcheinen, 101
ſchicken, 114
Schiff, 101
Schiffer, 115
Schlange, 110
ſchlau, 101
ſchlecht, 119
ſchlicht, 119
ſchließen, 107
ſchlingen, 112
Schmied, 110
ſchon, 101
Schule, 103
Schüler, 101
ſchwach, 111
Schwalbe, 101
ſchwären, 102
ſchwarz, 111
Schwein, 119
Schwert, 100
Schweſter, 101
ſehr, 120
ſieben, 124
ſingen, 103
ſo, 110
Sohn, 100
ſondern, 107
Sonne, 101
Spanien, 110
ſparen, 124
ſparſam, 126
ſpenden, 107
Spinne, 101
ſpinnen, 104
Spinner, 101
ſprechen, 107
ſpringen, 103
Springer, 103
Stadt, 110
Stahl, 126
Stahlfeder, [124
Stammler, [110
ſtark, 111
ſtehen, 112
ſtehlen, 101
ſtemmen, 112
Stern, 101
ſticken, 125
Stier, 119
Storch, 112
Stotterer, 110
ſtranden, 120
Stunde 114
Sturm, 115
ſuchen, 115

Tante, 124
tanzen, 103
Tänzer, 101
thätig, 124
Theil, 112
theilen, 112
thun, 125
tief, 111
Tochter, 100
träumen, 114
Träumer, 103
trinken, 103
trinkbar, 124
Trinker, 103

undankbar, [124
unglücklich, [124
unfruchtbar, [124
unklar, 119

unreif, 125
unthätig, 124
unwiſſend, 111

Vater, 107
viel, 119
Vogel, 100

vorgeſtern 124

wach, 111
wahren, 123
wann, 114
warten, 120
weben, 115
Weber, 115
weder—noch, [110
weich, 113
Wein, 120
weinen, 115
Welt, 112
Weltheil, 110
wetten, 114
Widder, 119
wie, 107, 110
willkommen, [111
wimmern, 120
wiſſen, 113
Woche, 124
wohl, 113
wohlhabend, [111
Wörter, 113
würdig, 113

zehn, 124
zu, 110
zwei, 124
zwiſchern, 101


## ENGLISH-GERMAN.


active, 124
afraid, 125
already, 101
bad, 110, 119
to bake, 101
baker, 100
to bark, 107
beggar, 124
Berlin, 110
to bet, 114
big, 110
bird, 100
black, 111
blue, 110
boat, 101
book, 101
bottom, 124
boy, 101
to break, 102
to brew, 101
brewer, 100
broad, 101
brother, 101
brown, 101
bull, 119
but, 107
to buy, 114

child, 102
city, 110
to clapper 102
clear, 119
not clear, 119
coffee, 114
continent, 110
cow, 101
to crack, 119
to crash, 119

dancer, 101
daughter, 100
to-day, 114
deep, 111
diligent, 111
dog, 107
to dream, 114
drinkable, [124

ear, 124
to eat, 101
eatable, 124
eel, 100
to embroider [125
to end, 107
enemy, 100
enough, 107
to err, 114
evil, 119
eye, 124

to fast, 110
fast-day, 120
father, 107
feather, 100
fetter, 102
field, 100
fiend, 103
filly, 125
to fire, 107
flax, 110
to fly, 100
to flutter, 101
foal, 125
foot, 124
for, 101
foul, 124
fox, 100
France, 120
friar, 114
friend, 100
friendly, 115
frightful, 125
fruitful, 124
fruitless, 124
full, 114

gardner, 110
German, 111
German language, 114
Germany, 114
to glimmer, 102
girl, 102 [101
glass, 111
gold pen, 124
goldsmith, [114
to graze, 100
great, 110
to greet, 107
to grind, 102

happy, 111
to hammer, 124
hard, 124 [100
hatable, 104
to hearken, 107
high, 100 [107
hog, 119
to hop, 100
to hope, 107
hot, 115
hour, 114

ignorant, 111
ill, 111
inactive, 124
indolent, 111
industrious, [111
insect, 101
Julia, 120

ladder, 110
lamb, 100
lame, 114
lamp, 101
land, 110
to land, 125
large, 110
lazy, 111, 124
learned, 111
light, 100
to light, 101
to live, 125
long, 101
Louis, 110
to love, 125
lucky, 111

man, 102
mast, 102
master, 120
meal, 104
to mean, 107
to mistake, 114
mill, 102 [114
miller, 111
monk, 114
moon, 107
more, 107
to-morrow, [114
mother, 107
mouse, 107
much, 119
to murder 110
murderer, 110

naught, 115
near, 101
needle, 100
nettle, 101
never, 114
nigh, 103
not only—but, [125
nothing, 115
now, 107
nowhere, 119
nun, 114

oak, 110
only, 101
owl, 101
ox, 101

to paddle, 120
passenger, 124
pear, 125 [125
perforate, 102
person, 102
plant, 101
to plunder, 101
poor, 111 [120
to pray, 120
pupil, 101
rainy, 119
rain, 119
rat, 101
raven, 101
to rest, 102
rice, 114
rich, 100
to rob, 107
robber, 107
to roll, 115
rotten, 124
to row, 120
to run, 101

sailor, 125
sated, 114
saving, 124
to say, 114
school, 103
to seek, 115
to seize, 104
to send, 114
to set out, 114
to set out for, 115
seven, 124
to sew, 125
sharp, 100
sheep, 100
shepherd, 120
to shine, 101
ship, 101
to shoot, 107
short, 111
to shudder, sick, 111 [124
to sing, 100
singer, 101
sister, 101
skipper, 115
slight, 119
sly, 101
to smile; 120
smith, 110
snake, 110
to sneeze, 115
so, 110
son, 100
sour, 119
sow, 119
Spain, 110
to speak, 107
to spend, 107
spider, 101
to spin, 104
spinner, 101
stammerer, star, 101 [110
to steal, 101
steel pen, 124
steer, 119
still, 125
to stitch, 125
stork, 102
storm, 115
to strand, 120
strong, 111
stutterer, 110
swallow, 101
swine, 119
sun, 101
to sunder, 108
sword, 100

take hold, 104
tall, 110
to teach, 101
teacher, 101
to tell, 114
ten, 124
to thank, 107
thankful, 124
not thankful, then, 104 [124
there, 115, 120
thief, 107
to think, 114
to thirst, 119
thirsty, 125
thistle, 101
thorny, 103
to threaten, 120
three, 114
throstle, 104
thrush, 101
thunder, 115

ugly, 101
uncle, 107
unhappy, 124
unripe, 125

to wait, 120
to warn, 115
weak, 111
to weave, 115
weaver, 115
week, 124
to weep, 115
welcome, 111
well off, 111
wether, 119
when, 114
whether—nor, wide, 104 [110
to whimper, 120
wine, 120
yesterday, 114
day before yesterday, 124
yonder, 115.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 12.

1. Die Brauer brauen. 2. Die Vögel zwitſchern. 3. Die Väter ſind Brüder, und die Mütter ſind Schweſtern. 4. Was ſind Droſſeln? 5. Droſſeln ſind Vögel. 6. Was ſind Neſſeln? 7. Neſſeln und Diſteln ſind Pflanzen. 8. Die Raben ſtehlen. 9. Zwitſchern die Schwalben nicht? 10. Die Katzen ſind falſch. 11. Die Ratten und die Mäuſe (p. 100, *e*) laufen; denn die Katze iſt hier. 12. Affen ſind häßlich. 13. Hunde ſind treu. 14. Die Boote (p. 100, *e*) ſind braun. 15. Die Schiffe (p. 100, *e*) ſind lang und breit. 16. Die Sterne ſcheinen. 17. Die Sonne ſcheint. 18. Die Winde ſtürmen. 19. Die Schwalben flattern. 20. Die Bäcker backen. 21. Die Spinner ſpinnen. 22. Die Spinnen ſind Inſecten (p. 100, *e*). 23. Die Knaben ſtottern. 24. Die Mädchen ſtammeln. 25. Die Kinder fallen. 26. Die Störche klappern. 27. Die Mühlen mahlen. 28. Die Maſte (p. 100, *e*) brechen. 29. Die Feſſeln raſſeln. 30. Menſchen raſten. 31. Die Bohrer bohren.

## 14.

1. Die Mutter hofft. 2. Hofft ſie? 3. Hoffen ſie? 4. Hofft ihr? 5. Hoffſt du? 6. Hoffen Sie? 7. Die Väter und die Mütter hoffen, und wir hoffen. 8. Wer ſingt? 9. Ich ſinge, und der Bruder ſingt. 10. Tanzen die Mädchen nicht? 11. Nein, die Mädchen ſtudieren; die Knaben tanzen und ſpringen. 12. Wer lehrt, und wer lernt? 13. Ich lehre, und die Schüler lernen. 14. Fiſcht ihr nicht? 15. Schießen Sie? 16. Ich ſpreche; du horchſt, und er hört. 17. Warum grüßen Sie nicht? 18. Brauen die Brauer nicht, und backen die Bäcker nicht? 19. Warum laufen die Mäuſe? 20. Sie laufen; denn die Katzen ſind hier. 21. Stehlen die Räuber, und rauben die Diebe? 22. Nein, die Räuber rauben; die Diebe ſtehlen. 23. Was denkſt du? 24. Was denken ſie? 25. Was denken Sie? 26. Ich denke nicht. 27. Sie denkt immer. 28. Man denkt. 29. Man denkt. 30. Du denkſt nicht. 31. Man ſingt. 32. Man ſingt, or ſie ſingen. 33. Man ſingt. 34. Sie ſingt. 35. Sie ſingt. 36. Lacht das Kind? 37. Es lacht. 38. Laufen die Mäuſe? 39. Sie laufen. 40. Scheint die Sonne nicht? 41. Sie ſcheint. 42. Scheint der Mond jetzt nicht? 43. Er ſcheint nicht. 44. Bellt der Hund nicht? 45. Ja, er bellt. 46. Bellen die Wölfe? 47. Nein, die Hunde bellen; die Wölfe heulen.

## 16.

1. Sind ſie gelehrt? 2. Sie ſind nicht gelehrt, aber gut. 3. Sie ſind nicht gelehrt, ſondern unwiſſend. 4. Er iſt nicht reich, ſondern arm. 5. Er iſt nicht reich, aber glücklich. 6. Sind ſie jung oder alt? 7. Sie ſind weder jung, noch alt. 8. Du biſt jung, und ich bin alt. 9. Sie iſt nicht jung, aber liebenswürdig. 10. Sie iſt nicht ſchön, ſondern häßlich. 11. Seid ihr hier? 12. Sind Sie hier? 13. Sind ſie willkommen? 14. Die Knaben ſind faul, die Mädchen fleißig

15. Wie alt ſeid ihr, Kinder? 16. Wir ſind zehn. 17. Sind die Tage oder die Nächte jetzt kurz? 18. Die Tage ſind lang, und die Nächte ſind kurz. 19. Sind Neſter und Gläſer nicht rund? 20. Bin ich nicht der Vater? 21. Sie ſind der Vater, und wir ſind die Töchter. 22. Sind die Müller nicht ſehr reich? 23. Sie ſind nicht reich, aber wohlhabend. 24. Seid ihr ſtark? 25. Wir ſind nicht ſchwach. 26. Sind Sie wach? 27. Ich bin wach. 28. Sind die Vögel ſchwarz? 29. Sie ſind weiß. 30. Iſt die See nicht tief? 31. Sie iſt tief. 32. Iſt der Käfer braun? 33. Er iſt gelb. 34. Die Bäcker ſind wach.

## 18.

1. Die Hunde bellten; die Wölfe heulten, und die Schafe graſten. 2. Warum brauen die Brauer nicht, backen die Bäcker nicht, und hämmern die Goldſchmiede nicht? 3. Die Donner rollten, und die Stürme heulten. 4. Warum weinteſt du geſtern? 5. Die Mutter reiſte geſtern nach Deutſchland. 6. Ich warnte, aber ihr hörtet nie (or niemals). 7. Der Lehrer nieſte und die Schüler lachten. 8. Ich dankte ſo freundlich, warum dankteſt du nicht? 9. Was ſuchtet ihr dort? 10. Wir ſuchten nichts. 11. Wann landeten die Schiffer? 12. Wir lernten. 13. Ihr tanztet. 14. Sie lachten nicht. 15. Die Räuber raubten. 16. Die Weber webten. 17. Die Schafe graſten; wachten die Hirten nicht? 18. Hörten Sie, was die Männer ſagten? 19. Ja, und ſie hörten, was ich ſagte. 20. Kaufteſt du Papier und Federn? 21. Ich kaufte Papier, aber ich kaufte nicht Federn. 22. Warum hörte ſie nicht was der Lehrer ſagte? 23. Studierte Karl in Berlin oder in Leipzig? 24. Er ſtudierte in Heidelberg. 25. Iſt das Wetter ſehr heiß in Deutſchland? 26. Es iſt oft ſehr heiß.

## 20.

1. Warum hat das Kind geſtern ſo ſehr gewimmert? 2. Es iſt unwohl geweſen. 3. Die Vögel haben gezwitſchert. 4. Warum haben Sie gelacht? 5. Bertha hat gelacht; ich habe ſtudiert. 6. Warum haben die Schiffer nicht gerudert? 7. Die Schäfer haben geraſtet, und die Schweine und Säue graſten. 8. Haben ſie geſtern gefaſtet? 9. Warum? war geſtern ein Faſttag? 10. Die Feinde ſind in Frankreich geweſen; haben ſie dort geplündert? 11. Ja, ſie haben geraubt und geplündert. 12. Die Lehrer haben gedroht, aber die Schüler hörten nicht. 13. Wie lange haben Sie hier gewartet? 14. Haſt du nicht lange genug geraſtet? 15. Warum ſtudierteſt du nicht? 16. Wir ſind müde geweſen. 17. Hat er gewettet? 18. Er hat gewettet. 19. Die Fiſcher haben gefaſtet und gebetet. 20. Der Meiſter hat gewarnt; warum habt ihr nicht gehört? 21. Wir haben gedankt; warum habt ihr nicht gehört? 22. Hat ſie ſehr viel getanzt? 23. Sie hat nicht getanzt; ſie iſt zu müde geweſen. 24. Hat das Kind gelächelt? 25. Es hat gelächelt. 26. Warum habt ihr nicht gehört, als der Lehrer warnte? 27. Warum haſt du nicht gelernt? 28. Der Lehrer hat nicht gelehrt. 29. Wie lange ſeid ihr in Deutſchland geweſen? 30. Wir ſind drei Jahre da (or dort)

geweſen. 31. Iſt Flora krank geweſen? 32. Warum hat ſie nicht gelernt? 33. Sie iſt nicht krank geweſen, aber ſie iſt müde geweſen; ſie tanzte ſo viel. 34. Das Wetter iſt ſehr ſtürmiſch geweſen und das Schiff iſt geſtrandet. 35. Wir haben ſehr gedurſtet; das Waſſer iſt nicht friſch geweſen, und das Bier iſt warm und ſauer geweſen. 36. Haben Sie nicht Wein gehabt? 37. Wir haben nicht. 38. Wo iſt Julie geweſen? 39. Sie iſt hier geweſen.

## 21.

Gewedt, gepflanzt, gefühlt, geliebt, beantwortet, verdoppelt, erblindet, dividiert, gemeint, geniſtet, gehört, gemordet, geſündigt, geraſtet, gekniet, geküßt, geroſtet, geheult, geleitet, verbeſſert, zertanzt, graviert, ſcalpiert.

## 23.

1. War die Birne ſüß? 2. Nein, ſie war noch unreif und nicht eßbar. 3. War das Bier gut? 4. Nein, es war ſauer und nicht trinkbar. 5. Der Sturm war furchtbar, und nicht nur die Paſſagiere, ſondern auch die Matroſen waren furchtſam. 6. Wir hatten geraſtet. 7. Ihr habt gerudert. 8. Das Schiff war geſtrandet. 9. Die Schiffer hatten gelandet. 10. Die Füllen ſpringen; ſie hatten gegraſt. 11. Hat Flora geſtickt? 12. Nein, ſie hat genäht. 13. Die Mädchen hatten getanzt. 14. Hat Ludwig gerudert? 15. Ja, er ruderte. 16. War der Knabe hungrig oder durſtig? 17. Er war ſehr durſtig. 18. Fiſchte er, während ich ſtudierte? 19. Er fiſchte. 20. Hatte er lange gewartet? 21. Nicht ſehr lange. 22. Habt ihr geliebt? 23. Hatten Sie geliebt? 24. Liebſt du? 25. Hatte er gelacht? 26. Hat ſie gelacht? 27. Lacht ihr? 28. Hatten ſie hier gelebt? 29. Hatten ſie dort gelebt? 30. War ſie in Berlin geweſen?

## [27.] THE AUXILIARY **werden, to become, to get.** (OLD ENGLISH **worth.**)

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Ich **werde** reich | vär'-de | *I become rich* |
| 2. du **wirſt** arm | virst | *thou becomest poor* |
| 3. er **wird** weiſe | virt | *he becomes wise* |
| 4. Wir **werden** müde | vär'-den | *we become tired* |
| 5. Karl **wird** Soldat | | *Charles becomes* (*a*) *soldier* |
| 6. Der Vater **war** Pfarrer **geweſen** | gᵉ-vä'-zᵉn | *the father had been* (*a*) *preacher* |
| 7. Die Knaben **wurden** krank | vür'-den | *the boys became sick* |
| 8. Er **iſt** Lehrer **geworden** | gᵉ-vör'-dᵉn | *he has become* (*a*) *teacher* |
| 9. Sie **war** unglücklich **geworden** | | *she had become unlucky.* |

*Observations.*

1. **werden, to become, to get.**

| *Present Tense.* | *Imperfect.* |
|---|---|
| Ich werde, *I become* | Ich wurde, *I became* |
| du wirſt, *thou becomest* | du wurdeſt, *thou becamest* |
| er, ſie, es, man wird, *he, she, it, one becomes* | er, ſie, es, man wurde, *he, she, it, one became* |
| wir werden, *we become* | wir wurden, *we became* |
| ihr werdet, *you become* | ihr wurdet, *you became* |
| ſie werden, *they become* | ſie wurden, *they became.* |

*Past Participle:* **geworden, become.**

| *Perfect.* | *Pluperfect.* |
|---|---|
| Ich **bin** geworden, *I* **have** *become* | Ich **war** geworden, *I* **had** *become* |
| du biſt geworden, *thou hast become* | du warſt geworden, *thou hadst become* |
| er, ſie, es, man iſt geworden, *he, she, it, one has become* | er, ſie, es, man war geworden, *he, she, it, one had become* |
| wir ſind geworden, *we have become* | wir waren geworden, *we had become* |
| ihr ſeid geworden, *you have become* | ihr waret geworden, *you had become* |
| ſie ſind geworden, *they have become* | ſie waren geworden, *they had become.* |

2. The compound preterite forms of **werden** and **ſein** (§ 25, 4) **are conjugated with ſein,** and not with haben as in English: I **have** become, ich **bin** geworden; I **had** become, ich **war** geworden.

3. The form which the noun takes when it is the subject of the phrase is called the **Nominative** (Latin *nominare*, to name). It answers to the questions *Who? What?*

4. When the Predicate is formed by one of the two auxiliaries, **ſein,** *to be*, and **werden,** *to become*, and a noun, the latter stands also in the Nominative: Karl (Nominative as Subject) wurde Arzt (Nominative as Predicate). Der Vater (Nom.) war Pfarrer (Nom.) geweſen. Wilhelm (Nom.) iſt Soldat (Nom.) geworden. M. S. 5, 6, 8.

*Note.* There are a few other verbs governing two nominatives, which will be given in the Second Course.

5. The indefinite article is often omitted in German, particularly before predicative nouns indicating the station or profession of the subject. M. S. 5, 6, 8.

## 24.

der Pfarrer*[pfär'-rer], *parson, clergyman, minister*
recht*[rĕvt], *right*, adv. *very*
die Luft*[lůft], *air, atmosphere*
kühl*[kēēl], *cool, fresh*
froh*[frō], *gay, joyful*
ſchläfrig*[shlāf'-rig], *sleepy*
traurig*[trou'-rig], *sad, dreary*
ungehorſam*[ůn'-gᵉ-hōr'-zām], *disobedient*
fleißig*[flī'-sig], *diligent*
der Soldat*[zōl-daht'], *soldier*
der Arzt*[ahrtst], *physician*
Franz[fränts], *Francis*
taub*[toup], *deaf*
Bertha[bĕr'-tah], *Bertha*
blind[blint], *blind*
trüb*[trēēp], *dim, turbid*
das Papier[pä-pēr'], *paper*
ſchmutzig*[shmůt'-tsig], *dirty*
durch[dürg], *by, through*
der Fleiß, *diligence, industry*
die Sparſamkeit*[spahr'-zām-kīt'], *economy, savingness*
der Nachbar[näch'-bahr], *neighbor*
die Faulheit*[foul'-hīt], *indolence, laziness.*
bald[bält], *soon.*

1. Werdet ihr reich? 2. Die Füllen wurden durſtig. 3. Der Apfel war ſauer; er wurde ſüß. 4. Der Sohn wird Lehrer. 5. Der Vater war Pfarrer geweſen. 6. Ich werde alt, aber nicht reich. 7. Amalie wird recht groß. 8. Auch du wirſt groß. 9. Sie wurde ſehr unglücklich. 10. Die Luft wird kühl. 11. Wir werden nicht froh. 12. Die Kinder ſind froh geweſen. 13. Ich wurde unglücklich. 14. Sie iſt nicht alt geworden. 15. Der Kaffee iſt nicht ſüß geworden. 16. Wir ſind ſchläfrig geworden. 17. Sind Sie traurig geweſen? 18. Sind ſie traurig geworden? 19. Das Land wurde fruchtbar. 20. Die Schüler ſind jetzt recht ungehorſam geworden. 21. Die Schüler waren fleißig, und ſie ſind jetzt faul und ungehorſam geworden. 22. Iſt nicht der Wein ſauer geworden? 23. Was iſt Wilhelm geworden? 24. Er iſt Soldat geworden. 25. Karl wurde Arzt und Franz Gärtner. 26. Warum habt ihr nicht gehört? 27. Seid ihr taub geworden? 28. Bertha iſt ſehr unglücklich; ſie iſt blind geworden. 29. Haben die Mädchen oder die Knaben hier getanzt? 30. Die Knaben haben getanzt und ſind recht müde geworden. 31. Das Waſſer war klar; es wurde trübe. 32. Das Kind wurde ſchläfrig. 33. Er wird nie alt. 34. Das Papier iſt ſchmutzig geworden. 35. Er iſt durch Fleiß und Sparſamkeit reich geworden. 36. Der Nachbar wurde durch Faulheit arm. 37. Das Mädchen iſt ſehr krank geworden. 38. Wer iſt ſchläfrig geworden? 39. Iſt das Wetter noch kalt? 40. Nein, es iſt warm geworden. 41. Karl war ſehr fleißig und ſparſam; er hatte auch Glück und wurde bald ſehr reich. 42. Das Wetter war ſchlecht, und die Früchte wurden nicht bald reif.

## 25.

der Offizier[öf'-fi-tsēr'], *officer*
Friedrich[frē'-drɪy], *Frederic*
ſtolz*[stölts], *proud, haughty*
ſtark*[stärk], *strong*
der Neffe*[nĕf'-fe], *nephew*
vor*[fōr], *ago, before.*

1. Had the weather become bad? 2. No, it became mild and warm. 3. The children became tired and sleepy. 4. I grew old. 5. You (thou) became strong. 6. The girls became diligent. 7. Have they not become very unhappy? 8. Yes, they became unhappy. 9. Are 'you happy? 10. We have been happy, but we have become unhappy. 11. The weather had become very cold. 12. Has not the neighbor become a thief? 13. The nephew became a clergyman. 14. What has he been three years ago? 15. He had been a teacher. 16. What has Louis become? 17. He has become a gardener. 18. 'You were waiting. 19. You were not waiting. 20. Thou wast fasting. 21. Thou fastedst. 22. Thou hast fasted. 23. Thou hadst fasted. 24. The fields grow green. 25. The fields grew green. 26. The brewers were brewing. 27. Who is growing blind? 28. The wolves were howling, had howled. 29. Didst thou bet? 30. No, the girls were betting. 31. The dogs had barked. 32. The children have danced. 33. The sea grows very stormy. 34. Have 'you been there? 35. Had they become old? 36. Have you become rich? 37. It is becoming turbid. 38. The air was warm; it became cool. 39. The nephew became a parson. 40. He became a thief. 41. Have 'you become an officer? 42. I am becoming thirsty. 43. Are you (thou) becoming hungry? 44. Has the air become warm? 45. Who has become unhappy? 46. We have been young. 47. We have become old. 48. The weather had become cold. 49. The air had been warm. 50. He had been a teacher. 51. Frederic had become a soldier.

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Der Pfarrer,** in poetry Pfarrherr, **par***son, clergyman, minister,* from Pfarre, *parsonage,* which from the mediæval Latin *parra,* an abbreviated form of *parochia,* Greek *paroikia,* a dwelling beside or near, *para,* beside, near, *oikos,* a dwelling. Tab. V. 2.

**recht, right,** *correct,* adv. *very, quite.* A. S. *riht, reht*; Lat. *rectus—rego,* to guide. Tab. V. 18.

**Luft,** *air, atmosphere,* perhaps akin to **loft** (lit. *that which is lifted up*). Ice. *lopt,* the sky or air; A. S. *lyft,* the air.

**froh,** *gay, joyful,* **fro***lic*=**fröhlich**=**froh,** *gay,* and **lich,** *like.*

**ſchläfrig, sleepy,** from Schlaf, *sleep,* Tab. V. 3, and „ig", Lex. Ex. 12.

**traurig,** *sad, mournful,* **dreary.** A. S. *dreorig—dreoran,* to fall, become weak. Tab. V. 11 and 38.

**gehorſam,** *obedient,* c. of **ge** (Lex. Ex. 16), hören, *to hear* (with submission, *obey*), and **ſam** (Ex. 22); **ungehorſam, un**=*dis* (Ex. 16).

**Soldat, soldier,** one who serves for *pay.* Lat. *solidus,* a piece of money, **der Sold,** *the pay of a* **sold***ier.* Accent on the last syllable (p. 22. 10).

**Arzt,** *physician,* from Greek *archiatros,* chief physician, *archi*=**arch,** chief, principal, used as a prefix, *e. g.:* **arch**bishop, and *iatros,* physician.

**taub, deaf.** Tab. V. 11 and 5.

**trüb, turb***id, dim,* not clear, from trüben, *to make dim,* akin to **troub***le, to dis***turb.** Tab. V. 38.

**ſchmutzig,** *dirty,* **muddy, smutty,** from **Schmutz,** *dirt,* **smut,** and **ig,** Ex. 12. Tab. V. 13.

**durch, through,** *by.* Tab. V. 9, 18 and 37.

**Sparſamkeit,** *economy* (**ſparſam,** Ex. 22, and **keit**). The suffix **heit** signifies *state, manner,* and forms feminine substantives from adjectives. It answers generally to the Engl. suffixes **hood** (A. S. *had*=state, degree, form, manner), *ness, ity, dom* and *tion.* When the adjective ends in »bar, »el, »er, »lich, »iſcht, »ſam or »ſelig, the termination **heit** is exchanged for **keit,** a modification of it, thus: Freund**lichkeit,** *friendliness,* Männ**lichkeit,** *manliness.*

**Nachbar, neighbor.** A. S. *neahbur*; **nach** for nah=*nigh,* and **bar**=*bur*=Bauer, *dweller,* from the type *bhu,* to dwell, hence a person who **dwells near** another.

**Faulheit,** *laziness, idleness, indolence,* from **faul** (Ex. 22) and the suffix **heit** (see Sparſamkeit).

**bald,** *soon,* properly **bold,** *quick, executed with spirit.* A. S., old Germ., and Dan. **bald** for **bold.**

**ſtolz,** *proud, arrogant,* **stout.** Tab. V. 27, 8, 38.

**ſtark,** *strong,* akin to Engl. **stark.** Tab. V. 38.

**Neffe, nephew.** A. S. *nefa*; Lat. *nepos,* a grandson.

**vor,** *ago.* Ex. 22, vorgeſtern.

## [28.] THE PERFECT INFINITIVE. THE FUTURE TENSE AND THE FUTURE PERFECT.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Karl hat gelernt, und Wilhelm **wird lernen** | *Charles has learned, and William will learn* |
| 2. **Gelernt haben** iſt beſſer | *To have learned is better* |
| 3. Die Mädchen **werden** hier **ſein** | *The girls will be here* |
| 4. Wir **werden** Brod **haben** | *We shall have bread* |
| 5. Wir **werden** Brod **gehabt haben** | *We shall have had bread* |
| 6. Der Lehrer **wird** hier **geweſen ſein** | *The teacher will have been here* |
| 7. Wann **werden Sie** die Bücher **kaufen?** | *When will you buy the books?* |
| 8. Wann **werden Sie** die Bücher **gekauft haben?** | *When will you have bought the books?* |
| 9. Die Kinder **werden** groß **werden** | *The children will become tall* |
| 10. Die Kinder **werden** groß **geworden ſein** | *The children will have become tall.* |

*Observations.*—The **Future** is formed by connecting the *Infinitive* with the present of the auxiliary **werden**, *to become.* M. S. 1, 3, 4, 7, 9.

The **Perfect Infinitive** is formed by connecting the *Past Participle* with the *Infinitive.* M. S. 2.

The **Future Perfect** is formed by connecting the *Perfect Infinitive* with the present of the auxiliary **werden.** M. S. 5, 6, 8, 10.

*Take Notice!* In the German *Perfect Infinitive* the Past Participle precedes the Infinitive, while in the English it follows the Infinitive. Compare: gefiſcht[1] haben[2], *have*[2] *fished*[1].

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| **geweſen ſein, to have been** | **geworden ſein, to have become** |
| **gehabt haben, to have had** | **gelernt haben, to have learned.** |

## Future.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ich werde | ſein | *I shall* | *be* | wir werden | ſein | *we shall* | *be* |
| " | haben | " | *have* | " | haben | " | *have* |
| " | werden | " | *become* | " | werden | " | *become* |
| " | lernen | " | *learn* | " | lernen | " | *learn* |
| du wirſt | ſein | *thou will* | *be* | ihr werdet | ſein | *you will* | *be* |
| " | haben | " | *have* | " | haben | " | *have* |
| " | werden | " | *become* | " | werden | " | *become* |
| " | lernen | " | *learn* | " | lernen | " | *learn* |
| er wird | ſein | *he will* | *be* | ſie werden | ſein | *they will* | *be* |
| " | haben | " | *have* | " | haben | " | *have* |
| " | werden | " | *become* | " | werden | " | *become* |
| " | lernen | " | *learn* | " | lernen | " | *learn* |

## Future Perfect.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ich werde | geweſen ſein | *I shall have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned* |
| du wirſt | geweſen ſein | *thou wilt have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned* |
| er wird | geweſen ſein | *he will have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned* |
| wir werden | geweſen ſein | *we shall have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned* |
| ihr werdet | geweſen ſein | *you will have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned* |
| ſie werden | geweſen ſein | *they will have* | *been* |
| " | gehabt haben | " | *had* |
| " | geworden ſein | " | *become* |
| " | gelernt haben | " | *learned.* |

## Imperative.

| | *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|---|
| **ſein** | ſei[zɪ], *be thou* | ſeid[zɪt], *be ye* |
| **haben** | habe[hah'-be], *have thou* | habt[hahbt], *have ye* |
| **werden** | werde[vār'-de], *become thou* | werdet[vār'-det], *become ye* |
| **lernen** | lerne, lerne du, lernen Sie [lĕr'-nen], *learn (thou)* | lernet, lernen Sie, *learn (ye).* |

## Participles.

| | *Present.* | *Past.* |
|---|---|---|
| **ſein** | ſeiend[zɪ'-ent], *being* | geweſen[ge-vā'-zen], *been* |
| **haben** | habend[hah'-bent], *having* | gehabt[ge-häpt], *had* |
| **werden** | werdend[vār'-dent], *becoming* | geworden[ge-vōr'-den], *become* |
| **lernen** | lernend[lĕr'-nent], *learning* | gelernt[ge-lĕrnt], *learned.* |

## 26.

Der Patient[pă-tsɪ-ent'], *patient*
die Lection[lĕk"-tsɪ-ōn'], *lesson*
corrigieren[kŏr"-rɪ-gē'-ren], *to correct*
ehe*[ā'-he], *sooner than, ere*
beendigen*[be-ĕn'-dɪ-gen], *to finish*
die Aufgabe*[ouf'-gah"-be], *task, exercise*
ſchmelzen*[shmĕl'-tsen], *to melt*
allein*[ăl-lɪn'], *alone*
pünktlich*[pĭnkt'-lɪy], *punctually*
das Concert[kŏn-tsĕrt'], *concert*
beginnen*[be-gĭn'-nen], *to begin*
acht*[ächt], *eight*
die Uhr*[ûr], *clock, watch*
acht Uhr, *eight o'clock*
baden*[bah'-den], *to bathe*
noch nicht, *not yet*
gar*[gahr], *entirely*
gar nicht, *not at all*
windig[vĭn'-dĭy], *windy*
ſitzen*[zĭ'-tsen], *to sit*
wohl*[vōl], *well*
zuſammen*[tsŭ-zăm'-men], *together*
blühen*[blēē'-hen], *to blossom*
die Dame*[dah'-me], *lady, dame*
wieder*[vē'-der], *again, anew*
feſt*[fĕst], *firm, solid*
der Buchbinder*[bŭch'-bĭn"-der], *book-binder*
der Sommer[zŏm'-mer], *summer*
der Winter[vĭn'-ter], *winter*
faſt*[fäst], *nearly, almost*
der Weizen*[vɪ'-tsen], *wheat*
theuer*[toi'-er], *dear*
gehen*[gā'-hen], *to go.*

1. Der Wein wird alt und gut ſein. 2. Wirſt du dort ſein? 3. Ja, ich werde da ſein. 4. Das Eis wird ſchmelzen; denn die Luft iſt mild und warm. 5. Werden Sie allein kommen? 6. Nein, auch Luiſe wird kommen. 7. Wir werden pünktlich da ſein. 8. Wann wird das Concert beginnen? 9. Es wird nicht vor acht Uhr beginnen. 10. Haben Sie gebadet? 11. Noch nicht, aber ich werde bald baden. 12. Werdet ihr hier oder dort fiſchen? 13. Wir werden heute gar nicht fiſchen; das Wetter iſt zu kalt und windig. 14. Warum ſingen Sie nicht? 15. Ich werde bald

ſingen. 16. Wo werden Sie und wo wird Karl ſitzen? 17. Wir werden wohl zuſammen ſitzen. 18. Dieſe Pflanze wird nicht blühen. 19. Der Winter wird kalt werden. 20. Wird der Schüler lernen? 21. Er hat nie gelernt und wird nie lernen. 22. Die Dame iſt geſtern hier geweſen, und ſie wird nicht wieder kommen. 23. Werden die Ruder brechen? 24. Sie werden nicht brechen; denn ſie ſind ſtark und feſt. 25. Wilhelm iſt Soldat geworden, und was wird Karl werden? 26. Er wird Buchbinder werden. 27. Der Sommer iſt ſehr kalt, und der Winter iſt faſt warm geweſen. 28. Werden Sie hören? 29. Ich werde hören. 30. Der Patient wird müde und ſchläfrig ſein. 31. Wir werden hungrig und durſtig ſein. 32. Wir werden hungrig und durſtig. 33. Wir werden hungrig und durſtig geworden ſein. 34. Wir werden hungrig und durſtig werden. 35. Werden ſie nie müde? 36. Der Schüler wurde gehorſam. 37. Der Bär iſt wild geworden. 38. Die Äpfel waren ſelten geworden. 39. Der Lehrer wird die Lection corrigiert haben, ehe ſie die Wörter gelernt hat (for gelernt haben wird). 40. Die Brüder werden die Aufgaben beendigt haben, wenn die Schweſtern beginnen werden. 41. Der Weizen wird theuer werden. 42. Das Bier wird ſauer geworden ſein. 43. Wann werden wir gehen? 44. Sie werden gehen, wenn Sie gelernt haben (for wenn Sie gelernt haben werden).

## 27.

Ferdinand[fĕr'-dĭ-nănt], *Ferdinand*
mit*[mĭt], *with*
der Widder[vĭd'-dᵉr], *ram*, Ex. 19
das Kleid*[klīt], *dress*
kurz*[kŭrts], *short, curt*
ſelten*[zĕl'-tᵉn], *rare, seldom*
unfruchtbar, *barren*, Ex. 22.
vergebens*[fᵉr-gā'-bens], *in vain*
wachen*[vă'-chen], *to watch*
trommeln*[trŏm'-mᵉln], *to drum*
das Zimmer*[tsĭm'-mᵉr], *room*
wohnen*[vō'-nᵉn], *to dwell, live*
London[lŏn'-dŏn], *London*
das Korn*[kŏrn], *the corn.*

1. I shall go with Ferdinand. 2. He will buy two rams. 3. The apples will not be good. 4. The garment will be too short. 5. Where shall we live in London? 6. Water is becoming rare. 7. Why do you (thou) become disobedient? 8. We became hungry. 9. Will the man come to-day? 10. No, he will come to-morrow. 11. I shall soon have planted the corn. 12. The teacher will soon have corrected the exercise. 13. Francis will become (a) physician. 14. The pupils have been diligent. 15. We shall travel; for we hope the weather will soon become warm. 16. The field has been barren. 17. It will become fertile. 18. The winter will become very cold. 19. The parson will

have threatened in vain. 20. The gardeners will not have watched. 21. The children had been drumming. 22. The pear had been sour. 23. It will soon become sweet. 24. The children will be happy, for their father has become rich. 25. Were the rooms warm? 26. Have they been cold? 27. Will they become poor? 28. Will 'you have heard? 29. Shall we have become rich? 30. Will he have praised? 31. Will they not have loved? 32. Had the wolves barked or howled? 33. Will the boy have become diligent? 34. Has the robber not robbed? 35. Why did 'you not hear? 36. Who has heard? 37. Will she have learned? 38. Will not the goldsmiths have hammered? 39. Will 'you not soon have become old? 40. Are the girls becoming beautiful?

## LEXICOLOGY.

**ehe**, *before*, **ere.** A. S. *aer*; Goth. *air*, early.

**beendigen**, *to bring to an* **end**, *to finish*. The termination **igen** forms a number of (frequentative) verbs from substantives. They mostly have one of the prefixes **be-** or **ge-**, thus: berichtigen[bᵉ-rĭχ'-tĭ-gᵉn], *to rectify, to settle, make* **right**; beſichtigen[bᵉ-zĭχ'-tĭ-gᵉn], *to inspect, to* **sight.** Some of these verbs have at the same time the simple form in **en**, as: beendigen and beenden, *to finish*; sometimes in a somewhat different meaning, as **berichtigen**, *to rectify*, and **berichten**, *to report*. The prefix **be** (1) adds an intensitive force to transitive verbs, especially indicating the spreading of the action of the verb over the whole object in question, as: ſchreiben[shrī'-bᵉn], *to write*; **beſchreiben**=**to describe**; nennen[nĕn'-nᵉn], *to name*; **benennen**=*to surname*; (2) renders intransitive verbs transitive: ſprechen, *to speak*; **beſprechen**, **be***speak*; träufeln, *to drop*; **beträufeln**, **be***drop*.

**Aufgabe**, *the set amount of work*, especially *of study*, **given** by another, *the task*; from aufgeben, *to impose, to set as a task*; auf, *on, upon* and geben, *to give*.

**ſchmelzen, to melt, smelt.** Tab. V. 13 and 31.

**allein, alone**, c. of all, *all* and ein, *one*, thus the Engl. **alone**=*all one, one being all*.

**pünktlich, punctually**, from Punkt, *point*, Lat. *punctum*, and **lich**, Lex. Ex. 16.

**beginnen, to begin**, c. of ginnen, from root **gin**, *to beget, to come into being*, Greek *ginomai*, to come into being, Lat. *gigno*, to beget, and the prefix **be** (above in beendigen).

**acht, eight.** Tab. V. 18.

**Uhr**, *clock, watch*. Mhd. *ure*=**hour**, from Lat. *hora*; after numerals in the sense of *o'clock*, thus **acht Uhr**=**eight o'clock.**

**baden, to bathe.** Tab. V. 9.

**gar,** adv. *entirely, finished, done* (as *e. g.:* baked, roasted enough). A. S. *gearu*; Engl. **yare** (obs.), *prepared, ready.*

**ſitzen, to sit.** Goth., A. S. *sitan*; Latin, *sedere, sidere.* Tab. V. 8.

**wohl, well,** wohl sometimes signifies *perhaps, probably, indeed.*

**zuſammen,** *together,* c. of **zu, to** and **ſammen,** from **ſammeln,** *to collect,* to assemble or unite several things that belong to one another; connected with Sans. and Goth. *sama,* the same; Lat. *simul.* Comp. **ſam,** Lex. Ex. 22.

**blühen,** *to bloom,* or *blossom,* **to blow.** A. S. *blowian.*

**Dame,** *a lady,* **dame.** Fr. *dame*; Lat. *domina,* a mistress—*domus,* a house.

**wieder,** *again, anew,* same word as **wider** (without **e**), *against, gain*—**with,** *e. g.:* **with**hold (prefix **with**=*against,* and *hold*).

**feſt,** *firm, solid,* **fast.** Goth. *fastan*=to keep, to retain; allied to faſſen, *to seize.*

**Buchbinder, book-binder,** comp. Buch, Ex. 11.

**faſt,** adv. *nearly, almost*; in affinity with **feſt, fast**=*close upon.*

**Weizen, wheat,** furnishing a *white* flour for bread; allied to **white.** Tab. V. 8.

**theuer, dear.** A. S. *deore*; Old Germ. *tiur,* precious. Tab. V. 11.

**gehen, to go.** A. S. *gan,* Sans. *ga.*

**mit,** *with.* Goth. *mith*; A. S. *mid.* This preposition signifies *union, means, instrument*: **Mit**tel, *means*; **mit**ten (in), *in the* **middle** *of.*

**Kleid,** *dress, gown,* **cloth.** A. S. *cladh*; connected with Lat. *claudo,* to shut.

**kurz,** *short.* Ahd. *churz*; Engl. **curt**; Lat. *curtus*; Sans. *krit,* to cut, separate.

**ſelten,** *rare,* **seldom.** A. S. *seld,* seldom, prob. from *sellic,* wonderful, that which is wonderful being rare.

**vergebens,** *in vain,* from vergeben, *to give to no purpose, without result*; c. of **geben, to give** and the prefix **ver**=(1) *forth, away,* Goth. *fiurra*=far, away, and=(2) **for, fore,** hence it signifies (*a*) *removal,* as verfliegen[fĕr-flē'-gᵉn], *to fly* **away**; (*b*) removal or swerving from the right track, as verführen[fᵉr-fēē'-rᵉn], *to mislead*; (*c*) *reversal,* as verkaufen, *to sell, i. e. to bargain* **away**; verachten[fᵉr-ächʼ-tᵉn], *to despise*; (*d*) *loss, detriment,* as verderben, *to ruin.* **Ver** in the sense of **for, fore,** Lat. *per,* adds an intensive meaning, as verſchließen[fᵉr-shlēʼ-sᵉn], *to* **fore***close, to shut up*; verbrennen, *to burn up.*

**wachen,** *to be* **awake, to wake,** Tab. V. 16; **to watch,** Tab. V. 17. A. S. *wacjan*; comp. Lat. *vigere,* to be vigorous, *vigil,* vigilant, watchful.

**trommeln, to drum.** Derived from Trommel, *drum.* Tab. V. 11.

**Zimmer,** *room, chamber*; primitively **timber,** Tab. V. 8 and 36, afterwards for the construction itself. Thence **zimmern, to timber; Zimmermann,** *carpenter.* Frauenzimmer[frou'-en-tsim"-mer] signified originally only an apartment reserved exclusively for the females and afterwards the female herself.

**wohnen,** *to dwell, to live.* Old Engl. **won, wone**; A. S. *wunian*; P. Partic. of the Old Engl. verb is **wont**=*used* or *accustomed.* and the P. Partic. of the German wohnen has just the same meaning: **gewohnt**=*used* or *accustomed.*

**Korn, corn,** connected with Lat. *granum.*

## [29.] ENLARGED SENTENCES.

### *Introductory Remarks.*

1. Every *Sentence* contains necessarily a subject and a predicate, which are therefore called the **Principal Parts of a Sentence.**

2. The sentence, however, but rarely appears in this simplest form. For the most part it is made more definite by additional words, which we call **Secondary Members** of the sentence, because they are not essential and do not occur in every sentence.

3. A secondary member qualifying or determining a *Noun* is called an **Attribute;** whilst that which refers to the *Verb* or *Adjective,* in order to make it more fully understood, or to complete the idea expressed by it, is called **Complement,** or **Object,** as: *I am writing,* and *I am writing* **a letter.** *I give,* and *I give* **money to the poor.** *He is mindful,* and *he is mindful* **of your admonitions.**

4. When we add to the predicate particular circumstances referring to *place, time, manner, cause,* etc., as: *the child was playing* **in the garden, the whole morning,** we call this part of the sentence **Circumstance.**

### *Questions:*

What are the chief members of a sentence?

By what is any Noun in the sentence enlarged?

By what is a Verb or Adjective enlarged?

What is called **Attribute**?

What is called **Complement** or **Object**?

What is called **Circumstance**?

## [30.] DETERMINATIVE WORDS AS ATTRIBUTES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| **I.** Dieſ-**er** Mann iſt arm [de'-z$^{e}$r] | *this man is poor* |
| dieſ-**e** Frau iſt reich | *this woman is rich* |
| dieſ-**es** Haus iſt hoch | *this house is high* |
| dieſ-**e** Männer, Frauen, Häuſer ſind nicht alt | *These men, women, houses are not old.* |
| **II.** Mein Vater iſt gut [mɪn], | *my father is good* |
| Mein-**e** Mutter iſt alt [mɪ'-n$^{e}$], | *my mother is old* |
| Mein Buch iſt neu | *my book is new* |
| Mein-**e** Brüder, Schweſtern, Kinder ſind jung | *my brothers, sisters, children are young.* |

*Observations.*—1. **Determinative Words** are those which define nouns by limiting or determining them, without attaching to them a quality.

2. They are divided into two classes:

*a.* Those which take the same terminations marking gender as the definite article (p. 86, 5 and 6), as:

**der** Mann, **die** Frau, **das** Haus
dieſ**er** Mann, dieſ**e** Frau, dieſ**es** Haus.

*b.* Those which reject these terminations like the Indefinite Article (p. 86, 6) in the Masculine and Neuter, as:

ein Mann, *a man*; ein Haus, *a house.*
mein Mann, *my man*; mein Haus, *my house.*

The determinative words with the characteristic gender terminations are:

| *Masculine.* | *Feminine.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| dieſ**er** [de'-z$^{e}$r], *this* | dieſ**e** | dieſ**es** |
| jen**er** [ya'-n$^{e}$r], *that* | jen**e** | jen**es** |
| ſolch**er** [zŏl'-y$^{e}$r], *such* | ſolch**e** | ſolch**es** |
| welch**er** [vĕl'-y$^{e}$r], *which* | welch**e** | welch**es** |
| jed**er** [ya'-d$^{e}$r], *every, each* | jed**e** | jed**es** |
| manch**er** [măn'-y$^{e}$r], *many a* | manch**e** | manch**es.** |

Determinative words without the characteristic gender endings, when preceding masculine or neuter words, are:

| *Masculine.* | *Feminine.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| ein [ɪn], *one, a* | eine | ein |
| mein [mɪn], *my, mine* | meine | mein |
| dein [dɪn], *thy, thine* | deine | dein |
| ſein [zɪn], *his* | ſeine | ſein |
| ihr [er], *her* | ihre | ihr |
| unſer [ün'-z$^{e}$r], *our* | unſere | unſer |
| euer [oi'-$^{e}$r], *your* | euere or eure | euer |
| ihr [er], *their* | ihre | ihr |
| kein [kɪn], *no, not any, none* | keine | kein |

## 28.

die Katze*[kă'-tsᵉ], *cat*
falſch*[fălsh], *false, untrue*
das Glas[glăs], *glass*
wund[vūnᵗ], *sore, wounded*
die Milch*[mĭlʏ], *milk*
ſcheu*[shoi], *sky*
Clara[klah'-ră], *Clara*
wenn*[vĕn], *when, if*†
wann*[văn], *when? at what time?*†
der Stoff*[stŏf], *stuff*
ſchwarz*]shvärts], *black*
das Platina[plă'-tĭ-năˇ], *platine*
das Zinn*[tsĭn], *tin*
der Zink[tsĭnk], *zinc*

1. Dieſer Mann iſt reich. 2. Dieſe Frau iſt ſchön. 3. Dieſes Kind iſt jung. 4. Dieſe Häuſer ſind hoch. 5. Dieſe Väter ſind gut. 6. Dieſe Männer ſind alt. 7. Mein Hund iſt treu. 8. Meine Katze iſt falſch. 9. Mein Glas iſt rund. 10. Meine Brüder und Schweſtern ſind freundlich. 11. Welches Kind iſt böſe geweſen? 12. Welche Frucht iſt reif und welche unreif? 13. Wer war jener Knabe? 14. Es war mein Bruder. 15. Wer war jenes Mädchen? 16. Es war ſeine Schweſter. 17. War Ihre Schweſter hier? 18. Sie war nicht hier. 19. Welcher Finger iſt wund geweſen? 20. Es war ihr Finger. 21. Welche Milch iſt ſauer geworden? 22. Unſere Milch. 23. Hat unſere oder eure Mühle geklappert? 24. Es war eure Mühle. 25. Welche Schüler haben gelernt? 26. Unſere Schüler haben gelernt; eure Schüler ſind ſehr faul geworden. 27. Jede Droſſel iſt ſcheu, und jeder Fuchs iſt ſchlau. 28. Solcher Thee iſt nicht trinkbar. 29. Unſer Lehrer wird ſehr böſe ſein, wenn Clara wieder nichts gelernt haben wird. 30. Mancher Stoff iſt weiß und mancher gelb oder roth, blau, grau, braun, ſchwarz, u.ſ.w. (u.ſ.w.=und ſo weiter, *and so forth* [or *on*]=*etc.*). 31. Jeder Wolf iſt wild, und jede Katze iſt falſch. 32. Jedes Kind iſt jung, und jede Feder leicht. 33. Welches Schwert roſtet? 34. Welches Metall iſt gelb, welches braun, und welches weiß? 35. Gold iſt gelb, Eiſen und Stahl ſind grau oder weißgrau (white-gray), Platina, Silber, Queckſilber, Zinn, Zink weiß, und Kupfer braun. 36. Dieſer Mann iſt Arzt geworden. 37. Unſer Sohn wurde Soldat, und euer Neffe wird Bäcker werden.

## 29.

die Straße*[strah'-sᵉ], *street*
der Pflug*[plūᵏ], *plow*
der Schotte, Schottländer[shŏt'-teˇ, shŏt'-länˇ-dᵉr], *Scotchman*
das Wachs[văx], *wax*
ſtumpf*[stŭmpf], *blunt, obtuse*
weich*[vɪᵡ], *soft*
pflügen[pflēᵉ'-gᵉn], *to plough.*

†The conjunction w e n n, *when, if*, must not be confounded with the adverb w a n n, *when?* W e n n expresses a condition and w a n n asks for a time, *e.g.*: W a n n wirſt du reiſen? *When will you start?* Der Lehrer wird dich loben, w e n n du fleißig biſt, the teacher will praise you, *when* or *if* you are diligent. A sentence commencing with wenn, *if*, requires the finite verb at its end, hence wenn du fleißig b i ſ t.

1. When will you plough? 2. We shall plough, when the plough will be sharp. 3. When will you learn your lesson? 4. We shall learn our lesson, when we shall have the book. 5. Will you (thou) write, or your (thy) sister? 6. Your (thy) book was not here, but your (thy) pen. 7. This man and his son were sick. 8. My brother is still a child. 9. Our garden is beautiful. 10. Our sister is still young, but our brother is not. 11. Your (2nd plur.) brother is our friend. 12. Where is 'your pen? 13. It is here. 14. When will you (thou) learn your lesson? 15. The teacher will praise the scholars, when they will learn their lesson. 16. These plants are nettles, and those thistles. 17. This boat is new, and that ship is old. 18. Which is old and which new? 19. This metal is gold, and that is iron. 20. Many a sword is blunt, but this is very sharp. 21. Such bread is not eatable. 22. This bread is good and soft, but that is old and hard. 23. What soldier was a Scotchman? 24. Many a street is long. 25. These fruits are not ripe, but green and unripe. 26. That oak is very old and high. 27. These ploughs are not new, but sharp and good. 28. This wax is white, but that is yellow. 29. This apple is sour, but that is sweet. 30. Many a stick is short and thick, but this one is long and thin. 31. Those metals rust, but these do not. 32. These swords are blunt, but those are sharp. 33. Charles and Lewis were friends; the former (=that) was rich, the latter (=this) was poor. 34. This wax is not white, but yellow. 35. These apples are not sweet, but ripe.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Katze, cat.** Tab. V. 8.

**falſch, false,** *untrue.* Lat. *falsus*, p. partic. of *fallo*, to deceive. Tab. V. 13.

**Milch, milk.** A. S. *meolc—melcan*, to milk; akin to Lat. *mulgeo*, to milk; Gr. *amelgo*, to squeeze.

**ſcheu, shy,** from ſcheuen, *to shun.*

**Stoff, stuff,** materials of which anything is made; akin to **ſtopfen, to stuff, to stop.**

**ſchwarz,** *black.* Goth. *svart-a (s)*; A. S. *sweart*; Lat. *surdus*, dark, dumb; compare Engl. **swarthy.**

**Zinn, tin.** Lat. *stannum.* Tab. V. 8.

**Straße, street,** from Lat. *via strata* (sc. *lapidibus*, with stones), a paved way.

**Pflug, plough.** Tab. V. 2 and 21.

**ſtumpf,** *blunt, obtuse,* from ſtumpfen, *to cut short* (as trees), hence **der Stumpf, stump.**

**weich,** *soft,* **weak,** lit. yielding easily to a pressure; from weichen[vī'-yen] *to yield*; A. S. *wac,* pliant—*wican,* to yield.

## [31.] DETERMINATIVE WORDS USED ADJECTIVELY AND SUBSTANTIVELY.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. **Dieſ-er** Mann, dieſ-**e** Frau, dieſ-**es** Kind ſind Deutſche | *This man, this woman, this child are Germans* |
| 2. **Jen-er** Herr, jen-**e** Dame, jen-**es** Mädchen ſind willkommen | *That gentleman, that lady, that girl are welcome* |
| 3. **Welch-er** Lehrer, welch-**e** Lehrerin, welch-**es** Fräulein haben gelehrt? | *Which teacher, which lady teacher, which young lady have taught?* |
| 4. Wo iſt **mein** Hut, **mein-e** Uhr und **mein** Glas? | *Where is my hat, my watch and my glass?* |
| 5. **Mein** Hut iſt neu und **Dein-er** alt | *My hat is new and your's old* |
| 6. Iſt Herr N. **ſein Freund?** | *Is Mr. N. his friend?* |
| 7. Ja, er iſt auch **mein-er** | |
| Ja, er iſt auch **der mein-ige** | *Yes, he is also mine* |
| Ja, er iſt auch **der mein-e** | |
| 8. **Kein Menſch** war hier | *No person was here* |
| 9. **Kein-er** war hier | *No one was here* |
| 10. **Kein** Gold roſtet | *No gold rusts* |
| 11. Welch-**es** Gold roſtet? **Keins** (Kein-**es**) | *Which gold rusts? None.* |

*Observations.*

1.

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| **Mein,** *my* | **unſer**[ün'-zer], *our* |
| **dein,** *thy* | **euer**[oi'-er], *your* |
| **ſein,** *his* | **Ihr**[er], *your* |
| **ihr,** *her* | **ihr**[er], *their* |
| **ſein,** *its* | |

are called **Possessive Pronouns** (Lat. *possideo,* to possess, to hold as an owner), as they are employed to show to what person the objects to which they refer belong, whether to the 1st, 2d, or 3d person, singular or plural.

2. As in English, the *Possessive Pronouns* agree in gender, person and number with the possessor, so that **ſein,** *his,* refers to a single masc. person or object, **ihr,** *her,* to a single fem., etc. The terminations, however, vary in German according to the gender and number of the person or object possessed, as: **Sein** Bruder, *his brother*; **ſeine** Schweſter, *his sister*; **ſein** Buch, *his book*; ſeine Brüder, Schweſtern, Bücher, *his brothers, sisters, books.*

3. When the *Possessive Pronouns* are used *substantively, i. e.* referring to a preceding noun not repeated with them (answering to the English *mine, thine, ours, etc.*), they either assume the characteristic gender terminations of the definite article, **er, e, es**, as: **meiner, meine, meines**;

Or secondly, they end in **e**, with the definite article before them, as: **der meine, die meine, das meine**, *mine*;

Or thirdly, they end in **ige**, with the definite article before them, as **der meinige, die meinige, das meinige**, *mine*.

4. The first form, viz.: the possessive pronouns employed without an an article, such as **meiner, meine, meines** or **meins**, rather belong to familiar language and are most commonly used. The forms in **ige** with the article, as **der, die, das meinige**, are the most elegant, whilst those which terminate in **e**, as **der, die, das meine**, are used the least.

*Note.* The possessive pronouns are derived from the Genitive case (expressing the relation of the English *of*) of the personal pronouns. Formerly this Genitive was placed *after* the substantive, as der Vater mein, lit. *the father of me.* Locutions of this kind are still used in poetry and in elevated style. Thus the Lord's Prayer commences: Vater unſer, our father, lit. father *of us.* Later these Genitives were placed before the substantives which governed them, and their origin having been forgotten, they were assimilated to the other determinatives. This remark is especially important with regard to the plur. forms, where the genit. ending "**er**" was retained. Hence the ending **er** in **unſer, euer** is not, as might be supposed the termination for the masc. gender, but the regular ending of the original genitive plural. In **ihr**, *their*, this ending is contracted for **ihrer.** This genitive plur. suffix r is retained also in the English our—ou-r, your—you-r. Shakespeare has preserved a remnant of this old genit. ending in the compound *alderliefest*—the dearest *of* all. Alder is another form of aller—of all. See Morris, Hist. Outlines, No. 175 and 107.

5. A possessive pronoun may be used as predicative, in which case it remains unvaried, as: Das Buch iſt **mein**, *the book is* **mine.**

6. Kein (contraction of the old nechein, instead of auch nicht ein), when used substantively takes the terminations of the definite article: **keiner, keine, keines**, or **keins**,: Wer war da? *Who was there?* **Keiner**, *not one*, but when used adjectively takes those of the indefinite article: **Kein** Mann, Kein-**e** Frau und **kein** Kind war da, *no man, no woman, no child was there.*

7. der, die, das; dieſer, dieſe, dieſes; jener, jene, jenes; ſolcher, ſolche, ſolches are **Demonstrative Pronouns** (Lat. *demonstrare*, to show), as serving to show or to point out the beings or objects indicated by the nouns which they accompany or whose place they hold. They are used both as **substantive** and **adjective** pronouns.

8. Der, die, das (grown out of the personal pronouns er, ſie, es, by a prefixed **d** [representing the demonstrative base **ta**]) is the most important

of them, and may replace the other pronouns of this class. It is especially employed instead of dieſer and jener, in poetry as well as in familiar language, in which case it is pronounced with emphasis and differs in point of accentuation from the definite article, the latter being invariably unaccented, as: der[dĕr] Mann war hier, **the** *man was here*; der[dār] Mann war hier, **this** or **that** *man was here.*

*Note.* For the inflection of the *demonstratives* der, die, das, see a subsequent letter.

9. Dieſer, dieſe, dieſes (A. S. *thes*, m., *theos*, f., *this*, n.), *this*, is of a very restricted use. It is employed:

*a.* In opposition to jener, e, es, *that*, which indicates a more distant object, as: **Dieſes** Haus iſt neu, **jenes** alt, **this** *house is new*, **that one** *old.*

*b.* To indicate objects seen by him who speaks, as: dieſer Baum iſt herrlich, *this tree is splendid.*

*c.* In relation to persons and things already spoken of in a preceding phrase, as: Georg Waſhington war zweimal Präſident; dieſer Mann war wirklich groß, *George Washington was President twice*; *this man was really great.*

In all other cases it is necessary to render the English words *this*, *that* by der, die, das, or jener, jene, jenes: Wie hieß jene or die (and not dieſe) berühmte Heldin, welche Frankreich befreite? *What was the name of the renowned heroine who liberated France?*

10. Jener, jene, jenes (A. S. *geond*, there, be**yond, jen**, the Engl. **yon**), *that*, is applied, as before stated, to persons or things more remote from the speaker.

11. Solcher, ſolche, ſolches, *such*, *such a one.* (In *such* the original **l** dropped; A. S. *swilc*; O. Engl. *swilk*, from *sva*, so, and *leiks*, like. Tab. V. 29.) In case the indefinite article accompanying this pronoun follows, the endings **er, e, es** regularly drop, compare: ein ſolch**er** Mann, but **ſolch** ein Mann, *such a man*; eine ſolch Frau, but **ſolch** eine Frau, *such a woman*; ein ſolch**es** Kind, but **ſolch** ein Kind, *such a child.*

12. Welcher, welche, welches, *which?* (A. S. *hwilc*; O. Engl. *whylc*; Scotch *whilk*; the original **l** dropped as in *such*, Tab. V. 29), is an **Interrogative Pronoun** (Lat. *interrogare*, to ask, to question), which, indicating a being or an unknown object, serves to form a question. This pronoun can be used both substantively and adjectively, as: Welches Haus iſt ſchön? *Which house is beautiful?* Das Haus iſt ſchön. Welches? *The house is beautiful. Which?*

13. Jeder, jede, jedes, *each, every* (A. S. ägdher; Engl. *either*).

Mancher, manche, manches (A. S. *maneg, manig*), in the Singular answers to the Engl. *many a*, in the Plural it is generally translated by *some, many*. Tab. V. 20.

They are considered as **Indefinite Pronouns** when they are not accompanied by substantives; but used adjectively, *i. e.* connected with substantives, they are called **Indefinite Numerals.** **Jeder** is used in the Singular only, often with a preceding ein, eine, ein: Jeder, jede, jedes, or ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes.

## 30.

die Nichte,* *niece*
stumm,* *dumb, mute*
unsichtbar,* *invisible, not in sight*
wachsam,* *watchful, vigilant*
das Messer,* *knife*
die Kirsche,* *cherry*
sterblich,* *mortal.*

1. Unser Haus ist groß; wie ist eueres (eures)? 2. Mein Onkel ist reich; wie ist deiner? 3. Dein Bruder war hier; wo war seiner? 4. Mein Freund ist traurig; denn seine Mutter ist krank. 5. Meine Nichte ist stumm, und ihr Bruder stottert. 6. Werdet ihr singen oder eure Schwestern? 7. Haben sie gefastet oder ihre Brüder? 8. Haben Sie gewartet oder Ihre Tanten? 9. Mein Buch ist neu, deins ist alt. 10. Nicht unser Hund bellte so sehr, sondern eurer. 11. Unser Bier ist gut, aber eur(e)s ist sauer und schlecht. 12. Euer Wein ist alt und gut, unserer ist jung und schwach. 13. Deine Kirschen sind unreif, meine sind reif und süß. 14. Dieser Vogel ist schön, meiner ist nicht so schön. 15. Welche Frucht ist reif und welche unreif? 16. Wer war jener Knabe? 17. Es war mein Bruder. 18. Wer war jenes Mädchen? 19. Es war seine Schwester. 20. War ihre Schwester hier? 21. Sie war nicht hier. 22. Welcher Finger ist wund gewesen? 23. Meiner, or der meinige, or der meine. 24. Welche Milch ist sauer gewesen? 25. Deine, or die deinige or die deine. 26. Welches Haus ist alt? 27. Dein(e)s, or das deinige, or das deine. 28. Hat euer oder unser Hund gebellt? 29. Unserer, or der unsrige, or der unsere. 30. Hat unsere oder eure Mühle geklappert? 31. Eure, or die eurige, or die eure. 32. Kommt euer oder ihr Onkel? 33. Ihrer, or der ihrige, or der ihre. 34. Haben unsere oder eure Schüler gelernt? 35. Unsere, or die unsrigen, or die unseren. 36. Sind eure oder ihre Schüler faul? 37. Eure, or die eurigen, or die euren. 38. Stammeln ihre oder eure Kinder? 39. Ihre, or die ihrigen, or die ihren. 40. Solcher Thee ist nicht trinkbar. 41. Jede Drossel ist scheu, und jeder Fuchs ist schlau

42. Warum hat dieſes Mädchen nicht gehört? 43. Dieſer Hund iſt mein. 44. Welcher Hund iſt wachſam? 45. Meiner. 46. Welches Meſſer iſt ſcharf? 47. Seins. 48. Welcher Menſch iſt unſichtbar? 49. Keiner. 50. Welcher Wein iſt roth? 51. Mancher. 52. Welches Kind iſt ſterblich? 53. Jedes.

## 81.

klein*[klīn], *small, little*
die Kirche*[kīr'-ʸᵉ], *church*
gehorſam*[gᵉ-hōr'-zām], *obedient*
angenehm*[ăn'-gᵉ-nām*], *agreeable, acceptable*
das Pferd*[pfārᵗ], *horse*
ruhen[rū'-ʰᵉn], *to rest*
weißgrau, *white-gray*
das Weib,* *wife, woman*
die Frau, *wife*
weder—noch[vā'-dᵉr—nŏᶜʰ], *neither, nor.*

1. My mother is sad, for her brother is ill. 2. Will 'you sing or 'your sister? 3. I shall not, but my sister will. 4. Why was your (thy) brother weeping? 5. Not my brother was weeping, but 'yours. 6. Did her child hunger or his? 7. Neither hers nor his, it was ours. 8. Have you (thou) rowed, or your (thy) son? 9. It was not my son, but theirs. 10. His house is small, but yours is very large. 11. My hair is black, but yours (his, hers, thine) is yellow. 12. 'Your eyes are blue, mine are brown. 13. His hat is green; mine is gray, and 'yours black. 14. No wolf is always howling, no lamb is always springing, and no swallow always flying. 15. What scholars did not hear? 16. 'Yours and not mine. 17. Your (2nd plur.) church is old; ours is new. 18. My cherries are black, yours are red. 19. Have 'your sisters become poor or ours? 20. My sisters became very rich; they have been very happy. 21. This child is obedient, but hers always has been very disobedient. 22. How is your wine? 23. Mine has become sour and is not drinkable. 24. Our land is sterile; how is 'yours? 25. This fruit is bitter, but that is sweet and agreeable. 26. Did 'your boy greet? 27. Mine has greeted, but yours did not. 28. Has my horse reposed or his? 29. Many a stuff is white and many a one yellow, or red, blue, gray, brown, black, etc. 30. Every wolf is wild, and every cat is false. 31. Every child is young, and every feather light. 32. What sword rusts? 33. What metal is yellow, what brown, and what white? 34. Gold is yellow, iron and steel are gray or white-gray; platine, silver, quicksilver, tin and zinc white; copper brown. 35. This man and his wife were sick. 36. Your brother is our friend. 37. Their brother is your friend. 38. No one is always happy.

**Nichte, niece.** Ahd. *nift*, from Lat. *nepos, nepotis*. Tab. V. 4. Compare Neffe, Ex. 25.

**ſtumm, dumb,** *mute*, akin to ſtemmen, *to* **stem,** *to stop, to check*; ſtammeln—ſtemmen, *to halt, to stammer*; Ice. *stamra*, to be silent.

**Kirſche, cherry.** Mhd. *kirse*; Lat. *cerasus*; Gr. *kerasia*, cherry-tree, probably a tree with fruits of which the kernel is hard like *horn* (*keras*= horn). *Cerasus*, a city on the Black See, derived its name from this fruit, whence it was imported into Italy. Tab. V. 15 and 31.

**wachſam, watchful,** *vigilant*, from wachen (Ex. 27), and ſam (Ex. 22).

**Meſſer,** *knife*. Ahd. *mezzir* and fuller *mezzisahs, sahs*=a knife, a short sword, properly *stone*, Lat. *saxum* (from which *Saxon*, so called from the *short sword* which they carried; see *Saxon*, in Webster); perhaps allied to **ſägen, to saw**; Lat. *seco*, from which Sech, *coulter, plough-plane*, **Sichel, sickle**; *mezzi*=Goth. *maitan*=to cut; compare meißeln, *to chisel, to cut*, and Metz in Steinmetz, *stone-cutter*, hence a cutting instrument; according to others from Goth. *mats*, ahd. and mhd. *maz*, A. S. *mete*, Engl. *meat*=food, hence *instrument for cutting food* to pieces (see *meat* in Webster).

**unſichtbar,** *invisible, not in* **sight,** c. of **un** (Ex. 16), **ſicht=sight,** Tab. V. 18, from ſehen, *to see*, and **bar** (Ex. 22).

**ſterblich,** *mortal*, from ſterben, *to die*, A. S. *steorfan*, **to starve, to die** of hunger or cold, Tab. V. 6 and 38; allied to ſtarr, *stiff* with cold, and the suffix **lich** (Ex. 16).

**klein,** *little, small*, originally **clean,** *shining, free from stain, clever, neat, pretty, small*; in O. Engl. **clane, clene**=*thin, fine.*

**Kirche, church,** in Scotland **kirk**; Gr. *kyriake*, sc. *oikia*=house of the Lord (*kyrios*=Lord). Tab. V. 15 and 17.

**gehorſam,** *obedient*, from gehören=ge-hören, *to hear, to do as told*, to be in a state of dependence, and **ſam** (Ex. 21).

**angenehm,** *agreeable, acceptable*, from **an** and **nehmen; an,** a prefix which signifies *approaching, application, beginning*. It answers to the Engl. *a (at, ap, ac), re, com, etc.* **Nehmen,** *to take, to accept*, O. Engl. **nim,** thus *acceptable*, from Lat. *ac*=ad and *capere, to take.*

**Pferd,** *horse*. Mhd. *paredrus*, abbreviated from the L. Lat. *para fredus*, originally *paraveredus*; *para*=along with, beside, extra, and *veredus*=a post horse, compare **palfrey** in Webster.

**Weib, wife.** Tab. V. 5. Frau is more generally used; Weib is used for *wife* in the elevated style.

## [32.] THE ATTRIBUTE AN ADJECTIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mein Freund iſt ein guter Sohn | *My friend is a good son* |
| 2. Meine friſche Milch iſt ſüß | *My fresh milk is sweet* |
| 3. Dein neues Haus iſt ſchön | *Your new house is beautiful* |
| 4. Dieſes neue Haus iſt nicht ſchön | *This new house is not beautiful* |
| 5. Hier iſt alter Wein, friſche Butter und gutes Brod | *Here is old wine, fresh butter and good bread.* |
| 6. Die treuen Hunde bellten | *The faithful dogs barked* |
| 7. Treue Hunde ſind wachſam | *Faithful dogs are watchful* |
| 8. Jener reiche Müller kommt | *That rich miller is coming* |
| 9. Manches neue Buch iſt werthlos | *Many a new book is worthless* |
| 10. Weiße Mäuſe ſind nette Thierchen | *White mice are neat little animals* |
| 11. Die weißen und die ſchwarzen Mäuſe nagen | *The white and the black mice gnaw* |
| 12. Klares Waſſer iſt nicht immer kalt | *Clear water is not always cold* |
| 13. Das klare Waſſer iſt auch friſch | *The clear water is also fresh.* |

*Observations.*—1. An Adjective can be used as a *Predicate* or an **Attribute.** In the sentence Ein Hund iſt wachſam, *a dog is watchful*, wachſam is the *Predicate*. In ein wachſamer Hund bellt, *a watchful dog barks*, wachſamer is not the predicate, or that which the speaker wishes now to affirm; it is simply a specific qualification of the noun Hund, *dog*; the predicate being **bellt**, *barks*.

2. The adjective, as a predicate, remains unchanged, and generally in an affirmative sentence *follows* the subject. On the other hand the adjective used as an attribute *precedes* the noun to which it belongs, and is inflected.

3. Adjectives used attributively and preceded by the *indefinite article*, or by determinative words *of the same nature* (p. 143), and attributive adjectives which are *not preceded by any determinative word* take the characteristic gender terminations: **er** before masc., **e** before fem., and **es** before neuters. M. S. 1, 2, 3, 5.

4. Adjectives preceded by the *definite article*, or a determinative word with the *same gender endings* (p. 143), take **e** in all genders, as in M. S. 4, 8, 9, 13.

5. Adjectives preceding a noun in the plural, without having a determinative word before them, take **e**, as in M. S. 7, 10.

6. Adjectives preceded by any determinative word whatever, before a noun in Plural, take **en**, as in M. S. 6, 11.

## 32.

die Erde*[ar'-de], *earth*
trocken*[trök'-k$^{e}$n], *dry*
der Pfau*[pfou], *peacock*
heilſam*[hil'-zăm], *wholesome healing, salutary*
flüſſig*[flĭs'-sly], *fluid*
dauern*[dou'-$^{e}$rn], *to last, continue, endure*
folgen*[fŏl'-g$^{e}$n], *to follow*
das Thier*[ter], *animal*
der Hunger[hüng'-$^{e}$r], *hunger*
ſtill[ſtĭl], *still, quiet*
die Küche[kĭr-y$^{e}$], *kitchen*
die Bronze,* *bronze*
der Grund*[grünt], *ground, bottom*
trocknen*[trök'-n$^{e}$n], *to dry up, to become dry.*
der Gaſt*[găst], *guest*
der Keller*[kĕl'-l$^{e}$r], *cellar*
der Lügner*[lēēg'-n$^{e}$r], *liar*
der Hut*[hŭt], *hat*
ſchwach[shvăch], *weak*
der Kirchhof[kĭry'-hŏf], *churchyard, cemetery*
tief*[tef], *deep*
machen[mă'-y$^{e}$n], *to make.*

1. Trockene (more usual trockne) Erde iſt hart. 2. Ein harter Boden iſt nicht fruchtbar. 3. Der Pfau iſt ein ſchöner Vogel. 4. Dieſer ſchöne Vogel iſt ein Pfau. 5. Dieſer reife Apfel iſt ſüß. 6. Ein reifer Apfel iſt eine heilſame Frucht. 7. Jener unreife Apfel iſt noch grün. 8. Das Queckſilber iſt ein weißes, flüſſiges Metall. 9. Dieſes weiße und flüſſige Metall iſt Queckſilber. 10. Schönes und freundliches Wetter war geſtern. 11. Hat das ſchöne und freundliche Wetter lange gedauert? 12. Ein ſchönes und freundliches Wetter folgte. 13. Dieſer gute Mann iſt mein Nachbar. 14. Lieber Bruder, liebe Schweſter, liebes Kind. 15. Nicht nur hungrige, ſondern auch ſatte Diebe ſtehlen. 16. Der Bär iſt ein wildes Thier. 17. Dieſes wilde Thier iſt ein Bär. 18. Dieſes gelbe Metall iſt nicht Gold, ſondern Bronze. 19. Gold iſt ein gelbes Metall, aber nicht jedes gelbe Metall iſt Gold. 20. Dieſe gelben Metalle ſind nicht alle Gold. 21. Dieſer harte Grund iſt trocken. 22. Dieſer trockene (trockne) Grund iſt hart. 23. Gelber Flachs iſt nicht alt. 24. Harter Grund iſt nicht immer trocken. 25. Heu iſt getrocknetes* Gras. 26. Dieſes getrocknete Gras iſt Heu. 27. Hungrige Wölfe und ſchlaue Füchſe ſind keine guten Gäſte. 28. Die hungrigen Wölfe und die ſchlauen Füchſe haben wieder Schafe und Lämmer geraubt.† 29. Dieſes klare Waſſer iſt gut. 30. Klares Waſſer iſt nicht immer trinkbar. 31. Unreife Kirſchen ſind grün. 32. Dieſe grünen und unreifen Kirſchen ſind ſauer. 33. Mein Keller iſt tief, deiner iſt nicht ſo tief. 34. Meine Milch iſt ſauer, wie iſt die deine (or deinige)? 35. Dein Buch iſt alt, meins (or das meine) iſt neu. 36. Unſer Hut iſt ſchwarz, wie iſt eurer? 37. Eure Tochter iſt fleißig, die unſere iſt faul. 38. Unſer alter Vater iſt ſo ſchwach wie eurer, (or der eure, or der eurige). 39. Junge Lügner, alte Diebe (Prov.).

*See Lexicology, trocknen. †Connect geraubt with haben, p. 119, 4.

40. Hunger iſt ein ſcharfes Schwert (Prov.). 41. Stille Waſſer ſind tief (Prov.). 42. Kaltes Eiſen brennt nicht (Prov.). 43. Kleine Küche macht großes Haus (Prov.). 44. Neuer Arzt, neuer Kirchhof (Prov.).

## 33.

die Citrone*[tsī-trō'-nᵉ], *citron*
ſäuerlich*[zoi'-ᵉr-lĭy], *sourish*
unterhaltend*[ūnᵉ-tᵉr-häl'-tᵉntᵉ], *entertaining*
intereſſant[ĭnᵉ-tᵉ-rĕs-sänt'], *interesting*
lehrreich*[lār'-rĭy], *instructive*
das Linnen, die Leinwand*[lĭn'-nᵉn, lĭn'-vänt], *linen, linen cloth*
unangenehm[ūn'-ăn-gᵉ-nāmᵉ], *disagreeable*, comp. Ex. 31.
heizen*[hĭ'-tsᵉn], *to heat*
lockig*[lŏk'-kĭy], *curly*
der Rhein[rĭn], *Rhine*
die Donau[dō'-nou], *Danube*
der Fluß*[flūs], *river*
der Schnee*[shnā], *snow*
todt*[tō:], *dead*
beißen*[bĭ'-sᵉn], *to bite*
koſtbar*[kōst'-bahr], *costly, precious*
der Löwe*[lēä'-vᵉ], *lion*,
bellend*[bĕl'-lᵉntᵉ], *barking*
gelehrt*[gᵉ-lārtᵉ], *learned*
die Perſon*[pᵉr-zōn'], *person*.

1. The citron (lemon) is a sourish fruit. 2. This grass is green. 3. Green grass is soft. 4. This green grass is not soft. 5. 'Your young brother is a good boy. 6. Their young sister is no good girl. 7. The faithful dog is a watchful animal. 8. My faithful dog is watchful. 9. Faithful dogs are watchful. 10. Their watchful dogs are faithful. 11. This new book is entertaining. 12. A new book is not always entertaining. 13. These entertaining books are also very interesting. 14. Entertaining books are not always instructive. 15. New linen is white. 16. Not all fresh water is clear. 17. Rainy weather is disagreeable. 18. This rainy weather is not agreeable. 19. These ripe cherries are red. 20. Fresh milk is sweet. 21. A diligent scholar learns. 22. Every diligent scholar learns. 23. Heated rooms are warm. 24. A blind man is an unhappy man. 25. This blind man is very poor. 26. Deaf persons do not hear. 27. These dumb persons do not hear. 28. Her curly hair is brown. 29. The Rhine and the Danube are large rivers. 30. Good books are good friends. 31. Large birds do not sing. 32. Fresh snow is white. 33. Dead dogs do not bite. 34. These white pearls are not large, but precious. 35. Fresh air is wholesome. 36. Lions are strong animals. 37. Thin glass and thin ice break. 38. This thin glass will break. 39. Barking dogs do not bite. 40. These barking dogs will not bite. 41. His barking dog seldom bites. 42. Many a barking dog bites. 43. This fresh milk has become sour. 44. This white snow will melt; for the

weather has become mild. 45. 'Your room is large, mine is small. 46. Your teacher is a learned man, but no good teacher; ours is a good teacher.

LEXICOLOGY.

**Erde, earth.** A. S. *eorth*; Gr. *era*, root *ar* (Lat. *arare*, mhd. *eren*, to plough, hence lit. *the ploughed land*); and the affix **de**, by which a number of feminine substantives are formed, as Sünde, *sin*; Stunde *hour*. Tab. V. 9.

**trocken, dry.** A. S. *drig*, to desiccate; **trocknen, to dry**; A. S. *drigan*. Tab. V. 11 and 15. The participles can be used like adjectives, both as predicate and as attribute with endings: p. partic. getrocknet, getrocknetes Boden, getrocknete Blume, getrocknetes Gras.

**Pfau, peacock**; A. S. *pawa*; Lat. *pavo*. Tab. V. 2.

**heilſam, wholesome, healing**, *salutary*, from **heil, whole**, Gr. *kolos*, whole, **health, wholeness** *of the body*, and **ſam**, Ex. 22.

**flüſſig**, *fluid*, from fließen, *to flow*, A. S. *fleotan*; Lat. *fluito*; related with Engl. **float**, Tab. V. 10, and **ig**, Ex. 12.

**dauern**, *to last, continue*, **endure**. Lat. *durare*, properly to make hard, *durus*, hard.

**folgen, to follow.** A. S. *folgian*. Tab. V. 21.

**Thier**, *animal*, **deer**, lit. an animal. A. S. *deor*. Tab. V. 11 and 38.

**Bronze, bronze.** Lat. *bronzium*.

**Grund, ground**, *bottom*, originally *dust, pulverized soil*; probably from A. S. *grindan, to grind*, to grate to powder.

**Gaſt, guest.** A. S. *gast*, allied to Lat. *hostis*, stranger, enemy. The original meaning of Gaſt and *hostis* is stranger. The German, however, considered the stranger a friend, whom he invited to his fire-place; the warlike Roman considered him an enemy.

**Keller, cellar.** Lat. *cellarium*; connected with Greek *koilos*, hollow.

**tief, deep.** A. S. *deop, dippan*, to **dip**, to **dive**, Germ. **taufen**, *to immerse*. Tab. V. 11 and 3.

**Hut, hat, hood**, A. S. *hedan*, to protect, and to **hide**, to cover; Sans. *ghud*, to protect, *chhad*, to cover.

**ſäuerlich, sour***ish*, from **ſauer, sour**, and **lich**, Ex. 12.

**unterhaltend, enter***taining*, pres. partic. of unterhalten (c. of **unter, under**, and **halten, to hold**), *to sustain, entertain, amuse.*

**lehrreich**, *instructive*, from lehren, *to teach*, from the Goth. *laisjan* (auf dem Gleiſe führen, to lead on the track); ahd. *leran*; A. S. *lar*, Engl. **lore**, Lehre.

**Leinwand, linen**, c. of Lein, A. S. *linet*, Lat. *linum*, Gr. *linon*, *flax*; and wand, for which ahd. *wat*, A. S. *wæd*=clothing, clothes, the n inserted in German.

**heizen, to heat.** A. S. *hæto*; Goth. *heito*; ahd. *eit*, fire; connected with Lat. *æstus*, heat. Compare heiß, Ex. 18.

**lockig**, *curly*, from **Locke, lock.** On „ig" see Ex. 12.

**Fluß**, *river*, from **fließen**, comp. above flüssig.

**Schnee, snow.** A. S. *snaw*. Tab. V. 13.

**todt, dead.** A. S. *dead* (**todt** for **todet**, p. partic. of old verb toden, *to die*), hence the o long (p. 21, 8). Tab. V. 11.

**beißen, to bite.** A. S. *bitan*, Goth. *beitan*. Tab. V. 10.

**kostbar**, *precious*, **costly**, from **kosten, to cost**, Lat. *constare*, to stand at—*con*, and *stare*, to stand; for **bar** see Ex. 22.

**Löwe, lion.** A. S. *leo*; Lat. *leo*; Greek *leon*.

**bellend**, pres. partic. of bellen, *to bark*, Ex. 14.

**gelehrt**, past partic. of lehren, *to teach*, Ex. 11.

**Person, person**, lit. *the thing sounded through, a mask*; character represented, as on the stage; *an individual*; Lat. *persona—persono—per*, through, and *sono*, to sound.

**Lügner, liar**, from **lügen, to lie**, *to tell a lie*, A. S. *leogan*, Goth. *liugan*.

**Küche, kitchen.** A. S. *cycene*; Latin *coquina—coquor*, to cook. Tab. V. 17.

**machen, to make.** A. S. *macian*, conn. with A. S. and Goth. *magan*, Sans. *mah*, to be great; Latin *magere*, to enlarge, to raise. Tab. V. 16.

**Kirchhof, church-yard**, c. of Kirche (Ex. 31), and Hof, *yard*, A. S. *hof*.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. In what case is the vowel long before a double consonant?
2. On what syllable do foreign words receive the accent?
3. What suffix denotes a diminutive in verbs?
4. What suffixes denote a diminutive in nouns?
5. What suffix denotes a frequentative in verbs?
6. In what verbs is the ending of the 3d pers. sing. **et** instead of **t**?
7. Which interrogative is applied to persons and which to things?
8. Name the components of warum.
9. Which syllable of warum is accented, and why not the other one?
10. What prefix answers to the English prefix **un-, dis-, mis-**?
11. By what endings is the gender of nouns indicated?
12. What does the suffix **isch** signify?
13. What consonants render the preceding vowel short?
14. By what vowel is long **i** for the most part followed?

15. How are the vowels before h or th?

16. Name the two cases when ch is pronounced like k?

17. Where does a long vowel before t require the lengthening h?

18. When is the aspiration of h almost imperceptible?

19. When is final ſ (s) used in the middle of a word?

20. When is ß a simple letter and when a compound one?

21. Of what letters is ß an abbreviation?

22. Into what letters is compound ß changed when the word is augmented by a syllable commencing with a vowel?

23. When is t pronounced like ts?

24. Which accent is the strongest in compound words?

25. Where have compound particles the accent?

26. Determine the gender of the following substantives by connecting them with the required definite article:

Anker [ân'-ker], *anchor*
Waſſertropfen [vâs'-ser-tröp"-fen], *water-drop*
Fliege [flē'-ge], *fly*
Pfennig [pfĕn'-nĭy], *penny*
Luft [lŭft], *air*
Heidenthum [hī'-den-tûm"], *heathenism*
Geburtstag [ge-bürts'-täk"], *birthday*
Oſtindien [öst"-în'-dī-en], *East Indies*
Sommer [zŏm'-mer], *summer*
Gärtnerei [gârt"-ne-rī'], *gardening*
Gewicht [ge-vĭyt'], *weight*
Luſt [lüst], *pleasure, desire, lust*
Bank [bănk], *bench*
Silber [zĭl'-ber], *silver*
Feuerſtein [foi'-er-stĭn"], *fire-stone*
Zinn [tsĭn], *tin*
Gips [gĭps], *gypsum*
Topas [tō-pâs'], *topaz*
Gottheit [göt'-hĭt], *godhead*
Gewand [ge-vänt'], *garment*
Meinung [mĭ'-nŭnk], *meaning*
Schilling [shĭl'-lĭnk], *shilling*
Hälfte [hälf"-te], *(the) half*
Rechnung [rĕy'-nŭnk], *reckoning*
Gebell [ge-bĕl'], *barking*
Heimath [hĭ'-maht], *home*
Auguſt [ou-güst'], *August*
Monat [mō'-nät], *month*
Nacht [nächt], *night*
Neujahr [noi'-yahr], *new-year*
Honig [hō'-nĭy], *honey*
Männchen [män'-yen], *manikin*
Eiſen [ĭ'-zen], *iron*
Nachbarſchaft [näch'-bär-shäft"], *neighborhood*
Säge [zâĭ'-ge], *saw*
Hirſch [hĭrsh], *hart*
Leopard [lā-ō-pärt'], *leopard*
Wölfin [vül'-fĭn], *she-wolf*
Räuberei [roi"-be-rī'], *robbery*
Lüſtling [lĭst'-lĭnk], *lustling*
Bitterkeit [bĭt'-ter-kĭt"], *bitterness*
Klarheit [klahr'-hĭt], *clearness*
Gefecht [ge-fĕyt'], *fight, combat.*

27. Form the plural of the following nouns:

Anker, Tropfen, Fliege, Sommer, Wölfin, Schilling, Pfennig, Hälfte, Gewand, Monat, Hirſch, Katze, Schüler, Wind, Lampe, Horn, Karpfen, Stock, Schäfchen,

Gänslein, Froſch, Rabe, Glocke, Stamm, Freundin, Birne, Ochſe, Adler, Baum, Sturm, Neffe, Hammer, Nadel (fem.), Blümlein, Feder (fem.), Bäcker, Buch, Sänger, Lehrer, Diſtel (fem.), Onkel, Leiter (fem.), Mörder, Land (neut.), Schmied, Glas (neut.), Meiſter, Matroſe, Uhr (fem.), Arzt, Zimmer (neut.).

28. Connect attributively (adjectively) the following words with the adjective accompanying each of them, using before them the definite article:

Maus—klein, Freund—treu, Freundin—treu, Baum—ſtark, Thee—bitter, Schüler—jung, Apfel—reif, Frucht—ſüß, Haar—weiß, Wolf—wild, Perle—rund, Bier—ſauer, See—ſtürmiſch, Horn—hart, Roſe—roth.

29. Connect attributively the same substantives and adjectives, using before them the indefinite article.

30. Connect attributively the same substantives and adjectives in plural, (*a*) using before them the definite article; (*b*) without an article before them.

31. What nouns are never modified in the Plural?

32. After what letters is the **e** of **eſt** (2nd pers. sing) not dropped?

33. In what case will you employ **aber** for the Engl. **but**, and in what **ſondern**?

34. What verbs are called *weak*, and what *strong*?

35. What termination does the root of weak verbs take in forming the *Imperfect*?

36. In what verbs is this termination preceded by **e**?

37. Form the Past Participle of the following verbs: brüllen, brummen, gähnen, kneten, blöken, hungern, kränkeln, lächeln, lachen, lernen, ſtudieren, wählen, warnen, wollen, bewahren, bohren, danken, gebrauchen, brauchen, gehören, hören, kaufen, verkaufen, corrigieren, beendigen, werden, ſein, haben, vertheilen, theilen.

38. Tell the difference between **wenn** and **wann**?

39. Employ the possessive pronouns attributively (adjectively) before the following nouns:

Auge (my), Bäcker (our), Birne (your), Bohrer (their), Buch (my), Goldfeder, (plur., her), Feld (plur., their), Feſſel (plur., his), Kaffee (thy), Hund ('your), Onkel, (plur., 'your), Schwert (his), Freund (your), Freundin (plur., her), Haus (plur., their), Storch (plur., its), Stier (plur., my), Tochter (her), Vater (plur., our), Schwein (plur., its), Lampe (plur., our), Glas (plur., 'your).

40. Employ the same possessive pronouns substantively, referring them to the same substantives, and giving the three different ways.

41. Translate "**such a**" Lehrer, Lehrerin, Schwert, Tochter, Sohn, Schiff, Fuß, Gebet, Nadel, Menſch, Land, Stadt, Ochs, using (*a*) the indefinite article *before* (the German) **such**; and using (*b*) the indefinite article *after* (the German) **such**.

42. Translate: 1. Charles will become a soldier. 2. Louis has become a physician. 3. Clara becomes a teacher. 4. Did her son become a singer? 5. Has his sister become a dancer? 6. Had she not become a nun? 7. Did her son not become a goldsmith? 8. No, he has become a gardener. 9. Had not your son been a sailor? 10. Yes, he was a sailor, but he became a soldier.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

acht, 138
allein, 138
angenehm, 150
Arzt, 133
auf, 144
Aufgabe, 138
aufgeben, 140

baden, 138
bald, 133
beendigen, 138
beginnen, 138
beißen, 154
bellend, 154
Bertha, 132
blind, 132
blühen, 138
Bronze, 153
Buchbinder, 138

Citrone, 154
Clara, 144
Concert, 138
corrigieren, 138

Dame, 138
dauern, 153
dieſer, 143
Donau, 154
durch, 133

ehe, 138
Erde, 153

falſch, 144
faſſen, 141
faſt, 138
Faulheit, 133
feſt, 138
Ferdinand, 139
Fleiß, 133
fleißig, 133
fließen, 155
Fluß, 154
flüſſig, 153
folgen, 150
Franz, 133
Frau, 150
Frauenzimmer, [142
Friedrich, 133
froh, 133
fröhlich, 134

gar, 138
gar nicht, 138
Gaſt, 153
geben, 140
gehen, 138
gehören, 151
gehorſam, 135,
gelehrt, 154 [150
gewohnt, 142
Glas, 144
Grund, 153

halten, 155
Heil, 155
heilſam, 153
heizen, 154
hören, 135
Hunger, 153
Hut, 153

intereſſant, 154

jeder, 143
jener, 143

Katze, 144
kein, 143
Keller, 153
Kirche, 150
Kirchhof, 153
Kirſche, 149
Kleid, 139
klein, 150
Korn, 139
koſtbar, 154
koſten, 156
Küche, 153
kühl, 133
kurz, 139

Lection, 138
Lehre, 155
lehren, 155
lehrreich, 154
Leinwand, 154
Linnen, 154
Locke, 156
lockig, 154
London, 139
Löwe, 154
Lügner, 153
Luft, 133

machen, 153
mancher, 143
meißeln, 151
Meſſer, 149
Milch, 144
mit, 139
Mittel, 141

Nachbar, 133
Neffe, 133
nehmen, 151
Nichte, 149
noch nicht, 138

Offizier, 133

Papier, 133
Patient, 138
Perſon, 154
Pfarre, 134
Pfarrer, 132
Pfau, 153
Pferd, 150
Pflug, 144
pflügen, 144
Platina, 144
Punkt, 140
pünktlich, 138

recht, 132
Rhein, 154
ruhen, 150

ſagen, 151
ſammeln, 141
ſäuerlich, 154
ſcheu, 144
ſcheuen, 145
Schlaf, 134
ſchläfrig, 133
ſchmelzen, 138
Schmutz, 135
ſchmutzig, 133
Schnee, 154
Schotte, 144
Schottländer, 144
ſchwach, 153
ſchwarz, 144
ſehen, 151
ſelten, 139
Sichel, 151
ſitzen, 138
ſolcher, 143
Sold, 135
Soldat, 133
Sommer, 138
Sparſamkeit, 133
ſtark, 133
ſtarr, 151
Steinmetz, 151
ſtemmen, 151
ſterben, 151
ſterblich, 149
ſtill, 153
Stoff, 144
ſtolz, 133
ſtopfen, 145
Straße, 144
ſtumm, 149
ſtumpf, 144
Stumpf, 146
ſtumpfen, 146

taub, 132
taufen, 155
theuer, 138
Thier, 153
tief, 153
todt, 154
traurig, 133
trocken, 153
trocknen, 153
Trommel, 141
trommeln, 139
trüb, 133

Uhr, 138
unangenehm, 154
unfruchtbar, 139
ungehorſam, 133
unſichtbar, 149
unter, 155
unterhaltend, 154

vergebens, 139
vor, 133

wachen, 139
Wachs, 144
wachſam, 149
wann, 144
weder-noch, 150
Weib, 150
weich, 144
weichen, 146
weißgrau, 150
Weizen, 138
welcher, 143
wenn, 144
Widder, 139
wider, 141
wieder, 138
windig, 138
Winter, 138
wohl, 138
wohnen, 139
wund, 144

Zimmer, 139
zimmern, 142
Zimmermann,
Zink, 144 [142
Zinn, 144
zuſammen, 138.

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

acceptable, 150
again, 138
ago, 133
agreeable, 150
almost, 138
alone, 138
anew, 138
animal, 153
atmosphere, 133

barking, 153
barren, 139
to bathe, 138
before, 133
to begin, 138
Bertha, 132
to bite, 153
black, 144
blind, 132
to blossom, 138
blunt, 144
bookbinder, 138
bottom, 153
bronze, 153
by, 133

cat, 144
cellar, 153
cherry, 149
church, 150
citron, 153
Clara, 144
clergyman, 132
clock, 138
concert, 138
to continue, 153
cool, 133
corn, 139
to correct, 138
costly, 153
curly, 153
curt, 139

dame, 138
Danube, 153
dead, 153
deaf, 132
dear, 138
deep, 153
diligence, 133
diligent, 133
dim, 133
dirty, 133
disagreeable, 153
disobedient, 133
dreary, 133
dress, 139
to drum, 139
dry, 153
to dry up, 153
dumb, 149
to dwell, 139

each, 143
earth, 153
economy, 133
eight, 138
to endure, 153
entertaining, 153
entirely, 138
ere, 138
every, 143
exercise, 138

false, 144
Ferdinand, 139
to finish, 138
firm, 138
fluid, 153
to follow, 153
Francis, 133
Frederic, 133
fresh, 133

gay, 133
glass, 144
to go, 138
ground, 153
guest, 153

hat, 153
haughty, 133
healing, 153
to hear, 135
to heat, 153
horse, 150

if, 144
indolence, 133
industry, 133
instructive, 153
interesting, 153
invisible, 149
in vain, 139

joyful, 133

knife, 149

lady, 138
to last, 153
laziness, 133
learned, 153
lesson, 138
linen, 153
linen cloth, 153
lion, 153
little, 149
to live (dwell), [139
London, 139

many a, 143
to melt, 138
milk, 144
minister, 132
mortal, 149
mute, 149

nearly, 138
neighbor, 133
neither-nor, 150
nephew, 133
niece, 149
no, 143
none, 143
not at all, 138
not yet, 138

obedient, 150
obtuse, 144
officer, 133

paper, 133
parson, 132
parsonage, 134
patient, 138
peacock, 153
person, 153
physician, 133
platine, 144
to plough, 144
plow, 144
precious, 153
proud, 133
punctually, 138

ram, 139
rare, 139
to rest, 150
Rhine, 153
right, 132
river, 153
room, 139

sad, 133
salutary, 153
savingness, 133
Scotchman, 144
seldom, 139
short, 139
shy, 144
to sit, 138
sleep, 134
sleepy, 133
small, 149
snow, 153
soft, 144
soldier, 133
solid, 138
soon, 133
sooner than, 138
sore, 144
sourish, 153
street, 144
strong, 133
stuff, 144
such, 143
summer, 138

task, 138
that, 143
this, 143
through, 133
tin, 144
together, 138
turbid, 133

untrue, 144

in vain, 139
very, 132
vigilant, 149

watch, 138
to watch, 139
watchful, 149
wax, 144
weak, 153
well, 138
wheat, 138
when, 144
when? 144
which, 143
white-gray, 150
wholesome, 153
wife, 150
windy, 138
winter, 138
with, 139
woman, 150
wounded, 144

zinc, 144.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 25.

1. War das Wetter ſchlecht geworden? 2. Nein, es wurde mild und warm. 3. Die Kinder wurden müde und ſchläfrig. 4. Ich wurde alt. 5. Du wurdeſt ſtark. 6. Die Mädchen wurden fleißig. 7. Sind ſie nicht ſehr unglücklich geworden? 8. Ja, ſie wurden unglücklich. 9. Sind Sie glücklich? 10. Wir ſind glücklich geweſen; aber wir ſind unglücklich geworden. 11. Das Wetter war ſehr kalt geworden. 12. Iſt nicht der Nachbar ein Dieb geworden? 13. Der Neffe wurde Pfarrer. 14. Was iſt er vor drei Jahren geweſen? 15. Er war Lehrer geweſen. 16. Was iſt Ludwig geworden? 17. Er iſt Gärtner geworden. 18. Sie warteten. 19. Ihr wartetet nicht. 20. Du faſteteſt. 21. Du faſteteſt. 22. Du haſt gefaſtet. 23. Du hatteſt gefaſtet. 24. Die Felder werden grün. 25. Die Felder wurden grün. 26. Die Brauer brauten. 27. Wer wird blind? 28. Die Wölfe heulten, hatten geheult. 29. Wetteteſt du? 30. Nein, die Mädchen wetteten. 31. Die Hunde hatten gebellt. 32. Die Kinder haben getanzt. 33. Die See wird ſehr ſtürmiſch. 34. Sind Sie da geweſen? 35. Waren ſie alt geworden? 36. Seid ihr reich geworden? 37. Es wird trübe. 38. Die Luft war warm; es wurde kühl. 39. Der Neffe wurde Pfarrer. 40. Er wurde ein Dieb. 41. Sind Sie Offizier geworden? 42. Ich werde durſtig. 43. Wirſt du hungrig? 44. Iſt die Luft warm geworden? 45. Wer iſt unglücklich geworden? 46. Wir ſind jung geweſen? 47. Wir ſind alt geworden. 48. Das Wetter war kalt geworden. 49. Die Luft war warm geweſen. 50. Er war Lehrer geweſen. 51. Friedrich war Soldat geworden.

## 27.

1. Ich werde mit Ferdinand gehen. 2. Er wird zwei Widder kaufen. 3. Die Äpfel werden nicht gut ſein. 4. Das Kleid wird zu kurz ſein. 5. Wo werden wir in London wohnen? 6. Waſſer wird ſelten 7. Warum wirſt du ungehorſam? 8. Wir wurden hungrig. 9. Wird der Mann heute kommen? 10. Nein, er wird morgen kommen. 11. Ich werde das Korn bald gepflanzt haben. 12. Der Lehrer wird die Aufgabe bald corrigiert haben. 13. Franz wird Arzt werden. 14. Die Schüler ſind fleißig geweſen. 15. Wir werden reiſen; denn wir hoffen, das Wetter wird bald warm werden. 16. Das Feld iſt unfruchtbar geweſen. 17. Es wird fruchtbar werden. 18. Der Winter wird ſehr kalt werden. 19. Der Pfarrer wird vergebens gedroht haben. 20. Die Gärtner werden nicht gewacht haben. 21. Die Kinder hatten getrommelt. 22. Die Birne war ſauer geweſen. 23. Sie wird bald ſüß werden. 24. Die Kinder werden glücklich ſein; denn ihr Vater iſt reich geworden. 25. Waren die Zimmer warm? 26. Sind ſie kalt geweſen? 27. Werden ſie arm werden? 28. Werden Sie gehört haben? 29. Werden wir reich geworden ſein? 30. Wird er gelobt haben? 31. Werden

ſie nicht geliebt haben? 32. Hatten die Wölfe gebellt oder geheult? 33. Wird der Knabe fleißig geworden ſein? 34. Hat der Räuber nicht geraubt? 35. Warum hörten Sie nicht? 36. Wer hat gehört? 37. Wird ſie gelernt haben? 38. Werden die Goldſchmiede nicht gehämmert haben? 39. Werden Sie nicht bald alt geworden ſein? 40. Werden die Mädchen ſchön?

## 29.

1. Wann werdet ihr pflügen? 2. Wir werden pflügen, wenn der Pflug ſcharf ſein wird. 3. Wann werdet ihr eure (Lection) Aufgabe lernen? 4. Wir werden unſere Aufgabe lernen, wenn wir das Buch haben werden. 5. Wirſt du ſchreiben oder deine Schweſter? 6. Dein Buch war nicht hier, aber deine Feder. 7. Dieſer Mann und ſein Sohn waren krank. 8. Mein Bruder iſt noch ein Kind. 9. Unſer Garten iſt ſchön. 10. Unſere Schweſter iſt noch jung, aber unſer Bruder iſt (es) nicht. 11. Euer Bruder iſt unſer Freund. 12. Wo iſt Ihre Feder? 13. Sie iſt hier. 14. Wann wirſt du deine Lection lernen? 15. Der Lehrer wird die Schüler loben, wenn ſie ihre Lection lernen werden. 16. Dieſe Pflanzen ſind Neſſeln und jene Diſteln. 17. Dieſes Boot iſt neu, und jenes Schiff iſt alt. 18. Welches iſt alt und welches neu? 19. Dieſes Metall iſt Gold, und jenes iſt Eiſen. 20. Manches Schwert iſt ſtumpf, aber dieſes iſt ſehr ſcharf. 21. Solches Brod iſt nicht eßbar. 22. Dieſes Brod iſt gut und weich, aber jenes iſt alt und hart. 23. Welcher Soldat war ein Schotte? 24. Manche Straße iſt lang. 25. Dieſe Früchte ſind nicht reif, ſondern grün und unreif. 26. Jene Eiche iſt ſehr alt und hoch. 27. Dieſe Pflüge ſind nicht neu, aber ſcharf und gut. 28. Dieſes Wachs iſt weiß, aber jenes iſt gelb. 29. Dieſer Apfel iſt ſauer, aber jener iſt ſüß. 30. Mancher Stock iſt kurz und dick, aber dieſer iſt lang und dünn. 31. Jene Metalle roſten, aber dieſe nicht. 32. Dieſe Schwerter ſind ſtumpf, aber jene ſind ſcharf. 33. Karl und Ludwig waren Freunde; jener war reich, dieſer war arm. 34. Dieſes Wachs iſt nicht weiß, ſondern gelb. 35. Dieſe Aepfel ſind nicht ſüß, aber reif.

## 31.

1. Meine Mutter iſt traurig; denn ihr Bruder iſt krank. 2. Werden Sie oder Ihre Schweſter ſingen? 3. Ich nicht, aber meine Schweſter wird ſingen. 4. Warum weinte dein Bruder? 5. Nicht mein Bruder weinte, ſondern der Ihrige. 6. Hungerte ihr Kind oder ſeins? 7. Weder ihrs, noch das ſeinige weinte; es war das unſrige. 8. Haſt du gerudert oder dein Sohn? 9. Es war nicht mein Sohn, ſondern der ihrige. 10. Sein Haus iſt klein, aber das eure iſt ſehr groß. 11. Mein Haar iſt ſchwarz, aber eures (ſeins, ihrs, deins) iſt gelb. 12. Ihre Augen ſind blau, die meinigen ſind braun. 13. Sein Hut iſt grün; meiner iſt grau und Ihrer ſchwarz. 14. Kein Wolf heult immer; kein Lamm

ſpringt immer, und keine Schwalbe fliegt immer. 15. Welche Schüler hörten nicht? 16. Die Ihrigen und nicht die meinigen. 17. Eure Kirche iſt alt, unſere iſt neu. 18. Meine Kirſchen ſind ſchwarz, eure ſind roth. 19. Sind Ihre Schweſtern arm geworden oder unſere? 20. Meine Schweſtern wurden ſehr reich; ſie ſind ſehr glücklich geweſen. 21. Dieſes Kind iſt gehorſam, aber ihres iſt immer ſehr ungehorſam geweſen. 22. Wie iſt euer Wein? 23. Der meinige iſt ſauer geworden und iſt nicht trinkbar. 24. Unſer Land iſt unfruchtbar; wie iſt das Ihre? 25. Dieſe Frucht iſt bitter, aber jene iſt ſüß und angenehm. 26. Grüßte Ihr Knabe? 27. Der meinige hat gegrüßt, aber der eurige nicht. 28. Hat mein Pferd geruht oder ſeins? 29. Mancher Stoff iſt weiß und mancher gelb oder roth, blau, grau, braun, ſchwarz, u.ſ.w. 30. Jeder Wolf iſt wild, und jede Katze iſt falſch. 31. Jedes Kind iſt jung und jede Feder leicht. 32. Welches Schwert roſtet? 33. Welches Metall iſt gelb, welches braun und welches weiß? 34. Gold iſt gelb, Eiſen und Stahl ſind grau oder weißgrau, Platina, Silber, Queckſilber, Zinn und Zink weiß; Kupfer braun. 35. Dieſer Mann und ſeine Frau waren krank. 36. Euer Bruder iſt unſer Freund. 37. Ihr Bruder iſt unſer Freund. 38. Keiner iſt immer glücklich.

## 33.

1. Die Citrone iſt eine ſäuerliche Frucht. 2. Dieſes Gras iſt grün. 3. Grünes Gras iſt weich. 4. Dieſes grüne Gras iſt nicht weich. 5. Ihr junger Bruder iſt ein guter Knabe. 6. Ihre junge Schweſter iſt kein gutes Mädchen. 7. Der treue Hund iſt ein wachſames Thier. 8. Mein treuer Hund iſt wachſam. 9. Treue Hunde ſind wachſam. 10. Ihre wachſamen Hunde ſind treu. 11 Dieſes neue Buch iſt unterhaltend. 12. Ein neues Buch iſt nicht immer unterhaltend. 13. Dieſe unterhaltenden Bücher ſind auch ſehr intereſſant. 14. Unterhaltende Bücher ſind nicht immer lehrreich. 15. Neue Leinwand iſt weiß. 16. Nicht alles friſche Waſſer iſt klar. 17. Regneriſches Wetter iſt unangenehm. 18. Dieſes regneriſche Wetter iſt nicht angenehm. 19. Dieſe reifen Kirſchen ſind roth. 20. Friſche Milch iſt ſüß. 21. Ein fleißiger Schüler lernt. 22. Jeder fleißige Schüler lernt. 23. Geheizte Zimmer ſind warm. 24. Ein blinder Menſch iſt ein unglücklicher Menſch. 25. Dieſer blinde Mann iſt ſehr arm. 26. Taube Perſonen hören nicht. 27. Dieſe ſtummen Perſonen hören nicht. 28. Ihr lockiges Haar iſt braun. 29. Der Rhein und die Donau ſind große Flüſſe. 30. Gute Bücher ſind gute Freunde. 31. Große Vögel ſingen nicht. 32. Friſcher Schnee iſt weiß. 33. Todte Hunde beißen nicht. 34. Dieſe weißen Perlen ſind nicht groß, aber koſtbar. 35. Friſche Luft iſt heilſam. 36. Löwen ſind ſtarke Thiere. 37. Dünnes Glas und dünnes Eis brechen. 38. Dieſes dünne Glas wird brechen. 39. Bellende Hunde beißen nicht. 40. Dieſe bellenden Hunde werden nicht beißen. 41. Sein bellender Hund beißt ſelten. 42. Mancher bellende Hund beißt. 43. Dieſe friſche Milch iſt ſauer geworden. 44. Dieſer weiße Schnee wird ſchmelzen; denn das Wetter iſt mild geworden. 45. Ihr Zimmer iſt groß, das meinige iſt klein. 46. Euer Lehrer iſt ein gelehrter Mann, aber kein guter Lehrer; unſerer iſt ein guter Lehrer.

## ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. *page 21, 8*
2. " *22, 10*
3. " *80*, Lex. ſtottern
4. " *91, 3, s*
5. " *80*, Lex. ſtottern
6. " *82, 4*
7. " *81, 3*
8. " *83*, Lex. warum
9. " *21*, Note
10. " *85*, Lex. unwohl
11. " *86, 5 and 6*
12. " *88*, Lex. ſtürmiſch
13. " *15, B, I, 2*
14. *page 14, 6* and Note
15. " *17, 6, b* and *c*
16. " *16, 3, b* and *c*
17. " *17, 6, c*
18. " *17*, Note *2*
19. " *18, 13, a*
20. " *19, c*
21. " *19, c*
22. " *19, c*
23. " *20, 14, a*
24. " *20, 3*
25. " *21*, Note.

26. Der Anker, der Waſſertropfen, die Fliege, die Luſt, das Heidenthum, der Geburtstag, (das) Oſtindien, der Sommer, die Gärtnerei, das Gewicht, die Luſt, die Bank, das Silber, der Feuerſtein, das Zinn, der Gips, der Topas, die Gottheit, die Meinung, das Gebell, die Heimath, der Auguſt, der Monat, die Nacht, das Neujahr, der Honig, das Männchen, die Nachbarſchaft, die Heimath, das Eiſen, die Säge, der Hirſch, der Leopard, die Wölfin, die Räuberei, der Lüſtling, der Schilling, der Pfennig, die Hälfte, die Rechnung, die Bitterkeit, die Klarheit, das Gefecht, das Gewand.

27. Anker, Tropfen, Fliegen, Sommer, Wölfinnen, Schillinge, Pfennige, Hälften, Gewänder, Monate, Hirſche, Katzen, Schüler, Winde, Lampen, Hörner, Karpfen, Stöcke, Schäfchen, Gänslein, Fröſche, Raben, Glocken, Stämme, Freundinnen, Birnen, Ochſen, Adler, Bäume, Stürme, Neffen, Hämmer, Nadeln, Blümlein, Federn, Bäcker, Bücher, Sänger, Lehrer, Diſteln, Onkel, Leitern, Mörder, Länder, Schmiede, Gläſer, Meiſter, Matroſen, Uhren, Ärzte, Zimmer.

28. Die kleine Maus, der treue Freund, die treue Freundin, der ſtarke Baum, der bittere Thee, der junge Schüler, der reife Apfel, die ſüße Frucht, das weiße Haar, der wilde Wolf, die runde Perle, das ſaure Bier, die ſtürmiſche See, das harte Horn, die rothe Roſe.

29. Eine kleine Maus, ein treuer Freund, eine treue Freundin, ein ſtarker Baum, ein bitterer Thee, ein junger Schüler, ein reifer Apfel, eine ſüße Frucht, ein weißes Haar, ein wilder Wolf, eine runde Perle, ein ſaures Bier, eine ſtürmiſche See, ein hartes Horn, eine rothe Roſe.

30. (*a*) Die kleinen Mäuſe, die treuen Freunde, die treuen Freundinnen, die ſtarken Bäume, Thee (has no plural), die jungen Schüler, die reifen Äpfel, die ſüßen Früchte, die weißen Haare, die wilden Wölfe, die runden Perlen, die ſauern Biere, die ſtürmiſchen Seen, die harten Hörner, die rothen Roſen.

(*b*) Kleine Mäuſe, treue Freunde, treue Freundinnen, ſtarke Bäume, junge Schüler, reife Äpfel, ſüße Früchte, weiße Haare, wilde Wölfe, runde Perlen, ſauere Biere, ſtürmiſche Seen, harte Hörner, rothe Roſen.

31. *page 100, d*
32. " *106, 7*
33. " *108*, Lex. ſondern
34. *page 113, 6*
35. " *114, 7*
36. " *114, 7.*

37. Gebrüllt, gebrummt, gegähnt, geknetet, geblökt, gehungert, gekränkelt, gelächelt, gelacht, gelernt, ſtudiert, gewählt, gewarnt, gewollt, bewahrt, gebohrt, gedankt, gebraucht, gebraucht, gehört, gehört, gekauft, verkauft, corrigiert, beendigt, geworden, geweſen, gehabt, vertheilt, getheilt.

38. Page 144, Foot Note.

39. Mein Auge, unſer Bäcker, eure Birne, ihr Bohrer, mein Buch, ihre Goldfedern, ihre Felder, ſeine Feſſeln, dein Kaffee, Ihr Hund, Ihre Onkel, ſein Schwert, euer Freund, ihre Freundinnen, ihre Häuſer, ſeine Störche, meine Stiere, ihre Tochter, unſere Väter, ſeine Schweine, unſere Lampen, Ihre Gläſer.

40. Meins, das meine, das meinige; unſerer, der unſere, der unſrige; eure, die eure, die eurige; ihrer, der ihre, der ihrige; meins, das meine, das meinige; ihre, die ihren, die ihrigen; ihre, die ihren, die ihrigen; ſeine, die ſeinen, die ſeinigen; deiner, der deine, der deinige; Ihrer, der Ihre, der Ihrige; Ihre, die Ihren, die Ihrigen; ſeins, das ſeine, das ſeinige; eurer, der eure, der eurige; ihre, die ihren, die ihrigen; ihre, die ihren, die ihrigen; ſeine, die ſeinen, die ſeinigen; meine, die meinen, die meinigen; ihre, die ihre, die ihrige; unſere, die unſeren, die unſrigen; ſeine, die ſeinen, die ſeinigen; unſere, die unſeren, die unſrigen; Ihre, die Ihren, die Ihrigen.

41. (*a*) Ein ſolcher Lehrer, eine ſolche Lehrerin, ein ſolches Schwert, eine ſolche Tochter, ein ſolcher Sohn, ein ſolches Schiff, ein ſolcher Fuß, ein ſolches Gebet, eine ſolche Nadel, ein ſolcher Menſch, ein ſolches Land, eine ſolche Stadt, ein ſolcher Ochs.

(*b*) Solch ein Lehrer, ſolch eine Lehrerin, ſolch ein Schwert, ſolch eine Tochter, ſolch ein Sohn, ſolch ein Schiff, ſolch ein Fuß, ſolch ein Gebet, ſolch eine Nadel, ſolch ein Menſch, ſolch ein Land, ſolch eine Stadt, ſolch ein Ochs.

42. 1. Karl wird Soldat werden. 2. Ludwig iſt Arzt geworden. 3. Clara wird Lehrerin. 4. Wurde ihr Sohn Sänger? 5. Iſt ſeine Schweſter Tänzerin geworden? 6. War ſie nicht Nonne geworden? 7. Wurde ihr Sohn nicht Goldſchmied? 8. Nein, er iſt Gärtner geworden. 9. War Ihr Sohn nicht Matroſe geweſen? 10. Ja, er war Matroſe, aber er wurde Soldat.

## [38.] NOUNS IN THE GENITIVE USED AS ATTRIBUTES.

### *Introductory Remarks on the Cases in General.*

1. The different forms which nouns take in different relations in a sentence are called **Cases** (Latin *cadere*, to fall) or **Falls**, *i. e.* the falling of or declining from the Nominative or the first state of a word.

2. The German language distinguishes four principal relations by means of terminations, vowel-changes, or by the position of the word, and there are, therefore, four different forms for declinable words. These four forms or cases are: the **Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative.**

3. The **Nominative** (Latin *nominare*, to name) is simply the name of the person or thing, or the form in which the noun stands, when it is the subject of the phrase. It answers to the question *Who?* or *What?* Thus in the phrases *The man works*, and *This house is new*, the words **"the man"** and **"this house,"** figuring as *subjects*, are in the *Nominative*.

4. The **Genitive** (Latin *gignere*, to engender), which in general denotes the *Genus*, *Kind* or the relation of *Origin* and *Possession*, answers to the question *Whose? Of which?* Thus in the phrase *The work of this man has been recompensed*, the words **of this man** are in the *Genitive*.

5. The **Accusative** (Latin *accusare*, to accuse) is the form or position which the noun takes when it is the *direct object* or that toward which the activity of the verb is straightly directed. It answers to the questions *Which?* or *What?* Thus in the phrases *We esteem the man*; *I own this house*, the words **the man** and **this house**, figuring as *direct objects*, are in the *Accusative*.

6. The **Dative** (Latin *dare*, to give) is the form which the noun takes when it represents the *indirect object*, or the thing or rather person not immediately suffering the action, but *for* whose use or detriment the action is done. It answers to the questions *To whom? To which?* or *For whom? For which?* Thus in the phrase *We prefer our old house to this new house*, **to this new house** is in the *Dative*.

## [34.] THE S-DECLENSION. NOUNS IN THE GENITIVE SINGULAR AS ATTRIBUTES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Das Licht des Mondes iſt mild. | *The light of the moon is mild.* |
| 2. Der Sohn des Müllers iſt krank. | *The son of the miller is sick.* |
| 3. Die Farbe des Glaſes iſt grün. | *The color of the glass is green.* |
| 4. Die Thüre des Zimmers iſt offen. | *The door of the room is open.* |
| 5. Des Vaters Hut iſt grau. | *The father's hat is gray.* |
| 6. Des Onkels Garten iſt nicht groß. | *The uncle's garden is not large.* |
| 7. Friedrichs Schweſter iſt noch ſehr jung. | *Frederic's sister is still very young.* |
| 8. Schillers Werke ſind lehrreich und unterhaltend. | *Schiller's works are instructive and entertaining.* |
| 9. Die Straßen Berlins und die Straßen von Paris ſind lang. | *The streets of Berlin and the streets of Paris are long.* |
| 10. Xenophon war ein Schüler des Sokrates. | *Xenophon was a scholar of Socrates.* |
| 11. Maxens Freunde ſind meine Feinde. | *Max's friends are my enemies.* |
| 12. Amaliens Mutter iſt krank. | *Amelia's mother is sick.* |

*Observations.*—1. The subject or any noun of a sentence may be qualified by another noun, which, according to §42, 3, is to be considered as its *Attribute*, and stands for the most part in the **Genitive Case**, corresponding to the English **Possessive**, or the **Saxon Genitive.**

2. The German nouns are divided into two classes:

*a.* Nouns taking **es** or **s** in the Genit. sing., and hence called *Nouns of the* **S-Declension**, as in M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7; or

*b.* Nouns taking **en** or **n** in the Genit. sing., and called *Nouns of the* **N-Declension.** This class will form the subject of the next section.

3. **All Neuter Nouns** and **most Masc. Nouns** belong to the *S-Declension*, as: das Haus, *the house*, des Hauſes, *of the house*; der Arzt, *the physician*, des Arztes, *of the physician.*

4. The termination of the Genitive in the *S-Declension* is **es**; the **e** of **es**, however, is frequently dropped, provided euphony admits of it. It always drops in nouns ending in any syllable containing a half-mute **e** (°), or ending in **lein**, as: Fräulein, *miss*, gen. Fräuleins; Engel[ĕng'-el], *angel*, gen. Engels; Abend[ah'-bᵉnᵗ], *evening*, gen. Abends; Teller[tĕl'-lᵉr], *plate*, gen. Tellers.

5. In German the form of the **Saxon Genitive** exists the same as in English, with the exception that the apostrophe is **not** added, as: des Bruders Buch, *the brother's book*; Claras Hut, *Clara's hat*; Heinrichs Vogel [hin'-rĭvs fo'-gᵉl], *Henry's bird.* M. S. 4.

6. Proper names not ending in **e**, or a **hissing sound**, take **s** in the genitive case. M. S. 7, 8, 9.

7. The proper names of masculine persons ending in a **hissing sound** (s, ß, ſch, x, z), and those of females ending in **e**, take **ens** in the genitive. M. S. 11, 12.

8. The genitives of *foreign proper names* ending in **as, es, is, us,** can be denoted only by the definite article, as des Xerxes, *of Xerxes.* M. S. 10.

9. The names of towns and countries ending in a hissing sound are indeclinable, and the preposition **von** is commonly used instead of the genit. ending, as die Häuſer von Paris und Mainz[mints], *the houses of Paris and Mayence*; but die Häuſer Londons und Boſtons, *the houses of London and Boston.* M. S. 9.

## 34.

der Fiſch[fĭsh], *fish*
der Profeſſor[prō˝-fĕs′-sŏr], *pro-*
der König*[kēä′-nĭy], *king* [*fessor*
das Volk*[fŏlk], *people, nation, folk*
die Nachbarin*[näch′-bä-rĭn˝], (female) *neighbor*
der Mann[măn], *man, husband*
die Lerche*[lĕr′-ye], *lark*
der Herold[hä′-rŏlt], *herald*
der Tag*[täy], *day*
Hermann[hĕr′-măn], *Herman*
die Magd*[mägt], *servant girl, maid, maiden*
der Schuhmacher*[shū′-mä˝-cher], *shoemaker*
der Schneider*[shnī′-der], *tailor*
die Blume*[blū′-me], *flower*
der Theil*[tīl], *deal, part, portion*
der Morgen*[mŏr′-gen], *morning*
Gott*[göt], *God*
der Schöpfer*[shŭp′-fer], *creator*
der Himmel[hĭm′-mel], *heaven, sky*
Amerika[ă-mä′-rĭ-kä˝], *America*
Wien[vēn], *Vienna*
die Hauptſtadt*[houpt′-stät], *chief city, capital*
Oeſtreich*[ēäst′-rĭy], *Austria*
England*[ĕng′-länt], *England*
das Kaiſerthum*[kī′-zer-tūm˝], *empire*
das Königreich*[kēä′-nĭy-rĭy˝], *kingdom, realm*
Preußen[proi′-sen], *Prussia*
mächtig*[mäy′-tĭy], *mighty, power-*
der Staat*[staht], *state* [*ful*
doch[dŏch], *though, yet, however*
Amalie[ă-mah′-lĭ-e], *Amelia.*

1. Hermann war der Sohn eines Arztes. 2. Iſt die Mutter des Königs alt? 3. Der Garten meines Freundes iſt ſehr ſchön. 4. Hier iſt das Buch des Kindes. 5. Sind Sie der Bruder dieſes Mannes? 6. Das Blut dieſes und jedes Fiſches iſt kalt. 7. Die Magd des Schuhmachers iſt krank. 8. Jenes Arztes Sohn iſt mein Freund. 9. Iſt Ihr Lehrer der Schüler dieſes Profeſſors? 10. Meines Freundes Hund iſt ſehr treu. 11. Dieſer König iſt der Vater ſeines Volkes. 12. Die Tochter des Gärtners iſt noch ſehr jung, und die des Schneiders iſt ſchon alt. 13. Die Blume jenes Gartens iſt ſchön. 14. Die Frauen jenes Landes ſind froh und glücklich. 15. Sind die Thüren dieſes Hauſes nicht offen? 16. Stottert deine Schweſter oder die des Karl? 17. Die Schweſter Philipps ſtottert, und die des Max ſtammelt. 18. Warum lacht Amaliens Mutter? 19. Nicht Amaliens Mutter, ſondern die des Hugo lacht. 20. Die Lerche iſt der Herold des Morgens. 21. Gott iſt der Schöpfer des Himmels und der Erde. 22. Die Flüſſe Amerikas und Aſiens ſind ſehr groß. 23. Wien iſt die Hauptſtadt Oeſtreichs. 24. London iſt die Hauptſtadt des reichen Englands, und Paris iſt die Hauptſtadt des ſchönen Frankreichs. 25. Das Kaiſerthum Oeſtreich und das Königreich Preußen ſind mächtige Staaten, aber doch nur Theile des großen Deutſchlands.

## 35.

das Fenſter*[fĕn'-st$^{e}$r], *window*
ſo—wie, *as—as*
der Schnabel*[shnah'-b$^{e}$l], *bill beak, neb*
die Gans*[gäns], *goose*
platt*[plät], *flat*
das Licht*[lĭyt], *light*
der Faule*[fou'-l$^{e}$], *the lazy man*
das Weltall*[vĕlt'-äl], *universe*
die Quelle*[kvĕl'-l$^{e}$], *source, foun-*
die Nacht*[nächt], *night* [*tain*
die Welt*[vĕlt], *world*
ganz*[gänts], *entire, whole, complete* (and adverbially)
die Sprache*[sprah'-y$^{e}$], *language, speech*
der Dichter*[dĭy'-t$^{e}$r], *poet*
Alcibiades*[äl'-tsĭ-bē'-ä-dēs], *Alcibiades*
der Zweig*[tsvĭk], *branch, twig.*

1. The garden of this house is very small. 2. This man is the brother of the gardner; that woman is the sister of the shoemaker. 3. This child is the shoemaker's son. 4. The door of that house is not yet open. 5. The servant of the physician is the sister of this gardner. 6. Why is the window of this room not open? 7. The windows of this house are always open. 8. My uncle's dog is faithful. 9. Is this girl that goldsmith's daughter? 10. No, she is the baker's daughter. 11. Are 'you the son of a physician? 12. No, I am the son of an officer. 13. The uncle of my cousin is very rich. 14. Our brother's garden is as large as that of the bookbinder. 15. The bill of the stork is long and thick. 16. The bill of that bird is flat and broad. 17. The light of this star is mild. 18. Charles is the son of an officer. 19. The mother of the girl was weeping. 20. The lazy [man] is the beggar's brother. 21. The sun is the source of (the) light. 22. It was night, and the doors of the house were not open. 23. Is this Clara's or Paul's book? 24. No, it is Bertha's. 25. Why does Henry's sister not come? 26. The sister of (the) Henry is sick. 27. Henry's sister is sick. 28. Who is she? 29. She is 'your baker's daughter. 30. Who is the creator of the moon. 31. God is the creator of the universe. 32. The branches of this tree are very large and strong. 33. The language of many a great poet is beautiful. 34. Who was the teacher of Alcibiades?

### LEXICOLOGY.

**König, king.** Ahd. *chuninc, chunic*; A. S. *cyning*, then *cynig, cyng*, from Goth. *kuni*, A. S. *cyne*=genus, race, kin, so that this word signifies: head of a kin, a race.

**Volk**, *people, nation*, **folk**, lit. a *crowd* of people. A. S. *folc*; Latin *vulgus*, the multitude, akin to Ger. voll, *full*, Gr. *polloi*, many. Köne (Münster Gymnasial Programme) connects Volk with Gefolge, *followers, suit*, from folgen, *to follow*, hence Volk, the *following* portion of humanity, or the men under command, in distinction to the *Lords*, sovereigns, princes.

**Nachbarin**, (female) **neighbor**, from Nachbar (Ex. 24), and the termination **in**, which forms fem. substantives from masc. ones, and answers to the Engl. suffix **-ine** (Lat. *ina*), **-ess**, or the prefix **she-** put before the name of a male being, *e. g.*: Held, *hero*, Heldin, *heroine*; Kaiſer, *emperor*, Kaiſerin, *empress*; Freund, *friend*, Freundin, (female) *friend*; Gärtner, *gardner*, Gärtnerin, (female) *gardner*.

**Lerche**, **lark**, from Old Ger. lären, *to sound* or *sing*. Tab. V. 16.

**Tag**, **day**, the time of light. A. S. *daeg*, Lat. *dies*, Sans. *div*, from *dyu*, to shine. Tab. V. 11 and 20.

**Hermann**, **Herman**, prop. *army-man, man of war*; c. of **Her**=ahd. *hari, heri*=Heer=army, and **Mann**, **man**.

**Magd**, **maid**, *maid-servant*. Tab. V. 20.

**Schuhmacher**, **shoemaker**; c. of **Schuh**, **shoe**, and **macher**, **maker**. Tab. V. 16.

**Schneider**, *tailor*, lit. a *cutter*; from ſchneiden, *to cut*, A. S. *snædan*, Goth. *sneith-an*, ahd. *snid-an*, **to snathe** (obs.).

**Blume**, *flower*, **bloom**, from blühen [bléé'-hen], *to* **blow**.

**Morgen**, **morn**, **morning**. Goth. *maurgins*; A. S. *morn*. Tab. V. 26. According to Grimm (Mythol. 2nd Ed., 709) the breaking (forth) or beginning of the day, from Goth. *gamaurgjan*, to cut and shorten.

**Gott**, **god**, the ruler of the universe. A. S. *god*; Goth. *guth*; Pers. *khoda*, God, also a ruler. Tab. V. 13.

**Schöpfer**, *creator*, from ſchöpfen (antiquated), *to create*; related with ſchaffen, *to do, make*, **shape**. A. S. *scyppan, scapan*. Tab. V. 4

**Himmel**, *sky, heaven*. Goth. *himins*; probably from the lost Goth. root *himan*, to cover.

**Hauptſtadt**, *capital, chief city*; c. of **Haupt**, **head**, A. S. *heafod, heafd*, ahd. *houbit*, Lat. *caput*; and **Stadt**, Ex. 15.

**Oeſterreich**, now generally **Oeſtreich**, *Austria*; c. of **Oſt**, **east**, mhd. adv. öster=in the east; and **Reich**, *empire*, allied with **reich**, Ex. 11.

**England**, **England**, *i. e.* land of the **Angles**.

**Kaiſerthum,** *empire*; c. of Kaiſer, from Lat. *Cæsar*, and the suffix **thum,** which answers to the Engl. suffix **dom,** and signifies **dom***inion, power, state, propriety.*

**Königreich, king***dom*, c. of König (Ex. 34) and Reich.

**mächtig, mighty.** Tab. V. 18; c. of **macht, might,** from root of **mögen, may,** *to be able, to be free to act*; and suffix **ig,** Ex. 12.

**Staat, state** (Fr. *etat*), lit. a *standing, position, condition, the civil power*; Lat. *status*, from *sto, statum*, Sans. *stha*, to stand.

**doch, though,** *yet, however.* Tab. V. 9 and 18.

**Theil** (see p. 112, Welttheil).

**Fenſter,** *window*, from Lat. *fenestra*, Gr. *phainein*, (comp. **Phen**omenon, Webster), to make visible.

**Schnabel,** *bill, beak*, **neb,** also **nib.** Tab. V. 31.

**Gans, goose,** lit. the *gaper*; akin to Lat. *anser*, Gr. *chen*; from **gähnen,** Gr. *chaino*, to gape, to **yawn.** Tab. V. 26 (in **gander** the *n* is preserved).

**platt, flat,** *level*; Gr. *platus*, broad.

**Licht, light.** A. S. *lecht, lyht*; Lat. *lux*, light; akin to Sans. *lok, loch*, to see, to shine. Tab. V. 18.

**Der Faule,** *the lazy man*; comp. faul (Ex. 22). The German language can turn an adjective or any other word into a substantive, and use it as a substantive, without any alteration to the form of the word.

**Weltall,** *universe*, c. of Welt and all (p. 112 and 140, allein).

**Quelle,** *source, fountain head*, **well,** from quellen, *to flow forth, burst out,* **to well**; Ger. wallen, A. S. *weallen*, Dutch *wellen*, to boil, spring.

**Nacht, night.** A. S. *niht*; Goth. *nahts*; Lat. *nox, noctis*; Gr. *nux, nuktos*; Sans. *nakta.* Tab. V. 18.

**Welt,** comp. Welttheil, Ex. 15.

**Zweig,** *branch*, **twig,** A. S. *tvig*, derived from **zwei,** *two*, lit. a thin branch, where a thick one divides into two. Tab. V. 8.

**Sprache,** *language*, **speech,** from **ſprechen, to speak,** A. S. *sprecan.* Tab. V. 28.

**Dichter,** *poet*, from **dichten,** (1) *to meditate, think*; (2) to write poetry, to compose (a poem, etc.), from the Lat. *dictare*, to **dic**tate, to tell another what to write or say; or related with to **think,** to form *in the mind, invent.*

## [35.] THE N-DECLENSION. THE ATTRIBUTE A NOUN IN THE GENITIVE.—CONTINUATION.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Das Fell des Bär-en iſt braun. | *The skin (fell) of the bear is brown.* |
| 2. Der Vater dieſes Knab-en iſt arm. | *The father of this boy is poor.* |
| 3. Das Bein jenes treu-en Hundes iſt gebrochen. | *The leg (bone) of that faithful (true) dog is broken.* |
| 4. Der Mann dieſer untreu-en Frau iſt todt. | *The husband (man) of this unfaithful (untrue) woman is dead.* |
| 5. Die Farbe jenes Planet-en iſt röthlich. | *The color of that planet is reddish.* |
| 6. Das Herz des tapfer-n Soldat-en iſt furchtlos. | *The heart of the brave soldier is fearless* |

*Observations.*—1. **Masculine** substantives ending in obscure **e** (ᵉ) belong to the **N-Declension,** taking an **n** in the genitive and in all the other cases, singular and plural, as: der Haſe[hah'-zᵉ], *the hare*, genit. **des Haſen,** plur. die **Haſen,** *the hares.*

2. To the **N-Declension** belong also (*a*) those nouns which *formerly* ended in obscure **e,** as: Ochs[öx], or Ochſe[öx'-zᵉ], *ox*; Hirt[hĭrt], or Hirte, *herdsman*; Graf[grahf], *count, earl* (mhd. *grave*, Engl. in ***margrave***); (*b*) those masculines which are derived from other languages, having the accent on the *last* syllable, as: der Planet[plä-nät'], *the planet*; der Elephant[ĕᵉ-lᵉ-fänt'], *the elephant*; der Student[stü-dĕnt'], *the student*; genit. des **Planeten, Elephanten, Studenten.**

3. The following substantives have lost the final **e,** but they are declined as if they still ended in **e**:

der Bär (ahd. bëro), *bear*
der Chriſt (mhd. kristæne, kristen), *Christian*
der Fürſt (mhd. vürste), properly the *foremost*, the *first*, *prince*
der Graf (mhd. grave), *count*
der Herr (mhd. herre), from her, hehr, *sublime, high, master, lord,*
der Held[hĕlᵗ], *hero*
der Hirt (mhd. hirte), *herdsman*
der Menſch (mhd. mensche), *man, human being*
der Narr (mhd. narre), *fool*
der Thor[tör] (mhd. tore), *fool*
der Prinz (mhd. prinze), *prince*
der Vorfahr [fŏr'-fahr], *predecessor, ancestor*
der Ochs, Ochſe, *ox*
der Schenk, abbreviated from Schenke, *cup-bearer*
der Mohr[mör] (mhd. more), *moor*
der Lump[lümp], *scamp*
der Geck[gĕk], *fool, fop*
der Fink[fĭnk], prop. Finke, *finch*
der Genoß[gᵉ-nös'], usually Genoſſe, *associate*
der Geſell[gᵉ-zĕl'], properly Geſelle, *fellow workman*
der Burſch[bürsh], and Burſche, *the young fellow*
der Rebell[rᵉ-bĕl'], *the rebel.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Ochſen, Bären, Finken, Fürſten,
Herren, Helden, Hirten, Chriſten,
Vorfahren and Schenken, Mohren,
Lumpen, Gecken, Narren, Thoren,
Menſchen, Burſchen, Genoſſen, Geſellen,
Grafen, Prinzen, as well as Rebellen,
Have plural in **en**, as is shown,
Hence all oblique cases, as is known.*

4. The following substantives derived from other languages, and accented on the last syllable, are also declined according to the **N-Declension:**

Der Advocat[ăd"-vō-kaht'] *advocate, lawyer*
der Candidat[kăn"-dī-daht'], *candidate* [*sonant*
der Conſonant[kŏn"-zō-nănt'], *con-*
der Diamant[dī"-ă-mănt'], *diamond*
der Ducat[dū-kaht'], *ducat* (a gold coin in several States of Europe)
der Elephant[ĕ"-l$^{e}$-fănt'], *elephant*
der Camerad[kă"-m$^{e}$-raht'], *comrade*
der Katholik[kă"-tō-lĭk'], *Catholic*
der Komet[kō-măt'], *comet*
der Monarch[mō-năr$^{ch}$'], *monarch*
der Patriot[pă"-trĭ-ōt'], *patriot*
der Patient[pă"-tsĭ ĕnt'], *patient*
der Philoſoph[fĭ"-lō-zōf'], *philoso-* [*pher*
der Planet[plă-năt'], *planet*
der Präſident[prä"-zĭ-d$^{e}$nt'], *presi-* [*dent*
der Poet[pō-ät'], *poet*
der Proteſtant[prō"-tĕs-tănt'], *Pro-* [*testant*
der Regent[rĕ-gĕnt'], *regent*
der Student[stŭ-dĕnt'], *student*
der Soldat[zōl-daht'], *soldier*
der Tyrann[tĭ-răn'], *tyrant.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Foreign nouns, whose ultima† we accent,
As Patient, Präſident, Regent, Student,
Philoſoph, Patriot, Soldat, Advokat,
Candidat, Camerad, Katholik and Ducat
Monarch and Tyrann, Planet and Komet,
Diamant, Elephant, Proteſtant and Poet,
Conſonant, and others we do not mention,
Regularly belong to the **N-Declension.**

5. *Attributive Adjectives*, preceded by the definite or indefinite article, or by a determinative word declined like an article, belong to the N-Declension, as: des alten Mannes, der jungen Frau, des ſchönen Kindes, jenes guten Vaters, dieſer treuen Mutter, deines ſcharfen Meſſers.

*According to 1, in the N-Declension, all oblique cases (that is all cases except the nominative singular) end in n.

†Last syllable of a word.

## 36.

der Falke*[fäl'-kᵉ], *falcon*
das Fell*[fêl] (—es, —e),† *skin*
der Polarbär[pō-lahr'-bâr"], *polar bear*
der Weg*[vāᵏ], *way*
der Elephant[ē"-lᵉ-fänt'], *elephant*
der Franzoſe[frän-tsō'-zᵉ], *French man*
der Bart*[bahrt], *beard*
der Türke[tür'-kᵉ], *Turk*
röthlich*[rêät'-lĭʏ], *reddish*
der Jude*[yū'-dᵉ], *Jew*
der Prinz*[prĭnts], *prince*
der Monarch*[mō-närchʰ], *monarch*
der Graf*[grahf], *count*
der Fürſt*[fürst], *sovereign, prince*
der Vorfahr*[fōr'-fahr], *ancestor*
der Chriſt*[krĭst], *Christian*
der Barbar*[bär-bahr'], *barbarian*
der Herr*[hĕr] (—en or —n), *master*
der Philoſoph[fĭ"-lō-zōf'], *philosopher*
die Lippe*[lĭp'-pᵉ], *lip*
der Kranke*[krän'-kᵉ], *sick man*
der Arme*[är'-mᵉ], *poor man*
der Pole[pō'-lᵉ], *Pole*
die Gaſtfreundſchaft*[gäſt'-froinᵗ"-shäft], *hospitality*
die Pflicht*[pflĭʏt], *obligation, duty*
zweite*[tsvī'-tᵉ], *second*
der Bote*[bō'-tᵉ], *messenger*
der Blick*[blĭk], *look*
ſanft*[zänft], *soft*
klug[klūᵏ], *smart*
der Einband*[ĭn'-bänt], *binding*
arabiſch[ă-rah'-bĭsh"], *Arabic, Arabian*
der Werth*[vârt], *worth*
das Leben*[lā'-bᵉn], *life, living*
der Traum*[troum], *dream*
die Hoffnung*[hōf'-nünᵏ], *hope*
die That*[taht], *deed, action*
der Thor*[tōr], *fool*
thöricht*[têä'-rĭʏt], *foolish*

Nachbar [p. 133] (—n and s, plural —n).

1. Das Neſt jenes Falken iſt ſehr hoch. 2. Das Fell des Polarbären iſt weiß. 3. Die Wege Gottes ſind nicht die Wege des Menſchen. 4. Die Augen des Elephanten ſind ſehr klein. 5. Sie iſt die Frau jenes Franzoſen. 6. Der Bart jenes Türken war röthlich, der des Juden ſchwarz. 7. Der Sohn meines Nachbarn und der Bruder unſeres Lehrers ſind hier geweſen. 8. Ein Prinz iſt der Sohn eines Monarchen, Fürſten oder Grafen. 9. Die Vorfahren dieſes Chriſten waren Barbaren 10. Der Nachbar jenes Herren iſt ein Philoſoph. 11. Die Lippen dieſes Kranken brennen ſehr. 12. Haben die Kinder jenes Armen gedankt? 13. Wann reiſten die Brüder des Fürſten? 14. Die Frau dieſes Polen ſagte nichts. 15. Gaſtfreundſchaft iſt die Pflicht des Menſchen. 16. Der zweite Bote des Grafen kommt.

†In order to know how to decline a word, it suffices to know the *genitive sing.* and the *nominative plural.* In the *S-Declension*, the dative is formed by suppressing the **s** of the genitive singular, and from the nominative plural we obtain the dative plural by adding an **n**. In the *N-Declension* the genitive singular is alone sufficient to know all the other cases, singular and plural. As there are exceptions in the declension, of which, according to our plan, all will not be given in the first course, we shall add to every noun, forming such an exception, when introduced for the first time, the endings of the genitive singular and nominative plural in a parenthesis, as: Bauer (—n, —n); Baum, (—es, Bäume); read: Bauer, gen. **Bauern**, plur. **Bauern**; Baum, gen. **Baumes**, plur. **Bäume**.

17. Iſt der Blick des Elephanten nicht ſanft und klug? 18. Jener junge Soldat war der Sohn eines armen Schotten. 19. Der Einband dieſes ſchönen Buches iſt koſtbar. 20. Der Werth jenes arabiſchen Pferdes iſt ſehr groß. 21. Der Sohn jenes unglücklichen Polen iſt reich geworden. 22. Das Leben des Menſchen iſt ein Traum. 23. Die Hoffnung des mächtigen Fürſten iſt nicht ſo groß, wie Sie meinen. 24. Er iſt keines guten Menſchen Freund. 25. Sie iſt die Tochter jenes reichen und gelehrten Mannes. 26. Das Gras dieſes grünen Feldes iſt weich. 27. Der Garten ſeines reichen Neffen iſt ſehr groß. 28. Die Mutter jenes alten Matroſen iſt krank. 29. Marie iſt die Tochter eines Advocaten. 30. Dieſer Knabe iſt der Sohn eines mächtigen Prinzen. 31. Der Sohn des Herrn Schulze iſt (ein) Student. 32. Die Thaten eines Narren ſind nicht immer thöricht. 33. Die Bücher des deutſchen Philoſophen Kant ſind ſehr lehrreich. 34. Der Werth jenes großen Diamanten iſt größer als Sie meinen.

## 87.

Das Brüllen*[brĭl'-lᵉn], *roar*
der Löwe*[lēa'-vᵉ], *lion*
das Geheul*[gᵉ-hoil'], *howling*
der Name*[nah'-mᵉ], *name*
die Tapferkeit*[täp'-fᵉr-kĭt"], *bravery*
der General (—s, Generäle) [gĕ-nᵉ-rahl'], *general*
das Einkommen[ĭn'-köm"-mᵉn], *income*
der Präſident[prä"-zĭ-dĕnt'], *president*
bekannt[bᵉ-känt'], *known*
der Secretär*[zĕk"-rᵉ-täĭr'], *secretary*
der Haſe*[hah'-zᵉ], *hare*
der Sklave*[sklah'-fᵉ], *slave*
die Stärke*[stär'-kᵉ], *strength*
ruſſiſch[rūs'-sĭsh], *Russian*
der Spanier[spah'-nĭ-ᵉr], *Spaniard*
der Jeſuit[yä"-zū-ĭt'], *Jesuit*
polniſch[pōl'-nĭsh], *Polish.*

1. The roar of that old lion, and the howling of this young bear was fearful. 2. What was the name of that great philosopher? 3. The bravery of this general was great. 4. The income of that fool is large. 5. The doors of that gate are large. 6. The brave sons of the rich count are my friends. 7. The deeds of that president are known. 8. What is the name of that monarch's son? 9. The house of the Jew is open, that of the Christian is not. 10. The servant of that old Greek is faithful, that of the young Frenchman is not. 11. The knife of that boy is not so sharp as the knife of your neighbor. 12. No wise man is a friend of a fool. 13. This girl is the daughter of a Frenchman. 14. Who is the father of this boy and that girl? 15. Charles is the friend of 'your nephew. 16. He is the son of a Spaniard. 17. The income of that Jesuit has been very large. 18. The

son of our nephew has become very rich. 19. Is the physician of our monarch a Frenchman? 20. No, he is the son of a Polish Jew. 21. It is the language of a fool. 22. Abdalla (Abdallah) was the slave of a Turk; he became the secretary of a mighty prince. 23. The strength of an elephant, a bear, a lion and a wolf is very great. 24. Where is this gentleman's horse? 25. He is a Russian soldier and the son of a count. 26. The language of this philosopher is very beautiful. 27. Did not the son of our physician become a professor? 28. The wife of a count is a countess. 29. The father of this poor boy was the son of a mighty prince, and the father of this rich Spaniard was a poor herdsman's son.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Falke, falcon,** bird of prey with short *hooked* beak; Lat. *falco,* from *falx,* sickle, scythe.

**Fell,** *skin,* **fell** (in wool-**fell**); akin to **pell, peel, pelt**; Lat. *pellis,* Gr. *pella,* a skin. Tab. V. 4.

**Weg, way.** A. S. wĕg, lit. *a moving*; from bewegen, A. S. *wegan,* to move; Sans. *vaha*; Lat. *via,* a way; conn. with *veho,* to carry. Tab. V. 19.

**Bart, beard.** Tab. V. 11.

**röthlich, reddish,** from roth, Ex. 7 and **lich,** Ex. 16.

**Jude, Jew.** Lat. *Judæus*; Gr. *Joudaios.*

**Prinz, prince.** Lat. *princeps*(—*primus,* first, and *capio,* to take).

**Monarch, monarch.** Gr. *monarches—monos.* alone; *arche,* rule—*archo,* to rule.

**Fürst,** *sovereign, chief, prince*; ahd. *fur-isto,* superl. of *fur,* for, fore; comp. **first**=*fir* and the superl. ending **st.** The termination **ft** forms adjectives and substantives, which for the most part have a superlative sense, thus: Angſt (from eng or enge, *narrow, strait*), *the highest strait*; Brunſt, *the highest burning, passion* (from brennen, *to burn*); Gewinnſt, *highest gain* (from gewinnen, *to win, to gain*); Kunſt, *art* (from können, *can, to be able*), hence the highest Können.

**Graf,** *count,* **grave** in *mar***grave**=Markgraf=Mark, **march** (marches), *a border,* and Graf, *a count.*

**Vorfahr,** *predecessor, ancestor*; c. of **vor, fore, before,** and **fahren, fare,** A. S. *faran,* to go, to travel.

**Barbar, barbarian.** Lat. *barbarus,* Gr. *barbaros,* rude, uncivilized.

**Herr,** *master, sir*; ahd. *herro*, from *heriro*, i. e. *her-iro*, der Hehr=ere, *the more elevated*, comparative of Hehr, *high*; akin to **hero.**

**Lippe, lip.** A. S. *lippe*; Latin *labium*; akin to Lat. *lambo*, Engl. *lap*, expressive of the sound of lapping.

**der Kranke,** from **krank,** *ill, sick*; **crank**=weak · A. S. *cranc*; comp. der Faule, Ex. 35. Tab. V. 38.

**arm,** *poor*. A. S. *earm* (?); acc. to some, connected with the old *aren, i. e.* to plough; Lat. *aro* (comp. Engl. **ara***ble*), to toil, then to struggle hard; der **Arme,** *the poor man*, see der Faule, Ex. 35.

**Gaſtfreundſchaft,** *hospitality*; c. of Gaſt, Ex. 32, Freund, Ex. 8, and the suffix **ſchaft,** which answers to the English suffix **ship,** A. S. *scipe*, shape, from ſchaffen, *to make, to shape*: Freundſchaft, *friend***ship**; Herrſchaft, *lord***ship.**

**Pflicht,** *obligation, duty*, **plight.** A. S. *plihtan*, to pledge, *pliht*, a pledge; Dutch *pligt*, an obligation.

**zweite,** *second*; the ordinal number formed from zwei, *two*, by the suffix **te.**

**Bote,** *messenger*, comp. **bode** in fore**bode.** A. S. *bodian*, to tell—*bod, gebod*, a command; allied to **Bid.**

**Blick, look,** from blicken, *to look*, properly *glance the eye*; A. S. *blic-an*, to shine=German blinken, *to glisten, to sparkle.*

**ſanft, soft,** *gentle, mild*; A. S. *soft*; Dutch *saft.* Tab. V. 26.

**Einband, binding,** from einbinden, *to bind together*; c. of binden, *to bind*, and the prefix ein, which denotes the tendency to enter into some place, like the English *in (en), into:* einſpinnen, *to spin in*; eingehen, *to go in*; einhängen, *to hang in.*

**Werth,** *value*, **worth,** allied to werden, A. S. *weordhan*, hence next: what is to be, to become, then what strikes the eye, what attracts observation, what renders a thing valuable.

**Leben, life, living,** from leben, Ex. 23.

**Traum, dream,** from träumen, *to dream*, Ex. 17; akin to Lat. *dormio*, Sans. *dra*, to sleep; or to Gael. *drem*, an appearance.

**Hoffnung, hope** (for Hoffung), from hoffen, *to hope*, Ex. 14, and the suffix **ung**=Engl. *ing*, which expresses an *actual doing* or a *durable state.* Tab. V. 4.

**Name, name,** A. S. *nama*; Lat. *nomen—nosco*, to know; Sans. *naman—jna*, to know.

**tapfer,** *valiant, brave*, English **dapper,** quick, originally *brave.* Tab. V. 11, 2, 38.

**That, deed,** *action, act*; from thun, *to do*, Ex. 4; compare thätig, Ex. 22.

**Thor,** *fool*; mhd. *tore*; according to Weigand derived from the Gothic *diusan*, ahd. *tiosan*, to be imprudent, foolish; hence A. S. *dusig*=foolish; Engl. **dizzy,** giddy, confused, connected with **daze,** to render

stupid, to **doze**, to be in a stupefied state. On the interchange of **r** and **s**, see Tab. V. 23. Do not confound **der Thor**=*fool*, with **das Thor**, Ex. 7.

**thöricht**, *foolish*, from **Thor**. The termination **icht** serves to form adjectives from substantives which denote *resemblance to* or *extraction from* what the substantive means, as for instance: **holzicht**, wood-*like* (**Holz**=*wood*, Engl. **holt** [obs.]); **ölicht**, oil-*like* (**Öl**=*oil*); the vowel of the substantive is here in **thöricht** only exceptionally modified.

**Brüllen**, *roar*, Ex. 9. The present infinitive of any verb may be used as a neuter noun, and generally corresponds to the English verbal substantive in *ing*, as: **das Singen**, *the singing, act of singing*; **das Brüllen**, *the roar, act of roaring*.

**Löwe, lion.** A. S. *leo*, from Latin *leo, leonis*, Gr. *leon*.

**Geheul, howling**, from **heulen**, *to howl*; Lat. *ululo*; Gr. *hulao* and *ololuso*; compare the German **Eule**, Engl. **owl**, Lat. *ulula*.

**bekannt, known**, from **kennen**, *to know*, for which was used in mhd. **bekennen**, hence **bekannt**, past participle used adjectively.

**Hase, hare.** Tab. V. 23.

**Sklave, slave**, from Low Latin *Sclavus*=*Slavus*, a Slave, the name of the peoples inhabiting eastern Europe and made captive by the Teutons, hence *slave*=a captive in servitude, a serf.

**Secretär, secretary**, lit. *one who is intrusted with secrets*; Lat. *secretus*=secret.

**Stärke**, *strength*, from **stark**, Ex. 25.

**russisch, polnisch, Russian, Polish**, from **der Russe, der Pole**. On **isch** see Ex. 8. Adjectives formed from the names of towns are written with a capital initial, but not such as are derived from the names of countries or nations.

## [36.] THE ATTRIBUTE A NOUN IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Die Hoffnung **der Kinder** ist nicht groß. | *The hope of the children is not great.* |
| 2. Das Laub dieser Bäume wird gelb. | *The foliage of these trees is becoming yellow.* |
| 3. Die Nester jener Vögel sind nicht hoch. | *The nests of those birds are not high.* |
| 4. Der Lehrer guter Schüler ist froh. | *The teacher of good scholars is glad.* |
| 5. Der Lehrer dieser guten Schüler ist froh. | *The teacher of these good scholars is glad.* |

*Observations.*—1. The **Genitive Plural** of nouns does not differ from that of the nominative plural and is indicated merely by the ending **er** of the preceding determinative word. M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

2. An adjective before a noun in the genitive plural takes **er**, but in case another determinative precedes the adiective, the ending of the latter in the genitive plural is **en**. M. S. 5.

**38.**

der Zahn* (—es, Zähne), *tooth*
die Heerde* (—n), *herd, flock*
umher*[üm-här'], *round, round-about*
kochen*[kŏ'-ch^en], *to cook*
die Arbeit*[är'-bīt] *toil, hard work, labor*
der Bürger*[bĭr'-g^er], *citizen*
die Zierde*[tsēr'-d^e], *ornament*
der Segen*[zā'-g^en], *blessing*
die Mühe*[mēē'-h^e], *toil, labor*
der Preis*[prīs], *prize, price*
der Handschlag*[hänt'-shläk], *joining of hands*
Manneswort,* *word of man*
verschwinden*[fĕr-shvĭn'-d^en], (irreg.), *to disappear*
die Spur*[spūr], *track, vestige*
die Bescheidenheit[b^e-shī'-d^en-hīt'], *modesty*
der Engel*[ĕng'-^el], *angel*
waschen[vä'-sh^en], *to wash*
der Hutmacher*[hūt'-mä'-^cher], *hatter*
die Beere[bā'-r^e], *berry*
das Merkmahl*[mĕrk'-mahl] (—es, —e), *mark, sign*
die Seele[zā'-l^e], *soul*
der Schlummer*[shlŭm'-m^er] *slumber*
der Todte[tō'-t^e] (—en, Ex. 33),
schwer*[shvār], *heavy, difficult*
die Leute*[loi'-t^e], *people, folks*
das Spiel*[spēl] (—es, —e), *play, game*
der Tod*[tōt] (—es), *death*
die Hoffart*[hŏf'-fahrt], *haughtiness, pride*
währen*[vā'-r^en], *to last, endure*
das Gesetz[g^e-zĕts'] (—es, —e), *law*
die Zeit*[tsīt], *time*

1. Das Leben der Menschen ist nicht lang. 2. Die Lehrer unserer Schulen lehrten heute nicht. 3. Haben die Lehrer eurer Schüler heute gelehrt? 4. Ich denke nicht. 5. Diese Hüte sind schwarz; die Hüte unserer Freunde sind weiß. 6. Die Zähne der Elephanten sind sehr groß und weiß. 7. Das Gras unserer Felder ist grün und groß; die Heerden unserer Brüder grasen dort. 8. Die Vögel jener Bäume zwitscherten und flatterten umher. 9. Die Früchte jener hohen Bäume sind sehr klein. 10. Die Töchter unserer Nachbaren haben nichts gelernt; sie thuen nichts als singen und springen. 11. Die Mägde unserer Gärtner sind fleißig; sie kochen und backen, waschen und spinnen. 12. Die Thüren der Zimmer unserer Hutmacher sind immer offen. 13. Die Bäume dieser jungen Wälder sind nicht hoch. 14. Das Licht jener Sterne scheint milde. 15. Die Füße mancher Thiere sind sehr schwach. 16. Die Frauen der Grafen sind Gräfinnen, der

Fürſten Fürſtinnen, der Könige Königinnen. 17. Der Fleiß jener deutſchen Mädchen war immer ſehr groß. 18. Die Häuſer unſerer guten Nachbaren ſind neu, aber nicht ſchön. 19. Der Löwe iſt der König der Thiere. 20. Arbeit iſt des Bürgers Zierde, Segen iſt der Mühe Preis (Schiller). 21. Des Bauern Handſchlag, edler Herr, iſt auch ein Manneswort (Schiller). 22. Der Schlummer der Todten iſt ſchwer (Schiller). 23. Der ſtarken Leute Spiel iſt der ſchwachen Leute Tod (Prov.). 24. Der armen Leute Hoffart währt nicht lange (Prov.). 25. Das Geſetz iſt der Freund der Schwachen (Schiller). 26. Der Menſchen Engel iſt die Zeit (Schiller).

## 89.

der Stuhl*[stul] (—es, Stühle), *chair, stool*
der Tiſch,* *table*
der Tiſchler*[tĭsh'-lᵉr], *joiner*
verſchieden*[fᵉr-shē'-dᵉn], *different*
beſchäftigt*[bᵉ-shäf'-tĭkt], *busied, employed*
Juno[yū'-nō], *Juno*
Minerva[mĭ-nĕr'-vah"], *Minerva*
die Göttin*[güt'-tĭn] (—nen), *goddess*
das Dorf (—es, Dörfer), *village*
der Römer[rēā'-mᵉr] (—s), *the Roman*
das Blatt* (—es, Blätter), *leaf*
hübſch*[hĭpsh], *pretty*
giftig*[gĭf'-tĭy], *poisonous*
das Übel*[ī'-bᵉl] (—s), *evil*
die Blüthe*[blēē'-tᵉ] (—n), *blossom*
der Einwohner[ĭn'-vō"-nᵉr], *inhabitant.*

1. The sons of our neighbors are diligent. 2. The tables and chairs of these joiners are very fine. 3. Iron and silver are metals; the value of these metals is different. 4. The female servants of your gardeners are very lazy. 5. The good physicians of small villages are often as busied as the bad physicians of great places. 6. Are these (dies) your brothers' or your cousins' sticks? 7. The sons of Charles' friends are ill. 8. The servants of your uncles are very diligent. 9. Emily's dresses are as white as those of Mary. 10. The leaves of his books are all dirty. 11. The dresses of those girls are too short. 12. The windows of the rooms of our hatters are always open. 13. Who are those men? 14. They are the brothers and nephews of our tailors and good shoemakers. 15. The girls of these villages are all very pretty. 16. The berries of these trees are poisonous. 17. Laziness is the source of many evils. 18. The roofs of those buildings are flat. 19. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 20. The blossoms of those trees are white. 21. The inhabitants of those villages are rich. 22. The cities of our country are still young. 23. The girls of these small villages are as pretty as the girls of those large cities.

**Zahn, tooth;** Goth. *thunthus*; ahd. *zand*; Lat. *dens, dentis*; Sans. *danta*, dant. Tab. V. 8 and 26.

**Heerde** (and **Herde**), **herd**; shep**herd**, one who **herds** sheep; A. S. *heord*; O. Ger. hirten, *to tend.*

**umher**, *around, roundabout*, c. of um, *around*, and her. The prefix **um-** denotes movement *round* some object, change, sometimes a downward movement: umfliegen, *to fly round, about*; umreiſen, *to travel round*; umfallen, *to fall down.* **Her**, adv. *hither, here* (in reference to time, *ago*), expresses movement towards the speaker. It is also used as a prefix: **her**bringen, *to bring hither*; **her**kommen, *to come hither*; **her**wünſchen, *to wish one to come.*

**kochen, to cook.** Lat. *coquo*, to boil. Tab. V. 16.

**Hutmacher, hatter**, c. of Hut, Ex. 32, and Macher, Ex. 34.

**Arbeit**, *toil, labor.* Ahd. *arapeit*; mhd. *arebeit*, from arbeiten, from the old *aren*, see Ex. 36, der Arme, and *beiten*, to wait for, to **bide**, a**bide.** (Comp. Erbe, Ex. 32.) According to others by means of the affix **eit**, from *arb*, Goth. *arbi*, mhd. and nhd. **Erbe**, **heir***dom*, landed property, hence Arbeit, originally *labor in the field, agriculture.*

**Bürger**, *citizen*, **burgher**, from **Burg**, **burg**, **borough**, lit. *a place of protection*; A. S. *beorgan*; Ger. bergen, *to protect, to shelter.*

**Zierde**, *ornament*, from zieren, *to adorn*, by means of the affix **de** (Ex. 32. Erde); akin to **tire** (O. Engl.), **attire.**

**Segen**, *benediction, blessing, bliss*, from Lat. *signum crucis*, the sign of the cross, whence Lat. *signare*, to provide with a sign, hence **ſegnen**, *to invoke a blessing on.*

**Mühe**, *toil, labor*, from mühen, *to trouble*, reflexive, to trouble one's self, to endeavor; ahd. *muohan, muowan*, orig. to **move**, then *to toil and moil*; connected with Lat. *movere*, to move; Gr. *mogein*, to work.

**Preis**, **praise**, **prize**, *reward*; Lat. *pretium*, price, value.

**Handſchlag** (lit. blow or stroke with the hand), the joining of hands as the pledge of an obligation or promise; c. of Hand, Ex. 22, and ſchlag, from ſchlagen, *to strike, to* **slay**, Tab. V. 20 and 38; A. S. *slean*; Goth. *slahan*, to strike.

**Manneswort**, **word** of **man**; c. of Mann and Wort.

**verſchwinden**, *to disappear, vanish*; c. of ver, Ex. 27, and ſchwinden, *to grow less, to* **dwindle**, allied to **swoon**; A. S. and O. Ger. **swindan**, to become weak, to fail.

**Spur,** *track, vestige,* **spoor**; ahd., mhd. and A. S. *spor.*

**Beſcheidenheit,** *modesty,* c. of heit, Ex. 24, and beſcheiden, formerly to *separate entirely,* c. of „be" and ſcheiden, *to separate, divide*; compare **shide**=a piece split off, **sheading, shingle**, O. Engl. **shindle**, Lat. *scindula*, from *scindo*, to split, then beſcheiden=to allot, to assign, to inform, reflexive, to acquiesce in, to be content with the decision of another one, to be modest, discreet.

**Engel, angel,** lit. *a messenger*; Lat. *angelus*; Gr. *angelos—ang-gello*, to tell or deliver a message.

**Zeit,** *time,* **tide,** *even-***tide**; A. S. *tid*, time. Tab. V. 8.

**Merkmal,** *characteristic,* **mark,** *sign,* c. of merk, from merken, *to* **mark,** *sign, perceive, see,* and mal, a *spot* or mark, a **mole, moile, mail,** allied to Lat. *macula*, a spot.

**Schlummer, slumber,** from **ſchlummern,** to **slumber.** Tab. V. 36.

**ſchwer,** *heavy, weighty,* originally *grievous, sore,* **severe**; Lat. *severus*; compare ſehr, Ex. 8.

**Leute,** *people, folks*; A. S. *leod*, man, **lad**; O. Engl. **ladde.**

**Spiel,** *play, game*; ahd. *spil*, play, amusement, joy, good news; in Engl. still preserved in Go**spel,** A. S. *God spell, God* or good and **spell,** tidings.

**Tod, death,** see todt, Ex. 33.

**Hoffart** (according to some Hoffahrt), *pride,* **haughtiness,** for **Hochfahrt,** *to aim (too)* **high,** to make **high** pretensions (ch assimilated to the following f); c. of hoch, Ex. 11, and fart, from fahren, *to move on* (Ex. 36, Vorfahr); hence hoffärtig[höf'-fär"-tiy], *proud, haughty.*

**währen,** *to last, endure*; ahd. *weren*, to remain, probably from the type *vas*—weſen, ſein, A. S. *wæs, wære—wesan*, to remain, be; from which come the Engl. forms *was, wast, were, wert*; Goth. *visan*, to remain.

**Geſetz,** *law, statute*; Ge-ſetz, from **ſetzen,** to **set,** cause to sit another or oneself, put, place; A. S. *settan*; Dutch *setten*. Tab. V. 8.

Der **Schwache,** from ſchwach, Ex. 32 (comp. 35, der Faule).

**Stuhl,** *chair,* **stool**; A. S. *stol*; akin to ſtellen, *to set, to place,* causative of **ſtehen, to stand,** O. Ger. *stan*, Lat. *sto*, Sans. *stah*, to stand. Tab. V. 34.

**Tiſch,** *table*; ahd. *tisc, disc*, then *tish, dish*; A. S. *disc*, a plate, a dish, a table; *disc, disk*, lit. a round plate; Lat. *discus*; Gr. *discos*; compare **desk.**

**Tiſchler,** *joiner*, a man who makes Tiſche; in the 15th century, der Tiſcher; on the suffix **er** see Ex. 11.

**verſchieden**, *different*, c. of the prefix **ver**, Ex. 27, and ſchieden, from ſcheiden, *to separate, divide*; comp. **shide**=a piece split off, **sheading**, **shingle** (Schindel), Lat. *scindo*, to split.

**Dorf**, *village*, **thorp**. Goth. *thaurp*; isl. *thorp*—field, **turf**, and a settlement on it.

**beſchäftigt**, *employed, busied*, pa. partic. of beſchäftigen, *to busy, to employ*; c. of the prefix **be**, Ex. 26, and ſchäftigen, from ſchaffen, see Schöpfer, Ex. 34. On the suffix igen, see Ex. 26.

**Blatt**, *leaf*, **blade**, anything thin and flat.

**hübſch**, *pretty*, for höfiſch, from Hof, A. S. *hof*, house with a court-yard; Gr. *kepos*, Lat. *campus*; then buildings belonging to the residence of a high personage; hence **hübſch**=**höfiſch**, *courteous, courtly*.

**giftig**, *poisonous*, from Gift, *poison*, from geben, *to give*, hence **gift**, what is given, administered.

**Göttin**, **goddess**, from Gott and in.

**Blüthe**, *blossom*, from blühen, *to bloom*, Ex. 26.

**Einwohner**, *inhabitant*, c. of ein, Engl. pref. *in-*, Ex. 36, and **wohnen**, Ex. 27.

**Uebel**, **evil**, Tab. V. 6.

## [37.] FEMININE NOUNS IN THE GENITIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL AS ATTRIBUTES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Die Magd **der Schweſter** iſt treu. | *The maid-servant of the sister is faithful.* |
| 2. Der Hund **der alten Tante** beißt. | *The dog of the old aunt bites.* |
| 3. **Jener weißen Roſen** Schönheit iſt groß. | *The beauty of those white roses is great.* |
| 4. Das Fleiſch **der fetten Gänſe** iſt ungeſund. | *The flesh (meat) of (the) fat geese is unhealthy.* |
| 5. Seine Schweſter war eine Freundin **jener reichen Gräfinnen.** | *His sister was a friend of those rich countesses.* |
| 6. Das Öhr **dieſer Nadeln** iſt zu groß. | *The eye of these needles is too large.* |

*Observations.*—1. All substantives of the feminine gender remain entirely unchanged in the singular, the genitive as well as all the other cases being indicated by the preceding determinative word, as: Frau, *woman*, gen. **der** Frau. M. S. 1, 2.

2. The plural is formed in two ways:

*a.* By adding to the singular **en**, except those ending in **e**, **l**, or **r**, which take only **n**;

*b.* By adding to the singular **e**, in the original monosyllables, in those ending in **niß**, and in one ending in **ſal**: die Trübſal[trēē'-zahl], *affliction.*

*Note.* Those ending in **ee**, or the accented syllable **ie**, generally lose **e** in the plural before the termination **en**, as: die Armee[ār-mā'], *the army*, plur. die Armeen; die Melodie[mĕ-lō-dē'], *the melody*, plur. die Melodien.

3. Feminine substantives ending in **in** form their plural by doubling the **n** and then adding **en**: die Gattin, *the wife*, plur. die Gattinnen. M. S. 5.

4. Die Mutter, *the mother*, and die Tochter, *the daughter*, form the plural irregularly: die Mütter, die Töchter.

*Note.* Formerly the feminine substantives ending in **e** formed also in the *Singular* the genitive and dative in **en**. These inflections are preserved in a few expressions, as: auf Erden (die Erde), *upon earth*; zu Ehren (Ehre, *honor*), *in honor of*; vor Freuden (Freude, *joy*), *for joy*, etc.

5. As there are but few exceptions to the rule just given, that feminine nouns follow the *N-Declension* and therefore are not modified in the plural, it is exceedingly desirable that these exceptions be made perfectly familiar, especially as they are nearly all words in frequent use, and to that end they are combined in the following

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Feminines with plural **e**
And **modified**, like Zunft, Zünfte,
Are: Axt, Bank, Gans, Kuh, Sau and Maus,
Wurſt, Schnur and Nuß, Angſt, Noth and Laus,
Stadt, Fauſt and Kraft, Schwulſt, Wulſt and Haut,
Magd, Macht and Nacht, Bruſt, Luſt and Braut,
Bettſtatt and Werkſtatt, Ausflucht and Zucht,
Ankunft and Einkunft, Zuſammenkunft and Frucht,
Wand and Hand, Luft and Kluft,
Kunſt and Feuersbrunſt and Gruft.
To these add a few in **niß**, as Bedrängniß,
Wildniß, Kenntniß, Erſparniß, Beſorgniß.

die Angſt[ängkst], *anguish*
die Ausflucht[ous'-flüchT], *evasion*
die Axt[äxt], *axe*
die Bank[bänk], *bench*
die Braut[brout], *bride*
die Bruſt[brüst], *breast*
die Fauſt, *fist*
die Feuersbrunſt[foi'-ers-brünst"], *conflagration*
die Frucht[früchT], *fruit*

die Gans, *goose*
die Gruft, *arched tomb, sepulchre*
die Hand, *hand*
die Haut, *skin*
die Kluft[klüft], *cleft*
die Kraft[kräft], *strength*
die Kuh[kū], *cow*
die Kunſt[künst], *art*
die Laus, *louse*
die Luft[lüft], *air*
die Luſt[lüst], *desire, lust*
die Macht[mächt], *might**
die Magd[mägt], *servant girl*
die Maus, *mouse*
die Nacht[nächt], *night*
die Nath[naht], *seam*
die Noth[nōt], *need*
die Nuß[nüs], *nut*
die Sau[zou], *sow*
die Schnur[shnur], *string*
die Stadt[stät], *city, town*
die Wand[vänt], *wall*
die Wurſt[vürst], *sausage*
die Zunft[tsünft], *guild*
die Ankunft[än'-künft], *arrival*
die Einkünfte[in'-künf-te], *income*†
die Zuſammenkunft, *meeting*
die Bedrängniß[be-dräng'-nis], *distress*
die Beſorgniß[be-zōrk'-nis], *apprehension*
die Erſparniß[er-spahr'-nis], *saving*
die Kenntniß[kĕnt'-nis], *knowledge*
die Wildniß[vilt'-nis], *wilderness.*

## 40.

die Gärtnerin*[gârt -ne-rin], *female gardener*
die Haut*, *skin, hide*
der Sclave[sklah'-fe], *slave*
überall*[ēē'-ber-äl'], *everywhere*
barfuß*[bär'-fūs], *barefoot*
die Armuth*, *poverty* (no plural)
die Kunſt*, *art*
das Kalb* (–es, Kälber), *calf*
der Sonntag* (–es, –e), *Sunday*
der Freitag*, *Friday*
zerreißen*[tsĕr-ri'-sen], *to tear to [pieces*
die Wand*, *wall*
die Liebe*[lē'-be], *love, affection*
der Scherz* (–es, –e), *joke*
die Lüge*[lēē'-ge], *lie*
zerſchmelzen*[tser-shmĕl'-tsen], *to melt, to dissolve*
bleiben*[bli'-ben], *to stay, remain*
die Schlacht (—, –en), *battle*
das Urtheil* (–es, –e), *judgment, [decision*
die Ehre*[a'-re], *honor*
die Tugend* (—, –en), *virtue*
der Schatten (–s, —), *shadow, shade*
die Sünde*[zün'-de], *sin.*

1. Die Milch jener Kuh iſt nicht ſo gut, wie die der unſrigen. 2. Die Blumen unſeres Gärtners ſind nicht ſo ſchön, wie die eurer Gärtnerin. 3. Die Damen jener Stadt ſind nicht ſchön. 4. Die Neſter dieſer Schwalben ſind ſehr hoch. 5. Die Beeren dieſer Pflanzen ſind bitter. 6. Manche Männer ſind die Sclaven ihrer Frauen. 7. Die Häute der Mäuſe ſind weich. 8. Die Gänſe gehen überall barfuß (Prov.). 9. Armuth iſt der

*The plural of Ohnmacht, *swoon* (properly ohne, *without*, Macht), is Ohnmachten, and of Vollmacht (c. of voll, *full*, and Macht), *power of attorney*, Vollmachten.

†Einkünfte is not used in singular.

Künſte Mutter (Prov.). 10. Alle Kühe ſind Kälber geweſen (Prov.). 11. Schwarze Kühe geben auch weiße Milch (Prov.). 12. Der Magd Sonntag iſt der Kühe ſtiller Freitag (Prov.). 13. Kleine Mäuſe haben auch Ohren (Prov.). 14. Große Städte, große Sünden (Prov.). 15. Viel' Hände zerreißen die Wände (Prov.). 16. Die Augen ſind der Liebe Thür (Prov.). 17. Mütter lieben Töchter, aber Söhne noch viel mehr (Prov.). 18. Der Katzen Scherz iſt der Mäuſe Tod (Prov.). 19. Lügen zerſchmelzen wie Schnee (Prov.). 20. Säue ſind Säue, und bleiben Säue (Prov.). 21. Beſcheidenheit iſt das Merkmal großer Seelen (Klinger). 22. Das Glück der Schlachten iſt das Urtheil Gottes (Schiller). 23. Leicht verſchwindet die Spur der Thaten (Schiller). 24. Ehre iſt der Tugend Schatten (Prov.)

## 41.

Form the genitive singular and plural of the following words:

die Feder[fā'-dᵉr], *pen, feather*
die Aufgabe[ouf'-gah"-bᵉ], *task,*
die Mutter, *mother* [*lesson*
die Königin, *queen*
die Krankheit[krănk'-hĭt], *sickness*
die Kuh, *cow*
die Maus, *mouse*
die Straße[strah'-sᵉ], *street*
die Prinzeſſin[prĭn"-tsĕs'-sĭn],
die Magd, *servant girl* [*princess*
die Uhr[ūr], *watch*
die Nacht, *night*
die Schlacht[shlächᵗ], *battle*
die Erkältung[ᵉr-käl'-tūnᵏ], *cold*
die Farbe[fär'-bᵉ], *color*
die Burg[būrᵏ], *burgh*
die Gabel[gah'-bᵉl], *fork*
die Luft, *air*
die Nachtigall, *nightingale*
die Droſſel, *thrush*
die Maſſe[mäs'-sᵉ], *mass*
die Mandel[măn'-dᵉl], *almond*
die Mauer[mou'-ᵉr], *wall*
die Ruine[rū"-ē'-nᵉ], *ruin*
die Frau, *wife*
die Spur[spūr], *trace*
die Lerche[lĕr'-yᵉ], *lark*
die Amſel[ăm'-zᵉl], *black bird*
die Fackel[făk'-kᵉl], *torch*
die Auſter[ous'-tᵉr], *oyster*
die Schnur, *string, cord*
die Harmonie[hăr"-mō-nē'], *har-*
die See[zā], *sea* [*mony*
die Poeſie[pō"-ĕ-zē'], *poetry*
die Braut, *bride*
die Wurſt, *sausage*
die Trübſal, *affliction*
die Finſterniß[fĭn'-stᵉr-nĭs"], *darkness*
die Flut[flūt], *flood*
die Welt, *world*
die Tafel[tah'-fᵉl], *slate*
die Zahl[tsahl], *number*
die Schrift[shrĭft], *writing.*

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Gärtnerin**, female **gardener**, or *gardener's wife*, from Gärtner, Ex. 15, and in, Ex. 34.

**Haut, hide,** *skin, that which covers and protects the flesh or body.* A. S. *hydan,* to protect; O. Ger. *huotsan,* to cover; allied to Lat. *cutis,* skin. Tab. V. 11.

**überall,** *everywhere,* **all over;** c. of über, *over,* and all, *all.* Tab. V. 6.

**barfuß, barefoot;** c. of bar, A. S. *fær,* empty, Engl. **bare,** naked, ahd. *par, bar,* uncovered, and Fuß, Ex. 22.

**Armuth,** *poverty;* c. of arm, Ex. 36, and muth (one m dropped)=**mood,** A. S. *mod,* mind, disposition; ahd. *ar(a)muoti, armmuoti.*

**Kunſt,** *art, skill,* **cunning,** from können, in the earliest times meaning only *to know, to have skill in,* then *to be able,* **can,** Goth. *kunnan,* A. S. *cunnan,* to know. On ſt see page 176 (Fürſt).

**Kalb, calf.** Tab. V. 5.

**Sonntag, Sunday,** c. of Sonne and Tag, so called because anciently dedicated to the *sun* or its worship.

**Freitag, Friday,** lit. *Friga's day,* A. S. *Frigedag—Frig,* the wife of the God *Wodan* or *Odin,* and the goddess of marriage.

**Sünde, sin.** A. S. *syn;* compare Lat. *sons, sontis,* hurtful, guilty. The termination **de** forms a number of fem. substantives: Erde, *earth,* Fehde, *feud,* etc.

**zerreißen,** *to tear in pieces, to rend asunder,* c. of reißen, Old Saxon *writan*= to separate by force, to wound, to **write,** prop. to scratch into, to cut in; and the prefix zer, which denotes *separation, destruction* (**zer=tear**); as a prefix **zer** is often equivalent to *dis-,* as: zertheilen, *to divide* (*dis*=asunder, and *vid,* to separate); zerſchmelzen, *to dissolve.*

**Wand,** *wall,* lit. a **winding;** from **winden,** *to encircle,* A. S. *windan,* Goth. *vindan,* to **wind.**

**Liebe, love,** *affection,* from lieben, *to love,* Ex. 23.

**Scherz,** *joke.* Mhd. *schar*=jump, hence originally to jump playfully and merrily; Itl. *scherzo, scherzare,* to hop, to jump; or perhaps allied to **scorn,** for O. Ger. *skern,* derision; ſcheren (obs.), *to banter,* **to jeer.**

**Lüge, lie,** *untruth,* from **lügen, to lie;** A. S. *leogan;* Goth. *liugan.* Tab. V. 20.

**zerſchmelzen, to melt,** *to dissolve,* c. of „zer" (compare above), and ſchmelzen, Ex. 26.

**bleiben,** *to remain, to stay;* A. S. *belifan;* O. Engl. **bilifen,** to be **left;** bleiben=be-leiben, „be", Ex. 26, and leiben, Goth. *leiban,* A. S. *laefan,* Lat. *linquo—liqui,* Gr. *leipo,* to leave; compare *leave* in Webster. Tab. V. 6.

**Schlacht**, *battle*, from ſchlagen, Ex. 38.

**Urtheil**, *judgment, decision*, **ordeal**, lit. a **deal**ing out, or giving a judgment; A. S. *ordæl*; Dutch, *oordeel*; c. of ur=out of, and **theil**, a part, **deal**; A. S. *dælan*, to divide.

**Ehre**, *honor*, from ehren, *to honor, revere*; according to J. Grimm connected with Eiſen, *iron*, Eis, *ice* (on the exchange of ſ and r, see Tab. V. 25), derived from a Goth. root *eisan*, to be bright, to glitter, to sparkle akin to Lat. **aes***timare*, to esteem. According to others connected with **ere**, **early**, coming in the first place; A. S. *arlice—ar*, before.

**Tugend**, *virtue*, from taugen, *to be good, fit for*; A. S. *dugan*, to be strong; *dohtig*, Ger. tüchtig, valiant, solid, able.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Form the genitive singular and nominative plural of:

Der Hut, der Bruder, die Schweſter, das Kind, der Vater, der Nachbar, die Tochter, das Meſſer, der Fuß, der Mann, der Ring, der Lehrer, der Wagen, *wagon, carriage*, der Kranz, *garland, wreath*, die Lehrerin, der Tanz, *dance*, der Doctor, der Hering, *herring*, die Thüre, die Sau, die Frucht, der Stock, die Hütte, *hut*, das Gras, der Stein, der Kaiſer, der König, der Herr, der Fürſt, der Graf.

2. Form of the same words the dative singular and plural.

3. Translate: He binds, he sings, it costs, he makes, it cost, she leads.

4. Form the Imperfect singular, 3d person, of:

Lieben, lernen, ſtudieren, glühen[glēē'-ĕn], *to glow*, tanzen, bluten[blū'-tĕn], *to bleed*, ruinieren[rū"-i-nē'-rĕn], *to ruin*, liniieren[lī"-ni-ē'-rĕn], *to rule, to draw lines*, morden, wünſchen, enden, ſagen, hüten[hēē'-tĕn], *to watch, to guard*, warten, fürchten[fīr'-tĕn], *to fear*, fiſchen, leiten, *to lead, guide*.

5. Form the Perfect of the same verbs.

6. Determine the gender of the following compound substantives by placing before them the required definite article:

Federmeſſer, *penknife*
Zollhaus (der Zoll, *toll*), *custom-house*
Hausfrau, *lady of the house*
Hausfreund, *friend of the family*
Armenarzt, *physician of the poor*
Armenſchule, *charity school*
Ehrentag, *day of honor*
Ehrenwort, *word of honor*
Erdfarbe, *earth-color*
Bergſtraße, *mountain road*
Goldfiſch, *gold-fish*
Kunſtwerk, *work of art*
Nachtkleid, *night-dress*.

7. Translate, without the help of a dictionary, the following compounds and determine their gender by placing before them m.=masc., f.=fem., n.=neuter:

Bienenhaus, Ehrenpunkt, Hausbier, Bierglas, Briefpapier, Brudermörder, Hausarzt, Apfelfrau, Abendroth, Hauslehrer, Beinfisch, Arbeitsmann, Aprilwetter, Abendsonne, Hausarbeit, Bruderliebe, Blutfreundschaft, Ehrenmann, Weinbeere, Affenliebe, Äpfelwein, Bergrücken, Flügelthür, Kalbfell, Löwenhaut, Nachtluft, Staatsmann, Kaffeehaus, Hausthier, Gesetzgeber, Handmühle, Wanduhr, Goldarbeiter, Bergschule, Kunstwerk, Staatskunst, Staatsgesetz, Glückskind, Gesetzbuch, Handarbeit, Glücksstern, Erdgürtel, Küchenmesser, Scherzmacher, Sündenbock, Haupthaar, Staatsbürger Schulmädchen, Mädchenschule, Gartenblume, Blumengarten.

8. Give the singular of:

Die Kühe, die Frauen, die Sterne, die Söhne, die Bänke, die Mädchen, die Mäuse, die Ratten, die Väter, die Gebirge, die Schwestern, die Nadeln, die Mäuslein, die Kindlein, die Fürstinnen, die Zimmer, die Stoffe, die Gäste, die Flüsse, die Pflüge, die Lügner, die Sicheln, die Punkte.

9. By what suffix are substantives formed from verbs, to indicate an *active person* or instrument? Form such substantives from the following verbs: Essen, schlafen, *to sleep*, finden, schwimmen, sprechen, pflanzen, horchen, hören, brauen, denken, plündern, spenden, warnen, schreien, lachen, brummen, brennen, heizen, halten, ziehen, *to draw, pull*.

10. Give the Feminine of: Bäcker, Bettler, Brauer, Freund, Fuchs, Wolf, Löwe, Hund, Meister, Mörder, Tänzer, Träumer, Thor (der), Schüler, Schotte, Jude, Türke, Römer, Grieche, Amerikaner.

11. Form diminutives, modifying the vowel and adding chen or lein:

*a.* In chen: Sohn, Bruder, Hand, Haus, Braut, *bride*, Baum, Mutter, Rose, Stuhl, Schaf.

*b.* In lein: Kind, Ochs, Kuh, Maus, Lamm, Mann, Frau.

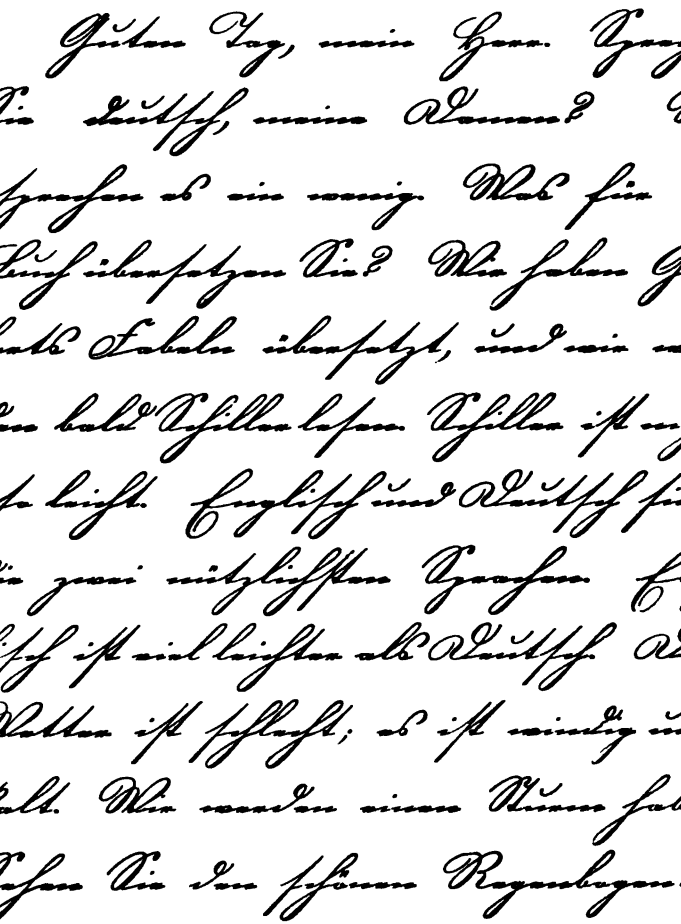
12. Form the genitive singular of the following proper names: Wilhelm, Hans, *John*, *Jack*, Max, Fritz, *Fred*, Luise, Amalie, Europa, Marie, Mainz[mints], *Mentz*, *Mayence*, Cadix[kah-dix], *Cadiz*, Xerxes, Mathilde [mä-til'-de], *Mathilda*.

13. Give the meaning of the following adjectives, derived from substantives, by different suffixes: Holzig, holzicht, hölzern, dornig, dornicht, steinicht, steinern, steinig, schwammicht (from Schamm, *sponge*), schwammig, seificht (from Seife, *soap*), seifig, blumig, trinkbar, furchtbar, furchtsam, pelzicht, pelzig, männlich, bergig, bergicht, eßbar, heilsam, häutig, erblich, wollig, wollicht, golden, kupfern, salzig, salzicht, kindlich, kindisch, weiblich, weibisch, ein steinerner Tisch, ein steiniger Weg, eine steinichte Birne.

14. Use the following adjectives substantively by placing before them the three genders of the definite article: Gut, bös, groß, klein, hoch (change ch before a following vowel into h), ſchön, häßlich, gemein, ſtark, ſchwach, ſanft, hart, ſüß, ſauer, freundlich.

## EXERCISE IN SCRIPT.

| | |
|---|---|
| überſetzen, *to translate* | windig [vĭn'-dĭy], *windy* |
| die Fabel [fah'-bel], *fable* | Regenbogen [rā'-gen-bō'-gen], |
| nützlich [nüts'-lĭy], *useful* | Sturm [stürm], *storm.* [*rainbow* |



## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Amerika, 168
arabiſch, 174
Arbeit, 179
arbeiten, 181
Arme, 174
Armuth, 185

barfuß, 185
Barbar, 174
Bart, 174
Beere, 179
bekannt, 175
bergen, 181
beſchäftigen, 183
beſchäftigt, 180
beſcheiden, 182
Beſcheidenheit,
bewegen, 176[179
binden, 177
Blatt, 180
bleiben, 185
Blick, 174
blicken, 177
blühen, 170
Blume, 168
Blüthe, 180
Bote, 174
Brüllen, 175
Burg, 181
Bürger, 179

Chriſt, 179

dichten, 171
Dichter, 169
doch, 168
Dorf, 180

Ehre, 185
ehren, 188
Einband, 174
einbinden, 177
Einkommen, 175
Einwohner, 180
Elephant, 174
Engel, 179
England, 168

fahren, 176
Falke, 174
Faule, 169
Fell, 174
Fenſter, 169
Fiſch, 168
folgen, 170
Franzoſe, 174
Freitag, 185
Fürſt, 174

gähnen, 171
Gans, 169
ganz, 169
Gärtnerin, 185
Gaſtfreundſchaft,
Gefolge, 170 [174
Geheul, 175
General, 175
Geſetz, 179
giftig, 180
Gott, 168
Göttin, 180
Graf, 174

Handſchlag, 179
Haſe, 175
Haupt, 170
Hauptſtadt, 168
Haut, 185
Heerde, 179
her, 181
Hermann, 168
Herold, 168
Herr, 174
heulen, 178
Himmel, 168
hin, 181
Hoffart, 179
hoffärtig, 182
Hoffnung, 174
hübſch, 180
Hutmacher, 179

Jeſuit, 175
Jude, 174
Juno, 180

Kaiſerthum, 168
Kalb, 185
kennen, 178
klug, 174
kochen, 179
König, 168
Königreich, 168
können, 187
Kranke, 174
Kunſt, 185

Leben, 174
Lerche, 168
Leute, 179
Licht, 169
Liebe, 185
Lippe, 174
Löwe, 175
Lüge, 185
lügen, 187

Macher, 170
mächtig, 168
Magd, 168
Mann, 168
Manneswort, 179
Mark, 176
merken, 182
Merkmal, 179
Minerva, 180
Monarch, 174
Morgen, 168
Mühe, 179
mühen, 181

Nachbarin, 168
Nacht, 169
Name, 175

Oft, 170
Oſtreich, 168

Pflicht, 174
Philoſoph, 174
platt, 169
Polarbär, 174
Pole, 174
polniſch, 175
Präſident, 175
Preis, 179
Preußen, 168
Prinz, 174
Profeſſor, 168

Quelle, 169
quellen, 171

Reich, 170
reißen, 187
Römer, 180
röthlich, 174
ruſſiſch, 175

ſanft, 174
ſchaffen, 170
Schatten, 185
ſcheiden, 182
Scherz, 185
Schlacht, 185
ſchlagen, 181
Schlummer, 179
ſchlummern, 182
Schnabel, 169
ſchneiden, 170
Schneider, 168
Schöpfer, 168
Schuhmacher, 168
ſchwer, 179
ſchwinden, 181
Sclave, 175
Secretär, 175
Seele, 179
Segen, 179
ſegnen, 181
ſetzen, 182
ſo—wie, 169
Sonntag, 185
Spanier, 175
Spiel, 179
Sprache, 169
Spur, 179
Staat, 168
Stadt, 170
Stärke, 175
ſtellen, 182
Stuhl, 180
Stunde, 185

Tag, 168
Tapferkeit, 175
taugen, 188
That, 174
Theil, 168
Thor, der, 174
thöricht, 174
Tiſch, 180
Tiſchler, 180
Tod, 179
Todte, 179
Traum, 174
tüchtig, 188
Tugend, 185
Türke, 174

Übel, 180
überall, 185
umher, 179
Urtheil, 185

verſchieden, 180
verſchwinden, 179
Volk, 168
Vorfahr, 174

währen, 179
wallen, 171
Wand, 185
waſchen, 179
Weg, 184
Welt, 169
Weltall, 169
Wien, 168
winden, 187

Zahn, 179
Zeit, 179
zerreißen, 185
zerſchmelzen, 185
Zierde, 179
zieren, 181
zwei, 171
Zweig, 169
zweite, 174.

Action, 174
affection, 185
America, 168
ancestor, 174
angel, 179
Arabic, 174
art, 185
as—as, 169
Austria, 168

barbarian, 174
barefoot, 185
battle, 185
beak, 169
beard, 174
berry, 179
bill, 169
binding, 174
blessing, 179
blossom, 180
branch, 169
bravery, 175
busied, 180

calf, 185
capital, 168
chair, 180
chief city, 168
Christian, 174
citizen, 179
complete, 169
to cook, 179
count, 174
creator, 168

day, 168
dead man, 179
deal, 168
death, 179
decision, 185
deed, 174
different, 180
difficult, 179
to disappear, 179
to dissolve, 185
dream, 174
duty, 174

elephant, 174
employed, 180
empire, 168
to endure, 179
England, 168
entire, 169
everywhere, 185
evil, 180

falcon, 174
fish, 168
flat, 169
flock, 179
flower, 168
folk, 168
folks, 179
fool, 174
foolish, 174
fountain, 169
Frenchman, 174
Friday, 185

gardener (fem.), [185
general, 175
God, 168
goddess, 180
goose, 169

hare, 175
hatter, 179
haughtiness, 179
heaven, 168
heavy, 179
herald, 168
herd, 179
Herman, 168
hide, 187
honor, 185
hope, 174
hospitality, 174
however, 168
howling, 175
husband, 168

income, 175
inhabitant, 180

Jesuit, 175
Jew, 174
joiner, 180
joining of hands,
joke, 185 [179
judgment, 185
Juno, 180

king, 168
kingdom, 168
known, 175

labor, 179
language, 169
lark, 168
to last, 179
law, 179
lazy man, 169
leaf, 180
lie, 185
life, 174
light, 169
lion, 175
lip, 174
look, 174
love, 185

maid, 168
maiden, 168
man, 168
mark, 179
master, 174
to melt, 185
messenger, 174
mighty, 168
Minerva, 180
modesty, 179
monarch, 174
morning, 168

name, 175
nation, 168
neighbor (fem.),
night, 169 [168

obligation, 174
ornament, 179

part, 168
people, 168
people, folks,
[179
philosopher, 174
play, 179
poet, 169
polar bear, 174
Pole, 174
Polish, 175
poor man, 174
portion, 168
powerful, 168
president, 175
price, 179
pride, 179
prince, 174
prize, 179
professor, 168
Prussia, 168

realm, 168
reddish, 174
to remain, 185
roar, 175
Roman, 180
roundabout, 175
Russian, 175

second, 174
secretary, 175
servant girl, 168
shade, 185
shadow, 185
shoemaker, 168
sick man, 174
sign, 179
sin, 185
skin, 174, 185
sky, 168
slave, 175
slumber, 179
smart, 174
soft, 174
soul, 179
source, 169
sovereign, 174
Spaniard, 175
to stay, 185
state, 168
stool, 180
strength, 175
Sunday, 185

table, 180
tailor, 168
to tear to pieces
through, 168 [185
time, 179
toil, 179
tooth, 179
trace, 179
track, 179
Turk, 174
twig, 169

universe, 169

to vanish, 179
Vienna, 168
village. 180
virtue, 185

wall, 185
to wash, 179
way, 174
whole, 169
window, 169
world, 169
worth, 174

yet, 168.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 35.

1. Der Garten dieſes Hauſes iſt ſehr klein. 2. Dieſer Mann iſt der Bruder des Gärtners; jene Frau iſt die Schweſter des Schuhmachers. 3. Dieſes Kind iſt des Schuhmachers Sohn. 4. Die Thüre jenes Hauſes iſt noch nicht offen. 5. Die Magd des Arztes iſt die Schweſter dieſes Gärtners. 6. Warum iſt das Fenſter dieſes Zimmers nicht offen? 7. Die Fenſter dieſes Hauſes ſind immer offen. 8. Meines Onkels Hund iſt treu. 9. Iſt dieſes Mädchen jenes Goldſchmiedes Tochter? 10. Nein, ſie iſt des Bäckers Tochter. 11. Sind Sie der Sohn eines Arztes? 12. Nein, ich bin der Sohn eines Offiziers. 13. Der Onkel meines Vetters iſt ſehr reich. 14. Unſeres Bruders Garten iſt ſo groß, wie jener des Buchbinders. 15. Der Schnabel des Storches iſt lang und dick. 16. Der Schnabel jenes Vogels iſt platt und breit. 17. Das Licht dieſes Sternes iſt mild. 18. Karl iſt der Sohn eines Offiziers. 19. Die Mutter des Mädchens weinte. 20. Der Faule iſt des Bettlers Bruder. 21. Die Sonne iſt die Quelle des Lichtes. 22. Es war Nacht, und die Thüren des Hauſes waren nicht offen. 23. Iſt dies Claras oder Pauls Buch? 24. Nein, es iſt Berthas. 25. Warum kommt Claras Schweſter nicht? 26. Die Schweſter Heinrichs iſt krank. 27. Heinrichs Schweſter iſt krank. 28. Wer iſt ſie? 29. Sie iſt Ihres Bäckers Tochter. 30. Wer iſt der Schöpfer des Mondes? 31. Gott iſt der Schöpfer des Weltalls. 32. Die Zweige dieſes Baumes ſind ſehr groß und ſtark. 33. Die Sprache manches großen Dichters iſt ſchön. 34. Wer war der Lehrer des Alcibiades?

## 37.

1. Das Brüllen jenes alten Löwen, und das Heulen dieſes jungen Bären war furchtbar. 2. Was war der Name jenes großen Philoſophen? 3. Die Tapferkeit dieſes Generals war groß. 4. Das Einkommen jenes Thoren iſt groß. 5. Die Thüren jenes Thores ſind groß. 6. Die tapferen Söhne des reichen Grafen ſind meine Freunde. 7. Die Thaten jenes Präſidenten ſind bekannt. 8. Was iſt der Name des Sohnes jenes Monarchen? 9. Das Haus des Juden iſt offen, das des Chriſten iſt (es) nicht. 10. Der Diener jenes alten Griechen iſt treu, der des jungen Franzoſen iſt (es) nicht. 11. Das Meſſer jenes Knaben iſt nicht ſo ſcharf als (or wie) das Meſſer eures Nachbarn (or Nachbars). 12. Kein weiſer Mann iſt der Freund eines Thoren. 13. Dieſes Mädchen iſt die Tochter eines Franzoſen. 14. Wer iſt der Vater dieſes Knaben und jenes Mädchens? 15. Karl iſt der Freund Ihres Neffen. 16. Er iſt der Sohn eines Spaniers. 17. Das Einkommen jenes Jeſuiten iſt ſehr groß geweſen. 18. Der Sohn unſeres Neffen iſt ſehr reich geworden. 19. Iſt der Arzt unſeres Monarchen ein Franzoſe? 20. Nein, er iſt der Sohn eines polniſchen Juden. 21. Es iſt die Sprache eines Narren. 22. Abdallah war der Sclave eines Türken; er wurde der Secretär eines mächtigen Prinzen. 23. Die Stärke eines Elephanten, eines

Bären, eines Löwen und eines Wolfes iſt ſehr groß. 24. Wo iſt dieſes Herren (or Herrn) Pferd? 25. Er iſt ein ruſſiſcher Soldat und der Sohn eines Grafen. 26. Die Sprache dieſes Philoſophen iſt ſehr ſchön. 27. Wurde der Sohn unſeres Arztes nicht Profeſſor? 28. Die Frau eines Grafen iſt eine Gräfin. 29. Der Vater dieſes armen Knaben war der Sohn eines mächtigen Prinzen (Fürſten), und der Vater dieſes reichen Spaniers war eines armen Hirten Sohn (or der Sohn eines armen Hirten).

## 39.

1. Die Söhne unſerer Nachbaren ſind fleißig. 2. Die Tiſche und Stühle dieſer Tiſchler ſind ſehr ſchön. 3. Eiſen und Silber ſind Metalle; der Werth dieſer Metalle iſt verſchieden. 4. Die Dienerinnen (or die Mägde) eurer Gärtner ſind ſehr faul. 5. Die guten Ärzte kleiner Dörfer ſind oft ebenſo beſchäftigt als die ſchlechten Ärzte großer Plätze. 6. Sind dies die Stöcke eurer Brüder oder eurer Vetter? (or eurer Brüder oder eurer Vetter Stöcke). 7. Die Söhne der Freunde Karls ſind krank. 8. Die Diener eurer Onkel ſind ſehr fleißig. 9. Emiliens Kleider ſind ſo weiß wie die Mariens. 10. Die Blätter dieſer Bücher ſind alle ſchmutzig. 11. Die Kleider jener Mädchen ſind zu kurz. 12. Die Fenſter der Zimmer unſerer Hutmacher ſind immer offen. 13. Wer ſind jene Männer? 14. Sie ſind die Brüder und Neffen unſerer Schneider und guten Schuhmacher. 15. Die Mädchen dieſer Dörfer ſind alle ſehr hübſch. 16. Die Beeren dieſer Bäume ſind giftig. 17. Faulheit iſt die Quelle vieler Übel. 18. Die Dächer jener Gebäude ſind flach. 19. Juno und Minerva waren Göttinnen der Römer. 20. Die Blüthen jener Bäume ſind weiß. 21. Die Einwohner jener Dörfer ſind reich. 22. Die Städte unſeres Landes ſind noch jung. 23. Die Mädchen dieſer kleinen Dörfer ſind ſo hübſch als die Mädchen jener großen Städte.

## 41.

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* | *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| der Feder | der Federn | der Mauer | der Mauern |
| der Aufgabe | der Aufgaben | der Ruine | der Ruinen |
| der Mutter | der Mütter | der Frau | der Frauen |
| der Königin | der Königinnen | der Spur | der Spuren |
| der Krankheit | der Krankheiten | der Lerche | der Lerchen |
| der Kuh | der Kühe | der Amſel | der Amſeln |
| der Maus | der Mäuſe | der Fackel | der Fackeln |
| der Straße | der Straßen | der Auſter | der Auſtern |
| der Prinzeſſin | der Prinzeſſinnen | der Schnur | der Schnüre |
| der Magd | der Mägde | der Harmonie | der Harmonien |
| der Uhr | der Uhren | der See | der Seen |
| der Nacht | der Nächte | der Poeſie | der Poeſien |
| der Schlacht | der Schlachten | der Braut | der Bräute |
| der Erkältung | der Erkältungen | der Wurſt | der Würſte |
| der Farbe | der Farben | der Trübſal | der Trübſale |
| der Burg | der Burgen | der Finſterniß | der Finſterniſſe |
| der Gabel | der Gabeln | der Flut | der Fluten |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| der Luft | der Lüfte | der Welt | der Welten |
| der Nachtigall | der Nachtigallen | der Tafel | der Tafeln |
| der Droſſel | der Droſſeln | der Zahl | der Zahlen |
| der Maſſe | der Maſſen | der Mandel | der Mandeln. |
| der Schrift | der Schriften | | |

## ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Des Hutes, die Hüte; des Bruders, die Brüder; der Schweſter, die Schweſtern; des Kindes, die Kinder; des Vaters, die Väter; des Nachbarn (Nachbars), die Nachbaren; der Tochter, die Töchter; des Meſſers, die Meſſer; des Fußes, die Füße; des Mannes, die Männer; des Ringes, die Ringe; des Lehrers, die Lehrer; des Wagens, die Wagen (not Wägen); des Kranzes, die Kränze; der Lehrerin, die Lehrerinnen; des Tanzes, die Tänze; des Doctors, die Doctoren; des Herings, die Heringe; der Thüre, die Thüren; der Sau, die Säue; der Frucht, die Früchte; des Stockes, die Stöcke; der Hütte, die Hütten; des Graſes, die Gräſer; des Steines, die Steine; des Kaiſers, die Kaiſer; des Königes (Königs), die Könige; des Herren (Herrn), die Herren (Herrn); des Fürſten, die Fürſten; des Grafen, die Grafen.

2. Dem Hute, den Hüten; dem Bruder, den Brüdern; der Schweſter, den Schweſtern; dem Kinde, den Kindern; dem Vater, den Vätern; dem Nachbarn, den Nachbarn; der Tochter, den Töchtern; dem Meſſer, den Meſſern; dem Fuße, den Füßen; dem Manne, den Männern; dem Ringe, den Ringen; dem Lehrer, den Lehrern; dem Wagen, den Wagen; dem Kranze, den Kränzen; der Lehrerin, den Lehrerinnen; dem Tanze, den Tänzen; dem Doctor, den Doctoren; dem Heringe, den Heringen; der Thüre, den Thüren; der Sau, den Säuen; der Frucht, den Früchten; dem Stocke, den Stöcken; der Hütte, den Hütten; dem Graſe, den Gräſern; dem Steine, den Steinen; dem Kaiſer, den Kaiſern; dem Könige, den Königen; dem Herrn, den Herrn; dem Fürſten, den Fürſten; dem Grafen, den Grafen.

3. Er bindet, er ſingt, es koſtet, er macht, es koſtete, ſie leitet.

4. Er liebte, er lernte, er ſtudierte, er glühte, er tanzte, er blutete, er ruinierte, er liniierte, er mordete, er wünſchte, er endete, er ſagte, er hütete, er wartete, er fürchtete, er fiſchte, er leitete.

5. Er hat geliebt, er hat gelernt, er hat ſtudiert, er hat geglüht, er hat getanzt, er hat geblutet, er hat ruiniert, er hat liniiert, er hat gemordet, er hat gewünſcht, er hat geendet, er hat geſagt, er hat gehütet, er hat gewartet, er hat gefürchtet, er hat gefiſcht, er hat geleitet.

6. Das Federmeſſer, das Zollhaus, die Hausfrau, der Hausfreund, der Armenarzt, die Armenſchule, der Ehrentag, das Ehrenwort, die Erdfarbe, die Bergſtraße, der Goldfiſch, das Kunſtwerk, das Nachtkleid.

7. Bee house [n.], point of honor [m.], beer for the family [n.], beer glass [n.], letter-paper [n.], fratricide [m.], family physician [m.], apple-woman [f.], evening-red [n.], private instructor (lit. house-teacher) [m.], bone-fish [m.], workman [m.], April-weather [n.], evening-sun [f.], work at home [f.], brotherly love [f.], blood relationship (lit. blood friendship) [f.], man of honor [m.], grape (lit. wine-berry) [f.], blind fondness (lit. love of apes) [f.], cider (lit. apple-wine) [m.], ridge of a hill [m.], folding-door [f.], calf's skin [n.], lion's skin [f.], night-air [f.], statesman [m.], coffee-house [n.], domestic animal (lit. animal of the house) [n.], law giver [m.], hand-mill [f.], house-clock (to be fixed against a wall) [f.], goldsmith [m.], mining college (lit. mountain-school) [f.], work of art [n.], statesmanship [f.], law of state [n.], favorite of fortune (lit. child of fortune) [n.], law book [n.], handiwork [f.], propitious star (lit. star of fortune) [m.], zone (lit. earth-girdle) [m.], kitchen-knife [n.], humorist (lit. jest-maker) [m.], scapegoat [m.], hair of the head [n.], citizen (lit. citizen of the state) [m.], school girl [n.], school for girls [f.], garden flower [f.], flower-garden [m.].

8. Die Kuh, die Frau, der Stern, der Sohn, die Bank, das Mädchen, die Maus, die Ratte, der Vater, das Gebirge, die Schweſter, die Nadel, das Mäuslein, das Kindlein, die Fürſtin, das Zimmer, der Stoff, der Gaſt, der Fluß, der Pflug, der Lügner, die Sichel, der Punkt.

9. By **er.** Der Eſſer, Schläfer, Finder, Schwimmer, Sprecher, Pflanzer, Horcher, Hörer, Brauer, Denker, Plünderer, Spender, Warner, Schreier, Lacher, Brummer, Brenner, Heizer, Halter, Zieher.

10. Bäckerin, Bettlerin, Brauerin, Freundin, Füchſin, Wölfin, Löwin, Hündin, Meiſterin, Mörderin, Tänzerin, Träumerin, Thörin, Schülerin, Schottin, Jüdin, Türkin, Römerin, Griechin, Amerikanerin.

11. Söhnchen, Brüderchen, Händchen, Häuschen, Bräutchen, Bäumchen, Mütterchen, Röschen (p. 19, 13 *a*), Stühlchen, Schäfchen, Kindlein, Öchslein, Kühlein, Mäuslein, Lämmlein, Männlein, Fräulein.

12. Wilhelms, Hanſens, Maxens, Fritzens, Luiſens, Amaliens, Europas, Mariens, von Mainz, von Cadix, des Xerxes, Mathildens.

13. Woody (p. 103, hungrig), woodlike (*i. e.* hard like wood, p. 178, thöricht), wooden, thorny, like thorns, resembling stone, stone—of stone, stony (containing stones), resembling sponge, spongy, like soap, soapy, bloomy, drinkable, fearful, timid, like fur, covered with fur, manly, mountainous, mountainlike, eatable, wholesome, skinned, hereditary, furnished with wool, resembling wool, golden—of gold, copper—of copper, salinous, salty, childlike, childish (p. 88, ſtürmiſch), womanly, womanish—effeminate, a stone table, a stony way (containing stones), a stony pear (resembling stone, hard as stone).

14. Der, die, das Gute, Böſe, Große, Kleine, Hohe, Schöne, Häßliche, Gemeine, Starke, Schwache, Sanfte, Harte, Süße, Saure, Freundliche.

# THE PREDICATE ENLARGED BY COMPLEMENTS.

## [38.] THE COMPLEMENT IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Die Mutter liebt **die** Tochter. | *The mother loves the daughter.* |
| Die Tochter liebt **die** Mutter. | *The daughter loves the mother.* |
| 2. Das Kind ißt **das** Brod. | *The child eats the bread.* |
| Das Brod nährt **das** Kind. | *The bread nourishes the child.* |
| 3. Die Eltern lieben **die** Kinder. | *The parents love the children.* |
| Die Kinder lieben **die** Eltern. | *The children love the parents.* |
| 4. Der Vater lobt **den** Sohn. | *The father praises the son.* |
| Der Sohn lobt **den** Vater. | *The son praises the father.* |
| 5. Der Gärtner pflanzte dieſen ſchönen Baum. | *The gardener planted this fine tree.* |
| 6. Wer hat jenen großen Bären gezähmt? | *Who tamed that large bear?* |
| 7. Er wird **die** ſaure Milch und **das** harte Brod nicht lieben. | *He will not like the sour milk and the hard bread.* |

*Observations.*—1. Verbs are divided into **Subjective** and **Objective Verbs:**

*a. Subjective Verbs* express either a quiescent state of the subject, as: ich ſchlafe, *I sleep*; ich raſte, *I rest*; or, an action confined to the subject, as: ich gehe, *I go*; ich ſpringe, *I spring, jump.*

*b. Objective Verbs* express an action which is not limited to the subject, but passes over to another person or thing, and therefore requires a noun or pronoun (object) to complete the notion expressed by it, as: ich ſchlage **einen Hund,** *I beat* **a dog**; ich hole **Waſſer,** *I fetch* **water,**

2. *Objective Verbs*, expressing an action which bears upon some object **directly,** or which requires the object in the **Accusative Case** (p. 166, 5), are called **Transitive Verbs.**

3. *Subjective Verbs* which govern no case, or those of the Objective Verbs governing the *Genitive* or *Dative* Case (p. 166, 4, 6), or a case with a preposition (p. 75, 8), are called **Intransitive Verbs,** thus: ſchwimmen, *to swim*; kommen, *to come*; fallen, *to fall*; danken, *to thank* (in German governing the Dative); folgen, *to follow* (in German governing the Dative), are **Intransitive Verbs.**

4. The **Accusative,** as the object of the transitive verb, agrees in general with the **Objective** Case in English.

5. The *Accusative* of the feminine and neuter, and in the plural of all the genders, is—just as in English—like the nominative, and is recognizable in the sentence only by its position, the Accusative, or the object, *following* the Nominative, or the subject of the sentence. M. S. 1, 2, 3.

6. The *Accusative* singular of masculine nouns, however, differs from the nominative:

*a.* By the determinative words preceding them, all of which take the ending **en**, M. S. 4, 5, 6:

| *Nominative.* | *Accusative.* | *Nominative.* | *Accusative.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| der | den | mein | meinen |
| dieſer | dieſen | unſer | unſeren or unſern |
| jener | jenen | | |
| jeder | jeden | ihr | ihren |
| mancher | manchen | guter Wein | guten Wein |
| ein | einen | der gute Wein | den guten Wein. |

*b.* By the same ending (**en**) which both the preceding determinative and the noun itself take, in case the latter belongs to the N-Declension. M. S. 6.

7. The Accusative is placed, as in English, after the subject and predicate, if the latter is simple, M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5; but if the predicate is compound (*i. e.* consists of an auxiliary and past participle or infinitive), the Accusative is placed between the auxiliary and participle or infinitive. M. S. 6, 7 (compare § 25, 5).

## 42.

der Sonnenſchein*[zŏn'-nen-shīn"] (–s), *sun-shine*
ſcheuen*[shoi'-en], *to shun, be shy of*
das Wort* (–es, plur. Worte and Wörter), *word*
die Hütte* (—, –n), *hut, cottage*
wünſchen*[vĭn'-shen], *to wish*
ſteuern*[stoi'-ern], *to steer*
fühlen[fēē'-len], *to feel*
ſtets*[stāts], *always, constantly*
der Puls* (–es, –e), *pulse*
das Vaterland*[fah'-ter-länt"] (–es, länder, –e), *fatherland*
fürchten*[fĭry'-ten], *to fear, be afraid*
der Tod[tōt] (–es), *death*
das Glück[glĭk] (–es), *luck, happiness*
machen*[mä'-chen], *to make*
zieren*[tsē'-ren], *to adorn, decorate*
der Acker*[äk'-ker] (–s, Äcker), *acre, field*
der Schmerz* (–s, –en), *pain, ache*
die Wunde* (—, –n), *wound*
die Biene (—, –n), *bee*
der Pfeffer*[pfĕf'-fer], *pepper*
die Zunge*[tsùng'-e] (—, –n), *tongue*
der Abend* (–s, –e), *evening*
krönen[krēā'-nen], *to crown*
das Ende* (–s, –n), *end*
das Werk* (–s, –e), *work*
der Brudermörder*[brū'-der-mür"-der] (–s, —), *fratricide*
der Müller*[mŭl'-ler], *miller*
das Mehl* (–s), *meal, flour*
heilen*[hī'-len], *to heal, cure*
die Schülerin*[shēē'-le-rĭn"] (—, nen), *female scholar*
geſchäftig*[ge-shäf'-tĭy], *busy*

die Abendmahlzeit*[ah'-bᵉnt-mahl"-tsıt] (—, –en), *evening meal*
die Lebenszeit*[la'-bᵉns-tsıt"] (— –en), *lifetime*
willig*[vıl'-lıy], *willing, voluntary*
düngen*[dıng'-ᵉn], *to dung, manure*
der Schritt*[shrıt], *step, stride*
verkennen*[fᵉr-kĕn'-nᵉn], *to mistake, fail to appreciate*
das Gemeine*[gᵉ-mı'-nᵉ] (–n), *the common, mean*
der Flügel*[flée'-gᵉl] (–s, —), *wing*
bringen[brıng'-ᵉn], *to bring*
die Noth* (—, Nöthe), *need.*

1. Er wird das Brod bald bringen. 2. Der Lehrer lehrte den Schüler und die Schülerinnen. 3. Der Gärtner hat den Baum gepflanzt. 4. Diebe und Räuber ſcheuen das Licht des Tages, wie die Eulen den Sonnenſchein. 5. Haben Sie das Wort des Fürſten gehört? 6. Sie meinen wohl die Worte unſeres Monarchen? 7. Dieſer Mann war nicht arm; er hatte einen Garten, ein Haus, eine Hütte und ein Feld. 8. Welchen Ring wünſchen Sie? 9. Ich wünſche Ihren or den Ihrigen. 10. Welchen Weg ſteuern Sie? 11. Der Doktor fühlte den Puls des Patienten. 12. Dieſer Mann liebte ſtets ſein Vaterland. 13. Er fürchtete nicht den Tod und fühlte nicht den Schmerz ſeiner Wunden. 14. Der Honig der Bienen iſt ſüß, und ihr Wachs heilt Wunden. 15. Dieſer Pfeffer beißt die Zunge. 16. Der Abend krönt den Tag und das Ende das Werk. 17. Kain hat ſeinen Bruder gemordet; er war ein Brudermörder. 18. Die Bäcker backen Brode. 19. Der Müller mahlt das Mehl. 20. Der Brauer braute das Bier. 21. Der Arzt heilte den Kranken. 22. Die Mädchen ſpinnen den Flachs. 23. Ich habe keinen Wein, auch kein Bier und trinke Waſſer. 24. Das Glück macht den Mann, nicht der Mann das Glück (Prov.). 25. Der Bart ziert den Mann (Prov.). 26. Kurze Abendmahlzeit macht lange Lebenszeit (Prov.). 27. Williges Herz macht leichte Füße (Prov.). 28. Des Herren Auge düngt den Acker (Prov.). 29. Ein geſchäftiges Weib thut keinen Schritt vergebens (Göthe). 30. Man verkennt das Gemeine ſelten (Leſſing). 31. Jedes Jetzt hat Flügel (Herder). 32. Fleiß bringt Brod, Faulheit Noth (Prov.) 33. Die Güte gewinnt alle Herzen (Herder). 34. Der Wein erfreut des Menſchen Herz (Bibel).

## 43.

das Morgenlied*[mör-'gᵉn-leᵈ"], *morning-song*
prüfen*[prée'-fᵉn], *examine, try, prove*
wirbeln*[wır'-beln], *to warble*
wärmen*[wär'-mᵉn], *to make warm*
der Brief*[bref], *letter*
recht*[rĕyt], *right, just*
das Bein*[bın], *leg, bone*
das Blut*[blut], *blood*
golden*[göl'-den], *gold, golden*
beſuchen*[bᵉ-zu'-ᵉn], *to visit*

der Hagel*[hah'-g$^{e}$l], *hail*
der Froſt* (–es, Fröſte), *frost*
der Blitz*[blĭts], *lightning*
der Leck*[lĕk], *leak*
der Vorvater*[fōr'-fah$^{"}$-t$^{e}$r] (–s, –väter), *forefather*
verwunden*[f$^{e}$r-vŭn'-d$^{e}$n], *to wound*
der Weinkeller*[vĭn'-kĕl$^{"}$-l$^{e}$r] (–s, —), *wine-cellar*
zähmen*[tsä'-m$^{e}$n], *to tame*
franzöſiſch*[frän$^{"}$-tsä'-sĭsh], *French*
der Autor*[ou'-tōr], *autor*
ſehen*[zā'-h$^{e}$n], *to see*
der Tiſch*[tĭsh], *table.*

1. Did the teacher examine 'your pupils (scholars) or ours? 2. He examined 'yours. 3. The mother warned her son. 4. We do not fear our enemy. 5. The hares have long ears. 6. The lark, the herald of the morn, warbles its morning song. 7. A deep snow warms the earth. 8. We had rain and wind, snow and ice, hail and frost, thunder and lightning. 9. The ship had a leak. 10. Our forefathers were brave men and loved their fatherland. 11. Do 'you see his knife, her watch and my ring? 12. I see the ring, but not the knife and the watch. 13. Has the teacher warned my son or thine? 14. He has warned your cousin's sister, she was lazy. 15. Have 'you heard this long letter? 16. No, I have not (heard). 17. Does he drink the beer or the wine? 18. He drinks the tea and the coffee. 19. The mother was teaching her children. 20. Fish have cold blood. 21. Owls shun the light. 22. Oaks have strong roots. 23. Our servant has wounded his right leg. 24. A thief is stealing your (thy) gold watch. 25. Have 'you visited our new school? 26. I have not; I have visited your fine wine-cellar. 27. We shall tame these wild beasts. 28. Have you (thou) bought those French books? 29. Not yet, but I shall buy a book of a good French author. 30. Do 'you see the lightning? 31. Do 'you hear the thunder? 32. Has the joiner made the table? 33. He has not; he made the chair. 34. We shall drink our wine, did they drink theirs?

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Sonnenſchein, sunshine,** c. of Sonne, Ex. 12, and **Schein, shine,** from ſcheinen, Ex. 11. On the genit. form of the first component (Sonnen) see p. 184, 2nd note.

**ſcheuen,** *to shun, be* **shy** *of,* from ſcheu, Ex. 28.

**Wort, word.** Tab. V. 11. Wort has two forms in plural: **Worte,** when speaking of words connected with each other in a sentence; **Wörter,** of unconnected vocables, as: Seine **Worte** ſind wahr, *his words are true*; das **Wörterbuch** enthält alphabetiſch geordnete **Wörter,** *the dictionary contains words, alphabetically arranged.*

**Hütte, hut,** *cottage*, lit. *a covered place*; O. Ger. *hudan*, to cover; perhaps conn. with A. S. *hidan*, Engl. *hide*.

**wünſchen, to wish.** Tab. V. 26.

**ſteuern, to steer,** to *stir*, direct the vessel; A. S. *steoran*; O. Ger. *stiuran*, to guide.

**ſtets,** *always, constantly*, **steadily.**

**Puls, pulse,** lit. *a beating* of the heart and the arteries, Lat. *pulsus—pello, pulsum*, to beat, strike.

**Vaterland, fatherland,** c. of Vater and Land, Ex. 14, 15.

**fürchten,** *to fear, be afraid*, from Furcht, *fear* (Ex. 23), **fright,** Tab. V. 37; compare furchtbar and furchtſam, Ex. 23.

**Schmerz,** *pain, ache*; A. S. smĕort, **smart.** Tab. V. 38.

**Wunde, wound.** Tab. V. 32; see wund, Ex. 28.

**Pfeffer, pepper.** Tab. V. 2 and 4.

**Zunge, tongue;** A. S. *tunge*. Tab. V. 8.

**Abend, even, even**ing; ahd. *abant, abunt* (*-ant, -unt* is merely termination): prob. from **ab**=away from, the *going away* of the day. Tab. V. 6.

**Ende, end.** Sans. *anta*. Tab. V. 32.

*Take Notice!* Of simple words terminating in obscure **e** (ᵉ) only the masculine noun **Käſe, cheese,** the two neuters **Ende** and **Erbe,** *inheritance* (the masculine Erbe=*heir, inheritor*, follows the N-Declension), and of compounds, the neuters with the augment **Ge,** as: **Gebäude,** *building*, **Gebirge,** *chain of mountains*, belong to the S-Declension; **all the others** in obscure **e** belong to the N-Declension.

**Werk, work.** A. S. *weork*; from **wirken,** A. S. *weorcan*, to **work.**

**Brudermörder,** *fratricide*, c. of Bruder, Ex. 12, and Mörder, Ex. 15.

**Müller, miller,** one who attends a Mühle, Ex. 12.

**Mehl, meal,** grain *ground*, from mahlen, *to mill*, Goth. *malan*, Lat. *molo*, to grind; see Ex. 12, Mühle.

**heilen, to heal,** *cure*, to make **heal**thy and **whole**; see heilſam, Ex. 32.

**Schülerin,** female **scholar**; see Schüler, Ex. 8, and suffix **-in,** Ex. 34.

**Morgenlied, morning-***song*; c. of Morgen, Ex. 34, and Lied, *song*, **lay,** A. S. *leod, liod*; Gael. *laoidh, laoi*, a verse, sacred poem.

**prüfen,** *to examine, try*, **prove.** A. S. *profian*; Lat. *probo*. Tab. V. 7.

**wirbeln, to warble,** lit. *to whirl*, to sing in a quavering way; O. Engl. **werbelle.**

**wärmen,** to make **warm,** from warm, Ex. 5.

*Take Notice! Verbs derived from Adjectives, usually modify the Vowel.*

**Hagel, hail.** A. S. *hagal.* Tab. V. 20.

**Froſt, frost,** from **frieren,** to **freeze,** A. S. *freosan*; Gr. *phrisso,* to shiver. Tab. V. 23.

**Blitz,** *lightning*; ahd. *plic*; related with **blinken,** to **blink,** *to glance,* A. S. *blican,* to glitter; see blicken, Ex. 36.

**Leck, leak;** Dutch *leck,* a chink, *lekken,* to drip.

**Vorvater, forefather,** c. of **vor=fore,** Ex. 25, and Vater.

**Brief,** *letter,* from Lat. *brevis,* **brief,** hence originally short letter.

**verwunden, to wound,** from Wunde, Ex. 40, and prefix **ver,** Ex. 27, vergebens.

**recht, right,** *just,* then *right* (not *left*), adverbially used Ex. 24. Tab. V. 18.

**Bein,** *leg,* **bone.** Tab. V. 38.

**Blut, blood.** Tab. V. 11.

**golden, gold, golden,** from Gold. The suff. **en** and **ern** forms adjectives from substantives, denoting material or kind: hölzern (from Holz), *wooden*; ſtählern (from Stahl), *of steel.* From substantives in **er** the ending is **n,** as: ſilbern, for ſilberen, *of silver,* from Silber, *silver*; kupfern, *of copper,* from Kupfer, *copper.*

**beſuchen,** *to visit,* c. of ſuchen, Ex. 18, and the prefix **be,** Ex. 26.

**Weinkeller, wine-cellar,** c. of Wein, Ex. 20, and Keller, Ex. 32.

**zähmen, to tame.** Tab. V. 8. A. S. *tamian*; Lat. *domo*; Gr. *damao*; Sans. *dam,* to subdue.

**franzöſiſch, French,** from Franzoſe, Ex. 36, and suff. **iſch,** Ex. 8.

**Autor, author.** Lat. *auctor—augeo, auctus,* to produce.

**ſehen, to see.** A. S. *seon*; Ice. *sia*; Sw. *se.*

**Glück, luck,** *good fortune, happiness.* Dutch *luck* and *geluck*; ahd. *luch*; mhd. *gelucke*; compare p. 112 glücklich. Tab. V. 24.

**zieren,** *to adorn, decorate, to attire*; compare Zierde, Ex. 38.

**Abendmahlzeit, evening meal,** *supper (time),* c. of Abend, p. 197, **Mahl, meal,** and Zeit, Ex. 38.

**Lebenszeit, life-*time*,** c. of Leben(s), Ex. 36, and Zeit. On the **s** of the first component see §20, 2.

**willig, willing, voluntary,** from **Wille, will,** A. S. *wille,* Lat. *volo,* to will.

**düngen, to dung,** *to manure.* A. S. *dyngan.*

**Acker, acre,** lit. *a field.* A. S. *æcer*; Lat. *ager*; Gr. *agros,* a field.

**geſchäftig,** *busy, active,* c. of „ge" and ſchäftig, from ſchaffen, Ex. 34. Schöpfer.

**Schritt**, *step*, **stride**, *pace*. Ahd. *scrit*, from **ſchreiten**, **to stride**, *to step*, A. S. *striden*, to walk about. Tab. V. 11.

**verkennen**, *to mistake, to take for another*, to fail to *appreciate*; c. of ver, Ex. 27, and kennen, Ex. 37.

**Gemeine**, *the common, the ordinary, the* **mean**, c. of "ge", and **mein**= **mean**; A. S. *mæne, gemane*; Lat. *communis*.

**Flügel**, *wing*, instrument of **flight**, from fliegen, Ex. 11; compare p. 112, glücklich. The termination **el** (sometimes **bel**) answers to English **le**, **el** and **il** (the latter instead of *g-el*, as Segel, *sail*, Tab. V. 20). It denotes an instrument, or in general something produced either by nature or by the industry of man: **Schindel**, **shingle**; **Diſtel**, **thistle**; **Sichel**, **sickle**; **Sattel**, **saddle**; **Schaufel**, **shovel**, etc.

**Noth**, **need**, *distress*. Ahd., mhd. *not*; A. S. *nead*; probably connected with ahd. *nioton*; mhd. *nieten*=to desire, to apply (one's self) most zealously to, to bestow pains upon. Tab. V. 11.

## [39.] THE COMPLEMENT IN THE DATIVE CASE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir haben **dem** Arzte gedankt. | *We have thanked the physician.* |
| 2. Der Onkel ſchenkte **dem** fleißigen Knaben ein Buch. | *The uncle presented the diligent boy with a book.* |
| 3. Die Mutter ſchickt **der** Lehrerin einen Ring. | *The mother sends the female teacher a ring.* |
| 4. Gute Kinder folgen **den** Eltern. | *Good children obey the parents.* |
| 5. Der Vater antwortet **der** guten Tochter. | *The father answers the good daughter.* |
| 6. Ich habe ihren Sohn meinem Freunde empfohlen. | *I have recommended her son to my friend.* |

*Observations.*—1. Transitive verbs require a Complement in the accusative, or a direct object. But there are verbs which would not be complete with only one object. The verbs of *giving, taking, promising, bringing, sending*, etc., besides the immediate or *direct object*, that is, the thing given, taken, promised, brought or sent, require an *indirect* or *remote* object, the *person* to whom the thing is given, promised, brought, or sent and taken from. This indirect or remote object is in the **Dative Case.** It corresponds to the English *to* or *for*, which in some cases may be supplied.

*Note.* The Dative is also called the *person-case*, because the indirect object indicated by the dative is represented as a person, that is to say, as an *acting* being, whilst the direct object, indicated by the accusative, is considered as a *thing*, that is, a being which *suffers* the action of a person; for instance: Ich gebe dem Armen Geld,

I give money to the poor man; the poor man is represented as an acting person, he receives the money; Ich antworte dem Knaben, I answer the boy, the boy acts, he asks and receives the answer; Ich folge dem Manne, I follow the man, the man acts, he precedes.

2. When there are two nouns governed by the verb, the noun signifying a person precedes the one denoting a thing. M. S. 2, 3.

3. A personal noun (*i. e.* a noun denoting a person) in the Accusative precedes one in the Dative case. M. S. 6.

4. In the **S-Declension** a masculine or neuter noun (monosyllable) taking **es** in the genitive case, generally retains in the *dative* the **e** of the termination, as: genit. **des** Buch-**es**, *of the book*; dat. **dem** Buch-**e**, *to the book*. But nouns which take only **s** in the genit. (p. 167, 4) have the *dative* like the nominative, the case relation being sufficiently indicated by the ending of the preceding determinative word, viz.: masc. and neut. sing. **em**, femin. sing. **er**, and plur. (all genders) **en**.

5. In the **N-Declension** the dative as well as all the cases in sing. and plur., except the nominative, take **en** or **n**.

*Note.* The N-Declension having so few characteristic case terminations, is, therefore, also called the *weak declension*, whilst the term of *strong* is given to the S-Declension.

## 44.

die Geſchichte*[gᵉ-shĭy'-tᵉ](—, –en), *occurrence, event, story*
erzählen*[ᵉr-tsâĭ'-lᵉn], *to narrate, to tell*
der Wagen*[vah'-gᵉn] (–s, Wägen), *carriage, wagon*
gehorchen*[gᵉ-hŏr'-yᵉn], *to obey, listen to, do as told*
brav*[brahf], *fine, handsome, gallant, brave*
die Fahne*[fah'-nᵉ] (—, –n), *ensign, vane*
antworten*[änt'-vŏrᵉ-tᵉn], *to answer*
herzlich*[hĕrts'-lĭy], *heartily*
der Wohlthäter*[vōl'-tâĭᵉ-tᵉr] (–s, —), *benefactor, well-doer*
das Compliment[kŏmᵉ-plĭ-mĕnt'], *compliment*
werth*[vârt], *valued, worth*
der Gruß*[grûs] (–es, Grüße), *salutation, greeting*
beſt*[bĕst], *best*
der Delphin[dĕl-fēn'], *dolphin*
trauen*[trou'-ᵉn], *to confide, trust*
gefallen*[gᵉ-fâl'-lᵉn], *to please, to suit*
die Antwort*[änt'-vŏrt] (—, –en),
das Ei*[ĭ] (–es, –er), *egg* [*answer*
gleich*[glĭy], *like*
gleichen*, *to be like, to resemble*
ander*, *other*
glauben*[glou'-bᵉn], *to believe*
der Bauer*[bou'-ᵉr] (–n, –n),
dienen*[dē'-nᵉn], *to serve* [*peasant*
gehören*[gᵉ-hêâ'-rᵉn], *to belong to*
der Miniſter[mĭ'-nĭs'-tᵉr], *minister*
der Advokat[ät'ᵉ-vō-kaht'], *advocate*
die Nuß*[nûs] (—, Nüſſe), *nut*

knacken*[knäk'-ken], *to crack*
der Bürſtenmacher*[bürs'-ten-mä"-cher], *brush-maker*
die Kleiderbürſte*[klī'-der-bür"-ste], *cloth-brush*
Haarbürſte[hahr'-bür"-ste] *hair-brush*
neu*[noi], *new*
der Fußſtapfen*[fūs'-stäp"-fen], *foot-step*
der Helfer*[hĕl'-fer], *helper*
die Jugend*[yū'-gent], *youth*
die Tugend*[tū'-gent], *virtue*
das Alter*[äl'-ter], *age, old age*
leihen*[lī'-hen], *to lend*
der Körper*[kür'-per], *body*
die Farbe*[fär'-be], *the color*
die Seele*[zä'-le], *soul*
räumen*[roi'-men], *to clear away, make room in* or *of*
der Platz* (–es, Plätze), *place*
der Amtmann*[ämt'-män], *bailiff, steward*
geben*[gä'-ben], *to give*
nehmen*[nä'-men], *to take*
der Unterthan*[ün'-ter-tahn"] (–en, and –s; –en), *subject.*

1. Der Lehrer erzählte den Kindern eine Geſchichte. 2. Ich gebe den Kindern meinen Wagen. 3. Meine Kinder folgen ihren Lehrern. 4. Dieſe Soldaten gehorchen dem Gebote ihres Generals. 5. Jene braven Männer folgten ſtets treu der Fahne. 6. Fleißige Schüler antworten ihren Lehrern gut. 7. Der dankbare Arme dankte herzlich ſeinem Wohlthäter. 8. Wir haben dem Arzte gedankt. 9. Er wünſchte ſeinem freundlichen Herren einen guten Morgen. 10. Wir machten ſeiner Mutter unſer Compliment. 11. Ich ſende Ihrem werthen Vater meine beſten Grüße. 12. Große Delphinen folgten unſerem Schiffe. 13. Unſer Bäcker traut ſeinem Müller nicht. 14. Senden Sie ihrer Nichte Ihr Buch? 15. Nein, ich ſende es Ihrer Nichte. 16. Die offene Antwort des Schülers gefiel dem Lehrer. 17. Ihre Antwort wird vielen Menſchen nicht gefallen haben. 18. Dieſe Bücher gehören meiner Schweſter. 19. Haben Sie Ihrer Mutter geantwortet? 20. Nein, aber ich werde heute meinem Vater antworten. 21. Die Miniſter geben dem ſchlauen Advocaten eine harte Nuß zu knacken. 22. Die Bienen geben den Menſchen Honig und Wachs. 23. Der Bürſtenmacher ſchickte meinem Onkel eine alte Kleiderbürſte, und er wird meiner Schweſter eine neue Haarbürſte ſenden. 24. Ich folgte den Fußſtapfen jener böſen Menſchen nicht. 25. Ihr Vater war meinem Sohne ein Helfer. 26. Der Jugend Tugend gibt dem Alter noch Jugend. 27. Das Licht leiht dem Körper ſeine Farben. 28. Ein Ei gleicht dem anderen (Prov.). 29. Das Kalb folgt der Kuh (Prov.). 30. Der Satte glaubt dem Hungrigen nicht (Prov.). 31. Der Bauer glaubt nur ſeinem Vater (Prov.). 32. Das Morgen wird dem ſchönen Heute gleichen (Schiller). 33. Kein rechter Mann dient dem Undankbaren (Schiller). 34. Seele des Menſchen, wie gleichſt du dem Waſſer! Seele des Menſchen, wie gleichſt du dem Wind! (Göthe.) 35. Der Gute räumt den Platz dem Böſen (Schiller). 36. Amtsleute geben dem Herrn ein Ei, und nehmen den Unterthanen zwei (Prov.).

## 45.

der Reiſende*[rī'-zᵉn-dᵉ], (–n), *traveller*
zeigen*[tsī'-gᵉn], *to show, point*
ſchicken, *to send* [*out*
verkaufen*[fᵉr-kou'-fᵉn], *to sell*
ſilbern[zil'-bᵉrn] (adj.), *silver*
der Fingerhut*[fing'-ᵉr-hūt"] (–ᵉs, –hüte), *thimble*
der Führer*[fēē'-rᵉr] (–s, —), *leader, guide.*

1. We believe no fool and no Jesuit. 2. My uncle lends his knife to the nephew of this traveller. 3. This house belongs to the uncle of my neighbor. 4. That garden belonged to the aunt of my friends. 5. I have sent a letter to the father of your physician. 6. She has sent beautiful flowers to the friends (fem.) of her sister. 7. Have 'you sent 'your book to 'your niece? 8. No, I have sent it to the friend of my uncle. 9. Do your parents promise a bird to this child? 10. Henry lends a chair to this poor woman. 11. Has not Louisa shown our house and garden to that man? 12. That girl brings her pen to the friend (fem.) of my brother. 13. Does this horse belong to your uncles or to your aunts? 14. It belongs to my sisters. 15. This hat belonged to the gardener of my friend (fem.). 16. My sister has bought a silver thimble for the friend (fem.) of her neighbor (fem.). 17. Did 'your uncle send a watch to 'your son's or to 'your daughter's teacher? 18. He sent it to my teacher. 19. Why have you not sold 'your horse to the neighbor of 'your mother? 20. I had sold it to my physician. 21. I bought a beautiful book (for) my daughter. 22. Have you shown the physician the large room of your father? 23. The queen has sent a book to the child of our niece. 24. Did the boy's father believe that man? 25. No, he did not; he never trusts a Jesuit. 26. Did the blind man follow his leader's footsteps? 27. Yes, he follows and obeys his leaders.

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Geſchichte**, *occurrence, event*, then *narration* of an occurrence, *story, tale*, from geſchehen, *to happen*; the radical ſchehen exists now only in Swed. *ske*, to happen.

**erzählen**, *to narrate*, **tell** (story-**teller**), c. of the prefix **er**, denoting the manner of attaining an aim, and **zählen**, to **tale**, to **tell** a number, *to count, to narrate.* Tab. V. 8.

**Wagen,** *carriage, coach,* **wagon, wain,** lit. *that which carries*; A. S. *wægen, wæn,* Sans. *vahana,* Lat. *veho,* Sans. *vah,* to carry.

**gehorchen,** *to obey, to listen to, to do as told,* c. of **ge,** Ex. 16 and 24, and **horchen, hearken,** Ex. 14. Tab. V. 16.

**brav,** *fine, handsome, noble, gallant, courageous,* **brave.** Tab. V. 38.

**Fahne,** *ensign, colors,* **vane.** Goth. *fana,* properly a piece of cloth; Lat. *pannus,* cloth.

**antworten,** *to answer, to reply in return*; c. of Wort, p. 200, and the prefix **ant,** from which **ent,** Lat. *anti,* Gr. *anti,* against, which signifies: 1. *origin*=Engl. *es-, ex-, from*: **entfließen,** to flow *from*; 2. *separation, removal*=Engl. *away, off*: **entfliegen**[ĕnt-flē'-gᵉn], *to fly away,* **entfliehen**[ĕnt-flē'-ʰᵉn], *to flee, escape*; 3. *negation, privation*=Engl. *dis-, de-*: **entwaffnen**[ĕnt-văf'-nᵉn], *to disarm,* **entkräften**[ĕnt-kräf'-tᵉn], *to debilitate.*

**herzlich, heartily,** c. of Herz, *heart,* and the suffix lich, Ex. 12.

**Wohlthäter,** *benefactor,* **well-doer,** c. of wohl, Ex. 26, and Thäter, *doer,* from That, Ex. 37, and the suffix **er,** Ex. 11.

**werth,** *valued,* **worth, worthy.**

**Gruß,** *salutation,* **greeting,** from **grüßen,** to **greet,** Ex. 14. Tab. V. 10.

**beſt, best,** superlative of **gut, good.**

**trauen,** *to confide, to trust, to* **trow.** A. S. *treowian,* related with **true,** A. S. *treowe,* Ice. *traust,* firm, steady.

**gefallen,** *to please, suit,* c. of **ge,** Ex. 6, 24, and **fallen,** *to* **fall** *to the share of, to yield, to be suitable, to be pleased with.*

**gehören,** *to belong to,* c. of **ge,** and **hören, to hear,** originally gehören= to *listen* obediently to one's owner, then *to be owned by, to appertain.* Compare gehorſam, p. 151.

**Nuß, nut.** Tab. V. 10.

**knacken, to crack, to knack,** *to break.* A. S. *cnocian,* Sw. *knacka,* to crack or snap.

**Bürſte, brush,** an instrument usually made of **Borſten bristles,** O. Ger. *brusta,* bristle. Tab. V. 29 and 37.

**Bürſtenmacher, brush-maker,** c. of Bürſte and Macher, *maker,* from machen, Ex. 41. The first component with the plural termination **n,** see § 20, 2.

**Kleiderbürſte, clothes-brush,** c. of Kleid=er (plur.), Ex. 27, and Bürſte.

**Haarbürſte, hair-brush,** c. of Haar, Ex. 8, and Bürſte.

**neu, new.** A. S. *niwe*; Goth. *niujo*; Lat. *novus*; Gr. *neos*; Sans. *nava.*

**Fußſtapfen,** *track, trace of a* **foot, foot-step,** c. of Fuß, Ex. 23, and **Stapfen,** *trace of a foot,* A. S. *stæp,* stride, **step.**

**Helfer, helper,** from **helfen, to help.** Tab. V. 4.

**Jugend, youth,** *state of being young, period of youth,* O. Engl. **yongth,** from jung, Ex. 5.

**Alter,** *age,* **old** *age,* from alt, Ex. 6.

**leihen, to lend,** *borrow, confer, bestow,* O. Engl. **leenen,** A. S. *lænan, lihan.* Tab. V. 34.

**Körper,** *body,* from Lat. *corpus,* human body; now in English the dead body of a human being, **corpse.**

**Farbe,** *color, hue.* Ahd. *farawa*; mhd. *varwe, var*; A. S. *færbu*; perhaps related with Lat. **parere,** to come forth to, so as to be seen, to **appear.** Tab. V. 4.

**Ei, egg.** A. S. *aeg* (in ahd. the Nom. plural has still g, *eigir*).

**gleich, like,** *resembling,* originally ge-leich, mhd. *gelich, glich,* A. S. *lic, gelic,* c. of „ge", and the root *lih,* which originally means Leib, *body,* hence *external form,* and generally *quality*; A. S. *lic*=flesh, a living or dead *body*; compare Leiche=Goth. *leik*=living or dead body; now *dead* body, corpse.

**gleichen,** *to be* **like,** *to resemble.* Tab. V. 24 and 16.

**ander, other,** *different.* Goth. *anthar,* ahd. *andar,* Sans. *antara*=other. Tab. V. 26.

**glauben,** *to be***lieve,** lit. *to give* **leave** *to* (comp. **erlauben,** *to give* **leave,** *to permit, to* **allow**), *to give assent to, to credit, to trust in*; c. of „ge" and lauben. Tab. V. 6.

**Bauer,** *tiller of ground,* **boor.** A. S. *buan*; Dutch, *bouwen*; Ger. bauen, to build, to till; compare Ex. 24, Nachbar.

**morgen,** *to-***morrow, heute,** *to-day,* Ex. 17; from these adverbs are formed the substantives, das Morgen, das Heute. Compare page 169, der Faule.

**dienen,** *to serve, attend.* Ahd. *dionon* (comp. Engl. **thane,** O. Engl. **than,** A. S. *degen,* a servant, nobleman), O. Ger. Degen, a soldier, servant, connected with Ger. Degen, *sword.*

**Seele, soul.** Goth. *saivala*; A. S. *sawl,* properly the moving and waving power of a living being, and thus allied with **See, sea,** Gr. *seiein,* to move to and fro.

**räumen,** *to clear away, evacuate, make* **room** *in* or *of*; ahd. and mhd. *rumen.*

**Platz, place,** *space.* Lat. *platea,* a broad way in a city; Greek *platys,* broad.

**Amtmann,** *bailiff, stewart,* c. of Amt, *office,* mhd. *ambt*=service, and Mann.

**geben, to give.** A. S. *gifan,* Goth. *giban.* Tab. V. 7.

**nehmen,** *to take, seize.* Goth. *niman,* O. Engl. **nim.**

**Unterthan,** *subject.* Mhd. *undertan,* ahd. *untartan,* properly the past participle of mhd. *undertuon*=unterthun, *to put* **under,** c. of **unter= under,** and **thun=to do.**

**Reisende,** *traveller* (pres. partic. reisend, *travelling*), from reisen, Ex. 17. On adjectives (or participles) used substantively, see p. 169, der Faule.

**zeigen,** *to show, point out, indicate.* A. S. *tæcan,* to show, **teach,** allied to Lat. *doceo,* Gr. *deiknumi,* to show. Tab. V. 8.

**silbern,** adj. **silver;** see Lex. to Ex. 41, golden.

**Fingerhut,** *thimble,* lit. a hat, *i. e.* a protection for the *finger,* in Engl. thimble, a protection for the *thumb,* c. of Finger, Ex. 7, and Hut, Ex. 32.

**verkaufen,** *to sell, vend,* c. of ver, Ex. 27, and kaufen, Ex. 17.

**Führer,** *leader, guide,* from führen (causative of **fahren, to fare** Ex. 36, Vorfahr), *to carry, to conduct, to guide.*

## [40.] DECLENSION.—AN ABSTRACT OF THE POINTS ALREADY GIVEN, WITH ADDITIONS.

*Note.* The student is earnestly recommended to take whatever pains may be required to master this chapter, especially the *Verses to help the Memory.* Many grammars of the German language confuse the student in an attempt to avoid exceptions by multiplying rules, making as many as six and even eight different declensions. The best German grammarians, however, are agreed in giving but two declensions, the strong (S), and the weak (N), allowing the nouns not conforming to these declensions to fall under the head of exceptions. By this course, which is the one I have followed, the student is required to memorize these exceptions, but when compared with the labor of mastering the complicated six or eight declension system, this will be found to be an easy and pleasant task, especially as I have so collocated the words in the verses, as to give you the assistance not only of rhyme, but also of association in sound and sense, any one word thus suggesting the others in the same line. The great recommendation of this plan is, however, that you will, by becoming familiar with these exceptions, be perfectly sure about the declension of every noun in the language (except some rarely used, which are irregular), and so avoid all the difficulties connected with the doubtful and imperfect knowledge acquired by other systems.

1. The distinction of the cases is denoted less by the endings of the substantives, than by those of the articles and other determinative words.

2. **Table of Terminations.**

| *Singular.* | | *Plural.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| S-DECLENSION. | N-DECLENSION. | S-DECLENSION. | N-DECLENSION. |
| Nom. ——— | Nom. ——— | Nom. **e** or **er** | Nom. **en** or **n** |
| Gen. **es** or **s** | Gen. **en** or **n** | Gen. **e** or **er** | Gen. **en** or **n** |
| Dat. **e** | Dat. **en** or **n** | Dat. **en** or **ern** | Dat. **en** or **n** |
| Acc. ——— | Acc. **en** or **n**. | Acc. **e** or **er** | Acc. **en** or **n**. |

3. **All neuter nouns follow the S-Declension.** As to the plural, however, observe the following differences:

*a.* Most of them (especially monosyllables) take **er** and *modify the vowel*, as: das Gras, plur. die Gräser; das Haus, plur. die Häuser; das Buch, plur. die Bücher.

*b.* Those of the following classes remain *unchanged:*

*1.* The diminutives in **chen** and **lein**, as: das Gläschen, plur. die Gläschen; das Häslein, *the little hare*, plur. die Häslein.

*2.* All with the augment **Ge**, and ending in the obscure **e** (e), as: das Gebäude, *building*, plur. die Gebäude; das Gehänge, *hanging, festoon*, plur. die Gehänge.

*3.* All ending in **el, en, er**, as: das Räthsel [rätt'-zel], *riddle*, plur. die Räthsel; das Messer, plur. die Messer.

*c.* The following neuters take **e** only, and *do not modify the vowel:*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

In **e** form the plural of the **neuters** below
And **do not modify a, u** and **o:**
Dutzend, Quart, Loth, Maß und Pfund,
Stück, Zeug und Zelt, Paar und Bund,
Netz, Tau und Rohr, Verhör und Meer,
Erz, Salz und Fell, Ohr und Heer,
Reich, Recht und Reh, Roß und Schwein,
Mahl, Fest und Schaf, Pferd und Bein,
Antlitz, Kreuz, Knie, Verbot und Riff,
Werk, Ding und Brod, Boot und Schiff,
Joch, Heft und Ziel, Jahr und Bier,
Gift, Stift und Spiel, Haar und Thier,
Add Scheit, Salz und Sieb, Seil und Moos,
Versteck und Verdeck, Öl, Beil und Loos.

Dutzend[dŭt'-sĕnt], *dozen*
Quart[kvärt], *quart*
Loth[lōt], *solder, half an ounce*
Maß[mahs], *measure*
Pfund[pfūnt], *pound*
Stück[stĭk], *piece*
Zeug[tsoik], *gear*
Zelt[tsĕlt], *tent*
Paar[pahr], *pair*
Bund[bŭnt], *bundle*
Netz[nĕts], *net*
Tau[tou], *cable*
Rohr[rōr], *cane*
Verhör[fer-hēär'], *trial, examination*
Meer[mär], *sea*
Erz[ĕrts], *ore*
Salz[zälts], *salt*
Fell[fĕl], *hide*
Ohr[ēär], *the eye (of a needle)*
Heer[här], *army*
Reich[rīy], *kingdom*
Recht[rĕyt], *right*
Reh[rā], *roe*
Roß[rōs], *steed*
Schwein[shvīn], *pig*
Mahl[mahl], *meal, repast, mark*
Fest[fĕst], *feast*
Schaf[shahf], *sheep*
Pferd[pfārt], *horse*
Bein[bīn], *leg*
Antlitz[änt'-lĭts], *countenance*
Kreuz[kroits], *cross*
Knie[knē], *knee*
Verbot[fer-bōt'], *interdict*
Riff[rĭf], *reef*,
Werk[vĕrk], *work*
Ding[dĭng], *thing*
Brod[brōt], *bread*
Boot[bōt], *boat*
Schiff[shĭf], *ship*
Joch[yōch], *yoke*
Heft[hĕft], *pamphlet*
Ziel[tsēl], *aim*
Jahr[yahr], *year*
Bier[bēr], *beer*
Gift[gĭft], *poison*
Stift[stĭft], *institution*
Spiel[spēl], *play*
Haar[hahr], *hair*
Thier[tēr], *animal, wild beast*
Scheit[shīt], *log*
Salz[zälts], *salt*
Sieb[zēp], *sieve*
Seil[zīl], *rope*
Mooß[mōs], *moss*
Versteck[fer-stĕk'], *ambush*
Verdeck[fer-dĕk'], *deck of a ship*
Öl[ēäl], *oil*
Beil[bīl], *hatchet*
Loos[lōs], *lot.*

4. **All Masculines ending in obscure e** (and those which have lost this ending, p. 172, 3), follow the **N-Declension,** as: der Pole, plur. die Polen; der Graf, plur. die Grafen.

5. **All the other Masculines belong to the S-Declension,** and for the most part take e in plural, modifying the vowel, as: der Tisch, plur. die Tische; der Ball, plur. die Bälle; der Stock, plur. die Stöcke.

6. The following masculines do not modify the vowel in plural:

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Never modify the **a, u** and **o**
Of the *Masculines* which here we show:
Dolch, Docht und Dom, Aal und Aar,
Punkt, Puls und Pfad, Park und Staar,

Halm, Huf und Hauch, Hund und Dachs,
Kork, Leichnam, Laut, Luchs und Lachs,
Mond, Monat, Mord, Tag und Tact,
Schuh, Schuft und Stoff, Verluft und Act,
Arm, Amboß, Erfolg, Unhold und Pol,
Grad, Gurt, Gemahl, Herold und Zoll.

Dolch[dölʏ], *dagger*
Docht[dŏᶜʰᵗ], *wick*
Dom[dōm], *dome*
Aal[ahl], *eel*
Aar[ahr], *eagle*
Punkt[pŭnkt], *point*
Puls[pŭls], *pulse*
Pfad[pfahᵗ], *path*
Park[pärk], *park*
Staar[stahr], *cataract**
Halm[hălm], *blade*
Huf[hûf], *hoof*
Hauch[houᶜʰ], *breath*
Hund[hŭnᵗ], *dog*
Dachs[dăx], *badger*
Kork[kŏrk], *cork*
Leichnam[lɪʏ'-nahm], *corpse*
Laut[lout], *sound, tone*
Luchs[lŭx], *lynx*
Lachs[lăx], *salmon*
Mond[mōnᵗ], *moon*
Monat[mō'-naht], *month*
Mord[mōrᵗ], *murder*
Tag[tāᵏ], *day*
Tact[täkt], *tact*
Schuh[shû], *shoe*
Schuft[shûft], *villain*
Stoff[stŏf], *matter*
Verluft[fᵉr-lûst'], *loss, damage*
Act[äkt], *act*
Arm[ărm], *arm*
Amboß[ăm'-bŏs], *anvil*
Erfolg[ĕr-fŏlᵏ'], *success*
Unhold[ûn'-höldᵗ], *monster*
Pol[pōl], *pole*
Grad[grahᵗ], *degree*
Gurt[gûrt], *girdle*
Gemahl[gᵉ-mahl'], *husband*
Herold[hä'-röldᵗ], *herald*
Zoll[tsŏl], *inch.*

7. The following 11 Masculines take **er** in plural, and modify **a, u** and **o**:

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Mark eleven nouns of masculine gender,
With **er** in Plural, as: Leiber, Ränder,
Würmer und Wälder, Geiſter, Örter und Götter,
Vormünder und Männer, Böſewichter und Hundsfötter.

Wald[vältᵗ], *forest, wood*
Böſewicht[bĕä'-zᵉ-vɪʏtᵗ], *villain*
Wurm[vûrm], *worm*
Leib[lɪᵖ], *body*
Rand[räntᵗ], *edge, border*
Vormund[fōr'-mûntᵗ], *guardian*
Ort[ört], *place*
Geiſt[gɪst], *spirit, ghost*
Gott, *God*
Mann, *man.*
Hundsfott[hŭnds,-fŏt], *villain, scoundrel.*

*Staar, *starling* (bird), better after the N-Declension.

8. The following Masculines and Neuters are strong (S-Declension) in the singular, and weak (N-Declension) in the plural:

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

All that here follow in the Singular are strong,
Whilst in the Plural to the weak they belong:
See, Auge und Ohr, die Ohren,
Nachbar, Vetter und Sporn, die **Sporen,**
Macht, Lorbeer, Thron und Staat,
Stachel, Strahl und Zins, Zierath,
Unterthan, Intereſſe, Schmerz,
Ende und Bett, Hemde und Herz.

der See[zā], *sea*
das Auge[ou'-ge], *eye*
das Ohr[ōr], *ear*
der Nachbar[nächʰ'-bahr], *neighbor*
der Vetter[fĕt'-tᵉr], *cousin*
der Sporn[spŏrn], *spur*
die Macht[mächt], *might*
der Lorbeer[lōr'-bār], *laurel*
der Thron[trōn], *throne*
der Staat[staht], *state*
der Stachel[stä'-ʸel], *sting*
der Strahl[strahl], *beam, ray*
der Zins[tsĭns], *rent, interest*
der Zierath[tsē'-raht], *ornament*
der Unterthan[ŭn'-tᵉr-tahnʷ], *subject*
der Schmerz[shmĕrts], *pain*
das Ende[ĕn'-dᵉ], *end*
das Intereſſe[ĭnʷ-tᵉ-rĕs'-sᵉ], *interest*
das Bett[bĕt], *bed*
das Hemde[hĕm'-dᵉ], *shirt*
das Herz[hĕrts], *heart.*

9. Ten Masculines in obscure **e**, and der Fels, *rock*, and das Herz, *heart*, take **ens** in the Genitive singular, and **en** in the other cases, singular and plural.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Of Masculines the following ten
In the nominative singular have **e** or **en:**
Wille, Gedanke, Glaube und Name,
Friede und Funke, Haufe und Same,
Buchſtabe und Schade, plural **Schäden,**
All their cases they form in **en,**
Except the Genitive singular in **ens**
Thus also Fels, Felſens, and Herz, Herzens.

Wille[vĭl'-lᵉ], *will*
Gedanke[gᵉ-dän'-kᵉ], *thought*
Glaube[glou'-bᵉ], *faith*
Name[nah'-mᵉ], *name*
Friede[frē'-dᵉ], *peace*
Funke[fŭn'-kᵉ], *spark.*
Haufe[hou'-fᵉ], *heap*
Same[zah'-mᵉ], *seed*
Buchſtabe[būchʰ'-stahʰ-bᵉ], *letter of the alphabet*
Schade[shah'-dᵉ], *damage*
Fels[fĕls], *rock*
das Herz[hĕrts], *heart.*

10. Of *masculine* nouns in obscure **e** only one, der Käſe[kâî'-ze], *cheese*, follows the S-Declension. Of *neuters* in obscure **e**, two in **de**: das Ende, *the end*, and das Erbe, *the inheritance*, and all with the augment **Ge**, as: das Gebirge, *mountain-range*; das Gehäuſe, *case, receptical* (from Haus); das Getreide, *grain*, etc.

11. All the *feminine* substantives are **unvariable** in the singular. No feminine noun takes the termination **er** in the plural. (Mutter and Tochter, plur. Mütter and Töchter, form no exception, **er** being retained from the singular.)

12. It is **only in nouns of the S-Declension** that the radical vowel **may be modified** in the plural.

13. The nouns of the S-Declension have the nominative, accusative, and sometimes the dative alike.

14. All the substantives have the nominative, genitive and accusative plural alike.

15. **The dative plural always ends in n.**

16. In the plural all distinction in gender disappears.

## Tables of Declension.

| | S-DECLENSION. | | N-DECLENSION. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | *Singular.* | | |
| Nom. | der Mann | der Vater | der Menſch | der Knabe |
| Gen. | des Mannes | des Vaters | des Menſchen | des Knaben |
| Dat. | dem Manne | dem Vater | dem Menſchen | dem Knaben |
| Acc. | den Mann | den Vater | den Menſchen | den Knaben |
| | | *Plural.* | | |
| Nom. | die Männer | die Väter | die Menſchen | die Knaben |
| Gen. | der Männer | der Väter | der Menſchen | der Knaben |
| Dat. | den Männern | den Vätern | den Menſchen | den Knaben |
| Acc. | die Männer | die Väter | die Menſchen | die Knaben. |

FEMININES.

| | *Singular.* | | *Plural.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | die Magd | die Frau | die Mägde | die Frauen |
| Gen. | der Magd | der Frau | der Mägde | der Frauen |
| Dat. | der Magd | der Frau | den Mägden | den Frauen |
| Acc. | die Magd | die Frau | die Mägde | die Frauen. |

*a.* ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES WITH A PRECEDING DEFINITE ARTICLE OR CORRESPONDING DETERMINATIVE WORD.

*Singular.*

| *Masculine.* | *Feminine.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| der or dieſer gute Mann | die or dieſe gute Frau | das or dieſes gute Kind |
| des " dieſes guten Mannes | der " dieſer guten Frau | des " dieſes guten Kindes |
| dem " dieſem guten Manne | der " dieſer guten Frau | dem " dieſem guten Kinde |
| den " dieſen guten Mann | die " dieſe gute Frau | das " dieſes gute Kind |

*Plural.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| die or dieſe guten Männer | die or dieſe guten Frauen | die or dieſe guten Kinder |
| der " dieſer guten Männer | der " dieſer guten Frauen | der " dieſer guten Kinder |
| den " dieſen guten Männern | den " dieſen guten Frauen | den " dieſen guten Kindern |
| die " dieſe guten Männer | die " dieſe guten Frauen | die " dieſe guten Kinder |

*b.* ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES WITH A PRECEDING INDEFINITE ARTICLE OR A CORRESPONDING DETERMINATIVE WORD.

*Singular.*

| *Masculine.* | *Feminine.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| ein ſchöner Stock | eine fette Gans | ein neues Haus |
| eines ſchönen Stockes | einer fetten Gans | eines neuen Hauſes |
| einem ſchönen Stocke | einer fetten Gans | einem neuen Hauſe |
| einen ſchönen Stock. | eine fette Gans | ein neues Haus. |

*c.* ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES WITHOUT A PRECEDING DETERMINATIVE WORD.

*Singular.*

| *Masculine.* | *Feminine.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| guter Wein | friſche Milch | ſtarkes Bier |
| gutes (en) Weines | friſcher Milch | ſtarkes (en) Bieres |
| gutem Weine | friſcher Milch | ſtarkem Biere |
| guten Wein | friſche Milch. | ſtarkes Bier. |

*Plural.*

gute Weine
guter Weine
guten Weinen
gute Weine.

ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

From the preceding Tables of Declension it will be seen that the adjective has three different forms of declension:

*a.* The adjective takes the inflections of the N-Declension when it is preceded by the definite article or a corresponding determinative word (p. 143), that is, a determinative having the full gender terminations **er, e, es.**

*b.* The adjective follows the N-Declension except in the nominative sing. which presents the gender terminations **er, e, es,** when preceded by the indefinite article or a corresponding determinative word (p. 143), that is, a determinative word without the gender terminations **er, es.**

*c.* The adjective takes the inflections of the S-Declension when it is either not preceded by any determinative word, or preceded simply by one lacking the power of inflection. Determinative words of this kind are: etwas, *some*, genug, *enough*, viel, *much*, mehr, *more*, wenig, *little*, and the cardinal numbers. This is further treated of in the Second Course.

*Take Notice!* In the genitive singular of adjectives of the S-Declension (*c*) the termination **en** is now generally adopted instead of **es**, *e. g.*: eine Flaſche gutes Weines, *a bottle of good wine*; ein Mann edlen Herzens, *a man of noble heart.*

18. Adjectives ending in **el** or **er**, when inflected, generally lose either the **e** before the **l** or **r**, or the **e** in the inflectional termination, *e. g.*: edel, ein **edler** Mann, *a noble man*; bitter, der Geſchmack **bittern** Bieres, *the taste of bitter beer.*

Adjectives ending in **en** frequently drop the **e** before the **n**, but they can never drop the **e** in the inflectional ending, *e. g.*: beſcheiden, *modest*, ein beſcheidner Knabe, *a modest boy.*

*Note.* More details on the inflection of adjectives will be given in the Second Course.

19. The adjective hoch, *high*, when declined, changes **ch** into **h**, as: ein hohes Haus, *a high house*; hohe Bäume, *high trees.* For the change of **ch** into **h** in the comparative, see next lesson.

*Translate:* Dear (lieb) child; dear brother; beloved (geliebt) mother; of new (friſch) bread; of the new bread; to new bread; to this new bread; new breads; my new breads; the young birds; young birds; of a full glass; of that full glass; of full glasses; of his full glasses; of strong (ſtark) beer; of this strong beer; to our gold watch (Uhr); to our gold watches; of our gold watches. It was a fresh (friſch) morning. Noble (edel) wine; of noble wine; the open (offen) field; of the clear (heiter) weather (Wetter); the even (eben) floor (Fußboden); to the even floors; of his perfect (vollkommen) health (Geſundheit); my perfect health.

Give the Genitive singular and Nominative plural of the following words:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| das Gebirge | das Thier | das Jahr | der Boden |
| der Gefährte | der Arm | der Schuft | die Fabel |
| der Tiſch | der Tag | die Flaſche | die Geſchichte |
| der Stuhl | der Ort | das Bekenntniß, *confession* | die Lehrerin |
| der Hammer | der Leib | das Holz | die Gräfin |
| der Flügel | der Löwe | der Wein | der Graf |
| die Angel | das Theater | das Faß | der Doctor |
| die Kammer | die Schule | die Sau | der Profeſſor |
| der Haſe | die Gabel | das Schwein | der Herr |
| die Maus | das Meſſer | der Pol | der Unterthan |
| das Bein | das Knäblein | der Fels | das Ohr |
| das Tuch | die Stadt | der Berg | das Schloß |
| der Ochs | das Dorf | das Häuschen | das Volk |
| die Kuh | das Land | der Rock | das Thier |
| der Stier | die Mutter | der Strumpf | der Bär |
| der Schuh | der Onkel | der Mann | der Narr |
| der Vetter | der Enkel | das Kleid | der Käſe |
| der Schmerz | der Gedanke | der Garten | der Kaffee |
| der Name | die Kraft | | der Vogel. |

**[40.]** THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Der Vater liebt **mich.** — *The father loves me.*
2. Die Eltern geben **mir** einen Ring. — *The parents give me a ring.*
3. Der Lehrer lobt **dich,** und er macht **dir** ein Geſchenk. — *The teacher praises thee and makes thee a present.*
4. Der gute Onkel grüßt **ihn, ſie** und ſendet **ihm, ihr** ein Buch. — *The good uncle greets him, her, and is sending him, her a book.*
5. Vater und Mutter lieben **uns** und geben **uns** einen Ring. — *Father and mother love us, and give us a ring.*
6. Der Lehrer lobt **euch,** und er macht **euch** ein Geſchenk. — *The teacher praises you, and he makes you a present.*
7. Der gute Onkel grüßt **ſie** und ſendet **ihnen** ein Buch. — *The good uncle greets them, and sends them a book.*
8. Die Eltern ſchicken **dem** Ludwig und **der** Clara **eine** Uhr u. **einen** Ring. — *The parents send Louis and Clara a watch and a ring.*
9. Sie ſchicken **ſie ihr** und **ihn ihm**; ich meine, ſie ſchicken **Clara die Uhr** und **Ludwig den Ring.** — *They send it to her, and it to him; I mean, they send Clara the watch and Louis the ring.*
10. Ich habe **es ihm, ihr, ihnen** geſagt. — *I have told it to him, her, them.*
11. Er hat **es uns, euch, Ihnen** geſchickt — *He has sent it to us, them, you.*

*Observations.*—1. The **Accusative** of the **Personal Pronouns** (p. 106, 3), is:

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Nominative.* | *Accusative.* | *Nominative.* | *Accusative.* |
| 1. Ich, *I* | mich, *me* | wir, *we* | uns, *us* |
| 2. du, *thou* | dich, *thee* | ihr, *you* | euch, *you* |
| 3. er, *he* / ſie, *she* / es, *it* | ihn, *him* / ſie, *her* / es, *it* | ſie, *they* | ſie, *them.* |

2. The **Dative** of the **Personal Pronouns** is:

| *Nominative.* | *Dative.* | *Nominative.* | *Dative.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ich, *I* | mir, *(to) me* | wir, *we* | uns *(to) us* |
| du, *thou* | dir, " *thee* | ihr, *you* | euch, " *you* |
| er, *he* | ihm, " *him* | | |
| ſie, *she* | ihr, " *her* | ſie, *they* | ihnen, " *them* |
| es, *it* | ihm, " *it* | | |

3. *Caution!* When two personal pronouns, the one accusative and the other dative, occur in a sentence, the accusative must always precede the dative, contrary to the general rule by which the dative precedes. M. S. 9, 10, 11.

4. *Caution!* As the personal pronoun in German must agree in gender with the person or thing it represents, the English pronoun "**it**" is accordingly differently rendered; in case **it** refers to a neuter noun, **es** is used, if, however, to a masculine or feminine noun, **er** or **ſie** must be used for the nominative and **ihn** or **ſie** for the accusative. M. S. 8, 9.

5. When the verbs are used in a compound tense, the participle or infinitive belonging to them is thrown to the end of the sentence, after the object or objects. M. S. 10, 11.

6. DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Singular.*

| | *1st Person.* | *2d Person.* | *3d Person.* Masc. | Fem. | Neuter. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | ich, *I* | du, *thou* | er, *he* | ſie, *she* | es, *it* |
| Gen. | meiner (mein), *of me* | deiner (dein), *of thee* | ſeiner (ſein), *of him* | ihrer, *of her* | |
| Dat. | mir, *to me* | dir, *to thee* | ihm, *to him* | ihr, *to her* | |
| Acc. | mich, *me* | dich, *thee* | ihn, *him* | ſie, *her* | es, *it.* |

*Plural.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | wir, *we* | ihr, *you* | ſie, *they* | |
| Gen. | unſer, *of us* | euer, *of you* | ihrer, *of them* | |
| Dat. | uns, *to us* | euch, *to you* | ihnen, *to them* | |
| Acc. | uns, *us* | euch, *you* | ſie, *them.* | |

7. The genitive of these pronouns is only used with certain adjectives and verbs which govern that case. In other instances **of**, before a personal pronoun, is rendered by **von**, as: Ich ſpreche von ihm, *I speak of him*; ich kenne zwei von ihnen, *I know two of them.*

*Note.* On the older form of the genitive sing. (given in parenthesis), now serving as the possessive pronoun, see page 147, Note. These forms, viz., mein, dein, ſein still occur in poetry, and in a few phrases, as: Vergiß mein nicht, *forget me not*; ich gedenke dein, *I think of thee*; Man ſpottet ſein, *one sneers at him.*

## 46.

der Ball[bäl] (–es, Bälle), *ball*
der Rock*[rök] (–es, Röcke), *coat*
der Vetter*[fĕt'-ter] (–s, –n), *cousin*
ſchenken*[shĕn'-ken], *to give, bestow upon*
der Schuh*[shū] (–es, –e), *shoe*
wo?*[vō], *where?*
der Schilling[shĭl'-lĭnk] (–s, –e), *shilling*
holen*[hō'-len], *to fetch, go or come for*
berichten*[be-rĭy'-ten], *to report, give information about*
reichen*[rī'-yen], *to reach, stretch, hand over*
die Flaſche*[flä'-she], *bottle*
der Thaler*[tah'-ler], *dollar*
loben*[lō'-ben], *to praise*
öffnen*[ŭf'-nen], *to open*
zurück*[tsŭ-rĭk'], *back*
der Wunſch*[vŭnsh], *wish*
haſſen*[häs'-sen], *to hate.*

1. Ich habe meinem Bruder einen Ball geſchickt. 2. Warum haben Sie ihn nicht mir geſchickt? 3. Er hat ſeinem Bruder einen Rock gekauft. 4. Wo hat er ihn gekauft? 5. Ihr Onkel hat meinem Vetter einen Hund geſchenkt. 6. Wer hat meinen Hut? 7. Ich habe ihn. 8. Wo iſt der Schuh? 9. Er iſt hier. 10. Ich ſehe ihn nicht. 11. Wo haben Sie dieſe ſchöne Uhr gekauft? 12. Ich habe ſie nicht gekauft; mein Vater hat ſie mir geſchenkt. 13. Was haben Sie Ihrem Vetter geſchenkt? 14. Ich habe ihm einen Schilling geſchenkt. 15. Hat der Vater ihr das Buch geholt? 16. Er hat es ihr nicht geholt. 17. Ich folgte ſeinen Worten nicht. 18. Ihr Vetter berichtet mir den Tod ſeines Sohnes. 19. Der Vater wird Ihnen das Buch ſchicken; ich ſagte ihm Ihren Wunſch. 20. Ich danke Ihnen. 21. Wir werden ihnen nicht folgen. 22. Das Buch gehört mir. 23. Gehörte es nicht Ihrer Schweſter? 24. Es hat ihr gehört; doch es gehört jetzt mir. 25. Ich wünſche Ihnen einen guten Morgen. 26. Er wünſchte mir einen guten Abend. 27. Sie hat uns eine gute Nacht gewünſcht. 28. Unſeres Freundes gute Frau reicht uns eine Flaſche guter Milch. 29. Wir machten ihr unſer Compliment. 30. Ich gebe dir einen Thaler; denn ich liebe dich. 31. Sie geben uns ſchöne Blumen; denn ſie lieben uns. 32. Der freundliche Fürſt ſchenkte ihm eine goldne Uhr und lobte ihn ſehr. 33. Iſt nicht die weite Welt Ihnen offen? 34. Er bringt ihr den Brief und öffnet ihn ihr. 35. Wir ſenden Ihnen die Ringe zurück und danken Ihnen.

36. Haben Sie es ihnen gesagt? 37. Wir werden sie ihnen geben. 38. Wir wünschten ihm und ihr einen guten Tag. 39. Wir machten ihm, ihr, ihnen unser Compliment. 40. Wir senden euch unsere besten Wünsche und grüßen euch herzlich. 41. Ich sende weder ihr noch ihm das Buch, sondern dir und deiner Schwester. 42. Senden Sie es nicht auch Ihnen? 43 Nein, ich hasse sie.

## 47.

der Geburtstag*[gᵉ-bürts'-täk] (–es, –e), *birth-day*
die Großmutter*[grōs'-mūt"-tᵉr], *grandmother*
gratulieren*[grä"-tū-lē'-rᵉn], *to congratulate*
das Geschenk*[gᵉ-shĕnk'] (–es, –e), schön, *fine* [*present*
Marie[mä-rē'], *Mary*
die Neuigkeit*[noi'-ıy-kıt"], *news*
der Kuchen*[kū'-yᵉn], *cake*
wohlthun*[vōl'-tūn], *to benefit, do* [*well by*
ehren[ā'-rᵉn], *to honor*
sagen*[zah'-gᵉn], *to tell, to say*
die Wahrheit*[vahr'-hıt], *truth*
kennen*[kĕn'-nᵉn], *to know*
erwarten*[ᵉr-vär'-tᵉn], *to wait, to await, expect*
fleißig[flı'-sıy] (adv.), *diligently*
das Federmesser*[fā'-dᵉr-mĕs"-sᵉr] *pen-knife*
die Grammatik*[grăm"-mä'-tık], *grammar*
verlegen*[fᵉr-lā'-gᵉn], *to mislay*
suchen*[zū'-yᵉn], *to search for*
wie viel*[vē fēl], *how much*
wie viele[fē'-lᵉ], *how many*
ganz[gänts], *whole.*

1. The birth-day of my grandmother is to-day. 2. I congratulated her (Dat.) and made her (Dat.) a fine present. 3. Birds give us feathers, and cows give us milk. 4. Thy father is dear to thee, and mine is dear to me. 5. Do you not give this book to Mary? 6. No, I do not give it to her; it belongs to him. 7. The news was very agreeable to him. 8. She loves her children, and she will send them cakes and fruits. 9. They will be very thankful to her. 10. Do not those flowers belong to them? 11. No, these belong to them, but those to 'you. 12. I love you (thou), my son. 13. You (thou) will become happy, if you (thou) follow me. 14. God is your creator. 15. He will love you, if you follow Him and obey Him. 16. (Translate The) men are God's children. 17. We love them and and serve them (Dat.), for we love Him and serve Him. 18. We shall do well to them and they will do well to us. 19. I thank 'you and honor 'you. 20. I have told (Dat.) him the whole truth. 21. Do 'you know her? 22. She knows neither 'you, nor him. 23. Does she know us? 24. She knows 'you and them. 25. We expect her to-morrow. 26. Do 'you not expect 'your scholars now? 27. No, I do not expect them now; they were

here yesterday. 28. Do you (thou) know this man? 29. I believe so; I know him and his father. 30. Does she know the way? 31. I believe so; I have shown it to her. 32. 'Your uncle and aunt have sent 'you this handsome present. 33. What will 'you do? 34. I shall write (to) them a beautiful letter and shall thank them heartily. 35. My father has bought (for) her a new hat and him a beautiful pen-knife, but the hat is too large, and he will buy another one. 36. Will 'you lend (to) me 'your grammar? 37. I have mislaid mine. 38. She has mislaid hers too. 39. I have been searching (for) 'you. 40. Have you (thou) sent her the letter? 41. No, I have not sent it to her. 42. The teacher has not warned us, but you (thou) and them. 43. How many books have 'you sent to my niece and my nephews? 44. I have sent one to her and two to them. 45. Where have 'you shown the ladies 'your gold watch? 46. I have shown it them here. 47. I shall tell 'you (Dat.) the truth. 48. Why have you (thou) not told it to them, to her, to him? 49. I shall lead 'you and show 'you the way.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Rock,** *coat, gown, petticoat*; A. S. *roc (?)*.

**Vetter,** *cousin.* Ahd. *fatarro*, son of the father's brother (also now used for the son of the mother's brother); A. S. *fæderra*=the father's brother, hence derived from **father.**

**ſchenken,** *to give, bestow upon*; the primitive sense of this verb was *to pour in, fill*; then to sell wine or beer (ausſchenken), then to *distribute, to give gratuitously.* Schenken is derived from the ahd. *scenco* (cup and cup-bearer), originally signifying *shin-bone*, which primitively served for the purpose of decanting liquors. From the same root proceeds der **Schenkel,** Engl. **shank,** *thigh.*

**wo?** (originally **wor**), **where?** abbreviated from ahd. *huar*, Goth. *hvar*, A. S. *hvar.*

**holen,** *to fetch, go or come for*; *draw, pull upon,* **haul (hail, hale).**

**berichten,** *to report, to inform*; primitively from **recht, right,** *to make* **right** (berichtigen, p. 140, beendigen), *to order, appoint,* then, *to report right, put in proper shape.*

**reichen, to reach,** *stretch, extend, hand over, give, present.*

**Flaſche,** *bottle,* **flask.** A. S. *flasc*; Fr. *flacon*; perhaps from Lat. *vasculum*, dim. of *vas*, a vessel.

**Thaler, dollar.** From **Thal,** *a valley*, because thalers were first coined in the valley of St. Joachim, in Bohemia (thus Webster and others); more probably from **Theil,** **deal** (Ex. 15, **Welttheil**), *a part, a quantity.*

**loben,** *to praise, to express estimation of, to commend,* akin to **love,** A. S. *lofian,* to praise, *lufian—luf,* love; Lat. *libeo, lubeo,* to please.

**öffnen,** *to unclose,* **to open;** derived from the adjective offen, Ex. 7. On the modification of the vowel, see Lex. to Ex. 41, wärmen.

**zurück,** *back,* **toward** *the back,* c. of **zu, to,** and **Rück** or **Rücken,** *back, the back,* **ridge.**

**Wunſch, wish,** from wünſchen, Ex. 40.

**haſſen, to hate,** Tab. V. 10; compare häßlich, in Ex. 12.

**Geburtstag, birth-day,** c. of Geburt, **birth,** from **gebären, bear,** *give birth to* (ge, Ex. 16, and bären, compare the suffix bar, Ex. 22, eßbar), and Tag, Ex. 34.

**Großmutter,** *grand***mother,** c. of groß, Ex. 15, and Mutter, Ex. 14.

**gratulieren,** *to con***gratulate.** Lat. *congratulor, congratulatus—con,* intensive, and *gratulor—gratus,* pleasing.

**Geſchenk,** *present, gift, donation,* c. of ge, and ſchenk, from ſchenken, Ex. 44.

**Neuigkeit, news,** c. of neu, Ex. 42, and the suffixes ig, Ex. 12, and keit, Ex. 24.

**Kuchen, cake.** Tab. V. 16; related with kochen, Ex. 38.

**wohlthun,** *to benefit, to* **do well** *by*; c. of wohl, Ex. 5, and thun, Ex. 4.

**Wahrheit,** *truth,* c. of wahr, ahd. *wari,* Lat. *verus,* Fr. *vrai,* from the olden *veray,* from which the English **very,** adj., *true, real,* so in the Bible; *actually, in a great degree*; thus **veracious, verify.** On the suffix heit, Ex. 24.

**kennen, to know.** A. S. *cnawan*; Old Ger. *cnahen*; Lat. *gnosco*; Engl. **ken**; O. Engl. **kenne.**

**erwarten,** *to wait, await, expect,* c. of the prefix er, Ex. 42, and warten, A. S. *weardian,* Engl. **ward,** to guard or take care of, and n. **ward,** see Webster.

**Federmeſſer,** *pen-knife,* c. of Feder, Ex. 11, and Meſſer, *knife,* Ex. 30.

**Grammatik, grammar,** lit. *the science of letters*; Lat. *grammatica*; Gr. *grammatike* (*techne,* art), *gramma,* a letter—*grapho,* to write.

**verlegen,** *to mis***lay,** *misplace,* c. of the prefix ver, Ex. 27, vergebens, and **legen, to lay**; Tab. V. 20; A. S. *lecgan*; Ice. *leggia*; Gr. *lego.*

**ſuchen,** *to search for*; see Ex. 18.

**wie viel?** plur. **wie viele?** wie, Ex. 6; viel, Ex. 19.

**ſagen,** *to tell, to* **say,** Ex. 17.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. What simple words terminating in obscure **e** (ᵉ), and what compound neuters in obscure **e** belong to the S-Declension?

2. Of two nouns governed by a verb, one signifying a person and the other a thing, which precedes?

3. Of two personal nouns governed by a verb, one in the accusative and the other in the dative, which precedes?

4. In what declension is the vowel never modified in the plural?

5. What adjectives remain unchanged and what are inflected?

6. What is the position of the inflected adjectives in their connection with a noun?

7. Where is the accusative placed if the predicate is a compound?

8. *Translate:* He learned ten German words. He learned the beautiful words of Schiller. We searched for (ſuchen, p. 117) the new words. They heard the wise words of their good teacher. These English words have three (drei) syllables (Sylbe or Silbe). They do not sing the words of the French text (der Text) distinctly (deutlich).

9. What suffix answers to English **le, el** and **il,** and what does this suffix denote?

### ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER

#### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Abend, 198
Abendmahlzeit, 205
Acker, 198 [198
Advocat, 204
Alter, 205
Amt, 209
Amtmann, 205
ander, 204
Antwort, 204
antworten, 204
Autor, 200

Ball, 219
bauen, 208
Bauer, 204
Bein, 199
berichten, 219
beſt, 204
beſuchen, 199
Biene, 198
blinken, 202
Blitz, 200
Blut, 199
Borſte, 207
brav, 204
Brief, 199
bringen, 199
Brudermörder, [198
Bürſtenmacher, 205

Compliment, [204

Degen, 208
Delphin, 204
dienen, 204
düngen, 199

ehren, 220
Ei, 204
Ende, 198
entfliegen, 207
entfließen, 207
entkräften, 207
entwaffnen, 207
erlauben, 208
erwarten, 220
erzählen, 204

Fahne, 204
Farbe, 205
Federmeſſer, 220
Fingerhut, 206
Flaſche, 219
fleißig, 220
Flügel, 199
franzöſiſch, 200
frieren, 202
Froſt, 200
fühlen, 198
führen, 209
Führer, 206
fürchten, 198
Fußſtapfen, 205

ganz, 220
gebären, 222
gehen, 205
Geburtstag, 220
gefallen, 204
gehorchen, 204
gehören, 204
Gemeine, 199
geſchäftig, 198
geſchehen, 206
Geſchenk, 220
Geſchichte, 204
glauben, 204
gleich, 204
gleichen, 204
Glück, 198
golden, 199
Grammatik, 220
gratulieren, 220
Großmutter, 220
Gruß, 204

Haarbürſte, 205
Hagel, 200
haſſen, 219
heilen, 198
helfen, 208
Helfer, 205
herzlich, 204
holen, 219
Hütte, 198

Jugend, 205

kennen, 220
Kleiderbürſte, [205
knacken, 205
Körper, 205
krönen, 198
Kuchen, 220

Lebenszeit, 199
Leck, 200
leihen, 205
Lied, 201
loben, 219

machen, 198
Mahl, 202
mahlen, 201
Marie, 220
Mehl, 198
Miniſter, 204
Morgenlied, 199
Müller, 198

nehmen, 205
neu, 205
Neuigkeit, 220
Noth, 199
Nuß, 204

öffnen, 219

Pfeffer, 198
Platz, 205
prüfen, 199
Puls, 198

räumen, 205
recht, 199
reichen, 219
Reiſende, 206
Rock, 219
Rücken, 222

ſagen, 220
Schein, 200
ſcheinen, 200
ſchenken, 219

Schenkel, 221
ſcheuen, 198
ſchicken, 206
Schilling, 219
Schmerz, 198
ſchön, 220
ſchreiten, 203
Schritt, 199
Schuh, 219
Schüler, 198
Seele, 205
ſehen, 200
ſilbern, 206
Sonnenſchein,
ſuchen, 220 [198
Stapfen, 208
ſtets, 198
ſteuern, 198

Thaler, 219
Thäter, 207
Tiſch, 200
Tod, 198
trauen, 204
Tugend, 205

Unterthan, 205

Vaterland, 198
verkaufen, 206
verkennen, 199
verlegen, 220
verwunden, 200
Vetter, 219
Vorvater, 200

Wagen, 204
Wahrheit, 220
wärmen, 199
warten, 222
Weinkeller, 200
Werk, 198
Werth, 204
wie viel, 220
Wille, 202
willig, 199
wirbeln, 199
wirken, 201
wo, 219
Wohlthäter, 204
wohlthun, 220
Wort, 198
Wörterbuch, 200
Wunde, 198
Wunſch, 219
wünſchen, 198

zählen, 206
zähmen, 200
zeigen, 206
zieren, 198
Zunge, 198
zurück, 219.

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

To ache, 198
acre, 198
to adorn, 198
advocate, 204
to be afraid, 198
age, old age, 205
always, 198
answer, 204
to answer, 204
author, 200
to await, 220

back, 219
bailiff, 205
ball, 219
bee, 198
to believe, 204
to belong to, 204
benefactor, 204
to benefit, 220
to bestow upon, [219
birth-day, 220
blood, 199
body, 205
bone, 199
bottle, 219
brave, 204
to bring, 199
brushmaker, [205
busy, 198
death, 198
to decorate, 198
diligent, 220
dollar, 219
dolphin, 204
to dung, 195

end, 198
ensign, 204
evening, 198
to examine, 199

fatherland, 198
to fear, 198
to feel, 198
to fetch, 219
field, 198
fine, 204
flour, 198
footstep, 205
forefather, 200
fratricide, 198
French, 200
frost, 200

gallant, 204
to give, 205
to go for, 219
golden, 199
grammar, 220
grandmother, [220
greeting, 204
guide, 206

hail, 200
hair-brush, 205
to hand over, [219
handsome, 204
happiness, 198
to hate, 219
to heal, 198
heartily, 204
helper, 205
to honor, 220
how much, 220
hut, 198

just, 199

to know, 220

leader, 206
leak, 200
leg, 199
to lend, 205
letter, 199
lifetime, 199
lightning, 200
like, 204
to be like, 204
luck, 198

to make, 198
to manure, 199
Mary, 220
meal, 198
evening meal, [199
mean, the, 199
miller, 198
minister, 204
to mislay, 220
to mistake, 199
morning song, [199
to narrate, 204
need, 199
new, 205
news, 220
nut, 204

to obey, 204
to open, 219
other, 204

pain, 198
peasant, 204
pen-knife, 220
pepper, 198
place, 205
to please, 204
to point, 206
to praise, 219
present, 220
to prove, 199
pulse, 198

to reach, 219
to report, 219
to resemble, 204
right, 199
salutation, 204
scholar, fem., [198
to search for, [220
to see, 200
to sell, 206
to send, 206
to serve, 204
shilling, 219
shoe, 219
to show, 206
to shun, 198
to be shy of, 198
silver, 206
soul, 205
to steer, 198
step, 199
steward, 205
story, 204
stride, 199
subject, 205
to suit, 204
sun-shine, 198

table, 200
to take, 205
to tame, 200
to tell, 204, 220
thimble, 206
tongue, 198
traveller, 206
to trust, 204
truth, 220
to try, 199

valued, 204
vane, 204
virtue, 205
to visit, 199
voluntary, 199

wagon, 204
to wait, 220
to warble, 199
to make warm, [199
where? 219
whole, 220
willing, 199
wine-cellar, 200
wing, 199
wish, 219
to wish, 198
word, 198
work, 198
to work, 201
worth, 204
wound, 198
to wound, 200

youth, 205.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 43.

1. Prüfte der Lehrer Ihre Schüler oder die unſrigen? 2. Er prüfte die Ihrigen. 3. Die Mutter warnte ihren Sohn. 4. Wir fürchten unſern Feind nicht. 5. Die Haſen haben lange Ohren. 6. Die Lerche, der Herold des Morgens, wirbelt ihr Morgenlied. 7. Ein tiefer Schnee wärmt die Erde. 8. Wir hatten Regen und Wind, Schnee und Eis, Hagel und Froſt, Donner und Blitz. 9. Das Schiff hatte einen Leck. 10. Unſere Vorväter waren tapfere Männer und liebten ihr Vaterland. 11. Sehen Sie ſein Meſſer, ihre Uhr und meinen Ring? 12. Ich ſehe den Ring, aber nicht das Meſſer und die Uhr. 13. Hat der Lehrer meinen oder deinen Sohn gewarnt? 14. Er hat eures Vetters Schweſter gewarnt; ſie war faul. 15. Haben Sie dieſen langen Brief gehört? 16. Nein, ich habe (es) nicht. 17. Trinkt er das Bier oder den Wein? 18. Er trinkt den Thee und den Kaffee. 19. Die Mutter lehrte ihre Kinder. 20. Fiſche haben kaltes Blut. 21. Eulen ſcheuen das Licht. 22. Eichen haben ſtarke Wurzeln. 23. Unſer Diener hat ſein rechtes Bein verwundet. 24. Ein Dieb ſtiehlt (ſtehlen changes e into ie in the 2d and 3d person singular) deine goldene (the contracted form goldne is more usual) Uhr. 25. Haben Sie unſere neue Schule beſucht? 26. Ich habe (es) nicht; ich habe euren ſchönen Weinkeller beſucht. 27. Wir werden dieſe wilden Thiere zähmen. 28. Haſt du jene franzöſiſchen Bücher gekauft? 29. Noch nicht; aber ich werde ein Buch eines guten franzöſiſchen Autors kaufen. 30. Sehen Sie den Blitz? 31. Hören Sie den Donner? 32. Hat der Tiſchler den Tiſch gemacht? 33. Er hat (es) nicht; er machte den Stuhl. 34. Wir werden unſeren Wein trinken; tranken ſie ihren?

## 45.

1. Wir glauben keinem Narren (Thoren) und keinem Jeſuiten. 2. Mein Onkel leiht dem Neffen dieſes Reiſenden ſein Meſſer. 3. Dieſes Haus gehört dem Onkel meines Nachbaren (Nachbars). 4. Jener Garten gehörte der Tante meiner Freunde. 5. Ich habe dem Vater eures Arztes einen Brief geſchickt. 6. Sie hat den Freundinnen ihrer Schweſter ſchöne Blumen geſchickt. 7. Haben Sie Ihrer Nichte Ihr Buch geſchickt? 8. Nein, ich habe es dem Freunde meines Onkels geſchickt. 9. Verſprechen eure Eltern dieſem Kinde einen Vogel? 10. Heinrich leiht dieſer armen Frau einen Stuhl. 11. Hat Luiſe jenem Manne unſer Haus und unſeren Garten nicht gezeigt? 12. Jenes Mädchen bringt der Freundin meines Bruders ihre Feder. 13. Gehört dieſes Pferd euren Onkeln oder euren Tanten? 14. Es gehört meinen Schweſtern. 15. Dieſer Hut gehörte dem Gärtner meiner Freundin. 16. Meine Schweſter hat der Freundin ihrer Nachbarin einen ſilbernen Fingerhut gekauft. 17. Schickte Ihr Onkel dem Lehrer Ihres Sohnes oder Ihrer Tochter eine Uhr? 18. Er ſchickte ſie meinem Lehrer. 19. Warum haben Sie nicht dem Nachbar Ihrer Mutter Ihr Pferd verkauft? 20. Ich hatte es meinem Arzte verkauft. 21. Ich kaufte

meiner Tochter ein ſchönes Buch. 22. Habt ihr dem Arzte das große Zimmer eures Vaters gezeigt? 23. Die Königin hat dem Kinde unſerer Nichte ein Buch geſchickt. 24. Glaubte des Knaben Vater jenem Manne? 25. Nein, er that (es) nicht; er traut niemals einem Jeſuiten. 26. Folgte der blinde Mann den Fußſtapfen ſeiner Leiter? 27. Ja, er folgt und gehorcht ſeinen Leitern.

## 47.

1. Der Geburtstag meiner Großmutter iſt heute. 2. Ich gratulierte ihr und machte ihr ein ſchönes Geſchenk. 3. Vögel geben uns Federn, und Kühe geben uns Milch. 4. Dein Vater iſt dir lieb (theuer), und der meinige (or meiner) iſt mir lieb. 5. Gebet ihr der Marie dieſes Buch nicht? 6. Nein, ich gebe es ihr nicht; es gehört ihm. 7. Die Neuigkeit war ihm ſehr angenehm. 8. Sie liebt ihre Kinder, und ſie wird ihnen Kuchen und Früchte (or Obſt) ſenden. 9. Sie werden ihr ſehr dankbar ſein. 10. Gehören jene Blumen ihnen nicht? 11. Nein, dieſe gehören ihnen, aber jene (or, jene aber) Ihnen. 12. Ich liebe dich, mein Sohn. 13. Du wirſt glücklich werden, wenn du mir folgſt. 14. Gott iſt euer Schöpfer. 15. Er wird euch lieben, wenn ihr ihm folget und ihm gehorchet. 16. Die Menſchen ſind Gottes Kinder. 17. Wir lieben ſie und dienen ihnen; denn wir lieben ihn und dienen ihm. 18. Wir werden ihnen wohlthun, und ſie werden uns wohlthun. 19. Ich danke Ihnen und ehre Sie. 20. Ich habe ihm die ganze Wahrheit geſagt. 21. Kennen Sie ſie (dieſelbe)? 22. Sie kennt weder Sie, noch ihn. 23. Kennt ſie uns? 24. Sie kennt Sie und ſie (dieſelben). 25. Wir erwarten ſie morgen. 26. Erwarten Sie nicht jetzt Ihre Schüler? 27. Nein, ich erwarte ſie nicht jetzt; ſie waren geſtern hier. 28. Kennſt du dieſen Mann? 29. Ich glaube es; ich kenne ihn und ſeinen Vater. 30. Kennt ſie den Weg? 31. Ich glaube es; ich habe (generally before a word beginning with a vowel only **hab'**) ihn ihr gezeigt. 32. Ihr Onkel und Ihre (English determinative words referring to two or more nouns of different gender must be repeated in German with the different gender terminations) Tante haben Ihnen dieſes ſchöne Geſchenk geſchickt. 33. Was werden Sie thun? 34. Ich werde ihnen einen ſchönen Brief ſchreiben und werde ihnen herzlich danken. 35. Mein Vater hat ihr einen neuen Hut und ihm ein ſchönes Federmeſſer gekauft; aber der Hut iſt zu groß, und er wird einen andern kaufen. 36. Wollen Sie mir Ihre Grammatik leihen? 37. Ich habe die meinige verlegt. 38. Sie hat die ihrige auch verlegt. 39. Ich habe Sie geſucht. 40. Haſt du ihr den Brief geſchickt? 41. Nein, ich habe ihn ihr nicht geſchickt. 42. Der Lehrer hat nicht uns, ſondern dich und ſie gewarnt. 43. Wie viele Bücher haben Sie meiner Nichte und meinen Neffen geſchickt? 44. Ich habe ihr eins und ihnen zwei geſchickt. 45. Wo haben Sie den Damen Ihre goldne Uhr gezeigt? 46. Ich habe ſie ihnen hier gezeigt. 47. Ich werde Ihnen die Wahrheit ſagen. 48. Warum haſt du ſie (dieſelbe) nicht ihnen, ihr, ihm geſagt? 49. Ich werde Sie führen und Ihnen den Weg zeigen.

## KEY TO THE EXERCISES ON PAGES 216 & 217.

Liebes Kind; lieber Bruder; geliebte Mutter; friſchen (friſches) Brodes; des friſchen Brodes, friſchem Brode, dieſem friſchen Brode; friſche Brode; meine friſchen Brode; die jungen Vögel; junge Vögel; eines vollen Glaſes; jenes vollen Glaſes; voller Gläſer; ſeiner vollen Gläſer; ſtarken (ſtarkes) Bieres; dieſes ſtarken Bieres; unſerer goldnen Uhr; unſern goldnen Uhren; unſerer goldnen Uhren. Es war ein friſcher Morgen. Edler Wein; edlen (edles) Weines; das offne Feld; des heitern Wetters; der ebne Fußboden; den ebnen Fußböden; ſeiner vollkommnen Geſundheit; meine vollkommne Geſundheit.

Des Gebirges, die Gebirge; des Gefährten, die Gefährten; des Tiſches, die Tiſche; des Stuhles, die Stühle; des Hammers, die Hämmer; des Flügels, die Flügel; der Angel, die Angeln; der Kammer, die Kammern; des Haſen, die Haſen; der Maus, die Mäuſe; des Beines, die Beine; des Tuches, die Tücher; des Ochſen, die Ochſen; der Kuh, die Kühe; des Stieres, die Stiere; des Schuhes, die Schuhe; des Vetters (prop. des Vettern), die Vettern; des Schmerzens (now more generally des Schmerzes), die Schmerzen; des Namens, die Namen; des Thieres, die Thiere; des Armes, die Arme; des Tages, die Tage; des Ortes, die Orte, and Örter; des Leibes, die Leiber; des Löwen, die Löwen; des Theaters, die Theater; der Schule, die Schulen; der Gabel, die Gabeln; des Meſſers, die Meſſer; des Knäbleins, die Knäblein; der Stadt, die Städte; des Dorfes, die Dörfer; des Landes, die Länder; der Mutter, die Mütter; des Onkels, die Onkel; des Enkels, die Enkel; des Gedankens, die Gedanken; der Kraft, die Kräfte; des Jahres, die Jahre; des Schuftes, die Schufte; der Flaſche, die Flaſchen; des Bekenntniſſes, die Bekenntniſſe; des Holzes, die Hölzer; des Weines, die Weine; des Faſſes, die Fäſſer; der Sau, die Säue; des Schweines, die Schweine; des Poles, die Pole; des Felſens, die Felſen; des Berges, die Berge; des Häuschens, die Häuschen; des Rockes, die Röcke; des Strumpfes, die Strümpfe; des Mannes, die Männer; des Kleides, die Kleider; des Gartens, die Gärten; des Bodens, die Böden; der Fabel, die Fabeln; der Geſchichte, die Geſchichten; der Lehrerin, die Lehrerinnen; der Gräfin, die Gräfinnen; des Grafen, die Grafen; des Doctors, die Doctoren; des Profeſſors, die Profeſſoren; des Herrn (Herren), die Herrn (Herren); des Unterthanen (also Unterthans) die Unterthanen; des Ohres, die Ohren; des Schloſſes, die Schlöſſer; des Volkes, die Völker; des Thieres, die Thiere; des Bären, die Bären; des Narren, die Narren; des Käſes, die Käſe; des Kaffees; des Vogels, die Vögel.

## ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Page 201, Ende. 2. Page 204, 2. 3. Page 204, 3. 4. In the N-Declension. 5. The predicative unchanged, the attributive inflected, p. 152, 2. 6. It precedes the noun, p. 152, 2. 7. Page 198, 7. 8. Er lernte zehn deutſche Wörter. Er lernte die ſchönen Worte Schillers. Wir ſuchten die neuen Wörter. Sie hörten die weiſen Worte ihres guten Lehrers. Dieſe engliſchen Wörter haben drei Silben. Sie ſingen die Worte des franzöſiſchen Textes nicht deutlich. 9. Page 203, Flügel.

## [41.] COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mein Keller iſt **tief**, tief-**er**, der tief-**ſte**. | *My cellar is* **deep**, *deep*-**er**, *the deep*-**est**. |
| 2. Mein Hut iſt **leicht**, leicht-**er**, der leicht-**eſte**. | *My hat is* **light**, *light*-**er**, *the light*-**est**. |
| 3. Der Ochs iſt **ſtark**, ſtärk-**er**, der ſtärk-**ſte**. | *The Ox is* **strong**, *strong*-**er**, *the strong*-**est**. |
| 4. Der Onkel iſt **mehr** reich als geehrt. | *The uncle is* **more** *rich* **than** *honored*. |
| 5. Dieſer Stoff iſt **dunk-el**, **dunkl-er**, der dunkel-**ſte**. | *This material is* **dark**, *dark*-**er**, *the dark*-**est**. |

| | |
|---|---|
| 6. Karl iſt dankbar, Paul iſt dankbar-er, | *Charles is thankful, Paul is more thankful,* |
| Ludwig iſt **der** dankbar-ſte, | *Louis is the most thankful,* |
| Luiſe iſt **die** dankbar-ſte, | *Louisa is the most thankful,* |
| Das Kind iſt **das** dankbar-ſte. | *The child is the most thankful.* |
| 7. Er iſt **ſo** ſtark **wie** du. | *He is as strong as you.* |
| 8. Er iſt ſtärk-**er** **als** du. | *He is stronger than you.* |
| 9. Sie iſt **ebenſo** gut **wie** ſchön. | *She is as good as (she is) beautiful.* |

*Observations.*—1. **Comparison** is that change of form which the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity or quality.

2. There are three degrees of *comparison:* the **Positive**, leicht, *light*; the **Comparative**, leichter, *light***er**; the **Superlative**, leichteſt, *light***eſt.**

3. The *Comparative* is formed by adding, as in English, **er** to the positive; the *Superlative* by adding, as in English, **eſt** to the positive M. S. 1, 2, 5.

This rule is not limited, as in English, to adjectives of *one* syllable and *dissyllabic* adjectives with the accent on the last syllable, but applies to all, both monosyllabic and polysyllabic adjectives. M. S. 5, 6.

4. In the superlative the **e** of **eſt** is dropped, when there is no difficulty of pronunciation, as M. S. 1, 3; but when the adjective ends in **d, t, ſt, ß, ſch, ſk,** and **z,** the **e** of **eſt** is not to be omitted, as M. S. 2.

5. The vowels **a, o, u** in *monosyllabic* adjectives are generally modified in the comparative and superlative, as M. S. 3. (Similar in part to the English **old, elder, eldest.**) Adjectives of more than one syllable do not modify the vowel.

*Take Notice!* There is also a considerable number of *monosyllabic* adjectives which do *not* modify the vowel in the comparative and superlative. We shall add to every adjective in the Vocabulary accompanying the exercises the sign (not "), which means *not modified*, for those not to be modified.

6. Adjectives in **el, en, er** generally drop the **e** of these terminations in the Comparative, as: **dunkel**, comp. **dunkler**; **ſelten**, *rare*, **ſeltner**; **munter**, *cheerful*, comp. **muntrer**; but in the Superlative they always drop the **e** of **eſt**: der dunkel-**ſt**-e, der ſelten-**ſt**-e, der munter-**ſt**-e. M. S. 5.

7. The Superlative is always preceded by the definite article or a determinative word with the endings of the definite or indefinite article: **der tiefſte**, *the deepest*; dieſer tiefſte, *this deepest*; but ein tiefſter, *a deepest*; mein tiefſter, *my deepest*. The adjectives taking in the comparative and superlative the same terminations as in the positive:

**Der** große Mann, but, ein großer Mann,
**der** größere Mann, but, ein größerer Mann,
**der** größte Mann, but, ein größter Mann. (Comp. §32, 3, 4.)

8. When the superlative is used as a **predicate**, it has either the regular form, or is preceded by **am** (the preposition an contracted with the dative sing. masc. of definite article), and takes the dative termination **en**, as: dieſes Haus iſt das ſchönſte, or, **am** ſchönſten, *this house is the most beautiful.*

9. **Mehr, more**, is used, just as in English, to compare two or more qualities of the same person or thing: Er iſt **mehr** todt als lebendig[le-bĕn'-dĭy].* *he is* **more** *dead than living*; er iſt **mehr** glücklich als geſchickt, *he is* **more** *fortunate than skillful.* M. S. 4.

10. The particle **than** after a comparative is expressed by **als=as** (the **l** is dropped, Tab. V. 27). M. S. 4.

11. *As—as* is rendered by **ebenſo—wie**, or **ſo—wie.**

*Note.* Formerly **denn**=English **than**, was used after a comparative, as in Luther's translation of the Bible: Ihr Einkommen iſt beſſer **denn** Gold, *the gain thereof is better than gold.*

**Wie** (A. S. *hvu, hu,* Engl. *how*) is never used after the comparative; it expresses *similarity*, and represents the English **as**: Er iſt muthig **wie** ein Löwe, *he is as courageous* (Muth=*mood, spirit, courage*) **as** *a lion*, but, er iſt muthiger **als** ein Löwe, *he is more courageous* **than** *a lion.* **Wie=as, als=than**; see Lexicology, **als.**

12. The following few adjectives are irregular:

| *Positive.* | *Comparative.* | *Superlative.* |
|---|---|---|
| groß[grōs], *great* | größer | größt |
| gut[gût], *good* | beſſer | beſt |
| hoch[hōy], *high* | höher | höchſt |
| nah[nah], *near* | näher | nächſt |
| viel[fēl], *much* | mehr | meiſt. |

48.

| | |
|---|---|
| als*[āls], *as, than* | faul[foul], *rotten, foul* |
| das Gebäude[gᵉ-boi'-dᵉ], *building* | der Kopf*[köpf], *head* |
| oft[öft], *often* | geſund*[gᵉ-zünt'], *healthy, sound* |
| ebenſo*, *just as* | der Kaiſer*[kī'-zᵉr], *emperor* |
| beſcheiden*[bᵉ-shī'-dᵉn], *modest,* | die Küche*[kī'-yᵉ], *kitchen* |
| von[fŏn], *of, from* [*discreet* | der Hunger*[hŭng'-ᵉr], *hunger* |
| lieblich*[lēp'-lĭy], *lovely, charming* | der Koch*[kŏch], *cook* |

*lebendig, exceptionally, has the accent not on the root „leb", but on en.

der Geruch*[g$^{e}$-rü$^{ch'}$], *odor, smell,* [*fragrance*
zahm*[tsahm], *tame*
raſch*[räsh], *rapid, hasty, rash*
Eſel*[a'-z$^{el}$], *ass*
der Berg*[bĕr$^{k}$], *mountain*
die Goldgrube*[gölt'-grü"-b$^{e}$], *gold-mine*
das Hemd*[hĕm$^{t}$], *shirt*
geſcheid or geſcheit*, *discreet, prudent, clever*
das Geld*[gĕl$^{t}$], *money.*

1. Herr Müller iſt reicher als Herr Schulze. 2. Bertha iſt ſchöner als Marie. 3. Dieſes Buch iſt dicker als jenes. 4. Dein Hund iſt zahmer als deine Katze. 5. Das Pferd iſt raſcher als der Eſel. 6. Dieſe Gläſer ſind voller als jene. 7. Dieſer Berg iſt höher als jener Thurm. 8. Weisheit iſt beſſer als Schönheit. 9. Jener Weg iſt der nächſte. 10. Der Mann war mehr todt als lebendig. 11. Das Wetter war mehr ſtürmiſch als kalt. 12. Die meiſten Äpfel hier ſind faul. 13. Die Erde iſt kleiner als die Sonne und größer als der Mond. 14. Dein Bruder iſt älter als ich, aber ich bin ſtärker als er. 15. Dieſes Gebäude iſt größer als unſere Kirche. 16. Sind Sie jünger als ich? 17. Nein, ich bin älter. 18. Iſt das Waſſer immer kälter als die Luft? 19. Nicht immer; oft iſt es wärmer und oft ebenſo kalt wie die Luft. 20. Dieſer Weg iſt kürzer als jener. 21. Iſt dieſer Mann nicht reicher und glücklicher als wir. 22. Mein Garten iſt groß, ſeiner (or der ſeine, der ſeinige) iſt größer, aber Ihrer (or der Ihre, der Ihrige) iſt der größte (or am größten). 23. Unſer Vater iſt der glücklichſte Mann. 24. Dieſer Wein iſt theuerer (or theurer) als jener. 25. Eiſen iſt hart, Stahl iſt härter, und Platina iſt das härteſte Metall. 26. Dieſe Milch iſt ſauer, jener Apfel iſt ſaurer, aber Ihr Wein iſt am ſauerſten. 27. Dieſer alte Mann iſt ſo ſchwach wie ein Kind. 28. Unſer Land iſt ebenſo ſchön wie dieſes. 29. Ich bin ebenſo ſtark wie du. 30. Er iſt ſtolzer als ein König. 31. Wir waren mehr traurig als froh. 32. Dieſer junge Mann iſt mehr furchtſam als beſcheiden. 33. Der Abend meines Lebens wird ſo ſchön wie Tag und Morgen ſein (wird ſein). 34. Die Roſe iſt ebenſo ſchön von Farbe wie lieblich von Geruch. 35. Der Kopf iſt ſtärker als die Hände (Prov.). 36. Ein geſunder Bauer iſt glücklicher als ein kranker Kaiſer (Prov.). 37. Die lateiniſche Küche iſt die koſtbarſte (*i. e.* that of the apothecary, Prov.). 38. Treue Freunde ſind beſſer als Silber und Gold (Prov.). 39. Hunger iſt der beſte Koch (Prov.). 40. Alter Freund und alter Wein werden ſtets das Beſte ſein (Prov.). 41. Fleiß iſt die reichſte Goldgrube (Prov.). 42. Das Hemde liegt mir näher als der Rock (Prov.). 43. Beſſer iſt beſſer (Prov.). 44. Sein kleiner Finger iſt geſcheiter als du mit Haut und Haar (Prov.). 45. Geld iſt der größte Held (Prov.).

## 49.

der Diamant[dī"-ă-mănt'] (–en, –en), *diamond*
ſchwer*[shvār], *heavy, difficult*
der Rubin[rū-bēn'] (–es, –e), *ruby*
griechiſch*[grē'-ysh], *Greek*
link*[lĭnk], *left*
der Stein[stīn] (–es, –e), *stone*
die Eltern*[ĕl'-tᵉrn], plur. *parents*
arm*[ärm], *poor*
weit reicher, *much richer*
breit*[brīt], *broad*
aufrichtig*[ouf'-rĭy"-tĭy], *upright, sincere*
der Strom[strōm] (–es, Ströme), *stream*
die Elbe[ĕl'-bᵉ], *Elbe*
die Kette*[kĕt'-tᵉ] (—, –n), *chain*
der Frühling*[frēē'-lĭnᵏ] (–es, –e), *spring*
der Herbſt*[hĕrpst] (–es, –e), *autumn*
der Hügel*[hēē'-gᵉl] (–s, —), *hill*
hübſch, *pretty*, Ex. 39.

1. The Danube is broader than the Elbe. 2. Charles is lazier than William. 3. Those watches are dearer than these chains. 4. The winter is colder than the autumn. 5. 'Your brother is weaker than their sister. 6. Silver is harder than gold. 7. Nothing is clearer than this fresh water. 8. Mountains are higher than hills. 9. The moon is nearer than the sun. 10. He is the nearest of my neighbors. 11. His sister is more weak than ill. 12. Our nieces are more amiable than pretty. 13. Platina is heavier than gold. 14. The diamond is harder than the ruby. 15. The sun is larger than the earth, and the earth is larger than the moon. 16. The moon is smaller than the earth, and the earth is smaller than the sun. 17. The Greek language is richer than the Latin. 18. My paper is whiter than 'yours, but his is the whitest. 19. My right arm is stronger than the left. 20. 'Your head is larger than mine. 21. This tree is older than that one. 22. My hat is lighter than thine. 23. Platina is the heaviest metal. 24. The diamond is the hardest stone. 25. My beer is clearer than his. 26. This foal is tamer than that one. 27. The children were more joyful than their poor parents. 28. The foxes are the slyest animals. 29. The black foxes are rarer than the white ones. 30. Nothing is better than a good name. 31. He is much richer than 'you. 32. She is not so blind as you think. 33. He is just such a man as his father. 34. He is less sincere than his brother. 35. He is more false than brave. 36. This water is deep, that stream is deeper, but the sea is the deepest. 37. The summer is warmer than the spring.

**Als, as,** *than, like*; ahd. *also*; A. S. *ealsva*; O. Engl. **als, also,** c. of **al**=**all, all,** and **ſo**=*all so, quite so, entirely alike*; al adds intensity to ſo. **Als** is, therefore, conformably to its intensive meaning used in general after a comparative=*than*, whilst after a positive it is better to use **wie,** as: Er iſt ſo alt (positive) **wie** ich, aber er iſt klüger (comparative) **als** ich, *he is as old* **as** *I, but he is more prudent* **than** *I.*

*Note.* **Als,** after a positive is also frequently used in conversational language and by the best authors, especially when the adjective is preceded by **ſo, ebenſo,** *so, thus, precisely so.* In general **als** in accordance with its primitive meaning indicates a resemblance more complete, *e. g.:* Karl iſt **ebenſo** fleißig als (or wie) Emil. Er iſt **ebenſo** reich als Sie. Compare: Er focht **als** ein Held, *he fought as a hero* (he was a hero), and er focht **wie** ein Held, *he fought like a hero* (as heroes usually do).

**Gebäude,** *building, edifice,* c. of bau, from bauen, *to build,* Goth. *bauan,* in the original meaning of the word=wohnen, *to dwell,* bewohnen, *to inhabit* (compare Ex. 24, Nachbar; compare **booth, bower**), of the prefix ge and the affix **de,** which termination forms a number of feminine substantives, such as Erde, *earth,* Sünde, *sin,* Stunde, *hour,* etc.

**ebenſo,** *just as, precisely* **ſo,** from eben, **even,** (Tab. V. 6,) *equal,* and **ſo, ſo.**

**beſcheiden,** *modest, discreet*; see Beſcheidenheit, p. 182.

**lieblich, lovely,** *gracious, charming,* from Liebe, *love* (lieben, p. 126), and lich, Ex. 16.

**Geruch,** *scent, smell, odor,* c. of ge, and **ruch,** from riechen, *to smell,* **reek,** to emit smoke or vapor; akin to Rauch, Dutch *rook,* smoke.

**zahm, tame**; see zähmen, p. 202.

**raſch,** *rapid, hasty, speedy,* **rash.** Dutch *rashen,* to hasten; A. S. *hrysan,* to rush.

**Eſel, ass.** A. S. *assa*; Lat. *asinus,* an ass, *asellus,* a little ass.

**Berg,** *mountain,* **berg** *in ice***berg,** from bergen, *to hide,* akin to **bury** A. S. *birgan,* to bury, **barrow.**

**ſchwer,** *heavy,* properly *painful, hard, difficult.* Ahd. *suari*; mhd. *swære, swer*; A. S. *svar, sver*; Lat. *severus,* **sore**; from ſchwären, *to ulcerate, give or feel pain.* Compare p. 102, Schwert.

**griechiſch, Greek**; **lateiniſch, Latin.** On **iſch** see Ex. 8, ſtürmiſch

**link,** *left.* Ahd. *lenka,* the left (hand); mhd. *link (?).*

**Kopf,** *head, uppermost part,* **cob**; originally=**cup,** A. S. *cuppa,* Latin *cupa, cuppa,* a tub (*capere,* to take, contain); thus **cup***ola,* a **cup**-shaped vault on the *summit* of a tower; probably akin to Sans. *kapala,* Lat. *caput,* Gr. *kephale.* Compare the Fr. *tete,* head, from Lat. *testa,* pot, jar. See Diez Vergl. Wörterbuch der romanischen Sprachen, pp. 110 and 345.

**arm**, *poor*; according to Grimm connected with **Arm**, **arm**=the working limb; hence **arm**, ahd. *aram*, A. S, *earm*=the *toilsome*, wretched bondman, slave. On the root *ar* compare p. 155, Erde; *arable*, *earn* in Webster.

**Eltern**, *parents* (Ältern), from **alt**, comparative älter, Ex. 6.

**aufrichtig**, **upright**, *sincere*, *genuine*, *true*, from **auf**, **up**, Tab. V. 5, and richtig, c. of richt=recht, *right*, Ex. 41 and ig, Ex. 12.

**breit**, **broad**. A. S. *brad*; Goth. *braids*. Tab. V. 13.

**Kette**, **chain**, Lat. *catena*.

**Frühling**, *spring*, from früh, *early* (probably related with **vor**, *before*, **für**, **for**, Lat. and Greek *pro*, Sans. *pra*, before, in place or time)*, and the suffix **ling**, which denotes *derivation*, *relationship*, and forms a number of masculine substantives: Höfling (Hof, see hübsch, Ex. 39), *courtier*; Weltling (Welt, Ex. 35), *worldling*; Wildling (wild, Ex. 5), *wild fruit tree*.

**Herbst**, *autumn*, **harvest-season**, connected with Latin *carpo*, to gather fruit; Gr. *karpos*, fruit. Tab. V. 6.

**Hügel**, **hill**, Old Engl. **hul**, allied to Lat. *collis*, a hill.

**gesund**, *healthy*, **sound**; ge-sund, A. S. *sund*; allied to Latin *sanus*, *sound*.

**Kaiser**, *emperor*; see p. 171, Kaiserthum.

**Küche**, **kitchen**. Lat. *coquina*—*coquor*, to cook. Tab. V. 17.

**Hunger**, **hunger**, *appetite*, from hungern, Ex. 1.

**Koch**, **cook**, from kochen, Ex. 38.

**Goldgrube**, **gold-mine**, c. of Gold and Grube, *pit*, that which is **graven**, **groove**; A. S. *grof*; from graben, A. S. *grafan*, to dig; from root of **Grab**, **grave**. Tab. V. 6.

**Hemd**, *shirt*. Ahd. *hemidi*, probably from Goth. *hamon*, *himan*, to cover, ahd. *hamo*, cover, skin; compare Himmel, Ex. 34. According to others, it is allied to **chemise**, Lat. *camisia*.

**gescheid** or **gescheit**, *discreet*, *prudent*, *clever*, from scheiden, *to divide*, *to discern*, *to perceive separately*, or *in all its parts*, *to distinguish clearly by the eye or understanding*; see scheiden, Ex. 38.

**Geld**, *money*, mhd., (even as late as the 17th Century,) **Gelt**, from gelten, *to be worth*, *bear a price*; akin to **yield**, lit. *to pay*, *give up*; A. S. and Goth. *gildan*, to pay; Ice. *ejalda*, to pay; compare **guilt**, lit. the fine paid for an offence; Germ. **gültig** (of coin), *passable*.

---

*Do not slight the clauses enclosed in parentheses, as the parenthesis is used to indicate the connection, and is not intended at all to subordinate the included portion.

## [42.] THE PREDICATE ENLARGED BY CIRCUMSTANCES.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ich ſtehe **hier.** | *I stand* **here.** |
| 2. Wir werden **bald** ſingen. | *We shall sing* **soon.** |
| 3. Unſer Sohn kommt **ſpäter.** | *Our son will come* **later.** |
| 4. Deine Brüder kommen **am ſpäteſten.** | *Your brothers will come* **the latest.** |
| 5. Wir werden es **aufs beſte** beſorgen. | *We shall manage it* **the best.** |
| 6. Die Wölfe heulten **furchtbar.** | *The wolves howled* **fearfully.** |
| 7. Die Mädchen tanzen **ſchöner** und Anna **am ſchönſten.** | *The girls dance* **prettier** *and Anna* **the prettiest.** |
| 8. Er kommt oft **des Abends.** | *He often comes* **in the evening.** |
| 9. Wir tanzten **Abends** und **Morgens.** | *We danced* **in the evening** *and* **in the morning.** |
| 10. Ich werde **dieſen Abend** kommen. | *I shall come* **this evening.** |
| 11. Es dauerte **einen Tag.** | *It lasted* **a day.** |
| 12. Karl kommt **her,** und Anna geht **hin.** | *Charles comes* **hither** (*approaches*) *and Anna goes* **hence** (*away*). |
| 13. Sie geht **den Berg hinauf,** und er kommt **den Berg herab.** | *She goes* **up the mountain,** *and he comes* **down the mountain.** |
| 14. Wir werden **morgen** den Mann ſehen. | *We shall see the man* **to-morrow.** |
| 15. Dieſes Band iſt zwei Ellen lang und koſtet einen halben Thaler. | *This ribbon is two yards long and costs half a dollar.* |

*Observations.*—1. The sentence is enlarged by adding **circumstances** to the action or quality of a thing:

*a.* Of **Place,** answering to the questions: *Where? Whither? Whence?*

*b.* Of **Time,** answering to the questions: *When? How long?*

*c.* Of **Manner** and **Quality,** answering to the question: *How?*

*d.* Of **Cause,** answering the question: *Why?*

The *Circumstances* of *Place, Time, Manner, Cause,* are expressed by a particular kind of words, called **Adverbs,** (*ad verbum,* belonging to the verb). Adverbs are words which qualify a verb, an adjective or another adverb, and express **where, when, how** and **why** the action is, was or will be done. M. S. 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9.

2. Most adjectives may be employed as *adverbs of manner* without any change of form: ſchön=*beautiful* and *beautifully*; ſtark=*strong* and

*strongly*; furchtbar=*fearful* and *fearfully*. *The bird is beautiful, sings beautifully*, der Vogel iſt, ſingt ſchön; *The boy is bad, writes badly*, der Knabe iſt, ſchreibt ſchlecht.

Thus the same word, which, if it qualified a *noun*, would be called an adjective, being set to qualify a *verb* or an *adjective*, is called an **adverb.**

3. *Adverbs* are indeclinable, but many can be compared. The *Comparative* is formed in the same way as the comparative of the adjectives (p. 228). M. S. 3, 4, 7.

The *superlative* is expressed in different ways:

*a.* The **superlative absolute** occurs 1st, in **ſt**, as dankbarſt, *most gratefully*; gütigſt, freundlichſt, *most kindly*; gehorſamſt, *most obediently*; 2d, **ſtens**, as beſtens, *in the best manner*; eheſtens, *as early as possible*; meiſtens, *generally, mostly*; 3d, in **auf** placed before the neuter form of the superlative of the adjective, and for the most part contracted with the article, as aufs ſchönſte, aufs beſte (for auf das ſchönſte, auf das beſte), *in the most beautiful way, in the best manner.*

*b.* The **relative superlative** is formed like the predicative superlative of the adjectives (by preceding **am** and the addition of **en** to the superlative, (p. 229). M. S. 4, 7.

4. Some adverbs are irregularly compared:

| *Positive.* | *Comparative.* | *Superlative.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bald | früher, eher | am früheſten, am eheſten, baldigſt | *soon, sooner, soonest* |
| gern | lieber | am liebſten | *willingly, more willingly, most willingly* |
| übel | ärger | am ärgſten | *evil, worse, the worst* |
| viel | mehr | meiſtens, am meiſten | *much, more, the most* |
| wenig | weniger, minder | am wenigſten, am mindeſten | *little, less, the least* |
| wohl | beſſer | beſtens, am beſten, aufs beſte | *well, better, the best, in the best manner.* |

5. Adverbs of time are not placed at the end of the phrase as in English, but either immediately after the verb, or in a compound tense after the auxiliary verb. M. S. 10, 14.

6. When the object is a pronoun, it precedes the adverb: Ich ſchreibe heute den Brief, but, ich ſchreibe ihn heute.

7. Circumstantial relations are also expressed by cases. The **Accusative** expresses:

*a.* The *direction* given to the action, mostly in connection with such adverbs as entlang[ĕnt-lănᵏ'], *along*; hinauf[hĭn-ouf'], *up*; herab[hᵉr-äᵇ'], *down*. M. S. 13.

*b.* The *duration* of the action, or time **how long.** M. S. 11.

*c.* The *particularly specified* time when something is done or takes place. M. S. 10.

*d.* Measure, weight, value, price or age. M. S. 15.

8. The **Genitive** expresses time in a *general way*, or the time when an action is regularly repeated. M. S. 8, 9.

## 50.

die Tulpe*[tül'-pᵉ], *tulip*
riechen*[rē'-yᵉn], *to smell*
geläufig*[gᵉ-loi'-lĭy], *fluently, current*
leſen*[lā'-zᵉn], *to read*
ſteigen*[stī'-gᵉn], *to ascend, get up*
ſtehen[stā'-ʰᵉn], *to stand*
Mittag*[mĭt'-täᵏ], *midday, noon*
ſteil*[stīl], *steep*
der Kellner*[kĕl'-nᵉr], *waiter*
noch*[nöᶜʰ], *still, yet*
je*[yā], *ever, always*
der Kanarienvogel*[kă-nah'-rĭ-ᵉn-fōᵛ-gᵉl], *canary-bird*
die Unwiſſenheit*[ün'-vĭs-ᵉn-hĭtᵉ], *ignorance*
fangen*[făng'-ᵉn], *to catch, seize*
hindern[hĭn'-dᵉrn], *to hinder*
das Gute*[gū'-tᵉ], (moral) *good*
das Vergnügen*[fᵉr-gnēē'-gᵉn], *pleasure*
wie, *how, as, like*
das Pfund*[pfünt], *pound*
doch[döᶜʰ], *though, yet, however*
träg*[träᶠᵏ], *inert, indolent, lazy*
der Sonntag*[zōn'-täᵏ], *Sunday*
die Belagerung*[bᵉ-lah'-gᵉ-rünᵏ'], *siege*
ſcheinen*, *to shine*
Troja[trō'-yah], *Troy*
erſt*[ārst], *first, at first*
rechts[rĕvts], *at the right hand*
links (p. 231), *at the left hand*
das Jahr[yahr] (-ᵉs, -ᵉ), *year*
finden*[fĭn'-dᵉn], *to find*
ſchreiben[shrī'-bᵉn], *to write*
nach und nach[nahy], *by little and little, by degrees*
ehrlich*[ār'-lĭy], *honest, plain-dealing,*
obenan[ōᵛ-bᵉn-ăn'], *at the head (top), (in the) uppermost (place)*
Mai[mī], *May*
Monat*[mō'-naht], *Month*
dulden*[dül'-dᵉn], *to suffer*
das Unglück*[ün'-glĭk], *misfortune*
ſchreiten*[shrī'-tᵉn], *to stride, step, stalk*
ſchnell*[shnĕl], *quick, swift, speedy*
flüchtig*[flĭy'-tĭy], *flying, fugitive, fleeting*
fliehen*[flē'-ʰᵉn], *to flee, hasten away*

die Welle*[vĕl'-lᵉ], *wave, billow.*

1. Meine Schweſter lernt ſehr leicht, aber Heinrich lernt noch leichter. 2. Die Tulpe riecht ſehr ſchlecht. 3. Marie tanzt leichter als Luiſe. 4. Karl ſchreibt ſchöner als du; doch meine Brüder ſchreiben am ſchönſten und leſen am geläufigſten. 5. Die Sonne ſteigt höher; ſie ſteht um (at) Mittag am höchſten. 6. Mein Bruder ſchwimmt gut; dein Vetter ſchwimmt beſſer als mein Bruder; Ludwig ſchwimmt am beſten. 7. Karoline iſt minder ſchön als liebenswürdig. 8. Jene Berge ſind weniger hoch als ſteil. 9. Meine Nichte war eher da als ich. 10. Der Kellner bringt uns noch einen Stuhl. 11. Wir haben noch zwei Briefe zu ſchreiben (say, wir haben zu ſchreiben ꝛc.). 12. Sind Sie je in Deutſchland geweſen? 13. Der Canarienvogel ſingt viel ſchöner als die Lerche. 14. Unwiſſenheit hindert oft das Gute. 15. Heinrich wird bald kommen. 16. Wir haben nicht das Vergnügen ihn zu kennen; wir haben das Vergnügen ihn nicht zu kennen. 17. Ich glaube nicht, daß Alle denken wie du. 18. Herr Müller wohnt hier nicht. 19. Ich habe die Worte des Lehrers gut gehört. 20. Wann ſind Sie dort geweſen? 21. Warum hat Ihre Schweſter geſtern meine Mutter nicht beſucht? 22. Sie wird ſie morgen beſuchen. 23. Mein Onkel wird heute und meine Tante wird morgen kommen. 24. Die Haſen laufen raſch; viele Hunde laufen viel raſcher und fangen ſie leicht. 25. Die Federn ſind ſehr leicht; ein Pfund Eiſen iſt doch nicht ſchwerer als ein Pfund Federn. 26. Ich trinke am liebſten rothen Wein. 27. Ich ſehe ihn Sonntags. 28. Die Sonne ſcheint nicht des Nachts. 29. Die Belagerung Troja's dauerte zehn Jahre. 30. Manche Thiere leben nur einen Tag. 31. Der Freund beſuchte mich den folgenden Tag. 32. Ich werde erſt rechts und dann links gehen und werde leicht den rechten Weg finden. 33. Man lernt Morgens (or des Morgens) beſſer als Abends (or des Abends). 34. Ich habe ſchon einen ganzen Tag hier gewartet. 35. Morgen, morgen, nur nicht heute! ſprechen immer träge Leute (Prov.). 36. Beſſer ſpät als nie (Prov.). 37. Der Vogel baut ſein Neſt nur immer nach und nach (French Prov.). 38. Ehrlich währt am längſten (Prov.). 39. Die Federn ſchwimmen obenan (Prov.). 40. Kein Mai währt ſieben Monate (Prov.). 41. Große Seelen dulden ſtill (Schiller). 42. Das Unglück ſchreitet ſchnell (Schiller). 42. Flüchtiger als Wind und Welle flieht die Zeit (Herder).

## 51.

Italieniſch[I-tăl-yă'-nish*], *Italian*
auch, *too, also*
Merkur[mĕr-kûr'] (-s), *Mercury*
ſpielen*[spē'-l$^{e}$n], *to play*
noch drei Schilling, *three shillings* **more**
je*[yā], *ever*
erreichen*[$^{e}$r-rī'-y$^{e}$n], *to reach*

der Nordpol[nōrt'-pōl] (–es, –e), *Northpole*
ernſtlich*[ĕrnst'-lĭy], *earnestly*
beißen*[bī'-sᵉn], *to bite*
obgleich*[ŏᵖ-glĭy'], *though*
gern*[gĕrn], *willingly*,
dreißigjährig*[drī'-sĭy-yâr"-ĭy], *thirty years'*
der Krieg[krēg] (—es, —e), *war*
intereſſieren[ĭn"-tᵉr-ĕs-sē'-rᵉn], *to interest*
ankommen*[ăn'-kŏm"-mᵉn], *to arrive*
verbunden*[fĕr-bŭn'-dᵉn] ſein, *to be obliged*
ziemlich,* *tolerably*
früher[frēē'-ĥer], *formerly*,
verſtehen*[fĕr-stā-ĥen], *to understand.*

1. My uncles speak French more fluently than German. 2. Do not 'your sisters speak Italian too? 3. No, they only read Italian. 4. There will be a great ball (translate: a great ball will be) to-morrow; will you be there? 5. I know, young ladies are happiest there. 6. The moon is nearer to the earth than to the sun. 7. Mercury is nearest to the sun. 8. My sister writes better than I. 9. She is writing a beautiful letter to her friend (fem.). 10. Our good brothers and sisters write and read best. 11. We thank 'you most heartily. 12. A lazy boy rather plays than (he) learns. 13. I was here sooner than you. 14. We shall give him three shillings more. 15. His brother has been very ill; but he feels somewhat (etwas) better now (5). 16. Have you ever (Lexic. je) heard a canary-bird? 17. No ship has ever reached the Northpole. 18. I warned him earnestly. 19. I have warned thee and them earnestly. 20. A barking dog never bites. 21. Our house stands higher than yours; though it does not stand nearer the sea (say, although it to the sea not nearer does stand). 22. Charles will very willingly help (Dat.) you. 23. Our friends will visit us to-morrow. 24. Even (ſogar, ſelbſt) the history of the thirty years' war appears not to interest him (see 6 of this §). 25. Charles has been very attentive to-day. 26. Your friends were here yesterday. 27. They will arrive to-morrow evening at (um) eight o'clock. 28. We have lived very agreeably in Berlin. 29. How long have 'you lived there? 30. He does not come to-day. 31. He will not come to-day. 32. 'Your sister has danced very beautifully. 33. I have bought for 'you (Dat.) Lessing's works. 34. 'You are very kind. 35. I am very much obliged to 'you. 36. Did 'you hear him often formerly? 37. I read English tolerably well, but I do not well understand Shakespeare. 38. These boys are good; do they sing well?

**Tulpe, tulip**; from Pers. *dulbend*, a turban.

**riechen,** *to smell*; see Geruch, p. 232.

**leſen,** *to read*, originally to col**lect,** *gather, pick up*; thus aufleſen, *to pick up, gather*, (for instance, *ears of corn* and later also *the letters*); Goth. *lisan*, Lat. *legere*, Gr. *lego*, to col**lect**; der *lesære, leser*, also =Lehrer, teacher (Ahd. in the 11th Century).

**geläufig,** *fluently, current, running*, from laufen, *to run*, (p. 104, with augment **ge,** and suffix **ig**).

**ſteigen,** *to ascend, mount, get up*; A. S. *stigan*, to ascend, Ice. *stigi*, a ladder, Engl. to **sty** (obs.), **stairs,** a flight of steps, instead of *staig-r-s'*.

**ſtehen,** *to* **stand**; A. S. *standan*, O. Ger. *stan*, Lat. *sto*, Gr. *stenai*, Sans. *stah*, to stand; Tab. V. 34.

**Mittag, mid-day,** *noon*, the middle of the day, c. of Mit for Mitte, *middle, centre*, A. S. *midd, mid*, Lat. *medius*, (Mhd. and late Ahd. *mittetac, mittetag*) and Tag. p. 168.

**ſteil,** *steep*, Ahd. *steigal*, from ſteigen.

**Kellner,** *waiter*, Ahd. *kellnari*, from Lat. *cellenarius*, **cellarer,** see Keller, p. 155.

**noch,** *still, yet. Take Notice!* **noch,** used before numerals or indefinite pronouns, is translated by *more* or *another* in English; **noch** ein Stuhl, *another* chair; **noch** zwei Briefe, two letters *more*.

**je,** *ever, always. Take Notice!* **ever,** in a question or negative proposition, is rendered in German by **je,** in most other cases **ever** is translated by **immer**; Sind Sie je in N. geweſen? Have you *ever* been in N? Keiner von uns iſt je da geweſen, none of us have *ever* been there.

**Canarienvogel, canary-***bird*, a bird from the Canary Islands.

**Unwiſſenheit,** *ignorance*, c. of heit, p. 135, and unwiſſend, p. 112 (the **d** having dropped).

**Gute** from the adj. gut. Adjectives used as nouns (see p. 171, der Faule) denote *persons*, when preceded by a masc. or fem. determinative word, and *things*, when preceded by a neuter one; **der** Gute=the good *man*, **die** Gute=the good woman; **das** Gute, the good (*thing*), whatever is good; **das** Schöne, whatever is beautiful.

**fangen,** *to catch, to seize, to capture*, conn. with Engl. **fang,** that which seizes or clutches, **finger,** A. S. *fon*, to seize.

**Vergnügen,** *pleasure*, c. of ver, p. 141, and the verb genügen, mhd. *genuegen*, to have enough (**genug, enough**), to have what one wishes, to be pleased, satisfied, gratified.

**Pfund,** *pound*, A. S. *pund*, Lat. *pondus*, a weight. Tab. V. 2.

**träge,** *inert, indolent, lazy*, (ahd. *traki*, mhd. *træge*; Old S. *tregan*=to be indignant, angry; A. S. *tregian*, to vex, to trouble,) originally angry,

indignant, especially on account of labor, then *dull*, slow of motion; perhaps connected with Lat. *traho, tractum*, to draw.

**ſcheinen,** *to* **shine,** *appear*, **seem**; A. S. *scinan*, to shine, *scima*=shine, lustre.

**Belagerung,** *siege*; from belageren, c. of be, p. 140, and lagereu, to **lay** down, to **belay, beleaguer.**

**ſpielen,** *to play*; ahd. *spilon*, Old Sax. *spilon*=to dance; see Spiel, p. 182

**erſt,** *first, foremost*; for eherſt, superlative of ehe (p. 138), **erst,** first, A. S *ærest*, superl. of *ær*.

**finden,** *to* **find**; A. S. *findan*; perhaps allied to Lat. *venio*, to come, *invenio*, to come upon, to find.

**ſchreiben,** *to write*; from the Lat. *scribere*; **describe, subscribe,** *scribble, scribe, scrivener.*

**ehrlich,** *honest*, c. of Ehre, *honor*, p. 185, and lich, p. 104; compare the Eng. Prov.: "Honesty is the best policy."

**Mai, May,** according to Grimm, sacred to *Maia*, the mother of *Mercury*; prob. from root *mag*, Sans. *mah*, to grow, hence the month of growth.

**Monat, month**; from Mond, properly **Mon,** *the measurer*, and the formative syllable **at** (see Mond, p. 109).

**dulden,** *to* **tole***rate, to bear*; A. S. *tholian*, Engl. **thole,** (obs.) allied to Lat. *tolero*.

**Unglück,** *misfortune, ill-***luck,** *calamity*; c. of the pref. un, p. 112, and glück, p. 111.

**ſchreiten,** *to* **stride,** *to proceed*, A. S. *scridhan*, (see Schritt, p. 203)

**ſchnell,** *quick*; ahd. and mhd. *snel*, A. S. *snell*, Itl. *snello* (?).

**flüchtig,** *flying*; ahd. *fluhtic*, c. of **Flucht,** ahd. *fluht*, A. S. *flyht*, **flight,** and ig.

**fliehen,** *to* **flee,** akin to fliegen, A. S. *fleogan*, to **fly.** Tab. V. 18.

**Welle, wave**; ahd, *wellan*, mhd. *wellen*, A. S. *vealvian*=wälzen, to roll; wēl=round, comp. Lat. *volvere* (circum**volve evolve,**) to roll; perhaps conn. with **swell, belly.** Tab. V. 7.

**erreichen,** *to* **reach,** c. of er (p. 206) and reichen, (p. 221.)

**ernſtlich, earnestly,** c. of **Ernſt, earnest**ness, A. S. *eornest*, serious, and lich.

**beißen,** *to* **bite,** A. S. *bitan*; Goth. *beitan*. Tab. V. 10.

**obgleich,** though; c. of **ob, if,** Tab. V. 5. and gleich, (ahd. lich) **like,** for ge-lich, ge-leich. The augment has disappeared in English; in German on the contrary, it has become so much a part of the root in many words, that they are no longer found without it. See pp. 58 and 59; Tab. V. 16 and 24.

**gern,** *willingly*; prop. *desirous*, **yearn**ing, A. S. *georn*, conn. with gehren, in begehren, to desire, to **yearn,** and with the Lat. *quær-, quir-*, whence **require,** in**quire,** etc.

**dreißigjährig, thirty years'**, c. of **dreißig, thirty**, A. S. *thritig, threo* =three and *tig*, Germ. ßig=ten, and jährig, from Jahr, year, p. 236.

**ankommen,** *to arrive*, c. of kommen p. 79, and **an**; a prefix which signifies *approaching, application, beginning.* It answers to the Engl. prefixes *a* (*at, ap*), *re, com*, etc., for instance, angreifen, *to attack* (**greif,** to **gripe**). anſehen, *to look at* (**ſehen,** to **see**); anfangen, *to begin* (fangen, *to catch*), and others.

**verbunden,** *obliged*, pa. partic. from **verbinden,** to **bind** up, **bind** together; to lay under obligation, to oblige, Lat. *obligo, ob* and *ligo*, to bind.

**verſtehen,** *to unaerstand*, c. of ver p. 141, and ſtehen, *to stand*, properly *to stand and listen.*

## [43.] CIRCUMSTANCES, ATTRIBUTES, OR COMPLEMENTS CONSISTING OF A NOUN WITH A PREPOSITION.

*Introductory Remarks.*

1. A **Preposition** is a word that defines the various relations of *place, time, cause*, etc.; it is employed as a substitute for the adverb, whenever an object is required to complete the idea which it signifies. Comp.: Er kommt **heraus,** *he comes* **out** or **forth,** and Er kommt **aus dem Garten,** *he comes* **out of the garden**; Er bringt **durch,** *he gets* **through,** and Er bringt **durch das Fenſter,** *he gets* **through the window.** Hence *Prepositions* connected only with verbs, without governing a case, must be considered as adverbs, as, Im Winter geht die Sonne ſpät **auf** und früh **unter,** in winter the sun rises late and sets early.

*Note.* Prepositions were originally for the most part adverbs prefixed to the verb, to modify its meaning, and a certain number of them are still used as separable prefixes (for which see a future section), as **mit**gehen, *to go* **with,** *to accompany*; **nach**folgen, *to follow* **after***ward, to succeed*; **durch**brechen, *to break* **through,** *to force a way into.* Their name is derived from their having been *prefixed* to the verb, and is now applicable for their *preceding* generally the nouns which they govern (*Preposition,* Lat. *præponere*=to put before, to prefix).

2. Prepositional phrases attending a noun (which they always follow), have the value of attributes, (see § 29, 3) as, The man **in** the gray dress=the gray-dressed man; The book **with** the red cover=the red-covered book.

3. With the help of Prepositions, relations generally expressed by cases are also denoted more distinctly; as, One hopes **a thing** or **for a thing.** Er kauft **dem Knaben** das Buch, or Er kauft das Buch **für den Knaben,** he buys the book **for** the boy.

4. The *Prepositions* are divided into four classes according to the case they govern:

I. Prepositions which take *the Genitive*;
II. " " " *the Dative*;
III. " " " *the Accusative*;
IV. " " " *either the Accusative or the Dative* according to their expressing *motion* to a place, *direction*, or *rest.*

*Take notice, Students!* An early familiarity with the use of the Prepositions is of the utmost advantage to you. Commit carefully to memory, therefore, their most usual signification, as well as the cases they govern.

## [44.] PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ich gehe **zu** meinem Bruder. | *I go to my brother.* |
| 2. Er geht **nach der** Stadt. | *He goes to the city.* |
| 3. Er ſtand **bei** ſeinem Vater. | *He stood near his father.* |
| 4. Ich habe das Buch von meinem Bruder. | *I have the book from my brother.* |
| 5. Der Wind war **ihnen entgegen.** | *The wind was against them.* |

*Observations.*—1. The Prepositions, as before intimated, generally precede the nouns governed by them. M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4.

2. In a few cases, (as will be stated in the lists, and indicated by an asterisk,) they immediately follow the nouns governed by them; as, **meinem Wunſche nach,** according to my wish; **ſeinem Willen entgegen,** contrary to his will. M. S. 5.

3. In German a separation of the Preposition from its respective noun is not admissible. Comp., The matter **that** you speak **of,** with, die Sache **von welcher** Sie ſprechen.

4. THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ARE 17 IN NUMBER.

| | |
|---|---|
| aus, *out of* | gegenüber,*[gâ"-gᵉn-êê'-bᵉr], *opposite to* |
| außer, *without* (not within), *besides* | mit,[mit], *with* |
| bei, *by, near, at, with* | nach,**[nahᶜʰ], *towards, to, after, according* |
| zu, (tsû), *to, at* | nächſt,[nâɪvst] } *next to* |
| von, (fón), *from, of* | zunächſt,[tsû-nâɪvst'] } *next to* |
| ſeit,[zit], *since* | ſammt,[zämt] } *together with* |
| entgegen,*[ênt"-gâ'-gᵉn], *towards, opposite, against, contrary to* | nebſt,[nâpst] } *together with* |

**Note. Nach, only in the signification of *according*, follows the noun.

zuwider,*[tsû˝-vē'-der], *against, contrary to*, (always *after* the noun)

binnen,[bĭn'-nen], *within*, (with reference to *time* only)

gemäß[ge-mâs'], *conformable, according to.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Mit, nach, nächſt, zunächſt,
Nebſt, ſammt, binnen, bei,
Gegenüber, von, zu, zuwider,
Gemäß, entgegen, außer, aus und ſeit,
With the Dative only you must write.

*Remarks* :

*a.* **Nach** signifies motion to **places.** Ich gehe **nach Deutſchland,** *I go to* **Germany**; Er geht **nach Hauſe,** *He goes* **home.**

*b.* **Zu** expresses motion to **persons.** Ich gehe **zu meinem Lehrer,** *I go to my* **teacher.**

52.

dahin*[dă-hĭn'], *thither*
der Augenblick*[ou˝-gen-blĭk'](-es, -e), *moment*
Sachſen[zä'-xen], *Saxony*
wenig[vā'-nĭy], *little, not much*
niemand*[nē'-mănt], *nobody, no man*
die Wohnung*[vō'-nūnk] (-en), *dwelling*
die Sängerin*[zäng'-e-rĭn] (-en), *singer*, fem.
die Nachtigall*[năch'-tĭ-găl˝](-en), *nightingale*
der Befehl*[be-fāl'](-es, -e), *order, command*
handeln*[hän'-deln], *to act, deal, treat*
die Burg*[bürk] (-en), *burg, castle*
die Couſine[kū-zē'-ne](-n), *cousin,*
der Grund*(Ex. 32)
die Nachricht*[nahch'-rĭyt] (-en), *account, news, information*
blaß*[blăs], *pale*
öffentlich*[ŭf'-fent-lĭy] *public, open*
die Meinung*[mĭ'-nūnk] (-en), *opinion, meaning*
die Weiſe*[vĭ'-ze] (-en), *wise, way, manner*
liſtig*[lĭs'-tĭy], *crafty, cunning*
treiben*[trĭ'-ben], *to push, drive*
der Wald*[vält] (-es, Wälder), *forest, wood*
der Sinn*[zĭn] (-es, -e), *sense*
die Vergangenheit*[fer-gäng'-en-hĭt˝], *past*
das Siegel*[zē'-gel], *seal, signet*
ſchmecken*[shmĕk'-ken], *to taste, smack*
das Faß*[fās] (Faſſes, Fäſſer), *vat, barrel*
der Hecht*[hĕyt] (-es, -e), *pike*
dumm*[dŭm], *dull, stupid*
ſchnappen*[shnäp'-pen], *to snap, gasp (for)*
der Köder*[kēā'-der] (-s), *bait, lure*
die Faulheit*[foul'-hĭt], *idleness*
die Krankheit*[krănk'-hĭt] (-en), *sickness.*

1. Flora geht mit ihrem Bruder zu dem kranken Manne und bringt ihm den Brief. 2. Iſt er nach der Stadt gereiſt? 3. Ja, er reiſte dahin zu ſeinem Onkel. 4. Wohnt Herr R. nicht bei unſerem Arzte? 5. Nein, er hat bei ihm gewohnt; ſeit einem Monat wohnt er bei ſeiner Schweſter. 6. Dieſe großen Äpfel ſind von jenem kleinen Baume. 7. Ich reiſe binnen wenigen Augenblicken nach der Hauptſtadt Sachſens. 8. Außer jenem Herren war Niemand da. 9. Ich liebe nächſt meiner guten Mutter meinen jüngſten Bruder am meiſten. 10. Friedrich holt das Glas aus der Küche. 11. Ich werde Niemanden außer meinem Bruder zu Ihnen bringen. 12. Werden Sie binnen einer Stunde bei uns ſein? 13. Ich hoffe zu der Zeit da zu ſein. 14. Die Lerche iſt die lieblichſte Sängerin nächſt der Nachtigall. 15. Er hat dem Befehle zuwider gehandelt. 16. Er führte uns zu ſeinen Eltern. 17. Die Burg liegt dem Dorfe gegenüber. 18. Maria iſt älter als ich; Karl kommt nach mir. 19. Er holt deine Schweſtern aus dem Concert. 20. Haben Sie nach mir oder nach meiner Couſine geſchickt? 21. Ich habe nur nach Ihnen geſchickt. 22. Ich bin mit unſerem Lehrer bei Ihrem Vater geweſen. 23. Wir werden ihnen die Bücher aus guten Gründen nicht ſchicken. 24. Bei dieſer Nachricht ward er ſo blaß wie der Tod. 25. Die öffentliche Meinung iſt ihm entgegen. 26. Wir eſſen nur ſelten außer dem Hauſe. 27. Meine Schweſter iſt ſeit einem Jahre nicht dort geweſen. 28. Der Bauer lebt nach der Väter Weiſe (Prov.). 29. Wer iſt nächſt dem Fuchſe am liſtigſten? Die Füchſin (Prov.). 30. Das Kalb lernt von der Kuh (Prov.). 31. Der Hunger treibt den Wolf aus dem Walde (Prov.). 32. Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn (Prov.). 33. Der Wein ſchmeckt nach dem Faſſe (Prov.). 34. Hechte werden von kleinen Fiſchen groß (Prov.). 35. Jeder dumme Fiſch ſchnappt nach dem Köder (Prov.). 36. Nach der Noth kommt der Tod (Prov.). 37. Nach Faulheit folgt Krankheit (Prov.). 38. Die Zeiten der Vergangenheit ſind uns ein Buch mit ſieben Siegeln (Göthe).

## 53.

das Frühſtück*[frée'-stük] (–es, –s, –e), *breakfast*
das Schreibebuch*[shrī'-bᵉ-bûchᵉ] (–es," –er), *copy-book*
**zu Hauſe**[hou'-zᵉ], *at home*,
ſitzen*[sit'-tsᵉn], *to sit* [Idiom!
gegenwärtig*[gā'-gᵉn-värᵉ-tly] *present*
zwanzig*[tsvän'-tsly], *twenty*
ſpeiſen*[spī'-zᵉn], *to eat*
**zu Mittag ſpeiſen**, *to dine*, Idiom!
müſſen*[mīs'-sᵉn], *must*, *to be obliged*, imperf. mußte[mûs'-tᵉ]
verlaſſen*[fᵉr-läs'-sᵉn], *to leave*, *quit*
die Stadt, (town) Ex. 15
vier*[fēr], *four*

innig*[In'-Iy], *intimate, inward*
ausgehen*[ous'-gā"-h$^{e}$n] *to go out*
das Abendeſſen*[ah'-b$^{e}$n$^{t}$-ĕs"-s$^{e}$n] (–s) } *supper*
das Abendbrod, }
die Verbindung*[f$^{e}$r-bIn'-dŭng] (–en), *engagement, connection*
der Doctor*[dŏk'-tŏr] (–s), *doctor*, Plur. die Doctoren [dŏk-tō'-r$^{e}$n]
der Vorſchlag*[fōr'-shlāk] (–es, "–e), *proposal*
der Uhrmacher*[ūr'-mäch"-$^{e}$r] (–s), *watchmaker*
auswandern*[ous'-vän"-d$^{e}$rn], *to emigrate*
letzt*[lĕtzt], *last*
das Mittagsmahl*[mĭt'-täk$^{s}$-mahl"] } *dinner*
das Mittagsbrod }
der Marſch*[märsh] (–es,"–e), *march*
der Marſchall*[mär'-shăl](–s,"–e), *marshal.*

1. Charles will come from London to-morrow. 2. The servant-girl comes from (aus) the cellar, from the garden, from the kitchen. 3. I travelled with my uncle, with my aunt, with you, with him, with her, with them. 4. After (def. art.) breakfast we shall bring our copy-book to 'your teacher. 5. Bring me some flowers from (aus) the garden. 6. Do you send your servant (fem.) to the shoemaker's* or to the tailor's?* 7. I have sent her to the tailor's.* 8. Shall we go to your aunt's* to-day, or shall we stay at home? 9. Why are you always sitting near (bei) the fire? 10. Do you come out of (aus, and def. art.) church? 11. Besides my teacher no one was present. 12. The public opinion was against him. 13. 'Your son is going to Liverpool to 'your brother; is it conformable to 'your wish? 14. I sent my son together with his two sisters to my brother to Liverpool. 15. Two of my most intimate friends live there besides my brother. 16. We shall go out with the children after (def. art.) supper. 17. This engagement will be contrary to the wish of her parents. 18. Frederick together with his brothers and sisters will emigrate to America next Autumn, (say, Frederick will together with his brothers and sisters next Autumn to America emigrate). 19. I have heard nothing more (wieder) of him, since that dinner at (bei) 'your aunt's.* 20. This march was against Marshal Moltke's order.

*Note.* For the correct position of the infinitives and participles in the sentences 1, 4, 7, 8, 16, 17, 18, 19. Compare p. 119, 5.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Dahin**, *thither*; c. of da (orig. dar), p. 122, and **hin**, *hence*. The adverb **hin** (by itself, or compounded with da, aus, auf, ab, ein, unter, etc.), indicates a motion *from*, and **her**, *hither*, a motion *towards* the person speaking. For example:—Er kam herauf, *he came up*, that is, to where I am. Er

*Do not translate this 's (Saxon Genitive) in this and similar constructions; it is an *English Idiom*.

ging hinauf, *he went up*, away from where I am. Kommen Sie herein, *come in*, towards me (who is in the room). Gehen Sie hinein, *go in*, away from me (who is on the street). Er ſteigt herunter, *he descends*, to us (who are down-stairs). Er ſteigt hinunter, *he descends*, away from us (who are up-stairs).

**Augenblick**, *moment*, lit. glance of the eye; c. of Auge, p. 124, and Blick, p. 174.

**niemand**, *nobody*, no **man**, *no one*, c. of nie, p. 114, and mand instead of mann, **man** (d intruded after n, as often in English, Tab. V. 34).

**Wohnung**, *dwelling, abode*, from wohnen, p. 139, and ung, p. 177. (Hoffnung.)

**Sängerin**, *fem. singer*; from Sänger, p. 101.

**Nachtigall, nightingale**; A. S. *nihtgale—niht*, night, and ahd. and A. S. *galan*, to sing; compare *madrigal*, a pastoral song, from *mandra*, a sheepfold, and *galan*, to sing, and gellen, *to yell*.

**Befehl**, *order, command*, from befehlen, to command, c. of be, and fehlen, Goth. *filhan*, ahd. *felahan*, to cover, to wrap, (comp. Fell, p. 176), to bury, (Lat. sepelire, to bury); then to surrender, to commit, to command (it is not at all conn. with fehlen, to fail, to be wanting).

**handeln**, *to act, deal, to trade*, from **Hand, hand**, (prop. to *keep putting the* **hand** *to*, to **handle**). The suffixes **eln** and **ern**, give the sense of diminution, repetition (to do by littles, hence often), or contempt, hence handeln, to make familiar by frequent use with the hand, to manage, deal, trade.

**Grund, ground**, *footing, bottom, reason*, p. 155.

**Nachricht**, *account, notice, news, information*, c. of nach, *after, according*, and richt, from richten, to set **right**, *to regulate, direct, guide, judge*, hence, lit. a *directive* account; a news calculated to affect one's conduct, then simply *news*,

**blaß**, *pale*; mhd *blas*, ahd. *plas*=white, whitish, espec. on the forehead, originally probably *to shine, to light*, hence **blaze**, comp. *blazed* trees.

**öffentlich**, *public*, **open**, from offen, p. 87. (the t having intruded after n. Tab. V. 34).

**Meinung**, *opinion*, **meaning**, from meinen, p. 107.

**Diener**, *servant*, from dienen, p. 204, and suff. er, p. 103.

die **Weiſe, wise**, *way, manner*; from weiſen, A. S. *visian*, to show, to point out, allied to *guide*, guise.

**liſtig**, *crafty, trickish, cunning*, Goth. *lists*, ahd., A. S. *list*=science, art, then artifice, contrivance; from Goth. *laisjan*, to lead on the track; *lais*, I know; comp. *cunning=knowing*, then *crafty, artful*.

**treiben,** *to push*, to **drive,** A. S. *drifan.* Tab. V. 11 and 6.

**Wald,** *forest*, **wood, weald, wold,** A. S. *weald*, Old Engl. **would;** the **l** also preserved in *threshold*, O. E. *thres-wold* (thresh-wood, i. e. wood trodden by the foot=door-sill).

**Sinn, sense,** *feeling*, from ſinnen, *to think, to reflect*; from the type *san, sin*, compare Lat. *sensus, sentire.* The original meaning is *to go, travel*, then *to direct the mind to, to strive for.*

**Vergangenheit,** *past, time gone by*, from vergangen, pa. part. of vergehen, *to pass away*, c. of ver, equivalent to Engl. *away*, (p. 141), and gehen.

**Siegel, seal,** *signet*, Lat. *sigillum*, diminutive of *signum*, a mark or sign engraved for impressing the wax which closes a letter.

**ſchmecken,** *to taste*, **smack,** A. S. *smæccan*, an imitative word, from the sound.

**Faß, vat,** *tub, barrel*, from faſſen, *to seize*, (p. 141, feſt,) then to put in any thing, to barrel, fill up; Lat. *vas*, a **vessel.**

**Hecht,** *pike*; the Engl. *pike*=Ger. Picke, *picker*, and the Fr. *pique*, means something sharpened to a point, *a lance, spear*; the fish is called so, probably from its long pointed head and sharp teeth. Thus the mhd. **Hecht,** A. S. *hacod, häced*=**hook**; as the Fr. *brochet* is allied to *broche*=spear, lance, pike.

**dumm,** *dull, stupid*, ahd. *tump*=mute, deaf, stupid, *foolish*, Goth. *dumbs* =mute, A. S. and Engl. **dumb,** dull, mute; Dutch, *dum*, dull, deaf.

**ſchnappen,** to **snap,** *snatch, grasp for*, Dutch, *snappen*, from the sound.

**Köder,** *bait, lure*, with omission of **r**, for ahd. *querdar*=bait, lure, properly *earth-worm*, fixed by the fishermen to the hook.

**Faulheit,** *idleness, sickness*, c. of faul, p. 124, and heit.

**Krankheit,** *sickness*, c. of krank, p. 177, and heit, which is chiefly added to *adjectives*, and forms abstract nouns of fem. gender. Comp. p. 135, Sparſamkeit.

**Frühſtück,** *breakfast*, c. of früh (p. 233, Frühling,) and Stück, ahd. *stucchi*, A. S. *sticce*, a piece, a **steak,** hence properly *early piece* or **steak.**

**Schreibebuch,** *copy*, or prop. *writing-book*, c. of ſchreiben, p. 240, and Buch, p. 101.

**ſitzen,** to **sit.** A. S. *sittan*, Lat. *sedeo.* Tab. V. 10.

**gegenwärtig** *present*, c. of gegen, A. S. *gean, gen*, Engl. **gain** (in **gain***say* **again,** **gain***st*), towards, to, *about, near*, and wärtig, from wart, A. S. *weard*, Goth. *vairths*, allied to Lat. *vertere*, Germ. werden, *to turn*, hence like the Engl. *to***ward**=near, present.

**ſpeiſen,** *to eat*, from Speiſe, *food, victuals*, Itl. *spesa*=expense; O. Engl. **spence,** a store-room, hence Speiſe, prop.=the cost or outlay for

victuals. Comp. Koſt=food, victuals, board, from koſten, *to* **cost,** *to bear a price*, p. 156. According to others, koſten, from which Koſt=food is derived, corresponds to Lat. *gustare*, Fr. *gouter*, conn. with kieſen, *to choose, prove, taste*; whilst koſten, *to cost*, is allied to Lat. *constare*, Fr. *couter*.

**verlaſſen,** *to leave, quit, forsake*, c. of ver, p. 141, and laſſen, to **let.** Tab. V. 10, hence to **let** *alone*, to *leave off*.

**zwanzig, twenty.** A. S. *twentig*, contracted of zween=zwei, *two*, p. 171, and zig=Goth. *tigus*, A. S. *tig*, *ten*. Tab. V. 8 and 20.

**vier, four.** Tab. V. 6.

**innig,** in*timate*, in*ward*, c. of **in, in** and the suffix **ig,** p. 103.

**ausgehen,** to **go out,** c. of **aus, out,** Tab. V. 10, and gehen, *to go*.

**Abendeſſen,** *supper*, c. of Abend, p. 198, and eſſen, p. 101.

**Verbindung,** *the act of* **binding** *or tying* (*up*), *connection, engagement*, c. of ver, (here in the sense of **for,** Lat. *per*, adding an intensive meaning), ung, p. 177, and **binden,** *to* **bind.**

**Doctor, doctor,** lit. *teacher*, Lat. *doceo*, to teach. In the *singular* the *first* **o** is accented, and in the *plural* the *second one*.

**Vorſchlag,** *proposal*, from vorſchlagen, to strike **for***ward*, to *make incline* **for***wards*, fig. to *propose*, c. of vor, (p. 133), and ſchlagen, (p. 181).

**Uhrmacher,** *watch***maker** c. of Uhr, (p. 138), and **macher, maker,** p. 170.

**Auswanderen,** *to emigrate, to depart*, c. of aus, *out*, and **wanderen,** to **wander,** probably allied with **wenden,** to **wend,** A. S. *wendan*, to turn, to go.

**Mittagsmahl,** *dinner*, c. of Mittag, *noon*, **mid-day** and **Mahl, meal,** on the s, see § 20, 2.

**Marſch, march.** Fr. *marche, walk, gait, marcher*, to walk, to go.

**Marſchall** (accent on the *first* syllable), **marshal,** lit. and orig. *an officer who had the care of horses*, an officer of the highest military rank. c. of **Mähre,** *a horse* (**mare**), and **ſchall, shalk,** *a servant*.

## [44.] PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Dieſer Apfel iſt **für** deinen Bruder. | *This apple is for your brother.* |
| 2. Wer hat die Stühle **um den** Tiſch geſtellt? | *Who has placed the chairs round the table?* |
| 3. Er geht **durch den** Garten. | *He goes through the garden.* |

4. Wirſt du **ohne mich** gehen? *Will you go without me?*
5. Er iſt **gegen dich**. *He is against you.*
6. Wir laufen **den Berg entlang**, } *We run along the mountain.*
   Wir laufen **entlang des Berges**. }

*Observations.*—1. THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE ARE EIGHT IN NUMBER:

| | |
|---|---|
| durch[dürch], *through, by, by means of* | gegen[d][gā'-g[e]n], *against, towards* |
| entlang[a][ènt-lăng'], *along, lengthwise* | ohne[ō'-n[e]], ſonder[b][zŏn'-d[e]r] } *without,* |
| für[fēēr], *for, instead of* | wider[vē'-d[e]r], *against* |
| | um [ŭm], *around.* |

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

**Entlang, durch, ohne, für,**
**Sonder, gegen, um and wider,**
Are the words with which we place
The noun in the Accusative case.

*Remarks.*

*a.* **Entlang** generally follows its noun and governs the accusative; but when placed before the noun it governs the genitive. M. S. 6.

*b.* The use of **ſonder** is now antiquated or poetic; it can never be followed by the article: ſonder Zweifel, *without doubt.*

*c.* **Um,** before the hours of the day, denotes a *specific* or *definite* time and is translated by *at*, as: Die Sonne geht jetzt **um** ſechs Uhr auf, *the sun rises now at six o'clock.*

Before some other divisions of time it is rendered by *about*, as: Er wird **um** Mittag kommen, *he will come about noon.*

*d.* **Gegen,** denotes, 1. **to, towards,** (*direction*): gegen Norden, *towards the north*;

2. Sentiments of love as well as hatred, **towards** and **against**: Dein Bruder iſt ſehr freundlich gegen mich, *thy brother is very friendly towards me*;

3. It signifies **about, towards,** when it refers to time and number: Ich werde gegen Mittag kommen, *I shall come towards noon*; Gegen zwanzig Perſonen waren da, *about twenty persons were there.*

## 54.

der Fußpfad*[fūs'-pfahᵗ] (–es, –e) *foot-path*
die Gefälligkeit*[gᵉ-fal'-lıy-kıtᵗ] (–en), *complaisance, kindness*
Madame*[mä-dämˈ], *madam*
der Strom[strōm] (–es, Ströme), *stream, river*
kein*[kın], *no, none*
die Sorge*[zŏr'-gᵉ] (–n), *care, sorrow*
der Wille*[vıl'-lᵉ] (–ns, –n), *will*
marſchieren*[märᵛ-shē'-rᵉn], *to march*
der Park*[pärk] (–es, –e), *park*
die Mauer*[mou'-ᵉr] (–n), *wall*
grauſam[grou'-zăm], *cruel*
die Hilfe*[hıl'-fᵉ], *help, assistance*
allmächtig*[älᵛ-mäy'-tıy], *almighty*
regelmäßig*[rā'-gᵉl-mäßᵛ-sıy], *regular*
frei*[frı], *free*
das Nichtsthun*[nıyts'-tūnᵛ], *inaction, idleness*
der Zorn*[tsŏrn] (–es), *anger, wrath*
die Arzenei[ärᵛ-tsᵉ-nıˈ] (–en), *medicine*
tröſtlich*[trēst'-lıy], *consolable*
das Gemüth[gᵉ-mēēt'] (–es, Gemüther), *mind, soul, disposition of mind*
der Lehrmeiſter*[lār'-mıs'-tᵉr] *teacher*
der Brei*[brı] (–es, –e), *pap, spoon-meat*
die Wehr*[vār] (–en), *defence, bulwark, weapon*
die Liſt[lıst] (–en), *cunning, craft, trick*
die Aufmerkſamkeit*[ouf'-mĕrk-zăm-kıtᵗ] (–en), *attention*
ſtreng*[strĕng], *severe, strict*
die Bildung*[bıl'-dūng], *culture*
befördern*[bᵉ-für'-dᵉrn] *to further, promote*
die Tauglichkeit*[toug'-lıy-kıtᵗ], *fitness*
häuslich*[hois'-lıy], *domestic*
ewig*[a'-vıy], *eternal, perpetual*
heben*[ha'-bᵉn], *to lift*
tragen*[trah'-gᵉn], *to carry*
bereiten*[bᵉ-rı'-tᵉn] *to prepare*
ſchaffen*[shăf'-fᵉn], *to do, to form.*

1. Wir folgten ihm durch den Wald. 2. Wir gehen den Fußpfad entlang. 3. Ich danke Ihnen, Madame, für Ihre Gefälligkeit. 4. Er ſchwimmt gegen den Strom. 5. Sie waren ſehr freundlich gegen uns. 6. Fünfzig Perſonen waren da ohne die Kinder. 7. Kein Menſch lebt ohne Sorgen. 8. Die Gäſte ſitzen um den Tiſch. 9. Er thut es wider meinen Willen. 10. Du biſt für mich; wer iſt wider mich? 11. Die Soldaten werden morgen, gegen ſechs Uhr Abends durch die Stadt marſchieren. 12. Er handelte ſo wider ſeines Vaters Willen. 13. Wir werden zuſammen um den Park fahren. 14. Ihr ſeid ſehr undankbar gegen Euren guten Lehrer geweſen. 15. Die freundliche Flora hat dieſe ſchönen Kirſchen für den kranken Knaben des Tiſchlers geholt. 16. Durch welche Straßen werden

die Soldaten marſchieren? 17. Er rennt wieder mit dem Kopfe wider die Mauer. 18. Es iſt nicht angenehm gegen den Wind zu gehen. 19. Ein guter Menſch wird niemals undankbar gegen ſeinen Wohlthäter und niemals grauſam gegen ſeinen Feind ſein. 20. Er lernte deutſch ohne die Hilfe eines Lehrers. 21. Er hat das Brod für jenen armen Menſchen geholt. 22. Kein Gott iſt außer dem Allmächtigen. 23. Er hat außer ſeinem regelmäßigen Einkommen ein freies Haus, der Kirche gegenüber, nebſt einem großen Garten nächſt dem Fluſſe. 24. Durch Nichtsthun lernt man Böſes thun (Read: Man lernt böſes thun etc.) Prov. 25. Zeit iſt gegen den Zorn Arzenei (Prov.). 26. Ein tröſtlich Wort iſt Speiſe für das Gemüth (Prov.). 27. Ein Tag iſt der Lehrmeiſter für den anderen (Prov.). 28. Wer nicht für mich iſt, iſt gegen mich (Prov.). 29. Geld geht durch alle Thüren (Prov.). 30. Die Katze geht um den heißen Brei (Prov.). 31. Keine Roſe ohne Dornen (Prov.). 32. Keine beſſere Wehr wider Liſt als Aufmerkſamkeit (Gracian). 33. Gegen den Freund ſei (Imperat. p. 138) beſcheiden, gegen dich ſei ſtreng und feſt (Herder). 34. Die wahre Bildung für die Welt befördert auch die Tauglichkeit für das häusliche Leben (Ehrenberg). 35. Ihr (des Weibes) Leben iſt ein ewiges Gehen und Kommen, oder ein Heben und Tragen, Bereiten und Schaffen für Andere (Göthe).

## 55.

die Rhone[ro'-n$^{e}$], *Rhone*
reiten*[rī'-t$^{en}$], *to ride on horse-back*
fließen*[flē'-s$^{en}$], *to flow*
der See*[zā] (—ees, —een), *lake*
die See[zā] (Ex. 8) *sea*
das Thal*[tahl] (—es, Thäler) *valley*
der Forſt*[fōrst] (—es, —e), *forest*
der Magen*[mah'-gĕn] (—s, plur. Magen or Mägen), *stomach*
gut, gütig, *kind*
die Armee*[ăr-mā'] (—een[a'-$^{en}$]), *army*
frühſtücken*[frēē'-stük''-$^{en}$] *to breakfast*
gewöhnlich*[g$^{e}$-vēān'-lĭy], *usually, generally*
endlich*[ĕnt''-lĭy], *finally*
der Kamerad*[kăm''-$^{er}$-aht'] (—en, —en), *comrade*
die Gefahr*[g$^{e}$-fahr'] (—en), *danger*
der Rath*[raht] (—es), *advice*
die Inſel*[ĭn'-z$^{el}$] (—n), *isle.*

1. We ride through the city. 2. The Rhone flows through a lake. 3. The way through the valley is very (recht, Ex. 24) pretty. 4. They walk along the forest. 5. Honey is good for the stomach. 6. Soldiers fight for their king and for their country. 7. This book is a present for a friend. 8. He was very kind towards me. 9. The king led the army against the enemy. 10. They are sitting around a large tree. 11. We shall breakfast to-morrow at eight o'clock. 12. He was without

an umbrella. 13. I shall not swim against the stream. 14. We go around the town. 15. Mary never goes to a ball without her brother. 16. The boys go through the forest. 17. Within two weeks I shall go to London for a month, and after that time I shall go with two friends to my brother. 18. We see with the eyes; we hear with the ears. 19. The boys are running against the tree. 20. The apples are for the boys, and the pears for the girls. 21. I shall not go through the forest without a guide. 22. What is (def. art.) life without a friend? 23. He will go to the concert against the will of his father. 24. Why is that boy always against me, him, her, them, us? 25. He comes from (aus, def. art.) school and she goes to (def. art.) church. 26. We usually go around (def. art.) town. 27. My sister will never go to church without them, him, me. 28. He, who (wer) is not for me, (say: who not for me is,) is against me. 29. You are very ungrateful to (gegen) me. 30. Where is 'your youngest brother? 31. He will depart (reiſen) with my eldest sister to Germany. 32. My brother will go again for me to Berlin. 33. They finally saved their comrade, but not without danger. 34. I thank 'you for 'your good advice. 35. Butter and wax are melting from the heat of the sun. 36. We are for 'you, not against you. 37. My wild nephew runs against a tree. 38. We are walking through the grass. 39. I shall swim around this little island.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Fußpfad, foot-path,** c. of Fuß and **Pfad, path,** A. S. *patha*, Gr. *patos*, Sans. *patha*, from *path*, to go. Tab. V. 3 and 11.

**Gefälligkeit,** *complaisance*, from gefällig, and the suffix keit.

**Madame,** (pronounce mă-dăm'), **madam.** Lit. *my dame*, or lady, Fr. *ma*, my, and *dame*, Lat. *domina*, lady.

**kein,** *no*, **none,** not **one,** contraction of the ancient nech-ein, Lat. *nec=neither one.*

**Sorge, sorrow.** Old Engl. **sorge,** A. S. *sorg*, perhaps allied to *sore.* Tab. V. 23.

**Wille, will.** A. S. *wille*, Lat. *volo*, to will.

**marſchieren,** *to* **march.** Fr. *marcher.*

**Mauer,** *wall.* A. S. *mur*, Lat. *murus* (comp. Engl. **mural,** pertaining to, or like a wall.

**Hilfe, help,** *assistance*, from **helfen,** *to* **help.** Tab. V. 4.

**allmächtig, almighty**, c. of all, p. 187 (überall), and mächtig, p. 168. Der Allmächtige, see p. 171 (der Faule).

**regelmäßig, regular**, in accordance with **rule**, c. of Regel, *rule*, what **regul***ates*, Fr. *regle*, Lat. *regula-rego*, to keep straight, to rule, and mäßig, from **Maß, measure**; comp. **meſſen**, *to* **measure**, and p. 109 (Mond), hence =mäßig, *of the measure of*, or *in accordance with*.

**frei, free.** Goth. *freis*, free, sweet, A. S. *freo*, in affinity with freien, *to love*, Freund.

**Nichtsthun**, *inaction, idleness*, c. of nichts, p. 117, and thun, p. 82 =*to do nothing*. On the infinitive used as a neuter noun, see p, 178 (Brüllen).

**Zorn**, *anger, wrath*. A. S. *torn*, from zerren, *to pull, tug*, Goth. *tairan*, A. S. *teran*, Engl. to **tear** (v. i.), to act with violence, *to rage, to rave*.

**tröſtlich**, *consolable, comforting*, from Troſt, *comfort, consolation*, **trust**, Goth. *trausti*, security, from root of trauen, *to trust*.

**Gemüth**, *all the emotions, spirit, temper, disposition of mind*. By means of ge (p. 112), collective of Muth, *mood*, Goth. *mods*, A. S. *mod*, mind, disposition.

**Lehrmeiſter**, *teacher, instructor*, c. of Lehr, Lehre, *instruction*, from lehren (p. 101), and Meiſter, *master*, Lat. *magister*, properly *he that is great* or chief, from *mag*, root of *magnus*, great.

**Brei**, *pap, spoon-meat* (for babes); A. S. *briv*, properly *broth*; probably allied to ahd. *priuwan*=**brauen**, *to* **brew**.

**Wehr**, *work of defence*, **weir**, *weapon*, from wehren, *to check, restrain, ward*, A. S. *werian*, to protect, *wær*, an enclosure.

**Aufmerkſamkeit**, *attention, mindfulness*, from aufmerkſam, *attentive*, c. of **auf, up**. Tab. V. 5. This prefix designates *expansion, elevation*, frequently with the collateral meaning *of repeating, finishing* some action, or of *opening* something, e. g. aufeſſen, *to eat all*, auffliegen, *to fly up*, aufhören, *to cease, finish*, and **merken**, *to perceive, observe*, **mark**, and ſam (p. 126).

**ſtreng**, orig. *drawn tight, severe*, **strict, stringent, strong**, ahd. *strengi*, A. S. *strang, streng*, of firm strength; Lat *stringere*, Gr. *strangein*, to tie hard, hence **Strang**, *rope*, **string**.

**Bildung**, *culture*, properly *formation*, from bilden, *to form, to shape*, related with to **build**; then, *information, intellectual cultivation*.

**befördern**, *to* **further**, *advance, promote*, c. of be (p. 140), and fördern, older nhd. fürdern, from the ahd. adv. fürder=vorwärts, *forward*, A. S. *furthrian*, properly to help *forth* or **forward**.

**Tauglichkeit**, *fitness, ability*, from taugen, *to be good or fit* (p. 188, Tugend); tauglich, *fit, serviceable*.

**häuslich,** *domestic*, c. of Haus (p. 87), and lich (p. 104).

**ewig,** *perpetual, eternal*, **ever**, and adv. *unceasingly*, ahd. *ewic, ewig*, Old S. *ewig*; by means of the formative syllable, *-ic*, nhd. ig, (p. 103), from the Goth. *aivs*, ahd. *ewa*, Lat. *ævum*, Gr. *aon*=eternity, an **age**.

**heben,** *to lift, raise*, **heave.** A. S. *hefan*, to lift. Tab. V.

**tragen,** *to carry*. Goth. ahd. and A. S. *dragan*, to **drag**, to **draw**, that is, carry by pulling, allied to Lat. *traho*, to draw, to drag. Tab. V. 13.

**bereiten,** *to prepare, make* **ready**, c. of be (p. 140), and reiten; A. S. *rad, ræd*, to set to rights, to put in order, from Goth. *raids, garaids*, ahd. *reiti*, prop. zur **Reiſe,** *for journey* (prepared), then *prepared*.

**ſchaffen,** *to do make*, **shape,** *create*, A. S. *scapan*, to form (see p. 170, Schöpfer).

**Reiten, to ride** *on horseback*; A. S. *ridan*, Ice. *reida*, to move.

**fließen,** *to flow*. A. S. *fleotan*, to float, freq. of *fleowan*, to flow, Engl. to **fleet,** *to flow away*, see p. 155, flüſſig. Tab. V. 12.

**die See, sea** (p. 87). *Take Notice! lake*, i. e. a large body of water within land, is expressed in German by the *same word*, but its gender is *masculine*, hence **der See,** *lake*.

**Thal,** *valley* (comp. Thaler, p. 219), a low place between hills, as it were, *separating* them; A. S. *dal*, Engl. **dale,** conn. with theilen (p. 110, Welttheil); A. S. *dælan*, to **deal,** to divide.

**Forſt, forest,** properly *the outlying country*, as opposed to the cultivated; Fr. *forêt*, L. (Lat.) *forestum*, prob. from Lat. *foras, foris*, out of doors.

**Magen,** *stomach*, **maw.** Tab. V. 23. A. S. *maga*, Old Germ. *magan*, to nourish (the plural is generally Mägen, but more correct Magen).

**frühſtücken,** *to breakfast* (comp. Frühſtück, p. 247).

**gewöhnlich,** *usually, generally*, from gewöhnen, *to make* **wonted,** *to accustom*, (comp. wohnen, p. 139).

**endlich,** *finally*, from Ende, (p. 198).

**Kamerad, comrade,** lit. *a chamber-mate, a companion*, Lat. *camera, a* **chamber.**

**Gefahr,** *danger*, c. of Fahr; mhd. *var, cunning, deceit, danger*, **fear,** A. S. *fær*, and Ge-.

**Rath,** *advice, counsel*, from rathen, *to advise*, Engl. (but obs.), to **rede,** to **aread** or *areed*, to counsel, probably allied to **rate, ratio,** Lat. *reor, ratus*, to calculate, to think. *Take Notice!* The plural of Rath is not used; instead of it die **Rathſchläge,** *advices*.

**Inſel, isle.** Fr. *île*, from Lat. *insula*; but **Eiland** answers to the Engl. **island,** from ahd. *ouwa*=Waſſer, *aha*=river, A. S. *ea*, Lat. *aqua*=water.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Abendbrod, 245
Abendeſſen, 245
allmächtig, 250
anfangen, 241
angreifen, 241
ankommen, 238
anſehen, 241
Armee, 251
Arzenei, 250
aufleſen, 239
Aufmerkſamkeit, [250
aufrichtig, 231
Augenblick, 243
ausgehen, 245
auswandern, 245

bauen, 232
Befehl, 243
befehlen, 246
befördern, 250
begehren, 240
beißen, 238
belagern, 240
Belagerung, 236
bereiten, 250
Berg, 230
bergen, 232
beſcheiden, 229
Bildung, 250
blaß, 243
Brei, 250

Canarienvogel, [236
Couſine, 243

dahin, 243
Diamant, 231
Doctor, 245
dreißig, 241
dreißigjährig,
dulden, 236 [238
dumm, 243

ebenſo, 229
ehrlich, 236
Eltern, 231
endlich, 251
Ernſt, 240
ernſtlich, 238
erreichen, 237
erſt, 236

Eſel, 230
ewig, 250

fangen, 236
Faß, 243
faul, 229
Faulheit, 243
finden, 236
fliehen, 236
Flucht, 240
flüchtig, 236
Forſt, 251
Fußpfad, 250

Gebäude, 229
gegenwärtig, 244
Gefahr, 251
Gefälligkeit, 250
geläufig, 236
Geld, 230
gelten, 233
Gemüth, 250
genügen, 239
gern, 238
Geruch, 230
geſcheid, 230
geſcheit, 230
geſund, 229
gewöhnlich, 251
Goldgrube, 230
Grab, 233
graben, 233
grauſam, 250
griechiſch, 231
Grube, 233
Grund, 243
gültig, 233
das Gute, 236

handeln, 243
zu Hauſe, 244
häuslich, 250
heben, 250
Hecht, 243
Hemd, 230
Herbſt, 231
Hilfe, 250
hin, 245
hindern, 236
hübſch, 231
Hügel, 231
Hunger, 229
innig, 245

Inſel, 251
intereſſieren, 238
italieniſch, 237

Jahr, 236
jährig, 241
je, 236

Kaiſer, 229
Kamerad 251
Kellner, 236
Kette, 231
Koch, 229
Köder, 243
Kopf, 229
Koſt, 248
koſten, 248
Krankheit, 243
Krieg, 238
Küche, 229

lagern, 240
laſſen, 248
Lehrmeiſter, 250
leſen, 236
letzt, 245
lieblich, 229
link, 231
links, 236
Liſt, 250
liſtig, 243

Madame, 250
Magen, 251
Mähre, 248
Mai, 236
Marſch, 245
Marſchall, 245
marſchieren, 250
Mauer, 250
Meinung, 243
Merkur, 237
Mittag, 236
zu Mittag ſpeiſen, 244
Mittagsbrod, } Mittagsmahl, }
Mitte, 239 [245
Monat, 236
müſſen, 244

Nachricht, 243
Nachtigall, 243
nach und nach, [236
Nichtsthun, 250
niemand, 243
noch, 237
Nordpol, 237

obenan, 236
obgleich, 238
öffentlich, 243
oft, 229

Park, 250
Pfund, 236
Picke, 247

raſch, 230
Rath, 251
Rauch, 232
rechts, 236
regelmäßig, 250
reiten, 251
riechen, 236
richtig, 233
Richtung, 246
Rubin, 231

Sachſen, 243
Sängerin, 243
ſchaffen, 250
ſcheinen, 236
ſchmecken, 243
ſchnappen, 243
ſchnell, 236
Schreibebuch, [244
ſchreiben, 236
ſchreiten, 236
ſchwer, 231
der } See, 251
die }
Siegel, 243
Sinn, 243
ſinnen, 247
ſitzen, 244
Sonntag, 236
Sorge, 250
Speiſe, 247
ſpeiſen, 244
ſpielen, 237
ſtehen, 236
ſteigen, 236
ſteil, 236
Stein, 231
ſtreng, 250
Strom, 231
Sünde, 232

Tauglichkeit, 250
Thal, 251
träg, 236
tragen, 250
treiben, 243
tröſtlich, 250
Tulpe, 236

Uhrmacher, 245
Unglück, 236
Unwiſſenheit, [236

Verbindung, 245
verbunden, 238
Vergangenheit, [243
vergehen, 247
Vergnügen, 236
verlaſſen, 244
verſtehen, 238
vier, 245
Vorſchlag, 245
vorſchlagen, 248

Wald, 243
Wälzen, 240
wandern, 248
wärtig, } (in gegenw.,) }
Wehr, 250 [247
Weiſe, 243
weiſen, 246
weit, (weit reicher) } 231
Welle, 236
wenden, 248
wenig, 243
wie, 236
Wille, 250
wohnen, 232
Wohnung, 243

zahm, 230
ziemlich, 238
Zorn, 250
-zig, 248
zwanzig, 245

Account, 243
to act, 243
advice, 251
almighty, 250
anger, 250
army, 251
to arrive, 237
as, 229, 236
to ascend, 236
ass, 230
assistance, 250
attention, 250
autumn, 231

bait, 243
barrel, 243
to bite, 237
breakfast, 244
to breakfast, 251
broad, 231
building, 229
bulwark, 250
burg, 243

canary-bird, 236
care, 250
to carry, 250
castle, 243
to catch, 236
chain, 231
charming, 229
command, 243
complaisance, [244
comrade, 251
connection, 244
cook, 229
consolable, 250
copy-book, 244
cousin, (fem.)
craft, 250 [243
crafty, 243
cruel, 250
culture, 250
cunning, 250

danger, 251
defence, 250
by degrees, 236
diamond, 231
difficult, 231
to dig, 233
to dine, 244
dinner, 244
discreet, 230
disposition, 250
to divide, 233
to do, 250
doctor, 244
domestic, 250
to drive, 243
dull, 243
to dwell, 232
dwelling, 243

early, 233
earnestly, 237
to eat, 244
edifice, 232
to emigrate, 244
emperor, 229
engagement, 244
eternal, 250
ever, 236

finally, 251
to find, 236
at first, 236
fitness, 250
to flee, 236
to flow, 251
fluently, 236
foot-path, 250
forest, 243, 25
foul, 229
four, 244
fragrance, 230
free, 250
from, 229
fugitive, 236
to further, 250

to gasp for, 243
generally, 251
to go out, 244
gold-mine, 230
gracious, 232
grave, 233
Greek, 231

hasty, 230
head, 229
at the head, 236
healthy, 229
heavy, 231
to hide, 232
hill, 231
to hinder, 236
at home, 244
honest, 236
how, 236
however, 236
hunger, 229

idleness, 243,
ignorance, 236
inaction, 250
indolent, 236
information, 243
to inhabit, 232
to interest, 237
intimate, 244
isle, 251
Italian, 237

just as, 229

kindness, 250
kitchen, 229

lake, 251
last, 244
lazy, 236
to leave, 244
left, 231
to lift, 250
like, 236
little, 243
by little and little, 236
love, 232
lovely, 229
lure, 243

madam, 250
manner, 243
to march, 250
march, 244
marshal, 244
May, 236
meaning, 243
medicine, 250
Mercury, 237
mind, 250
misfortune, 236
modest, 229
moment, 243
money, 230
month, 236
mountain, 230
more, (three shillings more)
much, 231 [237
must, 244

news, 243
nightingale, 243
no, none, 250
nobody, 243
noon, 236
northpole, 237

to be obliged, [238, 244
odor, 230
often, 229
open, 243
opinion, 243
order, 243

pale, 243
pap, 250
parents, 231
park, 250
past, 243
perpetual, 250
pike, 243
pit, 233
to play, 237
pleasure, 236
pound, 236
to prepare, 250
present, 244
pretty, 231
to promote, 250
proposal, 244
public, 243
to push, 243

quick, 236

rapid, 230
rash, 230
to reach, 237
to read, 236
regular, 250
to ride on horseback, 251
at the right hand
river, 25c [236
rotten, 229
ruby, 231

Saxony, 243
scent, 232
sea, 251
seal, 243
sense, 243
severe, 250
to shine, 236
shirt, 230
sickness, 243
siege, 236
signet, 243
sincere, 231
singer (fem), 243
to sit, 244
to smack, 243
smell, 230
to smell, 236
smoke, 232
to snap, 243
sorrow, 250
soul, 250
speedy, 232, 236
spoon-meat, 250
spring, 231
to stand, 236
steep, 236
to step, 236
stomach, 251
stone, 231
stream, 231
strict, 250
to stride, 236
stupid, 243
to suffer, 236
Sunday, 236
supper, 244

tame, 230
to taste, 243
teacher, 250
than, 229
thither, 243
tolerably, 23
trick, 250
tulip, 236
twenty, 244 [237
to understand,
uppermost, 236
usually, 251

valley, 251
vat, 243

waiter, 236
wall, 250
war, 237
watchmaker 244
wave, 236
will, 250
willingly, 238
wise, 243
wood, 243
wrath, 250
to write, 236

year, 236
yet, 236

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 49.

1. Die Donau iſt breiter als die Elbe. 2. Karl iſt fauler als Wilhelm. 3. Jene Uhren ſind theurer als dieſe Ketten. 4. Der Winter iſt kälter als der Herbſt. 5. Ihr Bruder iſt ſchwächer als ihre Schweſter. 6. Silber iſt härter als Gold. 7. Nichts iſt klarer als friſches Waſſer. 8. Berge ſind höher als Hügel. 9. Der Mond iſt näher als die Sonne. 10. Er iſt der nächſte meiner Nachbarn. 11. Seine Schweſter iſt mehr ſchwach als krank. 12. Unſere Nichten ſind mehr liebenswürdig als hübſch. 13. Platina iſt ſchwerer als Gold. 14. Der Diamant iſt härter als der Rubin. 15. Die Sonne iſt größer als die Erde, und die Erde iſt größer als der Mond. 16. Der Mond iſt kleiner als die Erde, und die Erde iſt kleiner als die Sonne. 17. Die griechiſche Sprache iſt reicher als die lateiniſche. 18. Mein Papier iſt weißer als das Ihrige, aber ſein Hut iſt der weißeſte. 19. Mein rechter Arm iſt ſtärker als der linke. 20. Ihr Kopf iſt größer als meiner. 21. Dieſer Baum iſt älter als jener. 22. Mein Hut iſt leichter als der deinige. 23. Platina iſt das ſchwerſte Metall. 24. Der Diamant iſt der härteſte Stein. 25. Mein Bier iſt klarer als das ſeinige. 26. Dieſes Füllen iſt zahmer als jenes. 27. Die Kinder waren froher als ihre armen Eltern. 28. Die Füchſe ſind die ſchlaueſten Thiere. 29. Die ſchwarzen Füchſe ſind ſeltner als die weißen. 30. Nichts iſt beſſer als ein guter Name. 31. Er iſt weit reicher als Sie. 32. Sie iſt nicht ſo blind als Sie denken. 33. Er iſt gerade ſolch ein Mann als ſein Vater. 34. Er iſt weniger aufrichtig als ſein Bruder. 35. Er iſt mehr falſch als brav. 36. Dieſes Waſſer iſt tief, jener Strom iſt tiefer, aber die See iſt am tiefſten. 37. Der Sommer iſt wärmer als der Frühling.

## 51.

1. Meine Onkel ſprechen geläufiger franzöſiſch als deutſch. 2. Sprechen Ihre Schweſtern nicht auch italieniſch? 3. Nein, ſie leſen nur italieniſch. 4. Ein großer Ball wird morgen ſein; werdet ihr da ſein? 5. Ich weiß, junge Damen ſind da am glücklichſten. 6. Der Mond iſt der Erde näher als die Sonne. 7. Mercur iſt der Sonne am nächſten. 8. Meine Schweſter ſchreibt beſſer als ich. 9. Sie ſchreibt ihrer Freundin einen ſchönen Brief. 10. Unſre guten Brüder und Schweſtern ſchreiben und leſen am beſten. 11. Wir danken Ihnen aufs herzlichſte. 12. Ein fauler Knabe ſpielt lieber als er lernt. 13. Ich war früher hier als ihr. 14. Wir werden ihm noch drei Schillinge geben. 15. Sein Bruder iſt ſehr krank geweſen; aber er fühlt nun etwas beſſer. 16. Haben Sie je einen Canarienvogel gehört? 17. Kein Schiff hat je den Nordpol erreicht. 18. Ich warnte ihn ernſtlich. 19. Ich habe dich und ſie ernſtlich gewarnt. 20. Ein bellender Hund beißt niemals. 21. Unſer Haus ſteht höher als das

eurige; obgleich es der See nicht näher steht. 22. Karl wird euch sehr gern helfen. 23. Unsere Freunde werden uns morgen besuchen. 24. Sogar die Geschichte des dreißigjährigen Krieges scheint ihn nicht zu interessieren. 25. Karl war heute sehr aufmerksam. 26. Eure Freunde waren gestern hier. 27. Sie werden morgen Abend um acht Uhr ankommen. 28. Wir haben sehr angenehm in Berlin gelebt. 29. Wie lange haben Sie da gelebt? 30. Er kommt heute nicht. 31. Er wird heute nicht kommen. 32. Ihre Schwester hat sehr schön getanzt. 33. Ich habe Ihnen Lessing's Werke gekauft. 34. Sie sind sehr gütig. 35. Ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden. 36. Hörten Sie ihn früher oft? 37. Ich lese englisch ziemlich gut; aber ich verstehe Schakespeare nicht gut. 38. Diese Knaben sind gut; singen sie gut?

## 53.

1. Karl wird morgen von London kommen. 2. Die Magd kommt aus dem Keller, aus dem Garten, aus der Küche. 3. Ich reiste mit meinem Onkel, mit meiner Tante, mit euch, mit ihm, mit ihr, mit ihnen. 4. Wir werden unser Schreibebuch nach dem Frühstück zu Ihrem Lehrer bringen. 5. Bring mir einige Blumen aus dem Garten. 6. Schicket ihr eure Magd zum Schuhmacher oder zum Schneider? 7. Ich habe sie zum Schneider geschickt. 8. Werden wir zu eurer Tante heute gehen, oder werden wir zu Hause bleiben? 9. Warum sitzet ihr immer beim Feuer? 10. Kommet ihr aus der Kirche? 11. Keiner war außer meinem Lehrer gegenwärtig. 12. Die öffentliche Meinung war ihm zuwider. 13. Ihr Sohn geht zu Ihrem Bruder nach Liverpool; ist dies (dieses used substantively is usually contracted into dies) Ihrem Wunsche gemäß? 14. Ich schickte meinen Sohn nebst seinen beiden Schwestern zu meinem Bruder nach Liverpool. 15. Zwei meiner innigsten Freunde leben außer meinem Bruder dort. 16. Wir werden mit den Kindern nach dem Abendbrod ausgehen. 17. Diese Verbindung wird dem Wunsche ihrer Eltern zuwider sein. 18. Friedrich wird nebst seinen Brüdern und Schwestern nächsten Herbst nach Amerika auswandern. 19. Ich habe seit jenem Mittagsmahl bei Ihrer Tante nichts wieder von ihm gehört. 20. Dieser Marsch war Marschall Moltkes Befehl entgegen.

## 55.

1. Wir fahren durch die Stadt. 2. die Rhone fließt durch einen See. 3. Der Weg durchs (durch das) Thal ist recht hübsch. 4. Sie gehen den Wald entlang, and Sie gehen entlang des Waldes. 5. Honig ist gut für den Magen. 6. Soldaten fechten für ihren König und (für) ihr Vaterland. 7. Dieses Buch ist ein Geschenk für einen Freund. 8. Er war recht gütig gegen mich. 9. Der König führte die Armee gegen den Feind. 10. Sie sitzen um einen großen Baum. 11. Wir werden morgen um acht Uhr frühstücken. 12. Er war ohne einen

Regenſchirm. 13. Ich werde nicht gegen den Strom ſchwimmen. 14. Wir werden um die Stadt gehen. 15. Marie geht nie ohne ihren Bruder zu einem Balle. 16. Die Knaben gehen durch den Wald. 17. Ich werde binnen zwei Wochen auf einen Monat nach London gehen; und ich werde nach dieſer Zeit mit zwei Freunden zu meinem Bruder gehen. 18. Wir ſehen mit den Augen; wir hören mit den Ohren. 19. Die Knaben laufen gegen den Baum. 20. Die Äpfel ſind für die Knaben und die Birnen für die Mädchen. 21. Ich werde durch den Wald nicht ohne einen Führer gehen. 22. Was iſt das Leben ohne einen Freund? 23. Er wird gegen den Willen ſeines Vaters zu dem Arzte gehen. 24. Warum iſt dieſer Knabe immer gegen mich, ihn, ſie, ſie, uns? 25. Er kommt aus der Schule, und ſie geht zu der Gärtnerin. 26. Wir gehen gewöhnlich um die Stadt. 27. Meine Schweſter will nie ohne ſie, ihn, mich zu ihrer Lehrerin gehen. 28. Wer nicht für mich iſt, iſt gegen mich. 29. Ihr ſeid ſehr undankbar gegen mich. 30. Wo iſt ihr jüngſter Bruder? 31. Er wird mit meiner älteſten Schweſter nach Deutſchland reiſen. 32. Mein Bruder wird wieder für mich nach Berlin gehen. 33. Sie retteten endlich ihren Kameraden, aber nicht ohne Gefahr. 34. Ich danke Ihnen für Ihren guten Rath. 35. Butter und Wachs ſchmelzen von der Hitze der Sonne. 36. Wir ſind für Sie, nicht gegen Sie. 37. Mein wilder Neffe rennt gegen den Baum. 38. Wir gehen durch das Gras. 39. Ich werde um dieſe kleine Inſel ſchwimmen.

## [45.] PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Der Fiſch ſchwimmt **in dem** Waſſer. | *The fish swims* **in** *the water.* |
| 2. Der Hund ſpringt **in das** Waſſer. | *The dog springs* **into** *the water* |
| 3. Der Vogel ſitzt **auf dem** Baume. | *The bird is sitting upon the tree.* |
| 4. Der Vogel fliegt auf den Baum. | *The bird is flying upon the tree.* |

*Observations.*—1. The Prepositions governing sometimes the Dative and sometimes the Accusative are *nine* in number:

an[ăn], *at, to, on*
auf[ouf], *on, upon*
hinter[hĭn'-tᵉr], *behind*
in[ĭn], *in, into*
neben[nā'-bᵉn], *by, near, close to, by the side of*
über[ēē'-bᵉr] *over, above, beyond, by way of* (via)
unter[ün'-tᵉr], *under, among, below, beneath*
vor[fōr], *before, in front of, in the presence of*
zwiſchen[tsvĭ'-shᵉn], *between, among.*

2. These Prepositions govern the accusative when a motion from one place **to** another is indicated; M. S. 2, 4.

3. When a state of repose, or a motion **within** a place is expressed, they govern the dative; M. S. 1, 3. Hence the dative follows when the question **where?** or **in what** *place?* may be used; but the accusative is required when the question **whither? where to?** or **to what place?** may be applied.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

After an, auf, hinter, neben, in,
Über, unter, vor, and zwiſchen,
Put the Accusative when you can
Ask the question **whither?**
But the Dative is placed there
When you ask the question **where?**

*Take Notice!* When the use of the prepositions rests upon relations that are so abstract that the questions **where?** or **whither?** cannot be applied, the following rules will be of assistance:

*a.* **Auf** and **über** are generally used with the Accusative case, as: Ich werde **auf** alle Fälle gehen, *I shall go in all cases* (at all events); es war **über** alle Erwartung ſchön, *it was beautiful beyond all expectation.*

*b.* **An, in, unter, vor** and **zwiſchen** are generally used with the Dative case; Er iſt **an** Gütern reich, *he is rich in landed estates*; Dein Bruder iſt **in** dieſer Beziehung ſehr träge, *your brother is in this respect very lazy.*

*c.* **Unter** is translated by *among* when it refers to persons or living objects in general: Ich lebe unter guten Menſchen, unter wilden Thieren, *I live among good people, among wild beasts.* In expressions relating to time, unter usually signifies *during*: Es war **unter** der Regierung Friedrichs des Großen, *it was* **during** *the reign of Frederic the Great.*

## 56.

Johann [yō-hän'], *John*
treten* [trā'-tᵉn], *to tread, step*
liegen* [lē'-gᵉn], *to lie, to rest lengthwise*
der Ofen* [ō'-fᵉn] (-s, Öfen), *stove*
das Schloß* [shlös] (-es, Schlöſſer), *castle, palace, lock*
der Spiegel* [spē'-gᵉl] (-s), *mirror, looking-glass*
das Bild* [bilt] (-s, -er), *picture*
ſtellen [stěl'-lᵉn], *to set, to place* (p. 182, Stuhl)
die Bank* [bänk] (Bänke), *bench*
der Wilddieb* [vilt'-dēᵇ] (-es, -e), *deer-stealer, poacher*
die Brücke* [brĭk'-kᵉ] (-n), *bridge*
die Schale* [shah'-lᵉ] (-en), *scale*
die Ferne* [fĕr'-nᵉ] (-n), *distance*
der Horcher* [hör'-ʏᵉr] (-s), *listener*
eigen* [ī'-gᵉn], *own*
die Schande* [shän'-dᵉ], *disgrace, shame*
der Hochmuth* [hōᶜʰ'-mūt] (-es), *pride, haughtiness*
der Fall* [fäl] (-es, Fälle), *downfall, ruin*

der Biſſen*[bĭs'-sᵉn], *bit, morsel*
die Taſche*[tä'-shᵉ] (–en), *pocket*
das Leid*[līt], (–es), *harm, affliction*
die Eigenſchaft*[ī'-gᵉn-shäft*](–en) *attribute, quality*
die Regel[rā'-gᵉl] (–n), *rule*
(see p. 253, regelmäßig)
die Angewöhnung*[än'-gᵉ-vēā*-nūnᵏ], *the act of accustoming (oneself) to, habit*
die Thorheit*[tōr'-hīt] (–en), *folly, stupidity*
der Stolz*[stölts] (–es), *pride*
wachſen*[vä'-xᵉn], *to grow*
hängen[häng'-ᵉn], *to hang*
das Holz*[hölts] (–es, Hölzer), *wood.*

1. Ich ſtehe unter einem Baume. 2. Ich trete unter einen Baum. 3. Wer unter dieſen Schülern hat gut gelernt? 4. Johann geht unter die Soldaten. 5. Der Brief liegt auf dem Tiſche neben der Bibel. 6. Sie hat den Brief auf den Tiſch, neben die Bibel gelegt. 7. Er bringt den Tiſch an den Ofen. 8. Sie geht in das andere Zimmer des Schloſſes und ſetzt das Licht auf den Tiſch an dem Ofen. 9. Seid Ihr in der Kirche geweſen? 10. Noch nicht, wir gehen bald mit der Mutter in die Kirche. 11. Er war vor einer Stunde hier. 12. Ich gehe vor den Spiegel und ſehe darin mein Bild. 13. Man legt den Rock und den Hut nicht unter, ſondern auf die Bank. 14. Die Schuhe ſtehen unter der Bank. 15. Ich lege das Kind neben dich. 16. Das Kind liegt neben mir. 17. Ein großer Baum war zwiſchen der Stadt und dem Fluſſe. 18. Ich werde Sie zwiſchen die Stadt und den Fluß bringen und Ihnen den großen Baum an dem Fluſſe zeigen. 19. Sein Haus war hinter der Mühle. 20. Wir gehen hinter die Mühle und warten dort neben der alten Eiche. 21. Das Bild Karls hängt über dem Bilde des Vaters. 22. Wir hängen des Vaters Bild über das des Karl. 23. Die Wilddiebe werden kommen und werden den Hirſch aus dem Walde neben unſere Eiche treiben. 24. Warum laufen die Kinder ſo ſchnell über die Brücke? 25. Sie werden über den Hund an der Thüre fallen. 26. Auf hohen Stühlen ſitzt man ſchlecht, (Read, man ſitzt ſchlecht etc.)(Prov.) 27. Das Unglück ſitzt nicht immer nur vor armer Leute Thür (Prov.). 28. Man kennt den Vogel an den Federn (Prov.). 29. Schmerz und Freude liegt in einer Schale (Seume). 30. Alte Leute ſehen am beſten in die Ferne (Prov.). 31. Ein Horcher hinter der Wand hört ſeine eigene Schand (Prov.). 32. Hochmuth kommt vor dem Falle (Prov.). 33. Ein Biſſen Brod in der Taſche iſt beſſer als eine Feder auf dem Hut(Prov). 34. Auf Regen folgt Sonnenſchein (Prov.). 35. Zwiſchen Freud' und Leid iſt die Brücke nicht weit (Prov.). 36. Jede gute Eigenſchaft iſt in der Regel die Frucht von Angewöhnung (Leſſing). 37. In der Arbeit iſt die Quelle der Tugend (Herder). 38. Thorheit und Stolz wachſen auf einem Holz (Prov.).

## 57.

Wohin?*[vō-hĭn'], *whither*
der Markt*[märkt] (–es, Märkte), *market*
der Rücken*[rĭ'-kᵉn](–s), *back, rear*
auf und ab[ouf, ap], *up and down*
das Sommerhaus[sŏm'-mᵉr-hous"](–es, –"er), *summer-house*
die Wache*[wä'-ye] (–n), *watch, guard*
der Mantel*[măn'-tᵉl](–s, Mäntel), *cloak, mantle*
der Nagel*[nah'-gᵉl] (–s, Nägel), *nail*
der Ritter*[rĭt'-tᵉr] (–s), *knight*
der Sand[zănt] (–es), *sand*
der Fischer*[fĭsh'-ᵉr] (–s), *fisherman*
das Haupt*[houpt] (–es, Häupter), *head*
segeln*[zā'-gᵉln], *to sail*
der Graben*[grah'-bᵉn] (–s, Gräben), *ditch, trench*
querüber*[kvār'-ēē"-bᵉr], *across, athwart*
der Teich*[tĭy] (–es, –e), *pond*
der Arm[ărm], (–es, –e), *arm*
das Eigenschaftswort[ĭ'-gĕn-shăfts-vŏrt"], *adjective*
das Dingwort[dĭng'-vŏrt], *noun*
das Dickicht*[dĭk'-ĭyt] (–s, –e), *thicket*
manchmal*[mănʏ'-mahl], *many a time*
der Helm*[hĕlm] (–es, –e), *helm, helmet.*

1. Will the merchant come before or after 'you? 2. He will come before me. 3. Where does 'your mother go? 4. She goes into the kitchen, into the cellar, to (auf with def. art.) market. 5. Where have 'you put my book? 6. I have put it on the table, under the chair. 7. Where is (def. art.)little Eliza? 8. She is sitting on the chair, under the table, at (an) the door. 9. Do 'you write to (an) 'your cousin or to 'your niece? 10. No, I write to my little nephew. 11. We put our coats upon the bench. 12. The joiner has put all his benches into this room. 13. I often think of (an) you; but you never think of me. 14. He is at (in, with def. art.) school. 15. We have been at (def. art.) school and at (def. art.) church. 16. I am sitting behind her. 17. They throw the money behind their backs. 18. We go into his room. 19. We shall go up and down in his room. 20. they placed a few chairs before the summer-house. 21. The officer had set a guard before the old building. 22. The cloak hangs on a nail. 23. The knight hangs his helmet on a nail. 24. The child is sitting on the sand. 25. The servant (fem.) had put (setzen) the child on the sand. 26. A fisherman stands in the boat. 27. I quickly jumped into the boat. 28. A sword hangs over his head (Haupt) 29. A boat was sailing over the lake. 30. The children jump over the ditch. 31. The boys are swimming across the river. 32. This man had often rested under my roof. 33. The gentleman will take his

hat under his arm. 34. Three small pictures hang beneath the mirror. 35. Behind the thicket (there) was a pond. 36. The thieves run behind the thicket. 37. The swallows have their nest under the roof. 38. He put it before the stove. 39. We shall put the adjective before the noun. 40. The adjective stands before the noun. 41. William placed the chair between the table and the wall. 42. The moon sometimes stands between the sun and the earth. 43. The sun shines upon the trees. 44. Foxes live in the forests, fishes in the water. 45. The child stands behind the chair.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Treten,** *to* **tread,** *step*; transit. *to* **tread** *upon, trample*; A. S. *tredan*, akin to Lat. *trudo*, to tread. Tab V. 11.

**liegen,** *to* **lie,** *to incline, rest lengthwise*; A. S. *licgan*. Tab V. 20.

**Ofen,** *stove* (in general,) also **oven.** Tab. V. 7 and 38.

**Schloß,** *castle, palace* and *lock*, from ſchließen, *to lock up*, (comp. **slot**; Tab. V. 10), hence Schloß, an enclosed fortified habitation (castle) of the noble, in opposition to the open village of the peasant.

**Spiegel,** *mirror, looking-glass*, from Lat. *speculum*, mirror, from *specio*, to see, akin to Engl. to **spy,** and is to be found in **spec**tator, in**spect,** con**spic**uous, etc.

**Bild,** *represented form, effigy, picture*, from **bilden,** (p. 253, Bildung).

**Bank, bench.** A. S. *bænc*. Tab. V. 15.

**Wilddieb,** *deer-stealer, poacher*, c. of Wild, *deer, game*, conn. with Wald, *weald, wold, wood*, prop. **wild** *animals*, and **dieb,** p. 107.

**treiben,** *to* **drive.** Tab. V. 6.

**Brücke, bri***dge*. Tab. V. 15.

**Schale, shell** or *dish*, then dish of a balance, **scale**; A. S. *scale*, a shell, *scalu*, a balance; Dutch, *shaal*, balance. Tab. V. 12 and 14.

**Ferne,** *farness, distance*; the adjective fern, ferne, **far** *off, distant*, A. S. *feor*, ahd. *ferri*, allied to Lat. *porro*, at a distance, and perhaps to A. S. *faran*, Germ. fahren, (p. 112), Old Engl. *fare*, to go.

**Horcher, hearkner,** *listener*, from horchen (p. 107) and er (p. 103, Lehrer). Tab. V. 16.

**eigen, own.** Goth. *aigin*, A. S. *agen*, properly *possessed*, pa. partic. of the ahd. verb *eigan*, mhd. *eigen*, nhd. eignen, to have, to possess. Tab. V. 21.

**Schande,** *disgrace, shame*. Goth. *skanda*, A. S. *sceonde*, from *scindan*, **ſchinden,** *to* **skin,** *excoriate*, originally *bodily hurt, violation*, then

*moral* hurt, high degree of dishonor; comp. Old Engl. **shend**; according to others connected with Skandal, Lat. *scandalam*, Gr. *skandalon*, **scand**al; the English **scoundrel**, prob. from Germ. **Schandkerl**, Schande, *disgrace*, and **Kerl**, *fellow*, **churl**, Scot. **carl**.

**Hochmuth, haughtiness**, *pride*, c. of hoch (p. 100), and **Muth, mood**, (p. 253. Gemüth), ahd. *hohmuoti*, formerly high-mindedness, magnanimity, now only in a bad sense *haughtiness, insolence, pride*.

**Fall, fall**, *downfall, ruin* from fallen (p. 102). The corresponding English proverb: *Pride goeth before destruction*.

**Biſſen, bit**. *morsel*, prob. a **bite**, a small piece or mouthful, from **beißen**, p. 156; thus *morsel*, from Lat. *mordeo*, to bite. Tab. V. 10.

**Taſche**, *pocket*, ahd. *taska*, Itl. *tasca*. Derivation obscure. Orig. prob. in general a conservatory, case, box, comp. Fr. *tasse*. Perhaps conn. with Engl. **tasse**, usually in plur. **tasses**, (see Webster), the Engl. word having limited the general meaning.

**Leid**, *harm, hurt, affliction*; A. S. *lath*, wrong, offence, from leiden, *to suffer*, in affinity with to **loathe**, A. S. *lathian*.

**Eigenſchaft**, *attribute, quality*, c. of eigen, p. 263, and ſchaft, p. 177; orig. *property*, then peculiarity of a thing.

**Angewöhnung**, *the act of accustoming* (one's self), *to habit, habitude*, from angewöhnen, *to accustom, habituate*, (one to); comp. the Germ. wohnen, p. 139, and angewöhnen, with Engl. to inhabit and to habituate.

**Thorheit**, *folly, stupidity*, c. of der Thor, p, 174, and heit, p. 105.

**Stolz**, *pride haughtiness*; ahd. mhd. *stolz*, Low Germ. *stolt*, Engl. Dutch, **stout**, Old Fr. *estout*=bold, strong, then full of self-sufficiency in noble and ignoble sense. Acc. to others conn. with **Stelze, stilt** (Tab. V. 8), hence ſtolz=*stilted*; from a supposed ahd. verb *stelzan*, to go on stilts; then in a stilted or proud manner.

**wachſen**, *to grow, increase*, **wax** (as the **wax**ing moon); A. S. *weaxan*, conn. with Lat. *augeo*, Gr. *auxano*, to grow.

**Holz**, *wood*; Engl. **holt**, a wood or woody hill; conn. with Gr. *hule*, forest wood. Tab. V. 8 and 38.

**Wohin**, *whither, toward what place* (hence), c. of wo, p. 219, and hin, p. 181. These words are often separated by intervening words: wo . . . . . hin, as, **wo** gehen Sie **hin**?=wohin gehen Sie? *whither do you go?*

**Markt, market**, lit. *a place for merchandise*; Lat. *mercatus, merx*, merchandise.

**Rücken**, *back, rear*, **ridge, rig** (Scotch); Old Sax. *hruggi*, A. S. *hric*; akin to ragen, *to jut out, project, stand forth*, and recken, *to extend, to* **rack**, *stretch*.

**Wache, watch,** *guara*, from wachen, p. 139.

**Mantel, mantle.** A. S. *mentel*, Fr. *manteau*, Lat. *mantellum.*

**Nagel, nail.** A. S. *nægel.* Tab. V. 20.

**Ritter,** *knight, chevalier*, prop. a **rider** on a horse; (Tab. V. 11) like *chevalier*, from *cheval*, horse, *a horseman.*

**Helm, helm, helmet,** from Germ. hehlen, A. S. *helan*, Lat. *celare*, to conceal, to hide, cover.

**Fiſcher, fisher***man*, c. of Fiſch, p. 168, and er, p. 103.

**Haupt, head,** (prop. Haubt, mhd. *houbit*); A. S. *heafd, heafod*, Old Engl. **havet,** Lat. *caput.*

**ſegeln,** *to be moved by* **sails,** *to* **sail.** Tab. V. 20.

**Graben,** *ditch, trench*, from graben, *to dig, to* **grub,** *to* **grave;** A. S. *grafan*, allied to Greek *grapho*, to engrave, hence das **Grab, grave;** die **Grube,** *pit*, **groove.** Tab. V. 6.

**querüber,** *across, athwart*, c. of quer, *cross*, **queer,** mhd. *twer*, A. S. *thweork, thwart*, and **über, over.** Tab. V. 6.

**Teich,** *pond, pool*, **dike, ditch.** Tab. V. 11, 16 and 17.

**Dickicht, thicket,** a collection of trees or shrubs, **thick**ly or closely set; from **dick, thick.** Tab. V. 9.

**manchmal, many** *a time*, c. of manch, ahd. *and*, A. S. *manig*, Engl. **many,** and mal, p. 117, niemals.

## [46.] PREPOSITIONS CONTRACTED WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Sie ſtellt die Blumen **vors** Fenſter. | *She puts the flowers before the window.* |
| 2. Das Kind iſt **unterm** Tiſche. | *The child is under the table.* |
| 3. Geh' **zum** Buchbinder. | *Go to the book-binder.* |
| 4. Karl iſt **beim** Lehrer. | *Charles is with the teacher.* |
| 5. Anna iſt **zur** Schweſter gegangen. | *Anna has gone to her sister.* |
| 6. Wirf das Papier **ins** Feuer. | *Throw the paper into the fire.* |
| 7. Der Knabe ſteigt **durchs** Fenſter. | *The boy steps through the window.* |
| 8. Der Brief iſt **vom** Vater. | *The letter is from the father.* |
| 9. Er ſteht **am** Thore. | *He is standing at the gate.* |
| 10. Ich bin **im** Zimmer. | *I am in the room.* |
| 11. Der Vogel fliegt **aufs** Dach. | *The bird flies upon the roof.* |
| 12. Sie treten **ans** Fenſter. | *They proceed to the window.* |

*Observations.* The Prepositions **an, auf, bei, durch, für, in, von, vor, zu** allow a contraction with the definite article.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **am**=an dem | **durchs**=durch das | **vom**=von dem |
| **ans**=an das | **fürs**=für das | **vors**=vor das |
| **aufs**=auf das | **ins**=in das | **zum**=zu dem |
| **beim**=bei dem | **im**=in dem | **zur**=zu der. |

## 58.

der Engländer[ĕng'-län"-dᵉr], *the Englishman*
das Bett*[bĕt] (–es, –en), *bed*
das Theater*[tē-ah'-tᵉr] (–s), *theatre*
das Sandkorn*[zänt'-korn"] (–es, körner), *grain of sand*
die Schneiderin*[shnī'-dᵉ-rĭn"] (–nen), *tailoress*
ander*[ăn'-dᵉr], *other*
das Dach*[dăch] (–es, Dächer), *roof*
der Knecht*[knĕyt] (–es, –e), *servant-man*
draußen*[drou'-sᵉn], *out of doors*
das Schulhaus[shūl'-hous"] (–es, häuser), *school-house*
pflanzen,* *to plant* (see Pflanz 101).
das Landhaus*[länt'-hous"] (–es, häuser), *country-house*
der Titel*[tē'-tᵉl] (–s), *title*
der Roman*[rō-mahn'] (–es, –e), *novel*
das Bethaus*[bāt'-hous], *house of prayer*
lauern*[lou'-ᵉrn], *to lurk, be on the watch*
der Teufel*[toi'-fᵉl] (–s), *devil*
das Trinkhaus*[trĭnk'-hous], *tap-house, tavern*
die Weisheit*[vīs'-hīt], *wisdom*
das Rad*[rät] (–es, Räder), *wheel*
knarren*[knär'-rᵉn], *to creak, jar*
der Adel*[ah'-dᵉl] (–s), *noble-rank, nobility*
das Geblüt*[gᵉ-blēēt'] (–es), *blood, mass of blood*
die Axt*[ăxt] (Äxte), *axe*
ersparen*[ᵉr-spah'-rᵉn], *to spare, save*
kindisch*[kĭn'-dĭsh], *childish*
wissen*[vĭs'-sᵉn], *to know*
die Flöte*[flēa'-tᵉ] (–n), *flute*
der Degen*[dā'-gᵉn] (–s), *sword*
das Bündelchen*[bĭn'-dᵉl-yᵉn], *little bundle*
die Puppe*[püp'-pᵉ] (–n), *doll, puppet*
der Winkel*[vĭn'-kᵉl] (–s), *corner, angle*
ruhen*[rū'-ʰᵉn], *to rest, repose.*

1. Diese wilden Knaben werden ins Wasser fallen. 2. Sie werden den Engländer im Theater oder am Schlosse des Königs finden. 3. Die Katze ist unterm Bette. 4. Mein Bruder hat das Buch vom Lehrer geholt. 5. Er wird beim Gärtner sein, oder wir gehen vom Gärtner zur Gärtnerin. 6. Du wirst dir ein Sandkorn ins Auge bringen. 7. Er holt sie ans Fenster. 8. Sie stehen dort am Baume. 9. Gehen Sie zum Schneider oder zur Schneiderin? 10. Die Thür wird nicht offen sein; Sie steigen dann

durchs Fenſter ins Zimmer und holen mir das Buch vom Tiſche am Ofen. 11. Wohnen Sie beim Schuhmacher? 12. Nein, ich wohne im Dorfe. 13. Unſer Canarienvogel kommt vom andern Zimmer und fliegt durchs Fenſter auf die Straße. 14. Unſer Knecht holte ihn vom Dache. 15. Man hat Linden vors Schulhaus gepflanzt. 16. Waren Sie ſchon am Rhein? 17. Ja, ich wohnte einen ganzen Monat in einem Landhauſe am Rhein. 18. Landhaus am Rhein! Iſt das nicht der Titel eines Romans von Berthold Auerbach? 19. Gegenüber dem Bethaus lauert der Teufel im Trinkhaus (Read: der Teufel lauert, etc.) (Prov.). 20. Die Alten zum Rath, die Jungen zur That (Prov.). 21. Unglück iſt die Schule zur Weisheit (Prov.). 22. Das ſchlechteſte Rad knarrt am meiſten (Prov.). 23. Adel ſitzt im Gemüthe, nicht im Geblüte (Prov.). 24. Treue Hand geht durchs ganze Land (Prov.). 25. Freund in der Noth, Freund im Tod, Freund hinterm Rücken, ſind drei ſtarke Brücken (Prov.). 26. Die Axt im Haus erſpart den Zimmermann (Schiller). 27. Hoher Sinn liegt oft im kindiſchen Spiel (Schiller). 28. Kinder wiſſen beim Spiel aus allem etwas zu machen: ein Stock wird zur Flöte, ein Stück Holz zum Degen, jedes Bündelchen zur Puppe und jeder Winkel zur Hütte (Göthe). 29. Im Arme der Mutter ruht das Kind am beſten (Redwitz).

## 59.

Entweder*[ēnt'-vā"dᵉr] . . . . oder, *either—or*
gefährlich*[gᵉ-fāīr'-lĭy], *dangerous*
die Zange*[tsăn'-gᵉ] (–n), *tongs*
der Bach*[bäᶜʰ] (–es, Bäche), *brook, rivulet, beck*
ſchwellen*[shvĕl'-lᵉn], *to swell*
der Gewitterregen*[gᵉ-vĭt'-tᵉr-rā"-gᵉn] (–s), *thunder-shower*
der Stich*[stĭy] (–es, –e), *sting*
die Weſpe*[vᵉs'-pᵉ] (–n), *wasp*
der Sperrſitz*[spĕr'-zĭts] (–es, e), *stalls*
das Regiment*[rē"-gĭ-mentˈ] (–s, –er), *regiment*
das Ufer*[ū'-fᵉr] ( s), *bank*
**all day, den ganzen Tag,** (Idiom!).
übergehen[ēē'-bᵉr-gā"-ʰen], *to go over.*

1. Is the servant in the cellar or in the garden? 2. We shall either go to (in) the theatre or to (in) the concert. 3. Did 'you send 'your servant to the shoemaker('s)* or to the wife (Frau) of the shoemaker? 4. Shall we go to aunt('s) to-day? 5. Why are you always sitting near (bei) the fire? 6. They placed chairs and benches before the house. 7. Will 'your sister go into (auf) the country? 8. The bird is flying over the house. 9. We are sitting at the table. 10. My brother is in the theatre. 11. The wound on (an) the head of

*Do not translate the letter within the parenthesis.

this man is not dangerous. 12. They bring these tongs to the smith. 13. The officer had set a guard before the building. 14. She sits at (an) the window all day. 15. The brooks are swelling from (von) the thunder-shower. 16. The eyes of the child will swell from the sting of a wasp. 17. The boy is lying on (an) the shore. 18. They go to (in) the theatre early and will get a good place in the stalls. 19. The general together with his whole regiment will go over to the enemy. 20. He is standing on (an) the bank of the river. 21. He promises to come to me at five o'clock; after dinner he will (transl. will he go) go with me to (in) the concert.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Bett, bed.** Tab. V. 11.

**Theater, theatre,** *a place where public representations are seen*; Gr. *theatron—theaomai*, to see.

**Sandkorn,** *grain of* **sand,** c. of Sand, *sand*, and Korn, *grain*, **corn.**

**Schneiderin,** *tailoress*, or wife of a tailor, from Schneider, p. 168.

**ander, other.** Goth. *anthar*, Sans. *antara*. Tab V. 9 and 26.

**Dach,** *roof*, **thatch, thach,** from **decken,** A. S. *theccan*, to cover, to **deck,** whence the **deck** of a ship, conn. with Lat. *tego*, whence *detect*, *protect*, etc. Tab V. 9, 16, 17.

**Knecht,** *servant-man*. A. S. *cniht*, Swiss, *knecht*, a strong youth, **knight.** comp. Introduct. Letter, p. 3. Tab. V. 18 and 38.

**draußen, out***side*, **out** *of doors*, c. of **dar, there,** p. 122, and außen, fr. **aus, out,** hence dar außen (contracted draußen) **out-there, out***side*.

**Landhaus,** *country-***house,** c. of Land, p. 110, and Haus.

**Titel, title.** Lat. *titulus*.

**Roman,** (accent the last syllable! p. 22, 10), *novel*, **romance,** a tale written in one of the dialects which sprung from the **Roman** or Latin language.

**Bethaus, house** *of prayer*, c. of beten (p. 120), and house.

**lauern,** *to* **lurch,** *to* **lurk,** *be on the watch*, Dutch, *loeren*, conn. with to **lower,** derivation obscure.

**Teufel, devil.** Ahd. *tiufal*, A. S. *deofol, diobul*, Lat. *diabolus*, Gr. *diabolos*, properly the *slanderer*, the *accuser*, *Satan*, from *diaballein*, to slander.

**Trinkhaus,** *tap-***house,** *tavern*, c. of trinken (p. 80), and house.

**Weisheit, wis***dom*, c. of **weise, wise,** A. S. *wis*, from the type *vid—*, Sans. to see, learn, know, Lat. *vid-ere*, to see, and heit (p. 135).

**Rad,** *wheel*; mhd. *rat*, Lat. *rota*, from which **rote,** lit. a *wheel* or round of words.

**knarren,** *to creak, jar*, mhd. *gnarren*, A. S. *gnyrran*, allied to Engl. **snarl**; from the sound.

**Adel,** *noble rank, nobility*, from ahd. *adal*, Old Sax. *adhal*, *race*, esp. *noble race*, hence of noble extraction; Engl. (obs.) **ethel**=noble, see **adel**ing in Webster.

**Geblüt,** *blood, the mass of blood in the animal body*, then *kindred, consanguinity*, from Blut, p. 199; by means of ge- in a collective sense (p. 112).

**Axt, axe,** originally without **t**, in the 16th century still Ax and Achs, A. S. *æx*, derived from one root with Gr. *ake*=the *sharp edge* or *point* of anything, and Lat. *acies*, from *acuo*, to sharpen, comp. **acute.**

**erſparen,** *to* **spare,** *to save, lay up*, c. of **er**, p. 206, and ſparen; A. S. *sparian*, allied to Lat. *parco*, to spare.

**kindiſch, childish,** c. of Kind, and the suffix iſch (p. 88), which sometimes implies *a slighting notion*, like Engl. *ish*; thus, kindlich=*childlike* (*innocence*), *filial*, but kindiſch, *child***ish,** *infantile*, Bube, *boy*, *knave*, bübiſch, *knav***ish,** Weib, *wife, woman*, weibiſch, *woman***ish.**

**wiſſen,** *to know, be aware of*; Goth. and A. S. *witan*, prob. connected with Lat. *video*, to see; Engl. **wit**; comp. Weisheit, above. Tab. V. 10.

**Flöte, flute,** from Lat. *flo, flatum*, to blow.

**Degen,** *sword.* Fr. *dague*, Engl. **dagger,** poniard, dirk, conn. with Gr. *thegein*, to sharpen.

**Bündelchen,** *a little* **bundle**; A. S. *byndel*, from binden, *to bind*, formed by the two suffixes **el** and **chen.** Like English **el** the German **el** has sometimes a diminutive signification; comp. dam**sel** and Dämm**chen**; thus Knöch**el,** (dim. of Knochen, *bone*), knuck**el**; Säck**el** (dim. of Sack, *sack*), and satch**el.**

**Puppe,** *doll*, **puppe***t*, from L. Lat. *puppa*, Lat. *pupa*, girl, the fem. form of *pupus*, a little boy, from which Bube, *boy*, *pupil.*

**Winkel,** *angle, nook, corner*; ahd. *winchil*, A. S. *vincel*; from winken, in the orig. and general signification *to bend, to deviate, recede*, and wanken, *to totter, recede*, turn from one side to another, hence Winkel, properly *a bend*, a receding enclosed space.

**entweder,** *either*; mhd. *eintweder*, from *eindeweder*=**one** and *de***weder, whether**=one of the two, entweder . . . . oder, *either* . . . . *or.*

**gefährlich,** *dangerous*, from Gefahr, p. 251.

**Zange, tongs.** A. S. *tange.* Tab. V. 8.

**Bach,** *brook, rivulet.* A. S. *becc*, Engl. **beck** (?). Tab. V. 16.

**ſchwellen,** *to* **swell.** A. S. *swellan.* Tab. V. 13.

**Gewitterregen,** *thunder-shower*, c. of Gewitter, A. S. *gevidor*, collective of Wetter, p. 87, and Regen, p. 119.

**Stich,** *sting*, Goth. *sticks*, from **ſtechen,** *to pierce, stab,* **stick.** Tab. V. 16. Comp. ſticken, p. 125.

**Weſpe, wasp.** A. S. *wäsp*, Lat. *vespa.* Tab. V. 32.

**Sperrſitz,** *stalls, c. of* **Sperre,** *blocking up, closing,* **spar, bar,** from ſperren, *to* **bar,** *to block up,* and **Sitz, seat,** from ſitzen, p. 138.

*Take Notice!* By **ſ, s** (both in English and in German), added to the first letter, many roots are strengthened. Thus ſ-perren, *s-par*, of bar; *s-quash, s-queeze,* queticken; *s-queak,* quieken; *s-neeze,* nieſen; *s-cratch,* kratzen; *s-melt, melt,* ſch-melzen; ſ-chreien, *to cry*; ſ-terben, *s-tarve,* of **darben,** *to suffer, want,* ver-derben, *to be spoiled, to perish.*

**Ufer,** *bank.* A. S. *ofer* (?).

## [47.] PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Er wohnt **oberhalb** und ſie wohnt **unterhalb der** Stadt. — *He lives on the upperside, and she on the lower side of the town.*
2. Er thut es { des Geldes **halben.** / Vergnügens **halber.** } — *He does it* { *for the sake of money.* / *for the sake of pleasure* }
3. Iſt das Haus **jenſeit** oder **diesſeit des** Baches? — *Is the house on this side or on the further side of the brook?*
4. Er wird es **mittels** (or **mittelſt, vermittelſt**) Ihrer Hilfe thun. — *He will do it by means of 'your help.*
5. Er kommt { **wegen** meines Bruders / meines Bruders **wegen.** } — *He comes on account of my brother.*
6. Er geht { **ungeachtet** dieſer Warnung. / dieſer Warnung **ungeachtet.** } — *He goes notwithstanding this warning.*
7. Er wird **zufolge** dieſes Befehls nach Berlin reiſen. / Er wird dieſem Befehle **zufolge** nach Berlin reiſen. — *He will set out for Berlin in consequence of this order.*
8. Ich werde es **um** meines Bruders **willen** thun. — *I shall do it for the sake of my brother.*
9. Er geht { meinet / deinet / ſeinet / unſert } { halben or willen or wegen. } — *He goes for the sake of* { *me, / you, / him, / us, etc.* }

10. Sein Vater iſt **laut des** Briefes ſehr krank. *His father is very sick according to the letter.*
11. Ich fordere das Geld **kraft** meines Amtes. *I ask the money in virtue of (or by the power of) my office.*
12. Er reiſt **trotz des** ſchlechten Wetters. *He sets out in spite of the bad weather.*
13. Er war **während des** Krieges abweſend. *He was absent during the war.*
14. Schöne Burgen ſind **längs der** Küſte. *Beautiful castles are along the coast.*

*Observations.*—1. The following Prepositions govern the genitive:

außerhalb[ou'-sᵉr-hälbᵉ], *on the outside of, without*
innerhalb[⁸][in'-nᵉr-hälbᵉ] *inside of,*
oberhalb[o'-bᵉr-hälbᵉ], *above, on the upperside of*
unterhalb[ün'-tᵉr-hälbᵉ], *below, on the lower side of*
mittels, mittelſt, vermittelſt, kraft — *by means of, by virtue of, by dint of, in conformity with*
wegen[⁶][vā'-gᵉn], halb, halben, halber,[2 & 6] willen[vil'-lᵉn], um willen,[3 & 6] — *on account of, for the sake of, as regards, in behalf of, because of,*
diesſeit,[7] *on this side of*
jenſeit,[7] *on the further side of*
zufolge,[4] *in consequence of, in accordance with*
laut, *according to, by the wording of*
während[vāt'-renᵗ], *during, meanwhile*
unweit[ün'-vitᵉ], unfern[ün'-fĕrnᵉ] — *not far from*
längs[5][längs], *along*
trotz[5][tröts], *in spite of*
anſtatt[ăn-stätᵗ], ſtatt — *instead of.*
vermöge[fᵉr-méâ-gᵉ] *by virtue, by dint.*
ungeachtet, *in spite of, notwithstanding.*

2. **Halben** and **halber** always follow the word they govern; M. S. 2. **Halber** is sometimes preceded by **um**, placed before the noun: um des Friedens halber, *for the sake of peace.*

3. The word governed by **um . . . . . willen** is placed between **um** and **willen.** M. S. 8.

4. **zufolge** governs the genitive, when it *precedes*, the dative, when it *follows* the word governed by it. M. S. 7.

5. **Längs** and **trotz** are used indifferently with the genitive and dative case. **Trotz** denotes sometimes the equalling or surpassing an action in degree or measure, *in which sense it invariably governs the dative*, as: Sie ſchwatzt[shvätst] trotz einer Elſter[ĕls'-tᵉr], *she chatters like a magpie (or more or worse than a magpie).*

6. Standing with *personal pronouns*, the prepositions **halben, wegen, willen, um . . . . willen,** are invariably placed **after** (the genit.) **meiner, deiner, ſeiner, ihrer**; the two words are united and the **r** changed into **t**, thus: meinethalben, meinetwegen, meinetwillen, um meinetwillen, *on my account etc.* **Unſer** and **euer** add **t** (euer, after having placed the **e** before the **r after it**), unſertwegen, *for the sake of us*, euretwegen, *for the sake of you.*

7. **diesſeits** and **jenſeits** ought to be used only as adverbs, hence **diesſeit** (not **diesſeits**) des Fluſſes, jenſeit (not jenſeits) des Fluſſes; but Er wohnt **diesſeits** und ich wohne jenſeits, *he lives on this side and I on the other side.*

*Take Notice!* By **s** a great many adverbs are formed from substantives and adjectives, thus **abends**, *at eve, in the evening*; **morgens**, *in the morning*; **anders**, *otherwise, else*; **anfangs**, *at first, in the beginning*; **bereits**, *already*; **beſonders**, *especially*; **eilends**, *hastily*; **falls**, *in case, if, provided*; **allerdings**, *by all means*, **hinterrücks**, *from behind, etc.*

8. **Innerhalb** may refer to a specified space of time, as: **innerhalb** einer Stunde, eines Tages, *within an hour, a day.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

With the genitive we use:
Unweit, wegen, kraft and während,
Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
Oberhalb and unterhalb,
Innerhalb and außerhalb,
Diesſeit, jenſeit, halben, halber,
Vermittelſt, mittels, anſtatt, ſtatt,
Um . . . willen, längs, zufolge, trotz;
The last three, however, know,
Also with the dative go.

## 60.

das Hinderniß*[hĭn'-dᵉr-nĭsˢ] (iſſes, –e), *hinderance, obstacle*
die Beſchreibung*[bᵉ-shrī'-bŭnᵏ] (–en), *description*
der Strauß*[strous] (–es, –e), *ostrich*
das Lager*[lah'-gᵉr] (–s, Läger), *camp, lair*
der Muth*[mût] (–es), *courage*
doch*[dŏᶜʰ], *yet, still, though*
jenſeits*(adverb), *on the other side, beyond*
diesſeits*(adverb), *on this side*
predigen*[prā'-dĭ-gᵉnˢ], *to preach*
Ninive[nēˢ-nĭ-vā'], *Nineveh*
göttlich*[gŭt'-lĭy], *divine*
bereitwillig*[bᵉ-rīt'-vĭlˢ-lĭy] *ready, willing*
wirklich*[vĭrk'-lĭy], *actual, real, true*

Italien[ī"-tah'-lí-ᵉn], *Italy*
die Alpen[äl'-pᵉn], *the Alps*
der Plan[plahn](-es, Pläne), *plan, design*
füttern*[fŭt"-tern], *to feed*
der Zaun*[tsoûn] (-es, Zäune), *fence, hedge*
der Schaden*[shah'-dᵉn] (-s, Schäden), *damage*
ungeachtet*[ûn'-gᵉ-ächᵉ"-tet], *notwithstanding*
unweit*[ûn'-vīt], *not far from*
das Spielhaus*[spēl'-hous], *gaming-house*
das Armenhaus*[är'-mᵉn-hous"], *poor-house*
kalben*[kal'-bᵉn], *to calve*
ungestört*[un'-gᵉ-stēârt"], *undisturbed*
die Ruhe*[rū'-ʰe], *rest, repose*
das Grab*[grăᵇ] (-es, Gräber), *grave*
der Rhein[rīn], *Rhine*
nennen*[nĕn'-nᵉn], *to name, call*
die Besonnenheit*[bᵉ-zŏn'-nᵉn-hīt"], *discretion*
das Säugethier*[zoi'-gᵉ-tēr"] (-es, -e), *mammal*
wegen*[vā'-gᵉn], *on account of.*

1. Der Müller hat seine Mühle unweit meines Hauses. 2. Werden Sie es für ihn thun? 3. Ja, aber nur seines hohen Alters halber, ungeachtet aller Hindernisse. 4. Wo wohnt Ihr deutscher Lehrer? 5. Er wohnt außerhalb der Stadt, unweit des Flusses. 6. Werden Sie ihn finden? 7. Ich hoffe vermittelst Ihrer Beschreibung seine Wohnung zu finden. 8. Thun Sie es um Gottes willen nicht! 9. Der Strauß fliegt wegen seiner zu kurzen Flügel nicht. 10. Ihr habt nicht nur außerhalb, sondern auch innerhalb des Lagers Freunde. 11. Die Franzosen werden während der Nacht fliehen. 12. Der General lobte ihn öffentlich wegen seines Muthes. 13. Wirst du nicht meinethalben kommen? 14. Ja, ich werde es um deinetwillen thun. 15. Ihr beginnet doch diesen Krieg nicht unsertwegen? 16. Nicht euretwegen, aber um des Wohles unseres Landes willen. 17. Wir kommen anstatt unseres Vaters. 18. Sein Freund thut es wegen meiner Schwester. 19. Ihr Onkel war diesseit des Flusses und Ihre Tante jenseit der Brücke. 20. War der Onkel nicht jenseits und die Tante diesseits? 21. Ich glaube nicht. 22. Wir sind während des Regens im Hause gewesen. 23. Jonas predigte in Ninive kraft des göttlichen Befehles. 24. Die Menschen sind stets bereitwillig, Rath statt wirklicher Hülfe zu geben. 25. Gehe du anstatt meiner. 26. Italien liegt jenseit der Alpen. 27. Die Mühle liegt jenseit, des Müllers Haus aber diesseit des Baches. 28. Wir erreichten das Ufer mittelst eines Bootes. 29. Mein Bruder that es um seiner Freunde willen. 30. Er hat es meinethalben gethan. 31. Wir handelten deinem Plane zufolge. 32. Mann füttert die Katzen der Mäuse halber (Prov.). 33. Man ehrt den Baum des Schattens wegen (Prov.). 34. Der Fuchs grüßt den Zaun um des Gartens willen (Prov.). 35. Ungeachtet des Schadens wird der Thor nicht klug (Prov.). 36. Unweit

des Spielhauſes iſt das Armenhaus (Prov.). 37. Deinetwegen wird kein Ochſe kalben (Prov.). 38. Ungeſtörte Ruhe iſt nicht diesſeit des Grabes (Prov.). 39. Jenſeit des Rheins iſt noch lange nicht Frankreich (Prov.). 40. Man nennt den Storch wegen ſeiner Ruhe und Beſonnenheit den Philoſophen unter den Vögeln, wie man den Elephanten unter den Säugethieren den Weiſen nennt (Read, wie man nennt den Elephanten etc.) (Scheitlin).

## 61.

Reiſen nach, *to set out for*
Holland*[höl'-länt], *Holland*
wichtig*[vĭy'-tĭy], *important, weighty*
das Geſchäft[gᵉ-shäft'] (–es, –e), *business* (from ſchaffen, p. 168, Schöpfer)
das Fahrzeug*[fahr'-tsoik] (–es, –e), *vessel*
die Küſte*[kĭs'-tᵉ] (–n), *coast,* [*shore*
der Preis*[prĭs] (–es, –e), *price*
die Strickleiter*[strĭk'-lĭ"-tᵉr] (–n), *rope-ladder*
entkommen, *to escape, get off* (ent, p. 207, kommen, p. 80)
alt, *ancient*
befehlen[bᵉ-fa'-lᵉn], *to order, command* (p. 246, Befehl) (with dat.)
das Amt[ämt] (–es, Ämter), *office*
verhindern*[fᵉr"-hĭn'-dᵉrn], *to prevent, hinder*
die Bemühung[bᵉ-mée'-hung] (–en) *endeavor* (mühen, p. 181,) [*pose.*
vermuthen*[fᵉr"-mū'-tᵉn], *to sup-*
der Träger*[träĭ'-gᵉr] (–s), *porter* (tragen, p. 250)
der Koffer*[köf'-fᵉr] (–s), *coffer,* [*trunk*
der Main*[mĭn] (–es), *Maine*
bitten[bĭt'-tᵉn] (bat [baht]) gebeten, *to entreat* (p. 122, Bitte)
der Einfluß*[ĭn'-flüs] (–ſſes, Einflüſſe), *influence*
erfahren*[ᵉr-fah'-rᵉn], *to learn, experience*
die Reiſe*[rĭ'-zᵉ] (–n), *journey* (reiſen, p. 111)
die Kiſte*[kĭs'-tᵉ] (–n), *chest*
der Schlüſſel*[shlĭs'-sᵉl] (–s), *key* (ſchließen, p. 263, Schloß)
die Mündung[mĭn'-düng] (–en), *mouth of a river*
zu Hauſe, **at home,** *Idiom!*

1. **He set out ²for Holland ¹on account of an important business. 2. The vessel sailed along the coast. 3. I shall go ²to him ¹in consequence of 'your wish. 4. He will escape ²from (aus) his prison ¹by means of a rope-ladder. 5. They do not leave ²the house ¹during the rain. 6. An ancient church stands not far from the shore. 7. I order 'you ²to leave this town ¹by virtue of (kraft) my office. 8. She did not prevent it notwithstanding all her endeavors. 9. I suppose so (es), according to his letter. 10. The porter placed 'your coffer not far from the house. 11. My father set out instead of his brother. 12. His friend will

**In future the position of the members of a sentence will (when required) be indicated by numerals (in small type) on the left of words, hence translate: He set out on account of an important business for Holland.

do it for the sake of his sister, and I shall do it for your sake. 13 'Your uncle was on this side of the river. 14. Where did 'your aunt live (wohnen)? 15. She lived on the other side. 16. She lived on the other side of the bridge. 17. I entreat 'you for heaven's sake. 18. We shall 'go 'out (one word) in spite of the bad weather. 19. He will do that by means of his influence. 20. I heard it during my journey in Germany. 21. The boys played outside of the garden. 22. The church lies at the upper part (oberhalb) of the town. 23. We reside not far from the bridge. 24. Düsseldorf lies on this side, and Cologne on the other side of the Rhine. 25. The thieves have opened the chest by means of false keys. 26. Why did 'you not buy the watch? 27. On account of the price; it was too dear. 28. Charles comes for 'your sake. 29. They do it on our account. 30. I have said it on his account. 31. We remain at home for the sake of our sister; for her sake. 32. He does not write on my account. 33. Our friends will come in spite of the rain. 34. We hear by means of our ears. 35. Our friends will leave this town within a month. 36. They will go instead of us. 37. Worms lies above and Bingen below the mouth of the Maine. 38. The village lies not far from the mountain. 39. Paris has many broad streets outside and inside of its walls.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Hinderniß, hinder***ance, obstacle,* from hindern, p. 236. The suffix **niß** (historically more correct **nis**) corresponds to Engl. **ness** and serves to form a great number of nouns of the neuter or fem. gender (for the most part abstract substantives): das Verſtändniß, *understanding*; das Bildniß, *like***ness**; die Finſter**niß**, *dark***ness.**

**Beſchreibung,** *des***cript***ion,* from **beſchreiben,** *to des***cribe,** *c.* of be and ſchreiben, p. 236.

**Strauß, ostrich**; mhd. *strus,* Lat. *strutio,* Gr. *strution.*

**Lager,** *camp,* **lair.** Tab. V. 20, lit. *a lying place,* from lagern, **lay** *down,* see p. 240 (Belagerung).

**Muth,** *courage,* **mood,** *heat of temper,* see p. 250, Gemüth.

**doch,** *yet, still,* **though.** *Take Notice!* **doch** is used as an expletive to strengthen an affirmation, negation, request, wish, and is to be translated, *to be sure, certainly, I suppose, I hope, pray*: Kommen Sie doch, **pray** *come*; Ja doch! *yes, to be sure*; Ich werde **doch** kein ſolcher Eſel ſein! *I shall surely not be such an ass!*

**predigen,** *to* **preach.** Lat. *praedico—atum,* to proclaim, *prae,* before, *dico,* to say, to make known.

**bereitwillig, ready, willing,** c. of bereit, from bereiten (p. 250), and willig (p. 199).

**wirklich,** *actual, real,* and *actually, really,* from **wirken,** *to act, to* **work.**

**füttern,** *to* **feed** *animals* ; A. S. *fedan,* to give **Futter, fodder** (in common language also, to give **food** to men), comp. Vater, p. 197.

**Zaun,** *hedge, enclosure* ; ahd. *zun,* A. S. *tun*=an enclosure, then, a number of houses walled in, a **town,** lit. a place hedged in ; A. S. *tynan,* to hedge in ; the German word has preserved the original meaning. Tab. V. 8.

**ungeachtet,** *notwithstanding, in spite of,* c. of un (p. 112) and geachtet, pa. part. of achten, *to regard,* Goth. *ahgan, ahjan,* to look closely upon . . ; perhaps connected with Auge, *eye,* from the type *ah*=Sans. *ak,* to direct one's mind to, hence ungeachtet=*in disregard of.*

**Schaden,** *hurt, loss, damage* ; A. S. *scæthe,* from schaden, *to do harm, to injure, damage,* **scath,** and **scathe** ; ahd. *scadon.*

**unweit,** *not far from* ; c. of un and weit (p. 87), **wide,** *extended, far off, remote.*

**ungestört, un***disturbed,* c. of un and gestört, pa. part. of **stören,** *to disturb to* **stir,** see p. 88, stürmisch.

**jenseit,** *on the other* **side** *of,* c. of **jen, yon, yon***der,* an abbreviation of jener, *that* (p. 143,) and seit from **Seite, side** (?).

**lang, long** (p. 101), **lange** as adv. (denoting a high degree) *by far, far from* : noch lange nicht, *far from, anything but.*

**nennen,** *to* **name,** *call* ; ahd. *nemnan,* A. S. *nemnian* ; nennen for nemnen (the m having assimilated to the following n) from **Name,** p. 177 (also Namen, p. 213) **name** ; perhaps allied to nehmen (p. 151), what has been adopted or attributed for distinction.

**wegen,** *on account of,* mhd. *von . . . . wegen,* hence wegen properly the dative plur. of **Weg,** *way* (p. 176), governed by the (now) omitted von.

**Besonnenheit,** *circumspection, discretion,* from besonnen, pa. part. of besinnen (v. refl.), *to call to mind, to recollect something,* by directing firmly the senses or mind to it, see Sinn, p. 243.

**Säugethier,** *mammal,* lit. *mammalious animal* ; from **säugen,** *to give* **suck, suckle,** and Thier (p. 153). Säugen is the *causative* of **saugen,** ahd. and A. S. *sugan,* Engl. *to* **suck.** *Take Notice !* Some verbs by vowel change become **causative,** that is verbs which signify a *causing* to act, thus :

| *in English.* | | | *in German.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| to **fall** | *Caus.* | to **fell.** | **fallen** | **fällen.** |
| to **lie** | " | to **lay.** | **liegen** | **legen.** |
| to **drink** | " | to **drench.** | **trinken** | **tränken.** |
| to **sit** | " | to **set.** | **ſitzen** | **ſetzen.** |
| to **wind** | " | to **wend.** | **winden** | **wenden.** |
| to **spring** | " | to cause to spring | **ſpringen** | **ſprengen.** |
| to **hang** (as a picture hangs) | " | to **hang** (as we hang a picture). | **hangen** | **hängen.** |

**wichtig,** *important,* **weighty,** from **wiegen, wägen,** *to* **weigh;** **Gewicht**=(**Ge-wicht**), **weight,** Tab. V. 18; on ig see p. 103, hungrig.

**Fahrzeug,** *vessel,* c. of fahren, p. 176, Vorfahr, and Zeug, *apparatus, tools, stuff, material,* from ziehen, *to draw,* A. S. *teohan,* to **tug.**

**Küſte, coast.** Lat. *costa,* a rib, side.

**Strickleiter,** *rope-***ladder,** c. of Leiter, *ladder,* and Strick, *rope, cord,* from ſtreichen, *to pass, extend, spread,* akin to **ſtrecken,** *to* **stretch,** A. S. *streccan,* to expand, draw out; perhaps conn. with **string,** Germ. **Strang,** Lat. *stringo, strictus,* to draw tight.

**vermuthen,** *to suppose, presume,* c. of ver and muthen, *to have a mind, be disposed,* from Muth, p. 275.

**Koffer, coffer;** lit. *a hollow case*; Fr. *coffre,* a chest; Lat. *cophinus,* Gr. *kophinos,* a basket; conn. with *cave.*

**Einfluß, influence,** c. of the pref. ein (p. 177, Einband) and fluß, from fließen (p. 155, flüſſig).

**erfahren,** *to come to know, to learn, to experience*; ahd. *ar-, ir-, urfaran,* to wander through in all directions, to investigate thoroughly, perceive, from fahren, p. 176, properly, to get (experience, knowledge) by driving through the world.

**Kiſte, chest,** *a large strong box*; A. S. *cyst,* Scot. *kist* Lat. *cista,* Gr. *kiste.*

**Preis, price.** Lat. *pretium.*

## [48.] INVERSION.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Frei **iſt der Menſch.** | *Man is free.* |
| 2. Dieſen Kranken[krän'-ken] **wird kein Arzt** heilen. | *No physician will cure this sick man.* |
| 3. Heute **kommt er** nicht. | *He does not come to-day.* |
| 4. Hier **ſah er** einen Räuber. | *Here he saw a robber.* |

5. Dort **geht er.** *There he goes.*
6. Daß der Lehrer heute nicht kommt, **weiß ich.** *I know that the teacher will not come to-day.*

*Observations.*—1. The subject generally stands at the head of the sentence. After it follows the *finite* or *inflected* part of the predicate, i. e. the verb or auxiliary which assumes personal terminations (as: he **sees**, I **was** sick, it **is** true, she **reads**); whereupon follows the object, if the sense of the sentence requires an object. A sentence of this kind, i. e. beginning with the subject (nominative) is called **direct.** It is **inverted** when the finite verb is placed *before* the nominative. M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

**Direct:** Der ¹Menſch ²iſt frei.
**Inverted:** Frei ¹iſt der ²Menſch. } *man is free.*

**Direct:** ¹Er ²kommt heute.
**Inverted:** Heute ¹kommt ²er. } *He comes to-day.*

2. That member of a sentence on which we wish to lay particular emphasis is placed **first** in German. Thus the sentence may begin with a genitive, a dative, an accusative, an adjective, an adverb, or adverbial phrase, an infinitive, a participle, or even a dependent clause; M. S. 6. In all such cases—the sentence commencing with whatever member—the verb invariably has (among the *members* of a sentence) the **second** and the subject the **third** place. M. S. 1—6.

## 62.

das Lebewohl*[la'-be-vōl"] (-es), *farewell, adieu*
vollenden[fōl-lĕn'-dᵉn], *to end, finish, accomplish* (voll, p. 87, enden, p. 107).
die Macht*[mächt](Mächte) *might, power*
die Freundſchaft,(-en), *friendship,* (Freund, p. 87, ſchaft, p. 177)
heimwärts*[hīm'-värts"], *homeward*
bewundern, *to admire*
ſpät[spāt], *late* (?)
nächſt[nāᵉyst], *next* (see p. 229, 12)
vorgeſtern[fōr'-gĕs"-tᵉrn], *the day before yesterday* (vor, p. 133, geſtern, p. 114)
das Räthſel*[rāt'-tsĕl] (-s), *riddle, enigma*
genau*[gᵉ-nou'], *accurate, exact, close*
der Einäugige*[īn'-oi"-gi-gᵉ] (-n), *one-eyed*
das Hörenſagen[hēā'-rᵉn-zah"-gᵉn] (-s), *hearsay, rumor* (hören, p. 107, ſagen, p. 117)
die Braut*[brout] (Bräute), *bride*
die Frage*[frah'-gᵉ](-n), *question*
die Klaue*[klou'-ᵉ] (-n) *claw*
erkennen, *to know, recognize* (kennen, p. 220)
der Geſang[gᵉ-zäng'](-es, Geſänge), *song* (ſingen, p. 103)
die Leier*[lī'-ᵉr] (-n), *lyre*

die Saat*[zaht] (–en), *seed*
der Landmann,* (–es, Landleute), *peasant, rustic*
der Genius*[gā'-nĭ-ŭs"], *genius*
der Bund[bŭnt] (–es), *bond, covenant, alliance* (binden, p. 177)
die Dummheit (–en), *stupidity* (dumm, p. 243)
kämpfen*[käm'-pfᵉn], *to combat, to fight*
verdienen*, *to gain, deserve*
ziehen*[tsē'-ʰᵉn], *to draw, to bring up*
drängen*[dräng'-ᵉn], *to press, to throng*
nähren*[nāt'-rᵉn], *to feed, nourish*
prügeln[prēē'-gᵉln], *to beat, to thrash* (?)
kämmen*[käm'-mᵉn], *to comb.*

1. Diesem blinden Manne gebe ich nichts. 2. Diese schönen Pferde hat mein Vater in England gekauft. 3. Endlich habe ich mein Werk vollendet. 4. Undankbar bin ich nie gewesen. 5. Den Weg heimwärts werdet ihr leicht finden. 6. Furchtbar heulten die Wölfe. 7. Heute oder morgen werde ich dem Fürsten antworten. 8. So schön scheint die Sonne nirgends. 9. Ihre neue Kutsche bewunderten alle sehr. 10. Gestern war er noch ein reicher Mann, und heute ist er ein Bettler. 11. Morgen werde ich kommen; heute habe ich keine Zeit. 12. Später werde ich es thun. 13. Nächstes Jahr werde ich deutsch lernen. 14. Singen wird er, aber nicht tanzen. 15. Vorgestern hat mein Bruder es mir gesagt. 16. Dem Fleißigen wird die Zeit nicht lang. 17. Allen war die Antwort des Fürsten ein Räthsel. 18. Das interessante Buch habe ich meinem Bruder geschickt. 19. Dem theueren Weibe sagte ich mein letztes Lebewohl. 20. Groß ist die Macht der Freundschaft. 21. Den Menschen macht sein Wille groß und klein. 22. Nach dem Winde hängt man den Mantel (Prov.). 23. Unter Blinden ist der Einäugige König (Prov.). 24. Mit dem Hute in der Hand, || Kommt man durchs ganze Land (Prov.). 25. Nach der Noth || Kommt der Tod (Prov.). 26. Zu Gottes Hülfe gehört Arbeit (Prov.). 27. Vom Hörensagen kommen die Lügen ins Land (Prov.). 28. Aus Knaben werden Leute, || Aus Mädchen werden Bräute (Prov.). 29. Nach schwarzen Kirschen steigt man hoch (Prov.). 30. Zwischen Nachbars Garten ist ein Zaun gut (Prov.). 31. Bei Nacht sind alle Kühe schwarz (Prov.). 32. Auf eine dumme Frage gehört keine Antwort (Prov.). 33. Gute Freunde findet man nicht am Wege (Prov.). 34. An den Klauen erkennt man den Löwen, den Esel an den Ohren || Und an seinen Worten den Thoren (Prov.). 35. Dem Gesange der Leier horcht auch der wildeste Barbar (Herder). 36. Dir, o süße Hoffnung, säet froh der Landmann seine Saat (Herder). 37. Mit dem Genius steht die Natur im ewigen Bunde (Schiller). 38. Mit der Dummheit kämpfen Götter selbst vergebens (Schiller).

39. Uns alle zieht das Herz zum Vaterland (Schiller). 40. Aufmerkſamkeit verdient ein alter Freund (Schiller). 41. Nach Golde drängt, || Am Golde hängt doch Alles (Göthe). 42. Der Frauen Liebe nährt das Kind; den Knaben ziehn am beſten Männer (Göthe). 43. Der Mutter ſchenk' ich,–|| Die Tochter denk' ich (Göthe). 44. Ein braver Mann, ich kenn' ihn ganz genau;– ||Erſt prügelt er, dann kämmt er ſeine Frau (Göthe).

## 63.

herrſchen*[hĕrsh'-ᵉn], *to rule, reign* (Herr, p. 174)
Paläſtina[păl''-ĕs-tē'-nă] *Palestine*
der Himmel (Ex. 34), *sky* [(Ex. 48)
die Kutſche[kŭt'-shᵉ] (–n), *coach*
das Gewehr[gᵉ-vār'](–ᵉs, –e), *gun*
verſuchen[fᵉr-zū'-yᵉn], *to try* (prop. *to try to find*, (ſuchen, p. 115)
Donnerstag*[dŏn'-nᵉr-stāk''] (–ᵉs, –e), *Thursday*
jagen*[yah'-gᵉn], *to hunt*
**krank werden, to fall ill,** *Idiom!*
das Aufkommen*[ouf'-kŏm''-mᵉn], *recovery*
vorig*[fōr'-ıy], *former, before last*
**vorige Woche, last week,** *Idiom!*
weg*[vĕk], *away*
**noch einmal, once more,** *Idiom!*
der Grieche*[grē'-yᵉ] (–n), *Greek*
der Reiter[rī'-tᵉr](–ᵉs), *horseman, rider* (reiten, 251)
früh[frēē], *early* (Frühling, p. 233)
bedecken[bᵉ-dĕk'-ᵉn], *to cover* (decken, p. 268, Dach)
Alles[ăl'-lᵉs], *everything, all,*
ruhig[rū'-hıy], *quiet*
retten*[rĕt'-tᵉn], *to save, rescue.*

1. There (dort) he goes! 2. Here he is! 3. To-day the weather is finer than it was yesterday. 4. In my youth I made many a journey through different countries; now my youth is gone (vorüber) and my journeys are (ſind) ended. 5. On account of the rain I remained at home. 6. Without air no animal can (kann) live. 7. In (im) January the days become longer and the nights shorter. 8. After the death of Saul, two Kings ruled in Palestine. 9. Cold was the day, but the sky was clear. 10. ²I do not know ¹him. 11. That man I have never loved. 12. So beautifully the sun shines. 13. The sun shines so beautifully. 14. I have bought a new coach. 15. A new coach I have bought, but not a new horse. 16. I have tried 'your brother's gun. 17. 'Your brother's gun I have tried, but not 'yours. 18. Is this the shortest way? 19. Yes, Sir; a shorter (one) 'you will not find. 20. Thursday evening my father sold his two horses. 21. Almost all the week we have been hunting. 22. For gold they were searching.

23. Yesterday evening he fell ill, and this morning no one believes in (an) his recovery. 24. Yesterday he was still a rich man; to-day he is a beggar. 25. This morning I shall take no tea. 26. Next week our soldiers will drive away all the robbers. 27. Once more we heard the learned Greek. 28. To-morrow a few (einige) friends will come to see us. 29. Yesterday morning (früh) three horsemen galloped (galoppieren, see Lexic.) through our streets. 30. Too early you come, dear Sir, a deep snow still covers the mountains. 31. In the house everything was quiet. 32. Through the broad windows they have rescued the costly books. 33. When did he buy the book? 34. Yesterday he bought it. 35. When did your father sell his watch? 36. The day before yesterday he sold it.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Lebewohl,** *fare***well=lebe** (imperative) **wohl=live well.**

**Macht, might.** A. S. *meaht, miht,* from **mögen** [mēa'-gᵉn], **may.**

**heimwärts, homeward,** c. of heim, *home,* A. S. *ham* (compare Fr. *hameau, ham-let*), and wärts, *ward,* p. 247, gegenwärtig.

**bewundern,** *to admire,* **wonder** *at,* A. S. *wunder,* from **Wunder, wonder;** wundern, *to wonder, be astonished,* made transitive by be, p. 140.

**Räthsel, riddle,** from rathen (p. 254, Rath) and the suffix sel; A. S. *rædels —rædan,* to guess, to read; Old Engl. *ræd-else,* s has disappeared in Mod. Engl.

**genau,** *exact,* c. of ge- and nau=nah, (p. 103) A. S. *kneav,* narrow, accurate.

**Einäugige, one-eyed,** *monocular,* c. of ein and äugig, adj. in comp.=*eyed,* from Auge, (p. 124).

**Braut, bride.** A. S. *brid,* Sans. *praudha,—pra=before* in place or time, *udha* pa. part. of Sans. *wha*=Lat. *vehere,* to carry, to ride, also of the taking home a bride, hence *praudha*=the taken home. According to others conn. with Sans. *bhrud*=to cover, comp. Lat. *nubere,* to cover and to be wedded or married.

In German this word applies not merely to a lady on her wedding-day as in English and its original meaning, but it is applied to her during the whole time of her engagement, her betrothed being called her Bräutigam, *bridegroom.*

**Klaue, claw,** *clutch,* lit. something *cleft* or *split,* ahd. *chlawa,* A. S. *clawu,* conn. with klauben, *to pick, pick out,* mhd. *klieben,* A. S. *cleofan, to* **cleave** or split; Lat. *glubere,* to pull off the bark, the skin.

**Leier, lyre,** from Gr. and Lat. *lyra,* an instrument like the harp, now also used for the compound Leierkasten, *barrel organ.*

**Saat, seed,** (act and time of) *sowing,* from **säen,** *to* **sow,** ahd. *sajan,* A. S. *sawan,* akin to Lat. *sero, sevi, satum,* to sow.

*Take Notice!* Many nouns are formed in German by the suffix **t**, in English correspondingly by **d**, **t**, or **th**; thus Tha-t (fr. thun), *dee-d* (fr. to do), Saa-t (fr. ſäen), *see-d* (fr. to sow), Sich-t (fr. ſehen), *sigh-t* (fr. to see), Mach-t (fr. mögen), *migh-t* (fr. may), Trif-t (fr. treiben), *drif-t* (fr. drive), Froſ-t (fr. frieren, comp. Tab. V. 23), *fros-t* (fr. to freeze).

**Landmann**, *country-man*, *peasant*, not to be confounded with Landsmann (fellow), *countryman*, **landsman**, *compatriot* (p. 92, 2).

**Genius**, **genius**, the superior *inborn* power of mind; Lat. *ingenium*, genius.

**kämpfen**, *to combat, fight, struggle*, from **Kampf**, *combat, contest, battle, conflict*; A. S. *camp*, *comp*=**camp**, en**camp**ment, and combat, from Lat. *campus*=*a plain or field*; the English has preserved the first, the German the second meaning.

**verdienen**, *to gain, earn by one's services*; fig. *to merit deserve*, c. of ver (p. 141) and dienen, *to serve*, p. 204.

**ziehen**, *to draw*, *to* **tug**, p. 277, *to* **tow**; the new English to **tie**, means to draw around, to fasten with a cord, to bind. Here ziehen is used for erziehen, *to educate, to bring up*, (lit. *to draw up*).

**drängen**, *to press*, *to* **throng**, *to impel*, A. S. *thrang*, *throng*—*thringan*, to press.

**nähren**, *to feed*, *nourish*, mhd. and ahd. *neren*=to make healthy, to cure, keep alive; A. S. *nerian*, Goth, *nasjan*=to make recover, to heal, save, from the type *nas*, ge-**ne**ſ-en, to grow healthy again. Tab. V. 23. Compare Nahrung, *food*, and genießen, *to take food*.

**kämmen**, *to* **comb**, from **Kamm**, **comb**, A. S. *camb*, akin to Gr. *gomphos* =*plug, peg, tooth*, hence a *toothed* instrument for cleaning hair, etc.

**herrſchen**, *to rule, govern, reign*, from Herr, p. 174.

**Gewehr**, *gun*, *weapon of defense*, from wehren, *to defend*, related with **wahren**, to *be***ware**, to guard.

**Donnerſtag**, **Thursday**, the day orig. sacred to *Donar*, *Thor*, the old Saxon God of thunder.

**jagen**, *to hunt, to chase*, comp. **Yacht** and **Yager**, (see Webster).

**aufkommen**, *recovery*, lit. **coming** or getting **up** or *well*; infinitive used as a neuter noun.

**vorig**, **for***mer*, *preceding*, *next be***fore**, c. of vor (p. 133) and -ig (103 hungrig)

**weg**, *a***way**, accusat. adv. from Weg, p. 184; A. S. *aweg-a*, and *wæg*, way (originated fr. *dën wëc*). It is for the most part employed as a prefix denoting *separation*, *removal*; wegtreiben, *to drive away*; wegbringen, *to bring away*; wegfliegen, *to fly away*, *etc.*

**Grieche**, **Greek**. A. S. *grec*, Lat. *Græcus*. Tab. V. 16.

**galoppieren**, *to* **gallop**. Fr. *galoper*, fr. Old Saxon *gihlopan*, Goth. *gahlaupan*, i. e. ge-laufen, (laufen, p. 104).

**retten**, *to save, rescue, to free, to* **rid**, A. S. *hreddan*, to *wrest* or *wring*, from *ahreddan*, to rid.

## [49] CLASSIFICATION OF THE STRONG VERBS.

### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS RESPECTING VERBS OF THE STRONG AND WEAK CONJUGATIONS.

1. The **Strong Verbs** (or verbs of the **old form**) are—as we before (p. 113, 6.) stated—verbs which change the radical vowel in the formation of the *imperfect, past* participle, and in some cases also the *present indicative.*

2. In the *present* the vowel of the root is not ordinarily changed, except that in some verbs whose root contains an **a, o, au** or **e**, the vowel is changed in the 2nd and 3d person sing. in the following manner:

**a** into **ä**, as ich falle, du fällſt, er fällt.
**o** " **ö**, " ich ſtoße, du ſtößeſt, er ſtößt.
**au** " **äu**, as ich laufe, du Läufſt, er läuft.
**e short** into **i short**, as ich ſpreche, du ſprichſt, er ſpricht.
**e long** " **ie**, as ich ſehe, du ſiehſt, er ſieht.

3. In the *imperfect* the strong verbs, as in English, always change the vowel of the root, and do not take in the 1st and 3d pers. sing. any termination as from ſpinnen: root ſpinn, imperf. 1. ich ſpann, 3. er ſpann.

4. The *past participle* retains the termination en (or n) of the infinitive, and takes the augment ge following the rules of the weak conjugation (p. 118, obs. 1, and 119, obs. 2).

5. The vowel of the *past participle* is:

*a.* The same as that of the infinitive, but differs from that of the imperfect, as:

| *Infinit.* | *Imperf.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| fallen, *to fall* | fiel | gefallen |

This class comprises all the verbs which have the vowel **a** in the root.

*b.* The same as that of the imperfect, but differs from that of the infinitive, as:

| *Infinit.* | *Imperf.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſchreiben, *to write* | ſchrieb | geſchrieben |
| kriechen, *to creep* | kroch | gekrochen |

This class comprises the verbs which contain radical **ei** or **ie**

*c.* Differs from that of the infinitive and the imperfect, as

| *Infinit.* | *Imperf.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſprechen | ſprach | geſprochen |
| ſingen | ſang | geſungen |

This class comprises the verbs which have in the root the vowel **i**, and most of those the root of which contains the vowel **e**.

*Note.* In most cases the strong verbs correspond to the (so called) irregular verbs in English, as:

trinken, *to drink*; ſingen, *to sing*.
*Imperfect* ich trank, *I drank*; ich ſang, *I sang*.
*Pa. Partic.* getrunken, *drunk*; geſungen, *sung*.

6. Verbs of the strong conjugation, without exception, are radical verbs, while the weak conjugation comprises *all* derivative and only a few radical verbs.

7. To the weak conjugation belong:

*a.* All the simple verbs (that is verbs not beginning with a prefix) which commence with a vowel, as: achten, *to esteem*; öffnen, *to open*; üben[ēē'-bᵉn], *to exercise*.

The single exception is the verb **eſſen**, *to eat*, which is strong.

*b.* All the verbs whose radical (the infinitive without final en) contains one of the vowels **o, u**, or one of the modified vowels and diphthongs **ä, ö, ü, eu, äu**, as: loben, *to praise*; ſuchen, *to seek*; beugen, *to bend, to bow*; wärmen, *to warm*; hören, *to hear*; führen, *to lead*; träumen, *to dream*.

Only the following six are excepted: ſtoßen, *to push, strike against*; rufen, *to call*; gebären, *to bear, to give birth to*; ſchwören, *to swear*; lügen, *to lie, to tell a lie* betrügen, *to cheat, defraud*, which are strong.

*c.* All the verbs which end in **zen, ckeu, chten**, also the derived ones in **eln, ern, ieren**, as tanzen, *to dance*; packen, *to pack*; pachten, *to take at rent*; ſchmeicheln, *to flatter*; bewundern, *to admire*; ſtudieren, *to study*.

Exceptions are: backen, *to bake*; ſchmelzen, *to melt*; verlieren, *to lose*.

*d.* Generally all the verbs derived from substantives and adjectives, as vergolden (fr. Gold), *to gild*; verſilbern (fr. Silber), *to silver*; erwärmen (fr. warm), *to warm, to heat*.

8. *Compound verbs*—that is those compounded with prefixes—generally follow the same conjugation as the simple verbs from which they are formed. Thus beſchlagen, *to strike repeatedly, to shoe a horse*, is conjugated like ſchlagen, *to strike*; verlaſſen, *to forsake*, like laſſen, *to leave*.

There are excepted the verbs derived from substantives which are weak. The verbs berathſchlagen, *to consult*, derived from the subst. Rathſchlag, *advice, counsel*; veranlaſſen[fᵉr-ăn'-läs'-sᵉn], *to occasion, to cause*, derived from Anlaß, *cause*.

EXAMPLES OF VERBS OF THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

*Infinitive.*

**Sprechen**, *to speak* **Tragen**, *to carry* **Kommen**, *to come*.

*Principal Parts.*

**ſprechen, ſprach, geſprochen** **tragen, trug, getragen**
**kommen, kam, gekommen.**

*Present Indicative.*

| | 'I speak,' etc. | 'I carry,' etc. | 'I come, etc. |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich ſpreche | ich trage | ich komme |
| 2. | du ſprichſt | du trägſt | du kommſt |
| 3. | er ſpricht | er trägt | er kommt |
| *P.* 1. | wir ſprechen | wir tragen | wir kommen |
| 2. | ihr ſprechet (ſprecht) | ihr traget (tragt) | ihr kommet (kommt) |
| 3. | ſie ſprechen | ſie tragen | ſie kommen |

*Imperfect Indicative.*

| | 'I spoke,' etc. | 'I carried,' etc. | 'I came,' etc. |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich ſprach | ich trug | ich kam |
| 2. | du ſprachſt | du trugſt | du kamſt |
| 3. | er ſprach | er trug | er kam |
| *P.* 1. | wir ſprachen | wir trugen | wir kamen |
| 2. | ihr ſprachet (ſpracht) | ihr truget | ihr kamet (kamt) |
| 3. | ſie ſprachen | ſie trugen | ſie kamen |

*Perfect Indicative.*

| | 'I have spoken,' etc. | 'I have carried,' etc. | 'I have come,' etc.** |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich habe geſprochen, etc. | ich habe getragen, etc. | ich bin gekommen, etc. |

*Pluperfect Indicative.*

| | 'I had spoken,' etc. | 'I had carried,' etc. | 'I had come,' etc.** |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich hatte geſprochen, etc. | ich hatte getragen, etc. | 'ich war gekommen, etc. |

*Future Indicative.*

| | I shall speak, etc. | 'I shall carry,' etc. | 'I shall come,' etc. |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich werde ſprechen, etc. | 'ich werde tragen,' etc. | 'ich werde kommen,' etc. |

*Future Perfect.*

| | 'I shall have spoken' | 'I shall have carried' | 'I shall have come'** |
|---|---|---|---|
| *S.* 1. | ich werde geſprochen haben | ich werde getragen haben | ich werde gekommen [ſein. |

****Take Notice!** All *transitive verbs* are conjugated with the auxiliary **„haben,'** *to have*, in the compound tenses. **In transitive verbs** which express a motion from one place to another, or a change from one state into another, such as: kommen, *to come*; gehen, *to go*; abreiſen[äb'-rı"-sᵉn], *to depart*; einſchlafen[ın'-shlahᵉ-fᵉn], *to fall asleep*; ſterben[stĕr'-ben], *to die*, form their compound tenses with the auxiliary **'ſein'**; **Ich bin** gegangen [gᵉ-gän'-ᵉn], *I* **have** *gone*; er **iſt** geſtorben[gᵉ-stör'-bᵉn], *he has died.*

*Note.* Of the subjunctive and conditional moods we shall treat at the proper place.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Form the comparative and superlative of: braun, grün, weiß, ſchwarz, gut, edel, hoch, eben, vollkommen (perfect), heiter (gay), bitter, nahe, viel, ſelten, hart, beſcheiden, ſauer, wohl, gern, übel, bald.

2. In what case is the adverb of time placed after the object?

3. *Translate:* With him; through him; for her; from her; next to him; next to them; together with 'you; by means of you (thou), of them, of her, of 'you, of me; without her, it, him, them, me, us, you, 'you; along the way; to the teacher, to the teacher's house; to Berlin, to my brother; against her, me, thee, him, them, 'you; at ten o'clock, at two o'clock; towards evening, towards noon; about ten boys, about five o'clock.

4. *Translate:* 1. The cathedral (Kathedrale[kä"-tĕ-drah'-lᵉ]) of Bourges (Bourgeſ[bürsh]) is very large. 2. The inhabitants of Bregentz (Bregentſ[Brᵉ-gĕnts']) are industrious. 3. We heard Humboldt's[hüm'-bōlt] description (Beſchreibung) of the earth-quake (des Erdbeben) of Caracas (Caracas). 4. The fortresses (Feſtung, fem.) of Cadiz (Cadiz[kah'-dis]) and of Koblenz are very strong. 5. Many streets of Paris are small.

5. *Translate:* He was ²ever ³true ¹to me. Was she ever true to me? Neither he nor she was ever true to me. He has been ever happy and ever shall be happy. Has he ever been happy? None of you will ever be happy.

6. Form the genitive of the following adjectives preceding a masculine noun and preceded by the def. article: gut, falſch, edel, bitter, bös (*bad*), klar (*clear*), theuer (*dear*), eben (*even*), beladen[bᵉ-lah'-dᵉn], hoch!!, übel[ēē'-bᵉl], *evil*, offen, ſelten (*rare*).

7. By what letter are many adverbs formed from subst. and adjectives?

8. Tell the difference between die See and der See, diesſeits and diesſeit, jenſeits and jenſeit?

9. Give the plural of der Rath.

10. Of what declension are *all* neuter nouns?

11. What neuter nouns remain unchanged in the plural?

12. *Translate:* He was with (bei) him ³half ¹a day. He will not come this evening. Does this book cost more than a dollar? It costs half a dollar. He cannot write the letters in the morning; he will write them in the evening. He is not rich but contented (zufrieden). He is not rich but poor. He is not strong but healthy. He is not strong but weak. She will not help (w. dat. p. 208) such a lazy boy (translate it in two ways). Is this my pen? It is not 'yours; it is hers, his. Is he for 'you or against 'you? He is for me. Has she been with (bei) 'you? She was with her, but not for her. For whom are these fine books? These are for me, and those are for my sister. She cannot live without her; she always lives (wohnen) with (bei) her.

13. On account of the thunder; because of the teacher; on account of him; in behalf of my sister, in behalf of her; for the sake of them, of 'you, of us, of her, of him. For your (thy) sake I had written to her earlier. For his sake as well as for hers 'your father hastened (eilen) to Rome. For my sake he has persecuted (verfolgen) them. Beautiful pictures (Bild) hang on (an) the wall. I shall hang these beautiful pictures on the wall. The gardener's wife had put (legen) the flowers on the table. The flowers were on the table. All the week they have been hunting. I shall go to the physician in half an hour; at present I have no time. This morning I shall take (trinken) coffee instead of tea. Once more I shall go to him. Beautiful she is, but not amiable (liebenswürdig). Besides my mother, no one was at home.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Achten, 276
Adel, 266
Aufkommen, 280
auf und ab, 262
Alles, 280
Alpen, 273
Amt, 274
ander, 266
Angewöhnung, Arm, 262 [264
Armenhaus, 273
Axt, 266

Bach, 267
Bank, 260
bedenken, 280
befehlen, 274
Bemühung, 274
bereitwillig, 272
beschreiben, 275
Beschreibung 272
besinnen, 276
Besonnenheit273
Bethaus, 266
Bett, 266
bewundern, 278
Bild, 260
binden, 269
Bissen, 261
Braut, 278
Brücke, 260
Bube, 269
Bund, 279
Bündelchen, 266

Dach, 266
decken 268 (Dach)
Degen, 266
Dickicht, 262
Donnerstag, 280
drängen, 279
draußen, 266
Dummheit, 279

eigen, 260
Eigenschaft, 261
eignen, 263
Einäugige, 278
Einfluß, 274
Engländer, 266
entkommen, 274
entweder .. oder, [267
erkennen, 278
ersparen, 266

Fahrzeug, 274
Fall, 260
fällen, 277
fern, 263
Ferne, 260
Fischer, 264
Flöte, 266
Frage, 278
Freundschaft, früh, 280 [278
Frühling, 233
Futter, 276
füttern, 273

Geblüt, 266
gefährlich, 267
genau, 278
genießen, 282
Genius, 279
Gesang, 278
Geschäft, 274
Gewehr, 280
Gewicht, 277
Gewitter, 270
Gewitterregen, göttlich, 272 [267
Grab 265
Graben, 262
graben, 265
Grieche, 280
Grube, 265

hangen, 277
hängen 261 (277)
Haupt, 262
hehlen, 265
heim, 281
heimwärts, 278
Helm, 262
herrschen, 280
Himmel, 280
Hinderniß, 272
Hochmuth, 260
Holland, 274
Holz, 261
Horcher, 260
Hörensagen, 278

Italien, 273

jagen, 280

kalben, 273
Kamm, 282
kämmen, 279
Kampf, 282
kämpfen, 279
Kerl, 264
Kiste, 274
Klaue, 278
klauben, 282
knarren, 266
Knecht, 266
Koffer, 274
Korn, 268
Küste, 274
Kutsche, 280

Lager, 272
lagern, 275
Landhaus, 266
Landmann, 279
lauern, 266
Lebewohl, 278
legen, 277
Leid, 261
leiden, 264
Leier, 278
Leiter, 277
liegen, 260

Macht, 278
Main, 274
manchmal, 262
Mantel, 262
Markt, 262
mögen, 281
Muth, 272

Nagel, 262
nähren, 279
Nahrung, 282
nennen, 273
noch einmal, 280

Ofen, 260

Palästina, 280
pflanzen, 266
Plan, 273
predigen, 272
prügeln, 279
Puppe, 266

querüber, 262

Rad, 266
ragen, 264
Räthsel, 278
recken, 264
Regel, 261
Regiment, 267
reisen nach, 274
Reise, 274
Reiter, 280
retten, 280
Rhein, 273
Ritter, 262
Roman, 266
Rücken, 262
Ruhe, 273
ruhen, 266
ruhig, 280

Saat, 279
säen, 282
Sand, 262
Sandkorn, 266
saugen, 276
säugen, 276
Säugethier, 273
Schaden, 273
schaden, 276
Schade, 260
Schande, 260
Schandkerl, 264
schließen, 263
Schloß, 260
Schlüssel, 264
Schneiderin, 266
Schulhaus, 266
schwellen, 267
Seite, 276
Sitz, 270
Skandal 264
Sommerhaus, sparen, 269 [262
spät, 278
Sperre, 270
sperren, 270
Sperrsitz, 267
Spiegel, 260
Spielhaus, 273
sprengen, 277
stechen, 270
stellen, 260
Stelze, 264
Stich, 267
Stolz, 261
stören, 276
Strang, 277
Strauß, 272
strecken, 277
streichen, 277
Strick, 277
Strickleiter, 274

Tasche, 261
Teich, 262
Teufel, 266
Theater, 266
Thorheit, 261
Titel, 266
Träger, 274
tränken, 277
treten, 260

Ufer, 267
ungeachtet, 273
ungestört, 273
unweit, 273

verdienen, 279
verhindern, 274
vermuthen, 274
versuchen, 280
vollenden, 278
vorgestern, 278
vorig, 280

Wache, 262
wachsen, 261
wägen, 277
Wald, 263
wanken, 269
-wärts, 281
weg, 280
wegen, 273
wehren, 283
weise, 268
Weisheit, 266
wenden, 277
Wespe, 267
wichtig, 274
wiegen, 277
Wilddieb, 260
winden, 277
Winkel, 266
winken, 269
wirken, 276
wirklich, 272
wissen, 266
wohin, 262
Wunder, 281
wundern, 281

Zange, 267
Zaun, 273
Zeug, 277
ziehen, 277

to accomplish, [278
accurate, 278
across, 262
actual, 272
adieu, 278
to admire, 278
affliction, 261
all, 280
Alps, 273
ancient, 274
angle, 266
arm, 262
athwarth, 262
attribute, 261
away, 280
axe, 266

back, 262
bank, 267
to beat, 277
bed, 266
bench, 260
beyond, 272
bit, 261
blood, (mass of blood) 266
bond, 277
bride, 278
bridge, 260
to bring up, 279
brook, 267
bundle (little), [266
business, 274

to call, 273
to calve, 273
camp, 272
castle, 260
chest, 274
childish, 266
claw, 278
cloak, 262
coach, 280
coast, 274
coffer, 274
to comb, 279
to combat, 277
to command,
corner, 266 [274
country-house,
courage 272[266
covenant, 278
to cover, 280
to creak, 266

damage, 273
dangerous, 267
day before yesterday, 278
deer-stealer 260
description, 272
to deserve, 279
design, 273
devil, 266
discretion, 273
disgrace, 260
distance, 260
ditch, 262
divine, 272
doll, 266
downfall, 260
to draw, 279

early, 280
either . . or, 267
to end, 278
endeavor, 274
Englishman, [266
to entreat, 274
to escape, 274
everything, 280
exact, 278

farewell, 278
to feed, 273, 279
fence, 273
to fight, 278
to finish, 278
fisherman, 262
flute, 266
folly, 261
former, 280
friendship, 278

gaming-house,
to gain, 279[273
genius, 279
grain of sand,
grave, 273 [266
Greek, 280
to grow, 261
guard, 262
gun, 280

habit, 261
to hang, 261
harm, 261
haughtiness 260
head, 262
hearsay, 278
helm, } 262
helmet, }
to hinder, 274
hinderance, 272
Holland, 274
homeward, 278
horseman, 280
house of prayer,
to hunt, 280[266

to fall ill, 280
important, 274
influence, 274
Italy, 273,

to jar, 266
John, 266
journey, 274

Key, 274
knight, 262
to know, 266, [278

lair, 272
late, 278
to lie (rest lengthwise),260
listener, 260
lock, 260
looking-glass,
to lurk, 266[260
lyre, 278

Maine, 274
mammal, 273
mantle, 262
market, 262
many a time 262
might, 278
mirror, 260
morsel, 261

nail, 262
to name, 273
next, 278
Niniveh, 272
noble rank, 266
nobility, 266
notwithstanding, 273
to nourish, 279
novel, 266

office, 274
once more, 280
one-eyed, 278
to order, 274
ostrich, 272
other, 266
out of doors, 266
own, 260

palace, 260
Palestine, 280
peasant, 279
picture, 260
to place, 260
plan, 273
to plant, 266
poacher, 260
pond, 262
pool, 262
poor-house, 273
porter, 274
power, 278
to preach, 272
to press, 279
to prevent, 274
price, 274
pride, 260, 261
puppet, 266

quality, 261
question, 278
quiet, 280

ready, 272
real, 272
rear, 262
to recognize 278
recovery, 280
regiment, 267
to reign, 280
repose, 273
to rescue, 280
rest, 273
to rest, 266
Rhine, 273
riddle, 278
rider, 280
rope-ladder, 274
roof, 266
ruin, 260
rule, 261
to rule, 280

to sail, 262
sand, 262
to save 266, 280
scale 260
school-house,
seed, 279 [266
servant-man,
to set, 260 [266
to set out for 274
shame, 260
shore, 274
sky, 280
song, 278
to spare, 266
stalls, 267
step, 260
sting, 267
stove, 260
stupidity, 261, [279
summer-house, [262
to suppose, 274
to swell, 267
sword, 266

tailoress, 266
tap-house, 266
tavern, 266
theatre, 266
thicket, 262
to thrash, 279
to throng, 279
thunder-shower [267
Thursday, 280
title, 266
tongs, 267
to tread, 260
trench, 262
trunk, 274
to try, 280

up and down, [262
undisturbed 273

vessel, 274

wasp, 267
watch, 262
weighty, 274
wheel 260
whither, 262
willing, 272
wisdom, 266
wood, 261.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 57.

1. Wird der Kaufmann vor oder nach Ihnen kommen? 2. Er wird von mir kommen. 3. Wohin geht Ihre Mutter? 4. Sie geht in die Küche, in den Keller, auf den Markt. 5. Wohin haben Sie mein Buch gelegt? 6. Ich habe es auf den Tisch, unter den Stuhl gelegt. 7. Wo ist die kleine Elise? 8. Sie sitzt auf dem Stuhle, unter dem Tische, an der Thüre. 9. Schreiben Sie an Ihren Vetter oder an Ihre Nichte? 10. Nein, ich schreibe an meinen kleinen Neffen. 11. Wir legen unsere Röcke auf die Bank. 12. Der Tischler hat alle seine Bänke in dieses Zimmer gesetzt. 13. Ich denke oft an euch; aber ihr denkt (denket) nie an mich. 14. Er ist in der Schule. 15. Wir sind in der Schule und in der Kirche gewesen. 16. Ich sitze hinter ihr. 17. Sie werfen das Geld hinter ihre Rücken. 18. Wir gehen in sein Zimmer. 19. Wir werden in seinem Zimmer auf und ab gehen. 20. Sie stellten ein paar (wenige) Stühle vor das Sommerhaus. 21. Der Offizier hat eine Wache vor das alte Gebäude gestellt. 22. Der Mantel hängt an einem Nagel. 23. Der Ritter hängt seinen Helm an einen Nagel. 24. Das Kind sitzt auf dem Sande. 25. Die Magd hat das Kind auf den Sand gesetzt. 26. Ein Fischer steht in dem Boote. 27. Ich sprang schnell in das Boot. 28. Ein Schwert hängt über seinem Haupte. 29. Ein Boot segelte über den See 30. Die Kinder springen über den Graben. 31. Die Knaben schwimmen querüber den Fluß. 32. Dieser Mann hat oft unter meinem Dache geruht. 33. Der Herr wird seinen Hut unter seinen Arm nehmen. 34. Drei kleine Bilder hängen unter dem Spiegel. 35. Hinter dem Dickicht war ein Teich. 36. Die Diebe laufen hinter das Dickicht. 37. Die Schwalben haben ihr Nest unter dem Dache. 38. Er stellte (legte) es vor dem Ofen. 39. Wir werden das Eigenschaftswort vor das Dingwort setzen. 40. Das Eigenschaftswort steht vor dem Dingworte. 41. Wilhelm stellte den Stuhl zwischen den Tisch und die Wand. 42. Der Mond steht manchmal zwischen der Sonne und der Erde. 43. Die Sonne scheint auf die Bäume: 44. Füchse leben in den Wäldern, Fische im (in dem) Wasser. 45. Das Kind steht hinter dem Stuhle.

## 59.

1. Ist der Diener im Keller oder im Garten? 2. Wir werden entweder ins Theater oder ins Concert gehen. 3. Schickten Sie Ihren Diener zum Schuhmacher oder zur Frau des Schuhmachers? 4. Werden wir heute zur Tante gehen? 5. Warum sitzt ihr immer beim Feuer? 6. Sie setzten Stühle und Bänke vors Haus. 7. Wird Ihre Schwester aufs Land gehen? 8. Der Vogel fliegt übers Haus. 9. Wir sitzen am Tische. 10. Mein Bruder ist im Theater. 11. Die Wunde am Kopfe dieses Mannes ist nicht gefährlich. 12. Sie bringen (man bringt) Zangen zum Schmied, 13. Der Offizier hat eine Wache vors Haus gestellt. 14. Sie sitzt den ganzen Tag am Fenster. 15. Die Bäche schwellen vom Gewitterregen. 16. Die Augen des Kindes werden vom Stiche einer Wespe schwellen. 17. Der Knabe liegt am Ufer. 18. Sie gehen früh ins Theater und werden einen guten Platz im Sperrsitz erhalten. 19. Der General nebst seinem ganzen Regiment werden zum Feinde übergehen. 20. Er steht am Ufer des Flusses. 21. Er verspricht, um fünf Uhr zu mir zu kommen; nach dem Mittagsmahle wird er mit mir ins Concert gehen.

## 61.

1. Er reiſte wegen eines wichtigen Geſchäftes nach Holland. 2. Das Fahrzeug ſegelte längs der Küſte. 3. Ich werde zufolge Ihres Wunſches (or Ihrem Wunſche zufolge) zu ihm gehen. 4. Er wird mittels einer Strickleiter aus dem Gefängniſſe entkommen. 5. Sie verlaſſen während des Regens das Haus nicht. 6. Eine alte Kirche ſteht unweit des Ufers. 7. Ich befehle Ihnen kraft meines Amtes dieſe Stadt zu verlaſſen. 8. Sie verhinderte es nicht aller ihrer Bemühungen ungeachtet (or ungeachtet aller ihrer Bemühungen). 9. Ich vermuthe es vermöge ſeines Briefes. 10. Der Träger hat ihren Koffer unweit des Hauſes geſtellt. 11. Mein Vater reiſte ſtatt ſeines Bruders. 12. Sein Freund wird es um ſeiner Schweſter willen thun, und ich werde es um Ihretwillen thun. 13. Ihr Onkel war diesſeit des Fluſſes. 14. Wo wohnte Ihre Tante? 15. Sie wohnte jenſeits. 16. Sie wohnte jenſeit der Brücke. 17. Ich bitte Sie um des Himmels willen. 18. Wir werden trotz des ſchlechten Wetters ausgehen. 19. Er wird dies mittelſt ſeines Einfluſſes thun. 20. Ich hörte es während meiner Reiſe in Deutſchland. 21. Die Knaben ſpielten außerhalb des Gartens. 22. Die Kirche liegt oberhalb der Stadt. 23. Wir wohnen unweit der Brücke. 24. Düſſeldorf liegt diesſeit und Köln jenſeit des Rheins. 25. Die Diebe haben die Kiſte vermittelſt falſcher Schlüſſel geöffnet. 26. Warum kauften Sie die Uhre nicht? 27. Wegen des Preiſes; ſie war zu theuer. 28. Karl kommt Ihretwegen. 29. Sie thun es unſertwegen. 30. Ich habe es ſeinetwegen geſagt. 31. Wir bleiben um unſerer Schweſter willen zu Hauſe. 32. Er ſchreibt meinetwegen nicht. 33. Unſere Freunde werden trotz des Regens (or dem Regen) kommen. 34. Wir hören mittels unſerer Ohren. 35. Unſere Freunde werden dieſe Stadt innerhalb eines Monates verlaſſen. 36. Sie werden ſtatt unſer gehen. 37. Worms liegt oberhalb und Bingen unterhalb der Mündung des Mains. 38. Das Dorf liegt unweit des Berges. 39. Paris hat viele breite Straßen außerhalb und innerhalb ſeiner Mauern.

## 63.

1. Dort geht er! 2. Hier iſt er! 3. Heute iſt das Wetter ſchöner als es geſtern war. 4. In meiner Jugend machte ich manche Reiſe durch verſchiedene Länder; nun iſt meine Jugend vorüber, und meine Reiſen ſind beendet. 5. Des Regens halber (or wegen des Regens) bleib ich zu Hauſe. 6. Ohne Luft kann kein Thier leben. 7. Im Januar werden die Tage länger und die Nächte kürzer. 8. Nach dem Tode des Saul (or nach Sauls Tode) herrſchten zwei Könige in Paläſtina. 9. Kalt war der Tag; aber der Himmel war klar. 10. Ihn kenne ich nicht. 11. Jenen Mann habe ich nie geliebt. 12. So ſchön ſcheint die Sonne. 13. Die Sonne ſcheint ſo ſchön. 14. Ich habe eine neue Kutſche gekauft. 15. Eine neue Kutſche habe ich gekauft, aber nicht ein neues Pferd. 16. Ich habe Ihres Bruders Gewehr verſucht. 17. Ihres Bruders Gewehr habe ich verſucht, aber nicht das Ihrige. 18. Iſt dies der kürzeſte Weg. 19. Ja, mein Herr! einen kürzern werden Sie nicht finden. 20. Donnerſtag Abend verkaufte mein Vater ſeine zwei Pferde. 21. Faſt die ganze Woche haben wir gejagt. 22. Nach Gold ſuchten ſie. 23. Geſtern Abend wurde er krank, und dieſen (better **heute Morgen**) Morgen glaubt Keiner an ſein Aufkommen. 24. Geſtern war er noch ein reicher Mann; heute iſt er ein Bettler. 25. Dieſen (better **heute**) Morgen werde ich keinen Thee nehmen. 26. Nächſte Woche werden unſere Soldaten alle Räuber vertreiben. 27. Noch einmal hörten wir den gelehrten Griechen. 28. Morgen werden einige Freunde uns beſuchen (lit. zu ſehen kommen). 29. Geſtern früh galoppierten drei Reiter durch unſere Straßen.

30. Zu früh kommen Sie, lieber Herr, ein tiefer Schnee bedeckt noch die Berge. 31. Im Hause war Alles ruhig. 32. Durch die weiten Fenster haben sie (better hat man) die kostbaren Bücher gerettet. 33. Wann kaufte er das Buch? 34. Gestern kaufte er es. 35. Wann verkaufte Ihr Vater seine Uhr? 36. Vorgestern verkaufte er sie.

## ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Brauner, braunst; grüner, grünst; weißer, weißest; schwärzer, schwärzest; besser, best; edler, edelst; höher, höchst; ebner, ebenst; vollkommner, vollkommenst; heitrer, heiterst; bittrer, bitterst; näher, nächst; mehr, meistens, am meisten; seltner, seltenst; härter, härtest; bescheidner, bescheidenst; saurer, sauerst; wohl, besser, bestens, am besten, aufs beste; gern, lieber, am liebsten; übel, ärger, am ärgsten; bald, früher or eher, am frühesten, or am ehesten, baldigst.

2. When the object is a pronoun (p. 236, 6).

3. Mit ihm; durch ihn; für sie; von ihr; nächst ihm; nächst ihnen; sammt Ihnen; durch dich, sie, sie, Sie, mich; ohne sie, es, ihn, sie, mich, uns, euch, Sie; entlang des Weges, or den Weg entlang; zu dem or zum Lehrer, nach des Lehrers Hause; nach Berlin, zu meinem Bruder; gegen sie, mich, dich, ihn, sie, Sie; um zehn Uhr, um zwei Uhr; gegen Abend, gegen Mittag; gegen zehn Knaben, gegen fünf Uhr.

4. Die Kathedrale von Bourges ist sehr groß. 2. Die Einwohner von Bregents sind fleißig. 3. Wir hörten Humboldts Beschreibung des Erdbebens von Caracas. 4. Die Festungen von Cadiz und Koblenz sind sehr stark. 5. Viele Straßen von Paris sind klein.

5. Er war mir immer treu. War sie mir je treu? Weder er noch sie waren mir je treu. Er ist immer glücklich gewesen und wird immer glücklich sein. Ist er je glücklich gewesen? Keiner von uns wird je glücklich sein (p. 239, je).

6. Des guten, des falschen, des edlen, des bittern or bittren, des bösen, des klaren, des theuren or theuern, des ebnen, des beladnen, des hohen, des üblen, des offnen, des seltnen.

7. By the letter ß; p. 272; *Take Notice!*

8. die See=*the sea, ocean*; der See=*lake*; diesseits, jenseits are adverbs, diesseit, jenseit are prepositions (p. 272, 7).

9. die Rathschläge.

10. Of the S-Declension.

11. The neuters ending in chen or lein, and those ending in obscure e, and beginning with the augment Ge–, as **Gebäude, Gebirge,** etc.

12. Er war den halben Tag bei ihm. Er wird diesen Abend (more common: **heute** Abend) nicht kommen. Kostet dieses Buch mehr als einen Thaler? Es kostet einen halben Thaler. Er kann nicht des Morgens (or Morgens) die Briefe schreiben, er wird sie des Abends (or Abends) schreiben. Er ist nicht reich aber zufrieden. Er ist nicht reich sondern arm. Er ist nicht stark aber gesund. Er ist nicht stark sondern schwach. Sie wird einem solchen faulen Knaben nicht helfen. Sie wird solch einem faulen Knaben nicht helfen. Ist dies meine Feder? Es ist nicht die Ihrige (or Ihre), es ist die ihrige (or ihre), die seinige (or seine). Ist er für Sie oder gegen Sie? Er ist für mich. Ist sie bei Ihnen gewesen? Sie war mit ihr, aber nicht für sie. Für wen sind diese schönen Bücher? Diese sind für mich und jene für meine Schwestern. Sie kann ohne sie nicht leben; sie wohnt immer bei ihr.

13. Wegen des Donners; um des Lehrers willen; ſeinetwegen; meiner Schweſter willen (or um meiner S. willen), ihretwillen or um ihretwillen; ihretwegen, Ihretwegen, unſertwegen, ihretwegen, ſeinetwegen. Deinetwegen hatte ich eher (or früher) an ſie geſchrieben. Seinethalben ſowohl als ihrethalben eilte Ihr Vater nach Rom. Meinethalben hat er ſie verfolgt. Schöne Bilder hängen an der Wand. Ich werde dieſe ſchönen Bilder an die Wand hängen. Die Gärtnerin hatte die Blumen auf den Tiſch gelegt. Die Blumen waren auf dem Tiſche. Die ganze Woche haben ſie gejagt. Ich werde in einer halben Stunde zum Arzte gehen; jetzt habe ich keine Zeit. Dieſen Morgen (more common: heute Morgen) werde ich Kaffee ſtatt Thees trinken. Noch einmal werde ich zu ihm gehen. Schön iſt ſie, aber nicht liebenswürdig. Außer meiner Mutter war keiner zu Hauſe.

## [50.] THE STRONG VERBS.—CONTINUED.

### TABLE OF THE STRONG VERBS.

In order to facilitate the study of these verbs, we shall divide them into classes according to the radical vowel of the infinitive, by adopting the following order: a, e, ei, i, ie. Each class is subdivided into groups, according to the vowel or diphthong of the *imperfect* and of the *past participle*.

### FIRST CLASS.—RADICAL VOWEL a.

1. *First group*: a—i—a.

| *Infinitive.* | *Indic. Present.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| fallen, *to fall* | fällſt | fiel | gefallen |
| laſſen, *to let, let alone* | läſſeſt | ließ | gelaſſen. |

In like manner are conjugated: blaſen, *to blow*; fangen, *to catch*; halten, *to hold*; ſchlafen, *to sleep*; braten, *to roast*; hangen, *to hang*; rathen, *to advise*.

And the compounds: anfangen, *to begin*; empfangen, *to receive*; gefallen, *to please*; mißfallen, *to displease*; gerathen, *to hit upon*.

2. *Second group*: a—u—a.

| *Infinitive.* | *Indic. Present.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| ſchlagen, *to strike* | ſchlägſt | ſchlug | geſchlagen |
| ſchaffen,* *to create* | ſchaffſt | ſchuf | geſchaffen. |

In like manner are conjugated: backen, *to bake*; fahren, *to fare, go, to drive*; tragen, *to carry*; waſchen, *to wash*; laden,** *to load*; graben, *to dig*.

*Schaffen signifying *to make, work*, and the derivatives of this verb are regular; e. g. er verſchaffte, *he procured*; with the exception of erſchaffen, *to create*, er erſchuf, *he created*, er hat erſchaffen, *he has created*.

**Laden and ſchaffen do not modify the a in the 2nd and 3d pers. pres. indic.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

In the first the *participle* preserves **radical a**, as of ſchlagen,
Participle geſchlagen, thus of tragen, getragen;
Of fangen, gefangen; of braten, gebraten;
Of hangen, gehangen; of rathen, gerathen.
The *imperfect* takes **u** for **a** in backen, graben, laden, ſchlagen,
In fahren, waſchen, wachſen, in ſchaffen and tragen.
**a** is changed into **ie** in fangen and braten,
Fallen, halten and laſſen, ſchlafen, hangen and rathen.

## 64.

Hamburg[hăm'-bürᵏ], *Hamburgh*
das Brett*[brĕt] (-eſ, -er), *board, plank*
hinein (p. 245, dahin)
der Canal*[kă-nahl'](-eſ, Canäle), *canal*
um zu (before Infinitive), *in order, ſo as*
verbinden (p. 177, Einband), *to unite, join*
die Abtei*[aᵇ-tī'], *abbey*
begraben* (p. 265, graben), *to bury, inter*
der Strumpf*[strümpf] (-eſ, Strümpfe), *ſtocking*
die Antwort (antworten, p. 207), (-en), *answer, reply*
der Gefangene (fangen), (-n), *captive*
entlaſſen, *to dismiss, discharge* (from prison, duty), (laſſen, 248)
rathen[rah'-tᵉn], *to guess, to advise, counsel* (see Rath, p. 254)
die Koſt, *food, fare, board* (p. 247, ſpeiſen)
ſtärken[stär'-kᵉn], *to strengthen, invigorate* (ſtark, p. 113)
nachdem[näᶜʰ-dām'], adv. *afterwards*; conj. *after, when*
ruhig (ruhen, p. 150), *quiet, tranquil*
der Fabrikant*[făbᵉ-rī-känt'](-en) *manufacturer*
der Arbeiter (181, Arbeit), (-ſ) *workman*
fahren (p. 176, Vorfahr), *to travel, ride in a carriage, to drive*
halten, *to keep, hold* (p. 155)
erhalten, *to keep up, to receive, get*
die Wärme[vär'-mᵉ], *warmness, warmth* (warm, p. 84)
der Same*[zah'-mᵉ](-nſ, -n) *ſeed*
hundertfältig*[hün'-dert-fält'-tīᵍ], *hundredfold, centuple*
der Betrug[bᵉ-trūᵏ] (-eſ), *cheat, fraud*
wiederholen[vēᵉ-dᵉr-hō'-lᵉn], *to repeat*
der Streich*[strīᵍ](-eſ, -e), *ſtroke, blow*
behalten (halten), *to keep, retain*
das Huhn*[hūn] (-eſ, Hühner), *fowl, hen* [*bon*
das Band[bäntˢ](-eſ, Bänder), *rib-*
die Trägheit[träkᵏ'-hīt], *laziness* (träge, p. 239)
untergraben (graben) *to undermine, to corrupt*
tauſend,* *thousand*
die Form* (-en), *form, figure*
das Wohlſein[vōl'-zīn] (-ſ), (wohl, p. 85), *welfare, proſperity.*

1. Wir fuhren von Hamburg nach London in weniger als zwei Tagen. 2. Wer hat den Nagel in das Brett geſchlagen? 3. Karl ſchlug ihn hinein. 4. Wir haben einen Canal gegraben, um den kleinen See mit dem Fluſſe zu verbinden. 5. Die meiſten der engliſchen Könige ſind in der Weſtminſter Abtei begraben. 6. Die Königin Eliſabeth war die erſte Perſon, welche in England Strümpfe trug. 7. Die Antwort gefiel dem General ſo ſehr, daß er den Gefangenen entließ. 8. Ich rieth ihm durch Arbeit und kräftige Koſt ſeinen Körper zu ſtärken. 9. Der kleine Knabe hing an mir mit der Liebe eines Kindes. 10. Nachdem wir New York verlaſſen hatten, war das Wetter ſchön und ruhig. 11. Mancher Fabrikant entläßt jetzt die meiſten ſeiner Arbeiter. 12. Wohin ſind die Eltern gefahren? 13. Sie fuhren mit der Tante nach Philadelphia. 14. Ich habe dieſe Uhre als (for) ein Geſchenk von meinem Onkel erhalten. 15. Ich hielt ihn für einen Andren. 16. Keine Pflanze wächſt ohne Wärme und Regen. 17. Der Same, welcher auf guten Boden fiel, trug Frucht hundertfältig. 18. Er verkauft die Haut, ehe er den Bären gefangen hat. 19. Das Kind wuchs und wurde ſtark. 20. Wer Andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt ſelbſt hinein (Prov.). 21. Betrug ſchlägt ſeinen eignen Herrn (Prov.). 22. Eine Hand wäſcht die andere (Prov.). 23. Durch wiederholte Streiche || Fällt auch die größte Eiche (Prov.). 24. Mancher ſchläft mit offnen Augen wie der Haſe (Prov.). 25. Der Arme behält ſeine Hühner, der Reiche ſeine Töchter nicht lange (Prov.). 26. Einigkeit, ein feſtes Band, || Hält zuſammen Leut und Land (Prov.). 27. Die Trägheit untergräbt in tauſend Formen unſer Wohlſein (Göthe). 28. Böſe Frucht trägt die böſe Saat (Schiller).

## 65.

Beide[bī'-de], *both* (Tab. V. 9)
der Verwundete, *wounded man*, (p. 202, verwunden)
der Sieger*[zē'-gᵉr] (–s), *victor, conqueror*
kaum,* *scarce, scarcely, no sooner*
der Geſandte[gᵉ-zänt'-tᵉ] (p. 82, ſenden), *ambassador*
die Ankunft*[änt'-künft], *arrival, coming*, (p. 238, ankommen)
einladen[in'-lah"-dᵉn], *to invite*
blaſen*[blah'-zᵉn], *to blow*
das Betragen*[bᵉ-trah'-gᵉn] (–s), *behavior, conduct*
**ganz und gar nicht, not at all** (*Idiom*)
braten[brah'-tᵉn], *to roast* (?)
die Trompete[tröm"-pā'-tᵉ] (–n), *trumpet*
das Rindfleiſch (das Rind, *ox, cow*), [*beef*
errathen[ĕr-rah'-tᵉn], *to guess* (rathen, p. 254, Rath)
die Poſt[pöst] (–en) *post* [280)
der Jäger[yāt'-gᵉr](–s), (jagen, p. laden, *to load* [280)
der Kutſcher, *coachman* (Kutſche, p.
das Grab, (–es, Gräber) *grave* (graben, p. 233, Goldgrube)
der Dorn*[dörn](–es, –e, and Dörner), *thorn*
ſchaffen, *to create* (p. 254)
langſam,* *slow, slowly*.

1. This lady has two daughters; both are beautiful, but the youngest pleases me most. 2. The captives and the wounded fell into the hands (sing.) of the conqueror. 3. 'Both 'his sons fell (perf.**) in the battle. 4. He left the village in which he 'had lived 'more (länger) 'than 'seven 'years. 5. No sooner had the ambassador heard of our arrival, than (als) he 'invited 'us 'to (def. artic.) 'dinner. 6. The wind blows very hard (ſtarf) to-day, yesterday it did not blow so hard. 7. His behavior did not please me (to me) at all. 8. We have caught some fish (plur.). 9. We expected guests, and my mother roasted a goose. 10. My brother formerly played (blew) the trumpet. 11. The cook (fem.) has roasted a piece (of) beef. 12. What did your (thy) friend advise you (to thee)? 13. Who has guessed the riddle? 14. Did 'you sleep all (the whole) night? 15. I did not sleep well. 16. Why has he not carried the letters to the post? 17. The servant (fem.) carried them. 18. That meat is not boiled, it is roasted. 19. Our gardener fell from a high tree yesterday. 20. The huntsmen loaded their guns. 21. Why did 'you beat the dog? 22. I never have beaten him; Charles beats him every day. 23. The coachman does not drive (fahren) fast enough. 24. We drove into the town in the night. 25. The man is digging a grave; yesterday he dug two. 26. We have caught many fish (plur.) this morning; your (thy) brother has not caught so many. 27. These roses have (ſein or haben) grown in our garden. 28. Only thistles and thorns grew in (auf) these fields. 29. What hour (transl. how much) does the clock strike? 30. It strikes ten. 31. Our baker no more bakes as good bread as formerly. 32. This white bread is not baked well. 33. God created (def. artic.) man as well as the little insect. 34. He has created heaven and earth. 35. Two soldiers carried the officer out of the battle and washed his wounds. 36. An oak grows very slowly.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Brett** (historically more correct Bret), ahd. mhd. *brët*, conn. with **breit**, p. 104; A. S. *bord*, a **board**—*brad*, broad, Tab. V. 37 and 11.

**Canal, canal,** Lat. *canalis*, a water-pipe, from *canna*, a reed, a pipe.

**Abtei, abbey,** a monastery presided over by an **Abt, abbot**=father, *ab* in Hebrew, and *abba* in Chaldee=father.

---

**In speaking in general of the past time without giving additional circumstances, the *Perfect* tense is mostly preferred.

**Strumpf**, *stocking*; mhd. *strumpf*=**Stumpf**, **stump** (p. 146), hence prob. like the Engl. *stock*ing, a cover for the *stumps* or stocks.

**Fabrikant**, *manufacturer*, Lat. *fabricare*, to **fabricate**, to *manufacture*, comp. **fabric.**

**Same**, *seed*; mhd. *same*, from **ſäen**, *to* **sow**, see Saat, p. 279, akin to Lat. *semen*, seed.

**hundertfältig**, **hundredfold**, c. of hundert, *hundred*, and fältig, ahd. *falt*, A. S. *feald*, Engl. **fold**, from **falten**, to lay one part over another, to **fold.**

**wiederholen**, *to repeat*; lit. *to fetch*, *to look for again*, c. of wieder, p. 138, and holen, p. 221.

**Streich**, **stroke**, *lash*, *blow*, from **ſtreichen**, *to pass*, *pass over*, *touch*, then to **strike**, *whip*, comp. Strickleiter, p. 277.

**Huhn**, *fowl*, **hen**; A. S. *henn*, related with Hahn, *cock*, Henne, *hen*, orig. the singer, akin to Lat. *cano*, to sing.

**tauſend**, **thousand**; A. S. *thusend*, Goth. *thusundi*—*thus*, *tigus*, ten and *hund*, hundred.

**Form**, **form**, *figure*, *shape*, fr. Lat. *forma*, *form* or shape, *formare*, to *form*, frame, shape.

**Sieger**, *victor*, *conqueror*, from ſiegen, (?) prob. related with ahd. *sigan*, mhd. *sigen*, and Old N. *siga*=**ſinken**, **to sink**, whence ahd. and mhd. ſeigen, nhd. ſeihen, to strain, to filter, properly to make sink, then to cause to fall, to cut down the enemy. Of the same root is **verſiegen**, *to dry up*, *to be drained*, *exhausted*. comp. **Sigismund**, ahd. *Sigimund*, c. of Goth. *sigis*, A. S. *sige*=victory, and *mund*, A. S. *mund*=the flat hand, the hand, related with Lat. *manus*, hand, then power over a dependent person, shelter, protection.

**kaum**, *scarcely*, *hardly*, prop. *with pain and trouble*; comp. Lat. *æger*, sick, diseased, and *ægre*, hardly; Fr. *à peine*, allied to **Kummer**, *grief*, *trouble*, **cumber.**

**Ankunft**, *arrival*, **coming**, c. of an, p. 241, and kunft (used only in compound words: Ankunft, Herkunft, descent [coming hither], Zukunft, time to *come*, future), for kunt=kommt, from **kommen**, *to* **come.**

**blaſen**, *to blow*; A. S. *blæsan*, from which *blæst*, Engl. **blast**, **blaze**, akin to **blähen**, *to* **blow** *up*, *to swell*, Lat. *flare*.

**Betragen**, *behavior*, *conduct*, *bearing*, fr. tragen, *to carry*, *to bear* (p. 254).

**Poſt**, **post**; Lat. *postis*, a post, anything *fixed* or *placed*, fr. *pono*–*positum*, to place.

**Dorn**, **thorn**, *prickle*, perhaps from the type *tar*, to **tear**, *to pierce*. **Tab.** V. 9.

**langſam**, *slow*, *slowly*, from lang (p. 101), lit. **ling***ering*, A. S. *langian*, to protract.

## [51.] SECOND CLASS.—RADICAL VOWEL e.

*a. First group*: e—a(ah)—e.

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indic.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| geben, *to give* | gibſt | gab (ah) | gegeben (a') |
| eſſen, *to eat* | iſſeſt | aß (ah) | gegeſſen *(ë). |

In like manner are conjugated: geſchehen, *to happen*; leſen, *to read*; freſſen, *to devour*; vergeſſen, *to forget*; ſehen, *to see*; geneſen,**to recover*; meſſen, *to measure*; treten (trittſt), *to tread*.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Sehen, makes er ſieht, er ſah, geſehen;
Geſchehen, es geſchieht, es geſchah, geſchehen.
Thus conjugate: geben and treten, eſſen and freſſen,
Vergeben, zertreten and leſen, geneſen, meſſen, vergeſſen.

*b. Second group*: e—a—o.

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indic.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| treffen, *to hit, meet* | trifft | traf (ah) | getroffen (ö) |
| ſtehlen, *to steal* | ſtiehlſt | ſtahl (ah) | geſtohlen (o). |

In like manner are conjugated: brechen, *to break*; ſchelten, *to chide, to scold*; verderben, *to spoil*; ſchrecken, erſchrecken, *to be frightened*; ſprechen, *to speak*; werfen, *to throw*; werden, *to become*; nehmen (nimmſt), *to take*; ſtechen, *to sting*; ſterben, *to die*; bergen, *to hide*; helfen, *to help*; berſten, *to burst*; befehlen,† *to command*; gelten, *to be worth, to avail*; werben, *to sue, woo*; empfehlen, *to recommend*.

*Remarks*—1. *The g which precedes the radical in the form ge(g)eſſen, has only been added for the sake of euphony. Eſſen is the only strong verb which begins with a vowel (comp. above p. 284, 7, *a*).

2. **Geneſen does not change the e in the 2nd and 3d pers. pres., hence, du geneſeſt, er geneſet, geneſt.

3. †The simple verb fehlen, *to fail, to be wanting*, and the transitive verbs ſchrecken and erſchrecken, *to frighten, to terrify* are weak. The simple verb ſchrecken is rarely used.

4. For the imperf. subj. in verbs ending in l or r followed by another consonant or in simple l, as helfen, ſterben, befehlen, see a future section treating on the moods.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

As in brechen, er bricht, er brach (ah), gebrochen,
Or in ſtechen, er ſticht, er ſtach (ah), geſtochen,
Change radical e into i, a, o, in werben,
In ſchrecken, erſchrecken, verderben and ſterben,
In berſten, helfen, and treffen, befehlen, empfehlen,
In gelten and ſchelten, werfen and ſtehlen,
In bergen, verbergen, nehmen and ſprechen,
Vernehmen, entſprechen, werden, zerbrechen.

*c. Third group*: e—o—o.

| *Infinitive.* | *Present indic.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| quellen, *to spring forth* | quillſt | quoll | gequollen |
| heben,[1] *to lift* | hebſt | hob (o) | gehoben (o). |

In like manner are conjugated: fechten, *to fight*; ſchwellen,[2] *to swell*; erliſchen,[3] *to become extinguished*; flechten, *to twine*; ſchmelzen, *to melt*; weben (webſt), *to weave*; melken, *to milk*; dreſchen, *to thrash*; bewegen[4] (bewegſt), *to induce*; ſcheren, *to shear*.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Put **o for e** in melken, ſchmelzen and fechten,
In bewegen, ſcheren and flechten,
In dreſchen, ſchwellen and heben,
In erliſchen, quellen and weben.
Thus of fechten: er ficht, er focht, gefochten;
Of flechten: er flicht, er flocht, geflochten,
The e is **unchanged** in the present in **weben,**
As du webſt, er webt, and the same in **bewegen** and **heben.**

## 66.

| | |
|---|---|
| die Höhe[hēa'-he](-n)(hoch, p. 102), *height* | der Fehler*[fā'-ler] (-s), *defect, fault* |
| meſſen[mĕs'-sen], *to measure* (p. 263, regelmäßig | täglich[tāk'-liy] *daily* (Tag, p. 170) |
| | der Anker*[änk'-er] (-s), *anchor* |

*Remarks.*—1. The verbs heben and bewegen do not change the e into i in the 2nd and 3d pers. pres. indic. Scheren presents the double form, du ſchierſt, er ſchiert and du ſcherſt, er ſchert.

2. The *transitive* verbs ſchwellen and ſchmelzen are weak.

3. Erliſchen is often written with ö (erlöſchen), but this orthography is not correct. *All the other compound verbs*, as also the *simple verb* leſchen are weak.

4. Bewegen, signifying *to move, to make a movement*, is weak.

bemannen[bᵉ-män'-nᵉn], *to supply with men, equip* (to man)
der Skote*[skō'-tᵉ] (-n), *Scot*
der Norden (p. 238), *North*
ſüdlich*[zēēᵗ'-lih], *southern*
ſchelten*[shĕl'-tᵉn], *to reprove, scold*
berſten*[bĕr'-stᵉn] *to burst, crack, split*
die Zahnbürſte (Zahn, 179; Bürſte, 207), *tooth-brush*
verderben*[fᵉr-dĕr'-bᵉn], *to spoil*
zerbrechen[tsᵉr-brĕ-yᵉn], *to break to pieces, to shatter* (zer, p. 185 brechen, p. 102)
treffen*[trĕf'-fᵉn], *to hit, strike, meet*
der Apfelbaum (Apfel, p. 89, Baum, p. 88), *apple-tree*
der Aſt[äst] (-es, Äſte), *bough, branch*
verſprechen* (ſprechen, p. 109), *to promise*
das Segel[zā'-gᵉl](-s), *sail* (ſegeln, p. 265 Wort halten, *to keep one's word*
dreſchen*[drĕ'-shᵉn], *to thrash*
die Aehre[āᵉ'-rᵉ](-n), *ear* (of corn), *spike*
zertreten (zer-, treten, p. 263), *to crush or break by treading on*
zertreten laſſen, *to submit to be trod upon, or to be crushed*
ſcheren*[shā'-rᵉn], *to shear, to cut off*
nehmen*[nā'-mᵉn], *to take, to seize*
je- deſto* (je, p. 117 and 239, dĕs'-tō), see Lexicology.
der Krug*[krūᵏ](-es, Krüge), *pitcher, jug*
rufen*[rū'-fᵉn], *to call out, cry to*
zählen (erzählen, p. 206), *to number, count*
der Anfang (anfangen, p. 241), *beginning, commencement*
zuerſt*[zu-, erſt) *at first*
der Amboß*[ām'-bōs] (-ſſes, -ſſe), *anvil*
ſtrafen*[strah'-fᵉn], *to punish*
das Vertrauen[fᵉr-trou'-ᵉn] (-s), (ver-, trauen, p. 204), *trust, confidence*
der Verſtand[fᵉr-ſtänᵗ'] (-es), *understanding, intellect* (verſtehen, p. 241)
verſtändig, *intelligent* (Verſtand)
üben[ēēᵗ-bᵉn], *to practise, exercise*
die Einfalt*[in'-fält], *simplicity*
das Seltene or Seltne (ſelten, p. 141), *that which is rare*
vergeſſen*[fᵉr-gĕs'-sᵉn], *to forget*
ſchwerlich (ſchwer, p. 232), *hardly.*

1. Wir traten zu den Leuten, die wir auf dem Felde ſahen. 2. Noch Niemand hat die Höhe dieſes Berges gemeſſen. 3. Lies dieſes Buch mit Aufmerkſamkeit. 4. Man ſieht die Fehler Anderer leichter als ſeine eignen. 5. Der Menſch ißt; das Thier frißt. 6. Gott gibt uns unſer tägliches Brod. 7. Columbus befahl ſeinen Leuten, den Anker zu werfen und die Boote zu bemannen. 8. Die Skoten gaben dem Norden von Britannien ihren eignen Namen, wie ihn die Angeln oder Angelſachſen dem ſüdlichen Theile gaben. 9. Unſere Mutter hat uns geſcholten, weil wir mit Steinen geworfen hatten. 10. Auch das letzte Faß barſt; nun ſind alle geborſten.

11. Die zu ſcharfe Zahnbürſte verdarb mir die Zähne. 12. Wer zerbrach jene Stöcke? 13. Karl hat ſie zerbrochen; er zerbricht was er ſieht. 14. Wir trafen jene Herrn in Frankreich. 15. Hilf dir ſelbſt, und der Himmel wird dir helfen. 16. Dieſer Apfelbaum trug voriges Jahr ſo viele Früchte, daß die Äſte unter der Laſt brachen. 17. Du verſprachſt mir, oft Nachricht von dir zu geben; warum haſt du nicht Wort gehalten? 18. Die alten Völker droſchen nicht, wie man jetzt driſcht; ſie ließen die Aehren durch Pferde oder Ochſen zertreten. 19. Dieſer Landmann will ſeine Schafe verkaufen, wenn ſie geſchoren ſind. 20. Glück und Glas, wie bald bricht das! 21. Gib blind, nimm ſehend (Prov.). 22. Er gibt mit dem Munde, aber die Hände halten feſt (Prov.). 23. Je weniger man ißt, je länger ißt man (Prov.). 24. Sieh nicht über dich, ſondern unter dich (Prov.). 25. Das Kleine wird geſtohlen, das Große genommen (Prov.). 26. Sprich wenig mit Andern, viel mit dir ſelbſt (Prov.). 27. Der Krug geht ſo lange zu Waſſer, bis er bricht (Prov.). 28. Wenn man ihm ruft: driſch! || Verſteht er gern: zu Tiſch! (Prov.). 29. Der Wolf frißt auch von gezählten Schafen (Prov.). 30. Aller Anfang iſt ſchwer, ſprach der Dieb und ſtahl zuerſt einen Amboß (Prov.). 31. Ich ſtrafe mein Weib mit guten Worten, ſagte jener Bauer, da warf er ihr die Bibel an den Kopf (Prov.), 32. Der beſſere Menſch tritt in die Welt mit fröhlichem Vertrauen (Schiller). 33. Was kein Verſtand der Verſtändigen ſieht, || Das übet in Einfalt ein kindlich Gemüth (Schiller). 34. Das Seltne vergißt man ſchwerlich (Leſſing).

## 67.

Mittwoch*[mit'-vöch], *Wednesday*

die Ohrfeige*[ōr'-fi*-g$^{e}$] (-n), *box on the ear*

geſchehen[g$^{e}$-shā'-h$^{e}$n], *to happen* (p. 206, Geſchichte)

das Spinnengewebe (Spinne, p. 104, weben, p. 117), *cobweb, spider's web*

der Komet[kō-māt'] (-en), *comet*

der Capitän[kā-pi-tāīn'](-s), *captain*

die Muſkete[mūs-kā'-t$^{e}$] (-n), *musket*

die Gerſte[gārs'-t$^{e}$], *barley*,

die Rinde[rin'-d$^{e}$], *bark, rind*

der Band[bänt] (-es, Bände), *volume* (binden, p. 177)

die Geſchichte (p. 206, Geſchichte) *history*

deutlich*[doit'-lix], *distinct*, and [adv.

geneſen[g$^{e}$-nā'-z$^{e}$n], *to recover*

das Sprichwort[spriv'-vört'] (-es, Wörter), *proverb* (ſprechen, Wort)

die Noth (p. 203, Noth) *necessity*

die Mücke[mik'-k$^{e}$] (-n), *gnat*

ſtechen[stē'-y$^{e}$n], *to sting* (p. 270, heftig*[hēf'-tiv], *violent*, and adv.

ſterben[stēr'-b$^{e}$n], *to die* (p. 151, ſterblich) [Stich)

das Tuch*[tūch](-es, Tuche), *cloth*

der Hafer or Haber*[hah'-fer], (–s), *oats*
die Überſetzung (über, p. 260, ſetzen, p. 182, Geſetz), *translation*
zufällig*[tsu'-fäl'-lig] *accidentally*
empfehlen*[ĕm-pfä'-len], *to recommend*
die Mäßigung[mäs-si-gung], *moderation* (p. 253, regelmäßig).

1. That poor woman broke her (transl. the) right arm last Wednesday. 2. The teacher gave this disobedient boy a box on the ear; it happened some days ago. 3. My niece sees a spider's web in that corner. 4. Have 'you ever seen a comet? 5. Yes, I saw a beautiful comet some years ago. 6. The captain ordered the soldiers (dat.) to load the muskets. 7. They thrash the barley; but they have not yet thrashed the wheat. 8. Since (da) you have helped (dat.) me, 'I 'shall soon have finished my work. 9. The bark of the trees burst in the great heat of last summer. 10. Have 'you read the last volume of Macauley's history of England? 11. I read the first two only. 12. Read (2nd pers. sing.) more distinctly. 13. Have 'you ever eaten better pears than these? 14. She recovered very fast from her illness. 15. What has (say, *is*) happened? 16. You (thou) are treading on your sister's dress. 17. You (thou) forget everything. 18. I have not forgotten, and I shall never forget your good advice. 19. This happens against my will. 20. A German proverb says: "Necessity breaks iron." 21. Recommend me (dat.), if you please, a good book. 22. She scolded her servant (fem.) for having (say that she has) broken the glass. 23. A gnat stings, but it does not sting so violently as a bee. 24. His father and (*his*) mother died last year. 25. Why did he not measure the cloth? 26. Horses eat grass, hay and oats. 27. The cat has eaten the bird. 28. Who has broken the large looking-glass in my room? 29. The servant (fem.) broke it this morning. 30. Who has helped you (thee) at (bei) your translation? 31. No one has helped me, I have made it quite by myself (transl. quite alone). 32. Who has thrown that stone into my room? 33. A little boy accidentally threw it there (*into it*). 34. Socrates recommended to his pupils moderation in all things.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Fehler**, *fault, deficiency*, **failing**, from **fehlen**, *to fail, to miss, to be wanting*, mhd. *fallieren*, Fr. *faillir*; fr. Lat. *fallere*, to deceive, prop. a thing or person is wanting, while it ought to be here.

**Anker, anchor**; Lat. *ancora*, Gr. *ankyra*; original meaning, *what has a bend*; Gr. *ankylos*=*curved, bent*; *onkos*=hook. Comp. Engl. *angle*.

**Skote, Scot**, name of the tribe, who together with the Picts settled in Scotland.

**ſüdlich, southern**, lit *towards the sun*, c. of lich, and ſüd for ſünd, ahd. *sundana*=from the south, then towards the sun, from root Sonne, *sun*.

**ſchelten, to scold, to reprove, chide**; Low Germ. *schelden*, to find fault, to rail in a violent manner.

**berſten, to burst, to crack, split**, mhd. *brësten*, Old S. *brestan*, A. S. *bërstan*, Sw. *brista*, to break.

**verderben, to spoil**, c. of ver- and derben, fr. derb, ahd. *derp*, A. S. *theorf* =unleavened, dry, dried, withered; akin to **darben, to suffer want, to starve**, and to dürfen (bedürfen), *to need*.

**treffen, to hit, strike, fall upon, meet**; A. S. *drepan*, orig. (accord. to Graff), to extend, *stretch, reach*.

**verſprechen, to give one's word, to promise**, lit. to speak away from yourself to another, comp. ver-, p. 141.

**dreſchen, to thrash**, Goth. *thriskan*, A. S. *thërscan*. Tab. V. 9.

**ſcheren, to shear, cut off**, mhd. *schërn*, ahd. *scëran*, A. S. *scëran*, to cut off, originally more general, *to divide, separate*, hence: Heerſchar, *division of an army*, Pflugſchar, *plough***share**, beſcheren, to distribute presents, the Engl. *share*=dividend, *short*.

**nehmen, to take, seize**, Goth. *niman*, Old Engl. **nim**, to take, rob.

**je- deſto**, je, p. 117, used in a comparative sense, to indicate an equal gradation of two qualities or activities (in English *the . . . . the*) with two comparatives, as **je mehr, deſto** (or **je**) beſſer, **the** more, **the** better; **je** eher, **je** lieber, **the** *sooner*, **the** *better*.

**Krug, *pitcher, jug*, crock**, (obs.) A. S. *croc*, Gael. *krog*, a pitcher.

**rufen, to call out, exclaim, cry to**, ahd. *kruofan*, A. S. *kropan*, comp. Lat. *crepo*=to crack, to rattle, from which **crepi***tate*.

**zuerſt, at first**, for the first, c. of zu, and erſt, p. 240.

**Amboß, an***vil*, mhd. *ambos*, c. of *an* (m instead of n before the labial b)= *on, upon*, and boß, from mhd. *bossen*, ahd. *possan* (comp. Prov. Engl. to **poss**, akin to **push**, Fr. *pousser*)=to beat, *strike, push*; thus the Engl. *anvil*, A. S. *anfilt*=*an*, and *fillan*, to strike, conn. prob. with Lat. *pellere* to beat.

**ſtrafen, to punish, chastise** (?) prob. akin to ahd. *stroufan*,=to pull intensely, to draw violently, allied to Engl. to **strip, stripe**.

**Einfalt, *simplicity***, lit. **one-fold, *undivided, artless, not cunning***, c. of ein, *one*, and falt, from falten, p. 296.

**vergeſſen**, *to* **forget**, c. of ver- and geſſen, A. S. *gitan*, to **get**, prop. to get *away* from the memory (see ver- p. 141). Tab. V. 10.

**Mittwoch**, *Wednesday*=die mitte Woche, *the* **middle week**, **mid-week**, the 4th day of the week.

**Ohrfeige**, *box on the ear, smack on the face*; c. of Ohr, p. 124, and Feige, fig; but in Ohrfeige, the latter component comes prob. from the root *fig*, to beat, strike; Dutch, *oorvijg* for *orveeg*, from veeg=stroke, blow, from *vegen*=fegen, *to sweep*, fig. vulg. to strike, to chastise.

**deutlich**, *plain, distinct*, fr. deuten, ahd. *diutjan*, orig. *popular*, intelligible to the people, ahd. *diot*=people, comp. deutſch, p. 116. Thus we also say in these days: deutſch ſprechen=to speak frankly, in plain terms.

**heftig**, *violent*, and *v-ly*, mhd. *hefteg*, also *haftig*=firm, steadfast, persevering, then earnest, vehement, from haften, *to hold on, to cling, stick*.

**Tuch**, *cloth, kerchief, neckcloth*, ahd. *tuoch, duach*, Dutch *doek*, Swed. *duk*, compare Engl. **duck**, allied with Gr. *tukton—teucho*, to make. The plur. of Tuch is **Tuche**, when signifying different sorts of cloth: **Tücher**, in the signification of *kerchief*, handkerchiefs, neckcloths.

**Haber** and **Hafer** (the latter now more commonly used), *oats*, **haver** (**haver**-sack).

**zufällig**, *accidental, chance*, and adv. from Zufall, *accident, hap*, c. of zu and fall, from **fallen**, *to* **fall** *to the share of, happen to*.

**empfehlen**, *to recommend*, from fehlen, p. 246, Befehl. The prefix **emp**= ent, ant, p. 207. It occurs only in two verbs more: empfangen, *to receive*, and empfinden, *to feel*.

## [52.] THIRD CLASS—RADICAL DIPHTHONG ei.

1. In all the verbs of this class, the diphthong **ei** is changed into **i** in the *imperfect* and the *past participle*. This **i** is **short** when followed by the letters **ch, f, ſ, t** (and by **b** in the two verbs leiden, *to suffer*, and ſchneiden, *to cut*), in all the other cases it is long and written **ie**.

2. *First group*: **ei—i(ī)—i**.

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſtreiten, *to contend* | ſtritt | geſtritten |
| reißen, *to tear* | riß | geriſſen. |

In like manner are conjugated: erbleichen, *to turn pale*; leifen, *to chide*; ſich befleißen, *to apply one's self*; leiden, *to suffer*; gleichen, *to resemble*; kneifen, *to pinch*; gleiten, *to glide*; ſchmeißen, *to fling*; ſchleichen, *to sneak*;

greifen, *to seize*; pfeifen, *to whistle*; reiten, *to ride*; weichen, *to yield*; ſchleifen, *to grind*; ſchreiten, *to stride*; ſtreichen, *to stroke*; beißen, *to bite*; ſchneiden, *to cut*.

There is a single exception: heißen, *to be called*: { *Imperf.* hieß, *Pa. Participle* geheißen.

*Remark.*—The following are weak: erweichen, *to soften*; einweichen, *to soak*; ſchleifen, in the sense of *to drag, pull along*, or to *demolish*, to *raze* (a fortress), and finally begleiten, *to accompany*, derived from geleiten, *to lead*, and not from gleiten;

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

As in English bite, bit, bitten,
And in German reiten, ritt, geritten,
Into **short** i change ei in ſtreichen,
In gleichen and ſchleichen, weichen, erbleichen,
In gleiten and ſchreiten, ſtreiten and keifen,
In greifen, ergreifen, ſchleifen and kneifen,
In ſchneiden and leiden, ſich befleißen and ſpleißen,
In ſchleißen and ſchmeißen, beißen and reißen.

3. *Second group*: ei—i(e), ie—i(e) ie.

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſchreien, *to cry, shout* | ſchrie | geſchrieen |
| weiſen, *to show, point out* | wies | gewieſen. |

In like manner are conjugated: ſpeien, *to spit*; treiben, *to drive*; ſchweigen, *to be silent*; ſcheinen, *to shine*; bleiben, *to remain*; meiden, vermeiden, *to avoid*; ſteigen, *to mount*; preiſen, *to praise*; reiben, *to rub*; ſcheiden, *to part*; gedeihen, *to prosper, to thrive*; zeihen, *to accuse*; ſchreiben, *to write*; leihen, *to lend*.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

As in ſteigen, ſtieg, geſtiegen,
And in ſchweigen, ſchwieg, geſchwiegen,
Change ei into ie in preiſen,
In ſcheinen and meiden, ſcheiden and weiſen,
In bleiben and reiben, treiben, ſchreiben and ſchreien
In ſpeien and leihen, gedeihen, zeihen, verzeihen.

## 68.

Gelangen,* *to arrive at, to reach*
das Heer*[hār] (–es, –e), *army*
ſtreiten*[ſtrī'-tᵉn], *to combat, contend*
weichen*[vī'-ᵛᵉn], *to give way, yield*
die Truppe*[trŭp'-pᵉ] (–n), *troop*
begreifen*[bᵉ-grī'-fᵉn] *to seize, grasp mentally, to comprehend*
ſeltſam*[zĕlt'-zām], *rare, strange, odd*

bedeuten*[bᵉ-ɗoi'-tᵉn], *to signify, denote, indicate*
heißen*[hī'-sᵉn], *to be called, named*
ſchweigen*[shvī'-gᵉn], *to keep silence, be still*
das Verbrechen*[fᵉr-brĕ'-yĕn] (–s), *crime, transgression*
gedeihen*[gᵉ-dī'-ẖen], *to thrive, get along well*
der Gipfel*[gĭp'-fel] (–s), *summit, peak*
beſteigen (ſteigen, p. 239), *to mount, ascend*
das Zehntel* (zehn, p. 126), *tenth*
umkehren*[üm'-kā"-rᵉn], *to turn, turn back*
die Kälte[kāl'-tᵉ], *cold, coldness* (kalt, p. 85)
wehmüthig*[vā'-mēē"-tĭy], *sad, woful, melancholy*
das Gefühl*[gᵉ-fēēl'] (–es, –e), *feeling, sentiment*
ergreifen (greifen, above), *to get hold of, seize*
die Zerſtörung* (ſtören, p. 276), *destruction*
die Wolke*[völ'-kᵉ] (–n), *cloud*
erbleichen*[ᵉr-blī'-yᵉn], *to turn or grow pale*
gülden*[gül'-dᵉn], *golden*
der Schein, *splendor, shine* (p. 200)
entweichen (weichen, above) *to retire, make one's escape*
dringen*[dring'-ᵉn], *to press throng*
berühmt*[bᵉ-rēēmt'] *famous, renowned*
ſpeien*[spī'-ᵉn], *to spit, spew*
unrecht, *wrong* (un, p. 85, recht, p. 202).
treiben (p. 247), *to drive, to put in motion, to be busied with, to do, act*
die Geiß*[gīs] (–en), *goat*
ablecken*[aᵖ'-lĕk"-kᵉn], *to lick off*
die Krähe*[krā'-ẖe] (–n), *crow*
aushacken*[ous'-hāk"-kᵉn] *to hack out, pick out*
fordern*[fŏr'-dᵉrn], *to demand, to ask* (von, *of*)
ſchwirren[shvĭr'-rᵉn], *to whir*
wunderbar (Wunder, p. 281), *wonderful, marvelous.*

1. Der Bote war ſchnell geritten, und doch gelangte er nicht zur Zeit dahin. 2. Die beiden Heere hatten lange geſtritten; aber endlich wichen die Feinde der Tapferkeit unſerer Truppen. 3. Ich begriff nicht, was dieſe ſeltſamen Worte bedeuteten. 4. Wie hat der letzte König von Rom geheißen? 5. Er hieß Tarquinius Superbus. 6. Warum ſchwiegſt du, als man dich fragte? 7. Was trieb ihn zu einem ſolchen Verbrechen? 8. Die jungen Bäume in unſerm Garten ſind gut gediehen. 9. Sind Sie ſchon auf den Gipfel jenes Berges geſtiegen? 10. Humboldt beſtieg mehr als neun Zehntel der Höhe des Chimborazo, mußte aber umkehren, weil die Kälte zu heftig und die Luft zu dünn (rare) wurde. 11. Ein wehmüthiges Gefühl ergriff uns, als wir die furchtbare Zerſtörung ſahen. 12. Die Deutſchen blieben länger in Frankreich, als ſie erwartet hatten. 13. Der Mond ſchien für einen Augenblick; der Sturm hatte die Wolken zerriſſen. 14. Garrick und Johnſon blieben während ihres ganzen Lebens

innige Freunde. 15. Die Sterne ſind erblichen || Mit ihrem güldnen Schein; || Bald iſt die Nacht entwichen, || Der Morgen bringt herein. 16. Lord Byron ſchrieb ſein berühmtes Gedicht „der Gefangene von Chillon“ in (within) zwei Tagen, in dem Dorfe Ouchy bei Lauſanne. 17. Der Hund frißt wieder, was er geſpieen hat (Prov.). 18. Schweig oder red (rede) etwas, das beſſer iſt denn (p. 229, Note) Schweigen (Prov.). 19. Unrecht Gut gedeiht nicht (Prov.). 20. Wie mans (man es) treibt, ſo geht's (geht es) (Prov.). 21. Steige nicht zu hoch, ſo fällſt du nicht zu tief (Prov.). 22. Es ſteht geſchrieben, wo es keine Geiß ableckt und keine Krähe aushackt (Prov.). 23. Geliehen Gold wird Blei, wenn mans wieder fordert (Prov.). 24. Das Unglück ſchreitet ſchnell (Schiller). 25. In einem Thal bei armen Hirten || Erſchien mit jedem jungen Jahr, || So oft die erſten Lerchen ſchwirrten, || Ein Mädchen ſchön und wunderbar (Schiller).

## 69.

zornig (Zorn, p. 253), *angry* [*pipe*
pfeifen*[pfī'-fᵉn], *to whistle, to*
meiden[mī'-dᵉn], *to shun*
ſcheiden (Beſcheidenheit, 182), *to separate, to part with*
ſcheinen (p. 101), *to seem*
kalt werden, *to get cold*
die Seite (p. 276), *page* (prop. *side* of a leaf)
furchtbar (p. 126), *awfully*
Tyrol[tī-rōl'], *Tyrol*
beſteigen, *to mount, to ascend*
feurig (Feuer, p. 79), *fiery*
der Ofen (p. 263), *furnace*
preiſen,* *to praise*
die Stimme*[stĭm'-mᵉ] (–n), *voice*
das Bedauern*[bᵉ-dou'-ᵉrn] (–s), *regret*
ſchleichen*[shlī'-yᵉn], *to sneak*
ſchleifen*[shlī'-fᵉn], *to grind, whet*
das Raſiermeſſer*[rā-zēr'-m.], *razor*
ſchneiden (p. 170), *to cut*
das Loch*[lōᶜʰ] (–es, Löcher), *hole*
ſtreiten, *to quarrel, dispute* (um, *about*).

1. The father was so angry that he tore the letter into (in) pieces. 2. The beggar's coat was quite torn. 3. That bad boy quarreled with his sister about nothing yesterday. 4. Did 'you whistle? 5. Charles has whistled with a key. 6. Did he suffer (perf.) much pain. 7. Yes, sir, he suffered much. 8. The king rode on a gray horse. 9. Whom did (perf.) the black dog bite? 10. He bit my sister. 11. How long did you stay in that town? 12. We stayed there only a few days. 13. That pear-tree throve well at first, but now it does not thrive (any) more. 14. The flax has (with ſein or haben) not prospered (thriven) this year. 15. What (wie) is that man called? 16. He is called Lewis. 17. I cannot lend 'you my grammar; I lent it to a French

lady yesterday. 18. We have always shunned that man. 19. They drove the boys out of the room. 20. The rebels have driven them out of our town. 21. We separated in peace and friendship. 22. It seems to get cold. 23. The general seemed to be angry. 24. They wrote two pages; we have written many more. 25. That boy cried awfully. 26. That sick man has spit blood. 27. When I was in Tyrol, I mounted the highest mountains. 28. Did 'you pardon him. 29. I have pardoned him. 30. The three men in the fiery furnace praised God with (a) loud voice. 31. Always lend your ear to (def. artic.) truth. 32. The soldiers parted with (von) their general with great regret. 33. On our last journey we ascended (to) the top of that mountain. 34. The sun shone through the branches of the trees. 35. During my illness I suffered (use *perfect*) very much. 36. The enemy yielded on all sides. 37. The thief opened the door and sneaked into the house, but I saw him and threw (drove) him out. 38. Who has ground that razor? 39. It is very badly ground. 40. We rode to the country house of our cousin, but we did not find him at home. 41. Who has cut that hole into the table? 42. We do not know; we have not cut it, because we have no knife. 43. What were you disputing about (worüber=what about)? 44. We have been disputing about Shakespeare's Hamlet.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**gelangen,** *to arrive at, reach*, ge- and langen, ahd. *langon, langen*, to **long** for, as if stretching out the mind after a remote object; gelangen=to extend to, to arrive at.

**Heer,** *army*, see p. 170, Hermann.

**ſtreiten,** *to combat, contend*; A. S. *stridan*, to walk (p. 203, Schritt) and to combat; the ahd. *stritan*, mhd. *striten*, and nhd. ſtreiten, have only the last meaning, viz. *to combat*, whilst the modern Engl. preserved the first, viz. *to stride*. This latter is probably the original; thus Lat. *contendere*, to struggle, quarrel, is derived from *tender*, to stretch, aim.

**weichen,** *to give way, to yield, retire*; A. S. *wican*, to yield, see weich, p. 146.

**Truppe, troop,** lit. *a crowd*, Fr. *troupe*, prob. from Lat. *turba*, a crowd (of people).

**begreifen,** *to seize, grasp mentally*, c. of be- and **greifen,** *to* **gripe, grope,** seize, A. S. *gripan*, Sans. *grabh*, to seize. Tab. V. 3.

**ſeltſam,** *rare, strange, odd*, from ſelten, p. 141.

**bedeuten,** *to signify, denote, indicate*, c. of be- and deuten, p. 303.

**heißen,** *to be called or named*; A. S. *hatan*, Engl. (obs.) **hight**: Johan **hight** that oon, and Alayn **hight** that other. Chaucer, The Reeves Tale.

**ſchweigen,** *to keep silence, be still*, ahd. *suigen*, A. S. *svigian*, allied with Gr. *sigan*=to keep silence.

**Verbrechen,** *crime, transgression*, fr. verbrechen, *to* **break** *law, to commit a crime*, see brechen, p. 104.

**gedeihen,** *to* **thrive,** *get along well* (in the vulgar language also beihen), ahd. *dihan*, A. S. *getheon*, to increase in external size, become bulky, akin to **dick, thick,** p. 265.

**Gipfel,** *summit, top, peak* or *head* of a thing, related with **Giebel, gable,** Goth. *gibla*, a pinnacle, Gr. *kephale*, the head.

**Zehntel,** *tenth*, lit. *tenth part*, c. of zehn, *ten*, and tel, abbreviated for **Theil,** *part*, p. 112, **Welttheil.**

**umkehren,** *to turn, turn back*, c. of um, p. 249, and kehren, *to turn*; A. S. *cerran*, to turn, from which **char,** lit. a *turn* of work, a job, A. S. *cerre*, a turn, space of time.

**wehmüthig,** *sad, sorrowful,* **woful,** *melancholy*, c. of weh, *painful, sore, aching*, from the interj. **weh! woe!** *alas! oh!* Lat. *væ!* Gr. *ouai!* from the sound, and muthig, fr. Muth, comp. Gemüth, p. 253.

**Gefühl,** **feel***ing, emotion, sentiment*, fr. **fühlen,** *to* **feel.**

**Zerſtörung,** *destruction*, fr. zerſtören, *to destroy, demolish, ruin*, c. of zer, p. 187, and ſtören, (p. 276).

**Wolke,** *cloud*, A. S. *wolcen*, cloud, air, sky, Engl. **welkin,** the sky or region of clouds.

**während,** *during*, (prep. and conj.) fr. währen (historically more correct wären), see wären, p. 182; thus the Engl. *during*, fr. *to endure*, lit. for the time a thing *lasts*, Fr. *durant*, fr. *durer*, to last, to continue.

**erbleichen,** *to turn or grow pale*, c. of er- and **bleichen,** *to* **bleach,** *blench*; A. S. *blæcan—blæc*, pale, akin to blinken, *glisten*, A. S. *blican*=to glisten dully (dimly), to lose one's color, and come near to a colorless white, see Blick, p. 177.

**gülden,** is an old and poetic word=golden, p. 199.

**dringen,** *to press, to* **throng,** A. S. *thringan*, to press, see drängen, p. 279.

**berühmt,** *famous, renowned*, from Ruhm, *glory, fame*; Goth. *hroms*, ahd. and mhd. *(h)ruom*, Old N. *rom*, conn. with Lat. and Engl. **rumor,** A. S. *hream*, clamor, cry, boasting; Sans. *ru*, to sound.

**ſpeien,** *to spit,* **spew, spue**; Goth. *spewan*, A. S. *spivan*, akin to Lat. *spuo*, to spit out, to vomit.

**Geiß, goat,** A. S. *gat*, agrees to Lat. *hoedus*, *hædus*, a young he-goat. Tab. V. 10.

**ablecken,** *to* **lick off,** c. of **ab, off,** and lecken, ahd. *lëcchon*, A. S. *liccjan*, Gr. *leichein*, Lat. *linguo*, Fr. *lecher*, to pass the tongue over (*tongue*, Lat. *lingua*, in Old Lat. *dingua*, fr. which tongue), to **lick.**

**Krähe, crow,** A. S. **craw** (prob. from the croaking sound uttered by this bird).

**aushacken,** *to* **hack out,** *pick* **out,** *grub up*, c. of aus, *out*, and **hacken,** *to* **hack,** *to chop, hash*, A. S. *haccan—hacke*, an axe, **hatchet**, Fr. *hachette.*

**fordern,** *to demand, ask*, (von, *of*) (not good fodern), conn. with fördern, p. 253 (befördern), hence fordern=to wish or ask that something advances, prospers, then in general to demand, to desire, ask for.

**pfeifen,** *to* **pipe,** *to whistle*, from **Pfeife, pipe, fife.** Tab. V. 2.

**preisen,** *to* **praise,** from Fr. *priser*, to appraise (goods) to value, then to esteem, to **prize,** see Preis, p. 181.

**Stimme,** *voice*, Goth. *stibna*, A. S. *stefn*, ahd. *stimna*, *stimma*, all=*voice*; the Engl. (obs.) **stevem** (=an outcry, a loud call, a clamor), has limited the general meaning.

**Bedauern,** *pity, regret*, from bedauern, *to pity, to deplore, to be sorry*, c. of be- and dauern, (properly tauern, as Lessing correctly wrote) from theuer (p. 141), ahd. *tiuri*, mhd. *tiure*=dear, orig. bedauern=to consider a thing too valuable, too costly, expensive, then to be aggrieved thereof. Not to be confounded with dauern, *to last, to endure* (p. 155).

**schleichen,** *to move secretly, to creep*, A. S. *slincan*, Dutch, *sleyken*, to creep, to **slink.** Tab. V. 33 and 16.

**schleifen,** *to grind, sharpen*, A. S. *slipan*, Dutch, *slippen*, mhd. *slifen*= to glide along, to **slip,** hence schleifen, prop. to make *smooth*, by friction.

**Rasiermesser, razor,** fr, **rasieren,** *to* **raze,** Fr. *raser*, Lat. *rado, rasum*, to scrape. On Messer, see p. 151.

**Loch, hole,** akin to A. S. *loc*, from *lucan*, to shut, to **lock**; A. S. *loca*= prison; Engl. **lock,** a thing that shuts, a place shut in. According to others connected with Lücke, *gap*, **Leck, leak** (p. 202) and Lache, *pool*, Lat. *lacus*, with which is prop. conn. Engl. *lake*, and Scot. **loch.** In Gr. *lakkos*=pit.

## [53.] FOURTH CLASS.—RADICAL VOWEL i.

1. In the *imperfect* the radical vowel **i** is always changed into **a**. In the *participle*, the vowel may be replaced: 1) by **u**, if it is followed by **nd, ng, nk**; 2) by **o**, if it is followed by a double **n** or **m**; 3) by **e**, if it is followed by a **t**.

2. First group: **i (ind, ing)—a—u.**

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| finden, *to find* | fand | gefunden |
| fingen, *to sing* | ſang | geſungen. |

In like manner are conjugated: binden, *to bind*; bringen, *to press*; mißlingen,[1] *to succeed ill*; ſpringen, *to spring*; ſchwinden, verſchwinden, *to vanish*; klingen, erklingen, *to sound*; ringen, *to wring*; zwingen, *to force*; ſchlingen, *to swallow*; ſinken, *to sink*; winden, *to wind*; gelingen,[1] *to succeed*; ſchwingen, *to swing*; trinken, *to drink*; ſtinken, *to stink* (bringen, *to bring*, is excepted, for which see mixed verbs).

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Roots with final **ing**, or **ink**,
As of ſingen, ſing, of ſinken, ſink,
Form like the Engl. sing, sang, sung,
drink, drank, drunk,
Or like the German ſingen, ſang, geſungen,
trinken, trank, getrunken.
Thus gelingen, mißlingen, ſchlingen, ſchwingen, and ſtinken,
Bedingen and ſpringen, zwingen, ſinken and trinken.
Likewise roots in **ind**, as binden,
Verbinden and finden, empfinden, and winden,
Umwinden, ſchwinden, verſchwinden.

3. *Second group*: **i (inn)—a—o.**

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſpinnen, *to spin* | ſpann | geſponnen. |

In like manner are conjugated: beginnen, *to begin*; rinnen, *to flow*; ſchwimmen, *to swim*; gewinnen, *to win*; ſinnen, *to meditate*; glimmen, *to glimmer, shine faintly*; klimmen, *to climb.*

---

*Remarks.*—1. The verbs gelingen and mißlingen are always used impersonally. (The impersonal verbs will be treated in a future section).

2. The verb umringen, *to surround*, derived from Ring, *a ring*, follows the weak conjugation.

3. The verb verwirren, *to complicate*, has two past participles, verwirrt and verworren, the latter being only used of things; er iſt verwirrt, *he is confused, distracted*; ſeine Schreibart iſt verworren, *his manner of writing (style) is confused, intricate.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Like ſpinnen, ſpann, geſponnen,
And rinnen, rann, geronnen,
Form verbs with radical inn as ſinnen,
Beſinnen, entſinnen, gewinnen, beginnen,
Also ſchwimmen forms ſchwamm, geſchwommen,
Whilst glimmen has glomm, geglommen,
And klimmen has klomm, geklommen.

4. *Third group*: i (it)—a—e.

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| bitten, *to ask, beseech* | bat (ah) | gebeten (ā) |
| ſitzen, *to sit* | ſaß (ah) | geſeſſen (ē). |

## 70.

die Feſtung*(–en) *fortress, strong-hold*
beſingen, *to sing, celebrate by song*, be–, ſingen, p. 79
winden[vĭn'-dᵉn], *to wind, twist, encircle* (p. 187, Wand)
erklingen*[ᵉr-klĭng'-ᵉn], *to sound, resound* [294
ſinken, *to sink, fall* (see Sieger, p.
herrlich, *glorious, splendid, lordly*, belonging to lord, Herr (p. 177)
der Kampf[kämpf] (–es, Kämpfe), *fight*, see kämpfen (p. 279)
werfen*[vĕr'-fᵉn], *to throw, cast*
ſinnen, *to think, reflect* (p. 247, Sinn)
paſſend*[päs'-sᵉnt], *fit, suitable*
bemerken, *to remark, observe* (p. 182, merken)
ſchnappen[shnäp'-pᵉn], *to snap, to snatch*
ſtehlen,* *to steal*
darnach,* *after that, at that*
wagen*[vah'-gᵉn] *to dare, risk, venture*
gewinnen,* *to win, gain*
der Faden*[fah'-dᵉn] (–s, Fäden), *thread, string, fathom*
zerrinnen, *to melt, to dissolve*
anhaben,* *to have on, to wear* (clothes)
ſchlingen,* *to swallow*
dürr*[dĭr], *dry*
können,* *to be able, can*
zuletzt, *at last* (letzt, p. 245)
beſcheren, *to bestow upon, give, grant* (see ſcheren, p. 302)
der Trank (–es, Tränke), *drink, beverage*
das Gewand*[gᵉ-vänt'] (–es, Gewänder), *garment, dress*
ſtehen,* *to stand* (p. 239).

1. Die Feinde ſprangen über den Graben und drangen in die Feſtung. 2. Welcher Dichter hat die Thaten des Achilles beſungen? 3. Warum haſt du ein Tuch um deinen Kopf gewunden? 4. Welcher Buchbinder hat dieſes Buch gebunden? 5. Der ganze Wald erklang vom Geſange der Vögel. 6. Er ſchien in die Erde geſunken, ſo ſchnell war er verſchwunden. 7. Er trank von dieſem herrlichen Weine, und auch ſie hat ein Glas getrunken. 8. Trinken ſie doch noch ein Glas! Ich danke Ihnen; ich habe

genug. 9. Sie begannen die Schlacht, und nach hartem Kampfe warfen ſie endlich den linken Flügel des Feindes. 10. Er ſann einen Augenblick auf eine paſſende Antwort, und bald hatte er eine gefunden. 11. Du ſchwammſt früher weit beſſer als jetzt. 12. Ein Hund hatte ein Stück Fleiſch geſtohlen und wollte mit demſelben über einen Fluß ſchwimmen. Im Waſſer bemerkte er ſein Bild und hielt es für einen andern Hund mit einem Stück Fleiſch. Er wünſchte auch dieſes zu haben und ſchnappte darnach; aber in einem Augenblicke war ſein eignes Fleiſch im Waſſer verſchwunden. 13. Friſch gewagt, iſt halb gewonnen (Prov.). 14. Es iſt kein Fädchen ſo fein geſponnen, das nicht kommt ans Licht der Sonnen (p. 184, *Note*) (Prov.). 15. Wie gewonnen, || So zerronnen (Prov.). 16. Wie ſie ſpann || So hat ſie an (Prov.). 17. Singen und wenig ſchlingen macht dürren Hals (Prov.). 18. Singen kannſt du? ſing! Springen? ſpring! || Treib was du kannſt, das iſt ein fein Ding (Prov.). 19. Der zuerſt gewann, || Wird zuletzt ein armer Mann (Prov.). 20. Erſt beſinns, || Dann beginns (Prov.). 21. Wer gern trinkt, dem beſchert Gott genug; iſt's nicht Wein, ſo iſt es Waſſer (Prov.). 22. Da wir tranken unſern Trank, || Da wir ſangen unſern Sang, || Da wir trugen unſer Gewand, || Da ſtund (ſtand) es wohl in unſerm Land (Prov.).

## 71.

Erfinden, *to find out, invent*, er- and finden, p. 236

die Druckerei*[drük"-kᵉ-rī'] (-en), *art of printing, printing establishment*

ringen[rĭng'-ᵉn], *to wrestle, to wrest, twist* [ſchwinden)

ſchwinden, *to vanish* (p. 181, ver-

die Minute*[mĭ"-nū'-tᵉ](-n), *minute*

die Menge*[mĕng'-ᵉ] (-n), *multitude, crowd*

die Liebenswürdigkeit (-en), *amiability* (liebenswürdig, p. 112)

ſogar*[zō-gahr'], *even* [*decorate*

ſchmücken[shmĭk'-ken], *to adorn*,

der Kranz[kränts] (-es, Kränze), *garland* [*compel*

zwingen*[tsvĭng'-ᵉn], *to force*,

der Schurke[shür'-kᵉ](-n), *wretch, villain, rascal*

der Dummkopf (dumm, p. 243, Kopf, p. 232), *blockhead, dunce*

die Summe*[zŭm'-mᵉ] (-n), *sum*

die Lotterie*[lŏt"-ᵉ-rē'], *lottery*

die Börſe*[bĕär'-zᵉ] (-n), *purse*

das Veilchen*[fīl'-yᵉn], *violet*

ſogleich,* *immediately* [*rope*

der Strick (Strickleiter, p. 277), *cord*,

die Verzweiflung,* *despair, utter despondency*

die Geſtalt[gᵉ-ſtält'] (-en), *form, shape*

die Sängerin (Sänger, p. 103), *songstress*

bewundernswürdig (bewundern, p. 278, würdig, 112), *admirable*, lit. worthy of admiration.

1. A German, John Gutenberg, invented the art of printing. 2. We have wrested the sword from (aus) the hands of the robber. 3. Our last hope has (haben or ſein?) vanished; the ship will sink in a few minutes. 4. The soldiers bound the hands and feet of the prisoner. 5. The queen gained the hearts of the whole multitude by her amiability. 6. When will 'you commence to learn German? 7. I have already commenced three weeks ago. 8. The soldier swam across the river; he can swim so well, that he even swims against the stream. 9. Lord Byron swam across the Hellespont. 10. My dear wife wound a garland for my birthday last Sunday. 11. Several girls have wound garlands to decorate this room. 12. He, who (wer) forces 'you to believe this is a rascal or a blockhead. 13. I never have forced man ²to do ¹wrong. 14. When did 'you begin 'your work? 15. I began it some days ago. 16. I have not yet begun. 17. His son has won a great sum in the lottery. 18. We swam against the stream. 19. My wife has spun this flax during the last winter. 20. Where did Amelia find this purse? 21. She found it in (auf) the street. 22. We found these violets in your garden and tied them in a bunch. 23. He captured the thief and instantly bound him with cords. 24. The poor woman wrung her hands in despair. 25. That figure vanished before my eyes and I did not see it again. 26. This young lady sang a fine song. 27. The songstress has sung admirably. 28. Those gentlemen drank tea and ate cake. 29. When (als) the dog ²had stolen ¹the meat, he wanted (wollen) to swim across the river. Whilst (während) he ²was swimming (imperf.) ¹in the water, he perceived another dog, (for he took his own image for another dog). The latter (dieſer) also carried a piece of meat, and as (da) he ²wished to have ¹this meat ²also, he snapped at it, but his own fell into the water and disappeared. 30. The dog perceived a piece of meat and wished to have it; therefore (daher) he stole it. 31. He wanted to swim across the river with the stolen meat. 32. Mr. N. has become a poor man, and has remained so (es) all his life (his whole life).

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Feſtung,** *fortress, fort, stronghold,* from feſten (not used), **befeſtigen,** *to render* **fast,** *firm,* see feſt, p. 141.

**beſingen,** *to sing, to celebrate by song,* c. of be- and ſingen, p. 79.

**erklingen,** *to sound, resound,* c. of er- and **klingen,** p. 92, A. S. *clynnan,* allied to Gr. *klazein,* fut. *klanxo,* Engl. **clang, clink.**

**ſinken,** *to* **sink,** *fall, droop*, comp. Sieger, p. 294.

**herrlich,** *glorious, magnificent, splendid*, and adv.; properly *lordly*, belonging to a lord (**Herr**) p. 177.

**werfen,** *to throw, cast*; A. S. *weorpan*, Goth. *wairpan*, to throw; comp. Engl. to **warp,** lit. to cast; Tab. V. 3. Diez (Etym. Wörterbuch, II, p. 452) explains *verve*=enthusiasm, swing, orig. a swinging, from the same Germ. root.

**paſſend,** *fit, fitting, suitable*, from paſſen, *to fit, suit, to be approved, to* **pass,** prop. *to get one's aim* (as if to traverse to the end): Fr. *passer*, Ital. *passare*=to go, **to pass** *on*; Lat. *passus*, step, pace.

**ſtehlen,** *to* **steal,** ahd. and mhd. *stilan*, A. S. *stelan*, properly *to take silently*, A. S. *stelna*, to be still, akin to **ſtill, still,** *silent, standing* (ſtellen) *motionless*.

**bemerken,** *to re***mark,** *to observe*, c. of be- and merken, p. 182.

**darnach,** *after that, at that*; c. of dar (p. 245) and the prep. nach.

*Take Notice!* The dative and the accusative of the personal pronouns are not used with reference to inanimate objects, when they are preceded by a preposition. Instead of it the corresponding cases of **derſelbe, dieſelbe, daſſelbe** are used, or the adverb **da** (**dar** before a preposition *beginning with a vowel* or **u**) is substituted, which coalesces with the preposition:

das Fleiſch: { er ſchnappte nach **demſelben** or **darnach** (not nach ihm). / er hat drei Thaler für **daſſelbe** or **dafür** gezahlt (not für es).

der Ring: das Kind hat mit **demſelben** or **damit** (not mit ihm) geſpielt.

die Summe (*the sum*): { Haben Sie was (=etwas) von **derſelben** or **davon,** (not von ihr) bekommen? / Er hat über **dieſelbe** or **darüber** (not über ſie) verfügt (*disposed*).

das Sopha (*sofa*): das Kind ſitzt **darauf** or auf **demſelben** (not auf ihm).

die Flaſche (*bottle*): es iſt kein Waſſer in **derſelben** or **darin** (not in ihr).

**wagen,** *to dare, risk, venture*, from **Wage, weigh***ing instrument, balance* (see wichtig, p. 277); wagen=auf die Wage ſetzen, *put in the balance*.

**gewinnen,** *to* **win,** *gain*, from Goth. *vinnan*, to suffer, A. S. *winnan*=to struggle, to fatigue, hence *to strive*, then to get by labor, to gain in competition. Engl. Prov. *Fortune favors the brave! Well begun is half done.*

**Faden,** *thread, string, line,* **fathom,** ahd. *fadum*, A. S. *fæthm*, a thread; then like Engl. **fathom,** a measure containing the length of both arms stretched asunder (6 feet); A. S. *fædhm*, to embrace, Germ. faben =fangen (p. 239), *to seize*. Engl. Prov. corresponding to Prov. 14: *A guilty deed and a secret night will some day or other be brought to light.*

**zerrinnen,** *to dissolve, melt away,* **run** *apart,* c. of zer- and **rinnen,** (conn. with rennen, p. 87), *to* **run** (as a liquid), *to flow,* A. S. *rennan,* Goth. *rinnan,* to *run,* then to *flow.* The Engl. Prov. *lightly come, lightly go.*

**anhaben,** *to* **have on,** to wear (clothes). Connect an with haben. For the separation of some prefixes (called separable prefixes) in the simple tenses, in a future lesson.

**ſchlingen,** *to swallow* (for ſchlinden, not in use now), mhd. *slinden,* ahd. *slintan,* Goth. *slindan* (from which Schlund, *throat, gullet*). Do not confound it with ſchlingen, *to sling* (p. 112, Schlange).

**dürr, dry** (Tab. V. 37), ahd. *durri,* A. S. *thyrr,* from dorren, *to become dry, to wither*; conn. with Gr. *terso,* to become dry; Lat. *torreo,* to be dried up; allied to Durſt, *thirst* (p. 126). On the formative ſt comp. Fürſt, p. 176.

**können,** *to be able,* **can,** A. S. *cunnan,* to know (p. 187, Kunſt); Scot. and Engl. **ken,** Old Engl. **kenne.** In Chaucer we find an Infinitive *conne,* to be able; as, I shall not "*conne*" answere.

**zuletzt,** *at last,* c. of zu and letzt, *last,* comp. zuerſt, p. 299.

**Trank,** *drink, beverage,* from trinken, (p. 80), Trank= some *kind* of drink, as Nicht beſſer als ein Pferdetrank, Shakespeare, Coriolan, 2, 1. Trunk =*the act of drinking, the quality drunk at a time, draught*; as Was will der Bauer da? Einen Biſſen und Trunk! *a morsel and drink (draught)* (Schiller).

**Gewand,** *garment,* fr. winden, (p. 187, Wand), something wound round the body like the Roman toga, then garment in general.

**ſtehen,** *to* **stand,** Imperf. ſtand, formerly and more correct **ſtund.**

**Druckerei,** *art and establishment of printing,* from drucken, orig. the same as drücken, ahd. *drukjan,* A. S. *thrĕogan, dhriccan,* to press, the first at present exclusively used for the printing of books.

**ringen,** *to wrestle, strive,* transit. *to wrest, twist, to* **wring,** A. S. *vringan, to wriggle*; conn. with **ring,** hence orig. to wind, twist, turn.

**Minute, minute,** *a very small portion*; Lat. *minutus,* pa. part. of *minuo,* to lessen.

**Menge,** *multitude, mass, crowd,* A. S. *manig—mænigeo,* a multitude, from Goth. *manags,* ahd. *manac*=much; Germ. manig, mannig, manch, see manchmal, p. 265.

**ſogar,** *even,* c. of ſo (p. 232) (als) and gar, completely, entirely, p. 141.

**zwingen,** *to force, compel, constrain,* mhd. *twingen,* A. S. *thvingan, to compress, squeeze up, to do violence,* hence prob. conn. with to **twinge.**

**Schurke,** *wretch, villain, rascal,* accord. to Weigand conn. with **shark.**

**Summe, sum,** Lat. *summus*=highest, the amount or aggregate of two or more numbers.

**Lotterie, lottery,** from **Loos, lot** (Tab. V. 10), *prize*; A. S. *hleotan*, to cast lots: fr. *lot*, a lot,; Fr. *loterie*, a distribution of prizes by lot or chance.

**Börſe, purse,** Fr. *bourse*, Lat. *bursa*, Gr. *byrsa*, a skin, a hide.

**Veilchen, violet,** Lat. *viola*, all three in a dim. form, as an expression of endearment.

**ſogleich,** *immediately, at once*, c. of gleich (p. 204)=agreeing according to an appointed time, and ſo (p. 110), strengthening gleich.

**Verzweiflung,** *despair, utter despondency*, from verzweifeln, *to despair*, fr. **zwei, two,** to be in a strait betwixt two, comp. Lat. *dubito—duo*=two, and (obs.) *bito*, to go, prop. to move between two opinions, from which to *doubt, dubious, indubitable*, etc.

**Geſtalt,** *form, shape, figure*=Ge-ſtal-t, from ſtellen, *to place, to set*.

For the formative **t**, see page 282, *Notice*.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. What words (as far as you have met with) are written with a double vowel?

2. Give the words with i, lengthened by h and not as usually by e.

3. Give the word with long i without any lengthening letter.

4. Which adjectives derived from proper nouns are written with a capital letter, and which not?

5. Give all the words known to you written with initial v.

6. Why is the vowel (contrary to the rule) in words like legte, gelobt, gabſt, tobt and similar ones pronounced long?

7. When will you write the possessive pronouns meine or meinige, deine or deinige, etc., adjectives as kleine, blinde, arme, reiche, and infinitives as reden, ſchweigen, gehen, etc., with capital letters?

8. What is the plural ending of monosyllabic masculines?

9. What is the plural ending of monosyllabic neuters?

10. What is the meaning of the augment ge- before nouns?

11. Give all the cases when ge- is omitted before the past participle.

12. What prefix has the meaning of *away*?

13. What prefix renders intransitive verbs transitive?

14. What prefix means *into*?

15. How will you translate: Your wish is just (gerecht). Your wish is a just one. This house is small, and that is large. This house is the small and that the large. This house is a small one and that a large one. My reasons (Grund) are right. My reasons are the right ones.

16. What is the influence upon the vowel by doubling the following consonant, and what by doubling the vowel?

17. Which of the four kinds of *s* known to you (ſ, s, ſſ, ß) must be used at the end of a word, and in what cases must the same *s* be used in the middle of the word?

18. After a short vowel when is it allowable to employ ſſ, and when not? In the latter case what must be substituted instead?

19. What is the pronunciation of the ü in Grüße, ſüße, Füße, and what in Nüſſe, Flüſſe, Güſſe?

20. What strong verbs have the radical vowel in the present and the pa. participle alike?

21. In what strong verbs is the vowel of the pa. participle the same as that of the imperfect?

22. In what strong verbs are the vowels of the infinitive, imperfect and pa. participle different?

23. What simple verb beginning with a vowel is strong, contrary to the general rule?

24. Translate the following sentences and pay special attention to ** *Take Notice!* on page 285. 1. The boy has leaped from the tree. 2. He has swum across the river. 3. She had drunk a glass (of) wine. 4. My brother came (use *perf.*) from Berlin yesterday. 5. The man is thrashing corn. 6. The bird flew (use *perf.*) upon the tree. 7. I have poured (gießen) water into the glass. 8. The family has removed (ziehen) to the country. 9. She has eaten too much. 10. Our dog does not eat any bread (not any =kein). 11. I wrote to a friend in Dresden to-day. 12. The price of corn has risen (ſteigen). 13. What has your friend advised you? 14. He drank coffee in the morning and tea in the evening. 15. My father gave (use perf.) a beautiful book to my sister last week. 16. We went home early. 17. We have studied (ſtudieren) very diligently during (in) this week. 18. I have not seen him for (ſeit) a week. 19. To-day we have received the letter (commence the sentence with *to-day*). 20. To Paris he has gone and not to London. 21. She is not rich but poor. 22. Rich she is not but beautiful and amiable.

Translate the following Proverbs without the help of a dictionary: 1. Was Gott thut || Iſt Alles gut. 2. Geld || Iſt der größte Held. 3. Wie gerungen || So gelungen. 4. Gott gibt nicht mehr Froſt als Kleider. 5. Grau-es Haar wächſt auch auf jungem Kopf. 6. Es iſt gut genug, bis es beſſer wird. 7. Gott hilft, und dem Arzte dankt man. 8. Wer klug iſt, legt die Hand nicht zwiſchen Hammer und Amboß. 9. Unglück, Nagel und Haar || Wachſen das ganze Jahr. 10. Haben iſt beſſer als gehabt haben. 11. Schwarzer Grund trägt gute Frucht. 12. Gott gibt, Gott nimmt. 13. Mit leeren Händen fängt man keinen Falken. 14. Was dem Herzen gefällt, das ſuchen die Augen. 15. Könige haben lange Arme. 16. Den Kopf halt kühl, die Füße warm, || Das macht den beſten Doctor arm. 17. Eine Krähe macht keinen Winter. 18. So lange die Henne Eier legt, ſo lange legt man ihr auch. 19. Eine Hausfrau || Set keine Ausfrau. 20. Was nicht vom Herzen kommt, das geht nicht zu Herzen. 21. Heute roth || Morgen todt. 22. Ich bin der Herr, ſagte der Mann, da ſaß er unterm Tiſche. 23. Wo nichts iſt, hat der Kaiſer ſein Recht verloren. 24. Du kannſt nach dem Tode nicht beſſer ſein, als du im Leben geworden biſt. 25. Mit Waſſer und Brod, || Kommt man durch alle Noth. 26. Man kann wohl leſen, || Was man geweſen; aber nicht ſchreiben || Was man wird bleiben. 27. Ende gut, alles gut.

## Ein Beſuch[1] in Liverpool.

Liverpool iſt eine der größten und reichſten Städte in England. Sie iſt ſchon lange berühmt wegen ihrer bedeutenden[2] Fabriken.[3] Man verfertigt[4] dort beſonders[5] wollene,[6] baumwollene[7] und ſeidene[8] Zeuge. In dieſe Stadt kam einſt der amerikaniſche[9] Geſandte Benjamin Franklin. Die Beſitzer[10] der Liverpooler Fabriken zeigten dem berühmten Fremden[11] bereitwillig ihre Werkſtätten.[12] „Wohin ſchicken Sie alle dieſe Waaren[13]?“ fragte[14] er einen dieſer Herren.—„In alle Theile der Welt,“ antwortete ſtolz der Liverpooler. „Die meiſten gehen nach europäiſchen[15] oder amerikaniſchen Ländern, andere nach Indien, Afrika oder den Auſtraliſchen[16] Inſeln.“ Während dieſer Rede[17] hatte Franklin einige arme Arbeiter bemerkt. Sie waren ſchlecht gekleidet[18] und hatten ein elendes[19] Ausſehen.[20] Sogleich ſagte der geiſtreiche[21] Amerikaner zu ſeinem Führer: „Haben Sie denn[22] keine Fabriken für Liverpool?“

1. visit (beſuchen, p. 202); 2. important (bedeuten, p. 305); 3. [făb-rĭk′], manufactory (Fabrikant, p. 296); 4. verfertigen [-fĕr′-tĭ-gᵉn], to make, manufacture; 5. (ſondern, p. 108), particularly, especially; 6. woolen; 7. cotton; 8. silken; 9. [ă-mā′-rĭ-kah′-nĭ-shᵉ], American; 10. possessor (ſitzen, p. 247, to *sit* as master of); 11. foreigner; 12. work-shop; 13. ware, merchandise; 14. to ask, question (Frage, p. 278); 15. [oi-rō′-pāt′-ĭ-shᵉn], European; 16. [ous′-strah′-lish], Australian; 17. [rā′-dᵉ], talk, speech; 18. to clothe (Kleid, p. 141); 19. [ā′-lĕnt], miserable; 20. appearance, look; 21 ingenious, witty; 22. In questions, denn often expresses curiosity and impatience.

### ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER

#### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Ablecken, 305
Abt, 295,
Abtei, 293
Ähre, 299
Amboß, 299
Anfang, 299
anhaben, 311
Anker, 298
Ankunft, 294
Antwort, 293
Apfelbaum, 299
Arbeiter, 293
Aſt, 299
aushacken, 305

das Band, 293
der Band, 300
Bedauern, 306
bedauern, 309
bedeuten, 305
bedürfen, 302
befeſtigen, 313
begraben, 293
begreifen, 304
behalten, 293
beide 294
bemannen, 298
bemerken, 311
berſten, 299
berühmt, 305
beſcheren, 311
beſingen, 311
beſteigen, 305
Betragen, 294
Betrug, 293
bewunderns-
würdig, 312
blähen, 295
blaſen, 294
braten, 294
bleichen, 308
blinken, 308
Börſe, 312
Brett, 293

Canal, 293
Capitain, 300

darben 302
darnach, 311
dauern=bedauern, 309
derb, 302
deuten, 303
deutlich, 300
Dorn, 294
dreſchen, 299
dringen, 305
drücken, 315
drucken, 315
Dummkopf, 312
dürfen, 302
dürr, 311

Einfalt, 299
einladen, 294
empfehlen, 301
entlaſſen, 293
entweichen, 30
erbleichen, 305
erfinden, 312
ergreifen, 305
erhalten, 293
erklingen, 311
errathen, 294

Fabrikant, 293
Faden, 311
fahen, 314
fahren, 293
falten, 295,
fältig, 295
fegen, 303
fehlen, 301
Fehler, 298
Feige, 303
Feſtung, 311
feurig, 306
fordern, 305
fördern, 309
Form, 293
fühlen, 308
furchtbar, 306
[294
ganz u. gar nicht,
gedeihen, 305
Gefangene, 293
Gefühl, 305
Geiß, 305
gelangen, 304
geneſen, 300
Gerſte, 300
Geſandte, 294
geſchehen, 300
Geſchichte, 300
Geſtalt, 312
Gewand, 311
gewinnen, 311
Giebel, 308
Gipfel, 305
Grab, 294
greifen, 307
gülden, 305

hacken, 309
Haber, Hafer, } 301
haften, 303
Hahn, 295
halten, 293
Hamburg, 293
Heer, 304
Heerſchar, 302
heftig, 300
heißen, 305
Henne, 295

Herkunft, 295
herrlich, 311
hinein, 293
Höhe, 298
Huhn, 293
hundertfältig, 293

Jäger, 294
je- desto, 299

kalt werden, 306
Kälte, 305
Kampf, 311
kaum, 294
kehren, 308
klingen, 313
Komet, 300
können, 311
Kost, 293
Krähe, 305
Kranz, 312
Krug, 290
Kummer, 295
Kutscher, 294

Lache, 309
laden, 294
langen, 307
langsam, 294
lecken, 309 [312
liebenswürdig,
Loch, 306
Lotterie, 312
Lücke, 309

manchmal, 315
mannig, 315
Mäßigung, 301
meiden, 306
Menge, 312
messen, 298
Minute, 312
Mittwoch, 300
Mücke, 300
Muskete, 300

nachdem, 293
nehmen, 299
Norden, 299
Noth, 300

Ofen, 306
Ohrfeige 300

passen, 314
passend, 311
Pfeife, 309
pfeifen, 306
Pflugschar, 302
Post, 294
preisen, 306

rasieren, 309
Rasiermesser 306
rathen, 293
Rind, 294
Rinde, 300
Rindfleisch, 294
ringen, 312
rinnen, 315
rufen, 299
ruhig, 293
Ruhm, 308

säen, 295
Same, 293
Sängerin, 312
schaffen, 294
scheiden, 306
Schein, 305
scheinen, 306
schelten, 299
scheren, 299
schleichen, 306
schleifen, 306
schlingen, 311
Schlund, 315
schmücken, 312
schnappen, 311
schneiden, 306
Schurke, 312
schweigen, 305
schwerlich, 299
schwinden, 312
schwirren, 305
Segel, 299
seigen, 295
seihen, 295
Seite (page) 306
Seltne, 299
seltsam, 304
siegen, 295
Sieger, 294
Sigismund, 296
sinken, 311
sinnen, 311
Skote, 299
sogar, 312
sogleich, 312
speien, 305 [300
Spinnengewebe,
Sprichwort, 300
stärken, 293
stechen, 311
stehen, 300
stehlen, 311
stellen, 314
sterben, 300
still, 314
strafen, 299
Streich, 293
streichen, 295
streiten, 304
Strick, 312
Strumpf, 293
Stimme, 306
Stumpf, 295
südlich, 299
Summe, 312

täglich, 298
tausend, 293
tel—Theil, 308
Trägheit, 293
Trank, 315
treffen, 299
treiben, 305
Trompete, 294
Trunk, 315
Truppe, 314
Tuch, 300
Tyrol, 306

üben, 299
Übersetzung, 301
um zu, 293
umkehren, 305
unrecht, 305
untergraben 293

Veilchen, 312
verbinden, 293
verbrechen, 308
Verbrechen, 305
verderben, 299
vergessen, 299
versiegen, 295
versprechen, 299
Verstand, 299
verständig, 299
Vertrauen, 299
Verwundete, 294
Verzweiflung, [312

Wage, 314
wagen, 314
währen, 308
Wärme, 293
weh! 308
wehmüthig, 305
weichen, 304
werfen, 311
wiederholen, 293
winden, 311
Wohlsein, 293
Wolke, 305
Wort halten 299
wunderbar, 305

zählen, 299
Zahnbürste, 299
Zehntel, 305
zerbrechen, 299
zerrinnen, 311
zerstören, 308
Zerstörung, 305
zertreten, 299
zornig, 306
zuerst, 299
zufällig, 301
Zukunft, 295
zuletzt, 311
zwingen, 312.

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

Abbey, 293
to be able, 311
accidentally 301
admirable, 312
to adorn, 312
to advise, 293
after that, 311
afterwards, 293
ambassador, 294
amiability, 312
anchor, 298
angry, 306
answer, 293
anvil, 299
army, 304
arrival, 294
to arrive at, 304
to ascend, 305,
to ask, 305[306

bark, 300
barley, 300
beef, 294
beginning, 299
behavior, 294
to bestow upon, [311
beverage, 311
blockhead, 312
to blow, 294
blow, 293 [293
board, (*plank*)
board, (*fare*) 293
both, 294
bough, 299 [300
box on the ear,
branch, 299
break to pieces, [299
to bury, 293
to burst, 299

to call out, 299
to be called, 305
can, 311
canal, 293
captain, 300
captive, 293
to cast, 311
cheat, 293
cloth, 300
cloud, 305
coachman, 294
cobweb, 300
cold, 305
to get cold, 306
coldness, 305
to combat, 304
comet, 299 [299
commencement
to compel, 312
to comprehend, [304
conduct, 294
confidence, 299
conqueror, 294
to contend, 304
cord, 312
to corrupt, 293
to counsel, 293
to count, 299
to crack, 298
to create, 294
crime, 305
crow, 305
crowd, 312
to cut, 306
to cry to, 299

daily, 298

to dare, 311
to decorate, 312
defect, 298
to demand, 305
to denote, 305
despair, 312
destruction, 305
to die, 300
to discharge 293
to dismiss, 293
to dispute, 306
distinct, 300
dress, 311
drink, 311
to drive, 305
to drive—travel
dry, 311 [293
dunce, 312

ear (of corn) 299
to make one's escape, 305
even, 312
to exercise, 299

famous, 305
fare, 293
fathom, 311
fault, 298
feeling, 305
fiery, 306
fight, 311
figure, 312
at first, 299
fit, 311
food, 293
to force, 312
to forget, 299
form, 293, 312
fortress, 311
fowl, 293
fraud, 293
furnace, 306

to gain, 311
garland, 312
garment, 311
to get on well, [305
to give way, 304
glorious, 311
gnat, 300
goat, 305
grave, 294
to grind, 306
to guess, 293 294

to hack out, 305
Hamburgh, 293
to happen, 300
hardly, 299
hen, 293
height, 298
history, 300
to hit, 299
to hold, 293
hole, 306
hundredfold 293
hunter, 294 [312

immediately,
intellect, 299
intelligent, 299
to invent, 312
to invite, 294
to join, 293
jug, 299

to keep up, 293

at last, 311
laziness, 293
to lick off, 305
to load, 294
lottery, 312 [293
manufacturer,
marvellous, 305
to measure, 298
melancholy, 305
minute, 312
moderation, 301
to mount, 305 [306
multitude, 312
musket, 300 [305
to be named,
necessity, 300
North, 299

oats, 301
to observe, 311
odd, 304

page, 306
to turn pale, 305
to part with, 306
peak, 305
to pick out, 305
pitcher, 299
plank, 293
post, 294
to practise, 299
to praise, 306
to press, 305
printing establishment, 312
art of printing, [312
to promise, 299
prosperity, 293
proverb, 300
to punish, 299
purse, 312

to quarrel, 306
quiet, 293

rare, 304
rascal, 312
razor, 306
to reach 304
to receive, 293
to recommend [301
to recover, 300
to reflect, 311
regret, 306
to remark, 311
renowned, 305
to repeat, 293
reply, 293
to reprove, 299
to resound, 311
to retain, 293
to retire, 305
ribbon, 293
to ride in a carriage, 293
to risk, 311
to roast, 294
rope, 312

sail, 299
scarce, } 294
scarcely, }
to scold, 299
Scot, 299
seed, 293
to seem, 306
to seize, 299 305
sentiment, 305
to separate, 306
shape, 312
to shatter, 299
to shear, 299
shine, 305
to shun, 306
to signify, 305
to keep silence, [305
simplicity, 299
to sing—to celebrate by song,
to sink, 311 [311
slow, } 294
slowly, }
to snap, 311
to snatch, 311
to sneak, 306
songstress, 312
no sooner, 294
to sound, 311
southern, 299
to spew, 305
spiderweb, 300
spike, 299
to spit, 305
splendid, 311
splendor, 305
to spoil, 299
to stand, 311
to steal, 311
to be still, 305
to sting, 300
stocking, 300
strange, 304
to strengthen, [293
to strike, 299
stroke, 293
stronghold, 311
suitable, 311
sum, 312
summit, 305
to supply with men, 299

to take, 299
tenth, 305
to think, 311
thorn, 294
thousand, 293
to thrash, 299
thread, 311
to thrive, 305
to throng, 305
to throw, 311
tooth-brush, 298
tranquil, 293
transgression, [305
translation, 301
troop, 304
trumpet, 294
trust, 299
to turn, 305
turn back, 300
to twist, 311 312

to undermine, [293
understanding, [299
to unite, 293

to vanish, 312
to venture, 311
victor, 294
villain, 312
violent, 300
violet, 312
voice, 306
volume, 300

warmness } 293
warmth, }
to wear, 311
Wednesday 300
welfare, 293
to whir, 305
to whistle, 306
to win, 311
to wind, 311
woful, 305
wonderful, 305
workman, 293
wounded man, [294
to wrest, 312
to wrestle, 312
wrong, 305.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 65.

1. Dieſe Dame hat zwei Töchter; beide ſind ſchön, aber die jüngſte gefällt mir am meiſten. 2. Die Gefangenen und die Verwundeten fielen in die Hand des Siegers. 3. Seine beiden Söhne ſind in der Schlacht gefallen. 4. Er verließ das Dorf, in welchem er länger als ſieben Jahre gelebt hatte. 5. Kaum hatte der Geſandte von unſerer Ankunft gehört, als er uns zum Mittageſſen (dinner) einlud. 6. Der Wind bläſt (weht) heute ſehr ſtark; geſtern blies (wehte) er nicht ſo ſtark. 7. Sein Betragen gefiel mir ganz und gar nicht. 8. Wir haben einige Fiſche gefangen. 9. Wir erwarteten Gäſte, und meine Mutter briet eine Gans. 10. Mein Bruder blies früher die Trompete. 11. Die Köchin hat ein Stück Rindfleiſch gebraten. 12. Was rieth dein Freund dir? 13. Wer hat das Räthſel errathen? 14. Schliefen Sie die ganze Nacht? 15. Ich ſchlief nicht gut. 16. Warum hat er nicht die Briefe zur Poſt getragen? 17. Die Magd trug ſie. 18. Das Fleiſch iſt nicht gekocht; es iſt gebraten. 19. Unſer Gärtner fiel geſtern von einem hohen Baume. 20. Die Jäger luden ihre Gewehre. 21. Warum ſchlugen Sie den Hund? 22. Ich habe ihn niemals geſchlagen; Karl ſchlägt ihn jeden Tag. 23. Der Kutſcher fährt nicht ſchnell genug. 24. Wir fuhren in der Nacht (more common with the adverbial s, nachts or des Nachts) in die Stadt. 25. Der Mann gräbt ein Grab; geſtern hat er zwei gegraben. 26. Wir haben heute Morgen viele Fiſche gefangen; dein Bruder hat nicht ſo viele gefangen. 27. Dieſe Roſen ſind in unſerem (or contract. unſrem) Garten gewachſen. 28. Nur Diſteln und Dorne (most usually Dörner, also Dornen) wuchſen auf dieſen Feldern. 29. Wie viel ſchlägt die Glocke? 30. Es ſchlägt zehn. 31. Unſer Bäcker bäckt nicht mehr ſo gutes Brod als er früher buk. 32. Dieſes weiße Brod iſt nicht gut gebacken. 33. Gott ſchuf ſo wohl den Menſchen als das kleine Inſect. 34. Er hat Himmel und Erde geſchaffen. 35. Zwei Soldaten trugen den Offizier aus der Schlacht und wuſchen ſeine Wunden. 36. Eine Eiche wächſt ſehr langſam.

## 67.

1. Jene arme Frau brach letzten Mittwoch den rechten Arm. 2. Der Lehrer gab dieſem ungehorſamen Knaben eine Ohrfeige; es geſchah vor einigen Tagen. 3. Meine Nichte ſieht in jenem Winkel ein Spinnengewebe. 4. Haben Sie je einen Kometen geſehen? 5. Ja, ich ſah vor einigen Jahren einen ſchönen Kometen. 6. Der Capitän befahl den Soldaten die Muſketen zu laden. 7. Sie droſchen die Gerſte; aber ſie haben noch nicht den Weizen gedroſchen. 8. Da ihr mir geholfen habt, werde ich bald mein Werk vollendet haben. 9. Die Rinde der Bäume barſt letzten (vorigen) Sommer in der großen Hitze. 10. Haben Sie den letzten Band von Macauley's Geſchichte von England geleſen? 11. Ich las nur die zwei erſten. 12. Lies deutlicher. 13. Haben Sie je beſſere Birnen als dieſe gegeſſen? 14. Sie genas ſehr ſchnell von ihrer Krankheit. 15. Was iſt geſchehen? 16. Du trittſt auf das Kleid deiner Schweſter. 17. Du vergißt (the older lengthened form vergiſſeſt rarely used in conversation) Alles. 18. Ich habe nicht vergeſſen und werde nie euren guten Rath vergeſſen. 19. Dies geſchieht gegen meinen Willen. 20. Ein deutſches Sprichwort ſagt: Noth bricht Eiſen. 21. Empfehlet (or Empfehlen Sie) mir gefälligſt ein gutes Buch. 22. Sie ſchalt ihre Magd, daß ſie das Glas zerbrochen (hat). 23. Eine Mücke ſticht, aber ſie ſticht nicht ſo heftig als eine Biene. 24. Sein Vater und ſeine Mutter ſtarben letztes Jahr. 25. Warum maß er nicht das Tuch? 26. Pferde freſſen Gras, Heu und Hafer. 27. Die Katze hat den Vogel gefreſſen. 28. Wer

hat in meinem Zimmer den großen Spiegel zerbrochen? 29. die Magd hat ihn diesen Morgen zerbrochen. 30. Wer hat dir bei deiner Übersetzung geholfen. 31. Niemand hat mir geholfen; ich habe sie ganz allein gemacht. 32. Wer hat in mein Zimmer den Stein geworfen? 33. Ein kleiner Knabe hat ihn zufällig hinein geworfen. 34. Sokrates empfahl seinen Schülern Mäßigung in allen Dingen.

## 69.

1. Der Vater war so zornig, daß er den Brief zerriß (or in Stücke riß). 2. Des Bettlers Rock war ganz zerrissen. 3. Jener böse Knabe stritt gestern mit seiner Schwester um nichts. 4. Pfiffen Sie? 5. Karl hat mit einem Schlüssel gepfiffen. 6. Hat er viel Schmerz gelitten? 7. Ja, mein Herr, er litt viel. 8. Der König ritt auf einem grauen Pferde. 9. Wen hat der schwarze Hund gebissen? 10. Er biß meine Schwester. 11. Wie lange seid ihr in jener Stadt geblieben? 12. Wir blieben nur einige Tage da. 13. Jener Birnbaum gedieh zuerst gut, aber jetzt gedeiht er nicht mehr. 14. Der Flachs ist dieses Jahr nicht gediehen. 15. Wie heißt jener Mann? 16. Er heißt Ludwig. 17. Ich kann Ihnen meine Grammatik nicht leihen; ich lieh sie gestern einer französischen Dame. 18. Wir haben immer diesen Mann gemieden. 19. Sie trieben die Knaben aus dem Zimmer. 20. Die Rebellen haben sie aus der Stadt getrieben. 21. Wir schieden in Frieden und Freundschaft. 22. Es scheint kalt zu werden. 23. Der General schien zornig zu sein. 24. Sie schrieben zwei Seiten; wir haben viele mehr geschrieben. 25. Jener Knabe schrie furchtbar. 26. Jener kranke Mann hat Blut gespieen. 27. Als ich in Tyrol war, bestieg ich die höchsten Berge. 28. Verziehen Sie ihm? 29. Ich habe ihm verziehen. 30. Die drei Männer im feurigen Ofen priesen Gott mit lauter Stimme. 31. Leihet immer euer Ohr der Wahrheit. 32. Die Soldaten schieden von ihrem General mit großem Bedauern. 33. Auf unsrer letzten Reise bestiegen wir den Gipfel jenes Berges. 34. Die Sonne schien durch die Zweige des Baumes. 35. Während meiner Krankheit habe ich sehr viel gelitten. 36. Der Feind wich auf allen Seiten. 37. Der Dieb öffnete die Thüre und schlich ins Haus; aber ich sah ihn und trieb ihn hinaus. 38. Wer hat das Rastermesser geschliffen? 39. Es ist sehr schlecht geschliffen. 40. Wir ritten nach dem Landhause unseres Vetters, aber wir fanden ihn nicht zu Hause. 41. Wer hat jenes Loch in den Tisch geschnitten? 42. Wir wissen nicht; wir haben es nicht geschnitten, weil wir kein Messer haben (or denn wir haben kein Messer). 43. Worüber habt ihr gestritten? 44. Wir haben über Shakespeare's Hamlet gestritten.

## 71.

1. Ein Deutscher, Johann Gutenberg, erfand die Druckerei. 2. Wir haben aus den Händen des Räubers das Schwert gerungen. 3. Unsere letzte Hoffnung ist geschwunden; das Schiff wird in wenigen Minuten sinken. 4. Die Soldaten banden die Hände und Füße des Gefangenen. 5. Die Königin gewann durch ihre Liebenswürdigkeit die Herzen der ganzen Menge. 6. Wann werden Sie deutsch zu lernen beginnen. 7. Ich habe schon vor drei Wochen begonnen. 8. Der Soldat schwamm über den Fluß; er kann so gut schwimmen, daß er selbst gegen den Strom schwimmt. 9. Lord Byron schwamm über den Hellespont. 10. Mein liebes Weib wand für meinen Geburtstag vorigen Sonntag einen Kranz. 11. Mehrere Mädchen haben Kränze gewunden, um das Zimmer zu schmücken. 12. Wer Sie das zu glauben zwingt, ist ein Schurke oder ein Dummkopf. 13. Ich habe niemals einen Mann unrecht zu thun gezwungen.

14. Wann begannen Sie Ihr Werk? 15. Ich begann es vor einigen Tagen. 16. Ich habe noch nicht begonnen. 17. Sein Sohn hat in der Lotterie eine große Summe gewonnen. 18. Wir schwammen gegen den Strom. 19. Meine Frau hat während des (or im) vorigen Winters diesen Flachs gesponnen. 20. Wo fand Amalie diese Börse? 21. Sie fand sie auf der Straße. 22. Wir fanden in eurem Garten diese Veilchen und banden sie in einen Strauß. 23. Er fing den Dieb und band ihn sogleich mit Stricken. 24. Das arme Weib (or die arme Frau) rang in Verzweiflung ihre Hände. 25. Jene Gestalt schwand vor meinen Augen, und ich sah sie nicht wieder. 26. Diese junge Dame sang ein schönes Lied. 27. Die Sängerin hat bewundernswürdig gesungen. 28. Jene Herrn tranken Thee und aßen Kuchen. 29. Als der Hund das Fleisch gestohlen hatte, wollte er über den Fluß schwimmen. Während er im Wasser schwamm, bemerkte er einen anderen Hund (denn er nahm sein eignes Bild für einen andern Hund). Dieser trug auch ein Stück Fleisch; da er dieses auch zu haben wünschte, schnappte er danach, aber seins (or das seinige) fiel ins Wasser und verschwand. 30. Der Hund bemerkte ein Stück Fleisch und wünschte es zu haben; daher stahl er es. 31. Er wollte mit dem gestohlnen Fleische über den Fluß schwimmen. 32. Herr N. ist ein armer Mann geworden und ist es sein ganzes Leben geblieben.

ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Haar, Saat, Beere, Heer, Meer, Schnee, See, Seele, Armee, Kaffee, Thee.

2. ihm, ihn, ihnen, ihr, ihrer.

3. mir, dir, wir, wider=against, Ida, Rubin, Titel, Berlin, gib, gibst, gibt.

4. Page 178, russisch.

5. Vater, Vetter, the prefix ver–, viel, vier, Vogel, Volk, voll, von, vor, Veilchen, Sklave, brav.

6. Page 21, 8.

7. When they are used substantively.

8. ‚–e.'

9. ‚–er.'

10. Page 112, glücklich.

11. Page 119, 2.

12. ‚ver–.'

13. ‚be–.'

14. ‚ein–.'

15. Ihr Wunsch ist gerecht. Ihr Wunsch ist ein gerechter. Dieses Haus ist klein und jenes ist groß. Dieses Haus ist das kleine und jenes das große. Dieses Haus ist ein kleines und jenes ein großes. Meine Gründe sind recht. Meine Gründe sind die rechten.

16. By doubling the consonant the preceding vowel becomes short; doubling the vowel indicates the lengthening of it.

17. In compound words at the end of the first component, and before the diminutive suffixes chen and lein.

18. In the middle of the word ſſ and at the end ß.

19. In Grüße, süße, Füße long=ee; in Nüsse, Flüsse, Güsse short=i, preceding a double consonant: ſſ.

20. With a in the root.

21. With ei or ie in the root.

22. With i, and most of those with e in the root.

23. essen.

24. 1. Der Knabe ist von einem Baume gesprungen. 2. Er ist über den Fluß geschwommen. 3. Sie hat ein Glas Wein getrunken. 4. Mein Bruder ist von Berlin gekommen. 5. Der Mann drischt Korn. 6. Der Vogel ist auf den Baum geflogen. 7. Ich habe Wasser ins Glas gegossen. 8. Sie hat zu viel gegessen. 9. Unser Hund frißt kein Brod. 10. Ich schrieb einem Freunde (or an einen Freund) in Dresden. 11. Der Preis des Korns ist gestiegen. 12. Was hat Ihr Freund Ihnen gerathen? 13. Er trank des Morgens Kaffee und des Abends Thee. 14. Mein Vater hat vorige Woche meiner Schwester ein schönes Buch gegeben. 15. Wir gingen früh nach Hause. 16. Wir haben in dieser Woche sehr fleißig studiert. 17. Ich habe ihn seit einer Woche nicht gesehen. 18. Heute haben wir den Brief erhalten (or empfangen). 19. Nach Paris ist er gereist und nicht nach London. 20. Sie ist nicht reich, sondern arm. 21. Reich ist sie nicht, aber schön und liebenswürdig.

*Proverbs*: 1. All that God does is well. 2. Money is the great hero. 3. As one strives, he succeeds. 4. God gives no more frost than clothes. 5. Gray hair grows even upon a young head. 6. It is good enough, until it gets better. 7. God helps and the physician is thanked. 8. He who is wise, does not put his hand between hammer and anvil. 9. Misfortune, nails and hair grow all the year. 10. To have is better than to have had. 11. Black earth (ground) bears good fruit. 12. God gives, God takes. 13. With empty hands one catches no falcon. 14. The eyes seek that which delights the heart. 15. Kings have long arms. 16. The head keep cool, the feet warm, this makes the best doctor poor. 17. One crow makes no winter. 18. As long as the hen lays eggs, something is laid for her. 19. A house-wife should be no outgoer (lit. out-wife). 20. What does not come from the heart does not go to the heart. 21. To-day red, to-morrow dead. 22. I am the master, cried the man, and there he sat under the table. 23. Where nothing is, the emperor has lost his right. 24. You cannot be better after death, than you have become during life. 25. With water and bread one comes through all need. 26. One can certainly read what he has been, but he cannot write what he will remain. 27. All is well that ends well.

## [54.] FIFTH CLASS.—RADICAL VOWEL ie.

In verbs of this class ie is always changed into o, *both in the imperfect and in the participle.* The o **is short** before ch, d, ß; it is long in all the other cases.

1. *First group*: ie—o—o.

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| gießen, *to pour* | goß (gossest) | gegossen |
| sieden, *to seethe* | sott | gesotten. |

In like manner are conjugated: riechen, *to smell*; fließen, *to flow*; schießen, *to shoot*; sprießen, *to sprout*; kriechen, *to creep*; genießen, *to enjoy*; schließen, *to shut*; verdrießen, *to vex*; (impersonal).

2. *Second group*: ie—o (ō)—o (ō).

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| bieten, *to bid, to offer* | bot | geboten. |

In like manner are conjugated: biegen, *to bend*; fliegen, *to fly*; frieren, *to freeze*; ſchieben, *to shove*; wiegen, *to weigh* (intrans.)*; fliegen, *to flee*; verlieren, *to lose*.

There are excepted: { liegen, *to lie, incline* — lag — gelegen; ziehen, *to draw, pull* — zog — gezogen.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

With **short o**, as of gießen, goß (ŏ), gegoſſen (ŏ)
And of fließen, floß, (ŏ), gefloſſen (ŏ),
Form five more ending in **ießen**,
As ſchießen, ſchließen and ſprießen,
Genießen and vergießen,
One in **ieben** and two in **iechen**,
As ſieden, *to seethe*, riechen and kriechen.
But in ſchieben, bieten, fliehen, frieren,
in wiegen, biegen, fliegen, verlieren
Change **ie** into **long o**, as wog (ō), gewogen (ō),
Bog, gebogen and flog, geflogen.

## 72.

Genießen* *to enjoy*
der Kreis (–es, –e), *circle, ring*
unſere Lieben, *our dear ones* (p. 112, and der Faule, p. 171)
die Freude* (–n), *joy, gladness*
die Tinte*[tĭn'-te] (–n), *ink*
daneben (da, neben, p. 260) *near it*
fließen, *to flow* (p. 155, flüſſig)
weil*[vil], *because, since*
die Sorgfalt (Sorge, p. 252) *solicitude, care, carefulness*
das Tintenfaß (Tinte, p. 252, Faß, p. 247), *inkstand*
gießen,* *to pour* [*host*
die Schar*[shahr] (–en), *troop*,
der Süden (p. 299, ſüdlich), *south*
ſchieben, *to shove, push*
das Rohr (–es, –e), *reed, cane* (?)
biegen,* *to bow, bend*
führen[fee'-r^en] (p. 209, Führer), *to carry, convey, to lead, guide*
frieren, (p. 202, Froſt), *to freeze*
die Waare (–n), *ware, merchandise*
kriechen,* *to creep, crawl*
das Gebüſch[g^e-bĭsh'] (–es, –e), *coppice, thicket, bushes* (p. 87, Buſch)
wiegen (p. 277, wichtig), *to weigh*
das Pulver[pül'-v^er] (–s), *powder*
die Erziehung (p. 282, ziehen), *bringing up, education*
der Mitſchüler (p. 87, Schüler), *fellow-scholar* [*centre*
die Mitte (p. 239, Mittag), *middle*,
ſieden,* *to seethe, boil*
grob,* *coarse, rude, gruff*
die Seite (p. 276, jenſeit), *side*

**Remark.*—Wiegen, in the sense of *to cradle, to move a cradle*, is weak.

bei Seite, *aside, apart* [*sent*
bieten,* *to offer, to tender, to pre-*
achtzig (acht, p. 140, zig, p. 248, zwanzig), *eighty*
ſchändlich (p. 263, Schande), *shameful, disgraceful*, and adv.
fechten*[fĕy'-tᵉn], *to fight, combat*
eher (p. 140, ehe), *sooner, rather*
mitgenießen, *to enjoy with others*
ringen nach (p. 312), *to wrestle, strive, contend*
die Beſſerung (p. 229, 12, beſſer), *bettering, improvement*
verbieten (bieten, p. 325), *to forbid,*
das Geſchlecht*[gᵉ-shlĕyt](–es, –er), *generation*
empfinden,* *to be sensible of, to feel*
glänzen*[glän'-tsᵉn], *to be bright*
das Echte,* *the genuine, sterling*
die Nachwelt (nach, p. 243, Welt, p. 112), *posterity*, lit. *after world or age*
unverloren*(verlieren, p. 325), *not lost, sure* [*preciate*
ſchätzen*[shä'-tsen], *to value, ap-*

1. Wir genoſſen lange im Kreiſe unſerer Lieben die Freuden, die uns der Himmel beſchert hatte. 2. Die Tinte iſt daneben gefloſſen, weil du ſie nicht mit Sorgfalt in das Tintenfaß gegoſſen hatteſt. 3. Die Blumen rochen zu ſtark, darum behielt ich ſie nicht im Zimmer. 4. In dem letzten Kriege iſt viel Blut gefloſſen. 5. Die Feinde flohen auf allen Seiten. 6. Wir ſahen viele Scharen von Vögeln, welche alle nach dem Süden flogen. 7. Als er mir ſein Unglück erzählt hatte, ſchob ich ihm einige Thaler in die Hand. 8. Der Sturm hat die Eiche gebrochen, aber das Rohr kaum gebogen. 9. Cäſar führte ſein Heer über den Rhein, als dieſer Fluß gefroren war. 10. Die Waare, die Sie mir geſchickt (haben), wog mehr, als ich wünſchte. 11. In der Schlacht ſchwer verwundet, kroch er in ein Gebüſche. 12. Man ſagt von einem Soldaten, der noch nie im Kriege geweſen iſt: er hat noch kein Pulver gerochen. 13. Jener junge Mann hat eine gute Erziehung genoſſen. 14. Ein Schurke hat auf den alten deutſchen Kaiſer geſchoſſen. 15. Die Knaben ſchloſſen einen Kreis und ſtellten einen ihrer Mitſchüler in die Mitte. 16. Dieſe Eier ſind zu hart geſotten. 17. Der grobe Menſch ſchob mich bei Seite und ſchloß die Thür. 18. Wie viel hat er für ihr ſchönes Pferd geboten? 19. Nicht viel; er bot achtzig Thaler. 20. Beſſer ehrlich geflohen, denn (p. 292, 11 *Note*) ſchändlich gefochten (Prov.) 21. Man ſoll nicht eher fliegen wollen, bis man Federn hat (Prov.). 22. Wer im Sommer nicht arbeitet, muß im Winter frieren (Prov.). 23. Schlecht gewonnen, ſchnell verloren (Prov.). 24. Geld verloren, nichts verloren, Muth verloren, viel verloren, Ehre verloren, Alles verloren (Prov.). 25. Wer will mitgenießen, || Muß auch mitſchießen (Prov.). 26. Wer oft ſchießt, trifft endlich (Prov.). 27. Es muß biegen oder brechen (Prov.). 28. Beſſer biegen, als brechen (Prov.). 29. Nach verlornen Dingen || Soll man zu ſehr nicht ringen (Prov.). 30. Beſſerung iſt niemand verboten (Prov.). 31. Glückliche Dichter der glücklichen Welt! von Munde zu Munde flog, von Geſchlecht zu Geſchlecht euer empfundenes Wort (Schiller). 32. Was glänzt, iſt für den Augenblick geboren; || Das Echte bleibt der Nachwelt unverloren (Göthe). 33. Dich ſah ich, und die milde Freude floß von dem ſüßen Blick auf mich (Göthe). 34. Eher ſchätzt man das Gute nicht, als bis man es verlor (Leſſing).

## 73.

unredlich*, *dishonest*
das Gewicht (p. 277, wichtig) (-es, -e and er), *weight*
das Klima[kle'-mā] (-s, Klimate), *climate, clime*
der Verlauf (laufen, p. 239) (-es), [*lapse*
der Geiſt* (-es, -er), *spirit, ghost*
**geſtern Abend**, *last night* (Idiom)
**heute Abend**, *to-night* (Idiom)
**heute Morgen**, *this morning* (Idiom)
vorzüglich,* *excellent, superior*
fremd,* *strange, foreign*
die Natter*[nät'-ter] (-n) *adder*
die Taube,* *dove, pigeon*
das Kraut (-es, Kräuter), *herb*
ſprießen, *to sprout*
verdrießen,* *to vex, to grieve*
ſpielen (p. 240), *to play, gamble*
das Sopha[zo'-fā](-'s, like sing.), *sofa*
die Thräne[trā'-ne] (-n), *tear*
vorbringen (p. 305), *to advance*
die Eile (-n) *haste* (fr. eilen, *to haste*
das Schlachtfeld(-es,-er) *battle-field*

1. I have (ſein or haben ?) fled from (vor) all dishonest and bad men 2. The branches are bent under the weight of the snow. 3. He offered more than eighty dollars for my gold watch. 4. When (als) the spring returned, the storks flew over the sea. 5. Wild birds have flown to a warmer climate. 6. In the lapse of a few years that spirit had fled. 7. It will not freeze to-night; but it froze very hard last night. 8. The river is not yet frozen. 9. He poured excellent wine into the glass and offered it to the stranger (dat.). 10. The beer that he has poured into my glass is sour. 11. These people enjoyed their lives (sing.) 12. It was not a serpent that crept behind the bushes, it was an adder. 13. The hunter shot, and many pigeons flew over the roof. 14. Who has locked the door? 15. The servant locked it at six o'clock. 16. Did you (thou) boil (ſieden, perf.) a little milk for Clara? 17. I have boiled some. 18. The herb began to sprout. 19. The twigs of the trees have sprouted early this year. 20. Such words vexed my friend. 21. My cousin lost a great deal of (viel) money by gaming (infinitive noun). 22. How long have 'you lain on the sofa? 23. I did not lie on it (p. 314). 24. They have not yet weighed this merchandise. 25. Many tears ran (flowed) from her eyes, when (als) she heard of the death of her mother. 26. A little bird flew into my window. 27. The enemy fled, when our army advanced. 28. The storks have already flown across the sea into warmer countries. 29. The brook was frozen this morning. 30. Napoleon fled in great haste from the battle-field of (bei) Waterloo, and lost his sword and his (ſeinen) hat.

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Genießen**, *to enjoy*, Goth. *niutan*, A. S. *niotan*, to enjoy, to use as food or drink; comp. p. 281, nähren.

**Freude**, *joy*, fr. ſich freuen, *to gladden oneself, to rejoice.* conn. with froh, fröhlich, p. 235. On the suffix **de** see p. 187, Sünde.

**Tinte**, *ink.* prop. **tint**, ahd. *tincta*, fr. Lat. *tingo, tinctum*, Gr. *tenggo*, to wet, to stain (Tinte is the correct spelling, not Dinte, although the latter is even more in use).

**weil,** *because, since, as,* ahd. *die weil* (accus. of die **Weile, while,** A. S. *hwil,* Goth. *hveila*=hour, time, comp. the adv. **weil**=**while**=during the time that); strengthened by all, allbieweil=all the while, hence orig. weil was a conj. and adv. of time, whilst it has now become a conj. of cause.

**gießen,** *to pour forth, pour*; Goth. *giutan,* A. S. *geotan,* Dutch, *gieten,* akin to Gr. *cheo,* to pour; comp. Lat. *gutta,* drop, and Engl. **gush.**

**Schar** (this spelling is more correct than Schaar), *troop, host,* properly *division, section,* see ſcheren, p. 187, 299.

**biegen,** *to* **bow,** *bend, curve*; A. S. *bugan,* to bend. According to Grimm conn. with the Engl. *to buy*; A. S. *bycgan,* Goth. *bugjan,* derived from the bending and breaking of the blade (of grass, straw) which served as a symbol in the act of trading.

**kriechen,** *to creep, crawl,* ahd. *criochan,* A. S. *creopan.* Perhaps conn. with Engl. **crouch.**

**Pulver,** *powder,* fr. Lat. *pulvis,* dust.

**ſieden,** *to* **seethe,** ahd. *siodan,* A. S. *seothan,* Gr. *zeo,* to boil.

**grob, gruff,** *coarse, rude,* Dutch, *grof,* Tab. V. 5 (the uninflected, monosyllabic word -grob- is usually pronounced with short o. In the inflected forms, as grobes, grobe, etc., the o is long.

**bieten,** *to* **bid,** *to offer, to propose,* A. S. *beodan,* Goth. *biudan,* (whence **gebieten,** *to command, to* **bid** *with authority,* **verbieten,** *to for***bid**); conn. with bitten, beten, see p. 122.

**fechten,** *to* **fight,** A. S. *fechtan*; prob. conn. with Lat. *pugnus,* the fist, Gr. *pux,* with clenched fist, hence lit. to strike with the fist. Tab. V. 18.

**Geſchlecht,** *kind, genus, species, sex, generation,* Ge-ſchlecht, ahd. *gi-slaht,* from ſchlagen (p. 181, Handſchlag), in a sense like nach Jemand ſchlagen, *to take after, to resemble, to imitate*; whence Schlag, fig.=kind, sort, race.

**empfinden,** *to be sensible of, perceive, feel,* ahd. *ant-, int-, in-findan,* mhd. *enpfinden,* c. of emp=ent, see p. 303, 207 and finden, hence the orig. meaning *to find against,* then to find within=to become conscious of, to perceive, and that by each of the five senses.

**glänzen,** *to be bright, to glint* (Scot.), fr. **Glanz,** *brightness,* **glance,** related to **glitzern,** *to* **glitter, gleißen,** *to shine, to* **glister, Glas,** *glass* (lit. that which glances or shines) **glühen,** *to* **glow,** Sw. *gloa,* to sparkle.

**echt,** *legitimate, genuine, pure, sterling,* whence, das Echte, the legitimate, etc. (the correct spelling is echt and not ächt, having no connection with acht) orig. ehicht, from the old *e,* contracted from *ea, ewa=law* (hence die alte und neue E=the old and new testament, covenant, from the same root is **Ehe,** *marriage, wedlock,* A. S. *æ*=law, marriage, prop. *legitimate* connection between man and woman.

**unverloren,** *not lost, sure*, c. of un, p. 85, and **verloren**, fr. **verlieren,** *to* **lose,** prop. to **loose** or set free from (**los**[=*loose*] machen), mhd. *liesen*, ahd. *liosan*, A. S. *leosan*; with the same root is conn. **löſen,** *to set* **loose, loosen**; **Verluſt, loss**; see Tab. V. 23.

**ſchätzen,** *to value, appreciate, estimate*, from **Schatz,** *treasure*; Goth. *skatts*, ahd. *scaz*=money; A. S. *sceat*=tribute. Comp. the old Engl. **scot** (in scot-free).

**unredlich,** *dishonest*, c. of un, p. 85, and redlich=corresponding to reason, *rational, upright*; from Rede, ahd. *reda*=account, narration, akin to Lat. *ratio*, calculation. The Engl. *to* **read,** A. S. *rædan*, orig. only to speak=reden, then to utter aloud written or printed words.

**Geiſt,** *spirit*, **ghost,** allied to Giſcht, Gäſcht, *froth*, **yeast,** giſchen, gäſchen, *to foam, effervesce*, gären, (gähren), *to ferment*, ahd. *jesan*, from the type *yas*, from which also Gas, *gas*. (Comp. gar, p. 141), hence Geiſt=an unseen, but in the highest degree mobile and active element (or being).

**vorzüglich,** *preferable, superior, excellent*, fr. vorziehen, c. of vor, *before, forward*, and ziehen, *to draw* (p. 282), *to prefer* (*pre*=forward and *ferro* =to bear).

**fremd,** *strange, foreign*, Goth. *framathis*, i. e. *fram-ath-is*; hence formed by the derivational syllable *ath* from the (Goth. and A. S.) adv. and preposition *fram*, **from,** *forth, forward, farther, far off*.

**Natter,** ahd. *natare*, A. S. *näddre, nedre*; Engl. having dropped the initial *n*, **adder.**

**Taube, dove,** *pigeon*; A. S. *duva*. Tab. V. 11 and 6.

**verdrießen,** *to vex, grieve, excite displeasure*, c. of ver- and drießen, Goth. *thriutan*, A. S. *threotan*, to be hard, difficult to bear.

## [55.] SIXTH CLASS.—RADICAL VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS ä, au, o, ö, u, ü,

AND FIVE VERBS CHANGING BOTH THE RADICAL VOWEL OR DIPHTHONG AND THE FINAL CONSONANT OF THE ROOT.

Gähren[gâ'-rᵉn], gohr[o], gegohren [ö], *to ferment*

erwägen[ᵉr-vâ'-gᵉn], erwog[ö], erwogen[o] (lit. to weigh), *to consider attentively*

gebären[gᵉ-bâ'-rᵉn](pres. gebierſt) gebar [ah], geboren [o], *to bear, give birth to*

laufen (pres. läufſt), lief, gelaufen, *to run*

ſaufen (pres. ſäufſt), ſoff [ö], geſoffen[ö], *to drink* (said of beasts)

kommen, kam[kahm] gekommen[ö], *to come*

ſtoßen [o] (pres. ſtößeſt[ea], ſtieß, geſtoßen [o], *to push, thrust*

ſchwören[ea] ſchwor [o], geſchworen [o], *to swear*

erleſchen (pres. erliſcheſt), erloſch[ö], erloſchen [ö], *to be extinguished*

rufen[u], rief, gerufen, *to call*

lügen[ee], log [o], gelogen [o], *to tell a lie*

trügen, betrügen [ee] betrog[o], betrogen[o], *to deceive.*

gehen, **ging, gegangen,** *to go*; ſtehen, **ſtand, geſtanden,** *to stand*; ſitzen, **ſaß** [ah], **geſeſſen,** *to sit*; ziehen, **zog** [o], **gezogen,** *to draw*; hauen, **hieb,** gehauen, *to hew, strike.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Mark erwägen, ſaugen and ſchwören,
trügen, betrügen, lügen and gähren,
And change their vowel into **long o,** as ſchwor, geſchworen,
But gebären forms in present gebierſt, then gebar, geboren,
Into **short o** are changed erleſchen, ſaufen and kommen,
As erloſch, erloſchen, ſoff, geſoffen, but **kam,** gekommen;
With **ie** in imperfect form laufen, ſtoßen and rufen,
As lief, gelaufen, ſtieß, geſtoßen, rief, gerufen;
Add five changing both vowel and consonant,
As of ſitzen, **ſaß,** of **ſtehen, ſtand**;
These five are gehen,
ziehen and hauen, ſitzen, and ſtehen.

*Remark.*—1. Do not confound ſaugen (du ſaugſt), *to suck*, with ſäugen, *to suckle.*

*Remark.*—2. Most of these verbs, whose radical vowel is modified, belonged to one of the preceeding classes. Thus it was said gebern (for gebären, hence the 2nd pers. gebierſt), ſchwern (for ſchwören), ſiefen (for ſaufen), etc. This fact explains the modification of the vowel in the imperfect and the participle.

*Remark.*—3. The forms: du kömmſt, er kömmt, of the verb kommen, *to come*, anciently kimmen, are to-day considered as provincialisms.

*Remark.*—4. The ancient imperfect ich ſtund is still met with, and especially the impf. subj. ich ſtünde, instead of ich ſtände.

*Remark.*—5. In the verbs of this class the original radical sylable has been modified. The ancient forms of the infinitive were: gan (redoubled gangan, whence gangen, ſtan, ſitan, ziuhan, haban.

*Remark.*—6. leſchen (and in compounds erleſchen) is preferable to löſchen, erlöſchen although the latter is generally to be found.

## 74.

Erwägen* [ᵉr"-vâ'-gᵉn] *to consider, think over*
die Unternehmung (-en), *the undertaking, enterprise* (nehmen, p. 209)
der Vortheil* [fôr'-tîl"] (-eß, -e) *advantage, profit*
nach, *according to*
die Sage [zah'-gᵉ] (-n), [popular] *tradition*, [fictitious] *tale, legend, myth* fr. ſagen, (117).
das Gerücht* [gᵉ-rîçt] (-eß, -e), *rumor, flying* or *popular report*
toll* [tôl], *mad, crazy*
ſaufen* *to drink* (said of beasts)
römiſch [rêâ'-mish], *Roman*
der Senat* [zᵉ-naht'] (-eß or -ß, -e) *senate*
einander [i-nän'-dᵉr], *one another.*
die Freundſchaft (-en), p. 177, Gaſtfreundſchaft
die Hülfe [hîl'-fᵉ], *the help, aid*, from helfen, p. 208, Helfer
**um** Hülfe rufen, *to call* **for** *help*
der Glaube (-ns), *faith* (glauben, p. 208)
verfolgen* (folgen, p. 155), *to follow perseveringly*
beſitzen* *to own, to possess*

gordiſch,* *Gordian*
der Knoten* [knō'-tᵉn], *knot*
das Geräuſch*[gᵉ-roish'] (-eß), *bustle, noise*
um zu, *in order to* (p. 293)
in Stücke zerreißen, *to tear to pieces*
fragen (Frage, p. 278)
ſtoßen*[stō'-sᵉn], *to push, strike against*
die Ausſage, *statement, declaration* (ausſagen, *to say, to speak out*)
einmal, *once* (ein and mal, p. 117, niemals)
lügen, *to lie, tell a lie* (p. 156, Lügner)
wenn auch, *though, although*
allzeit, *at all times* (all, p. 140, and Zeit, p. 182)
ſchlemmen[shlĕm'-mᵉn], *to carouse, to banquet*
betrügen[bᵉ'-trēē'-gᵉn] (Betrug, p. 293)
Lebtag or Lebtage, *days of life*
mein, dein Lebtag or Lebtage, *in my, thy lifetime, in my, thy whole life*
der Speck (spĕk) (-eß, -e), *bacon, lard, fat*
der Pſalter*[psäl'-tᵉr] (-ß), *psalter*
mahlen[mah'-lᵉn], *to grind* (p. 104)
die Taſchenuhre, *watch* (Taſche, p. 264, Uhr, p. 140)
die Materie[mä"-tä'-rieᵉ] (-n), *matter*
aufziehen, *to draw up* (auf, p. 260, ziehen, p. 282)
**eine Uhr aufziehen**, *to wind up a watch*
winken, *to beckon, to nod, wink* (p. 266, Winkel)
das Pilgerleben,* *earthly pilgrimage*
der Lebensweg, *way through life*
das Schimmerlicht,* *faint, trembling light*
entgegen, *towards.*

1. Alles wohl erwogen, ſcheint mir dieſe Unternehmung keine großen Vortheile zu bieten. 2. Nach der Sage gebar Rhea Sylvia zwei Söhne, Romulus und Remus, welche eine Wölfin ſäugte. 3. Das Gerücht der böſen That lief durch das ganze Land. 4. Iſt es wahr, daß ein toller Hund kein Waſſer ſäuft? 5. Nach einer gewonnenen Schlacht ſchrieb Cäſar dem römiſchen Senat einen Brief, welcher nur die Worte enthielt: Ich kam, ich ſah, ich ſiegte. 6. Ehe ſie von einander ſchieden, ſchworen (or ſchwuren) ſie einander ewige Freundſchaft. 7. Wer hat hier um Hülfe gerufen? 8. Wo haben Sie im Theater geſeſſen? 9. Ich habe gar nicht geſeſſen, ich habe geſtanden. 10. Wegen ihres Glaubens verfolgt, verkauften dieſe Leute alles, was ſie beſaßen, und zogen in ein fremdes Land. 11. Dieſe Kinder ſind ſehr gut erzogen. 12. Wie hieß der König, der den gordiſchen Knoten zerhieb? 13. Wir hörten ein großes Geräuſch auf der Straße und liefen ans Fenſter, um zu ſehen, was es war. 14. Sie hat meinen Brief in Stücke zerriſſen, und ich habe geſchworen, ihr nie wieder zu ſchreiben. 15. Als der Herr ſeinen Diener rief, fragte dieſer: Haben ſie mich gerufen? 16. Es war nicht recht, daß du ihn bei Seite ſtießeſt. 17. Ich habe ihn nicht bei Seite geſtoßen. 18. Der Dieb hat gelogen; alle ſeine Ausſagen ſind falſch geweſen. 19. Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, || Und wenn er auch die Wahrheit ſpricht (Prov.). 20. Wer gern lügt, ſtiehlt auch gern (Prov.). 21. Wer bald läuft, iſt bald gejagt (Prov.). 22. Wer allzeit ſäuft und allzeit ſchlemmt, || Behält zuletzt kein ganzes Hemd (Prov.). 23. Wer dich einmal betrogen hat, dem traue dein Lebtag nicht wieder (Prov). 24. Neben dem Pferd gegangen, iſt nicht geritten (Prov.). 25. Ich ſitze

wohl, ſagte die Katze, da ſaß ſie auf dem Speck (Prov.). 26. Das hat er nicht aus den Fingern geſogen (Prov.). 27. Es iſt nicht gehauen und nicht geſtochen (Prov.). 28. Wohl erzogen, || Hat ſelten gelogen (Prov.). 29. Als David kam ins Alter || Da ſang er fromme Pſalter (Prov.). 30. Wer zuerſt kommt, mahlt zuerſt (Prov.). 31. Tauſend Menſchen gehen wie Taſchenuhren, die die Materie aufzieht (Schiller). 32. Die Freude winkt auf allen Wegen, die durch das Pilgerleben gehen (Hölty). 33. Ich zog oft auf meinen Lebenswegen, || Dem Schimmerlicht des Glücks entgegen (Rückert).

## 75.

Wohin? *where to? whither*
der Athem[ah'-tĕm] (-s), *breath.*
zweimal, *twice* (zwei, p. 124, mal, p. 117)
bewegen, *to move* (p. 176)
mehrere, (mehr, p. 229), *several*
das Geſicht*[gᵉ-zĭvt'] (-es, -er,), *face, visage*
vollkommen, *perfect*, and adv.
ungeſund, (un, p. 85 ), geſund, p. 233), *unwholesome*
der Wilde(-n), *savage* (p. 263, wild)
das Gift*[gift] (-es, -e), *poison*
die Rache[rä'-che], *vengeance, revenge*
ganz (p. 169), *quite*

1. You came a little late last night. 2. When the hunter came, the hare sprung over the wall. 3. The countess called (rufen) her servant (fem.), but she did not come. 4. Where did 'you go to with 'your cousin this morning? 5. We went to church. 6. William has already gone. 7. Formerly he came twice a (say *the*) week, now he comes but (say *only*) once. 8. When I went to (in) the theatre, I struck (pushed with) my (the) foot against (an) a stone so that I could (konnte) hardly move it. 9. The girl ran to her mother and told her what had happened, 10. Cicero went away from (aus) Rome when he saw that his enemies were more powerful than his friends. 11. I have called 'you several times, but 'you did not answer (with dat ) me. 12. I pushed him aside and ran into the other room. 13. Next to him were sitting two little children, and a dog lay at (zu) their feet. 14. A stranger has cheated me. 15. Our wine has fermented already. 16. He who (wer) lies, steals. 17. He told lies to my [say *lied (to) me into the*] face. 18. If the beer has not perfectly fermented, it is unwholesome. 19. The savage sucked the poison out of the wound of the white man. 20. The robber swore vengeance. 21. He has hewn the wood in pieces (in Stücke). 22. Did 'you go to them to-day or last evening? 23. I went this morning, but I did not find them at home. 24 Does 'your brother understand German? 25. He understood and spoke it perfectly, when he returned from Germany, three years ago. 26. Did the flowers stand upon the table? 27. No, they stood on the earth, but I placed (ſtellen) them on the table? 28. I called her with (a) loud voice, but she did not come. 29. I have run very fast, and now I am quite out of (außer) breath.

**Erwägen,** *to consider, to think over,* to **weigh** *in the mind, to ponder,* c. of er- and wägen (p. 257, wichtig).

**der Vortheil,** *advantage, profit,* c. of vor (p. 126) and Theil (p. 18)=a share before another or above another.

**nach,** *according to.*

**die Sage** (popular) *tradition,* (fictitious) *tale, legend, myth,* prop. **saying,** from ſagen (p. 117).

**das Gerücht,** *flying or popular report, rumor,* from riechen (p. 239), formed by means of Ge- and the suffix t (p. 316). In the same meaning was orig. used Geruch, *smell, odor* (p. 232), then figuratively *reputation.* Comp. Genesis 34, 30; Exodus 5, 21.

**toll,** *mad, crazy,* A. S. *dol—dwolian,* to err, Dutch, *dol,* mad; comp. Engl. **dull, dolt.**

**ſaufen,** *to drink* (said of beats), vulg. *to drink hard, to quaff,* ahd. *sufan,* A. S. *supan,* Engl. *to* **sup, soup, sop**; Tab. V. 3; comp. to **sip,** A. S. *sipan,* to drink in small quantities.

**Senat, senate,** Lat. *senatus*=a council of *elders, —senex-senis,* an old man.

**verfolgen,** *to persecute,* prop. *to* **follow** *perseveringly,* c. of ver=in the sense of Lat. *per,* adding an intensive meaning (p. 141, vergebens) and folgen (p. 155).

**beſitzen,** *to own, to possess*; prop. *to* **sit** *upon*; c. of be- and ſitzen (p. 141), thus possess, fr. Lat. *possideo, possessum=potis,* able, and *sedeo,* to sit.

**gordiſch,** *Gordian* (fr. Gordius, King of Phrygia, who tied a knot, so intricate that no one could untie it).

**Knoten, knot,** that which is (knüttet) knit, mhd. *knode,* conn. with Lat. *nodus* (for gnodus), **knütten**=A. S. *cnytan,* **to knit.**

**Geräuſch,** *noise, bustle, rustling,* from **rauſchen,** *to* **rush,** *to rustle, to roar*; fr. the sound.

**ſtoßen,** *to push, to strike,* strike (against), to **toss,** ahd. *stozan,* Goth. *stautan,* Lat. *tundo, tutudi,* from which **ſtottern,** *to* **stutter,** (ſ, *s,* having been changed both in Germ. and Engl. into t, *t*; Tab. V. 10).

**fromm,** *brave, honest, pious,* ahd. *frum,* promoting, useful; in mhd. brave, excellent, akin to Gr. *promos,* the foremost (man), first, and belongs to the Goth. and ahd. root, from which *fram=forth, forward* is derived. Comp. fremd, p. 329.

**Pſalter, psalter,** the book of Psalms, here for Pſalmen, *psalms*; der Pſalm, lit. a song sung to the psaltery, Gr. *psalterion,* Lat. *psalterium,* a stringed instrument of the Jews.

**Pilgerleben,** *the journey of human life,* earthly **pilgrimage,** c. of Leben p. 177) and **Pilger, pilgrim,** Lat. *peregrinus,* a traveller—*per,* through, and *ager* (acre) land.

**Schimmerlicht,** *faint, trembling* **light,** c. of Licht (p. 171) and Schimmer, fr. **ſchimmern,** *to shine faintly, to glimmer, to* **shimmer.**

**Geſicht,** *face,* prop. **sight,** what is foremost visible or to what the look is chiefly turned ; comp. Engl. *visage* (L. Lat. *visagium*) fr. Lat. *visus,* a thing seen ; Tab. V. 18.

**vollkommen,** *complete, perfect,* and adv.; mhd. *volkomen* (the pa. participle of the mhd. *volkomen*=to come to the full end.

**Gift,** *poison, venom,* orig. the same as the Engl. **gift,** viz. what is **given,** *administered* : comp. the phrase Einen **vergeben,** to poison some one.

**Rache,** *vengeance, revenge,* fr. rächen (instead of rechen, still in use in the 16th century), to avenge, to **wreak** ; Tab. V. 16 ; A. S. *wrecan,* to revenge, Old Engl. **wreke,** to cast out, conn. with it is **Wrack, wrack,** Fr. *varec, vrac,* anything cast up by the sea.

## [56.] SEVENTH CLASS OR THE MIXED VERBS.

1. The verbs of this class are called mixed, because they take the *termination* of weak verbs in the imperfect and past participle, though their *radical vowel is altered* like those of strong verbs. They all have the *same* vowel in the imperfect and past participle.

2. These verbs can be subdivided into two classes :

*First class.*—Verbs which are regular in the present indicative and change in the imperfect and past participle the radical vowel into **a.**

*a. First group* :

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperfect Indicative.** | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| brennen, *to burn,* | brannte, | gebrannt. |
| ſenden, *to send,* | ſandte, | geſandt. |

In like manner are conjugated : kennen, *to know* ; nennen, *to name, call* ; rennen, *to run* ; wenden, *to turn.*

*Remark.*—Senden and wenden also follow the weak conjugation.

*b. Second group* :

The imperfect indicat.** and the pa. participle modify the final consonant of the root.

| *Infinitive.* | *Imperf. Ind.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|
| denken, *to think,* | dachte, | gedacht, |
| bringen, *to bring,* | brachte, | gebracht, |
| thun, *to do,* | that, | gethan. |

*The imperfect subjunctive is regular, as will be shown in the proper place.

**That the imperf. subj. also modifies the vowel of the imperf. ind. will be shown in the proper place.

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Of brennen, kennen and of ſenden,
Of nennen, rennen and of wenden,
Form er brennt, brannte, hat gebrannt,
And er nennt, nannte, hat genannt;
Whilst of bringen, er brachte, hat gebracht,
And of denken, er dachte, hat gedacht.
To these verbs add a single one
Thun, er that, he did; hat gethan, has done.

## 76.

**Verbrennen**, *to burn up, destroy by fire* (see p. 141, vergebens)
die Aſche[ä'-sh$^{e}$], *ashes*
die Zeitung (Zeit, p. 179) (-en), *tidings, newspaper*
ſchlimm,* *bad, evil*
das Anſehen (p. 241, ankommen) *the sight, the looking at*; **von Anſehen, by sight,** (Idiom)
behandeln (p. 246, handeln), *to treat, to manage*
die Abſicht (abſehen, *to look away at, see to the end*) (-en), *design, intention, purpose*
ſchaden (p. 276, Schaden), *to hurt, to damage*
zur Thür hinein, *in at the door* (zu . . . . hinein, p. 245)
weh thun, *to ache, to pain* (p. 308, weh)
heißen (p. 308), *to be, to be indeed*
das Angeſicht (p. 334, Geſicht), *face, visage*
der Mohr (-en), *Moor, negro*
der Blutsfreund (p. 202, Blut) *a near relation, related by blood*
büßen*[bēē'-s$^{e}$n], *to atone for, to suffer*
kummervoll (p. 296, Kummer), *full of sorrow or grief,* [*by*
woran*[vō-rän'] *whereon, whereby*
eigen (p. 263), *own*

es iſt mein eigen, *it belongs to me, it is my own.*

1. Die Römer verbrannten ihre Todten und begruben dann die Aſche. 2. Wie nannte man die zehn Männer, welche den Römern Geſetze gaben? 3. Was thateſt du, als man dir dieſe Nachricht brachte? 4. Laßt uns dankbar ſein für alles Gute, was der Himmel uns geſandt hat. 5. Die neueſten Zeitungen haben ſchlimme Nachrichten gebracht. 6. Ich habe Herrn N. nur von Anſehen gekannt. 7. Das Haus brannte noch, als ich da war. 8. Dieſes Buch koſtet mehr als ich dachte. 9. Habe ich genug Zucker in Ihren Thee gethan (to put)? 10. Er kannte mich ſogleich an der Stimme. 11. Wenn du deine Pflicht thuſt, ſo wird Jedermann dich loben und lieben. 12. Haſt du gethan, was ich dir ſagte? 13. Ich rannte ſehr ſchnell und kam nicht zu ſpät. 14. Mancher nannte uns Freund, behandelte uns aber als Feind. 15. Wir thaten es nicht in der Abſicht dir zu ſchaden. 16. Gebrannte Kinder ſcheuen das Feuer (Prov.). 17. Als Alles brannte, brannte das Waſſer nicht (Prov.). 18. Wer dich kennt, kauft dich nicht (Prov.). 19. Wer bringt, iſt willkommen (Prov.). 20. Da bring ichs, ſagte Paul, und fiel damit zur Thür hinein (Prov.). 21. Denk nicht daran, ſo thuts nicht weh (Prov.). 22. Thu ein Ding, daß es gethan heißt (Prov.). 23. Kalt Eiſen brennt nicht

(Prov.). 24. Den Eſel kennt man bei den Ohren, || Am Angeſicht den Mohren || Und bei den Worten den Thoren (Prov). 25. Freunde Leute thun oft mehr als Blutsfreunde (Prov.). 26. Allein gethan, allein gebüßt (Prov.). 27. Bald gethan, iſt viel gethan (Prov.). 28. Wer nie ſein Brod mit Thränen aß, || Wer nie die kummervollen Nächte || Auf ſeinem Bette weinend ſaß, || Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmliſchen Mächte (Göthe). 29. Woran erkenn' ich den beſten Staat? Woran du die beſte Frau kennſt—daran, mein Freund, daß man von beiden nicht ſpricht (Schiller). 30. Allen gehört, was du denkſt; dein eigen iſt nur, was du fühleſt (Schiller).

## 77.

Spazieren gehen*[spă-tsé'-rᵉn], *to take a walk.*
erkennen (p. 222, kennen), *to recognize*
wenden (p. 248, auswandern), *to turn*
**nach Hauſe, home** (Idiom)
umwenden, *to turn over*
folgend (p. 155, folgen), *following*
der Stiefel[sté'-fᵉl] (–s, pl. like sing.) *boot*
der Kaufmann* (p. 117, kaufen), *merchant*
das Paket*[pă-kät'] (–es, –e,), *packet*
das Dutzend*[dú'-tsentᵉ] (–es, –e), *dozen*
das Taſchentuch (Taſche, p. 264, Tuch, 303), *pocket-handkerchief*
die Nachbarſchaft (p. 170, Nachbar) *neighborhood*
ziemlich*[tsém'-lɪh] *suitable, pretty*
der Ort[ört](–es, Orte, and Örter), *place*
die Familie*[fă*-mél'-yᵉ] (–n), *family*

1. I saw 'your aunt this morning, when I took a walk, but she did not know me. 2. Your brother has recognized me by (an) my voice. 3. My father has not known the son of 'your friend (fem.). 4. You (thou) have done a very good action. 5. What have they (man) been doing to 'you? 6. They (man) have done nothing to me. 7. Who has brought these books? 8. A man brought them, whom I did not know. 9. It is too late, I have already sent her my letter. 10. The teacher had hardly (kaum) turned his (say *the*) back, when all the lazy scholars ran home. 11. He turned the leaf over (um) and read the following story. 12. When did the shoemaker bring my boots? 13. He brought them this morning. 14. The whole street was burning. 15. The merchant has sent a parcel. 16. I have not thought of it (daran). 17. I hope I did (perfect) not hurt (wehe thun) 'you. 18. Have 'you sent for (nach) a doctor (Arzt)? 19. My mother has bought a dozen (of) fine silk handkerchiefs (for) me. 20. She brought them home yesterday. 21. The servant has brought 'your dinner. 22. Of (an) whom do 'you think now? 23 I thought of (an) my parents. 24. Why did so many people run in (auf with article) King street last evening? 25. There was a fire there; Mr N's. bookstore was burning. 26. Those children called (nennen) my name; do you (thou) know them? 27. I do not know them, and they did not know you (thou); they called the name of a man, who lives here in the neighborhood. 28. The horse broke the carriage and ran into the general's garden. 29. Did those

ladies understand French or Italian? 30. They neither understood French nor Italian; they were German ladies, and understood and spoke English pretty well. 31. Did he name the price of the book? 32. He asked five dollars for it (dafür or für dasſelbe, p. 314). 33. Did 'you know anybody in the place? 34. I knew nobody there. 35. Did 'you burn wood or coal (plural) last winter? 36. We burnt coal (plur). 37. He gave me the name (use Namen) of the stranger, but I forgot (perfect) it again. 38. We often thought (perfect) of (an) the pleasures we had (transl. which we had) in his family.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Schlimm,** *bad, evil, ill,* ahd. *slimb,* mhd. *schlim*; comp. Engl, **slim,** orig. *vile, worthless.*

**Mohr, Moor,** Fr. *maure,* Lat. *maurus,* fr. Gr. *mauros,* black.

**büßen,** *to pay the penalty, suffer for, atone for*; A. S. *bot,* compensation, amends, A. S. *betan,* to improve, amend, *bet, better,* Engl. to **boot,** to profit or advantage; Tab. V. 10.

**woran**=an was (was in dat. case).

*Take Notice!* The interrogative **was?** *what?* (which like the Engl. *what?* referring exclusively to inanimate objects, whilst **wer?** like *who?* asking for persons) has no dative case. In connection with prepositions requiring this case, as also like those governing the dat. and accus. or merely the accus. **was** is changed into **wo** or the original **wor** (p. 221) before a preposition beginning with a vowel; wo (or wor) precedes the preposition and forms with it one word.

*Caution!* Never use this form when the question refers to a person, or in other words, never change **wer?** into **wo?** e. g. Von **wem** ſprechen Sie? *Of whom* (=*of what person*) *do 'you speak?* **Wovon** ſprechen Sie? *Of what* (*thing, object*) *do 'you speak?* **Womit** haben Sie das gemacht? *With what thing have you made this?* Mit **wem** haben Sie das gemacht? *With what person have you made this?*

**ſpazieren,** or more usual **ſpazieren gehen,** *to take a walk,* prop. to go out of the **space**; Lat. *exspatior*—*ex*=out of, and *spatium,* **space.**

**Stiefel,** *boot,* mhd. *stival,* fr. L. Lat. Ital. *stivale*=**estival** or **æstival,** that is an easy covering or clothing for the feet, well adapted for the **estival** or summer season.

**Kaufmann,** *merchant,* **chapman,** c. of kaufen, p. 114, and Mann, p. 168. The plural of it is **Kaufleute.** In general the nouns compounded with Mann, substitute for the plural of the latter component **Leute,**: e. g. der Hofmann, *courtier,* plur. die Hofleute.

But where it is essential to mark the *sex,* or to designate men as individuals, the form Männer must be retained; as **Ehemänner** (Ehe, *matrimony*) *husbands,* Tochtermänner, *sons-in-law.*

---

*Note.*—For ‚wo' replacing the *relative,* see the second course.

**Paket, packet,** a small package; Fr. *paquet*, Ital. *packetto*, L. Lat. *paccus*; dim. of **Pack, pack,** fr. packen, *to pack*, Lat. *pango*, *pactum*, Gr. *pegnuo*, to fasten.

**Dutzend, dozen,** prop. *two* and *ten*; Fr. *douzaine*, *douze*=twelve, fr. Lat. *duodecim*, *duo*=two, *decim* (decem)=ten.

**ziemlich,** *suitable*, **seemly,** *moderate*, *pretty*, fr. ziemen, *to beseem*, *suit*.

**Familie, family,** orig. all persons of a household including the slaves, *servants*; Lat. *familia*—*famulus*=servant.

## [57.] MIXED VERBS, SECOND CLASS.

1. Verbs that are irregular in the *present indicative*.

| *Infinitive.* | *Pres. ind. sing.* | *Pres. ind. plur.* | *Imperf.* | *Pa. Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| wiſſen, *to know* | ich weiß | wir wiſſen | wußte | gewußt |
| können, *I can* or *am able* | ich kann | wir können | konnte | gekonnt |
| mögen, *I may* or *like* | ich mag | wir mögen | mochte | gemocht |
| dürfen, *I dare* or *am permitted* | ich darf | wir dürfen | durfte | gedurft |
| müſſen, *I must* or *am obliged* | ich muß | wir müſſen | mußte | gemußt |
| ſollen, *I shall* or *I am to* (e. g. *learn*) | ich ſoll | wir ſollen | ſollte | geſollt |
| wollen *I will* or *I am willing* | ich will | wir wollen | wollte | gewollt. |

2. In the present indicative the 1st and 3d pers. sing. are deprived of the personal terminations. Ex.:

| *Sing.* | | *Plur.* | *Sing.* | | *Plur.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich weiß | | wir wiſſen | ich mag | | wir mögen |
| du weißt | | ihr wiſſet (wißt) | du magſt | | ihr möget |
| er weiß | | ſie wiſſen | er mag | | ſie mögen. |

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

The indicative present is irregular
Of the following seven in the singular:
Of the verbs wiſſen and müſſen and ſollen,
Of können and mögen, dürfen and wollen;
Their third and first are alike, as: ich and er weiß of wiſſen,
Ich and er kann, of können, ich and er muß, of müſſen;
And mark the vowel change in their numbers: Ich will, wir wollen,
Ich mag, wir mögen, with one exception: ich ſoll, wir ſollen,
But like weak verbs they end, as wußte, gewußt,
Konnte, gekonnt, mußte, gemußt,
durfte, gedurft, ſollte, geſollt,
Mochte, gemocht, and wollte, gewollt.

3. The verbs können, mögen, dürfen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen, and laſſen are called **auxiliaries of mood** because they are joined to the infinitive to indicate the relation which in some other languages are expressed by the simple moods (the *subjunctive*, *conditional*, *imperative*) for which see in future sections.

**The use of these highly important verbs will explicitly be explained in the *Second Course*. We shall here limit ourselves to a few observations, which for the sake of their importance require the full attention of the student now.**

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ich hoffe Sie bald **zu ſehen** | *I hope* **to see** *you soon.* |
| 2. Ich will Sie bald **ſehen** | *I wish to see you soon.* |
| 3. Der Vogel kann **fliegen** | *The bird can* **fly.** |
| 4. Sie lernen **tanzen** | *They learn how to dance.* |
| 5. Er lehrt tanzen | *He teaches dancing.* |
| 6. Er hilft uns arbeiten | *He helps us work.* |
| 7. Ich habe **gewollt** | *I have wanted.* |
| 8. Ich **habe** kommen **wollen** | *I wanted* (lit. *have w.*) *to come.* |
| 9. Er **hat** ihn gehen **heißen** | *He has ordered him to go* |
| 10. Meine Mutter hat mich das **thun laſſen** | *My mother has made me do this.* |

*Observations.*—1. The **Infinitive complement** (that is the infinitive dependent as object on a preceding verb or adjective) is generally preceded by **zu, to,** as Ich hoffe ihn **zu ſehen**, *I hope* **to see** *him*; Ich war froh ihn **zu hören**, *I was glad* **to hear** *him.*

2. The *auxiliaries*, both of *tense* (p. 113, 4) and of *mood* require the infinitive of the principal verb **without zu.** The same is the case with the following verbs: heißen, *to order*, *to call*; helfen, *to help*; hören, *to hear*; lernen, *to learn*; lehren, *to teach*. In some idiomatic phrases also bleiben, *to remain*; finden, *to find*; fühlen, *to feel*; machen, *to make*; nennen, *to call*; ſehen, *to see*; as Ich fand das Buch auf dem Tiſche **liegen**; Er macht mich lachen; Ich fühle den Puls ſchlagen.

3. A second peculiarity of which both the auxiliaries of mood and the same verbs participate, is that they form the compound past tenses with the *infinitive* instead of the past participle, when they are immediately preceded by an infinitive: M. S. 8, 9, 10. Ich habe **gewollt**, but ich habe ſchreiben **wollen** (instead of gewollt) *I have been willing to write*; Er hat nicht **gekonnt**, but er hat nicht kommen **können** (instead of gekonnt)), *he has not been able to come.* Ich habe ihn **gehört**, but ich habe ihn ſingen **hören** (instead of gehört). Wir haben ihn **geſehen**, but wir haben ihn tanzen **ſehen** (instead of geſehen).

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

Most verbs require infinitive **with zu,**
As generally in English it is used **with to,**
But with können, müſſen, wollen,
With dürfen, mögen,* ſollen,
The verbs of mood—**zu** must be suppressed.
Thus likewise zu is not expressed
With laſſen and ſehen, heißen and hören,
With helfen and fühlen, lernen, and lehren.
The past compound tenses of the verbs just shown
Form regularly when they stand alone;
But when an infinitive upon them depends,
Instead of past participle, the infinitive stands.
Lehren and lernen, however, which we mentioned last,
Also regularly form their tenses past.

4. In the compound tenses the infinitive of the modal auxiliary goes last: M. S. 10, My mother has made[3] me do[1] this, meine Mutter hat mich das thun[1] laſſen.[3] Sie haben ſchreiben[1] müſſen,[3] *they have been obliged*[3] *to write.*[1]

5. **Müſſen** expresses *necessity in general*: to be obliged to, to be compelled to. Ich mußte arbeiten, *I had to work.* Ich muß arbeiten, *I must work.* Alle Menſchen müſſen ſterben, *all men must die.*

**Dürfen** expresses *liberty, to be at liberty to, to be permitted to*: darf ich kommen? *May I come?* Du darfſt ihm Alles ſagen, *you may tell him all.* Wir dürfen ſpielen, *we are allowed to play.*

**Können** expresses *possibility, ability* and *power*, to *be able to.* Er kann wieder gehen, *he can go again.* When it signifies an ability or power acquired by study or exertion, it is employed for the English *to know*: Ich kann Franzöſiſch, *I know French.* Kannſt du die Regeln? *do you know* (to say) *the rules?* Er kann leſen und ſchreiben, *he can* (knows how to) *read and write.*

**Mögen,** expresses the *liking* of the subject, to *like* to, to be likely to: Ich mag nicht mehr trinken, *I don't like to drink any more.* Er mag zu Hauſe ſein, *he is likely to be at home.* Mögen may also express what the speaker allows: Er mag zu Hauſe bleiben.

**Wollen** expresses the *will* of the subject, to *be willing* to, to be going to, to *wish, to want to*: Wann willſt du gehen? *when do you wish* (intend) *to go?* Ich will nicht gehen, aber ich werde es müſſen, *I am not inclined to go, but I shall be forced to do so.*

**Sollen,** expresses *duty, obligation*, to be bidden to: Du ſollſt nicht falſches Zeugniß reden, *thou shalt not bear false witness.* Wer ſoll das thun? *who is* (bidden) *to do that?*

**Laſſen** indicates either *possibility, to leave, let, allow, permit, suffer*, or *necessity, to order, command, cause, make, get*: Laſſen ſie mich wiſſen, *let me know.* Laß es bringen, *let it be brought.* Ich laſſe ein Haus bauen, *I get a house built.* Er ließ den Gefangenen vor ſich bringen, *he ordered the captive to be brought before him.* Ich laſſe Ihnen das Buch, *I leave you the book*, or *I let you have the book at the* (said) *price.*

---

**Note.*—The derived verb vermögen, *to be able, to have the power* or *faculty* (to do something) is followed by zu before the infinitive, as Wer vermag das zu thun?

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

| *Infinitive.* | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | ich | du | er, ſie, es | wir | ihr | ſie |
| können | kann | kannſt | kann | können | könnt | können |
| mögen | mag | magſt | mag | mögen | mögt | mögen |
| dürfen | darf | darfſt | darf | dürfen | dürft | dürfen |
| müſſen | muß | mußt | muß | müſſen | müßt | müſſen |
| wollen | will | willſt | will | wollen | wollt | wollen |
| ſollen | ſoll | ſollſt | ſoll | ſollen | ſollt | ſollen. |

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich konnte | ich mochte | ich durfte | ich mußte | ich wollte | ich ſollte |
| *I could, was able* | *I liked to* | *I durst, was permitted to* | *I was obliged to, had to* | *I intended* | *I was (bidden) to.* |

### PERFECT INDICATIVE.

Ich habe gekonnt, *I have been able* and
Ich habe (kommen) **können**, *I have been able* (to come).

Ich habe nicht gemocht, *I did not like* and
Ich habe nicht (kommen) **mögen**, *I did not like* (to come).

Ich habe gedurft, *I was* (have been) *permitted* and
Ich habe (kommen) **dürfen**, *I was* (have been) *permitted* (to come).

Ich habe gemußt, *I was* (have been) *compelled to* and
Ich habe (kommen) **müſſen**, *I was* (have been) *compelled* (to come).

Ich habe gewollt, *I was* (have been) *inclined to* and
Ich habe (kommen) **wollen**, *I was* (have been) *inclined* (to come).

Ich habe geſollt, *I was to* and
Ich habe (kommen) **ſollen**, *I was* (to come).

### PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

Ich hatte gekonnt, *I had been able* and
Ich hatte (kommen) **können**, *I had been able* (to come), etc.

### *First Future.*

Ich werde können, mögen, dürfen, müſſen, wollen, ſollen, etc.

### *Second Future.*

Ich werde gekonnt haben, *I shall have been able, etc.* and
Ich werde haben (kommen) **können**, *I shall have been able* (to come), etc.

---

The *Present Participles* of these verbs occur only in the adjective compounds vermögend, *influential, wealthy*; bedürfend, *requiring, in need of*; wohlwollend, *well-wishing*; mißwollend oder übelwollend, *malevolent*, and in the abstract noun der Wollende, *the one that wills.*

## 78.

die Achtung (achten, p. 276), *esteem, regard*
das Gebot[g$^{e}$-bōt'] (–es, –e), *command, precept* (fr. gebieten, p. 328)
verreiſen (reiſen, p. 274), *to go on a journey, depart*
bis*[bis], *till, until, to*
arbeitſam(Arbeit, p. 181) *laborious, industrious*
der Narr[när] (–en), (?) *fool, fop*
die Art*[ahrt] (–en), *species, kind, manner*
die Schwart*[shvahrt](–en) *sward*
die Brille*[bril'-l$^{e}$] (–n) *spectacles*
ſchmieden (Schmied, p. 112) *to forge*
vertragen (tragen, p. 254), *to bear, endure*, (more usual and better in this sense **ertragen**), *to tolerate*
erſte (erſt, p. 240), *first*
gucken[gük'-k$^{e}$n], *to look* (curiously), *to peep*
wohl* (p. 141) *perhaps, let it be*
zuweilen (zu, p. 243, Weile, p. 328), *at times, sometimes*
entbehren*[ĕnt-bā'-r$^{e}$n], *to be without, to dispense with*
unnütz [ün'-nütz], *useless, good for nothing* (fr. genießen, p. 327)
der Jahrmarkt (Markt, p. 264) *fair, annual fair*
das Geſundſein (geſund, p. 233) *being in health*
**Dank wiſſen**, *to feel grateful, to be thankful* (Idiom)
tadeln[tah'-d$^{e}$ln], *to blame* (?)
deswegen (=wegen deſſen) *therefore, for that reason*
hinnen*[hin'-nen], *hence*
die Ordnung*[örd'-nün$^{k}$], *order.*

1. Wer nicht arbeiten mag, verdient nicht unſere Achtung. 2. Sie dürfen ihm vertrauen; denn ich weiß, daß er Vertrauen verdient. 3. Ihr ſollt den Geboten eurer Eltern und Lehrer gehorſam ſein. 4. Haben Sie nicht verreiſen wollen? 5. Ja, aber ich habe bis jetzt nicht gekonnt. 6. Die Bienen lehren uns arbeitſam und ſparſam ſein. 7. Du mußt nicht Alles ſagen, was du weißt, aber du mußt immer wiſſen, was du ſagſt. 8. Hat Karl ſeine Wörter gewußt? 9. Nein, er hat ſie nicht gewußt; der Lehrer hat ihn beſtrafen müſſen. 10. Warum hat er das Buch nicht gebracht? 11. Er hat es nicht thun dürfen; ſein Vater hat es nicht gewollt. 12. Sein Vater hat das Buch nicht leihen wollen. 13. Habt ihr ſchwimmen wollen. 14. Wir haben es gewollt, aber nicht gekonnt. 15. Ein Narr kann mehr fragen, als zehn Weiſe ihm beantworten können (Prov.). 16. Art läßt nicht von Art, || Der Bock nicht ſeinen Bart, || Das Speck nicht von der Schwart (Prov.). 17. Wenn das Auge nicht ſehen will, || So helfen weder Licht noch Brill (Prov.). 18. Man muß das Eiſen ſchmieden, weil es glüht (Prov.). 19. Alte ſoll man ehren, || Junge ſoll man lehren, || Weiſe ſoll man fragen, || Narren vertragen (Prov.). 20. Am erſten April || Schickt man die Narren, wohin man will (Prov.). 21. Dem Fleißigen guckt der Hunger wohl zuweilen ins Fenſter, aber ins Haus darf er nicht kommen (Prov.). 22. Du, du liegſt mir im Herzen, || Du, du liegſt mir im Sinn; || Du, du machſt mir viel Schmerzen, || Weißt nicht, wie gut ich dir bin (Popular Song). 23. Viel kann der Menſch entbehren, nur den Menſchen nicht (Börne). 24. Willſt

du nichts Unnützes kaufen, || Mußt du nicht auf den Jahrmarkt laufen (Göthe). 25. Der Menſch ſoll nicht müſſen (Leſſing). 26. Wer nie war krank, || Weiß kaum für ſein Geſundſein Dank (Herder). 27. Nicht für die Schule, für das Leben muß man lernen (Herder). 28. Man ſoll den Tag nicht vor dem Abend loben (Schiller). 29. Man kann die Fehler eines großen Mannes tadeln, aber man muß nur nicht den Mann deswegen tadeln (Lichtenberg). 30. Gar raſch eilt die Zeit von hinnen; || Doch Ordnung lehrt euch Zeit gewinnen (Göthe).

## 79.

die Wittwe*[vit'-v$^{e}$] (–n), *widow*
viel, *a great deal* [*vance*
vorrücken*[fôr'-rik$^{e}$-k$^{e}$n], *to advance*
borgen*[bör'-g$^{e}$n], *to borrow*
beantworten(antworten, p. 207), *to answer*
gänzlich[gänts'-lik], *entirely* (ganz, p. 169)
die Flagge*[fläg'-g$^{e}$], *flag*
rauchen*[rou'-$^{ch}$en], *to smoke*
das Drama*[drah'-mă](–s, Dramen), *drama.*

1. My father got (laſſen) a dozen shirts made for this (dat. only) poor widow. 2. The boys did not want (would not, Perfect) to work. 3. I was obliged (Perfect) to speak a great deal. 4. They have never liked (mögen) this cake. 5. She knew English, German, French and Italian. 6. 'You may (dürfen) know it, I am going to the theatre. 7. They were allowed (dürfen, Perfect) to take a walk. 8. I have ordered (laſſen) my shoemaker to come. 9. I have had (laſſen) a new coat made. 10. My mother has made me do this. 11. He caused (Perfect) the regiment to advance. 12. We did not like (mögen, Perf.) to borrow anything (nichts, not anything). 13. Thou shalt not steal. 14. My cousin has not been able to answer 'your letter. 15. Can 'you dance? 16. I could (Perfect) dance formerly, but I cannot dance anymore. 17. Were 'you (use perf.) able to talk German? 18. Yes, I was (use perf.) able to talk a little; now I have forgotten it entirely. 19. The bookbinder has wished to bind 'your books; why have 'you not made him bind them? 20. I do not wish to have them (laſſen) bound by him. 21. Why have 'you made him carry the flag? 22. We have been obliged to do it. 23. They have not been allowed to smoke. 24. When will the teacher make us read a German drama? 25. They will not like to write so often. 26. He has been able to read it. 27. We were obliged to remain at home yesterday. 28. They have not been able to understand it. 29. He has been compelled (müſſen) to go. 30. We wished to go on a journey, but we were not able (to do it). 31. She will be able to come. 32. The bookseller would not (wollen) send us the book, but he was compelled (to do it); he was compelled to send it. 33. They wished to finish the work (Arbeit), but they have not been able (to do it); they have not been able to finish the work. 34. They have been compelled to finish the work.

**Bis**, *till, until, to*; prob. contracted from **bei, by**, *near, beside*, and **zu, to**; mhd. *bitze*.

**Art**, *manner*, ahd. mhd. *art*, orig. ploughing, allied to ahd. *aran*, mhd. *eren*=to plough (comp. Erde, p. 155), cultivate the ground, then being out of the state of nomadic savages, being of good manner; comp. the Gr. *ar*-istos, best, *ar*istokrat; whence artig, being of good manner, well-bred.

**Schwart, sward**; A. S. *sweard*, Ice. *svordr*, the skin of bacon, sward; Tab. V. 13, 11.

**Brille**, *spectacles*, mhd. *berille*, fr. Lat, *beryllus*, a precious stone of a greenish color, on whose transparency special stress was laid, whence **brillant, brilliant**, Fr. *briller*, to be brilliant, to shine.

**wohl**, *perhaps, let it be, indeed.* Wohl frequently expresses logical possibility or probability, as: es kann wohl ſein, *it may* (indeed) *be*; Sie haben es wohl geleſen, *you have read it* (I suppose). It sometimes is used to express intensity or emphasis, as: ich möchte wohl wiſſen, *I should really like to know*.

**entbehren**, *to do without, to dispense with*, c. of ent (see ent, 3, in antworten, p. 207) and behren=bären in gebären (p. 222, Geburtstag), bar (p. 125); hence=not being in the condition of *carrying* a thing about, or fail to have, to do without, to dispense with.

**hinnen, von hinnen** (poetical adv.), **hence**, ahd. *hinana*, abbreviated *hinnan*, A. S. *hinan*, later forms *hennene, henne* (see Morris' Hist. Outlines, p 199), Lat. *hinc*.

**Ordnung, order**, regular arrangement, fr. **ordnen**, *to* **order**, *to regulate, arrange*, Lat. *ordinare*, to ordain, to put in order, Fr. *ordre*.

**Wittwe, widow**, A. S. *weoduwe*, Lat. *vidua*, bereft of a husband; Sans. *vidhava—vi*, Lat. *ve*, without, and *dhava*, a husband.

**vorrücken**, *to advance*. c. of **vor**=Engl. **fore**, *pro-, pre-*, and rücken, *to move, advance*, from Ruck, *jerk, start, move*; allied to English, to **rock**, to move backward and forward; ahd. *rukjan*, to move.

**borgen**, *to* **borrow**; A. S. *borgian—borg, bork*, a security.

**Flagge, flag**, a thing that *flies* or *flutters* in the wind, allied to fliegen, (p. 102), *to fly*.

**rauchen**, *to smoke, to* **reek**; Tab. V. 16; A. S. *rec*, Dutch, *rook*, smoke; comp. riechen, p. 239.

**Drama, drama**, orig. *action, deed*, then a representation of actions in human life, Lat. Gr. *drama—dran*, to do.

## [58.] COMPOUND VERBS.*

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Er **ging** mit ſeinem Lehrer heute **aus.** | *He went out with his teacher to-day.* |
| 2. Er **ſtand** ihm **bei.** | *He assisted him.* |
| 3. Er wird mit ihm **ausgehen.** | *He will go out with him.* |
| Er wird ihm **beiſtehen.** | *He will assist him.* |
| 4. **Nehmen Sie** den Hut **ab.** | *Take off your* (lit. *the*) *hat.* |
| Ich werde ihn nicht **abnehmen.** | *I shall not take it off.* |
| 5. Er **nahm** den Hut **ab.** | *He took his hat off.* |
| 6. Er hat den Hut nicht **abgenommen.** | *He has not taken off his hat.* |
| 7. Ich ſagte ihm, ihn **abzunehmen.** | *I told him to take it off.* |
| 8. Er wird es ihm **vorherſagen.** | *He will tell it to him beforehand.* |
| Er **ſagte** es ihm **vorher.** | *He told it to him before.* |
| **Sag'** es ihm **vorher.** | *Tell it to him beforehand.* |
| Er hat es ihm **vorhergeſagt.** | *He told* (lit. *has told*) *it to him beforehand.* |
| Er denkt, es ihm **vorherzuſagen.** | *He intends to tell it to him beforehand.* |
| 9. Wir **ziehen** das Seil **durch.** | *We draw the rope through.* |
| Wir **durchziehen** die Umgegend. | *We ramble over the surrounding country.* |
| 10. Er wird ihm **wohlthun.** | *He will do good to him.* |
| Er **thut** ſeinen Freunden **wohl.** | *He does good to his friends.* |

*Observations.*—1. **Compound Verbs** are formed by prefixing certain *syllables* or *words* (adverbs, adjectives and for the most part prepositions, see p. 241, Note.) to the single verb, as gehen, *to go*, weggehen, *to go away*; nehmen, *to take*, abnehmen, *to take off.*

2. Compound verbs are either **separable** or **inseparable:**

*a.* The *inseparable verbs* are formed by the prefixes: be-, ent- (-emp), er-, ge-, miß-, ver-, zer-, the preposition wider, and the adjective voll. They differ in no respect from simple verbs, except that their past participle does not take the augment ge- (comp. p. 119, 2.), as of widerſtehen, *to resist*, er hat widerſtanden, *he has resisted* (not gewiderſtanden); of zerbrechen (p. 299), er hat zerbrochen.

*b.* Compound verbs formed by prefixing distinct words, as prepositions or adverbs, are called *separable*, because in the **Present** and **Imperfect** tenses, and in the **Imperative Mood** this prefix is *separated* and *removed to the end of the clause*, in case the clause is a principal or independent one (see next lesson); M. S. 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10.

*c.* The *separable verbs* have the primary accent on the prefix: Er wird den Brief abſchreiben [äb'-shrī"-bᵉn], *he will copy the letter*; Er ſchrieb den Brief ab', *he copied the letter.*

*d.* The past participle takes the augment ge- before the simple verb, and not before the prefix, or in other words ge- is inserted *between* the prefix and the verb; M. S. 6, 8.

**Note.*—The compound verbs requiring in our opinion much practice, we shall here give merely an outline of the matter enabling us to give a variety of exercises on it, deferring a detailed and explicit treatment of this very important subject until the Second Course.

*c.* When the infinitive requires zu, *to* (p. 339. 1.) it is inserted *between* the prefix and the verb, all three being *joined as one word*; M. S. 7, 8.

3. Compound verbs formed by prefixing the prepositions durch, *through*; über, *over*; unter, *under*; um, *round*; hinter, *behind*, are used both as separable and inseparable verbs, according as either the prefix or the verb has the principal accent. They are *separable* if the accent rests on the prefix, and inseparable if the accent rests on the verbs themselves. Verbs of this kind are:

| *Separable verbs.* | *Inseparable verbs.* |
|---|---|
| durch'dringen, *to force or get through* | durchdringen', *to penetrate.* |
| um'gehen, *to go round about.* | umgehen', *to avoid.* |
| unter'ſtehen, *to stand under.* | unterſtehen', *to venture.* |
| hinter'gehen, *to go behind, to a back room.* | hintergehen', *to deceive.* |
| über'gehen, *to go over.* | übergehen', *to pass over in silence.* |

*Note.*—By comparing the English translations of the above separable and inseparable verbs, the student will easily observe that the separable verbs are taken in their *proper sense*, whilst the inseparable verbs have a *figurative meaning*, and this is generally the case.

4. **Verbs doubly compounded**, that is verbs beginning with *two prefixes* are:

*a.* *Separable* in case the two prefixes are components of one word with the accent on the last component (p. 21, Note), as:

dabeiſtehen, *to stand by* (da, bei')=er ſteht dabei, *he stands by*
davonlaufen, *to run off* (da, von')=er lief davon, *he ran off*
herabſpringen, *to leap down* (her, ab')=er ſpringt herab, *he springs down*
vorangehen, *to go before* (von, an')= er ging voran, *he went before*, and a great many others.

*b.* They are *inseparable* in case the first is an inseparable prefix, as:

beaufſichtigen, *to inspect* (be, auf), er beaufſichtigt, *he inspects*
veranlaſſen, *to induce* (ver, an), er veranlaßt, *he induces, etc.*

*c.* The first is separable, if it is itself separable and therefore accented and followed by an inseparable one, as:

anvertrauen, *to entrust* (an' ver), er vertraut es ihm an, *he entrusts it to him*
auferziehen, *to bring up* (auf', er), er erzog ihn auf, *he brought him up*
vorbehalten, *to reserve* (vor', be), ich behalte es mir vor, and many others.

But mark the following verbs always inseparable:

| | |
|---|---|
| anbelangen or anbetreffen, *to concern* | auferlegen, *to enjoin* |
| auferbauen, *to build up* | auserleſen, *to select* |
| auferſtehen, *to rise from the dead* | auserwählen, *to choose.* |

## 80.

Abſchreiben (ſchreiben, p. 240), *to copy*
aus'ſprechen (ſprechen, p. 171) *to pronounce*
undeutlich (deutlich, p. 300), *indistinct*
aus'trinken, *to drink out, up*
ermahnen,* *to admonish*
durchwandern (durch'-w.) *to travel through* (d.-wand'ern), *to peragrate, to perambulate*
überſetzen (über'-ſ.) *to set over, pass across* (ü.-ſetzen'), *to translate*
jenſeitig (jenſeit, p. 276), *on the other side of*
umpflanzen (um'-pf.), *to plant again, to transplant* (u.-pflan'zen), *to plant round*
umziehen (um'-z.), *to draw, pull down* (u.-zieh'en), *to draw round*
der Fraß* [frahs] (-es, -e), *immoderate eating*
umbringen* (bringen. p. 199), *to kill, murder*
ertrinken,* *to be drowned*
der Tempel, [tĕm'-pel] (-s), *temple*
leer* [lār], *empty, void*
der Sack* [zāk] (-es, Säcke), *sack*
aufdrücken (drücken, p. 315) *to press to or on.*
auf'rechtſtehen, *to stand upright,*
auf'ſchieben (ſchieben, p. 325), *to defer, postpone*
auf'heben (heben, p. 254), *to abrogate, annul*
brauchen,* *to use, to want*
vorangehen,* *to go before, precede*
ein'holen (holen, p. 221), *to overtake, catch*
auf'ſchließen* (ſchließen, p. 263), *to unlock*
die Hölle* [hül'-le] (-n), *hell*
nieder,* *down, downwards*
das Gut* (es, Güter), *property, possession*
wiederbringen (wieder, p. 141), *to bring back, restore*
die Gewitterwolke (Gewitter, p. 270, Wolke, p. 305), *thunder-cloud*
aus'ſehen, *to look, appear*
an'ziehen (ziehen, p. 282), *to attract*
der Creditbrief* [krĕ-dit'-b.], *letter of credit*
vor'zeigen (zeigen. p. 209) *to produce, exhibit*
an'lachen (lachen, p. 80 , *to smile upon*
indeſſen* [in-dĕs'-sen], *in the mean time, meanwhile*
fort'ſchleppen,* *to drag on, or away*

1. Wirſt du dieſen Brief abſchreiben? 2. Nein, ich ſchreibe ihn nicht ab. 3. Ich ſage es iſt deine Pflicht ihn abzuſchreiben. 4. Karl hat ihn ſchon vor einer Stunde abgeſchrieben. 5. Spricht er dieſes Wort richtig aus? 6. Er ſprach es geſtern vollkommen richtig aus; er weiß auch die Regeln, es richtig auszuſprechen. 7. Er hat es richtig, aber undeutlich ausgeſprochen. 8. Wann wird der Vater ankommen? 9. Er kommt heute nicht an. 10. Er iſt ſchon angekommen. 11. Er kam geſtern Abend an. 12. Er wünſchte nicht zu ſpät anzukommen. 13. Warum gebt ihr mir meine

*Note.*—The following compound verbs occurring in this exercise may be translated easily by taking the prefixes and the verbs separately and comparing the cited passages where the prefix or verb is found: zurück, p. 222, zurückgeben, zurückbringen; her and hin, herauf, hinauf, p. 245 (dahin), herſchicken, hinſchicken, hinauflaufen, heraufkommen, hinausfliegen; anfangen, p. 241 (ankommen); auf, p. 233 (aufrichtig), aufgeben, aufſtehen; ein, p. 177 (Einband), eingehen; feſt, p. 141, feſthalten; wohl, p. 85, gefallen, p. 207; ab, p. 309, abfallen, abgehen.

Feder nicht zurück? 14. Warten Sie gefälligſt noch einen Augenblick; wir werden ſie Ihnen ſogleich zurückgeben. 15. Wann denken Sie das Buch zurückzubringen? 16. Ich habe es ſchon geſtern zurückgebracht. 17. Trink (imperat.) es nur ganz aus, mein Kind; du willſt ja wieder geſund werden. 18. Haſt du es ausgetrunken? 19. Noch nicht; es iſt nicht ſo leicht, dieſe bittere Arznei auszutrinken. 20. Ich trank eine noch bittrere aus. 21. Hat der Buchbinder die Bücher ſchon hergeſchickt? 22. Noch nicht. 23. Schicke ſogleich zu ihm hin. 24. Er lief den Berg hinauf. 25. Er kam die Treppe herauf. 26. Ich durchwanderte das Land. 27. Ich wanderte durch das Land. 28. Er fing an dieſes Gedicht ins Deutſche zu überſetzen. 29. Die Truppen fingen an überzuſetzen, und bald waren ſie auf dem jenſeitigen Ufer. 30. Er hat ſein Haus mit Bäumen umpflanzt. 31. Er hat auch dieſen Baum umgepflanzt. 32. Man hat den Baum mit Stricken umgezogen. 33. Man hat die Stadt mit einem Graben umzogen. 34. Fraß bringt mehr um als das Schwert (Prov). 35. Es ertrinken mehr im Glas (Glaſe) als in allen Waſſern (Prov.). 36. Danken koſtet nichts und gefällt Gott und Menſchen wohl (Prov.). 37. Wegen eines Stückes Fleiſch geben die Hunde die Freundſchaft auf (Prov.). 38. Wenn die Armuth zur Thüre eingeht, fliegt die Liebe zum Tempel hinaus (Prov.). 39. Armuth iſt keine Schande; aber ein leerer Sack ſteht nicht gut aufrecht (Prov.). 40. Aufgeſchoben iſt nicht aufgehoben (Prov.). 41. Wenn die Frucht reif iſt, fällt ſie ab (Prov.). 42. Wer nicht fällt, braucht nicht aufzuſtehen (Prov.). 43. Trägheit geht langſam voran; Armuth holt ſie bald ein (Prov.). 44. Geld ſchließt auch die Hölle auf, aber nicht den Himmel (Prov.). 45. Früh auf und ſpät nieder, || Bringt verlornes Gut wieder (Prov.). 46. Die Leiden ſind wie Gewitterwolken; in der Ferne ſehen ſie ſchwarz aus, über uns kaum grau (J. P. F. Richter). 47. Ein edler Menſch zieht edle Menſchen an und weiß ſie feſtzuhalten (Göthe). 48. Viele Sprachen ſind viele Creditbriefe,—zeige ſie vor, du biſt überall willkommen (v. Hippel). 49. Mancher Mund mag dich anlachen, indeſſen das Herz weint (Heine). 50. Wir müſſen mit der Zeit fortſchreiten, oder die Zeit ſchleppt uns fort (Herder). 51. Dem Lügner drückt die Schande ihr Siegel auf (Brentano).

## 81.

zu'machen* (zu, p. 222, machen, p. 153), *to shut*

mit'theilen* (mit, p. 139 theilen, p. 112), *to communicate*

der'ſelbe, dieſ., dasſ.,* *the same*

an'ziehen (an, p. 241, ziehen, p. 277), *to put on*

die Gewohnheit (wohnen, p. 142), [*habit*

die Luſt* [lüst] (Lüſte), *desire, mind, inclination*

**Luſt haben, to have a mind** (Idiom)

der Regenſchirm* (Regen, p. 270 [shirm]) (–e), *umbrella*

an'wenden (an, p. 151, wenden, p. 336), *to employ*

einzig* (ein, p. 281, zig, p. 248), *single*

der Reiter (reiten, p. 254) (–s), *horseman.*

1. Henry, you (thou) never shut the door. 2. He did not go out yesterday; the weather was too bad. 3. My brother sent me back my

stick this morning. 4. Have 'you returned him the book? 5. Not yet; I wished to return it to him yesterday, but I could not. 6. Have you (thou) copied the letters? 7. I have not yet copied all (of them). 8. Did 'you communicate (perf.) this news to 'your father? 9. I shall communicate it to him this evening. 10. Communicate (2d sing.) it, for it is very important. 11. What dress do you (thou) put on to-day? 12. Do not (2d sing.) put on your (thy) black dress, for your (thy) sister has put on a white one; put on one of the same color. 13. Do you (thou) not get up to-day? It is already very late. 14. You (thou) always get up very late; it (that) is a bad habit. 15. The weather is so fine to-day that I have a mind to take (make) a walk. 16. Please shut (2d sing.) the door. 17. Open (2d sing. aufmachen) the windows! 18. 'Your brother always opens all the doors and the windows. 19. Have 'you sent me back the umbrella? 20. My uncle (ſein) has arrived; I shall communicate to him good news. 21. Have 'you employed your time well? 22. Why has 'your sister not given me back my thimble? 23. You (thou) have employed your time very badly, my little Charles, I see that you have not done (made) a single exercise. 24. Why have you shut all (the) windows? 25. The weather is so fine, let us open them again. 26. Come (thou) here (hither). 27. Do (thou) not go there (thither). 28. Whence do 'you come? 29. Whither are 'you hastening? (Employ in the following sentences her and hin, herab, hinab, heraus, as the sense of the sentence may require.). 30. Go (thou) immediately to the bookbinder. 31. We shall not go down. 32. They came down. 33. The horsemen were coming from the camp. 34. In the greatest haste, we drove to the countess. 35. When did 'you begin the study of the German language? 36. I cannot tell you exactly when I began. 37. We set out at four o'clock in the morning. 38. The sun was rising, and we set out. 39. The sun sets and we will go home.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Ermahnen,** *to admonish, to exhort*; A. S. *manian*, Lat. *monere*, to admonish.

**Fraß,** *immoderate eating, gluttony*, from freſſen (used from animals), *to eat, to devour*; akin to **fret,** to eat *away*, c. of fr=ver (p. 141), and eſſen; A. S. *fretan*, to gnaw, fra=away, and *etan*, to eat.

**umbringen,** *to kill, murder*, lit. to bring *down*; the prefix **um-** denotes *round, about*, and often as in the verb um'bringen, a *down*ward movement=*over, topsy—turvy, down*, thus **um'fallen,** to fall *down*; **um'blaſen,** to blow *down*.

**ertrinken,** *to be drowned*; lit. to perish in water by **drinking** or swallowing too much of it; A. S. *druncnian*.

**leer,** *empty, void*; Prov. Engl. **lear, leer** (Webster). According to Grimm, allied to **leſen** (see Tab. V. 23), *to glean*, **lease** (obs.); hence leer=geleſen=gleaned, i. e. a place from which the fruits (or wood) have been **leased,** plucked off=*empty*.

**Sack, sack** (p. 269); A. S. *sacc*, Gr. *sakkos*: prob. from the Hebr. *sack*.

**aufſchließen,** *to unlock, to* **open**; **auf** here denotes *opening, unclosing*; thus **auf**brechen, to break *open*; **auf**ſein, to be *open*.

**brauchen,** *to use, to want, to need*, A. S. *brucan*, to use, to *bear*, **brook**; Tab. V. 16 and 38.

**voran,** adv. and compounded prefix; c. of **vor=before,** and **an=on,** hence *on before, at the head, in front*, thus voraneilen, *to hasten on before*, vorangehen, *to go before, precede*.

**Hölle, hell,** from Goth. *Halja*, ahd. *Hella*, A. S. *Hell*, the goddess of death.

**nieder,** *down, downwards*; conn. with **nether,** *be*neath, thus **nieder**legen, to lay *down*; **nieder**büden, to bend *downwards*.

**Gut,** *what is* **good,** *what rejoices, property, possessions*,; gut is conn. with old *getzen*, mhd. *ergetzen*, Gr. *getheo*, to rejoice.

**Creditbrief,** *letter of* **credit**; fr. Lat. *credo, to believe, to trust*.

**indeſſen** (also **indeß**), adv. *meanwhile*, conj. *while*, ahd. *innan des*.

**ſchleppen,** *to drag along*, L. Germ. *slepen*, for mhd. *slifen*, to **slip,** p. 309.

**zumachen,** *to shut, to close*. The prefix **zu-, to** denotes: 1. **to,** *at, on, in addition to*; 2. the idea of *shutting*; as rufen, *to call*, zurufen, *to call to* (any one); bekommen, *to get*, zubekommen, *to get in addition to*; arbeiten, *to work*, zuarbeiten, *to work on*; drehen, *to turn*, zudrehen, *to shut by turning*.

**mittheilen,** *to communicate, to impart*; **theilen** (p. 112); **mit** denotes *with, jointly, at the time*; the equivalent Engl. prefix is *com-*; as arbeiten, **mit**arbeiten, *to work jointly*; bieten, *to bid*, **mit**bieten, *to bid at the same time*; bewerben, *to solicit*, **mit**bewerben, *to compete*.

**derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe,** a compound determinative pronoun c. of der and ſelb (with the def. article ſelbe, and without it, ſelber, ſelbe, ſelbes); A. S. **self** (Tab. V. 5) *the same*. It is declined throughout, as if it were two words, **der,** the definitive article, and **ſelbe,** declined like an adjective of the N. Declension, see p. 216, *a*.

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *masc.* | *fem.* | *neut.* | | |
| *N.* | derſelbe | dieſelbe | dasſelbe | dieſelben, | } *the same.* |
| *G.* | desſelben | derſelben | desſelben | derſelben | |
| *D.* | demſelben | derſelben | demſelben | denſelben | |
| *A.* | denſelben | dieſelbe | dasſelbe | dieſelben. | |

**Luſt,** *pleasure, desire,* **lust**; **Luſt** haben, *to have a mind, to desire, to* **list,** A. S. *lystan*, to desire; of the same root is **luſtig,** *merry*, Old Engl. **lusty.**

**Regenſchirm,** *umbrella*; Schirm, *shelter, screen*, from ſchirmen, *to screen, protect*, ahd. *scirman*, to cover with the shield, ahd. *skirm*=shield. Comp. Engl. **skirmish,** Germ. **Scharmützel**; prob. conn. with **screen** by transposition; Tab. V. 37.

**einzig, on*ly***, fr. **ein,** as *only* fr. **one.**

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

geſtern Abend, 327 [327
heute Abend, 327
abſchreiben, 347
abſehen, } 335
Abſicht, }
Achtung, 342
achtzig, 326
alldieweil, 328
allzeit, 331
Angeſicht, 335
anlachen 347 [335
Anſehen, }
von Anſehen, }
anwenden, 348
anziehen, 347, [348
arbeitſam, 342
Art, } 344
artig, }
Aſche, 335
Athem, 332
aufdrücken, 347
aufheben, 347
aufrechtſtehen, [347
aufſchieben, 347
aufſchließen, 347
aufziehen, 331
eine Uhr aufz., [331
Ausſage, } 331
ausſagen }
ausſehen, 347
ausſprechen, 347
austrinken, 347

beantworten 343
behandeln, 335
beſitzen, 333
Beſſerung, 326
betrügen, 331
bewegen, 332
biegen, 328
bieten, 328
bis, 344
Blutsfreund 335
brauchen, 347
brillant, 344
Brille, 344
borgen, 344
büßen, 337

Creditbrief, 347

daneben, 325
Dankwiſſen, 342
derſelbe, 347
deswegen, 342
Dinte, 327
Drama 344 [347
durchwandern,
Dutzend, 338

echt, } 328
Echte, }
Ehe, 328
eher, 326 [335
eigen, }
es iſt mein e. }
Eile, 327
einander, 330
einholen, 347
einmal, 331
einzig, 348
empfinden, 328
enbehren, 344
ermahnen, 347
erſte, 342
ertragen, 342
ertrinken, 347
erwägen, 333
Erziehung, 328

Familie, 338
fechten, 328
Flagge, 344
fließen, 325
fortſchleppen 347
fragen, 331
Fraß, 347
fremd, 329
Freude, 327
ſich freuen, 327
Freundſchaft 330
frieren, 325
fromm, 303
führen, 325

gähren, 329
gänzlich, 343
Gas, 329
gebieten, 328
Gebot, 342
Gebüſch, 325
Geiſt, 329
genießen, 327
Geräuſch, 333
Geruch, 333
Gerücht, 333
Geſchlecht, 328
Geſicht, 334
Geſundſein, 342
Gewicht, 327
Gewitterwolke, [347
Gewohnheit, 348
gießen, 328
Gift, 334
Giſcht, } 329
giſchen, }
Glanz, } 328
glänzen, }
Glas, 328
Glaube, 330
gleißen, 328
glitzern, 328
glühen, 328
gordiſch, 333
grob, 328
gucken, 342
Gut, 347

heißen, (*to be indeed*), 335
hinnen, 344
Hölle, 347
Hülfe, 330
um H. rufen, 330

indeſſen, 347
Jahrmarkt, 342
jenſeitig, 347

Kaufmann, 337
Klima, 327
Knoten, 333
Kraut, 327
Kreis, 325
kriechen, 328
kummervoll, 335

Lebtag, } 331
mein L. }
leer, 347
Lieben, } 325
meine L. }
los, } 329
löſen, }
lügen, 331
Luſt, } 348
L. haben, }

mahlen, 331
Materie, 331
mehrere, 332
mitgenießen, 326
Mitſchüler, 325
Mitte, 335
mittheilen, 348
Mohr, 337 [336
Nachbarſchaft,
Nachwelt, 326
Narr, 342
Natter, 329

ordnen, } 344
Ordnung }
Ort, 336

Pack, }
packen, } 338
Paket, } [333
Pilger, }
Pilgerleben, }
Pſalm, } 333
Pſalter, }
Pulver, 325

Rache, } 334
rächen, }
rauchen, 344
rauſchen, 333
Recht, 331
Rede, }
reden, } 329
redlich, }
Regenſchirm 348
Reiter, 348
ringen nach, 326
Rohr, 325
römiſch, 330
Ruck, } 344
rücken, }

Sack, 347
Sage, 333
ſaufen, 333
ſchaden, 335
ſchändlich, 326
Schar, 328
Schatz, } 329
ſchätzen, }
ſchieben, 325
Schimmer, }
Schimmerlicht }
ſchimmern, }
Schirm 350 [334
Schlachtfeld, 327
Schlag (*sort, kind*), }
ſchlagen nach }
Jemand, }
[328
ſchlemmen, 331
ſchlimm, 337
ſchmieden, 344
Schwart, 344
Seite, } 325
bei S. }
Senat, 333
ſieden, 328
Sopha, 327
Sorgfalt, 325
ſpazieren, } 337
ſpa. gehen, }
Speck, 331
ſpielen, 327
ſprießen, 327
Stiefel, 337
ſtoßen, 333
in Stücke zerreißen, 331
Süden, 325

tadeln, 342
Taſchentuch, 336
Taſchenuhre 331
Taube, 329
Tempel, 347
Thräne, 327
Tinte, 327
Tintenfaß, 325
toll, 333

überſetzen, 347
umbringen, 347
umpflanzen, 347
umwenden, 336
umziehen, 347
undeutlich, 347
ungeſund, 332
unnütz, 342
unredlich, 329
Unternehmung, [330
unverloren, 339

verbieten, 326
verbrennen, 335
verdrießen, 329
verfolgen, 333
Einen vergeben, [333
Verlauf, 327
verlieren, } 329
Verluſt, }
verreiſen, 342
vertragen, 342
viel, 343

vollkommen, 332
vorrücken, 341
Vortheil, 333
vorziehen, } 329
vorzüglich, }
Waare, 325
wägen, 333
weh thun, 335
weil, } 328
Weile, }
wenn auch, 331
wiegen, 325
Wilde, 332
winken, 331
Wittwe, 341
wohin 332
wohl (perhaps),
woran, 337 [341
Wrad, 334
Zeitung, 335
ziemen, } 338
ziemlich, }
zu (prefix), 350
zumachen, 347
zuweilen, 342

ENGLISH-GERMAN.

to abrogate, 347
to ache, 335
adder, 327
to admonish 347
to advance, 343
advantage, 330
aid, 330
to annul, 347
to answer, 343
apart, 326
to appear, 347
to appreciate,
ashes, 335 [326
aside, 326
to atone for, 335
to attract, 347

bacon, 331
bad, 332
battle-field, 327
because, 325
to beckon, 331
to bend, 325
to blame, 342
boot, 336
to borrow, 343
to bow, 325
breath, 332
to be bright, 326
to bring back,
[347
to burn up, 335
bustle, 331

carefulness, 325
to carouse, 331
circle, 325
climate, 327
coarse, 325
command, 342
to communicate
[348
to consider, 330
coppice, 325
to copy, 347
crazy, 330
to creep, 325

to damage, 335
to deceive, 331
to defer, 347
to depart, 342
design, 335
desire, 348
disgraceful, 326
dishonest, 327
to dispense with
dove, 327 [342
down,
downwards, }
dozen, 336 [347
to drag on or
away, 347
drama, 343 [347
to draw round,
to drink out or
up, 347 [347
to be drowned,

immoderate eating, 347
education, 325
eighty, 326
to employ, 348
empty, 347
to endure, 342
to enjoy, 325
enterprise, 330
entirely, 343
esteem, 342
excellent, 327
to exhibit, 347

face, 332, 335
annual fair, 342
faith, 330
family, 336
to feel, 326 [325
fellow-scholar,
to fight, 326
first, 342
flag, 343
to flow, 325
fool, 342
to forbid, 326
foreign, 327
to forge, 342
to freeze, 325

to gamble, 327
generation, 326
the genuine 326
Gordian, 331
to be grateful,
[342
to grieve, 327
to grind, 331
to guide, 325

habit, 348
haste, 327
hell, 347
hence, 342
herb, 327
home, 336
horseman, 348
host, 325
to hurt, 335
[326

improvement,
inclination, 348
indistinct, 347
ink,
inkstand } 325
intention. 335

joy, 325

to kill, 347
knot, 331

laborious, 342
lapse, 327
lard, 331
legend, 330
letter of credit,
[347
to lie (tell a lie)
[331
to look (appear)
[347

mad, 330
manner, 342
matter, 331
meanwhile, 347
merchant, 336
middle, 325
to have a mind,
Moor, 335 [348
[333
neighborhood,
newspaper, 335
noise, 331

to offer, 326
once, 331
one another 330
order,
to order, } 342
to overtake, 347
to own, 330

to pack,
pack, } 338
packet, } [347
to pass across,
to peep 342 [347
to peregrinate,
perfect 332 [333
pilgrim,
earthly p'age, }
place, 336 [347
to plant round,
pocket-handkerchief, 336
poison, 332
to possess, 330
possession, 347
posterity, 326
to postpone, 347
to pour, 325
powder, 325
to precede, 347
to press to or on,
pretty, 336 [347
to produce, 347
to pronounce,
[347
psalm,
psalter, } 333
to pull down,
to push 331 [347
to put on, 348

quite, 332

rather, 326
to recognize 336
reed, 325
to restore, 347
rumor, 330

sack, 347
the same, 348
savage, 332
to seethe, 325
senate, 330
to set over, 347
several, 332
to shove 325
to shut, 348
side, 325
the sight
by sight, } 335
single, 348 [347
to smile upon,
to smoke, 343
sofa, 327
solicitude, 325
sooner, 326
south, 325
species, 342
spectacles, 342
spirit, 327
to sprout, 327
to stand upright,
erect, 347
statement, 331
sward, 342

tear, 327
temple, 347
therefore, 342
thunder-cloud,
till, 342 [347
at times, 342
to tolerate, 342
to translate, 347
to transplant,
to treat, 335 [347
troop, 325
to turn, 336
twice, 332

umbrella, 348
to unlock, 347
unwholesome,
to use, 342 [332
useless, 342

to value, 326
vengeance, 332
to vex, 327
visage, 332
[336
to take a walk,
to want, 347
ware, 325
watch, 331
widow, 343
to wrestle, 326.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 73.

1. Ich bin vor allen unredlichen und ſchlechten Menſchen geflohen. 2. Die Zweige ſind unter dem Gewichte des Schnees gebogen. 3. Er bot für meine Uhre mehr als achtzig Thaler. 4. Als der Frühling wiederkehrte, flogen die Störche über die See. 5. Wilde Vögel ſind nach einem wärmern Klima geflogen. 6. Im Verlaufe von wenigen Jahren (or weniger Jahre) war jener Geiſt geflohen. 7. Es wird heute Nacht nicht frieren; aber es fror vorige Nacht ſehr ſtark. 8. Der Fluß iſt noch nicht gefroren. 9. Er goß herrlichen Wein ins Glas und bot ihn dem Fremden. 10. Das Bier, das er in mein Glas gegoſſen hat, iſt ſauer. 11. Dieſe Leute genoſſen ihr Leben. 12. Es war nicht eine Schlange, die hinter das Gebüſch kroch, ſondern eine Natter. 13. Der Jäger ſchoß, und viele Tauben flogen über das Dach. 14. Wer hat die Thüre geſchloſſen? 15. Der Diener hat ſie um ſechs Uhr geſchloſſen. 16. Haſt du etwas (or ein wenig) Milch für Clara geſotten? 17. Ich habe etwas geſotten. 18. Das Kraut begann zu ſprießen. 19. Die Zweige der Bäume ſind dieſes Jahr früh geſproſſen. 20. Solche Worte verdroſſen meinen Freund. 21. Mein Vetter verlor durch Spielen viel Geld. 22. Wie lange haben Sie auf dem Sopha gelegen? 23. Ich lag nicht darauf. 24. Sie haben dieſe Waare noch nicht gewogen. 25. Viele Thränen floſſen von ihren Augen, als ſie vom Tode ihrer Mutter hörte. 26. Ein kleiner Vogel flog in mein Fenſter. 27. Der Feind floh, als unſere Armee vordrang. 28. Die Störche ſind ſchon übers Meer in wärmere Länder geflogen. 29. Der Bach war dieſen (heute) Morgen gefroren. 30. Napoleon floh vom Schlachtfelde bei Waterloo in großer Eile[1] und verlor ſein Schwert und ſeinen Hut.

1. Adverbial expressions denoting manner are preceded by every other adverbial expression.

## 75.

1. Sie kamen geſtern Abend ein wenig (or etwas) ſpät. 2. Als der Jäger kam, ſprang der Haſe über die Mauer. 3. Die Gräfin rief ihre Magd, aber ſie kam nicht. 4. Wohin gingen Sie heute Morgen mit ihrem Vetter? 5. Wir gingen zur Kirche. 6. Wilhelm iſt ſchon gegangen. 7. Früher kam er zweimal die Woche, jetzt kommt er nur einmal. 8. Als ich ins Theater ging, ſtieß ich mit dem Fuße an einen Stein, ſo daß ich ihn kaum bewegen konnte. 9. Das Mädchen lief zu ihrer Mutter und ſagte ihr, was geſchehen war. 10. Cicero ging aus Rom, als er ſah, daß ſeine Feinde mächtiger als ſeine Freunde waren. 11. Ich habe Sie mehreremal gerufen; doch Sie antworteten mir nicht. 12. Ich ſtieß ihn bei Seite und rann (lief) ins (in das) andere Zimmer. 13. Nächſt ihm ſaßen zwei kleine Kinder, und ein Hund lag zu ihren Füßen. 14. Ein Fremder hat mich betrogen. 15. Unſer Wein hat ſchon gegohren. 16. Wer lügt, ſtiehlt. 17. Er log mir ins Geſicht. 18. Wenn das Bier nicht vollkommen gegohren hat, iſt es ungeſund. 19. Der Wilde ſog das Gift aus der Wunde des weißen Mannes. 20. Der Räuber ſchwor (some prefer ſchwur) Rache. 21. Er hat das Holz in Stücke gehauen. 22. Gingen Sie heute oder geſtern Abend zu ihnen? 23. Ich ging heute Morgen; aber ich fand ſie nicht zu Hauſe. 24. Verſteht Ihr Bruder deutſch? 25. Er verſtand und ſprach es vollkommen, als er vor drei Jahren von Deutſchland zurückkehrte. 26. Standen die Blumen auf dem Tiſche? 27. Nein, ſie ſtanden auf der Erde, aber ich ſtellte ſie auf den Tiſch. 28. Ich rief ſie mit lauter Stimme, aber ſie kam nicht. 29. Ich bin ſehr ſchnell gelaufen, und jetzt bin ich ganz außer Athem.

## 77.

1. Ich ſah heute Morgen, als ich ſpazieren ging, Ihre Tante; aber ſie kannte mich nicht. 2. Euer Bruder hat mich an meiner Stimme erkannt. 3. Mein

Vater hat den Sohn Ihrer Freundin nicht gekannt. 4. Du haſt eine ſehr gute That gethan. 5. Was hat man Ihnen gethan? 6. Man hat mir nichts gethan. 7. Wer hat dieſe Bücher gebracht? 8. Ein Mann, den ich nicht kannte, brachte ſie. 9. Es iſt zu ſpät; ich habe ihr ſchon meinen Brief geſandt. 10. Der Lehrer hatte kaum den Rücken gewandt, als alle faulen Schüler nach Hauſe liefen (or rannten). 11. Er wandte das Blatt um und las die folgende Geſchichte. 12. Wann brachte der Schuhmacher meine Stiefel? 13. Er brachte ſie heute Morgen. 14. Die ganze Straße brannte. 15. Der Kaufmann hat ein Paket geſandt. 16. Ich habe daran nicht gedacht. 17. Ich hoffe, ich habe Ihnen nicht wehe gethan. 18. Haben Sie nach einem Arzte geſandt? 19. Meine Mutter hat mir ein Dutzend feine ſeidne Taſchentücher gekauft. 20. Sie brachte ſie geſtern nach Hauſe. 21. Der Diener hat Ihr Mittagsmahl gebracht. 22. An wen denken Sie jetzt? 23. Ich dachte an meine Eltern. 24. Warum liefen ſo viele Leute geſtern Abend auf der Königsſtraße? 25. Es war ein Feuer da; Herrn N's Buchladen brannte. 26. Jene Kinder nannten meinen Namen; kennſt du ſie? 27. Ich kenne ſie nicht, und ſie kannten dich nicht; ſie nannten den Namen eines Mannes, der hier in der Nachbarſchaft wohnt. 28. Das Pferd brach den Wagen und rannte in des Generals Garten (or in den Garten des Generals). 29. Verſtanden jene Damen franzöſiſch oder italieniſch? 30. Sie verſtanden weder franzöſiſch, noch italieniſch; es waren deutſche Damen und verſtanden und ſprachen ziemlich gut engliſch. 31. Nannte er den Preis des Buches? 32. Er verlangte dafür fünf Thaler. 33. Kannten Sie Jemanden in dem Orte? 34. Ich kannte Niemanden dort. 35. Brannten Sie vorigen Winter Holz oder Kohlen? 36. Wir brannten Kohlen. 37. Er gab mir den Namen des Fremden; aber ich habe ihn wieder vergeſſen. 38. Wir haben oft an die Vergnügungen gedacht, die wir in ſeiner Familie hatten.

## 79.

1. Mein Vater ließ dieſer armen Wittwe ein Dutzend Hemden machen. 2. Die Knaben haben nicht arbeiten wollen. 3. Ich habe viel ſprechen müſſen. 4. Sie haben dieſen Kuchen nie gemocht. 5. Sie konnte Engliſch, Deutſch, Franzöſiſch und Italieniſch. 6. Sie dürfen es wiſſen; ich gehe ins Theater. 7. Sie haben ſpazieren gehen dürfen. 8. Ich habe meinen Schuhmacher kommen laſſen. 9. Ich habe einen neuen Rock machen laſſen. 10. Meine Mutter hat mich das machen (or thun) laſſen. 11. Er hat das Regiment vorrücken laſſen. 12. Wir haben nichts borgen mögen. 13. Du ſollſt nicht ſtehlen. 14. Mein Vetter hat Ihren Brief nicht beantworten können (or hat auf Ihren Brief nicht antworten können). 15. Können Sie tanzen? 16. Ich habe früher (or ehedem) tanzen können, aber ich kann jetzt nicht mehr tanzen. 17. Haben Sie deutſch ſprechen können? 18. Ja, ich habe es ein wenig ſprechen können; jetzt habe ich es gänzlich vergeſſen. 19. Der Buchbinder hat Ihre Bücher binden wollen; warum haben Sie ihn ſie (better dieſelben) nicht binden laſſen? 20. Ich will ſie von ihm nicht binden laſſen. 21. Warum haben Sie ihn die Flagge tragen laſſen? 22. Wir haben es thun müſſen. 23. Sie haben nicht rauchen dürfen. 24. Wann wird der Lehrer uns ein deutſches Drama leſen laſſen? 25. Sie werden nicht ſo oft ſchreiben mögen. 26. Er hat es leſen können. 27. Wir mußten geſtern zu Hauſe bleiben. 28. Sie haben es nicht verſtehen können. 29. Er hat gehen müſſen. 30. Wir wollten verreiſen, aber wir konnten nicht. 31. Sie wird kommen können. 32. Der Buchhändler wollte uns das Buch nicht ſchicken, aber er hat gemußt; er hat es ſchicken müſſen. 33. Sie wollten die Arbeit vollenden, aber ſie haben nicht gekonnt; ſie haben die Arbeit nicht vollenden können. 34. Sie haben die Arbeit vollenden müſſen.

## 81.

1. Heinrich, du machſt nie (or niemals) die Thüre zu. 2. Er ging geſtern nicht aus; das Wetter war zu ſchlecht. 3. Mein Bruder ſchickte mir heute Morgen meinen Stock zurück. 4. Haben Sie ihm das Buch zurückgegeben (or wieder gegeben)? 5. Noch nicht; ich wollte es ihm geſtern wiedergeben (or zurückgeben), aber ich konnte nicht. 6. Haſt du die Briefe abgeſchrieben? 7. Ich habe noch nicht alle abgeſchrieben. 8. Haben Sie dieſe Neuigkeit Ihrem Vater mitgetheilt? 9. Ich werde ſie ihm heute Abend mittheilen. 10. Theile ſie mit; denn ſie iſt ſehr wichtig. 11. Welches (or was für ein) Kleid ziehſt du heute an? 12. Zieh nicht dein ſchwarzes Kleid an, denn deine Schweſter hat ein weißes angezogen; zieh eins von derſelben Farbe an. 13. Stehſt du heute nicht auf? es iſt ſchon ſehr ſpät. 14. Du ſtehſt immer ſehr ſpät auf; das iſt eine ſehr ſchlechte (or böſe) Gewohnheit. 15. Das Wetter iſt heute ſo ſchön, daß ich ſpazieren zu gehen (or einen Spaziergang zu machen) Luſt habe. 16. Mache gefälligſt die Thüre zu. 17. Mache die Fenſter auf. 18. Ihr Bruder macht immer alle Thüren und Fenſter auf. 19. Haben Sie mir den Regenſchirm zurückgeſchickt? 20. Mein Onkel iſt angekommen; ich werde ihm eine gute Neuigkeit mittheilen. 21. Haben Sie Ihre Zeit gut angewandt (or angewendet)? 22. Warum hat Ihre Schweſter mir nicht meinen Fingerhut zurückgegeben? 23. Du haſt deine Zeit ſehr ſchlecht angewandt (or angewendet), mein kleiner Karl, ich ſehe, daß du nicht eine einzige Aufgabe gemacht haſt. 24. Warum habt ihr alle Fenſter zugemacht? 25. Das Wetter iſt ſo ſchön, laßt ſie uns wieder aufmachen. 26. Komm (not so good komme) hierher. 27. Geh (not so good gehe) nicht dorthin. 28. Woher kommen Sie? 29. Wohin eilen Sie? 30. Geh ſogleich (or gleich, bald) zum Buchbinder hin. 31. Wir werden nicht hinabgehen. 32. Sie kamen herab. 33. Die Reiter kamen vom Lager her. 34. In der größten Eile fuhren wir zur Gräfin hin. 35. Wann fingen Sie das Studium der deutſchen Sprache an? 36. Ich kann nicht genau ſagen, wann ich anfing. 37. Wir reiſten um vier Uhr des Morgens ab. 38. Die Sonne ging auf, und wir reiſten ab. 39. Die Sonne geht unter, und wir wollen nach Hauſe gehen.

## [59.] THE MOODS.

*Introductory Remarks.*

The speaker can express his thoughts in a four-fold manner; hence, we distinguish four **Moods** or manners of speech (*moods* fr. Lat. *modi*, manners, modes):

1. The **Indicative** (Lat. *indicare*, to express or *indicate* absolutely), that is the mood by which the speaker presents a thought as his own and agreeing with *reality*, either in the form of an assertion or of a question; as der Friede ernährt, *peace nourishes*, (promotes prosperity); Ernährt auch der Unfriede? *does discord nourish too?*

2. The **Subjunctive** (or **Conjunctive**), that is the mood by which the speaker expresses for the most part the thought of *another* or of himself, but merely as *possible*, as a *wish*, a *doubt*, etc.

It is called *subjunctive* or *conjunctive* (from the Latin *subjungere*, to subjoin, or *conjungere*, to connect) because this form of speech is generally employed in a clause dependent upon the principal one introducing the person whose words are quoted).

3. The **Conditional** (from the Latin *conditio*, condition), that is the mood in which the speaker presents his own thought as *not* corresponding to reality, but merely as an *assumed fact*, making it a *condition*, to which he joins a *consequence*, which also stands in the conditional; as Wenn die Erde eine Scheibe wäre, könnte man ihr Ende erreichen, *If the earth were a disk, its end could be reached.*

4. The **Imperative** (Latin *imperare*, to command), that is the mood, by which the speaker expresses a *command*, a *desire*, or *entreaty*; as Gib mir das Buch, *give me the book*; O hilf mir! *O help me!*

## THE IMPERATIVE.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. **Gib** (!) dem Kinde einen Apfel, | *Give an apple to the child.* |
| 2. } **Hole** das Glas des Kindes. } **Hol** es gleich. | *Fetch the glass of the child.* *Fetch it immediately.* |
| 3. **Iß** Brod und **trink** Wasser. | *Eat bread and drink water.* |
| 4. **Sei** so gut, und **reiche** mir das Salz. | *Be so good, as to hand me the salt.* |
| 5. **Seien Sie** so gütig, und **geben** Sie mir das Glas. | *Be so kind, as to give me the glass.* |
| 6. **Öffnen Sie doch** die Thür. | **Pray,** *open the door.* |
| 7. **Schreiben Sie** mir **doch** bald. | **Do** *write to me soon.* |
| 8. } **Lerne ja** deine Aufgabe. } **Lern** es gut. | **Be sure** *to learn your lesson.* *Learn it well.* |
| 9. **Liebet** eure Nächsten. | *Love your fellow-men.* |
| 10. **Sieh** das Kind. | *See the child.* |
| 11. **Sprich** die Wahrheit. | *Speak the truth.* |
| 12. **Bringen Sie** mir das Geld. | *Bring me the money.* |
| 13. Ich schweige, **rede du** jetzt. | *I am silent, speak now.* |
| 14. **Lies,** Flora! **Schreibt,** Kinder! | *Read, Flora! write, children.* |

*Observations.*—1. The German verb has an *imperative form* only for the second pers. sing. and plur., since a direct command, request, warning, prohibition, etc., is generally directed to the person spoken to. Hence, the *imperative* is formed from *the second pers. sing.* of present indicative by cutting off **eſt** or **ſt** and adding to the verbs of the *weak conjugation* **e**, which originally was not the case with the *strong* verbs, but now grows more and more into general use.

2. The *imperative* has the ending **e** with the strong verbs when in the present indicative no change of the radical vowel takes place; as of

| *Infinitive.* | *Pres. Indicat.* | *Imperative.* |
|---|---|---|
| beginnen, | du beginnſt, | beginne; |
| bitten, | du bitteſt, | bitte; |
| ſchreiben, | du ſchreibſt, | ſchreibe. |

In ordinary conversation, however, this final **e** is not sounded, and in writing is often replaced by an apostrophe, as ſchreib' for ſchreibe. But it is regularly dropped when the word following begins with a vowel; M. S. 2, 8.

3. In those strong verbs, that have their radical vowel merely modified in the 2d and 3d pers. sing., of present indic., the vowel remains unmodified in the imperative; as of halten (du hältſt), Imp. halt; of laufen (du läufſt), Imp. lauf.

| *Infinitive.* | *Pres. Indicat.* | *Imperative.* |
|---|---|---|
| ſchlafen, | du ſchläfſt, | ſchlaf;* |
| laufen, | du läufſt, | lauf;* |
| fallen, | du fällſt, | fall.* |

4. In the case of those strong verbs which in the 2d and 3d pers. sing. pres. indic., change **e** into **i** or **ie**, the final **e** is *always* dropped; as

| *Infinitive.* | *Pres. Indic.* | *Imperative.* |
|---|---|---|
| leſen, *to read*, | du lieſeſt, | lies; |
| geben, *to give*, | du gibſt, | gib; |
| eſſen, *to eat*, | du iſſeſt, | iß; |
| ſprechen, *to speak*, | du ſprichſt, | ſprich. |

5. In speaking conventionally, the *third person plural* (Sie) is used in place of the 2d pers. sing. or plural. In this case the subject **Sie** is never omitted and follows the verb, whilst the subject **du** or **ihr** is generally suppressed, or rather confounded with the verb; M. S. 5, 6, 7, 12, 1, 2, 3, 4, 9. In emphatic language the subject du, ihr, or some proper name is used; M. S. 13, 14.

6. Accented **ja**, in connection with an imperative, strengthens the injunction conveyed by the latter; M. S. 8, Kommen Sie **ja** morgen, **be sure** *to come to-morrow*

7. **doch**, after an imperative, is used to express a *request*, rather than a command; M. S. 6, 7, Geben Sie mir **doch** jenes Buch, **do** (or **pray**) *give me that book*; compare p. 275 (doch).

8. The imperative forms of the auxiliaries haben, ſein and werden, and of the two auxiliaries of mood, wollen and laſſen and the verb wiſſen are irregular.

IMPERATIVE.

| **haben** | **ſein** | **werden** | **wollen** | **laſſen** | **wiſſen** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| habe, | ſei, | werde, | wolle, | laß, | wiſſe, |
| habet, | ſeid, | werdet, | wollet, | laſſet, | wiſſet, |
| haben Sie, | ſeien Sie, | werden Sie, | wollen Sie, | laſſen Sie, | wiſſen Sie. |

## 82.

die Peſt*[pĕst], *pest*
der Nächſte[nāɪʏ'-stᵉ] (–n) (p. 278), *neighbor*
die Cigarre*[tsɪ-gär'-rᵉ](–n), *cigar*
gütig[gēē'-tɪʏ] (gut), *good, kind*
die Schrift* (–en), *writing*
heilig*[hɪ'-lɪʏ"], *holy, sacred*
die Erfüllung*[ᵉr-fɪl'-lūnk], *fulfilment*
der Mennonit*[mĕ-nō-nēt'] *Mennonite*
die Kanzel*[kän'-tsᵉl] (–n), *pulpit*
die Predigt(predigen, p. 275) *sermon*

*Better than the usual ſchlafe, laufe, falle.

Amen*[ah'-m$^{e}$n], *Amen*
heimlich*[hım'-lĭy], *private, secret,* and adv.
verjagen (jagen, p. 280) *to drive away, turn out*
die Ebene (eben, p. 232) (-n), *plane, plain*
junges Blut, *a youth* (lit. a young [blood
verpfänden*[f$^{e}$r-pfän'-d$^{e}$n], *to pawn, to pledge*
das Reiſegeld, *money for travel-* [*ling*
vertrauen (Vertrauen, p. 299), *to trust, to confide*
entfliehen (fliehen, p. 240, see p. 207), *to escape, to slip by*
die Sicherheit*[zĭ'-ver-hĭt], *security, safety*
der Wink (winken, p. 331), *wink*, fig. *hint, advice*
zeitig (Zeit, p. 182), *betimes, early*
nutzen[nü'-ts$^{e}$n], *to make use of, to turn to profit*
einſtehen*[ein, p. 177, ſtehen, p. 239) *to persist, to continue*
die Zunge (p. 201), *tongue* (here of a balance)
leiden (Leid, p. 264), *to suffer*
triumphieren*[trĭ"-üm-fe'-r$^{e}$n], *to triumph*
das Paar[pahr] (-e), *pair*
beklagen[b$^{e}$-klah'-g$^{e}$n] *to complain, lament*
eigen (p. 263), *own*
**zu eigen machen,** *to make a thing one's own* (Idiom)
verſchweigen (ſchweigen, p. 305), *to be silent about, say nothing of*
ermeſſen (meſſen, p. 253), *to infer, conclude, consider*
zween* (monosyllabic, tsvän), *two.*

1. Flieh die Gemeinheit; ſie iſt eine Peſt für die Seele. 2. Geben Sie dem Pferde den Hafer oder das Heu. 3. Bringen Sie ihm gefälligſt das Glas. 4. Bring es mir zurück. 5. Liebet euren Nächſten. 6. Kommen Sie, meine Damen. 7. Erzählen Sie mir die Geſchichte noch einmal. 8. Sei ſo gut, und bring mir eine gute Cigarre. 9. Seien Sie ſo gütig, Herr Profeſſor, und leihen Sie mir für heute Leſſings Werke. 10. Seid ſtill, Kinder! 11. Haben Sie die Güte, und bringen Sie mir mein Abendbrod. 12. Seid fleißiger, und lernt eure Aufgaben beſſer. 13. Schreiben Sie beſſer, lieber Freund; Ihre Schrift iſt noch ſehr ſchlecht. 14. Nichts ſei dir heiliger, als die Erfüllung eines Verſprechens. 15. Kommen Sie oft, lieber Freund, Sie ſind immer ſehr willkommen. 16. Öffnen Sie gefälligſt die Thüre. 17. Kinder zerbrechet nicht dieſes Glas; es iſt ſehr koſtbar. 18. Bitte, (ſor ich bitte) geben Sie mir etwas Brod und Käſe. 19. Bring du mir eine gute Cigarre, und geh du und hole eine Flaſche Wein. 20. Sprich, wie du denkſt und fühlſt. 21. Peter der Große wünſchte eine kurze Predigt zu hören. Der Mennonit Calf beſtieg die Kanzel und ſprach: Denke gut, ſprich gut, und handle gut. Amen! 22. Den Freund ſtrafe heimlich, lobe ihn öffentlich (Prov.). 23. Dem Armen hilf, den Bettler verjag (Prov.). 24. Lobe die Berge und bleib in der Ebene (Prov.). 25. Bete und arbeite (Prov.). 26. Junges Blut, || Spar dein Gut, || Armuth im Alter wehe thut (Prov.). 27. Iß, was gar iſt; || Trink, was klar iſt; || Sprich, was wahr iſt (Prov.). 28. Eile mit Weile (Prov.). 29. Schicke keinen Hund nach Fleiſch, und verpfände nicht das Lamm dem Wolfe (Prov.). 30. Geh treu und redlich durch die Welt, || Das iſt das beſte Reiſegeld (Prov.). 31. Erſt

ſteh auf dich und die Deinen, dann ſchilt mich und die Meinen (Werner). 33. Suchet und ihr werdet finden (Bibel). 34. Dem treuen Freund vertraue deine Sorgen (Schiller). 35. Brich die Roſen, wenn ſie blühen, || Morgen iſt nicht heut. || Keine Stunde laß entfliehen; || Flüchtig iſt die Zeit (Gleim). 36. Die Sicherheit droht dir den Fall; || Drum wache ſtets, wach überall! (Gellert).

Geh', gehorche meinen Winken,
Nutze deine jungen Tage,
Lerne zeitig klüger ſein!
Auf des Glückes großer Wage
Steht die Zunge ſelten ein.

Du mußt ſteigen oder ſinken,
Du mußt herrſchen und gewinnen,
Oder dienen und verlieren,
Leiden oder triumphieren,
Amboß oder Hammer ſein. (Göthe).

## Drei Paare und Einer.

von Fr. Rückert.

Du haſt zwei Ohren und Einen Mund,
Willſt du's beklagen?—
Gar Vieles ſollſt du hören, und
Wenig darauf ſagen.

Du haſt zwei Augen und einen Mund,
Mach' dir's zu eigen!
Gar Manches ſollſt du ſehen, und
Manches verſchweigen.

Du haſt zwei Hände und Einen Mund,
Lern' es ermeſſen!
Zween ſind zur Arbeit, und
Einer zum Eſſen.

## 83.

das Wörterbuch (p. 200, Wort), *dictionary*

zurückkehren (zurück, p. 222, kehren, p. 308), *to return*

ſonſt*[zönst], *else, otherwise*

das Andenken (an, p. 241, denken, p. 114), *remembrance, keepsake*

**zum Andenken, for remembrance** [*tionally*

abſichtlich (Abſicht, p. 335), *inten-*

vergeben (ver-, p. 141, geben, p. 209), *to forgive*

übermeſſen[ēē'-b$^{e}$r-m.] *to measure twice* [*plain*

anklagen (klagen, p. 358), *to com-*

melken (Milch, p. 145), *to milk a cow* [(Idiom!)

**laß mich gehen** / **laß mich in Ruhe** } *let me alone*

die Unwahrheit (Wahrheit, p. 222), *untruth*

hageln (Hagel, p. 202), *to hail*

ängſtlich*['äng'-stliy], *anxious, alarmed*, and adv.

1. Come (2d sing.) and eat a little, here is (some) fresh bread and good butter. 2. Go to 'your aunt, and tell her this good news. 3. Be so kind as to reach me (say, and reach me) that book. 4. Look, (thou) pol. f.—polite (or conventional) form, p. 357, 5.) that little boy takes 'your dictionary. 5. Do (2d sing.) not take it; give me the book and then take (bringen) it to your teacher. 6. Do not (2d sing.) speak so slowly, my child. 7. Speak (2d plur.) louder, boys! 8. Please speak (pol. f.) a little louder 9. You (thou) do not hold your pen well, my child; hold it thus. 10. Do (thou) not be lazy. 11. When 'you return, please

bring 'your sister along (mit). 12. Our coachman drives (fahren) too fast, tell (thou) him to (say, he shall) drive somewhat (a little) slower. 13. Let us go home; the clock has just struck nine. 14. Blow your (thy) soup a little, William, else (sonst) you will burn your (say, to thee the) mouth. 15. Do (2d plur.) not go on the ice, it will crack (bersten); it is cracked already. 16. Help (2d sing.) me to (!!!) break (zerbrechen) these pieces (of) ice. 17. Please recommend (pol. f.) me to 'your sister, and give her this ring for a (zum) keepsake. 18. Do not (2d sing.) scold the poor girl; she has not done it intentionally. 19. Do (pray), (pol. f.) eat some of this cake; I have brought it for 'you. 20. Give us our daily bread and forgive us our trespasses (debt in sing.). 21. Do (pray) (2d sing.) not tread upon the flowers. 22. Go (2d sing.) and measure your grain twice (say, over), before you accuse a man. 23. Tell (2d sing.) the servant (fem.) (say, she shall) to milk the cow and to bring in (!!) the fresh milk. 24. She tells me, that she has[4] already[1] milked[3] all (the) cows.[2] 25. Let (2d sing.) me alone; I have no mind to go out at present; my parents have gone out and I have to (say, I must) stay in the house (zu Hause). 26. Never swear (2d sing.), a good boy never says an untruth. 27. Shut (zumachen (pol. f.) all the doors and windows; it will immediately commence to hail. 28. Do (2d sing.) not bend my stick, John; and do not forget, that you have already broken one. 29. Be sure (pol. f.) to write soon; we are anxiously waiting for news (p. 246) from home. 30. Dear friend, do (pol f.) (pray) stay with (bei) us till to-morrow. 31. Stay (2d sing.) with us; it is getting (werden) dark already. 32. Listen (2d sing.), how the wind whistles through the trees.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Pest, pest**; fr. Lat. *pestis*, a contagious disease.

**Cigarre, cigar,** Sp. *cigarro*, a kind of tobacco in Cuba.

**Schrift,** *writing, something written,* **script, scripture,** fr. schreiben, p. 240.

**heilig, holy,** *sacred,* A. S. *halig—hal,* sound, whole; see heilsam, p. 153, and heilen, p. 198.

**Erfüllung,** *ful***fil***ment, accomplishment,* fr. **erfüllen,** *to* **fill,** *make* **full,** *ful***fil,** A. S. *fyllan.*

**Mennonit, Mennonite,** a Christian sect, named from *Mennon,* the founder.

**Kanzel,** *pulpit,* **chancel,** the part of a church (formerly) enclosed with lattices, Lat. *cancelli,* lattices.

**Amen, Amen,** *so be it, be it true, established,* from Hebrew.

**heimlich,** *private, familiar, secret* (adj. and adv.), **homely,** c. of **heim** (heimwärts, p. 278), and lich.

**verpfänden,** *to* **pawn,** *to pledge,* c. of ver- and pfänden, to take as a pledge, security, **pawn, Pfand,** prob. from Old Fr. *pan,* a thing seized or taken away; Fr. *paner,* to take away. Tab V. 2.

**Sicherheit, securi***ty*, *safety*; **ſicher, secure**, ahd. *sichur*, Old Engl. **sicker**, fr. Lat. *securus*,—*without care*, safe, confident; Lat. *se*, for *sine*=without, *cura*, care.

**einſtehen**=inneſtehen, *to per***sist**, *to continue*, c. of ein, *here*=inne, *with***in**, and ſtehen, to stand between both (*immutably*).

**triumphieren**, *to triumph*, Lat. *triumphare*, *to celebrate* a victory with pomp, *to be prosperous*; akin to Gr. *thriambos*, a hymn to *Bacchus*.

**Paar, pair**, prop. two things *equal*; Lat. *par*, equal.

**ſonſt, else, or else**, ahd. *sus*, mhd. *sust*, and later *sunst*, hence the n and t are a later insertion and addition, as often with n and t (Tab. V. 33, 34). The orig. *sus*=A. S. and Engl. **thus**; Low Germ. still at present *sus* =*so* and=*else*.

**ängſtlich, anxi***ous*, *alarmed*, fr. Angſt=Ang-ſt (on ſt, see p. 176, Fürſt)= eng, *narrow*, *close*, *tight*; thus **anger**, lit. *pressure*, *oppression*, A. S. *ange*, trouble; Lat. *angustus*, narrow, pinching, and *augustia*, strait, distress.

## PLACE OF THE VERB IN THE DEPENDENT SENTENCE.

*Introductory Remarks.*

1. When two or more sentences are so related to each other as to express one thought, they form a **Compound Sentence.**

2. When the single sentences forming this unity are in a measure independent of each other, viz., each perfectly intelligible by itself, they are termed, **Co-ordinate Sentences**, as: das Leben iſt kurz; die Kunſt iſt lang, *life is short*; *art is long*.

3. Two or more sentences, however, may be so related to each other that one, not being intelligible by itself, depends on another, or rather enters with the character of a *member* into the structure of another, to which it serves either as a *subject*, *predicate*, *object*, *attribute*, or *circumstance*. Such a sentence is called a **Subordinate** or **Dependent Sentence**, as:

We see—*his laziness* } Object in the simple sentence,
We see—*that he is lazy* } Objective sentence in the comp. sentence.

*His laziness*—is seen } Subject in the simple sentence,
*That he is lazy*—is seen } Subjective sentence in the comp. sentence.

The—*cautious*—man may also be brave } Attribute in the simple Sentence,
The man—*who is cautious*—may also be brave } Attribute Sentence in the comp. Sent.

Man becomes—*dust again* } Predicate in the S. Sentence,
Man becomes,—*what he has been before* } Predicate Sen. in the comp. S.

God is with us—*everywhere* } Circumstance in the S. Sen.
God is with us,—*wherever we may be* } Circumstantial Sentence in the comp. Sentence.

**Dependent Sentences** must be regarded, therefore, as *Substantives*, *Adjectives* or *Adverbs*, expanded into a sentence. Accordingly, there are three classes of *Dependent Sentences*, viz:

SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES, ADJECTIVE SENTENCES, ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

4. In opposition to the *dependent sentence*, that part of the compound sentence which requires the dependent one as an adjunct or complement, is called the **Principal Sentence**, as in: We see that he is lazy;

We see=*Principal Sentence*, and its object,
that he is lazy=*Dependent Sentence*.

5. The relation of the *dependent sentence* to the *principal one* is expressed by **subordinating connectives**, which are:

1. *Subordinating Conjunctions*,
2. *Relative Adverbs*,
3. *Relative Pronouns*.

## [60.] A.—CONJUNCTIONS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1.—*a.* Es **iſt** heute ſehr ſtürmiſch. | *It is very stormy to-day.* |
| *b.* **Ich kann** nicht ausgehen, weil es heute ſehr ſtürmiſch **iſt.** | *I cannot go out to-day, because it is very stormy.* |
| *c.* Weil es heute ſehr ſtürmiſch **iſt, kann ich** nicht ausgehen. | *Because it is very stormy to-day, I cannot go out.* |

*Note.*—The Germans separate the subordinate sentences from the principal, or from each other, by *commas*, but not the adverbial terms in the principal sentence.

| | |
|---|---|
| 2.—*a.* Er **kommt** heute nicht. | *He does not come to-day.* |
| *b.* **Ich werde** ihm ſchreiben, wenn er heute nicht **kommt.** | *I shall write to him, if he does not come to-day.* |
| *c.* Wenn er heute nicht **kommt, werde ich** ihm ſchreiben. | *If he does not come to-day, I shall write to him.* |
| 3.—*a.* Heinrich **trat ein,** und ich **hörte** zu ſchreiben **auf.** | *Henry entered, and I ceased writing.* |
| *b.* Als Heinrich **eintrat, hörte** ich zu ſchreiben **auf.** | *When Henry entered, I ceased writing.* |
| *c.* Als ich zu ſchreiben **aufhörte,** trat Heinrich ein. | *When I ceased writing, Henry entered.* |

*Observations.*—1. The dependent sentence requires the finite or personal verb at the end; M. S. 1, 2, 3 (*b. c.*).

2. The principal proposition, if a subordinate precedes, begins with the verb, for (according to p. 361, 3.) each subordinate proposition serves to replace a member of the principal, so that inversion must take place (p. 278, 2.). Thus the phrase:

is equivalent to:

Weil du träge biſt, *because you are idle,*
Wegen deiner Trägheit *on account of your idleness*

} tadelt man dich, *people blame you.*

3. The *Relatives* (pronouns and adverbs), and most of the *Conjunctions* are subordinative, and consequently send the verb to the end of the proposition.

4. **Pure Co-ordinative Conjunctions** are only the following seven:

aber, allein, ſondern } *but*
denn, *for*
und, *and*
oder, *or*
ſowohl, als auch, *as well as, both—and*

5. The principal **Subordinative Conjunctions** are:

als, *when, as, than*
bis, *till, until*
da, *as* (reason), *since*
daß, *that*
auf daß, damit } *that, in order that*
ehe, bevor } *before*
falls, wofern, wiefern, dafern } *if, in case that*
indem, *while, since*
je—je, je—deſto } *the—the*
nachdem, *after*
je nachdem, *according as*
nun, *now*
ob, *if, whether*
obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, obzwar } *although*
ſeit, *since*
ſeitdem, *from the time that*
ſo, *so, thus*
ſo oft als, *whenever*
ſo lange als, *as long as, while*
ſo weit als, *as far as*
ungeachtet, *although, notwithstanding*
während, *whilst, while*
wenn, *if, when*
wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn ſchon } *although.*

VERSE TO HELP THE MEMORY.

**All Dependent Clauses send**
**Their finite verb to the end;**
They begin with pronouns or adverbs relative
And the following conjunctions subordinative:
Daß, auf daß, da, damit, dafern,
Weil, während, wenn, wie, wiefern, wofern,
Wie auch, wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn ſchon, wie wohl,
Je—je, je—deſto, obgleich, obſchon, obwohl,
Je nachdem, nachdem, ſeit, ſeitdem,
Nun, ehe, bis, bevor, indem,
So, ſobald als, ſo lange als, ſo weit als,
Gleich wie, and ungeachtet, ob, als and falls.

6. Besides the seven *pure* co-ordinative conjunctions, there are many adverbs used as connecting words, which affect the structure of the sentence only in the manner of adverbs, viz., if they are placed first, they invert the order of the verb and its subject (p. 278, 2). Comp. Karl[1] ging[2] **erſt**, und Heinrich folgte, *Charles went first, and Henry followed*; but, **Erſt** ging[2] Karl,[1] und Heinrich folgte.

*Advice to the Student.*—The student is emphatically reminded to pay his full attention to the list of conjunctions given in §5; a thorough familiarity with them is of great consequence, as they essentially affect the structure of the sentence, throwing the finite verb to the end of the clause.

7. The prefix of a separable compound verb is removed to the end of the clause in *principal sentences* (see p. 245, 2, þ). In dependent clauses, on the contrary, the prefix keeps its place before the verb, the verb taking the last place in the sentence; M. S. 3.

## 84.

der Bewohner (wohnen, p. 142)(-s), *inhabitant*
Gallien*[gäl'-li$^{e}$n] (-s), *Gaul*,
Cäſar[tsä'-zär], *Cæsar*,
erobern*[$^{e}$r-ō'-b$^{e}$rn], *to conquer*
Carthago[căr-tah'-gō], *Carthage*
das Hausthier (Haus, p. 87, Thier, p. 153), *domesticated animal*
gelehrig (lehren, p. 103), *docile, teachable*
abreiſen (ab, p. 309, reiſen, p. 117), *to set out, depart*
**Recht haben** (Recht, p. 331) *to be* (in the) *right* (Idiom)
das Gewiſſen* (wiſſen, p. 269) (-s) *conscience*
beſtrafen(ſtrafen, p. 299), *to punish*
der Edelmann (edel, *noble*, ſr. Adel, p. 269) (plur. leute), *nobleman*
das Eſſen (eſſen, p. 103) *eating*
Einer, *one*
die Krücke*[krĭk'-k$^{e}$] (-n), *crutch*
arg*[ärk], *bad, evil*
der Schalk*[shälk] (-es, Schälke), *a rogue, wag*
der Edelſtein, *precious stone, jewel*
gelten (p. 233, Geld), *to be worth, to bear a price*
der Reichthum (reich, p. 102) (-es, ... thümer), *riches, wealth*
die Laſt*[läst] (-en), *load, burden*.

1. Die Bewohner Galliens waren noch ſehr unwiſſend, als Cäſar dieſes Land eroberte. 2. Als Cäſar Gallien eroberte, waren die Bewohner dieſes Landes noch ſehr unwiſſend. 3. Die Römer zerſtörten Carthago, als dieſe Stadt ihnen gefährlich geworden war. 4. Als er ſeine Eltern verlor, war er noch ſehr jung. 5. Ich glaube jetzt, daß Sie Recht haben. 6. Daß Sie Recht haben, glaube ich jetzt. 7. Daß ihr eine große Pflicht zu erfüllen habt, werdet ihr nicht vergeſſen. 8. Wir wiſſen, daß unſer Leben nur kurze Zeit dauern wird. 9. Weil das Holz leichter als das Waſſer iſt, ſchwimmt es. 10. Der Hund iſt ein nützliches Hausthier, weil er treu und gelehrig iſt. 11. Weil ihr träge geweſen ſeid, wird der Lehrer euch beſtrafen. 12. Ich kann nicht mehr zu ihm gehen, weil ich noch heute abreiſen werde. 13. Wenn ihr fleißig ſeid, werdet ihr viel lernen. 14. Du wirſt reich werden, wenn du thätig und ſparſam biſt. 15. Ihr könnt ruhen, wenn ihr eure Pflicht gethan habt. 16. Wenn du allein biſt, ſo denke, daß Gott und dein Gewiſſen bei dir ſind (Prov.). 17. Auf den Winter folgt der Sommer, aber alte Leute werden nie wieder jung (Prov.). 18. Als Adam hackt' und Eva ſpann, ‖ Wer war da der Edelmann? (Prov.). 19. Was brauch ich zu beten? ſagte Kunz, hab ich doch das Eſſen vom Schloß (Prov.). 20. Wie Einer ſein Bett macht, ſo mag er drauf (darauf) liegen (Prov.). 21. Je ſchwächer der Bettler,

je ſtärker die Krücke, || Je ärger der Schalk, je größer das Glücke (supply in every sentence iſt) (Prov.). 22. Ein Edelſtein gilt ſo viel, || Als ein reicher Narr dafür geben will (Prov.). 23. Du trägſt ſehr leicht, wenn du nichts haſt, || Aber Reichthum iſt eine leichtere Laſt (Göthe).

## 85.

Erwachen (wachen, p. 141) *to awake*
entdecken (decken, p. 268) *to discover*
der Irrthum* (irren, p. 114), *error, mistake*
die Gelegenheit*[gᵉ-la'-gᵉn-hit] (–en), *opportunity, occasion*
billig[bil'-lig], *cheap*
nichts deſto weniger / deſſen ungeachtet } *nevertheless*
folglich* (folgen, p. 155), *accordingly, consequently*
wieder, *in return*
untergehen,* *to set*
dunkel*[dúnk'-el], *dark, dim*
aufgehen, *to rise*
gerade[gᵉ-rah'-dᵉ], *just, exactly*
zuhören (zu-, hören, p. 80), *to listen*
fortfahren (fahren' p. 176), *to continue*
der Gedanke (ge-, denken, p. 114) (–ns), *thought*
unſterblich (ſterblich, p. 151) *immortal*
ſtärken (p. 293), *to support*
geſtehen* (ſtehen, p. 239), *to confess*
begehen (gehen, p. 141), *to commit*
der Fehler (p. 298), *blunder*

1. Hear (2d. sing.) twice, before you speak once. 2. When I awoke, I saw the old gentleman before me. 3. When the young student discovered his error, (then) he lost all hope. 4. He lost all hope, when he discovered his error. 5. We made a fire, after we had fetched dry wood. 6. After we had fetched dry wood, we made a fire. 7. Although this gentleman lives in our neighborhood, we have yet had no opportunity to speak to (mit) him. 8. The horse is old, and yet he has not sold it cheap. 9. He is rich, nevertheless he is very saving (p. 124). 10. I think, therefore, I am. 11. The physician visits him daily, accordingly he must be very ill. 12. Some persons praise us, in order that we (may) praise them in return (wieder). 13. Our friend remained at home, because his friend will visit him to-day. 14. We see that the sun is larger than the moon. 15. Did 'you visit Mr. N. when 'you were in Berlin? 16. The sun sets. 17. It becomes dark when the sun sets. 18. We set out in the morning. 19. The sun was just rising as we set out. 20. He began the study of the German language three years ago. 21. When I began the study of the German language, I was still very young. 22. Many a rich man grows (becomes) poor, while (während) many a poor man grows rich. 23. It is just as hot as it was yesterday. 24. When I arrived in Berlin, a few weeks ago, I did not find Mr. N. 25. The warmer the air is, the lighter it is. 26. He speaks so fast that one (man) cannot understand him. 27. Although he saw that no one listened (zuhören), yet² he¹ continued¹ to speak. 28. The thought that we are immortal, supports (ſtärken) me. 29. I confess (geſtehen) that I have committed a blunder (Fehler).

**Gallien, Gaul, Gallia,** name of ancient France, Lat. *Gallia.*

**erobern,** *to* **over***come, to conquer*, c. of er- (p. 206), and obern, from **ober, over,** *above*, **upper,** hence prop. to get the **upper***hand* of.

**Gewiſſen,** *conscience*, Ge- wiſſen, g e- for .m i t, *with*; on this original meaning of the augment ge-, see p. 112 (glücklich); Goth. *mithvissei=conscientia.* (wiſſen, p. 112), hence Gewiſſen=to know with one's self (Old Engl. *in-wit*).

**Krücke, crutch,** ahd. *chrucha*, A. S. *cryce, cric*, fr. Lat. *crux, crucis, cross*, so-called fr. the *cross-piece* at the head to place under the arm of a lame person.

**arg,** A. S. *arg, earg*, bad, evil, **arr***ant*, allied to Engl. **arch**=cunning as a rogue; Gr. *argos*, idle, slow.

**Schalk;** mhd. *schalc*=servant, menial (see Marſchall, p. 248), then a man of servile mind, of *slavish disposition*, a bad, coarse, knavish man.

**Laſt,** *burden, load*, fr. **laden,** *to* **load, lade,** comp. Engl. **last,** lit. *a load*, commonly 4,000 lbs. weight; *bal***last,** prob. for *bag-last*, thus Dan.= back-load (*bag*, in Dan.=*behind, back*).

**Irrthum, error,** *mistake*, fr. **irren,** *to* **err,** *to go astray*, Lat. *erro*, to stray.

**Gelegenheit,** *opportunity, occasion*, fr. gelegen, pa. part. of liegen, **ly***ing*, situated, opportune.

**folglich,** *consequently*, **follow**ing as a natural effect or deduction, see folgen, p. 153.

**untergehen,** c. of unter, p. 209, and gehen, *to go down*; (of persons) *to perish, to go to ruin*; (of the sun and heavenly bodies in general) *to set.*

**dunkel,** *dark*, **dim, dingy,** conn. with **dun;** A. S. *duncal.*

**geſtehen,** *to confess, to own*, lit. **stand** to a thing, *keep to it.*

**begehen,** *to commit*, lit. to **go** *about*, walk over, to inspect, to do.

## [61.] B.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Der Brief, **deſſen** Inhalt du kennſt, iſt abgeſchickt. | *The letter, the contents of which you know, is sent away.* |
| 2. **Wer** nicht arbeitet, **der** macht keine Fortſchritte. | *He who does not work,* (that one) *makes no progress.* |
| 3. **Das, was** er gethan hat, iſt unrecht. | *What* (that which) *he has done, is wrong.* |
| 4. Er hat nicht Wort gehalten, **was** ſehr unrecht iſt. | *He has not kept his word, which is very wrong.* |
| 5. **Wer** zufrieden iſt, iſt reich. | *He who is contented, is rich.* |
| 6. **Was** wir ſehen, glauben wir. | *What we see, we believe.* |
| 7. **Ich, der** dich liebt, gebe es dir.<br>**Ich, der ich** dich liebe, gebe es dir. | *I who love you, give it to you.* |

8. Ich kaufe keine Bücher mehr, ich habe **deren** genug. *I do not buy any more books, I have enough of them.*
Der Reichthum **derer**, die in dieſer Stadt wohnen, iſt bekannt. *The wealth of those who live in this city, is known.*

1. The **Relative Pronouns** and **Adverbs** (Lat. *refero, relatum-re*=back, *fero*=to carry) relate to some preceding word or phrase called *antecedent* and perform the office of *conjunctions* in connecting sentences.

*Remark.*—The German (as the English and other Germanic languages) has no peculiar word for the relative (pronoun or adverb), but employs in its place *interrogative* pronouns and one demonstrative, namely: wer? *who?* was? *what?* welcher? welche? welches? *who? which?* wie? *how?* wo? *where?* der, die, das, *that*; da, *there*, and others. Hence, the same words are used *both as interrogatives and relatives.*

2. The declension of wer, was, welcher, -e, -es, is the same when used relatively and interrogatively; and der, die, das differs only in the genit. sing. and the genit. and dat. plur. from the definite article.

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *M.* | *F.* | *N.* | |
| *Nom.* | welcher, | welche, | welches; | welche, *who*; |
| *Gen.* | not used. | | | not used. |
| *Dat.* | welchem, | welcher, | welchem; | welchen, *to whom*; |
| *Acc.* | welchen, | welche, | welches. | welche, *whom.* |

| | *Masc. and Fem.* | *Neuter.* |
|---|---|---|
| *Nom.* | wer, *who*; | was, *what*; |
| *Gen.* | weſſen, *whose*; | weſſen, *of what*; |
| *Dat.* | wem, *to whom*; | see p. 337, woran; |
| *Acc.* | wen, *whom.* | was, *what.* |

| | *Singular.* | | | *Plural.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | *M.* | *F.* | *N.* | |
| *Nom.* | der, | die, | das; | die, *who*; |
| *Gen.* | **deſſen,** | **deren,** | **deſſen;** | **deren,** *whose*; |
| *Dat.* | dem, | der, | dem; | **denen,** *to whom*; |
| *Acc.* | den, | die, | das. | die, *whom.* |

3. Prepositions do not join with the *neuter* of the personal (es), demonstrative (das, dies), relative and interrogative pronouns (was); in their stead the adverbs da and wo, (and before a vowel the orig. **dar** and **wor**) are employed. Comp. the numerous examples given above, p. 314 (darnach), to illustrate this important fact.

4. The **relative adverbs** are: **wo** (**wor**, ahd. **war, where**), *where*; **wie,** *how*; **wenn, wann,** *when*, and their compounds, as, **wohin,** *whither*; **woher,** *whence*; **womit,** *wherewith, with or by which or what*; **wodurch,** *through, or by means of which or what.*

5. *Take Notice!*—If the relative pronoun refers to a particular word in the preceding sentence, it must be rendered by welcher, -e, -es, or der, die, das; if, however, it does not refer to a particular word, but rather to the

contents of the whole sentence, it must be translated by wer or was: Ich kenne nicht den **Mann, welcher** (or **der**) hier war, *I do not know the man who was here.* Ich kann Ihnen nicht ſagen, **wer** heute gepredigt hat, *I cannot tell you who* (has) *preached to-day.* Er iſt wieder geſund und munter, **was** mich ſehr freut, *he is hale and sound again* (a circumstance) *which gives me much joy.*

6. **Wer** can be used after jeder, *every one.* **Was** is also used after nichts, *nothing*; etwas, *something*; alles, *everything*; vieles, *much*; manches, *many a thing*, and after the neuter of an adjective in the superlative degree; das Schönſte und Beſte, was ich habe, *the finest and best that I have.*

7. When the relative refers to a personal pronoun of the first and second person sing. or plur., or to **Sie** in the sense of *'you*, der, die, das must be used; often the pronoun is repeated after the relative for the sake of emphasis; M. S. 7, ich, der (or die in case the speaker is a fem.) ich ihn kenne or ich, der ihn kennt, *I, who know him*; du, der (or die) du ihn geſehen haſt, or du, der (or die) ihn geſehen hat, *you, who have seen him.*

8. The demonstrative corresponding with **wer** and **was** are **der** and **das**, which receive, in uttering, a full, strong emphasis, and are for the most part put at the head of the second (the principal) clause, as **Wer** lügt, **der** ſtiehlt auch, *he who lies, steals also.* Or der and das are omitted, as Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen (der muß fühlen), *he who does not wish to hear, must feel.* **Das** may also go before the relative, as **das, was** du heute thun kannſt, verſchiebe nicht auf morgen, *what you can do to-day, do not defer until to-morrow.*

9. **Der, die, das** can be used in a three-fold way. *a.* As *demonstratives* (accord. to 8 strongly emphasized); *b.* as *relatives*, in which case they receive a medium emphasis; *c.* as *articles*, with no emphasis at all.

10. The demonstratives **der, die, das** when used substantively (i. e., in no connection with nouns), are declined like the relative der, die, das (2.) gen. sing. **deſſen, deren, deſſen**, gen. plur. **deren** (or **derer**, see 11.); dat. plur. **denen.**

11. The genitive plural of the demonst. der, die, das is **derer** when a relative pronoun follows it: Die Zahl **derer, die** zu Hauſe blieben, war groß; but Es ſind **deren** viele zu Hauſe geblieben, *the number of those who remained at home was large.*

12. A comma is required before a relative pronoun or adverb. Sentences with relative pronouns or adverbs occurring between the members of another sentence, are separated from the latter by two commas: Das Vögelchen, **welches** (or **das**) ich gefangen habe, iſt ein Rothbrüſtchen, *the little bird which* (that) *I have caught is a red-breast.*

13. Relative pronouns are never omitted in German.

## 86.

der Feldherr (Feld, p. 100, Herr, p. 177), *commander-in-chief, general*

enthalten* (halten, p. 155), *to contain*

empfangen* (fangen, p. 239), *to receive*

erinnern*[ᵉr-in'-nᵉrn], *to remind, put in remembrance*

das Mitgefühl (Gefühl, p. 305), *sympathy*

das Schickſal*[shĭk'-zahl"](–es, –e) *destiny, fortune*

der Punkt (pünktlich, p. 140) (–es, –e), *point*

beredt*[bᵉ-rät'], *eloquent*

die Schilderung*[shĭl'-dᵉ-rünᵏ] (–en), *delineation, description*

das Innere[in'-nē-rᵉ] (–n), *inside, heart, soul*

ſichtbar[zĭyt'-bahr], *visible*

ernten,* *to reap, to gather in*

der Kern[kĕrn] (–es, –e), *kernel, stone* (of fruits)

die Eiferſucht*[ĭ'-fᵉr-zücht], *jealousy*

die Leidenſchaft*(Leid, p. 264)(–en), *passion*

der Eifer (–s), *zeal*

das Salz*[zälts] (–es, –e), *salt*

das Edle (edel, p. 364), *nobleness, worth*

reifen, *to grow ripe*

der Schein (ſcheinen, p. 240), *appearance, show*

die Gewalt*[gᵉ-vält] (–en), *power, dominion.*

1. Julius Cäſar war der berühmte Feldherr, von dem wir in der alten Geſchichte leſen. 2. Alles, was eine Frau auf dieſer Welt zu thun hat, iſt enthalten in den Pflichten einer Tochter, einer Schweſter, einer Gattin und einer Mutter. 3. Die Sonne, welche über unſern Häuptern ſcheint, die Nahrung, welche wir empfangen, die Ruhe, welche wir genießen, erinnern uns täglich an eine höhere Macht, die über uns wacht. 4. Sie hatte Mitgefühl mit ihrer Freundin, deren Schickſal ihrem eignen in ſo vielen Punkten glich. 5. Von denen, welche jenen berühmten Ort beſucht haben, hat uns Waſhington Irving die beredteſte Schilderung gegeben. 6. Wer iſt der Glücklichere, ein armer Arbeiter, der in ſeinem Innern ruhig iſt (whose mind is at ease), oder ein König, deſſen Sinn von Sorgen erfüllt iſt? 7. Die Berge, deren Gipfel wir am Abend vorher bemerkt hatten, waren jetzt deutlich ſichtbar. 8. Die Meinung derer, die unwiſſend und ſchlecht ſind, achte ich nicht. 9. Was Einer nicht kann meiden, || Das muß er ruhig leiden (Prov.). 10. Wer heute lacht, kann morgen weinen (Prov.). 11. Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt nichts (Prov). 12. Wer den Kern haben will, muß die Schale brechen (Prov.). 13. Was man nicht im Kopfe hat, muß man in den Füßen haben (Prov.). 14. Wer zwei Haſen jagt, fängt keinen (Prov.). 15. Eiferſucht iſt eine Leidenſchaft, die mit Eifer ſucht, was Leiden ſchafft (Prov.). 16. Wer keinen Kuchen hat, der ißt auch Salz und Brod (Prov.). 17. Das Unglück iſt der Boden, wo das Edle reift (Körner). 18. Drei ſind, die da herrſchen auf Erden: Die Weisheit, der Schein und die Gewalt (Göthe). 19. Du gleichſt dem Geiſt, den du begreifſt (Göthe). 20. Man ſpricht ſelten von der Tugend, die man hat, aber deſto öfter von der, die uns fehlt (Leſſing).

## 87.

das Kräutlein*[kroit'-lin](-s), *little herb*
der Korb*[körp](-es, Körbe) *basket*
das Obſt[öpst] (-es), *fruit, fruitage*
unzufrieden*[ün'-tsü-frē'-dᵉn], *discontented*
murren*[mür'-rᵉn], *to grumble*
ſeufzen*[zoif'-tsᵉn], *to sigh*
beſtändig[bᵉ-stän'-dig], *constant*, and adv. (ſtehen, p. 112, ſtets, p. 201)
dagegen* (gegen, p. 247), *against, on the contrary*
ſcherzen (Scherz, p. 185), *to jest, to joke*
nur,* *only, but*
ja,* *yes*
um nichts,* *by nothing*
gewiß*[gᵉ-vis'], *sure, certain*
die Bürde*[bür'-dᵉ] (-n), *burden*
daher*[dä-här'], *therefore*
ei*[i], *why! oh!*
doch*(see Lexicology)
damit (see p. 314, darnach, Lexic.)
erleichtern (leicht, p. 100), *to lighten*
die Beſchwerde (ſchwer, p. 182)(-n), *trouble, molestation*
ſelbſt, *self*
die Geduld[gᵉ-dült](dulden, p. 240) *patience*

### Das koſtbare Kräutlein.

Nach Chriſtoph von Schmid.

Zwei Mädchen, Marie und Luiſe, gingen aus ihrem Dorf in die Stadt, und jede trug einen ſchweren Korb voll Obſt, das ſie in der Stadt verkaufen wollten. Marie war unzufrieden und murrte und ſeufzte beſtändig, denn die Laſt, welche ſie trug, war ſchwer. Luiſe dagegen lachte und ſcherzte. Da ſagte Marie: „Wie kannſt du nur lachen und ſcherzen? Dein Korb iſt ja ſo ſchwer wie der meinige, und du biſt um Nichts ſtärker als ich.“ Luiſe ſprach: „Ich habe ein gewiſſes Kräutlein zur Bürde gelegt, daher fühle ich ſie kaum.“ — „Eil!“ rief Marie, „das muß ein koſtbares Kräutlein ſein. Sag' mir doch, wie es heißt und wo ich es finde, daß ich mir meine Laſt auch damit erleichtern kann.“ Luiſe antwortete: „Das koſtbare Kräutlein, das alle Beſchwerden leichter macht, findeſt du in dir ſelbſt; es heißt— Geduld. Merk' dir, Marie:

Leichter trägt, was er auch trägt,
Wer Geduld zur Bürde legt.

## 88.

Ungern(gern, p. 240), *unwillingly*
verlaſſen (p. 248), *to leave*
beantworten einen Brief } *to answer a letter*
and
antworten auf einen Brief }
der Handelsmann*(-es, pl. . . leute) *trader*
die Handelsſtadt, *commercial city*
achtbar (achten, p. 276) *respectable*
der Streit (ſtreiten, p. 304) (-es). *contest*
[*viser*
der Rathgeber (Rath, p. 254) *ad-*
die Sache*(-n), *affair*
verdanken (danken, p. 108), *to owe*

überladen (laden, p. 274), *to load*, (prop. *to overload*).

1. Unwillingly I left the place where I had many friends. 2. My sister whose letter I have not yet answered, will return to-morrow. 3. Can 'you tell me the name of the boy whose parents were here last week? 4. Where bees are, there is honey. 5. The merchant in whose hands 'your money is, has become bankrupt. 6. I shall do what I have promised. 7. What I have promised, I shall do. 8. We shall follow (Dat) 'you, where 'you lead us. 9. Where 'you lead us, we shall follow 'you. 10. Please show me the man whom 'you have asked. 11. That which he said about America was new to me. 12. 'Your nephew related something that I cannot believe. 13. For what (p. 337) do 'you thank me (Dat.)? 14. With what has he wounded you (thee)? 15. I cannot tell 'you of what he has spoken. 16. With what can 'I serve (Dat.) 'you? 17. He who lies, steals also. 18. The poor woman whose husband is so ill, has two children. 19. The garden, of which the gate is open, is ours. 20. A town of which (the) inhabitants are mostly merchants and traders, is a commercial town. 21. Parents whose children are ungrateful, are very unhappy. 22. The pupils to whom those books belong, are sons of very respectable parents. 23. The woman (Frau) to whom my aunt gave the money, is very thankful. 24. This merchant has many a thing that other merchants have not. 25. He who is my friend, must tell me (Dat.) my faults. 26. That is something that I could never understand. 27 The best that 'you can do, is to give up the contest. 28. Can 'you tell me the names of the advisers whom he follows? 29. The affair of which we talked yesterday, is more important than we thought. 30. I owe it to 'you who have[2] always loaded[3] me[1] with[3] kindness.[4]

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Enthalten,** *to contain*; ent- halten, p. 293; **ent** in some verbs expresses intensity, like ganz=Engl. *in-*, *con-*, enthalten=inhalten, *to* **in***clude*, *con*tain (Lat. *teneo*, to hold).

**empfangen,** *to receive, take, accept*; emp=ent, and fangen, p. 239.

**erinnern,** *to remind*, c. of er- and **inner=inner,** to stir up **in**wardly, bring before the *soul, call to mind.*

**Schickſal,** *fortune, destiny*, fr. ſchicken (p. 206), *to bring about, dispose, send*; lit. what is sent from above.

**beredt,** *eloquent*, fr. bereden, *to persuade* (ſ. reden, p. 329); the pa. part. is beredet; the adj. form beredt; (the e is long, comp. p. 21, 8).

**Schilderung,** *delineation, description*, fr. ſchildern, *to delineate, depict, describe*, fr. **der Schild, shield,** and **das** Schild, a family **shield,** a shield on which a coat-of-arms is represented; then in general a *sign-board, a sign*; mhd. *schilter*=a shield-maker, a heraldic painter, hence Schilderei, *painting, picture*; Schilderer, *painter*, fig. delineator.

*Take Notice!* **Der** Schild (masculine)=**shield,** in plural: Schilde; **das** Schild (neuter)=*sign-board*; in plural, Schilder.

**ſichtbar**, *visible, in* **sight**, c. of ſicht=sight, comp. Geſicht, p. 334.

**ernten**, *to reap, gather in, to harvest*; A. S. *earndan*, to **earn**, Dutch, *ernen*, to reap, *arne*, harvest—root, *ar*, to plough; comp. Erde, p. 155.

**Eiferſucht**, *jealousy*, c. of Eifer, *zeal, eagerness, ardor* (?), and Sucht, *disease, inordinate desire, mania*, fr. **ſiech**, **sick**, hence lit. *zeal-sickness*, thus Mordſucht, *murder-sickness*; Lungenſucht, *lung-disease*; Ehrſucht, *immoderate ambition*, prop. *honor-sickness*; Sehnſucht, *a diseased or morbid desire, ardent longing*. Die Seuche, *pestilence, epidemic disease*, belongs to the same root.

**Leidenſchaft**, *passion*; fr. leiden, see Leid, p. 264 and comp. *passion*, fr. Lat. *patior-passus*, to suffer.

**Salz**, **salt**; Tab. V. 8. A. S. *sealt* (with formative t in A. S. and Engl., and the corresponding z in Germ.; comp. Mond, p. 240, and Saat, p. 281, and the Notice, p. 282), Lat. *sal*, Fr. *sel*.

**reifen**, *to grow* **ripe**, fr. **reif**, **ripe**; Tab. V. 4. Prop. ready for harvest; A. S. *rip*, harvest, *ripan*, to **reap**, harvest.

**Gewalt**, *power, might, dominion*=Ge-walt, fr. walten, *to rule, manage*; A. S. *wealdan*, ro rule, *Alwalda*, the All-wielding; conn. with Lat. *valere*, to be strong; Engl. to **wield**.

**Korb**, *basket*, **corb** (a basket used in collieries, Webster). Lat. *corbis*, Fr. *corbeille*.

**Obſt** (o long, the word having been orig. dissyllabic), *fruit, fruitage*, ahd. *obez*, mhd. *obes*, A. S. *ofet* (?).

**unzufrieden**, *discontented*, c. of un- (p. 112) and zufrieden, *content, satisfied*; prop. *at peace*; c. of zu-, **to**, and Frieden, *peace*: **Friedrich**, **Frederick**=rich in peace; related with freien, *to woo, to make love*.

**murren**, *to grumble, to* **murmur**, Lat. *murmurare*, L. Lat. *murrare*; akin to **morose**, Lat. *morosus*, sullen.

**ſeufzen**, *to* **sigh**, allied to **sough** (to whistle or sigh as the wind, Webster). A. S. *seofian*, to groan.

**dagegen**, *against*, or compared with it. on the contrary, c. of da (for **das**, p. 314, darnach) and gegen.

**nur**, *only, but*, p. 103.

*Take Notice!* The interrogative and relative pronouns and adverbs: wer, was, welcher, -e, -es, wo, woher, wohin, wann, wie are often put in connection with **nur**, **auch**, **immer**, by which means their signification becomes generalized and indefinite; in Engl. *'ever,' 'so ever,' 'possibly,' 'in any way'*; auch, nur, immer following the pronouns and adverbs, either immediately, or after one or more interposed words: Was auch er trägt, or was er auch trägt. Sometimes auch and nur are even strengthened by immer: **Was auch immer** er trägt; **was nur immer** du ſagſt.

**ja**, **yea**, *yes*.

*Take Notice!* Ja is often used as an expletive word, and may be rendered by, *you know, you see, consider, remember*: Er hat ja ſeine Einwilligung gegeben, *he has given his consent*, **you know**.

**um**, with a degree of comparison=**by**, as: **um** einen Kopf **größer**, *taller* **by** *a whole head*; **um** fünf Jahre **älter**, *older* **by** *five years*.

**gewiß**, *sure, undoubting, certain*, and *surely*, fr. wiſſen, *to know, be certain*, p. 112; ein gewiſſer, *a certain* (not further specified).

**Bürde, burden**, A. S. *byrden—beran*, to **bear**; comp. **bar**, p. 125 (eßbar) and be, p. 155, Erde.

**daher, there***fore*; c. of **da** (**dar, there**, p. 122), and **her** (p. 181). 1. *thence*, from that place; 2. *for that or this reason=therefore*.

**ei!** interjection, denoting surprise, *why! oh!*

**doch**, an expletive (p. 275); *if you please*, etc. On **doch** after an imperative, see p. 357, 7.

**damit, there***with*, *with it* or *that*, adv.; when used as conjunct.=*in order that*, and removes the verb to the end (p. 362, 1).

**Handelsmann**, *trader*, c. of **Handel**, *commerce, trade*, fr. **handeln**, *to deal, trade*, traffic (p. 246); prop. to act, fr. **Hand**, and Mann.

**Sache**, *matter, thing*, orig. *a suit, cause, dispute*, **sake** (Tab. V. 16); Old Engl. *sak, sac*, A. S. *sacu*, dispute; *sacan*, to contend, to accuse.

## [62.] SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Model Sentences.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Man ſagt, **daß** der König todt **ſei.** | *It is said that the king is dead.* |
| 2. | Er ſagte mir, **daß** ſie ihre Stelle verloren **habe.** | *He told me that she had lost her situation.* |
| 3. | Man ſagt, der König **ſei** todt. / Er ſagte mir, ſie **habe** ihre Stelle verloren. | *It is said that the king is dead.* / *He told me that she had lost her situation.* |
| 4. | Wir hoffen, **daß** das Unternehmen gelingen **werde.** | *We hope that the undertaking will succeed.* |
| 5. | Er eilt, **daß** (or **damit**) er zu rechter Zeit **komme.** | *He hastens in order to be in time.* |
| 6. | Meine Schweſter ſchreibt, ſie **werde** erſt morgen ankommen. | *My sister writes that she will not arrive before to-morrow.* |
| 7. | Er fragte mich, wer ich **ſei.** / Er fragte mich, wer der Mann **geweſen ſei.** | *He asked me, who I was.* / *He asked who the man was.* |
| 8. | Seine Mutter wünſcht, **daß** er nach Deutſchland **reiſe.** | *His mother wishes him to travel* (that he t.) *to Germany.* |
| 9. | Ein jeder **thue** ſeine Pflicht. | *May every one do his duty.* |
| 10. | Bitte ihn, **daß** er dir zu gehen **erlaube.** | *Request him to allow you to go.* |
| 11. | Lerne, **auf daß** (or **damit**) du es **wiſſeſt.** | *Learn in order that you know it.* |
| 12. | Wir glauben, **daß** er noch heute **ankomme.** / Wir glauben, er **komme** noch heute **an.** | *We believe, that he will still arrive to-day.* |

*Observations.*—1. The **Subjunctive** by its nature (§ 59, 2.) is for the most part used in *dependent* sentences, but frequently also in *simple* ones; M. S. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12.

I.—2. In dependent clauses it is used: *a.* in **Indirect Speech** (*oratio obliqua*), i. e. when words are quoted not as they were exactly spoken, but in mere substance; they are connected with the main clause by **daß** or an interrogative pronoun or adverb; M. S. 1, 2, 7, 12, or daß is omitted and the construction has the form of a principal clause; M. S. 3, 6, 12.

3. *Take Notice!* In English the *tense* of the subordinate clause depends on that of the principal one with which it must agree; hence *indirect quotations* are in English generally put in the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect tense*; e. g. I *asked* him whether his uncle **was** in good circumstances (the direct quotation was: **Is** your u. in g. c.?). He told me that his father **had been** sick (the direct quotation was: My father **was** sick).

In German the tense of the subjunctive depends on that which the person whose speech is quoted really employed:

*a.* In case he spoke in the *present*, his speech is quoted in the present: „Ich **bin** gut," is quoted:

Er ſagt (he says)—, er ſagte (he said)—, er wird ſagen (he will say), **er ſei** gut.

*b.* In case he spoke in the *past* or *perfect* tense, his speech is quoted in the *perfect*: „Mein Bruder **ſah** es," is quoted:

Er ſagt,—, er ſagte,—, er wird ſagen, ſein Bruder **habe es geſehen.**

*c.* In case he spoke in the *future* tense, his speech is quoted simply in the future: „Ich **werde** kommen," is quoted:

Er ſagt,—, er ſagte,—, er wird ſagen, er **werde** kommen.

Indirect quotations in German, therefore, stand in the **Present, Perfect,** or **Future Subjunctive.**

*Note*—1. On the use of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect subj.* in indirect quotations, see the next section.

*Note*—2. The *indicative* is used in indirect quotations, when the speaker intends to impress that he himself considers the quoted assertion, statement, etc., as *a positive fact.* Er ſchreibt, daß Karl geſtorben iſt, *he writes, that Charles has died* (and I believe so), Er glaubt auch, daß dieſe Neuigkeit wahr iſt, *he also* (like me) *believes that this news is true.* Er ſagt, daß ſein Vater morgen kommen wird, *he says that his father will come to-morrow* (and I do not doubt it).

4. In clauses of a *problematical* or *conjectural* character which are dependent upon verbs, expressing *fear, hope, permission, request, exhortation, advice, wish*, etc.; M. S. 4, 8, 10.

If the assertion is made as of a fact, and after verbs expressing *positive reality* or *positive doubt*, as **wiſſen**, *to know*; **beſtätigen**, *to confirm*; **beweiſen**, *to prove*; **zweifeln**, *to doubt*; **vermuthen**, *to guess*; **vorgeben**, *to allege*, the indicative is used:

Er ſchreibt ſo fleißig, daß er bald fertig werden wird, *he is writing so diligently, that he* (really) *will get through soon.* Er **weiß**, daß es recht iſt, *He knows that it is right.*

5. In adverbial clauses of *purpose* which begin with the conjunctions **daß**, *that*; **auf daß**, *in order that*; **damit**, *in order that*; **damit nicht**, *lest*; Man heizt den Ofen nur, **damit** er **wärme**; M. S. 5, 11.

6. In adverbial clauses of mode after the conjunctions: **als ob**, **als wenn**, *as if*, when the fact is conceived as possible; e. g. Er sieht aus, **als ob** er krank sei, *he looks as if he were ill.*

7. A separable prefix is not separated from the verb, when the **form** of the sentence is that of a dependent clause, *otherwise it is separated*, comp. the two sentences in M. S. 12.

II. The *subjunctive* stands in simple sentences:

*a.* In sentences expressing desire or wish, the fulfillment of which the speaker intends to represent as *possible*, as Gott **helfe** dir! M. S. 9. Über seiner Asche **blühe** ein Paradies [păr"-ă-des'], *over his ashes a paradise may blossom!*

*b.* In sentences expressing a demand, or solicitation in the 1st person plural and the 3d pers. sing. and plural, with or without **daß**, *that*, as: **Eilen** wir! daß er **bleibe**! **Kommen** Sie!

SUBJUNCTIVE.—PRESENT TENSE.

2. The **subjunctive mood** of the **present tense** is always regular, i. e. *never* changes or modifies the vowel of the root, and forms the 2d pers. sing. by adding **est**, (not **st**) and the 3d pers. sing. like the first person, by adding **e** (not **t**) to the root.

**Present Tense of haben, sein, werden lernen, fallen, geben, wissen.**

*Indicative.*

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich habe | bin | werde | lerne | falle | gebe | weiß |
| du hast | bist | wirst | lernst | fällst | gibst | weißt |
| er hat | ist | wird | lernt | fällt | gibt | weiß |
| wir haben | sind | werden | lernen | fallen | geben | wissen |

*Subjunctive.*

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich habe | sei | werde | lerne | falle | gebe | wisse |
| du habest | seiest or seist | werdest | lernest | fallest | gebest | wissest |
| er habe | sei | werde | lerne | falle | gebe | wisse |
| wir haben | seien etc. | werden | lernen | fallen | geben | wissen |

**Present Subjunctive of the Aux. Verbs of Mood:**

| können | mögen | dürfen | müssen | wollen | sollen |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich könne | möge | dürfe | müsse | wolle | solle |
| du könnest | mögest | dürfest | müssest | wollest | sollest |
| er könne | möge | dürfe | müsse | wolle | solle |
| wir können, etc. | mögen, etc. | dürfen, etc. | müssen, etc. | wollen, etc. | sollen, etc. |

## 89.

ob*[ŏp], *if, whether*
der Proceß*[prō-tsĕs'] (Proceſſes, -ceſſe), *process, plea, lawsuit*
der Feiertag* (-es, -e), *day of rest, holiday*
anders (ander, p. 272, 7, Notice), *otherwise, else*
der Prophet*[prō-fät] (-en), [*prophet*
Jonah[yō'-nah], *Jonah*
woher (wo, p. 221, her, p. 181), *whence, from what place*
der Künſtler[kĭnst'-lᵉr] (-s) (Kunſt, p. 187), *artist*
welch ein!* *what a!*
der Herrgott (Herr, p. 174, Gott, p. 168), *the Lord*
das Weißbrod (weiß, p. 85), *white* [*bread*
treiben (p. 247), *to push, carry on* (the profession of), *practice*
der Ungenügſame[ŭn'-gᵉ-nēēg'-zä-mᵉ] (genug, p. 108), *unsatisfied, greedy*
hold*[hōlt], *affectionate, sweet, gracious*
rein, *pure, clean, clear*
anſchauen*[ăn'-shou'-ᵉn], *to look at, to behold*
verlangen (langen, p. 307), *to desire, ask for*
der Dienſt (dienen, p. 208) (-es, -e), *service*
**zu Dienſten ſtehen**, *to be at one's service, to be at one's entire disposal* (Idiom)
geſichert (pa. part. of ſichern, see ſicher, p. 361), *secured*
anfaſſen (faſſen, p. 104), *to take or lay hold of, to seize*
die Kohle[kō'-lᵉ] (-n), *coal*
etwas[ĕt'-väs], *something, somewhat*, adj. *some*
ſorgen (Sorge, p. 250), *to care, to be afraid, feel anxiety*
die Leere (leer, p. 349), *emptiness, void*
das Daſein (da, p. 248, ſein) (-s), *existence*
ermüden (müde, p. 119), *to tire*
ermüdend, pres. part, *tiresome, wearisome*
das Gleichmaß (gleich, p. 208, Maß, p. 253, lit. of *like measure, manner*), *uniformity, sameness*
die Wehmuth (wehmüthig, p. 308), *woefulness, melancholy*
hineinſchleichen (hinein, p. 293, ſchleichen, p. 306), *to sneak into, to steal into.*

1. Schreiben Sie uns, ob er lebe oder todt ſei. 2. Schreibe deinem Freunde, daß er den Proceß gewonnen habe. 3. Schreibe ihm, daß er den Proceß gewonnen hat. 4. Ich bat ihn, daß er mir helfe. 5. Der Menſch ißt, auf daß er lebe. 6. Die Faulen meinen, es ſei alle Tage Feiertag. 7. Luther rief: Hier ſtehe ich; ich kann nicht anders. Gott helfe mir! Amen. 8. Die Schiffer fragten den Propheten Jonah: Wer biſt du? Woher kommſt du? Und wohin gehſt du? 9. Die Schiffer fragten ihn, wer er ſei, woher er komme, und wohin er gehe. 10. Ach! rief ſie, wie glücklich biſt du. 11. Wie glücklich ich ſei, rief ſie. 12. Ich weiß, daß er das geſagt hat. 13. Karl erzählte mir, daß er das geſagt habe. 14. Mancher Soldat glaubt, er werde nächſtes Jahr General ſein. 15. Mancher S. g., daß er nächſtes Jahr General ſein werde. 16. Sagten Sie nicht, Ihr Bruder ſei gefährlich krank geweſen? 17. Thue deinem Nachbar, was du wünſcheſt, daß er dir

thue. 18. Nero rief vor dem Tode, welch ein Künſtler in ihm ſterbe. 19. Wer empfing, der rede; wer gab, der ſchweige (Prov.). 20. Der Bock weiß, daß er Hörner hat (Prov.). 21. Unſer Herrgott will nicht, daß Weißbrod auf den Bäumen wachſe (Prov.). 22. Die Armen helfen Alle, || Daß kein Reicher falle (Prov.). 23. Sehe jeder (jeder ſehe), wie er's (er es) treibe; || Sehe jeder, wo er bleibe, und wer ſteht, (ſehe) daß er nicht falle (Göthe). 24. Der Ungenügſame verlangt, daß ihm noch als Bettler alles zu Dienſten ſtehe (Göthe). 25. Daß die Hand geſichert bleibe, faßt man Kohlen an mit Zangen (Logau). 26. Der Menſch erfährt, er ſei auch, wer er mag, || Ein letztes Glück und einen letzten Tag (Göthe). 27. Etwas fürchten und hoffen und ſorgen || Muß der Menſch für den kommenden Morgen, || Daß er die Leere des Daſeins ertrage, || Und das ermüdende Gleichmaß der Tage (Schiller). 28. Ehre deinen Vater und deine Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe und du lange lebeſt (Bibel).

## Segen von H. Heine.

Du biſt wie eine Blume,
So hold und ſchön und rein;
Ich ſchau' dich an und Wehmuth
Schleicht mir ins Herz hinein.

Mir iſt als ob ich die Hände,
Auf's Haupt dir legen ſollt',
Betend, daß Gott dich erhalte
So rein und ſchön und hold.

## 90.

Behaupten,* *to assert*
begleiten,* *to accompany, to con-duct*
der Weg (p. 176), *road*
die Fabel* [fah'-bel] (–n), *fable*
für jetzt (p. 88), *for the present*
das Loos [lōs] (–es, –e), *lot*, Tab. V.
beſchützen* [shŭ'-tsen], *to guard, protect*
beſchwören (p. 83), *to swear*
leiten, *to lead, conduct, guide*
der Nebenmenſch,* *fellow-creature*
bekennen (kennen, p. 222), *to confess*
die Meinigen,* (see Lexic.)
das Ziel* (–es, –e), *aim*
zielen, *to aim*
die Waffe* [väf'-fe] (–n), *weapon*
ob—oder, *whether—or.*

1. He asserts that he has been there (the assertion is assumed by the speaker as *possibly* true). 2. He asserts that he has been there (the assertion is assumed as a *fact* by the speaker). 3. He is writing very diligently, in order (damit or auf daß) to finish the work this month. 4. I asked him, who has come (haben or ſein?); what he has heard; where his brother has been; when his uncle will arrive, and whither he will go to-morrow? 5. He wished to know whether I knew (know at *present*) the son of the doctor. 6. My father told me that the moon always accompanied the earth on her road around the sun. 7. It is a fable, that the lion rules over all the animals. 8. I asked him when he will go to Berlin. 9. The physician hopes that the child will soon recover. 10. They desire me to stay at home (transl. they d. m. that I stay at h.). 11. I desire 'you to come soon (transl. I d. 'y. that 'you c. s.). 12. God be with you! 13. Let (subjunct. only) everybody

bring[1] his arms along[1] (mit)! 14. 'Your uncle wishes 'you to remain (transl. 'Your u. wishes that 'you remain) in Germany for the present. 15. Heaven (say the H.) help (what case?) my good children! 16. Let (subjunct. only) everybody be content with his lot. 17. Heaven (the H.) accompany you (thou)! 18. God protect 'you! 19. Let (subjunct. only) everyone do his duty. 20. Long live our King! 21. Whether this be so or not, I'll not swear. 22. She did not answer, when I asked her if she loved me. 23. Hold him, lest he fall. 24. Lead thou, O Lord, this our friend, that he may (subjunct. only) faithfully serve (what case?) thee. 25. People (man) said that he had stolen. 26. I know that he has stolen. 27. I fear he will die (transl. in two ways with daß and without daß, this sentence and the five following). 28. Did I not say to 'your nephew that I had heard the news from his own family (die Seinigen), why did he not believe (what case?) me? 29. He told me that it was my duty to love my fellow-creature. 30. He said he had been ill. 31. The captain asserted that he had not seen the horseman. 32. I confess, that I have committed (p. 365) a blunder. 33. Aim well that you (thou) may (subjunct. only) hit (p. 299) the apple. 34. We believed he will come. 35. My mother believes also (like me) that he will not come to-day. 36. He says he is still young and has plenty of (genug) money. 37. He says that he has not yet seen London and will go there next month.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Ob, if,** an expression of doubt; ahd. *ibu, oba*, A. S. *gif*, Engl. *if*, Goth. and ahd. *iba*=doubt, condition.

**Proceß, process** (lit. *a going forward*), *plea, lawsuit*; fr. Lat. *procedo—pro*, forward, and *cedo, cessum*, to go.

**Feiertag,** *holi***day, day** *of rest*; Feier, ahd. *fira*, solemnity, vacation, fr. Lat. *feriae*, vacation, conn. with **fair,** *festive.*

**Prophet, prophet** (lit. a speaker for another), fr. Gr. *prophemi—pro*, for, and *phemi*, to speak.

**welch ein!** *what a!* is sometimes used in exclamations, in expressions of astonishment, of wonder; **welch** is then never inflected: **Welch ein** Mann! *what a man!* Seht, **welch ein** Feſt! *see, what a feast!* Or without ein: **Welch** Vertrauen iſt das! *what confidence is this!* **Welch** (without ein) is inflected before a fem. noun: In dieſer Armuth, **welche** Fülle! In dieſem Kerker, **welche** Seligkeit! *In this poverty what abundance! In this dungeon, what bliss!* (Göthe)

**hold,** *propitious, lovely, sweet*, A. S. *huld, hold*, fr. ahd. *halden*, A. S. *hyldan*, to *bend*, to be inclined to or towards, fr. which Halde, *declivity, slope.*

**anſchauen,** *to look at, to behold, gaze at*; c. of an, p. 241 ſchauen; Goth. *skaujan* (*skuggva*=looking-glass, mirror), A. S. *scavian*, Engl. *to*

**shew** and **show.** The German has retained the original meaning= *to look at.* The English **to show,** has become *causative* (p. 276, Säugethier), *to present to view.*

**verlangen,** *to desire, to ask for, to require*; ver- and langen, ahd. *langen,* A. S. *langian,* Engl. *to* **long** *for,* see langen, p. 307.

**Kohlen, coal**; mhd. and A. S. *col,* perhaps conn. with Lat. *caleo,* to be hot.

**Behaupten,** *to assert, affirm strongly*; be- and Haupt, *head,* p. 170; comp. Engl. **heady**=obstinate.

**begleiten,** *to accompany*; be- and g-(for ge-)**leiten**; A. S. *laedan,* to **lead** (Tab. V. 11).

**Fabel, fable** (lit. that which is spoken or told); Lat. *fabula,* fr. *fari,* to speak.

**Waffe, weapon**; A. S. *wæpen*; Dutch, *wapen,* arms; Tab. V. 4.

**beſchützen,** *to guard, protect*; be- and ſchützen, *to protect, shelter*; comp. Engl. *to* **shut**; Tab. V. 8.

**die Meinigen, Deinigen, Seinigen,** etc., pron. possessive absolute, used substantively; see p. 147, 3 and 4.

**Nebenmenſch,** *fellow-***man**; Menſch (p. 102) and neben, by the side of, along with; mhd. *in eben* (**even**), in an equal line, side by side, parallel.

**Ziel,** *end, limit, aim, object,* fr. zielen, *to aim at*; A. S. *tilian,* ahd. *siljan,* tend to; comp. Engl. **till**=to the time when; to the degree that; prob. accusat. of *til,* an end, limit (see *till* in Webster).

## [63.] SUBJUNCTIVE—IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir meinten, Sie **ſchrieben** die Briefe. | *We believed that 'you wrote the letters.* |
| 2. Wir meinten, Sie **hätten** die Briefe geſchrieben. | *We believed that 'you had written the letters.* |
| 3. Sie fragten, was wir **machten.** | *They asked, what we were doing.* |
| 4. Wir antworteten, wir **ſchrieben** Briefe. | *We answered, that we were writing letters.* |
| 5. Er fragte, was wir gemacht **hätten.** | *He asked, what we had done.* |
| 6. Wir antworteten, wir **hätten** Briefe geſchrieben. | *We answered, that we had written letters.* |
| 7. Wenn er noch **lebte.** | *If he were yet alive.* |
| 8. **Wäre**[vâi'-rᵉ] er doch bei uns! | *Would that he were with us!* |

*Observations.*—1. When the form of the *present subjunctive* does not differ from that of the present indicative, that is, when the verb is not in the 3d pers. sing., or part of the verb **ſein,** the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive** are used instead of the present; thus M. S. 1, Sie ſchreiben would not differ from the indic. form; but wir meinten, er **ſchreibe** d. B. M. S. 2; but wir meinten, er **habe** d. B. g. M. S. 3, was wir machen would not differ from the indic.; but Sie fragten, was er **mache.**

2. In simple clauses they are employed:

*a.* To presume a state of things which does not really exist; M. S. 7.

*b.* To express a statement as desirable; hence in exclamations, wishes, suppositions; which are often strengthened by doch (p. 275); M. S. 8.

*c.* To manifest a certain deference to the person addressed, and to make a statement with modesty and caution, as Ich **dächte**, wir **machten** es ſo, *I should think, we might do it better this way.*

3. The *Imperfect Subj.* in weak verbs is the same as the imperf. indicat. In strong verbs it differs from the indicative by modifying the vowel (a, o, u, au) and assuming throughout the pers. terminations: Sing. **e—eſt—e**; Plur. **en—et—en.**

### The Imperf. Subjunctive of haben, ſein, werden, lernen, fallen, geben, wiſſen.

INDICATIVE.

ich hatte, ich war, ich wurde ich lernte, ich fiel, ich gab, ich wußte.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich hätte, | ich wäre, | ich würde, | ich lernte, | ich fiele, |
| du hätteſt, | du wäreſt, | du würdeſt, | du lernteſt, | du fieleſt, |
| er hätte, | er wäre, | er würde, | er lernte, | er fiele, |
| wir hätten, | wir wären, | wir würden, | wir lernten, | wir fielen, |

| | |
|---|---|
| ich gäbe, | ich wüßte, |
| du gäbeſt, | du wüßteſt, |
| er gäbe, | er wüßte, |
| wir gäben, | wir wüßten. |

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich habe<br>du habeſt<br>er habe<br>wir haben | gehabt. | ſei<br>ſeiſt<br>ſei<br>ſeien | geweſen. | ſei<br>ſeiſt<br>ſei<br>ſeien | geworden. | habe<br>habeſt<br>habe<br>haben | gelernt. |

THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ich hätte<br>du hätteſt<br>er hätte<br>wir hätten | gehabt. | ich wäre<br>du wäreſt<br>er wäre<br>wir wären | geweſen, etc. |

4. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE AUX. VERBS OF MOOD.

| **können,** | **mögen,** | **dürfen,** | **müſſen,** | **wollen,** | **ſollen,** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ich könnte, | ich möchte, | ich dürfte | ich müßte | ich wollte, | ich ſollte. |

5. In the strong verbs of II Class, ending in **l** or **r**, followed by another consonant, or in simple **r**, the vowel **ä** of the imperf. subj. is often replaced by **ü*** or **ö.***

helfen: hülfe
ſterben: ſtürbe
ſtehen: ſtünde (better than ſtände)
verderben: verdürbe
werfen: würfe

befehlen: beföhle
empfehlen: empföhle
gelten, ſchelten } gölte (better than gälte)
ſtehlen: ſtähle and ſtöhle.

IMPERF. SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE MIXED VERBS.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| brennen: brennete, | nennen: nennete, | ſenden: ſendete, |
| kennen: kennete, | rennen: rennete, | wenden: wendete. |

*These are ancient forms which have been preserved in the modern language.

## 91.

hochherzig, *high-minded*
bequem*[bᵉ-kvām'], *convenient, comfortable*
grünen, *to grow green, be verdant*
der Verdruß[fᵉr-drüs'] (verdrießen, p. 327), *vexation, ill humor*
der Heldenmuth,* *heroism*
zweifelhaft,* *doubtful*
die Probe[prō'-bᵉ](–n), *proof, trial*
die Großmuth, *high-spirit, greatness of mind* [*tice*
die Gerechtigkeit* (recht, p. 134), *justwürgen*[vīr'-gᵉn] *to choke, strangle*
der Unterſchied*[ün"-tᵉr-shēt'] (–es, –e) (ſcheiden, p. 306), *difference*
das Weilchen (Weile, p. 328), *a little while*
ſtillſchweigen (ſchweigen, p. 305), *to be silent.*
der Mondenſchein, *moon-shine*
die Pein,* *pain, torment*
die Bergeshöhe (Höhe, p. 298), *mountain summit*
lieb, *dear, beloved*
**es gibt, there is** (Idiom)
vereinigen,* *to unite* |*goodness*
die Güte (gütig, p. 357), *kindness,*
die Größe[grēā'-sᵉ](–n), *greatness*
rühmen[rēē'-mᵉn] (Ruhm, p. 308), *to praise, glorify*
die Muſe*[mū'-zᵉ] (–n), *muse.*

1. Wäre ich doch reich! 2. O lebte er noch lange! 3. Wilhelm ſagte mir, daß er krank geweſen ſei. 4. Wir glaubten, ſie hätten kein Geld mehr. 5. Ich glaubte, er habe ſeine Börſe verloren. 6. Wir wußten nicht, ob ſie das Buch gekauft hätten. 7. Dieſe hochherzigen Männer ſagten mir oft, was ich zu thun hätte. 8. Iſt es der Wunſch Ihrer Eltern, daß Sie Offizier oder Arzt würden? 9. Ich gab ihnen noch zehn Thaler, damit ſie genug Geld hätten. 10. Glaubten ſie, daß ſie willkommner ſein würden als wir? 11. Sagteſt du nicht, drei meiner Brüder hätten großes Unglück gehabt? 12. Sagteſt du, meine Brüder ſeien krank geweſen? 13. Der Fiſcher ſagte mir, er habe nur noch einen Karpfen. 14. Die Fiſcher ſagten mir, ſie hätten nur noch einen Karpfen. 15. Ihr Vater meinte, jener Weg ſei kürzer. 16. Der Vater meinte, jener Weg werde uns müde machen. 17. Der Vater meinte, jene Wege würden uns müde machen. 18. Jener Mann hoffte, er werde dort einen bequemen Wagen finden. 19. Jener Mann hoffte, wir würden dort einen bequemen Wagen finden. 20. Der alte Müller antwortete mir, Ihre Mutter werde ihm und ſeiner Frau ſehr willkommen ſein. 21. Der alte Müller antwortete mir, Ihre Eltern würden ihm und ſeiner Frau ſehr willkommen ſein. 22. Mancher baut Schlöſſer in die Luft, der keine Hütte auf dem Lande bauen könnte (Prov.). 23. O ſähſt du voller Mondenſchein || Zum letzten Mal auf meine Pein (Göthe). 24. Ach! könnt ich doch auf Bergeshöhn || In deinem lieben Lichte gehn! (Göthe). 25. O daß ſie ewig grünen bliebe || Die ſchöne Zeit der jungen Liebe! (Schiller). 26. Nur zwei Tugenden gibt's (gibt es). O wären ſie immer vereinigt, immer die Güte auch groß, immer die Größe auch gut (Schiller). 27. Was ich ohne dich (Muſe) wäre, weiß ich nicht (Schiller).

## Der Löwe und der Fuchs.

„Herr Löwe," ſprach der Fuchs, „ich muß ‖ Es dir nur ſagen, mein Verdruß ‖ Hat ſonſt kein Ende. ‖ Der Eſel ſpricht von dir nicht gut; ‖ Er ſagt, was ich an dir zu loben* fände, ‖ Das wüßt' er nicht; dein Heldenmuth ‖ Sei zweifelhaft, auch gäbſt du keine Proben ‖ Von Großmuth und Gerechtigkeit; ‖ Du würgteſt ohne Unterſchied;** ‖ Er könne dich nicht loben." ‖—Ein Weilchen ſchwieg der Löwe ſtill, ‖ Dann ſprach er: „Fuchs, er ſpreche, was er will, ‖ Denn was von mir ein Eſel ſpricht, ‖ das acht' ich nicht" (Gleim).

### 92.

der Geſchichtſchreiber (p. 300; p. 240) (–s), *historian*
richten [rīy'-ten, p. 246], *to judge*
die Gegenwart (p. 247), *the present time*
die Bewegung (bewegen, p. 332) (–n), *motion*
pflücken [pflük'-ken], *to pluck, pick*
ein paar (Paar, 358), *a few* (prop. two or three, this is written with a small p)
die Erdbeere (p. 153; p. 179), *strawberry*
die Erlaubniß (erlauben, p. 208), *permission*
tödlich* [teät'-lih], *mortal, dead* and adv.

1. Had I only (doch) such a beautiful book as 'you have there. 2. Historians maintain, that (say, the) posterity will judge the actions of the present. 3. He said that the army was already in motion. 4. I asked him, when he will go to Paris. 5. I have heard that he has received a large sum of money from a friend. 6. You had no reason to believe, that we had forgotten them. 7. He maintained that it was my fault, and even said that I had persuaded him to do it. 8. I forgot to ask my friend yesterday whether he had received 'your letter. 9. Do 'you know whether Mr. N. dines in (say, the) town to-day. 10. Did 'you ask him what o'clock it was? 11. Yes, I asked him, but he told me, he did not know (say, it). 12. She asked me, if I had a watch with (bei) me, or if I knew what o'clock it was. 13. My brother answered her that we had watches with us, but they did not go. 14. The thieves maintained they had found the watch. 15. She thought I had made it already and did not wish (wollen) to show it to her. 16. This morning I found two young children in my garden, and I asked them what they were doing there; they answered quietly that they had only picked (transl. plucked) a few strawberries for their little sick brother. 17. I asked them who had given them (say, the) permission to go into the garden and to pick (pluck) the strawberries. 18. They said, they had heard the owner of the garden was a very kind man and often sent fruit to the sick people; so (da) they had thought they would (würden) get (nehmen) some for their little brother. 19. We told her that we wanted (brauchen) the money to buy bread for our six children. 20. His sons had written to him that they wanted more money. 21. People said, 'you were mortally wounded. 22. God be with 'you! 23. (Let) Everybody be content with his lot (employ the subj. only).

*To be praised. **The poet uses Unterſcheid for the sake of rhyme.

☞ For Lexicology, see p. 385.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

abreiſen, 364
abſichtlich, 359
achtbar, 370
Amen, 358
Andenken, 359
anders, 376
anfaſſen, 376
Angſt, 361
ängſtlich, 359
anklagen, 359
anſchauen, 376
arg, 364
aufgehen, 365

Bankerott, 370
beantworten 370
begehen, 365
begleiten, 377
behaupten, 377
bekennen, 377
beklagen, 358
bequem, 381
beredt, 369
Bergeshöhe, 381
beſchützen, 377
Beſchwerde, 370
beſchwören, 377
beſtändig, 370
beſtrafen, 364
Bewegung, 382
Bewohner, 364
billig, 365
Bürde, 370

Carthago, 364
Cäſar, 364
Cigarre, 357

dagegen, 370
daher, 370
damit, 370
Daſein, 376
Dienſt, 376
dunkel, 365

Ebene, 358
Edelmann, 364
Edelſtein, 364
Edle, 369
Ehrſucht, 372
ei! 372
Eifer, 369
Eiferſucht, 369
zu eigen machen, 358
Einer, 364
einigen, 385
einſtehen, 358
empfangen, 369
eng, 361
entdecken, 365
entfliehen, 358
enthalten, 369
Erdbeere, 382
erfüllen, 360
Erfüllung, 357
erinnern, 369
Erlaubniß, 382
erleichtern, 370
ermeſſen, 358
ermüden, 376
ernten, 369
erobern, 364
erwachen, 365
Eſſen, 364
etwas, 376

Fabel, 377
Fehler, 365
Feier, 378
Feiertag, 376
Feldherr, 369
folglich, 365
fortfahren, 365
Frieden, 372

Gallien, 364
Gedanke, 365
Geduld, 370
Gegenwart, 382
gelegen, 366
Gelegenheit, 365
gelehrig, 364
gelten, 364
gerade (*just*)365
Gerechtigkeit 381
Geſchichtſchreiber
geſtehen37 6[382
Gewalt, 369
gewiß, 370
Gewiſſen, 357
ein gewiſſer, 372
Gleichmaß, 376
Größe, 381
Großmuth, 381
grünen, 381
Güte, 381
gütig, 357

hageln, 359
Halde, 378
Handel, 372
handeln, 372
Handelsmann, [370
Handelsſtadt 370
Hausthier, 364
heilig, 357
heimlich, 358
Held, 385
Heldenmuth, 381
Herrgott, 376
herzhaft, 381
hineinſchleichen, [376
hochherzig, 381
hold, 376

inner, 371
Innere, 369
irren, 366
Irrthum, 365

ja, 372
Jonah, 376
junges Blut, 358

Kanzel, 357
Kern, 369
Kohle, 376
Korb, 370
Kräutlein, 370
Krücke, 364
Künſtler, 376

laden, 366
Laſt, 364
lebhaft, 385
Leere, 376
leiden, 358
Leidenſchaft, 369
leiten, 377
lieb, 381
Loos, 377
Lungenſucht 372

melken, 359
Mennonit, 357
Mitgefühl, 369
Mondenſchein, [381
murren, 370
Muſe, 381

Nächſte, 357
Nebenmenſch,
nur, 370 [377
nützen, 358

ob, 376
ob—oder, 377
ober, 366
Obſt, 370

Paar, 358
ein paar, 382
Pein, 381
peinigen, 385
Peſt, 357
Pfand, 360
pfänden, 360
pflücken, 382
Predigt, 357
Probe, 381
Proceß, 376
Prophet, 376
Punkt, 369

Rathgeber, 370
Recht haben, 364
Reichthum, 364
reif 372
reifen, 369
rein, 376
Reiſegeld, 358
richten, 382
rühmen, 381

Sache, 370
Salz, 369
Schalk, 364
ſchauen, 378
Schein, 369
ſcherzen, 370
Schickſal, 369
der } Schild 371
das }
Schilderei, 371
Schilderer, 371
ſchildern, 371
Schilderung 369
Schrift, 357
ſchützen, 379
Sehnſucht, 372
ſelbſt, 370
Seuche, 372
ſeufzen, 370
ſicher, 361
Sicherheit, 358
ſiech, 372
ſichtbar, 369
ſonſt, 359
ſorgen, 376
ſtärken, 365
ſtillſchweigen 381
Streit, 370
Sucht, 372

tödtlich, } 382
tödlich, }
treiben, 376
triumphieren, [358

überladen, 370
übermeſſen, 359
um (*by*), 373
ungenügſam 376
ungern, 370
unſterblich, 365
untergehen, 365
Unterſchied, 381
Unwahrheit, 359
unzufrieden, 370

verdanken, 370
Verdruß, 381
vereinigen, 381
vergeben, 359
verjagen, 358
verlangen, 376
verlaſſen, 370
verpfänden, 358
verſchweigen 358
vertrauen, 358

Waffe, 377
walten, 372
Weg, 377
Wehmuth, 376
Veilchen, 381
Weißbrod, 376
welch ein! 376
wieder, 365
Winkel, 358
woher, 376
Wörterbuch, 359
würgen, 381

zeitig, 358
Ziel, 377
zielen, 377
zufrieden, 372
zuhören, 365
Zunge, 358
zurückkehren 359
zween, 358
zweifelhaft, 381
zweifeln, 385.

to accompany, [377
accordingly 365
adviser, 370
affair, 370
aim, 377
to aim, 377
Amen, 358 [376
to feel anxiety,
anxious, 359
appearance, 369
artist, 376
to assert, 377
to awake, 365

bad, 364
basket, 370
beloved, 381
betimes, 358
blunder, 365
burden 364, 370

Cæsar, 364
to care, 376
to carry on, 376
certain, 370
cheap, 365
to choke, 381
cigar, 357
clean, 376
coal, 376
comfortable 381
commander-in-chief, 369 [370
commercial city
to commit, 365
to complain 358
to confess, 365 [377
to confide, 358
to conquer, 364
conscience, 364
consequently, [365
constant, 370
to contain, 369
contest, 370
to continue, 365
convenient, 381
crutch, 364

dark, 365
dear, 381
delineation, 369
to depart, 364
description, 369
to desire, 376
destiny, 369
dictionary, 359
difference, 381
dim, 365 [370
discontented,
to discover, 365
docile, 364
doubtful, 381
to drive away, [358
eloquent, 369
else, 359
emptiness, 376
error, 365
to escape, 358
existence, 376

fable, 377 [377
fellow-creature,
a few, 382
to forgive, 359
fortune, 369
fruitage, 370
fulfilment, 357

Gaul, 364
general, 369
to glorify, 381
gracious, 376
greatness, 381
to grow green, [381
to grumble, 370
to guard, 377
to guide, 377

to hail, 359
little herb, 370
heroism 381 [381
high-minded,
high-spirit, 381
hint, 358
historian, 382
holy, 357
holy-day, 376

if, 376
immortal, 365
to infer, 358
inhabitant, 364
inside, 369
intentionally, [359
jealousy, 369
to jest, 370
jewel, 364
to joke 370
to judge, 382
just, 365
justice, 381

kernel, 369
kind, 357
kindness, 381

lawsuit, 376
to lead, 377
to leave, 370
to lighten, 370
to listen, 365
load, 364
to load, 370
to look at, 376
the Lord, 376
lot, 377 [358
to make use of,
Menonite, 357
to milk a cow,
mistake 365 [359
money for travelling, 358
moonshine, 381
mortal, 382
motion, 382
muse, 381

neighbor, 357
nevertheless, [365
nobleman, 364

occasion, 365
opportunity 365
otherwise, 359
to owe, 370 [376
own, 358

pain, 381
pair, 358
passion, 369
patience, 370
to pawn, 358
permission, 382
pest, 357
to pick, 382
plane, 358
pledge, 358
to pluck, 382
point, 369
power, 369
to praise, 381
the present time [382
process, 376
proof, 381
prophet, 376
to protect, 377
pulpit, 357
to punish, 364
pure, 376

to reap, 369
to receive, 369
remembrance, [359
to remind, 369
respectable, 370
to return, 359
in return, 365
riches, 364
to be right, 364
to grow ripe 369
to rise, 365
road, 377
rogue, 364

sacred, 357
safety, 358
salt, 369
secret, 358
secured, 376
security, 358
to seize, 376
self, 370
sermon, 357
service, 376
to set, 365
to set out, 364
to sigh, 370
to be silent about, 358
to be silent, 381
to sneak into, [376
something, 376
strawberry, 382
to suffer, 358
to support, 365
sure, 370
to swear, 377
sympathy, 369

therefore, 370
thought, 365
to tire, 376
tiresome, 376
tongue, 358
torment, 381
trader, 370
trial, 381
to triumph, 358
trouble, 370
to trust, 358

to unite, 381
unsatisfied, 376
untruth, 359
unwillingly 370 [381
to be verdant,
vexation, 381
visible, 369

wag, 364
wealth, 364
weapon, 377
what a! 376
whence, 376
whether, 376
whether—or 377
a little while,
wink, 358 [381
wofulness, 376
to be worth 364
worthy, 369
writing, 357

zeal, 369.

**Bequem,** *convenient,* **becoming,** fr. the obs. quemen, for kommen; A. S. *cweman,* to please, suit.

**Heldenmuth,** *heroical spirit*; Held, *hero,* A. S. *häleth,* man, warrior; prop. **helmed,** covered by armor; see Helm, p. 265.

**zweifelhaft,** *doubtful,* fr. zweifeln, *to doubt,* p. 316, and the suffix haft; conn. with haben, still existing in haften (p. 303), *to stick, to cleave.* The suffix -'haft' expresses *possession,* or *a propensity to an action,* as zweifelhaft, *doubtful*; herzhaft, *courageous* (lit. endowed with heart); lebhaft, *lively* (=full of life).

**Probe, proof,** *trial, experiment,* fr. Lat. *probo,* to prove (Tab. V. 5).

**würgen,** *to choke, strangle, destroy*; Dutch, *worgen*; comp. to **worry,** lit. to choke (Webster).

**Pein, pain,** *torment,* fr. Gr. *poine,* Lat. *pœna,* punishment; of the same root **peinigen,** ahd. *peinen,* and to **pine,** to suffer pain.

**vereinigen,** *to unite,* fr. **einigen,** *to make* **one**; fr. **ein, one.**

**Muſe, muse,** fr. Lat. *musa,* Gr. *mousa.*

**ein paar** (paar, with a *small* p), *a few,* prop. *two* or *three* (comp. Paar, p. 358).

**tödtlich, dead*ly*,** *mortal,* fr. Tod, p. 179 (hence the usual writing not correct; it should be tödlich; Weigand).

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 83.

1. Komm und iß ein wenig (or etwas); hier iſt friſches Brod und gute Butter. 2. Gehen Sie zu Ihrer Tante, und ſagen Sie ihr dieſe gute Neuigkeit. 3. Sei ſo gut (or gütig) und reiche mir jenes Buch. 4. Sehen Sie, jener kleine Knabe nimmt Ihr Wörterbuch. 5. Nimm es nicht; gib mir das Buch, und bring es dann deinem Lehrer. 6. Sprich nicht ſo langſam, mein Kind. 7. Sprechet (or ſprecht) lauter, Knaben! 8. Sprechen Sie gefälligſt ein wenig (or etwas) lauter. 9. Du hältſt deine Feder nicht gut, mein Kind; halt ſie ſo. 10. Sei nicht faul. 11. Wenn Sie wiederkommen (or zurückkommen), bringen Sie gefälligſt Ihre Schweſter mit. 12. Unſer Kutſcher fährt zu ſchnell; ſag ihm, er ſoll ein wenig (or etwas) langſamer fahren. 13. Laßt uns nach Hauſe gehen; die Uhre hat eben neun geſchlagen (more usual, es hat eben neun geſchlagen). 14. Blas deine Suppe ein wenig, Wilhelm, ſonſt wirſt du dir den Mund verbrennen. 15. Gehet (or geht) nicht aufs (auf das) Eis, es wird berſten; es iſt ſchon geborſten. 16. Hilf mir dieſe Stücke Eis (or Eisſtücke) zerbrechen (p. 339. 2). 17. Empfehlen Sie mich gefälligſt Ihrer Schweſter, und geben Sie ihr dieſen Ring zum Andenken. 18. Schilt das arme Mädchen nicht; ſie hat es nicht abſichtlich gethan. 19. Bitte, eſſen Sie ein wenig (or etwas) von dieſem Kuchen; ich habe ihn für Sie gebracht. 20. Gib uns unſer täglich Brod, und vergib uns unſere Schuld. 21. Bitte, tritt nicht auf die Blumen. 22. Bitte, miß das Getreide über (or noch einmal), bevor du einen Menſchen anklagſt. 23. Sage der Magd, ſie ſoll die Kuh melken und die friſche Milch hereinbringen. 24. Sie ſagt mir, daß ſie ſchon alle Kühe gemolken hat. 25. Laß mich gehen (or laß mich in Ruhe); ich habe keine Luſt jetzt auszugehen; meine Eltern ſind ausgegangen,

und ich muß zu Hause bleiben. 26. Schwöre nie (or niemals); ein guter Knabe sagt niemals eine Unwahrheit. 27. Machen Sie alle Thüren und Fenster zu; es wird bald zu hageln anfangen. 28. Bieg nicht meinen Stock, Johann, und vergiß nicht, daß du einen schon zerbrochen hast. 29. Schreiben Sie ja bald; wir warten ängstlich auf Nachrichten von Hause. 30. Lieber Freund, bleiben Sie doch bei uns bis morgen. 31. Bleib bei uns; es wird schon dunkel. 32. Horche, wie der Wind durch die Bäume pfeift.

## 85.

1. Höre zweimal (or zwei Mal), ehe (or bevor) du einmal sprichst. 2. Als ich erwachte, sah ich den alten Herrn vor mir. 3. Als der junge Student seinen Irrthum entdeckte, verlor er alle Hoffnung. 4. Er verlor alle Hoffnung, als er seinen Irrthum entdeckte. 5. Wir machten Feuer, nachdem wir trocknes Holz geholt hatten. 6. Nachdem wir trocknes Holz geholt hatten, machten wir Feuer. 7. Obgleich dieser Herr in unsrer Nachbarschaft wohnt, haben wir noch keine Gelegenheit gehabt, mit ihm zu sprechen. 8. Das Pferd ist alt, und doch hat er es nicht billig verkauft. 9. Er ist reich, nichts desto weniger (or dessen ungeachtet) ist er sehr sparsam. 10. Ich denke, daher bin ich. 11. Der Arzt besucht ihn täglich, folglich muß er sehr krank sein. 12. Manche Personen loben uns, damit (or auf daß) wir sie wieder loben. 13. Unser Freund blieb zu Hause, weil sein Freund ihn heute besuchen wird. 14. Wir sehen, daß die Sonne größer als der Mond ist. 15. Besuchten Sie Herrn N., als Sie in Berlin waren? 16. Die Sonne geht unter. 17. Es wird dunkel, wenn die Sonne untergeht. 18. Wir reisten des Morgens ab. 19. Die Sonne ging eben auf, als wir abreisten. 20. Er fing das Studium der deutschen Sprache vor drei Jahren an. 21. Als ich das Studium der deutschen Sprache anfing, war ich noch sehr jung. 22. Mancher Reiche wird arm, während mancher Arme reich wird. 23. Es ist gerade so (or eben so) heiß, als es gestern war. 24. Als ich vor ein paar (vor einigen or wenigen) Wochen in Berlin ankam, fand ich Herrn N. nicht. 25. Je wärmer die Luft ist, desto (or je) leichter ist sie. 26. Er spricht so schnell, daß man ihn nicht verstehen kann. 27. Obgleich er sah, daß Keiner (or Niemand) zuhörte, fuhr er doch zu sprechen fort. 28. Der Gedanke, daß wir unsterblich sind, stärkt mich. 29. Ich gestehe, daß ich einen Fehler begangen habe.

## 88.

1. Ungern verließ ich den Ort, wo ich viele Freunde hatte. 2. Meine Schwester, deren Brief ich noch nicht beantwortet habe (or auf deren B. ich noch nicht geantwortet h.) wird morgen zurückkehren. 3. Können Sie mir den Namen des Knaben sagen, dessen Eltern letzte (better vorige) Woche hier waren? 4. Wo Bienen sind, da ist Honig. 5. Der Kaufmann, in dessen Hände Ihr Geld ist, hat Bankerott gemacht. 6. Ich werde thun, was ich versprochen habe (or Ich werde, was ich v. h., thun). 7. Was ich versprochen habe, werde ich thun. 8. Wir werden Ihnen folgen, wohin Sie uns führen. 9. Wohin Sie uns führen, werden wir Ihnen folgen. 10. Zeigen Sie mir gefälligst den Mann, den Sie gefragt haben. 11. Was er über Amerika sagte, war mir neu. 12. Ihr Neffe erzählte etwas, was ich nicht glauben kann. 13. Wofür (p. 337) danken Sie mir? 14. Womit hat er dich verwundet? 15. Ich kann Ihnen nicht sagen, wovon er gesprochen hat. 16. Womit kann ich Ihnen dienen? 17. Wer lügt, stiehlt auch. 18. Die arme Frau (or das arme Weib), deren Mann so krank ist, hat zwei Kinder. 19. Der Garten, dessen Thor offen ist, ist unser. 20. Eine Stadt, deren Einwohner meist Kaufleute und Handelsleute sind, ist eine Handelsstadt. 21. Eltern, deren Kinder undankbar sind, sind sehr unglücklich. 22. Die Schüler,

denen jene Bücher gehören, sind Söhne sehr achtbarer Eltern. 23. Die Frau, der (or welcher) meine Tante das Geld gab, ist sehr dankbar. 24. Dieser Kaufmann hat manches, das andere Kaufleute nicht haben. 25. Wer mein Freund ist, muß mir meine Fehler sagen. 26. Das ist etwas, was (or das) ich nie verstehen konnte. 27. Das Beste, das sie thun können, ist den Streit aufzugeben. 28. Können Sie mir die Namen der Rathgeber sagen, denen er folgt? 29. Die Sache, von der (or welcher) wir gestern gesprochen, ist wichtiger, als wir dachten. 30. Ich verdanke es Ihnen, der Sie mich immer mit Güte überladen haben.

## 90.

1. Er behauptet, daß er da gewesen sei. 2. Er behauptet, daß er da gewesen ist. 3. Er schreibt sehr fleißig, auf daß (or damit) er diesen Monat die Arbeit (or das Werk) vollende. 4. Ich fragte ihn, wer gekommen sei; was er gehört habe; wo sein Bruder gewesen sei; wann sein Onkel ankommen werde; und wohin er morgen gehen werde. 5. Er wollte (or wünschte zu) wissen, ob ich den Sohn des Doctors kenne. 6. Mein Vater sagte mir, daß der Mond immer die Erde auf ihrem Wege um die Sonne begleite. 7. Es ist eine Fabel, daß der Löwe über alle Thiere herrsche. 8. Ich fragte ihn, wann er nach Berlin gehen werde. 9. Der Arzt hofft, daß das Kind bald genesen werde. 10. Sie wünschen, daß ich zu Hause bleibe. 11. Ich wünsche, daß Sie bald kommen. 12. Gott sei mit euch! 13. Bringe ein jeder seine Waffen mit! 14. Ihr Onkel wünscht, daß Sie für jetzt in Deutschland bleiben. 15. Der Himmel helfe meinen guten Kindern! 16. Ein jeder sei mit seinem Loose zufrieden. 17. Der Himmel begleite dich! 18. Gott beschütze Sie! 19. Jedermann thue seine Pflicht. 20. Lange lebe der König! 21. Ob das so sei oder nicht, will ich nicht beschwören. 22. Sie antwortete nicht, als ich sie fragte, ob sie mich liebe. 23. Halt ihn, daß (or damit) er nicht falle. 24. Leite du, o Gott! diesen unsern Freund, auf daß er dir treu diene. 25. Man sagt, daß er gestohlen habe (or er habe gestohlen). 26. Ich weiß, daß er gestohlen hat. 27. Ich fürchte, daß er sterben werde (or er werde sterben). 28. Sagte ich Ihrem Neffen nicht, daß ich die Neuigkeit von den Seinigen gehört habe (or ich habe die N. von den S. gehört), warum glaubte er mir nicht? 29. Er sagte mir, daß es meine Pflicht sei (or es sei meine P.), meinen Nebenmenschen zu lieben. 30. Er sagte, daß er krank gewesen sei (or er sei k. gewesen). 31. Der Capitän behauptete, daß er den Reiter nicht gesehen habe (or er habe den Reiter nicht gesehen). 32. Ich gestehe, daß ich den Fehler begangen habe. 33. Ziele gut, daß du den Apfel treffest. 34. Wir glaubten, er werde kommen. 35. Meine Mutter glaubt auch, daß er heute nicht kommen wird. 36. Er sagt, er sei noch jung und habe genug Geld. 37. Er sagt, daß er London noch nicht gesehen hat und nächsten Monat dahin reisen wird.

## 92.

1. Hätte ich doch ein so schönes Buch wie Sie da haben. 2. Die Geschichtschreiber behaupten, daß die Nachwelt die Handlungen der Gegenwart richten werde. 3. Er sagte, daß die Armee schon in Bewegung sei. 4. Ich fragte ihn, wann er nach Paris gehen werde. 5. Ich habe gehört, daß er eine große Summe Geldes von einem Freunde empfangen habe. 6. Ihr hattet keinen Grund zu glauben, daß wir sie vergessen hätten. 7. Er behauptete, es sei mein Fehler, und sagte sogar (or selbst), daß ich ihn überredet hätte es zu thun. 8. Ich vergaß gestern meinen Freund zu fragen, ob er Ihren Brief erhalten habe. 9. Wissen Sie, ob Herr N. heute in der Stadt speise? 10. Fragten Sie ihn, wie viel Uhr (or wie spät) es sei? 11. Ja, ich fragte ihn, aber er sagte mir, er wisse es nicht (or daß er es n. w.). 12. Sie fragte mich, ob ich eine Uhre bei mir hätte, oder ob ich

wiſſe, wie ſpät es ſei. 13. Mein Bruder antwortete ihr, daß wir Uhren bei uns hätten, ſie gingen aber nicht. 14. Die Diebe behaupteten, ſie hätten die Uhre gefunden. 15. Sie dachte, ich hätte es ſchon gemacht und wollte es ihr nicht zeigen. 16. Heute Morgen fand ich zwei junge Kinder in meinem Garten, und ich fragte ſie, was ſie da thäten; ſie antworteten ruhig, daß ſie nur ein paar Erdbeeren für ihren kleinen kranken Bruder gepflückt hätten. 17. Ich fragte ſie, wer ihnen die Erlaubniß gegeben habe, in den Garten zu gehen und die Erdbeeren zu pflücken. 18. Sie ſagten, ſie hätten gehört, der Beſitzer (or Eigenthümer) des Gartens ſei ein ſehr guter Mann und ſchicke oft kranken Leuten Obſt, da hätten ſie gedacht, ſie würden einige für ihren kranken Bruder nehmen. 19. Wir ſagten ihr, daß wir das Geld brauchten, um Brod für unſere ſechs Kinder zu kaufen. 20. Seine Söhne hatten ihm geſchrieben, daß ſie mehr Geld brauchten. 21. Die Leute ſagten, Sie wären (or daß Sie .... wären) tödlich verwundet. 22. Gott ſei mit Ihnen! 23. Jeder (or Jedermann) ſei mit ſeinem Looſe zufrieden.

## [64.] THE CONDITIONAL MOOD.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Ich **würde** dieſes Haus kaufen, **wenn** ich Geld **hätte.** | *I should buy this house, if I had money.* |
| 2. **Wenn** ich Geld **hätte, ſo würde** ich dieſes Haus kaufen. | |
| 3. Ich **würde** Sie beſucht haben, **wenn** ich Zeit gehabt **hätte.** | *I should have visited you, if I had had time.* |
| 4.—*a.* **Wenn** du fleißig **wäreſt, ſo** lernteſt du etwas. | *If you were industrious, you would learn something.* |
| *b.* Du **lernteſt** etwas, **wenn** du fleißig **wäreſt.** | |
| *c.* **Wäreſt** du fleißig, **ſo lernteſt** du etwas. | *Were you industrious, you would learn something.* |
| *d.* Du **lernteſt** etwas, **wäreſt** du fleißig. | |
| 5. Welches Haus **würden** Sie kaufen? | *Which house would you buy?* |
| 6. Thun Sie, **als wenn** Sie zu Hauſe **wären.** | *Do as if you were at home.* |
| 7. **Wer** er auch **ſei**, ich kann ihn nicht entſchuldigen. | *Whoever he is, I cannot excuse him.* |
| 8. Wenn ihr tapfer **fechtet**, ſo **werdet** ihr ſiegen. | *If you fight bravely, you will conquer.* |

*Observations.*—1. There are two forms in German for the **Conditional:**

*a.* The *longer* or *compound* form, consisting of the *Imperf. Subj.* of the verb **werden,** *to become, to get, to be*, and the *Infinit. Present* or *Past* of the verb employed in the sentence, and resembles the Engl. conditional formed by '*would*,' '*should*'; as **Ich würde lernen,** *I* **should learn;** **ich würde gelernt haben,** *I* **should have learned.**

*b.* The *shorter* or *simple* form, for which is used the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive.* Thus in Engl. the imperf. subj. '**it were**'=*it should be.*

2. When a condition is stated with the possibility of its fulfilment, it is expressed by the indicative; M. S. 8.

3. When both the *inference* (which is regularly contained in the main clause) and the *condition* are stated, for the *inference* the longer form is generally used, and for the *condition* the shorter; M. S. 1, 2, 3.

4. The conditional clause is introduced by the conjunction **wenn**, *if*; and when it precedes the principal clause, the latter is inverted, that is, the verb precedes the subject, and generally begins with **ſo**; M. S. 2, 3, 4.

5. The conjunction **wenn**, like the Engl. *'if'* may be omitted, in which case (just as in English) the verb precedes the subject; M. S. 4, *c. d.*

6. The condition is sometimes merely understood or contracted with the inference; M. S. 5, Welches Haus würden Sie kaufen (suppose you had the money); Ich hätte anders gehandelt, *I should have acted differently* (if it had been my case).

7. Concessive sentences, introduced in English by *whoever, whatever, however*, and in German by **wer, was, wie,** followed by **auch**, generally require the subjunctive, M. S. 7.

## 93.

der Prediger (predigen, p. 275)(–s), *preacher*
das Fernglas (fern, p. 263), *tele-*
der Planet*[plä-nät'] (–en), *planet*
die Schuld [shült](–en), *debt, guilt*
das Dunkel (dunkel, p. 365) (–s), *darkness, dark*
der Eigennutz (eigen, p. 263, nutzen, p. 358) (–es), *self-interest, self-*
der Pfennig*[pfĕn'-nĭ] (–s, –e), *penny*
die Sparbüchſe*[ſparen, p. 269], *saving-box*
das Geraſſel (raſſeln, p. 82) (–s), *clatter, rattling*
das Ding[dĭng] (–es, –e), *thing*
die Falſchheit (falſch, p. 144), *false-*
der Eid*[ī] (–es, –e), *oath*
die Zufriedenheit (zufrieden, p. 372), *contentment*
das Junge (jung, p. 84) (–n), *a young one, a little one*
der Geißbock (Geiß, p. 305, Bock, p. 87), *he-goat*
ade*[ä-dä'], *farewell! adieu!*
Lieb=mein Lieber, *my dear*
überleben, *to survive, outlive*
gemein,* *universal, general*
das Gericht (richten, p. 246), *court of justice*
die Elle*[ĕl'-l$^{e}$] (–n), *ell, yard*
daß Maß (p. 253) (–es, –e), *measure*
die Münze*[mĭn'-ts$^{e}$] (–n), *coin*
das Flüglein (Flügel, p. 203), *the little wing*
daheim, (heim, p. 281), *at home*
das Paradies*[pä"-rä-dēs'] (–es, –e), *paradise*
durchbringen (bringen, p. 305), *to get through, to urge one's way through*
der Tabak[tä'-bäk] (–s), *tobacco*
fortſingen *to sing on, continually*
die Bruſt[brüst], (Brüſte), *breast*
die Herrlichkeit,* *glory, magnificence*
die Luſt (p. 348), *joy, delight*
der Bediente (dienen, p. 208), *servant*

mündlich*[mΛnt'-lIγ], *verbal, oral*
der Auftrag*[aüf'-tr.] (-s, Aufträge), *commission, errand*
beſorgen (Sorgfalt, p. 325), *to take care, to effect*
anſchreien (ſchreien, p. 92), *to cry, to call at*
ſelber (=ſelbſt, p. 370), *self*
vermögen (mögen, p. 281), *to be able, to have the power.*

1. Ich würde reich ſein, wenn ich ſparſamer wäre. 2. Ich würde reich ſein, wäre ich ſparſamer. 3. Wenn ich ſparſamer wäre, würde ich reich ſein. 4. Wäre ich ſparſamer, ſo wäre ich reich. 5. Mein Nachbar würde dieſes Haus kaufen, wenn er Geld hätte. 6. Wir würden ins Theater gehen, wenn der Vater es uns erlaubte. 7. Die Leute würden den Prediger beſſer verſtehen, wenn er lauter ſpräche. 8. Wenn Karl mehr Zeit gehabt hätte, würde er ſeine Aufgabe beſſer gelernt haben. 9. Wenn meine Schweſter glücklicher wäre, würde ich zufrieden ſein. 10. Ich würde zufrieden ſein, wäre meine Schweſter glücklicher. 11. Wenn du fleißiger geweſen wäreſt, würdeſt du mehr gelernt haben. 12. Hätten wir keine Ferngläſer, ſo würden wir viele Planeten nicht ſehen. 13. Unſer Freund würde Geld genug haben, wenn er nicht große Verluſte gehabt hätte. 14. Er hätte glücklicher ſein können, wenn er nicht ſo viel Schulden gehabt hätte. 15. Wenn alle dächten wie du, ſo ſähe man im Winter nicht ſo viele Leute auf dem Eiſe. 16. Bete, als hülfe kein Arbeiten; arbeite, als hülfe kein Beten (Prov.). 17. Es iſt keine Eule, die nicht ſchwüre, ſie hätte die ſchönſten Jungen (Prov.). 18. Machte der Bart heilig, ſo wäre der Geißbock heiliger Vater (Prov.). 19. Spare dein Brod, || So haſt du in der Noth (Prov.). 20. Ade, Lieb (mein Lieber), ich kann nicht weinen, || Verlier (see 5) ich dich, ich weiß noch einen (Prov.). 21. Armuth und Alter, das ſind zwei ſchwere Bürden, es wär an einer genug (Prov.). 22. Redet (see 5) Geld, || So ſchweigt die Welt (Prov.). 23. Ja, wenn das Wenn und Aber nicht wär, || Wär mancher Bauer ein edler Herr (Prov.). 24. Wenn Wünſchen hülfe, wären alle reich (Prov.). 25. Hätten wir alle einen Glauben, || (supply hätten wir) Gott und das gemeine Beſte vor Augen, || Guten Frieden und recht Gericht, || Eine Elle, Maß und Gewicht, || Gleiche Münze und gutes Geld, || So ſtünd es wohl in aller Welt (Prov.). 26. Raſt' ich, ſo roſt ich (Prov.). 27. Iſt die Katze nicht zu Haus, || Springt auf Tiſch und Bank die Maus (Prov.). 28. Die Roſe blüht nicht ohne Dornen. Ja; wenn nur aber die Dornen die Roſe nicht überlebten! (Jean Paul). 29. Trägſt du Zufriedenheit in deiner Seele, ſo haſt du Glück für dich genug (Schiller). 30. Wenn ich ein Vöglein wär und auch zwei Flüglein hätt, flög' ich zu dir! Weil's aber nicht kann ſein, || Bleib ich daheim (Volkslied). 31. Mir gäb es keine größere Pein, || Wär ich im Paradies allein (Göthe). 32. Und' wärſt' du' auch' zum fernſten Ort, || Zur kleinſten Hütte durchgedrungen,' || Was hilft es dir, du findeſt dort || Tabak und böſe Zungen (Göthe).

## Selbſterkenntniß.

Ein Bedienter hatte einen mündlichen Auftrag ſeines Herrn ſchlecht beſorgt. „Dummkopf," ſchrie ihn dieſer zornig an, „wenn ich einen ſolchen Eſel hätte ſchicken wollen, dann wäre ich lieber ſelber gegangen."

## So ſchön hat Gott die Welt gemacht.

v. O. v. Redwitz.

Ihr lieben Vöglein, ſingt nur fort,
So lang's (lang es) vermag die kleine Bruſt,
Singt von des Frühlings Herrlichkeit,
Singt von des Frühlings Lieb' und Luſt!

Und ſänget ihr auch ewig fort
Viel tauſend Jahre, Tag und Nacht,
Ihr könntet ſingen nie genug—
So ſchön hat Gott die Welt gemacht.

### 94.

der Schlittſchuh*[shlit'-shû], *skate*
der Schlitt'ſchuh'läufer (laufen, p. 101), *skater*
rauh*[rou], *rough*
der Um'ſtand*[um, p. 181, ständ] (es, ſtände), *circumstance*
**Umſtände machen, to stand upon ceremony** (Idiom)
die Ernte (ernten, p. 369)(–n) *harvest*
reichlich (reich, p. 100), *plentiful*
unternehmen (p. 330), *to undertake*
verzagen[tsah'-gen], *to despair*
vorſtellen (vor, p. 134, ſtellen, p. 260), *to place or put before a thing*
**Jemanden Einem vorſtellen, to introduce** (to present) **one person to another** (Idiom).

1. If 'you had been on the ice yesterday, 'you would have had much pleasure (Transl. this and the next five sentences in four different ways). 2. I should have gone (use ſein), if I had had time. 3. Many would be much (weit) more happy, if they were only more contented. 4. If my brother had money, he would undertake a journey. 5. I should have slept better, if I had not dreamt so much. 6. If the weather were finer, I should go out. 7. I suppose (transl. this verb only by wohl) 'you have had much pleasure there, as (da) 'you are a good skater. 8. I should have had greater pleasure, if I had better skates and if the ice had not been so rough. 9. 'Your brother would not have become ill, if he had lived (wohnen) in a healthier house and the water had been better. 10. Do not stand upon (transl. *make no c.*) ceremony; do as if 'you were at home. 11. The harvest will be plentiful; it would be still (noch) more plentiful, if we had had a little more rain. 12. Whatever a man has to suffer, he must not despair. 13. If I were not unwell, I would go with you (thou). 14 If I had had wine, I should have drunk some (etwas). 15. What would 'you have answered, if 'you had been in (an) my place? 16. The birds would not fly, if they had no wings. 17. My aunt would not write, if she were ill. 18. If the water, were better, these people would be healthier. 19. I should have written a letter, if I had had paper. 20. If I had paper, I should have written a letter. 21. Had I had paper, I should have written a letter. 22. People would understand the preacher better, if he spoke louder. 23. Did the preacher speak louder, people would understand him better. 24. Had my friend been more industrious, he would have learned much more. 25. If I were economical, I should be rich. 26. Had he money, he would buy a

house. 27. Would 'you believe it, if 'you had not seen it yourself (put ſelbſt before the pa. part.). 28. We should have come ourselves (ſelbſt), if we had had time. 29. Had I known it myself (ſelbſt), I should not have asked him. 30. Had I 'your money, I should buy that fine garden. 31. If he had saved, he would now be a rich man. 32. If 'you had been here, I should have introduced 'you to him.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Planet, planet,** Gr. *planetes*, a *wanderer, roamer*, fr. *planaomai*, to *wander, to roam about* (*wandering* about among the other stars).

**Pfennig, penny,** A. S. *penning, penig*, fr. ahd. *pfant*=**Pfand, pawn,** *pledge* (p. 360), the stamped coin to be considered as the pawn's worth; Tab. V. 20.

**Sparbüchſe,** *saving*-**box; Büchſe,** fr. Buchs, Lat. *buxus*, **box**-*tree*, hence a case made of *box* or other wood.

**Eid, oath,** A. S. *adh*, akin to *aihtha*=what is said, Lat. *aio*=I say; acc. to *Wackernagel*, it is orig.=*curse*, imprecation; Gr. *oitos*, fate, lot, doom, calling for God's vengeance in case of falsehood; Tab. V. 9.

**ade,** *Good-by, farewell*, **adieu,** fr. Fr. *a' Dieu*, Lat. *ad*, to, *Deus*, God, hence *to God!*

**gemein** (here for allgemein), *universal, general*, for the usual meaning of gemein, see p. 203.

**mündlich,** *oral, verbal*, fr. der **Mund, mouth** (Tab. V. 26), ahd. *munt*, A. S. *muth, mudh* (also=entrance, door); derivation obscure.

**Elle, ell,** a measure of length; orig. taken from the arm, for Eine, A. S. *eln*, Lat. *ulna*, Gr. *olene*, the **el**bow, der **El**bogen.

**Münze,** *coin*, **money,** prop. what is **mint**ed; A. S. *mynet*, fr. Lat. *moneta* (because in the temple of *Juno Moneta* the Roman money was coined).

**Paradies, paradise,** Gr. *paradeisos*, Hebr. *pardes*, Pers. *firdaus*, a park, a pleasure-garden, the garden of Eden; a place of bliss.

**Schlittſchuh,** *skate*, fr. ſchlittern; A. S. *slidan*, to **slide**, allied to *glide*; Tab. V. 11.

**rauh, rough,** A. S. *hruh, ruh*; Germ. rauch and rauh; Tab. V. 18.

**Umſtand,** *circum***stance,** *ceremony*, fr. umſtehen, *to stand around*, viz. that which stands around, all particulars; thus the Engl. *circum*=round, *stance*, from Lat. *sto*, to stand.

**vermögen,** *to be able, to have the power*; ver- and **mögen, may,** orig. have **might,** power; comp. mächtig, p. 171.

**Auftrag,** *charge, order, commission, errand*, fr. auftragen (auf=up, tragen =*to bear*), *to bear* or *carry up, to charge one with, to impose, enjoin.*

**Herrlichkeit,** *glory, magnificence* (prop. *lordliness*), fr. Herr see herrlich, p. 311.

## [65.] REFLECTIVE VERBS AND PRONOUNS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Warum verbirgſt [l'] du **dich**? | *Why do you hide yourself?* |
| 2. Er irrte / Sie irrte / Die Männer irrten } **ſich.** | *He was mistaken. / She was mistaken. / The men were mistaken.* |
| 3. Wir haben **uns** geirrt. | *We have been mistaken.* |
| 4. Vor **dir** ſiehſt du die Alpen. | *You see the Alps before you.* |
| 5. Befinden **Sie ſich** wohl? | *Are you well?* |
| 6. Schadeſt du **dir**? | *Do you injure yourself?* |
| 7. Ich **habe mich** ſehr geirrt. | *I have been very much mistaken.* |
| 8. Sie **haben ſich** (ſelbſt) geſchlagen. | *They have struck themselves.* |
| 9. Sie **haben ſich** (einander) geſchlagen. | *They have struck one another.* |
| 10. Er liebt **ſich ſelbſt** am meiſten. | *He loves himself most.* |
| 11. Du haſt es **ſelbſt** geſagt. | *You yourself have said it.* |
| 12. Ich **ſelbſt** hatte es ihm verſprochen. | *I had promised it to him myself.* |

*Observations.*—1. **Reflective Verbs** express an action, the subject and object of which are identical, and, therefore, all transitive verbs can be used reflectively: **ich** lobe **mich**, *I praise myself*; **du** wäſcheſt **dich**, *you wash yourself.*

2. The **Reflective Pronouns.** The *personal pronouns* are called *reflective*, when in a sentence they denote the same person or thing as is denoted by the subject, thus **dich** in M. S. 1; **ſich** in M. S. 2.

3. The *reflective relation* in the first and second persons sing. as well as plur. is expressed in German by means of the personal pronouns; but in the third person, both of the sing. and plur., by means of the word **ſich**, which serves at once for the dative and accusative:

| *Dative.* | *Accusative.* |
|---|---|
| Ich getraue **mir**, *I am confident*, | Ich ſchäme **mich**, *I am ashamed*, |
| du getraueſt **dir** etc. | du ſchämſt **dich** etc. |
| wir getrauen **uns** | wir ſchämen **uns** |
| ihr getrauet **euch** | ihr ſchämt **euch** |
| but | but |
| *Sing.* er / ſie / es / man } getrauet **ſich** | *Sing.* er / ſie / es / man } ſchämt **ſich** |
| *Plur.* ſie getrauen **ſich.** | *Plur.* ſie ſchämen **ſich.** |

*Note.*—Verbs governing the genitive case (for which see the *Sec. Course*) express the reflective relation, both in sing. and plur., of all genders by the *pers. pron.* and not by ſich, which represents the dative and accusative only, as:

| | |
|---|---|
| Er ſpottet ſeiner, *he mocks himself*, | *Plur.* ſie ſpotten ihrer, *they mock themselves.* |
| ſie " ihrer etc. | |
| es " ſeiner | |

4. All *Reflective verbs* have **ſich** before the infinitives and participles, as **ſich** ſchämen, *to be or feel ashamed*; **ſich** befindend, *being* or *faring.*

5. The reflective pronoun is put *after* the verb in the present, imperfect and imperative; but in the compound tenses and the conditional it must be placed between the auxiliary and the main verb. In case the finite verb is removed to the beginning or the end of the clause, the reflective pronoun is placed after the subject; M. S. 5, 6.

6. The *reflective verbs* being in their *form* transitives (or objectives) (although in their signification intransitives), like all the transitive verbs, form their compound tenses by means of **haben**; M. S. 3, 7, 8, 9.

7. With the reflective must not be confounded the **Reciprocal form**, which is only employed in the plural, and which represents the action as *mutual* between two or more individuals, as ſie lieben **ſich**, *they love themselves*=**each other.**

8. To distinguish the reciprocal form from the reflective, the word **ſelbſt, self** is generally added to indicate the reflective, and **einander**, *each other*, the reciprocal form, as Sie kennen **ſich einander**, or more used without ſich: Sie kennen **einander**, *they know each other.* Wir lieben **uns**, or more distinctly, wir lieben **uns ſelbſt**, *we love ourselves.*

9. When the reflective English pronouns *myself, thyself, himself*, etc., are only emphatic repetitions of the nominative, they are translated by **ſelbſt** or **ſelber**; M. S. 11, 12.

10. **Selbſt** (or **ſelber**) placed before the subject or object, is often translated by the adverb **even**, as **Selbſt** ſeine Feinde achten ihn, **even** *his enemies respect him.*

*Note.*—1. In employing, for politeness sake, the pronoun **Sie**, instead of **du** and **ihr**, the pronoun "*yourself*" is rendered by **ſich**, as 'You praise 'yourself, **Sie** loben **ſich**; 'You flatter 'yourself, **Sie** ſchmeicheln **ſich.**

*Note.*—2. The English *self* (selves), when added to a pronoun in order to make it reflective, is not to be rendered in German: Save yourselves, rettet euch.

PARADIGM OF THE REFLECTIVE VERB ſich ſchämen, *to be ashamed.*

| *Infinitives.* | *Participles.* |
|---|---|
| *Pres.* **ſich** ſchämen, *to be ashamed.* | *Pres.* **ſich** ſchämend, *being ashamed.* |
| *Past.* **ſich** geſchämt haben, *to have been ashamed.* | *Past.* **ſich** geſchämt habend, *having been ashamed.* |

*Infinitive with* **zu**:

*Pres.* **ſich zu** ſchämen.
*Past.* **ſich** geſchämt **zu** haben.

PRESENT.

| *Indicative.* | | *Subjunctive.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ich ſchäme **mich**,<br>du ſchämſt **dich**,<br>er / ſie / es / man ſchämt **ſich**,<br>wir ſchämen **uns**,<br>ihr ſchämt **euch**,<br>ſie ſchämen **ſich**, | *I am ashamed*, etc. | ich ſchäme **mich**,<br>du ſchämeſt **dich**,<br>er / ſie / es / man ſchäme **ſich**,<br>wir ſchämen **uns**<br>ihr ſchämet **euch**,<br>ſie ſchämen **ſich**, | *I am ashamed*, etc. |

IMPERFECT.

*Indicative.*

ich ſchämte **mich**, *I was ashamed*, etc.

*Subjunctive.*

ich ſchämte **mich**, *I was ashamed*, etc.

PERFECT.

*I have been ashamed*
ich habe **mich** geſchämt,
du haſt **dich** "
er hat **ſich** "
wir haben **uns** "
ihr habt **euch** "
ſie haben **ſich** "

*I have been ashamed*
ich habe **mich** geſchämt,
du habeſt **dich** "
er habe **ſich** "
wir haben **uns** "
ihr habet **euch** "
ſie haben **ſich** "

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte **mich** geſchämt, *I had been ashamed*, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

*Pres.* ich würde **mich** ſchämen, *I should be ashamed*, etc. *Past.* { ich hätte **mich** geſchämt, ich würde **mich** geſchämt haben, *I should have been ashamed*, etc.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde **mich** ſchämen, etc.
*I shall be ashamed*, etc.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde **mich** geſchämt haben, etc.
*I shall have been ashamed*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

*Sing.* ſchäme **dich**, *be* (thou) *ashamed.*
ſchäme er **ſich**, *let him be ashamed.*
*Plur.* ſchämen wir **uns**, *let us be ashamed.*
ſchämet **euch**, *be* (you) *ashamed.*
ſchämen Sie ſich, *be* ('you) *ashamed.*
ſchämen ſie ſich, *let them be ashamed.*

## 95.

Befreien (frei, p. 253), *to set free, to liberate*
ſich irren (p. 114), *to mistake, to be mistaken*
ſich wärmen (p. 201), *to warm one's self*
ſich ſetzen (p. 182), *to sit down*
ſich bemühen (p. 181 and 274), *to endeavor*
ſich wundern (p. 281), *to wonder* (**über** with accus. **at**)
ſich freuen (p. 327, Freude), *to rejoice, to be rejoiced* (**über** with accus. **at**)
ſich beſtreben* *to endeavor, strive, make efforts*
befriedigen (Friede, p. 372), *to satisfy* (lit. make peaceful, set at rest)
künftig[r'] (kunft, p. 296, Ankunft), adv. *for the future*
ſich drehen,* *to turn* (round), *to revolve* (**um**, *round*)
ſich unterhalten (p. 155), *to amuse one's self*
ſich verneigen*[nɪ'], *to bow, to make a courtesy*
zehren*[tsä'-rᵉn], *to spend, to consume, waste*
ſich ernähren (nähren p. 282) *to feed*, fig. *to maintain one's self, to gain one's livelihood.*

sich beſinnen (p. 276, Beſonnenheit), *to call to mind, to think*
das Hütlein[hēt'-lin] (-s) (Hut), *the little hat*
sich ſtrecken (p. 277), *to stretch one's self*
unbedeckt (bedecken, 280), *uncovered*
blicken (p. 177, Blick), *to look*
sich befehden*[bᵉ-fā'-dᵉn], *to make war upon*
sich fürchten (fürchten, p. 201), *to be afraid of*
das Publicum*[pūb'-li-kūm] (-s), *the public*
sich abquälen*[äᵖ'-kvā'-lᵉn], *to harass one's self*
sich bedanken (danken, p. 108) *to thank.*

1. Ich befreie mich. 2. Wir befreien uns. 3. Sie befreit ſich. 4. Ihr befreit euch. 5. Wir waſchen uns. 6. Er wäſcht ſich. 7. Ihr waſcht euch. 8. Wer irrt ſich nicht zuweilen? 9. Wir werden uns ein wenig hier wärmen. 10. Der arme Mann ſetzte ſich und erzählte uns ſeine Geſchichte. 11. Auch wir ſetzten uns und hörten zu. 12. Wir lieben uns ſelbſt. 13. Wir lieben einander. 14. Sie haſſen ſich. 15. Sie haſſen einander. 16. Ich bemühe mich immer meine Aufgaben gut zu machen. 17. Wundern Sie ſich nicht über dieſe gute Nachricht? 18. Nein, ich wundere mich ganz und gar nicht; ich habe es nicht anders erwartet. 19. Hat ſich Karl über das ſchöne Geſchenk gefreut? 20. Ja, er hat ſich ſehr gefreut. 21. Sie irren ſich; es war nicht Karl, ſondern Luiſe, der ich das Geſchenk brachte. 22. Jedermann beſtrebt ſich zu gefallen. 23. Wir haben uns beſtrebt, deine Wünſche zu befriedigen. 24. Sie wird ſich beſtreben, ihre Aufgaben künftig beſſer zu lernen. 25. Dieſe Feder gehört meiner Schweſter; nein, ich habe mich geirrt; ſie gehört meinem Bruder. 26. Du irrſt dich ſehr oft. 27. Karl, ſetze dich! 28. Mädchen, ſetzt euch! 29. Meine Damen, ſetzen Sie ſich! 30. Meine Herrn, nehmen Sie Platz! 31. Die Erde dreht ſich in vier und zwanzig Stunden um ſich ſelber und bewegt ſich in einem Jahre um die Sonne. 32. Menſchen, die einander lieben, helfen ſich auch in der Noth. 33. Alle Menſchen lieben ſich ſelbſt. 34. Ich denke mir eine Zahl. 35. Wie haben Sie ſich geſtern Abend im Concert unterhalten? 36. Sehr gut, wir ſind auch ziemlich lange dort geweſen. 37. Anfang und Ende || Reichen ſich die Hände (Prov.). 38. Der Baum trägt ſich ſelbſt keine Äpfel (Prov.). 39. Die Mönche verneigen ſich nicht vor dem Abt, ſondern vor ſeinen Schlüſſeln (Prov.). 40. Wer Arbeit liebt und ſparſam zehrt, || Der ſich in aller Welt ernährt (Prov.). 41. Vorm (vor dem) Beginnen || Sich beſinnen || Macht gewinnen (Prov.). 42. Wer ſich zur Taube macht, den frißt der Falke (Prov.). 43. Die Augen glauben ſich ſelbſt, die Ohren andern Leuten (Prov.). 44. Der Erſte beim Feuer ſetzt ſich am nächſten (Prov.). 45. Gleich ſucht ſich, gleich findet ſich (Prov.). 46. Die Hoffahrt mißt ſich mit der langen Elle (Prov.). 47. Lerchen laſſen ſich nicht unter dem Hütlein fangen (Prov.). 48. Schöne Seelen finden ſich (Prov.). 49. Wer ſich nicht nach der Decke ſtreckt, || Dem bleiben die Füße unbedeckt (Göthe). 50. Willſt du dich ſelber erkennen, ſo ſieh, wie die Andern es treiben. Willſt du die Andern verſtehen, blick' in dein eignes Herz (Schiller). 51. Wenn ſich die Fürſten befehden, || Müſſen die Diener ſich morden und tödten (Schiller).

52. Wir wollen trauen auf den höchſten Gott, und uns nicht fürchten vor der Macht der Menſchen (Schiller). 53. Wer dem Publicum dient, iſt ein armes Thier; || Er quält ſich ab, Niemand bedankt ſich dafür (Göthe).

## 96.

die Majeſtät*[mah"-yĕs-tät'], *majesty*
pflegen*[pflä'-g$^{e}$n], *to foster, tend, to be wont*
entſchuldigen (Schuld, p. 389), *to excuse*
(das) Pommern[pŏm'-mĕrn], *Pomerania*
der Pommer, *Pomeranian*
un'gefähr*[fär"], *by chance, accidentally*
der Groſchen*[ö'] (–s), *groshen, groat*
der Burſche*[bür'-sh$^{e}$](–n), *fellow, companion*
viel* (p. 119), *much* (see Lex.)
etwa[ĕt'-vä], *about*
Louisd'or*[lü"-i-dor'] *Louis d'or*
erwidern (wider, p. 141), *to answer, to reply*
ſich beeilen (eilen, p. 327), *to make haste*
das Jahrgehalt* (halten, p. 293), *annual stipend, salary*
bezahlen*[b$^{e}$-tsah'-l$^{e}$n], *to pay*

**Gutes thun, to do** (*one*) **good** (Idiom).

### Güte eines Königs.

Der König Friedrich II (der Zweite) von Preußen war krank. Einer ſeiner Diener wachte bei ihm während der Nacht und pflegte ihn gut.

„Johann," ſagte einmal der König zu ihm, „ich kann nicht ſchlafen, erzähle mir etwas."—„Majeſtät, entſchuldigen Sie einen armen Unwiſſenden," antwortete jener beſcheiden; „was könnte (§63, 2, *c*, 4) ich Ihnen erzählen, ich weiß nichts."—Der König. „Woher biſt du?"—Johann. „Aus einem Dorf in Pommern."—D. K. „Haſt du noch deine Eltern?"—Joh. „Ich habe nur noch meine Mutter."—D. K. „Wovon lebt ſie?"—Joh. „Vom Spinnen."—D. K. „Wie viel verdient ſie damit täglich?"—Joh. „Ungefähr vier Groſchen."—D. K. „Das iſt nicht viel; davon wird ſie nicht ſehr bequem leben. Schickſt du ihr nichts?"—Joh. „Ich ſchicke ihr, ſoviel ich kann.—D. K. „Du biſt ein braver Burſche. Du haſt viel Mühe mit mir; aber habe nur Geduld!"

Einige Tagen danach ſagte Friedrich zu demſelben Diener: „Johann, gehe ans Fenſter; du wirſt dort etwas für dich finden." Am Fenſter lagen etwa hundert Louisd'or. Der gute Pommer nahm fünf oder ſechs davon, zeigte ſie dem König und ſagte: „Darf ich die da nehmen?"—„Nein," erwiderte ſein Herr, „nimm alles; es iſt für dich; auch an deine alte Mutter habe ich gedacht."

Der gute Sohn beeilte ſich, an ſeine Mutter zu ſchreiben und freute ſich von ganzem Herzen, als er erfuhr, daß der König befohlen, derſelben einen Jahrgehalt von hundert Thalern zu bezahlen.

Es iſt ſchön, König zu ſein um Gutes zu thun.

## 97.

Adolph[ah'-dölf], *Adolphus*
die Zukunft (Ankunft, p. 294), *future*
**in Zukunft, for the future** (Idiom)
ſicherlich (ſicher, p. 361), *certainly*
die Geſchwiſter*[g$^{e}$-shvis'-ter], *brothers and sisters*
ſammeln (zuſammen, p. 138), *to gather, collect*
verbergen (bergen, p. 181), *to conceal, to hide*
die Ulme*[ül'-m$^{e}$] (-n), *elm, elm-tree*
ſich legen (legen, p. 222 and 277), *to lie down*
ſich befinden (finden, p. 240), *to be or fare*
**wie befinden Sie ſich? how do you do?** (Idiom)
der Tyrann* [ti-rän'](-en), *tyrant*
ſich ereignen*[ig'-n$^{e}$n], *to happen*
vertheidigen*[-ti'-di-g$^{e}$n] *to defend*
ſich ſchämen, see paradigm, p. 394.

1. How are (ſich befinden) you (thou), Lewis? 2. I am not quite well; I was (perf.) ill yesterday. 3. Good morning (accus.), dear Henry; I am glad to see 'you again; how are 'you? 4. Many thanks (accus. of sing.), I am well. 5. Have you (thou) already washed yourself, Adolphus? 6. I have not yet washed myself, but my elder brother has washed himself already. 7. 'You are mistaken, sir; this gentleman is not my cousin, but my brother. 8. I am very seldom mistaken. 9. I have never been mistaken. 10. Are 'you going to the theatre this evening? 11. 'You will amuse 'yourselves well there. 12. How did (transl. have) you (thou) amuse yourself yesterday evening? 13. Very well; Mr. N. (transl. has) played very well. 14. Your (2d plur.) exercise has been very bad this time (mal). 15. We shall endeavor to do (make) it better for (in) the future (without article). 16. 'You are surely mistaken; my mother has not been out of the house all the (*the whole*) day. 17. How did you (2d plur.) amuse yourselves in (auf) the country? 18. We have amused ourselves very much (well). 19 Are you (thou) not very glad to see your old friends again? 20. Yes, I am very glad. 21. Do these sisters and brothers love each other? 22. They love themselves. 23. Have you (2d plur.) ever seen each other? 24. We have never seen each other. 25. Did you (plur.) find each other? 26. Yes, sir, we found each other (ourselves). 27. My sister gathered flowers. 28. The water gathered. 29. Do (thou) not conceal yourself. 30. Save yourselves (2d plur.)! 31. The men warmed themselves at the (an, with article contracted) stove. 32. The soldiers have placed themselves before the door. 33. The poor widows sat down under an elm tree. 34. The travellers lay down under an elm tree. 35. My things (Sache) are (ſich befinden) in 'your room. 36. 'You are mistaken; they are still in the summer-house. 37. All tyrants like each other. 38. All the three sisters resembled one another. 39. Why do you (2d plur.) not endeavor to satisfy the wishes of your parents? 40. 'You are mistaken, sir; we always have endeavored to do so (es). 41. What has happened? 42. My mother

is (ſich befinden) very unwell; she has taken a cold. 43. Endeavor always to do 'your duty. 44. He himself has said it. 45. Have 'you enjoyed yourselves at (auf) the ball, gentlemen (meine H.)? 46. Gentlemen, you (2d plur.) have defended yourselves bravely. 47. Have 'you done this work yourself? 48. Have they praised one another? 49. No, they have praised themselves. 50. Are you (2d plur.) not ashamed? 51. No, sir, we are not ashamed.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Streben,** *to* **strive;** Tab. V. 6; ahd. *streban*, mhd. *streben*, to make efforts, to struggle, to endeavor; prob. conn. with Old Fr. *estriver*, to fight, to contend; Low Saxon, *striven*, to stride, to move with an effort.

**drehen,** *to* **turn;** Tab. V. 37; ahd. *drajan*, A. S. *thrawan*, to turn, to twist, comp. Engl. *to* **throw** (Webster); prob. allied to Lat. *torquere*, to turn, by transposition of r.

**verneigen,** *to incline, to bow, make a courtesy*, c. of ver- and neigen, *to bend, to incline*; A. S. *hnigan*, allied to Gr. *newo*, Lat. *nuo*.

*Take Notice!* In English a great many verbs are employed both in a transitive and intransitive sense, without changing their form. In German, however, transitive verbs when used intransitively frequently adopt the reflective form. Compare:—

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| to turn | (*transit.*) | drehen, | to turn | (*intransit.*) | ſich drehen |
| to move | ( " ) | bewegen, | to move | ( " ) | ſich bewegen |
| to change | ( " ) | ändern, | to change | ( " ) | ſich ändern |
| to assemble | ( " ) | verſammeln, | to assemble | ( " ) | ſich verſammeln |
| to open | ( " ) | öffnen, | to open | ( " ) | ſich öffnen |
| to spread | ( " ) | verbreiten, | to spread | ( " ) | ſich verbreiten. |

**zehren,** *to consume, waste*; orig. *to fret away, destroy*; ahd. *seran*, mhd. *sern*, A. S. *teran*, to **tear;** comp. zerren, p. 253 and Zorn, p. 253.

**befehden,** *to make war upon*; fr. **Fehde, feud,** lit. *revenge, hatred*; A. S. *fœhdh—fian*, to hate, comp. **foe** and Feind, p. 100.

**Publicum, public,** Lat. *publicus*, contr. for *populicus—populus*, the people.

**abquälen,** *to plague to excess, to harass* (refl. one's self); ab and quälen; ahd. *queljan*, A. S. *cwellan*, to **quell,** to **kill,** to *torment*; D. *kwellen*, to torment, from which die Qual, *torment, pang, grief*.

**Majeſtät, majesty,** *greatness*, Lat. *majestas, majus—magnus*, great.

**pflegen,** *to take care of, foster, nurse, tend*, then *to be wont, used, accustomed*, ahd. *phlekan*, orig. *to work*, to manage a business, Engl. *to* **ply,** prob. conn. with Pflicht, p. 177.

**ungefähr,** also **ohngefähr,** *by chance, accidentally*, c. of un or ohn=ohne, *without*, and Gefähr=Gefahr; ahd. *ongefær*=without snare, cunning, see Gefahr, p. 254.

**Groſchen,** a silver coin (about the 30th part of a Germ. Thaler), mhd. *grosse,* fr. L. Lat. *denarius grossus*= a thick or a **gross** penny ; Fr. *gros,* Lat. *crassus,* thick.

**Burſche,** *fellow, companion,* fr. L. Lat. *bursa,* **purse** (see Börſe, p. 312), *bursarius* ; orig. who lives with others for joint account, a *mess-mate, stipendiary,* then a young male person in general.

**Viel Mühe,**

*Take Notice!* **Viel,** *much, many,* **mehr,** *more,* and **wenig,** *little, few,* without a determinative word before them, are generally not declined, in case they refer to a quantity taken as a whole or undivided ; as Er trinkt **viel** (not vieles) Waſſer und wenig (not wenigen) Wein. Viel (not viele) Menſchen eſſen mehr als wenig (not wenige) Menſchen. When declined, they refer to a number of persons or things *taken individually* ; as Viele Menſchen eſſen kein Fleiſch. Weniger Wein (few sorts of wine) iſt unverfälſcht (unadulterated). Geſtern waren mehr Menſchen im Theater als heute. Mehrere Leute (several persons) blieben nicht lange dort. Lies **viel** (much) aber nicht **vieles** (multifarious).

**Louisdor, Louisd'or,** orig. a French, now a Prussian gold coin (about 5⅓ Prussian Thaler) ; coined for the first time under Louis (XIII) of France.

**Jahrgehalt,** *annual stipend, salary* ; **das** Gehalt, fr. **halten,** *to* **hold,** prop. means of sustenance (sustain—*sub,* up, *teneo,* to hold).

*Take Notice!* Do not confound with this *neuter* word, **der** Gehalt, *contents,* the capacity or intrinsic quality of a thing, that which it contains or **holds** in itself.

**bezahlen,** *to pay,* fr. Zahl, *number,* **tale,** as in "The **tale** of the bricks," Exod, 5, 8 (Tab. V. 8) ; see zählen, p. 299, bezahlen, be- and **zahlen,** because the money is counted out.

**Geſchwiſter,** *brothers and* **sisters,** fr. Schweſter, hence orig. "the totality of *sisters*" and then extended also to brothers.

**Ulme, elm,** A. S. *ellm,* Lat. *ulmus.*

**Tyrann, tyrant,** Old Engl. **tyran,** Gr. *tyrannos,* a lord, master.

**ſich ereignen,** *to happen,* orig. like the French *se presenter,* to catch one's **eyes** ; corrupted from eräugnen=er and äugnen (for äugen) ; ahd. *arougan,* mhd. *erougen,, erögen,* from **Auge, eye.**

**vertheidigen,** *to defend* ; theidigen for theidingen, fr. tagedingen, to transact, discuss before the justice ; c. of **Tag, day,** and Ding, *cause, dispute,* hence orig. *judicial proceedings at the appointed day.*

## A WORD TO THE STUDENT.

The *Conversations* (referred to in the Introd. Letter, p. 6), or rather *Conversational Phrases*, followed by "*Vocabularies for Conversations*," will now commence, and will be regularly continued throughout the work at the close of every lesson. As they will embrace many phrases generally employed in conversing upon numerous every-day topics, and are largely idiomatic, they are of great importance, and the student is advised to memorize them with care.

### CONVERSATIONS.—1. A MEETING. SALUTATIONS. INQUIRING AFTER ONE'S HEALTH.

Gnädig*[gnäi'-dig], *gracious*
der Gemahl*[g^e-mahl] (-es, -e), *consort, husband*
die Gemahlin, *fem. consort*
das Fräulein (-s) *young lady, miss*
un'erwartet (erwarten, p. 222), *unexpected*
äußerſt,* *extremely*
erfreuen (ſich freuen, p. 395), *to delight, rejoice*
erfreut (über), *delighted* (at, with), *pleased* (with, by)
hoffentlich*(hoffen, p. 107) *it is to be hoped*
Madame, *madam*
beſonders (ſondern, p. 108), *in particular, especially*
unpäßlich*[ün'-päs"-lig] *indisposed*
**das Zimmer hüten**, (Idiom), *to keep one's room*
**ſich erkälten** (Kälte, p. 305), *to catch cold*
bedenklich (denken, p. 107), *critical, serious*
un'heilbar (heilen, p. 201), *incurable*
das Wiederſehen (wieder, p. 138), *the seeing* or *meeting again.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Guten Morgen, mein[1] Herr! | *Good morning, sir.* |
| Guten Abend, Madame![2] | *Good evening, madam.* |
| Guten Morgen, gnädige Frau! | *Good morning to your Ladyship.* |
| Wie befindet ſich Ihr Herr[e] Gemahl? | *How is your husband?* |
| Wie befindet ſich Ihre Frau Gemahlin? | *How is your wife?* |
| Wie befindet ſich Ihre liebe Frau? | *How is your good Lady?* |
| Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen. | *Very well, thank you.* |
| Ich wünſche Ihnen einen guten Morgen (Abend). | *I wish you a good morning (evening).* |
| Guten Abend, mein Fräulein! | *Good evening, Miss.* |
| Guten Abend, Fräulein Bertha! | *Good evening, Miss Bertha.* |
| Guten Morgen, Herr[n] Doctor! Frau Doctor! (or Doctorin). | *Good morning,* { *Doctor.* / *Mrs. N.* |
| Ah, guten Tag, mein Herr, ich bin äußerſt erfreut, Sie zu ſehen. | *Ah, good day, sir, I am extremely happy to see you.* |
| Wie befinden Sie ſich? | *How do you do? How are you?* |
| Hoffentlich ſind Sie wohl? | *I hope you are well.* |
| Sie ſind ſehr gütig; ich befinde mich ziemlich wohl. | *You are very kind, I am pretty well.* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Bitte, empfehlen Sie mich Ihrer Frau Gemahlin. | *Pray, present my compliments to your Lady.* |
| Mit vielem Vergnügen. | *With much pleasure.* |
| Wie befindet ſich Ihr Herr Vater? | *How is your father?* |
| Er iſt nicht ganz wohl. | *He is not very well.* |
| Nicht beſonders, or nicht zum beſten | *Rather poorly.* |
| Was macht Ihr Herr Bruder? | *How is your brother?* |
| Er iſt unpäßlich und muß das Zimmer hüten. | *He is indisposed and must keep his room.* |
| Er hat ſich erkältet. | *He has taken cold.* |
| Er iſt bedenklich krank. | *He is very ill indeed.* |
| Seine Krankheit iſt unheilbar. | *His disease is incurable.* |
| Sind Sie heute frei? | *Are you free* (disengaged) *to-day?* |
| Haben Sie Zeit? | *Are you at leisure?* |
| Ich werde um vier Uhr bei Ihnen ſein. | *I shall be with you at four o'clock.* |
| Leben Sie wohl, auf Wiederſehen. | *Good bye, sir, till we meet again.* |

*Note.*—1. In speaking to a person whom we do not know well, and when no title or proper name is added, the word Herr, *sir*, must be preceded by the pronoun mein. 2. Madame, *madam*. In the greater part of Germany the word Madame is now substituted for the title Frau. 3. Ihr Herr Gemahl. When we speak to persons (who are not our inferiors or intimate friends) of their relations, politeness requires us to join the qualifications Herr, *Mr.*; Frau, *Mrs.*; Fräulein, *Miss*, to the pronouns of address: Ihr Herr Vater, *your father*; Ihre Frau Mutter, *your mother*; Ihre Frau Schweſter, *your sister* (if the lady is married); Ihr Fräulein Schweſter, *your sister* (if single). 5. Herr Doctor. Politeness requires that Herr should be employed before a title. 5. Frau Doctor, Frau Profeſſor. In addressing the wife of a doctor, professor, etc., the title only is used, without the family name, otherwise the latter must be added, as (die) Frau Doctor Schmidt (Frau Profeſſor Stein) iſt hier geweſen, *Mrs. Dr. Smith* (*Mrs. Professor Stein*) *has been here.*

## LEXICOLOGY.

**gnädig**, *gracious*, fr. Gnade (Ge-na-de), *grace*, *favor*, *kindness*, root na=nahe, *near* (p. 103), thus *propitious* (lit. being near, Lat. *propitius*—*prope*, near), favorable.

**Gemahl**, *consort*, *husband* (fem. Gemahlin); Ge-mahl, ahd. *gimahal*, *mahal*, mhd. *mal*, public assembly, then court, tribunal, public betrothment, contract of marriage; fr. this root, vermählen, *to give in mariage*; ſich vermählen, *to celebrate one's nuptials.*

**äußerſt**, **outer***most*, **utter***most*, superl. of **äußer**, **outer**, *external*, fr. außer, aus (prep. with dat. p. 243).

**hoffentlich**, it is to be **hoped**, (as) I **hope**, prop. pres. partic. of hoffen for hoffendlich. In compositions with lich the ancient form of pres. partic. with t has been preserved in some verbs, thus flehentlich, *suppliantly*; leidentlich, *passive*; wiederholentlich, *repeatedly*; eigentlich, *proper* or *properly*, etc.

**beſonders**, *in particular, especially*, fr. the adj. beſonder, *particular, special*, c. of be=bei and **ſonder, sunder**, comp. ſondern, *but*, p. 107, and ſonder (preposit.), p. 249.

**unpäßlich**, *indisposed*, fr. **paſſieren**, *to* **pass**, in the sense of being in a **pass**able or *tolerable* state. According to others conn. with ahd. *pas, bas, bass*=gut (whence comparative **beſſer, better**), hence paß=suitable, comfortable.

**bedenklich**, *critical, serious* (prop. *requiring to be considered*), fr. **bedenken**, *to consider*, **think** *upon*.

## VOCABULARY FOR CONVERSATION.—I. GODHEAD; RELIGION.

Gott, *God*
die Gottheit, *the godhead*
die Göttin, *goddess*
göttlich, *godlike*
allmächtig (p. 253), *almighty*
der Allmächtige, *the Almighty*
der Schöpfer (p. 170), *the creator*
das Geſchöpf (–es, –e), *the creature*
Chriſtus [kris'-tŭs], *Jesus Christ*
der Erlöſer [ĕr-lēā'-zᵉr] (–s), *the Redeemer*
der Heiland (heil, p. 155), *the Savior*
der heilige (p. 357) Geiſt, *the Holy Ghost*
die Dreieinigkeit (drei, p. 114, einigen, p. 385), *the Trinity*
der Engel (p. 182), *angel*
engelgleich, *angel-like*
der Teufel (p. 268), *devil*
teufliſch, *devilish*
der Himmel, *heaven*
die Hölle (p. 347), *hell*
hölliſch, *hellish*
der Höllenpfuhl, *hell-pool*
das Höllenfeuer, *hell-fire*
das Paradies (p. 389), *Paradise*
das Chriſtenthum (p. 174), *Christendom*
das Judenthum (p. 176), *Judaism*
das Heidenthum, *Heathenism*
der Heide (–n), *heathen*
heidniſch, *heathenish*
chriſtlich, *christian*
jüdiſch [yēē'-dish], *jewish*
die Heiligkeit, *holiness*
das heilige Land, *the holy land*
die heilige Schrift, *Holy writ*
das Allerheiligſte, *Holy of Holies*
die Allmacht, *almightiness*
allſehend, *all-seeing*
allweiſe, *all-wise*
die Bibel [bē'-bᵉl], *Bible*
bibliſch, *biblical*.

## II. THE UNIVERSE.

die Welt (p. 112), *world*
das Weltall (–s), *universe*
die Erde, *earth*
die Erdkugel [–kū"-gᵉl], *globe*
der Horizont [hō"-rĭ-tsŏnt'] (–es, –e), *horizon*
die Sonne, *sun*
die Sonnenſtrahlen (p. 408), *rays of the sun*
der Mond, *moon*
der Neumond, *new moon*
der Vollmond, *full moon*
das Mondlicht, *moonlight*
die Luft (p. 133), *air*

der Raum (–es, Räume), *room, space*
der Luftraum, *sky*
der Stern (p. 101), *star*
der Planet (p. 389), *planet*
der Komet[kō-māt'] (–en), *comet*
der Sternhimmel, *the firmament*
die Atmosphäre[ät"-mōs-fär'-rᵉ], *atmosphere*
die Milchstraße, *milky way*
das Festland (fest, p. 138), *continent*
das Inland, *inland*
das Ausland, *foreign countries*
das Meer[mär] (–es, –e), *the sea*
die See, *sea* } (p. 254)
der See, *lake* }
die Küste [kü'-stᵉ] (–n), *coast*
die Meeresküste, *maritime coast*
die fünf Welttheile (p. 110), *the five parts of the world*
der Osten (p. 170), *the east*
der Westen[vĕ'-stᵉn], *west*
der Süden (p. 325), *south*
der Norden (p. 299), *north.*

## [66.] PASSIVE VOICE.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Gute Kinder **werden geliebt.** — *Good children are loved.*
2. Der böse Knabe **ist von** seinem Lehrer **bestraft worden.** — *The bad boy has been punished by his teacher.*
3. Ich **bin** von der Sache **unterrichtet.** — *I am informed of the affair.*
4. Es ist schwer **zu glauben.** — *That is difficult to be believed.*
5. Der Herr **sei** gepriesen. — *The Lord be praised.*
6. Er wurde **durch** eine Kugel getödtet. — *He was killed by a bullet.*
7. Der **zu bestrafende** Knabe ist nicht hier. — *The boy to be punished is not here.*
8. **Es wird** ihm von seinen Freunden geholfen. — *He is assisted by his friends.*

*Observations.*—1. Every proposition containing a transitive verb may be constructed in two different ways, according as the word forming the object of the action is used as such (in the accusative), or is represented as the subject in a state of *suffering* the action. The first construction is called the **Active Voice** (Lat. *ago, actum*, to do, to be in action), the second the **Passive Voice** (Lat. *passivus—patior*, to suffer).

| ACTIVE. | PASSIVE. |
|---|---|
| Man **liebt** gute Kinder, | Gute Kinder **werden geliebt.** |
| *People love good children.* | *Good children are loved.* |

2. There are no simple forms in the passive; all are compound with the auxiliary **werden** and the **past participle**; M. S. 1, 2, 6.

3. Werden as an auxiliary of the passive loses in the past compound tenses the augment ge-, as er ist **gelehrt worden,** *he has been taught*; but er ist gelehrt **geworden,** *he has become learned.* Das Gebäude ist eine Ruine **geworden,** *the building has become a ruin*; but das Gebäude ist **ruiniert** (or zerstört) **worden,** *the building has been ruined* (or destroyed) M. S. 2.

4. The preposition *by* or *of* with a passive verb, is *generally* translated by **von**; when it precedes the name of a **thing** often by **durch**; M. S. 2, 6.

5. The verb *to be* followed by a pa. participle is translated by **ſein**, when the past participle is used as an adjective and does not express an **action**, but a **mere state** or **condition**; e. g. Das Kind **wird** gewaſchen, *the child is being washed, they are washing it now*; but das Kind iſt gewaſchen, *the child is washed, it is clean*; Die Thore der Stadt **werden** geſchloſſen, *the gates of the city are being closed=some one is closing them*; but Die Thore der Stadt ſind geſchloſſen, *the gates of the city are not open*; M. S. 3.

6. The *imperative passive* is sometimes compound with **ſein**; M. S. 5.

7. The pres. participle active in **nd** (as lobend, liebend) preceded by **zu** is used passively and indicates that the action expressed by the verb **ought to be done** in a *future time*. It is only used **attributively** and consequently always precedes a noun; e. g. der **zu lobende** Mann, *the man who ought to be praised*; ein **zu verkaufendes** Buch, *a book which is to be sold*; M. S. 7. Instead of the participle the infinitive preceded by **zu** is used **predicatively**, as der Mann iſt **zu loben**, *the man is to be praised*; das Buch iſt **zu verkaufen**, *the book is to be sold*. Thus the infinitive of the passive voice in English is often translated in German by the infinitive of the active voice; M. S. 5.

*Note.* For this (7) and the idiomatic use of the Reflective form in German instead of the passive in English, see Sec. Course.

8. Intransitive verbs can only be used in the passive *impersonally* (for which see next section); M. S. 8.

## PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

### PRESENT.

| *Indicative.* | *Subjunctive.* |
|---|---|
| *I am praised.* | *I may be praised.* |
| Ich **werde gelobt**, | Ich werde gelobt, |
| du wirſt gelobt, etc. | du **werdeſt** gelobt, etc. |

### IMPERFECT.

| | |
|---|---|
| *I was praised*, etc. | *I might be praised.* |
| ich **wurde** (ward*) gelobt | ich würde gelobt, etc. |
| du **wurdeſt** gelobt | |
| er **wurde** (ward*) gelobt | |
| wir **wurden** gelobt, etc. | |

### PERFECT.

| | |
|---|---|
| *I have been praised,* | *I may have been praised,* |
| ich **bin gelobt worden**, etc. | ich **ſei** gelobt worden, etc. |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | |
|---|---|
| *I had been praised,* | *I might have been praised,* |
| ich **war gelobt worden**, etc. | ich **wäre** gelobt worden, etc. |

### FIRST FUTURE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *I shall be praised,* | *I shall be praised,* |
| ich werde **gelobt werden**, etc. | ich werde gelobt werden, etc. |

SECOND FUTURE.

*I shall have been praised,*
ich werde **gelobt worden ſein**, etc.

*I shall have been praised*
ich werde gelobt worden ſein, etc.

*First Conditional.*

*I should be praised,*
ich **würde gelobt werden**, etc.

*Second Conditional.*

*I should have been praised,*
ich würde gelobt worden ſein, etc.

IMPERATIVE (very seldom used).

**werde** gelobt
**ſei** gelobt
} *be praised.*

werdet gelobt
ſeid gelobt
} *be ye praisea.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* gelobt werden, *to be praised*
*Perf.* gelobt worden ſein, *to have been praised*
*Fut.* werden gelobt werden, *to be about to be praised*
**zu loben**, *to be praised*
(only predicatively used)

*Participle.*

*Perf.* gelobt, *praised*
*Fut.* **gelobt zu werdend**, *being to be praised*
(only attributively used)

**Note.* In mhd. the imperfect changed the radical vowel differently in the sing. and plur.; thus imperfect of

ſingen—*Sing.* sang, *Plur.* sungen,
ſinnen— " sann, " sunnen,
werden— " wart, " wurden.

This u of the plural afterwards intruded into the sing. so that, ich wurde, du wurdeſt, er wurde, are now the predominant forms, whilst the use of ich and er, ſie, es ward is more limited, and wardſt is very seldom met with.

## 98.

der Mitbürger (Bürger, p. 181), *fellow-citizen*

jedermann, (jeder, p. 143, Mann, p. 87), *every one, every body*

verachten (achten, p. 276), *to despise*

eintreten, (ein, p. 177, treten, p. 263), *to enter, step in*

ſo eben, *just now*

belohnen*[o'], *to reward, recompense*

der Oberſt*[o'-bĕrst], (–en, –e), *colonel*

verleſen (ver, p. 141, leſen, p. 239), *to read aloud*

die Namen verleſen, *to call over the names*

laut,* *loud, aloud*

werthvoll (Werth, p. 177, voll, p. 87), *valuable, full of worth*

der Palaſt*[pă-läst'](–es, Paläſte), *palace*

jetzig (jetzt, p. 87, -ig, p. 103), *present, now existing*

das Vermögen (vermögen, p. 390) (–s), *fortune, wealth*

verſpielen (ver, p. 141, *d*, ſpielen, p. 177), *to lose at play*

ſtrömen[strēa'-mᵉn] (Strom, p. 231), *to stream*

mißtrauiſch (trauen, p. 207), *suspicious, distrustful*

erſticken,* *to stifle, choke, smother*

vertreiben (ver, p. 141, treiben, p. 247), *to drive away, expel*

der Argwohn*[arg'-vōn"](–s), *suspicion*

der Braten (braten, p. 294)(–s), *the roast, roast meat*

ſchlachten,* *to slaughter*
bedienen (dienen, p. 208), *to serve, attend upon.*
der Brunnen*[brün'-n$^{e}$n] (–s), *well, spring*
die Ausnahme*[ous'-nah$^{e}$-m$^{e}$](aus, p. 242, nehmen, p. 209), *exception*
die Bemerkung (bemerken, p. 311) (–en), *remark*
der Erleuchter* (leuchten, p. 103) (–s), *enlightener*
lebenslang (Leben, p. 177, lang, p. 101), *life-long, for life*
das Jahrhundert (Jahr, p. 236, hundert, p. 296), *century*
erſt (p. 240), *not before, not until*
hervor*[hêr-fôr'], *forth, out*
hervorblühen (blühen, p. 138), *to blossom forth*
beſiegen (ſiegen, p. 296), *to vanquish, conquer*
der Edelſinn (edel, p. 369, Sinn, p. 247), *generosity, liberality.*

1. Ein redlicher Menſch wird von ſeinen Mitbürgern geachtet und in der Noth nicht verlaſſen. 2. Gute Kinder werden von ihren Eltern und Lehrern gelobt und geliebt; aber böſe Kinder werden beſtraft und von jedermann verachtet. 3. Von wem iſt Amerika entdeckt worden? 4. Die Tapferkeit dieſer Armee iſt ſehr zu loben. 5. Die Thüre iſt geöffnet; Sie können eintreten. 6. Die Thüre wird ſo eben geöffnet; Sie können eintreten. 7. Die Namen aller wegen ihrer Tapferkeit zu belohnenden Männer, wurden von dem Oberſten laut verleſen. 8. Nichts iſt werthvoller als die Zeit, und doch wird nichts weniger geſchätzt. 9. Dieſer Palaſt wird nächſte Woche öffentlich verkauft werden, da Graf B., der jetzige Beſitzer desſelben, ſein Vermögen verſpielt hat und zum armen Manne geworden iſt. 10. Ein großer Fluß wird auch Strom genannt, von ſtrömen. 11. Die Spiegel wurden erfunden, weil die Mädchen ſo leicht vergeſſen, wie ſie ausſehen. 12. Habt ihr ſchon das größte Unglück gehört, daß ein Knabe auf der Straße getödtet worden iſt? 13. Dieſe Geſchichte wurde uns von unſrem Onkel erzählt. 14. Man ſagt, daß Karl Soldat geworden ſei. 15. Es wurde mir erzählt, daß er beſtraft worden ſei. 16. Kein Meiſter wird geboren (Prov.). 17. Wahrheit wird wohl (p. 344) gedrückt, || Aber nicht erſtickt (Prov.). 18. Gefahr wird nicht leicht ohne Gefahr vertrieben (Prov.). 19. Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht betrogen (Prov.). 20. Durch eine Schwalbe wird kein Sommer gemacht (Prov.). 21. Argwohn riecht den Braten, eh das Kalb geſchlachtet iſt (Prov.). 22. Beſſer bedient werden, als dienen (Prov.). 23. Hinter deinem Rücken wird viel Wahres über dich geſprochen (Prov.). 24. Der Zorn wird durch eine gute Antwort gebrochen (Prov.) 25. Je mehr der Brunnen gebraucht wird, je mehr gibt er Waſſer (Prov.). 26. Wer viel fragt, || Dem wird viel geſagt (Prov.). 27. Wir Menſchen werden wunderbar geprüft (Göthe). 28. Alle Geſetze ſind von Alten und Männern gemacht (worden understood); Junge und Weiber wollen die Ausnahmen, Alte die Regel (Göthe). 29. Ein edler Mann wird durch ein gutes Wort der Frauen weit geführt (Göthe). 30. Reines, kindliches Vertrauen zu einem edlen Manne wird belohnt (Leſſing). 31. Es iſt eine alte Bemerkung, daß die würdigſten Erleuchter der Welt oft lebenslang verkannt

wurden, und nach Jahrhunderten erſt ihr Ruhm hervorblühte (Herder). 32. Nicht durch Waffen werden die Herzen der Menſchen beſiegt, ſondern durch Liebe und Edelſinn (Spinoza).

## 99.

der Liebhaber*[lēp'-hah"-bᵉr] (–s), *lover, amateur*

das Laſter*[läs'-tᵉr] (–s), *vice, crime*

ſich hüten*[hēē'-tᵉn], *to beware, to take heed*

erzeugen*[ᵉr-tsoi'-gᵉn], *to engender, produce*

heiter*[hī'-tᵉr], *serene, clear.*

### Eigenſchaften des Weins.

Ein großer Liebhaber des Weins wurde von ſeinem Vater ſehr ernſtlich ermahnt, ſich vor dem Laſter des Trunkes zu hüten. „O, mein Vater," —antwortete der ungehorſame Sohn,—„ guter Wein macht gutes Blut, gutes Blut erzeugt heitern Sinn, heiterer Sinn gibt erleuchtete Gedanken, erleuchtete Gedanken führen zu guten Thaten, und gute Thaten bringen die Menſchen in den Himmel."

TRANSFORM THE ACTIVE INTO THE PASSIVE VOICE:

## 100.

der Sonnenſtrahl* [zōn'-nᵉn-strahl"] (–es, –en), *sunbeam*

erwärmen (wärmen, p. 201), *to warm, to heat*

Hannibal[hän'-nī-bal"], *Hannibal*

Cannä[kän-nä'], *Cannæ*

befolgen (folgen, p. 153), *to follow, obey*

benutzen (nützen, p. 358), *to use, make use of*

nützlich, *useful*

die Thätigkeit (thätig, p. 125), *activity*

belehren, (lehren, p. 103), *to teach, inform*

darüber (p. 311), *over it, of it*

befragen (fragen, p. 331), *to ask, to question.*

1. Die Sonnenſtrahlen erwärmen die Erde. 2. Wie ſchreibt man dieſe fremden Wörter? 3. Jedermann tadelt mich. 4. Hannibal ſchlug das römiſche Heer bei Cannä. 5. Niemand hat mich erkannt. 6. Man wird dieſe Waare nicht leicht verkaufen. 7. Wird dich der Lehrer loben? 8. Er wird den Rath, den man ihm gegeben hatte, nicht befolgt haben. 9. Benutze jeden Augenblick zu nützlicher Thätigkeit, damit jedermann dich achte. 10. Das Heer hätte die Feſtung nicht erobert, wenn man ſie beſſer vertheidigt hätte. 11. Die Schüler ſollen dieſe Aufgaben lernen. 12. Man braucht mich nicht darüber zu belehren. 13. Die Spanier entdeckten Amerika. 14. Die Luft ſtärkt den Kranken. 15. Der Arzt bereitete ſelbſt die Arzeneien für den Kranken. 16. Haben die Officiere den General darüber befragt? 17. In der Nacht ſtürmten die tapfern Regimenter die Feſtung. 18. Warum hat der Lehrer meinen Sohn ſo ſtreng beſtraft?

## 101.

die Barmherzigkeit*[bärm"-hĕrts'-ıy-kıt"], *charity*
balbieren, for barbieren*, *to shave*
die Barbierſtube, *barber's shop*
das Stücklein, dim. of Stück (p. 247)
das Brod (–es, –e), *bread*
abnehmen (ab, p. 309, nehmen, p. 209), *to take off*
um Gotteswillen, *for God's sake*
dran (for daran, p. 314, darnach, p. 314), *thereby, about it*
für Nichts und wieder Nichts (phrase), *for nothing whatever, nothing at all*
der Schlucker[shlük'-ker] (–s), [*wretch*
ein armer Schlucker, *a poor starving wretch*
ſchaben[shah'-bn] *to shave* (Tab. V. 6)
der Schinder (ſchinden, p. 263), *flayer, skinner*, here *tormentor*
umſonſt[üm-zönst'], *for nothing*
der Hof (p. 156) (–es, Höfe), *yard*
fehlen (p. 301); impers. **to ail**, as **Was fehlt Ihnen?** *what ails you? what is the matter with you?*
winſeln[vín'-zeln], *to whine*
anweſend (geweſen, the partic. of ſein), *present*
die Anweſenden, *those present*
erklären[ât'] (klar, p. 119), *to explain*
vermuthlich (vermuthen, p. 277), *probably*.

### Wie man aus Barmherzigkeit raſiert wird.

von Hebel.

In eine Barbierſtube kommt ein armer Mann mit einem ſtarken Bart und ſtatt eines Stücklein Brodes bittet er, der Meiſter ſoll ſo gut ſein, und ihm den Bart abnehmen, um Gotteswillen (p. 271), daß er doch wieder ausſehe (p. 347) wie ein Chriſt. Der Meiſter nimmt das ſchlechteſte Meſſer, das er hat, denn er denkt, was ſoll ich ein gutes d'ran ſtumpf hacken, für nichts und wieder nichts? Während er an dem armen Schlucker hackt und ſchabt,—der nichts ſagen darf, weil's (weil es) ihm der Schinder umſonſt thut,—heult der Hund auf dem Hof. Der Meiſter ſagt: „Was fehlt dem Hunde, daß er ſo winſelt und heult?" Nachdem die Anweſenden erklärt hatten, daß ſie es nicht wüßten (p. 380), ſagte der arme Schlucker unter dem Meſſer: „Er wird vermuthlich auch um Gotteswillen balbiert, wie ich."

## 102.

Erbauen (bauen, p. 208), *to build, erect*
verſteigern*(ſteigen, p. 239), *to sell by auction*
vielleicht*[fi-lıyt'], *perhaps*
Eliſabeth[ĕ-le'-zä-bĕt"] *Elizabeth*
neulich (neu, p. 207), *the other day, newly, recently*
das Geſchichtswerk (Geſchichte, p. 300, Werk, p. 201), *historical work*
die Schublade*[shüp'-lah"-de](–n) *drawer, commode*
unvollſtändig*[ün'-föl'-stän"-dıy], *incompletely*
un'genau (genau, p 278), *inaccur-* [*ately*

beträchtlich* [bᵉ-träχt'-liχ], *considerably*
vervollkommnen (vollkommen, p. 334), *to improve*
ſchwierig, (ſchwer, p. 182), *difficult*
die Aufgabe (p. 138), *problem*
löſen (unverloren, p. 329), *to solve*
ſelbſt (p. 370), *even*
die Bewunderung (bewundern, p. 278), *admiration.*

1. Unhappy is the man who is loved by nobody. 2. Thieves work by (bei) night and are not seen; honest men work by (bei) day and are seen by everybody. 3. By whom has this exercise been corrected? 4. All those houses have been sold this week. 5. King Gustavus Adolphus was (has been) killed near (bei) Lutzen. 6. You are loved and esteemed by all. 7. All our books have been sold. 8. The book is not to be had. 9. The palace had been destroyed by fire. 10. It had been build by my friend. 11. The palace which was built by my friend, will be sold by auction. 12. The house which was sold by auction, was built three years ago by my uncle. 13. After the old palace had been destroyed by fire, a new one was built in (an) the same place. 14. This beautiful park will be sold by auction, as the owner of it has become a poor man. 15. The park was bought by the count, the present owner of the palace. 16. If the owner of this palace had not become a poor man, it would not have been sold by auction. 17. The count would not, perhaps, have become a poor man, if his palace had not been destroyed by fire. 18. This new palace would not have been built, if the old one had not been destroyed by fire. 19. Are good books to be had there? 20. Elizabeth, our servant, was sent there to fetch some (irgend ein) historical work or some other good book, but there was no good book to be found. 21. The pretty watch which was given me by my parents the other day, was taken out of my drawer by my little brother yesterday and completely spoiled. 22. This looking-glass was broken the other day; do you know by whom? 23. I cannot say by whom it was broken. 24. With the same measure with which you mete, (it) shall be meted to you again. 25. The works of Shakespeare were first translated into (say into the) German by Wieland, but incompletely and inaccurately. This translation was considerably improved by Eschenburg. Not before the (erſt zu) beginning of the present century was the really difficult problem happily solved by William Schlegel, whose translation even Englishmen read with admiration.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Belohnen,** *to reward, recompense,* A. S. *leanjan,* from Lohn, *reward, pay,* ahd. and mhd. *lon,* A. S. *lean,* requital, retaliation; prob. conn. with Lat. *luere,* to loosen, then to release.

**Oberſt,** *colonel,* superlative of the adj. ober (see erobern, p. 364): der oberſte (Oberſte) the highest of all, *chief.*

**laut, loud, aloud** (Tab. V. 11), lit. *heard, sounding*, fr. lauten, *to sound.*

**Palaſt, palace,** Fr. *palais*, Lat. *palatium*; orig. one of the seven hills in Rome, where Augustus had his residence.

**mißtrauiſch,** *distrustful*; **Miß** or **mis** (used both as a noun and a verbal prefix) answers to the English prefixes **mis-**, *dis-, de-, un-*, and expresses defectiveness, ill, wrong (lit. *amiss*, A. S. *missan, to miss, to fail*, thus the Germ. **miſſen,** vermiſſen, *to* **miss,** *to be without, to feel the absence of*); das **Mißtrauen, mistrust,** *distrust*; **mißleiten,** *to* **mislead**; Mißbrauch, *disuse*; Mißcredit, *discredit*; Mißform, *deformity*. The orthography mis is used by Schiller, Herder and other classic authors, and recommended as historically the better one by Grimm, Weigand and others. The original, unabreviated form miſſe- is still preserved in Miſſethat, *misdeed*; Miſſethäter, *malefactor.*

**erſticken,** *to stifle, choke*; er-ſticken, a secondary form of ſtecken (p. 270); ahd. *sticken* for ſtopfen (p. 145), *to stuff, stop*, hence erſticken=to stop the breath, to suffocate.

**Argwohn,** *suspicion, distrust*; for Argwahn, which latter was still the common form in the seventeenth century; c. of arg, p. 364, and Wohn, for Wahn, mhd. *arcwan*, fr. wähnen, *to think, to fancy* (A. S. *wenan—wen*, Ice. *van*, hope), *to* **ween**; hence Argwohn=*to* **ween** (nothing but) evil (Arges).

**ſchlachten,** *to* **slaughter** (Tab. V. 13 and 18), *to slay, kill*; Goth. *slahan*, to strike; comp. Schlacht, p. 188.

**Brunnen,** *well, spring*, also **Born,** conn. with **bourn, bourne**; prob. allied to brennen, A. S. *byrnan*, to **burn** (comp. Lat. *fornus, fornax*= stove, oven). The water streams out of the earth, as if it would bubble, seethe, boil.

**Ausnahme,** *exception*, fr. **ausnehmen,** *to take* **out,** *to exclude, except* (thus *except*, fr. Lat. *ex*=out, and *capere*, to take).

**Erleuchter,** *en***lightener,** fr. **erleuchten,** *to en***lighten,** *to give light*, fr. Licht, p. 169.

**hervor,** *forth*; c. of her, p. 181, and **vor,** *before, forwards*, hence lit. *forward towards* the speaker, *out hither.*

**Liebhaber, lover,** *amateur*, fr. lieb haben=Liebe haben, *to* **have love,** *inclination* for a person or thing.

**Laſter,** *vice, crime*; A. S. *lahtar*=blame, reproach, disgrace, *leahan, lean*=to blame.

**hüten,** *to have* **heed** (Tab. V. 11) or *care*; ſich **hüten,** *to beware, to take* **heed** or *care of*; A. S. *hedan*, fr. Hut=care to prevent hurt, akin to A. S. *hod*, Engl. **hood.**

**erzeugen,** *to engender, to produce*, c. of er- and zeugen, *to produce, to beget*; conn. with mhd. *ziugen*, prob. derived fr. *ziug*, Zeug (p. 277), hence orig. to fit out, equip, accomplish, produce.

**heiter,** *serene, clear, cheerful*; A. S. *hador*; allied accord. to the permutation of sounds to Gr. *kataros*=clean, clear, serene.

**Sonnenſtrahl, sun***beam, solar ray*; Strahl, ahd. *stral*, A. S. *stræl*, It. *strale*, Slavonic, *strela*=arrow; *strelati*=to shoot; *strelitz*=shooter, archer.

**Barmherzigkeit,** *charity* (Barm-herz-ig-keit), Goth. *armahairts*, ahd. *armherzig* and *barmherzig*=be-armherzig; arm, *poor* (p. 177), Goth. *arman*, ahd., mhd. *barmen*, nhd. erbarmen, *to move to pity*, and refl. to take pity (on), to commiserate; hence Barmherzigkeit=Lat. *miseracordia*—*miser*=miserable, poor, *cor, cordis*=heart.

**barbieren,** *to shave beards*, Lat. *barba*, Fr. *barbe*, a beard; balbieren, the same; the liquids often interchange (see p. 57).

**Schlucker,** *a poor* (starving) *wretch*, fr. ſchlucken, *to swallow*, prob. a secondary form of ſchlingen, to *swallow greedily, to devour* (p. 311) (comp. glücken, gelingen, drucken, bringen).

**verſteigern,** *to sell by auction*; ſteigern, *to raise, to increase* (the price offered by the preceding bidder), fr. ſteigen, *to rise, ascend*, p. 239.

**vielleicht,** *perhaps*, c. of viel, *much, very*, and leicht, *easy* (p. 100)=very easy, then *probably, perhaps*.

**Schublade,** *drawer, commode*, c. of **Schub, shoove** (Tab. V. 6), *push*, fr. **ſchieben,** *to* **shove,** and Lade, *chest, trunk, box*, from laden, p. 294.

**unvollſtändig,** *incomplete*; un- (p. 85), voll (p. 87) and ſtändig, fr. ſtehen (p. 239), properly having its **full stand,** having all essential or constituent parts.

**beträchtlich,** *considerable*, -ably, fr. betrachten, *to consider*; be- and trachten, ahd. *trahton*, A. S. *trahtian*, fr. Lat. *tractare*, to manage, **treat** a subject, to discuss, reflect, consider.

## CONVERSATION.—2. SPEAKING GERMAN.

mangelhaft[mäng'-el-häft"], *defective, incorrect*, and adv. [*ercise*
die Übung (üben, p. 299) (-en), *ex-*
erlernen (lernen, p. 79), *to learn, to acquire*
die Erlernung, *acquisition*
das Sprechen (ſprechen, p. 107), *speaking*
verſtändlich (verſtändig, p. 299), *intelligible*
die Ausſprache (ausſprechen, p. 347) *pronunciation*
ſich legen (or verlegen) **auf** etwas, *to apply one's self to*
weit bringen in etwas, *to attain great proficiency in*
ſich Mühe (Mühe, p. 181) geben mit or um etwas, *to take pains with*
das Studium[stū'-dĭ-ŭm], *study*
**auf Deutſch,** *in German.*

Sprechen Sie deutſch? *Do you speak German?*
Ich ſpreche es ein wenig. *I speak it a little.*
Ich ſpreche es nur ſehr mangelhaft, aber ich verſtehe es. *I speak it but very incorrectly, but I understand it.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich ſpreche es ſehr ſchlecht. | *I speak it very badly.* |
| Ich ſpreche nicht viel deutſch. | *I don't speak much German.* |
| Ich habe zu wenig Übung. | *I have too little practice.* |
| Eine ſolche Sprache iſt bloß durch viele Übung zu erlernen (p. 405, 7). | *Such a language is only to be learned by much practice.* |
| Ich finde es ſchwer, deutſch zu ſprechen. | *I find it difficult to speak German.* |
| Ich fürchte, Fehler im Sprechen zu machen. | *I am afraid of making blunders in speaking.* |
| Sprechen Sie deutſch **mit** mir! | *Speak German to me?* |
| Wo haben Sie deutſch (or das Deutſche) gelernt? | *Where have you learned German?* |
| Ich lernte es **ganz allein**, ich hatte nie einen Lehrer. | *I learned it by myself, I never had a teacher.* |
| Sie ſprechen ganz verſtändlich. | *You speak so as to be understood.* |
| Sie haben eine gute Ausſprache. | *You have a good pronunciation.* |
| Sie ſprechen ziemlich gut. | *You speak tolerably well.* |
| Mein Bruder ſpricht deutſch wie ſeine Mutterſprache. | *My brother speaks German as well as his native language* (mother tongue). |
| Er hat ſich lange Zeit **auf** das Deutſche verlegt. | *He has applied himself a long time to the German language.* |
| Er hat es darin ſehr weit gebracht. | *He has acquired a considerable proficiency in it.* |
| **Ich gebe mir viele Mühe mit** der Erlernung der deutſchen Sprache. | *I take much pains to learn the German language.* |
| **Ich finde Vergnügen** an dieſem Studium. | *I take pleasure in this study.* |
| Fahren Sie fort, **ſich darauf zu legen.** | *Continue to apply yourself to it.* |
| **Wie heißt man das auf Deutſch?** | *What do you call that in German?* |

## VOCABULARY FOR CONVERSATION.

### III. Time.

| | |
|---|---|
| die Ewigkeit (p. 254) (–en), *eternity* | der Vormittag, *forenoon* |
| das Jahrhundert (p. 407), *century* | der Nachmittag, *afternoon* |
| das Zeitalter (–s), *age* | der Abend (p. 201), *evening* |
| der Augenblick (p. 246), *moment* | die Nacht (p. 92), *night* |
| der Tagesanbruch (p. 102) (–es), *the break of the day* | die Mitternacht, *midnight* |
| das Zwielicht[tsvē'-lĭçt] (**zwie**= Engl. **twi**=two), *twilight* | heute, *to-day* |
| der Sonnenaufgang (–es), *sunrise* | geſtern, *yesterday* [*terday* |
| der Sonnenuntergang, *sunset* | **vorgeſtern**, *the day* **before** *yes-* |
| der Morgen (p. 170), *morning* | morgen, *to-morrow* |
| | **übermorgen**, *the day after to-morrow* |

der **folgende** (p. 336) Tag, *the next day*
der Anfang (p. 299), *the beginning*
das Ende (p. 201), *the end*
das Jahr, *the year*
das Schaltjahr[shält'–] *leap year*, ſchalten or more common einſchalten, *to put in, insert, intercalate*)
der Monat (p. 240), *month*
die Woche (p. 124) *week*
der Tag, *day*
der Werktag (=Arbeitstag, see Werk p. 201), *work-day*
der Feiertag (p. 376), *holiday, day of rest*
die Stunde, *hour*
eine **halbe Stunde**, *half an hour*
eine **Viertelſtunde**, *a quarter of an hour*
die Minute (p. 312), *minute*
die Secunde[ze-kün'-de], *second*
nächtlich, *nightly*
täglich[aï'], *daily*
jährlich[aï'], *yearly*
halbjährlich, *semi-annually*
vierteljährlich, *quarterly*
wöchentlich[vü'], *weekly*
monatlich[o'-ä], *monthly*
eine Weile, *a while*
eine gute Weile, *a good while*
mittlerweile, *meanwhile*
vor einem halben Jahre, *half a year ago*
nach einem Vierteljahre, *after a quarter of a year*
im Laufe dieſes Monats, *in the course of this month*
in einem Augenblicke, *in an instant*
**heute über acht Tage**, *this day week*
**in vier Wochen**, *a month hence*
gegen Ende des Monats, *towards the end of the month*
geſtern vor drei Wochen, *yesterday three weeks ago*
**heute vor einem Jahre**, *this day one year ago*
**einen Abend um den andern**, *every other evening.*

## IV. The Seasons.

der Frühling (p. 233), *spring*
der Sommer, *summer*
der Herbſt (p. 233), *autumn*
der Winter (**windy** season), *winter.*

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

abnehmen, 409
ſich abquälen 396
ade, 389
Adolph 398
Allerheiligſte 400
Allmacht, 403
allſehend, 403
allweiſe, 403
anſchreien, 390
anweſend, 409
Argwohn, 406
Atmoſphäre 404
Aufgabe, 410
Auftrag, 390
auftragen, 392
Ausland, 404
Ausnahme, 407
äußer, 402
äußerſt, 401
[409
Barmherzigkeit
barbieren, 409
Barbierſtube 409
ſich bedanken 396
bedenken, 403
bedenklich, 401
bedienen, 407
Bediente, 389
ſich beeilen, 397
ſich befehden, 396
ſich befinden, 398
befolgen 408
befragen, 408
befreien, 395
befriedigen, 395
belehren, 408
belohnen, 406
Bemerkung, 407
ſich bemühen 395
benutzen, 408
beſiegen, 407
beſinnen, 396
beſonders, 401
beſorgen, 390
beſtreben, 395
beträchtlich, 410
Bewunderung,
[410
bezahlen, 397
Bibel, 403
bibliſch, 403
blinken, 396
Braten, 406
Brod, 408
Brunnen, 407
Bruſt, 389
Büchſe, 392
Burſche, 397
Canna, 408 [408
Chriſtenthum,
chriſtlich, 403
Chriſtus, 403
daheim, 389
darüber, 408
Ding, 389
ſich drehen, 395
Dreieinigkeit 403

Dunkel, (subst.) [389
durchdringen, [389
so eben, 406
Edelsinn, 407
Eid, 389
Eigennutz, 389
eigentlich, 402
einander, 394
eintreten, 406
Elbogen, 392
Elisabeth, 409
Elle, 389
engelgleich, 403
entschuldigen, [397
erbauen, 409
Erdkugel, 403
sich ereignen, 398
erfreuen, 401
sich erkälten, 401
erklären, 409
Erleuchter, 407
Erlöser, 403
sich ernähren 395
Ernte, 391
erst, 407
ersticken, 406
erwärmen, 408
erwidern, 397
erzeugen, 408
etwa, 397

Falschheit, 389
Fehde, 399 [409
fehlen (imp.),
Fernglas, 389
Festland, 404
flehentlich, 402
Flüglein, 389
fortfingen, 389
Fräulein, 401
sich freuen, 395
sich fürchten, 396

Gefahr, 399
der Gehalt, 399
das Gehalt, 399
der heilige Geist, [403
Geißbock, 389
Gemahl, 401
Gemahlin, 401
gemein (universal), 389
Gerassel, 389
Gericht, 389
Geschichtswerk, [409
Geschöpf, 403
Geschwister, 498
Gnade, 402
gnädig, 401 [409
um Gotteswillen
Gottheit, 403
Groschen, 397
Gutes thun, 397

Heide, 403
Heidenthum 403
heidnisch, 403
Heiland, 403
heilige Schrift, [403
Heiligkeit, 403
heiter, 408
Herrlichkeit, 389
hervor, 407 [407
hervorblühen,
hoffentlich, 401
Höllenfeuer, 403
Höllenpfuhl 403
höllisch, 403
Horizont, 403
sich hüten, 408
Hütlein, 396

Inland, 404
sich irren, 395

Jahrgehalt, 397
Jahrhundert407
jederman, 406
jetzig, 406
Judenthum, 403
jüdisch, 403
das Junge 389

Komet, 404
künftig, 395
Küste, 404

Laster, 408
laut, 406
lebenslang, 407
sich legen, 398
leidentlich, 402
Lieb, 389
Liebhaber, 408
Lohn, 410
lösen, 410
Louisdor, 397
Luftraum, 404
Lust, 389

Maß, 389
Madame, 401
Majestät, 397
Meer, 404
Meersküste, 404
mehr (not decl.), [400
Milchstraße, 404
mißtrauisch, 406
Mitbürger, 406
Mondlicht, 403
Mund, 392
mündlich, 390
Münze, 389

neigen, 399
neulich, 409
Neumond, 403
für nichts und wieder nichts, [409

Oberst, 406

Palast, 406
Paradies, 389
passieren, 403
Pfennig, 389
pflegen, 397
Planet, 389
Pommer, 397
Pommern, 397
Prediger, 389
Publikum, 396

Qual, 399
quälen, 399

rauch, 392
rauh, 391
Raum, 404
reichlich, 391

sammeln, 398
schaben, 409
sich schämen, 398
schlachten, 407
schlittern, 392
Schlittschuh, 391
Schlittschuhläufer, 391
Schinder, 409
Schlucker, 409
Schublade, 409
Schuld, 389
schwierig, 410
selber, 390
selbst (even), 410
sich setzen, 395
sicherlich 398[408
Sonnenstrahl,
Spurbüchse, 389
Sternhimmel, [404
sich strecken, 396
strömen, 406
Stücklein, 409

Tabak, 389
teuflisch, 403
Thätigkeit, 408
Tyrann, 398

überleben, 389
Ulme, 398
umsonst, 409
Umstand, 391
Umstände machen } 391
umstehen, 392
unbedeckt, 396
unerwartet, 401
ungefähr, 397
ungenau, 409
unheilbar, 401
unpäßlich, 401
unvollständig, [409
sich unterhalten [395
unternehmen, [391
verachten, 406
verbergen, 398
verlesen, 406
vermählen, 402
sich vermählen, [402
vermögen, 390
Vermögen, 406
vermuthlich, 409
sich verneigen, [395
verspielen, 406
versteigern, 406
vertheidigen 398
vertreiben, 406
vervollkommnen [410
verzagen, 391
viel (not decl.), [400
vielleicht, 409
Vollmond, 403
vorstellen, 391
sich einem v., 391

sich wärmen, 395
Weltall, 403
wenig (not decl.) [400
werthvoll, 406
Westen, 404
d. Wiedersehen, [401
wiederholentlich, [402
winseln, 409
sich wundern 395

Zahl, 400
zahlen, 400
zehren, 395
das Zimmer hüten, 401 [389
Zufriedenheit,
Zukunft, 398
in Zukunft, 398.

## ENGLISH-GERMAN.

to be able, 390
about, 397
accidentally397
activity, 408
adieu, 389
admiration, 410
to be afraid of,
to ail, 409 [396
amateur, 408
to amuse one's self, 395
to ask 408
barber's shop [409
to beware, 408
Bible, 403
biblical, 403
to blossom forth
to bow, 395[407
bread, 409.

breast, 389
to build, 409

to call at, 390
to call to mind, [396
to catch cold, [401
century, 407
certainly, 398
by chance, 397
charity, 409
chief, 410
to choke, 406
Christendom, [403
Christian, 403
circumstance, clatter, 389 [391
coast 404
coin, 389
colonel, 406
comet, 404
commission 390
commode, 409
to conceal, 398
to conquer, 407
considerably, [410
consort, 401
to consume, 395
contentment, [389
continent, 404
court of justice, [389
creature, 403
critical, 401

darkness, 389
debt, 389
to defend, 398
delight, 389
to delight, 401
to despair, 391
to despise, 406
devilish, 403
difficult, 410
distrustful, 406
drawer, 409

elbow, 392
Elizabeth, 409
elm, 398
to endeavor 395
to engender 408
enlightener 407
to enter, 406
errand, 390
to erect, 409
especially, 401
even, 394, 410
every one, 406
exception, 407
to excuse, 397
to expel, 406
to explain, 409
extremely, 401

falsehood, 389
farewell, 389
favor, 401
fellow, 397 [406
fellow-citizen, feud, 399
firmament, 404
player, 409
to follow, 408
foreign countries, 404
forth, 407
to foster, 397
full moon, 403
future, 398
for the f., 398

to gather, 398
generosity, 407
to get through, globe, 403 [389
glory, 389
Godhead, 403
for God's sake, grace, 402 [409
gracious, 401
groshen, 397
guilt, 389

to happen, 398
to harass one's self, 396
harvest, 391
to make haste, [397
heathenish, 403
heathenism 403
he-goat, 389
hellish, 403
hell-fire 403
hell-pool, 403
to hide, 398
historical work, [409
holiness, 403
Holy of Holies, [403
the Holy Ghost, [403
Holy Writ, 403
at home, 389
horizon, 403
husband, 401

to improve, 410
inaccurately 409
incompletely, [409
incurable, 401
indisposed, 401
to inform, 408
inland, 404
to introduce one to, 391 [403
Jesus Christ,
Jewish, 403
joy, 389
Judaism, 403
just now, 406

liberality, 407
to liberate, 395
to lie down, 398
life-long, 407
to look, 396
to lose at play, loud, 406 [406
Louis d'or, 397
lover, 408

madam, 401
magnificence, [392
to maintain one's self, 395
majesty, 397
to make use of, [408
maritime coast, [404
measure, 389
milky way, 404
Miss, 401
to mistake, 395
moonlight, 403
mouth, 392

new moon, 403
newly, 409
for nothing (whatever), 409
oath, 389
to obey, 408
oral, 390 [409
the other day,
to question, 408

palace, 406
paradise, 389
particular, 401
to pay, 397
penny, 389
perhaps, 409
to place or put before, 391
planet, 389
plentiful, 391
Pomerania, 397
Pomeranian 397
preacher, 389
present, 406
probably, 409
problem, 410
to produce, 408
public, 396

rattling, 389
rays of the sun, [403
to read aloud, [406
recently, 409
to recompense, [406
Redeemer, 403
to rejoice, 395
remark, 407
to reply, 397
reward, 410
to reward, 406
to revolve, 395
roast, 406
room, 404
rough, 391

salary, 397
to satisfy, 395
saving-box, 389
Saviour, 403
sea, 404
self, 396
self-interest 389
to sell by auction, 409
serene, 408
serious, 401
servant, 389
to serve, 407
to shave, 409
to sing on, 389
to sit down, 395
skate, 391
skater, 391
skinner, 409
sky, 404
to slaughter 407
to solve, 410
space, 404 [407
spring (well),
to step in, 406
to stifle, 406
to stream, 406
to stretch one's self, 396
to strive, 395
sunbeam, 408
to survive, 389
suspicion, 406
suspicious, 406 [390
to take care of,
to take heed 408
to take off, 409
to teach, 408
telescope, 389
to thank, 396
to tend, 397
thing, 389
tobacco, 389
Trinity, 403
to turn round, [395
tyrant, 398
uncovered, 396
to undertake, [391
unexpected, 401
universal, 389,
to use, 408 [403

valuable, 406
to vanquish, 407
verbal, 390
vice, 408

to warm, 408
to warm one's self, 395
wealth, 406[407
well (spring).
West, 404
to whine, 409
to wonder, 395
wretch, 409

yard, 389, 409
a young one 389

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 94.

1. Wenn Sie geſtern auf dem Eiſe geweſen wären, ſo würden Sie viel Vergnügen gehabt haben. (*b.* Sie würden viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, wenn Sie geſtern auf dem Eiſe geweſen wären. *c.* Wären Sie geſtern auf dem Eiſe geweſen, ſo hätten Sie viel V. gehabt. *d.* Sie hätten viel V. gehabt, wenn Sie geſtern auf dem Eiſe geweſen wären). 2. Ich würde gegangen ſein, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte. (*b.* Wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte, ſo würde ich gegangen ſein. *c.* Hätte ich Zeit gehabt, würde ich gegangen ſein. *d.* Ich wäre gegangen, hätte ich Zeit gehabt). 3. Viele würden weit glücklicher ſein, wenn ſie nur zufriedener wären. (*b.* Wenn ſie nur zufriedener wären, ſo würden viele weit glücklicher ſein. *c.* Viele wären weit glücklicher, wenn ſie nur zufriedener wären. *d.* Wären Sie nur zufriedener, ſo wären viele auch weit glücklicher). 4. Wenn mein Bruder Geld hätte, ſo würde er eine Reiſe unternehmen. (*b.* Mein Bruder würde eine Reiſe unternehmen, wenn er Geld hätte. *c.* Hätte mein Bruder Geld, ſo würde er eine Reiſe unternehmen. *d.* Mein Bruder unternähme eine Reiſe, wenn er Geld hätte). 5. Ich würde beſſer geſchlafen haben, wenn ich nicht ſo viel geträumt hätte. (*b.* Wenn ich nicht ſo viel geträumt hätte, würde ich beſſer g. haben. *c.* Hätte ich nicht ſo viel geträumt, ſo würde ich beſſer geſchlafen haben. *d.* Ich hätte beſſer geſchlafen, wenn ich nicht ſo viel geträumt hätte). 6. Wenn das Wetter beſſer wäre, würde ich ausgehen. 7. Sie würden wohl viel Vergnügen dort gehabt haben, da Sie ein guter Schlittſchuhläufer ſind. 8. Ich würde ein größeres Vergnügen gehabt haben, wenn ich beſſere Schlittſchuhe hätte, und das Eis nicht ſo rauh geweſen wäre. 9. Ihr Bruder würde nicht krank geworden ſein, wenn er in einem geſünderen Hauſe gewohnt und beſſeres Waſſer gehabt hätte. 10. Machen Sie keine Umſtände; thun Sie, als ob Sie zu Hauſe wären. 11. Die Ernte wird reichlich ſein; ſie würde noch reichlicher ſein, wenn wir ein wenig (or etwas) mehr Regen gehabt hätten. 12. Was ein Menſch auch zu leiden habe, muß er nicht verzweifeln. 13. Wenn ich nicht unwohl wäre, würde ich mit Ihnen gehen. 14. Wenn ich Wein gehabt hätte, ſo würde ich etwas getrunken haben. 15. Was würden Sie geantwortet haben, wenn Sie an meiner Stelle geweſen wären? 16. Die Vögel würden nicht fliegen, wenn ſie keine Flügel hätten. 17. Meine Tante würde nicht ſchreiben, wenn ſie krank wäre. 18. Wenn dieſe Leute beſſeres Waſſer hätten, würden ſie geſünder ſein. 19. Ich würde einen Brief geſchrieben haben, wenn ich Papier gehabt hätte. 20. Wenn ich Papier gehabt hätte, ſo würde ich einen Brief geſchrieben haben. 21. Hätte ich Papier gehabt, ſo würde ich einen Brief geſchrieben haben. 22. Die Leute würden den Prediger beſſer verſtehen, wenn er lauter ſpräche. 23. Spräche der Prediger lauter, ſo würden die Leute ihn beſſer verſtehen. 24. Wäre mein Freund fleißiger geweſen, ſo würde er weit mehr gelernt haben. 25. Wenn ich ſparſam wäre, ſo würde ich reich ſein. 26. Hätte er Geld, ſo würde er ein Haus kaufen. 27. Würden Sie es glauben, wenn Sie es nicht ſelbſt geſehen hätten? 28. Wir würden ſelbſt gekommen ſein, wenn wir Zeit gehabt hätten. 29. Hätte ich es ſelbſt gewußt, ſo würde ich nicht ihn gefragt haben. 30. Hätte ich Ihr Geld, ſo würde ich jenen ſchönen Garten gekauft haben. 31. Hätte er geſpart, ſo würde er jetzt ein reicher Mann ſein. 32. Wenn Sie hier geweſen wären, ſo würde ich Sie ihm vorgeſtellt haben.

## 96.

1. Wie befindeſt du dich, Ludwig? 2. Ich bin nicht ganz wohl; ich bin geſtern krank geweſen. 3. Guten Morgen, lieber Heinrich; ich freue mich (or ich bin erfreut), Sie wieder zu ſehen; wie befinden Sie ſich? 4. Vielen Dank, ich bin wohl. 5. Haſt du dich ſchon gewaſchen, Adolph? 6. Ich habe mich noch

nicht gewaschen, aber mein älterer Bruder hat sich schon gewaschen. 7. Sie irren sich, mein Herr; dieser Herr ist nicht mein Vetter, sondern mein Bruder. 8. Ich irre mich sehr selten. 9. Ich habe mich nie geirrt. 10. Gehen Sie heute Abend ins Theater? 11. Sie werden sich da sehr unterhalten (better than amüsieren). 12. Wie hast du dich gestern Abend unterhalten? 13. Sehr wohl; Herr N. hat sehr gut gespielt. 14. Eure Aufgabe ist diesmal sehr schlecht gewesen. 15. Wir werden uns bemühen (or bestreben), sie in Zukunft besser zu machen. 16. Sie irren sich sicherlich; meine Mutter ist den ganzen Tag nicht aus dem Hause gewesen. 17. Wie habt ihr euch auf dem Lande unterhalten? 18. Wir haben uns sehr wohl (or gut) unterhalten. 19. Freust du dich nicht sehr, deine alten Freunde wieder zu sehen? 20. Ja, ich freue mich sehr (or ich bin sehr erfreut). 21. Lieben diese Geschwister sich (or einander)? 22. Ja, sie lieben sich. 23. Habt ihr je euch gesehen? 24. Wir haben uns nie gesehen. 25. Fandet ihr euch? 26. Ja, mein Herr, wir fanden uns. 27. Meine Schwester sammelte Blumen. 28. Das Wasser sammelte sich. 29. Verbirg dich nicht. 30. Rettet euch! 31. Die Männer wärmten sich am Ofen. 32. Die Soldaten haben sich vor die Thüre gestellt. 33. Die armen Wittwen setzten sich unter eine Ulme. 34. Die Reisenden legten sich unter eine Ulme. 35. Meine Sachen befinden sich in Ihrem Zimmer. 36. Sie irren sich; sie sind (or sie befinden sich) noch im Sommerhause. 37. Alle Tyrannen gleichen sich (or einander). 38. Alle drei Schwestern gleichen sich. 39. Warum bemühet (or bestrebt) ihr euch nicht, die Wünsche eurer Eltern zu befriedigen? 40. Sie irren sich, mein Herr, wir haben uns immer bemühet (or bestrebt), es zu thun. 41. Was ist geschehen? 42. Meine Mutter befindet sich sehr unwohl; sie hat sich erkältet. 43. Bemühen Sie sich immer, Ihre Pflicht zu thun. 44. Er hat es selbst gesagt. 45. Haben Sie sich auf dem Balle erfreut (or vergnügt), meine Herrn? 46. Meine Herren, ihr habt euch tapfer vertheidigt. 47. Haben Sie diese Arbeit selbst gethan? 48. Haben sie einander gelobt? 49. Nein, sie haben sich selbst gelobt. 50. Schämt ihr euch nicht? 51. Nein, mein Herr, wir schämen uns nicht.

## 100.

1. Die Erde wird von den (or durch die) Sonnenstrahlen erwärmt. 2. Wie werden diese fremden Wörter geschrieben? 3. Ich werde von jedermann getadelt. 4. Das römische Heer wurde von Hannibal bei Cannä geschlagen. 5. Ich bin von niemand (or niemandem) erkannt worden. 6. Diese Waare wird nicht leicht verkauft werden. 7. Wirst du von dem Lehrer gelobt werden? 8. Der Rath, der ihm gegeben worden (war), wird von ihm nicht befolgt worden sein. 9. Jeder Augenblick werde von dir zu nützlicher Thätigkeit benutzt, damit du von jedermann geachtet werdest. 10. Die Festung wäre von dem Heere nicht erobert worden, wenn sie besser vertheidigt worden wäre. 11. Diese Aufgaben sollen von den Schülern gelernt werden. 12. Ich brauche darüber nicht belehrt zu werden. 13. Amerika wurde von den Spaniern entdeckt. 14. Der Kranke wird von der (or durch die) Luft gestärkt. 15. Die Arzeneien wurden von dem Arzte selbst für den Kranken bereitet. 16. Ist der General darüber von den Officieren befragt worden? 17. Die Festuug wurde in der Nacht von den tapfern Regimentern gestürmt. 18. Warum ist mein Sohn von dem Lehrer so streng bestraft worden?

## 102.

1. Unglücklich ist der Mensch, welcher von niemandem geliebt wird. 2. Diebe arbeiten bei Nacht und werden nicht gesehen; ehrliche Leute (or Menschen) arbeiten bei Tage und werden von jedermann gesehen. 3. Von wem sind diese Auf-

gaben verbessert worden. 4. Alle jene Häuser sind diese Woche verkauft worden. 5. Der König Gustav Adolph ist bei Lützen getödtet worden. 6. Ihr werdet von allen geliebt und geschätzt. 7. Alle unsere Bücher sind verkauft worden. 8. Das Buch ist nicht zu haben. 9. Der Palast war durch (or von) Feuer zerstört worden. 10. Er (der P.) ist von meinem Freunde erbaut worden. 11. Der Palast, welcher von meinem Freunde erbaut wurde, wird versteigert werden. 12. Das Haus, welches versteigert wurde, wurde vor drei Jahren von meinem Onkel gebaut. 13. Nachdem der alte Palast durch Feuer zerstört worden war, wurde ein neuer an derselben Stelle gebaut. 14. Dieser schöne Park wird versteigert werden, da der Besitzer desselben ein armer Mann geworden (ist). 15. Der Park wurde von dem Grafen, dem gegenwärtigen (or jetzigen) Besitzer des Palastes gekauft. 16. Wenn der Besitzer dieses Palastes nicht ein armer Mann geworden wäre, so würde derselbe nicht versteigert worden sein. 17. Der Graf würde vielleicht kein armer Mann geworden sein, wenn sein Palast nicht durch Feuer zerstört worden wäre. 18. Dieser neue Palast würde nicht erbaut worden sein (or wäre nicht e. w.), wenn der alte nicht durch Feuer zerstört worden wäre. 19. Sind gute Bücher da zu haben? 20. Elisabeth, unsere Magd, wurde hingeschickt, um irgend ein Geschichtswerk oder irgend ein anderes gutes Buch zu holen, aber es war kein gutes Buch dort zu finden. 21. Die hübsche Uhre, welche (or die) mir neulich von meinen Eltern war gegeben worden, wurde von meinem kleinen Bruder gestern aus meiner Schublade genommen und gänzlich (or vollkommen) verdorben. 22. Dieser Spiegel wurde neulich zerbrochen; wissen Sie von wem? 23. Ich kann nicht sagen, von wem er zerbrochen wurde. 24. Mit demselben Maße, mit dem ihr messet, soll euch wieder gemessen werden. 25. Die Werke Shakspeare's wurden zuerst von Wieland ins (in das) Deutsche übersetzt, aber unvollständig und ungenau. Diese Übersetzung wurde von Eschenburg beträchtlich vervollkommnet. Erst zu Anfang des jetzigen Jahrhunderts wurde die wirklich schwierige Aufgabe glücklich von Wilhelm Schlegel gelöst, dessen Übersetzung selbst Engländer mit Bewunderung lesen.

## [67.] IMPERSONAL VERBS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. **Es** regnet. | *It rains.* |
| 2. **Es** blitzt. | *It lightens.* |
| 3. **Es** freut **mich.** | *I am glad, rejoiced.* |
| 4. **Es** hungert **mich.** | *I am hungry* |
| 5. **Mich** hungert. | |
| 6. **Es** träumte **mir.** | *I dreamed.* |
| **Mir** träumte. | |
| 7. Es **hat** geregnet. | *It has rained.* |
| 8. Es **hat mich** gehungert | *I was hungry.* |
| 9. Es **ist mir** gelungen. | *I have succeeded.* |
| 10. Man gab **ihm** viel. | *Much was given him.* |
| **Es wurde ihm** viel gegeben. | |
| 11. Man hat **ihm** getraut. | *People trusted him.* |
| **Es** ist **ihm** getraut **worden.** | *He was trusted.* |

*Observations.*—1 Verbs which denote an action, not proceeding from a definite subject, are called **Impersonal.** The place of the subject is supplied by the neuter pers. pronoun **es**, *it*; these verbs are, therefore, used only in the 3d pers. sing. neut.; M. S. 1—8.

*Note.*—The subject of a verb, by its opposition to the object, is viewed grammatically as a person, the latter as a thing; hence *impersonal* (Lat. *in*, not, *personalis*, personal) signifies having no subject.

2. Impersonal verbs, properly so-called, can only be employed impersonally. For the most part they indicate phenomena of nature; M. S. 1, 2.

3. Others may be employed personally or impersonally. The greater part of verbs of this class express a sentiment, an impression made upon the senses, or upon the soul by physical or moral causes; M. S. 4, 5. When these verbs are employed impersonally, they have for an object (accus. or dative) the word which in English acts as their personal subject: comp. **Es hungert mich**, with **I** *am hungry*; **Es träumt mir**, with **I** *dream*; **Es thut mir** leid, with **I** *am sorry*. In case the object precedes the verb, **es** may be suppressed, so that the verb is presented without an apparent grammatical subject, as **mich hungert** (for **mich hungert es**); **mir träumt** (for **mir träumt es**).

4. Intransitive verbs do not form a personal passive voice in German, but they may be used impersonally with the subject **es**; **Man gehorcht mir**, *one obeys me*; Passive: **Es wird mir gehorcht**, *I am obeyed.*

5. Sentences with a definite subject placed *after* the verb, retain an affirmative meaning by using **es** before the verb, which is called the **grammatical subject**, in opposition to the **real** or **logical subject** of the sentence. **Es** answers in such cases to the English **there**; comp. **Es ist**[1] ein **Herr**[2] in dem Garten, **there** *is a gentleman in the garden*, with **Ein Herr**[1] **ist**[2] in dem Garten, *a gentleman is in the garden*; **Es klopft**[1] **jemand**,[2] **there** *is somebody knocking*, with **jemand**[1] **klopft**,[2] *somebody is knocking.* As such sentences have in German properly two subjects, viz. the *real* or *logical* and the *grammatical subject* (es), it is important to know that the verb agrees with the real subject; e. g. **Es ist eine Dame** im Zimmer, *there is a lady in the room*; but **Es sind Damen** im Zimmer, *there are ladies in the room*; **Es war ein Herr** hier, *there was a gentleman here*; but **Es waren Herren** hier, *there were gentlemen here.*

*Remark.*—It is evident, that the employment of the expletive **es** in German and **there** in English has no other design, but to indicate that notwithstanding the interrogative form of the sentence, it ought to be taken affirmatively. Without *there* or es in the above sentences they appear as questions: Is a lady in the room (?) Ist eine Dame im Zimmer (?) Are ladies in the room (?) Sind Damen im Zimmer (?) Was a gentlemen here (?) War ein Herr hier (?) Were gentlemen here (?) Waren Herren hier (?).

6. Impersonal verbs are almost all conjugated with the auxiliary **haben**, M. S. 7, 8

*Note.*—For the more idiomatic use of the impersonal verbs see Second Course.

PARADIGM OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB.—**Schneien**, *to snow.*

PRESENT.

| *Indicative.* | *Subjunctive.* |
|---|---|
| **es schneit**, *it snows.* | **daß es schneie**, *that it snows.* |

IMPERFECT.

| | |
|---|---|
| **es schneite**, *it snowed.* | **daß es schnei(e)te**, *that it snowed.* |

PERFECT.

**es hat** geſchneit, *it has snowed.* daß **es** geſchneit habe, *that it has snowed.*

PLUPERFECT.

**es hatte** geſchneit, *it had snowed.* daß **es** geſchneit **hätte**, *that it had snowed*

FIRST FUTURE.

**es** wird ſchneien, *it will snow.* daß **es** ſchneien **werde**, *that it will snow.*

SECOND FUTURE.

**es** wird geſchneit haben, *it will have snowed.* daß **es** geſchneit haben **werde**, *that it will have snowed.*

*First Conditional.*

**es würde** ſchneien, *it would snow.*

*Second Conditional.*

**es würde** geſchneit haben, *it would have snowed.*

## 103.

donnern (imp., p. 117), *to thunder*
blitzen (imp., p. 199, Blitz) *to lighten*
ſtürmen (imp., p. 88, ſtürmiſch), *to storm*
**es hungert mich** (p. 79), *I am hungry* [*thirsty*
**es dürſtet mich** (p. 121), *I am*
es regnet **ſtark**, *it rains* **fast** (Idiom) [*snow*
ſchneien (imp., p. 156, Schnee), *to*
es friert **ſtark**, *it freezes* **hard** (Idiom)
vorkommen, *to come to the presence of, to the knowledge of, to be known*
vierzehn[fîr'-tsân], *fourteen*
der Grad[graht] (–es, –e), *degree*
die Schnelligkeit (ſchnell, p. 240), *quickness, speed*
fünfzig, *fifty*
wehen[va'-hen], *to blow*
ſchrecklich[shrĕk'-lîy], *tremendous, dreadful*, and adv.
es gibt (see p. 381, and Lex.)
**es thut mir leid** (p. 264, Leid), *I am sorry for* (of) *it*
**es freut mich**, *I am glad of it*
das Fieber[fe'-ber] (–s), *fever*
**es gefällt mir** (p. 207, gefallen), *I like it, I am pleased with it*
**es wundert mich** (p. 381, wundern), *I wonder at it*
**es fehlt mir an** (einem Dinge), *I want* (a thing)
das Fräulein (–s), *young lady, Miss* (fr. Frau)
wahrlich (p. 249, wahr), *surely, in truth*
**es reuet mich** } *I repent of it* (or
ich bereue } it)
beleidigen (Leid, p. 264), *to offend, to give offence to* [*sleet*
die Schloße[shlō'-se] (–n), *hail,*
ähnlich[ân'-lîy], *like, similar*
der Hieb[hēp] (–es, –e), *stroke*
der Becher[bĕ'-yer](–s), *cup, goblet*
der Löffel[lüf'-fel] (–s), *spoon*
das Tageslicht, *daylight* [(Idiom)
**es geht mir übel**, *I fare ill*
übel (p. 183, Übel), *evil, ill, bad*
die Laterne[lă-tĕr'-ne](–n), *lantern*
das Hufeiſen (Huf, p. 87, Eiſen, p. 80), *horse-shoe*
die Baſe[bah'-ze] (–n), *aunt, female cousin*, then *fem. relative in general.*

1. Es hat geſtern gehagelt, gedonnert, geblitzt und geſtürmt, und heute regnet es wieder. 2. Mich und ihn friert, hungert und dürſtet. 3. Es hungert, dürſtet und friert mich. 4. Wie es regnet! 5. Ja, aber es regnete geſtern viel ſtärker. 6. Wie viel es dieſen Sommer geregnet hat! 7. Und wie viel es vorigen Winter geſchneit hat! 8. Es friert ſtark in Deutſchland. 9. Ja, viel ſtärker als in England. 10. Die größte Kälte, die in England vorkommt, iſt 14 (vierzehn) Grad. 11. Es donnerte und blitzte, und jetzt hagelt es. 12. Der Hagel fällt mit der Schnelligkeit von 50 (fünfzig) engliſchen Meilen in der Stunde. 13. Es weht ſchrecklich. 14. Ja, es wird wirklich ein Sturm. 15. Gibt es viele Theater in London? 16. O ja, aber es gibt noch mehr in Paris. 17. Iſt niemand zu Hauſe? 18. Nein, mein Herr, es iſt niemand zu Hauſe. 19. Bitte (for ich bitte), gehen Sie heute ins Concert? 20. Es thut mir Leid, daß ich heute nicht gehen kann. 21. Kommen Sie von New Orleans? 22. Es freut uns ſehr, daß Sie dem gelben Fieber entkommen ſind. 23. Sie ſind ſehr gütig; ja, es iſt dieſes Jahr dort ſehr heftig geweſen. 24. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in Italien? 25. Es gefällt mir ſehr gut. 26. Es wundert mich, daß Sie nie in Rom geweſen ſind. 27. Es hat mir immer an Zeit dazu gefehlt. 28. Es iſt mir geſagt worden, daß Fräulein N. ſehr liebenswürdig ſei. 29. Sie haben Recht, ſie iſt ſehr liebenswürdig. 30. Sie irren ſich, oder vielmehr die Leute, die es Ihnen geſagt (haben, see Lexicology); denn wahrlich, ſie iſt nicht ſehr liebenswürdig. 31. Es reuet mich, ihn beleidigt zu haben. 32. Ihn beleidigt zu haben, reuet mich. 33. Ich bereue, ihn beleidigt zu haben. 34. Vorgeſtern hat es ſehr ſtark gehagelt; es ſind Schloßen von der Größe eines Eies gefallen. 35. Dieſes Bild iſt ſehr ähnlich; es fehlt ihm nichts als die Sprache. 36. Es grüßt kein Wolf ein Lamm (Prov.). 37. Es regnet gern, wo es ſchon naß iſt (Prov.). 38. Das iſt mir eben, als wenn's in Rom donnerte (Prov.) 39. Es fällt kein Baum auf einen Hieb (Prov.). 40. Es kommt kein Unglück allein (Prov.). 41. Es iſt noch nicht aller Tage Abend (Prov.). 42. Es iſt nicht alles Gold, was glänzt (Prov.). 43. Es ertrinken mehr im Becher als in der Donau (Prov.) 44. Wenn es Brei regnet, habe ich keinen Löffel (Prov.). 45. Es gefällt ihm, wie den Eulen das Tageslicht und den Dieben die Laternen (Prov.). 46. Der Faule ſpricht: es will nicht Nacht werden (Prov.). 47. Wenn Einer keinen Feind hat, ſo gehts ihm übel (Prov.). 48. Es gibt mehr als eine bunte Kuh (Prov.). 49. Es findet wohl auch (p. 344) ein Blinder ein Hufeiſen (Prov.). 50. Ja, liebe Frau Bas, (for Baſe) || Wenn es regnet, wird man naß, || Wenn es ſchneit, ſo wird man weiß, || Und wenn's gefriert, ſo gibt es Eis (Prov.).

## 104.

funkeln*[fünk'-eln], *to sparkle*

traulich (trauen, p. 207), *familiar, cordial*, and adv.

ſtolzieren (ſtolz, p. 135), *to be proud, to strut*

die Tracht*[trächt] (–en), *costume, mode of dress*

die Jagd (jagen, p. 289) (–en), *chase, hunting*

die Grabſchrift (Grab, p. 273, Schrift, p. 357 and *T. Notice*, on the same p.) (–en), *epitaph*

ſchmerzen (Schmerz, p. 201), *to feel pain, to give pain*

der Schriftſteller (ſtellen, p. 260) *writer, author*
klopfen[klöp'-fᵉn], *to knock*
der Herr Profeſſor,* see Lex.
**ſchadet nichts**=das or es ſchadet nichts (Schaden, p. 276), *never mind, 'tis no matter, no harm* (Idiom)
ein andermal=ein anderes mal
fortgehen (fort, p. 124), *to go away*
die Zerſtörung,* *destruction*
einſt,* *once, one day*
auszahlen (p. 400), *to pay* (the wages)
der Lohn (p. 410), *wages, pay*
entgegnen (entgegen, p. 242), *to reply*
ſchuldig ſein (p. 389), *to owe, to be indebted*
bedenken (denken, p. 107), *to consider*
fortlaufen (laufen, p. 101), *to run away*, and fig. *to run on, continue*
unterbrechen[ünter-brĕ'-ʏᵉn], *to interrupt*

1. Es blinken drei freundliche Sterne ins Dunkel des Lebens hinein, || Die Sterne, ſie funkeln ſo traulich, ſie heißen Lied, Liebe und Wein (Körner). 2. Es lebe, was auf Erden (p. 184, *Note*) ſtolziert in grüner Tracht, || Die Wälder und die Felder, die Jäger und die Jagd. 3. **Grabſchrift.**—Hier liegt Silvius, der nichts umſonſt gethan; || Es ſchmerzt ihn, daß man dies umſonſt hier leſen kann (Martin Opitz). 4. Leſſing (ein berühmter deutſcher Schriftſteller) kam eines Abends (§236, 8.) nach Hauſe und klopfte an ſeine Thür. Der Bediente ſah aus dem Fenſter, erkannte ſeinen Herrn im Dunkeln nicht, und rief: „Der Herr Profeſſor iſt nicht zu Hauſe!" „Schadet nichts," antwortete Leſſing, „ich werde ein andermal wiederkommen" und ging in der Zerſtreuung ruhig fort. 5. „Ich ſehe mich gezwungen, Sie zu verlaſſen,"—ſagte einſt ein Diener zu ſeinem Herrn,—„weil Sie mir meinen Lohn nicht auszahlen; ich diene Ihnen ſchon einige Jahre und habe noch keinen Pfennig von Ihnen erhalten."—„Du haſt Unrecht, dich zu beklagen," —entgegnete ſein Herr,—„es iſt wahr, ich bin dir ſchuldig, allein du mußt bedenken, daß dein Lohn immer fortläuft."—„Das iſt eben die Sache,"—unterbrach ihn der Diener,—„ich fürchte, er läuft ſo ſehr, daß ich ihn nie werde einholen können."

## 105.

die Lorelei*[lō"-rᵉ-lī'], *Loreley*
das Märchen*[mâir'-ʏᵉn](-s), *tale, legend*
der Sinn (p. 247), *mind, thought*
dunkeln (dunkel, p. 365), *to darken*
der Abendſonnenſchein (p. 200, p. 201), *evening sunshine*
die Jungfrau (p. 84, p. 87), *virgin, maiden* (lit. *young woman*)
oben (obenan, p. 236), *on high, at the top, above*
blitzen,* *to lighten, gleam, flash*
das Geſchmeide[gᵉ-shmī'-dᵉ] (-es), *trinkets, jewelry*
dabei, *along with it, at the same time* (p. 314, darnach)
wunderſam (wunderbar, p. 305), *wonderful*
gewaltig (Gewalt, p. 369), *powerful*
Melodie*[mĕ-lō'-dē"] (here poetically Melodei) *melody*
das Weh (weh, p. 308), *woe*
ſchauen,* *to look carefully, gaze, see*

das Felſenriff, *rocky reef*
der Felſen[fĕl'-z$^{e}$n] (–s), *rock*
das Riff*[rif] (–es, –e), *reef*
hinauf[hin-ouf'] (p. 245), *up to*
verſchlingen (ſchlingen, p. 311), *to swallow*
der Kahn[kahn](–es, Kähne), *boat*
am Ende (das Ende, p. 201), *after all, when all comes to an end, at last*
das Singen (p. 178, Brüllen), *to sing.*

## Die Lorelei.

von H. Heine.

Ich weiß nicht, was ſoll es bedeuten,*
Daß ich ſo traurig bin;
Ein Mährchen aus alten Zeiten,
Das kommt mir nicht aus dem Sinn.

Die Luft iſt kühl und es dunkelt,
Und ruhig fließt der Rhein;
Der Gipfel des Berges funkelt
Im Abendſonnenſchein.

Die ſchönſte Jungfrau ſitzet
Dort oben wunderbar,
Ihr gold'nes Geſchmeide blitzet,
Sie kämmt ihr gold'nes Haar.

Sie kämmt es mit gold'nem Kamme,
Und ſingt ein Lied dabei;
Das hat eine wunderſame,
Gewaltige Melodei.

Den Schiffer im kleinen Schiffe
Ergreift es mit wildem Weh;
Er ſchaut nicht die Felſenriffe,
Er ſchaut nur hinauf in die Höh'.

Ich glaube, die Wellen verſchlingen
Am Ende Schiffer und Kahn;
Und das hat mit ihrem Singen
Die Lorelei gethan.

## 106.

vorüber (vor, p. 126, über, p. 265), *by, across before, in front, past*
vorübergehen, *to pass by*
die Kathedrale[kă"-te-drah'-l$^{e}$] *cathedral*
geziemen (ziemen, p. 338), *to become* (impers.)
bleiben (p. 187), *to continue*
ſcheinen (p. 240), *to seem*
der Eilwagen (Eile, p. 327, Wagen, p. 207), *stage-coach*
die Poſtkutſche (Poſt, p. 294, Kutſche, p. 296), *post-coach*

[(Idiom)· **ein Viertel auf drei,** see Lex.

1. Does it rain? 2. No, it does not rain now, it only rained this morning. 3. It has rained the whole night. 4. I believe it snows. 5. Has it snowed already? 6. Do you believe it will soon freeze? 7. Yes, Sir, I think it will freeze to-night. 8. I am very warm. 9. It lightens, it will thunder immediately (bald, p. 133). 10. It thundered and lightened violently. 11. Let us go home, it will commence to rain immediately. 12. I am glad to find you here, but I am sorry that I cannot accompany you. 13. Have you nothing to eat? 14. I am very hungry (imp.), I have not breakfasted this morning. 15. How is the weather? 16. It is very bad weather, it rains, it will soon snow. 17. Is it snowing? 18. No, it does not snow, it is much too cold. 19. Are you hungry (imp.)? 20. Yes, I am very hungry and thirsty (imp.). 21. My brother will be very glad (imp.) to see you, he has often spoken

*More correct would be Was es bedeuten ſoll, see § 60, 1; here as in verse 6, 1, the form of the independent sentence is chosen instead of the dependent one.

of (an) you. 52. Do you know what o'clock it is? 23. I think it is four o'clock. 24. At (um) what hour do you usually get up? 25. I get up (aufſtehen) at six o'clock every morning and I go to bed at half past ten every evening. 26. What o'clock is it now? 27. It is not yet eight o'clock, it is almost a quarter to eight. 28. At what hour will your uncle depart (abreiſen)? 29. He will depart at a quarter past five. 30. At what hour does 'your friend usually breakfast? 31. I think he always breakfasts at half past nine or a quarter to ten. 32. 'Your cousins will be here by (ungefähr um) half past five. 33. Let us go to (in) the concert, it will commence at a quarter to seven. 34. I am sorry, I have (got) no time, I must stay at home to-night. 35. It will remain cold. 36. Somebody was knocking. 37. Somebody (imp.) had whistled. 38. What did it strike (ſchlagen) just now? 39. It struck four as I passed the cathedral. 40. It is not becoming for young ladies to laugh so loudly. 41. It seems to be (infin. last) a very beautiful morning; I hope it will continue as fine. 42. Did 'you see how it lightened? 43. It is not very agreeable to travel in a stage coach. 44. I was more sorry (imp.) for (um) his family than for him. 45. You will soon repent it. 46. There is something in my eye. 47. There was just now something at the door. 48. There are ten rooms in this house. 49. There are stars in (an, cont. with the artic.) the skies. 50. There are many fine buildings in this large town. 51. He (imp.) was very sleepy. 52. We (imp.) felt cold. 53. They (imp.) have been hungry and thirsty.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Grad,** *degree*, prop. *step*, **grade,** fr. Lat. *gradus*, a step—*gradi*, to step, to go; L. Lat. *graduo*, to go upwards by grades or degrees, to **graduate.**

**wehen,** *to blow* (of the air or wind), Goth. and ahd. *wajan*, *wahan*, A. S. *vavan*, Sans. *va*, to blow, fr. which prob. as a very old participial form **Wind, wind,** prop. *blowing* or that which blows, conn. with it perhaps **fan, van.**

**ſchrecklich,** *tremendous*, fr. Schreck, *fright, terror*, ahd. *scricchan*, mhd. *schricken*, orig. *to jump*, then to *startle*; this orig. meaning is still preserved in **Heuſchrecke,** grass*hopper.*

**es gibt,** *there is, there are* (p. 381).

*Take Notice! There is, there are*, is translated by **es iſt, es ſind,** when the subject refers to a limited space, as Es iſt Bier in dieſer Flaſche, *there is beer in this bottle*; Es waren nur wenige Frauen in der Kirche, *there were only a few ladies in the church.* **Es gibt** is employed in a more indefinite sense, as Es gibt viele derartige Menſchen in der Welt. Es gibt has no plural form, and governs the accusative; Es gibt keinen größern Redner im Lande, *there is no greater orator in the country.*

**reuen,** *to repent, regret,* **rue,** ahd. *hriuwa*, mourning, A. S. *hreowan*, to be sorry for.

**Schloße** (o), *hail, hail-stone,* **sleet,** A. S. *sliht*; Tab. V. 10.

**ähnlich, like,** *similar, resembling,* Goth. *analeiks,* mhd. *anelich,* A. S. *anlic,* c. of an, ahd. *ana.* A. S. *an,* and lich=leich=gleich, see p. 104; hence ähnlich=an-gleich=approaching to complete conformity.

**Hieb,** *stroke, blow,* fr. **hauen** (imperf. **hieb,** see p. 330), *to* **hew,** *to strike.*

**Becher,** *cup, goblet,* **beaker,** Tab. V. 16; Itl. *bichiere,* L. Lat. *baccharium.*

**Laterne, lantern,** Lat. *lanterna,* Gr. *lampter—lampo,* to give light.

**gehen, to go,** impers.=*to be, to fare,* as, wie **geht es?** *how is it?* (Idiom) **Wie geht es Ihnen?** *how do you do? how fare you?* Es geht mir wohl, *I am* (doing) *well.* Es geht mir ſchlecht, übel, *I fare ill.*

**funkeln,** *to sparkle, glitter,* fr. ahd. *funkel*=Funke, *spark, sparkle*; conn. with Goth. *funa,* fire,

**Tracht,** *costume, dress,* lit. what one *wears,* fr. tragen, *to carry,* p. 254).

**klopfen,** *to knock, beat,* **clap,** A. S. *clappan,* Dutch, *klop*; Itl. *colpo,* a blow, comp. **collop** (Webster) and klappern, p. 102.

**Zerſtreuung,** *distraction*; zer- and **ſtreuen,** ahd. *strewjan,* A. S. *streowjan, to* **strew,** *to spread, scatter*; Lat. *sterno—stravi,* to dissipate, disperse, fr. which **Stroh, straw**; fig. *distraction, absence of mind.*

**einſt, once** (in the past), *some day* (in the future); fr. ein, with the adverbial s (Genitive), eins and formative **t**; thus **once** (pronounced by some once't) is derived from *one.*

**Kathedrale, cathedral**=church with the *seat* for the bishop; Lat. *cathedra,* Gr. *kathedra,* a seat.

**ein Viertel auf drei,** *a quarter past two.*

*Take Notice!* The Germans express the fractions of time, by indicating how large a portion of the time between the preceding hour and the hour to come has elapsed, as es iſt **drei Viertel** auf drei, *it is a quarter of three* (three quarters *past two*); es iſt **halb zwei,** *it is half past one*; es iſt zehn Minuten nach (or über) zehn, *it is ten minutes past ten*; es iſt **eins** (or ein Uhr), *it is one.*

**Lorelei, Loreley,** *Lurley.*

According to the legend, a water nymph dwells on the remarkable rock called the *Lurleyberg,* who frequently appears thereupon in the twilight or upon a moonlight evening, and by means of her beauty and captivating songs so engages the attention of young, ardent boatmen, as to cause them to forget the surrounding dangers, and lures them into the whirlpool.

**Märchen** (dim. of Mär, not Mähr), *tale, fairy tale, legend,* Old Sax. and ahd. *mari,* A. S. *mære,* clear, bright, known, famous; Goth. *merjan,* to proclaim. Comp. mar in prop. names, as Waldemar, who rules (walten, p. 372) with glory, and others.

**blitzen,** *to lighten,* instead of blick-zen; see Blick, p. 177, and Blitz, p. 202.

**Geſchmeide,** *trinkets, jewels*; ahd. *gasmide*=metal (collect. of ahd. *smida* =metal), then work done in a **smithy,** things wrought of metal, *jewelry.* Of the same root is **geſchmeidig** (lit. easily to be forged), *pliant, flexible,* **smooth.**

**Melodie** (here poetically Melodei), **melody**, *tune*, fr. Gr., Lat. *melodia*, fr. *melos*, song, and *ode*, ode.

**ſchauen**, *to look carefully, to gaze, see*, Goth. *skaujan*, ahd. *scawon*, A. S. *scawian*, to look. The English *to* **show** has adopted a causative meaning, to *cause* to see, to present to view, while the German has retained the original.

**Fels** (better than Felſen), *rock*, ahd. and Old Sax. *felis*, Gr. *pela* and *pella*, stone, conn. with Engl. **fell**, Fr. *falise*,

**Riff**, **reef**, a range of rocks lying at or near the surface of the water; Dutch, Ice. *rif*; Sw. *ref*; perhaps a secondary form of **Rippe**, **rib** (Sw. *ref*, Ice. *rif*=Rippe). According to Weigand fr. Old North. *rifa*= **rift**, *cleft*, fr. the plur. form of the praet. *rifa*=to tear, to rend, to split.

## CONVERSATION.—The Weather and The Seasons.

es geht (gehen, impers. used) *to be, to fare*
veränderlich (anders, p. 376), *changeable*
bald (p. 133) . . . bald, *one moment . . . one moment*
naß [näs], *wet*
ſchrecklich (Schreck, p. 425), *terrible*, and adv.
vergleichen (gleich, p. 208), *to compare*
der Vergleich (–es, –e), *comparison*
der Grad [ah] (–es, –e), *degree*
ſchlüpfrig [shlïpf'-rïy], *slippery*
glatt [ä], *smooth, slippery*
ſchneien (v. imp.), *to snow*
thauen [tou'-en] (imp.), *to thaw*
der Thau (–es), *dew*
das Thauwetter, *thawing weather*
merklich (merken, p 182, bemerken, p. 311), *visibly*
die Temperatur [tĕm''-pe-ră-tûr'], *temperature*
das Wölkchen [ü] (dim. of Wolke), *little cloud*
wehen [vā'-hen], *to blow* (of the air, wind)
die Wetterfahne (Fahne, p. 207), *weather-cock*
plötzlich [plüts'-lïy], *suddenly*
ſich verziehen (p. 282), *to withdraw, disappear*
der Bogen [bō'-gen] (–s, Bögen), [*bow*
der Regenbogen, *rainbow*
regnen [rāg'-nen] (imp.), *to rain*
ſich zertheilen (zer-theilen, p. 187), *to separate*
die Hitze [hï'-tse], *heat* (see heizen, p. 154)
beſchwerlich (ſchwerlich, p. 299), *annoying, burdensome*
die Hundstage, *dog-days*
erſticken (er-ſticken, p. 125), *to be suffocated, choked*
blitzen (Blitz, p. 202, v. imp.), *to lighten*
donnern (donner, p. 115, v. imp.), *to thunder*
fürchterlich (fürchten, p. 201), *dread-* [*ful*
der Donnerſchlag (p. 181), *clap of thunder*
förmlich [fürm'-lïy] (Form, p. 293), *unmistakable, complete* (lit. *in form, formal*)
der Orkan [ör-kahn'] (–es, –e), *hur-* [*ricane*
köſtlich [küst'-lïy], *charming, precious*, lit. **costly**, fr. koſten (p. 248, comp. koſtbar, p. 154).

Guten Morgen, Herr N., wie geht es Ihnen heute?
Danke Ihnen, nicht ſehr gut, aber wer könnte **bei** ſolchem Wetter wohl ſein?
Es iſt wahr, das Wetter iſt ſehr veränderlich.
Bald heiß, bald kalt, ein Tag naß, ein Tag trocken.
Wie ſchrecklich kalt es **vorige Woche** war.
Ja, kalt genug für England, aber nichts im Vergleiche mit Deutſchland.

Wir haben zwölf Grad Kälte.
Eine ſchneidende, durchdringende Kälte.
Es hat **ſtark** gefroren.
Es iſt ſehr ſchlüpfrig, glatt.
Es ſchneit **ſehr ſtark.**
Es thaut.—Es iſt Thauwetter.
Der Schnee ſchmilzt.
Die Tage werden **merklich** länger.
Das Wetter wird wärmer.
Die Natur iſt wieder erwacht von ihrem Winterſchlafe.
Die Luft hat eine liebliche Temperatur.

Es iſt kein Wölkchen **am** Himmel.

Der Wind hat **ſich** plötzlich **gedreht.**
Er kommt **aus** Weſten.
**Woher** weht der Wind?

Sehen Sie **nach** der Wetterfahne.
Ich fürchte, wir werden Regen **bekommen.**
Vielleicht **verzieht es ſich** wieder.
Sehen Sie den Regenbogen dort?
Es regnete **den ganzen Tag.**
Gehen Sie **ins Haus.**
Die Wolken zertheilen ſich; der Wind vertreibt ſie.
Die Hitze iſt drückend, beſchwerlich.
Sind wir in den Hundstagen?

*Good morning, Mr. N., how are you this morning?*
*Thank you, not very well; but who could be well* **in** *such weather.*
*'Tis true, the weather is very changeable.*
*One moment hot, one moment cold, one day wet, another day dry.*
*How terribly cold it was last week.*

*Yes, cold enough for England, but nothing in comparison with Germany.*
*We have twelve degrees of cold.*
*A keen, nipping air.*
*It has frozen* **very hard.**
*It is very slippery.*
*It snows* **very fast.**
*It thaws.—It is thawing weather.*
*The snow melts away.*
*The days grow* **visibly** *longer.*
*The weather is getting warmer.*
*Nature is awaked from her winter-sleep.*
*The atmosphere has a most delightful temperature.*

*There is not a cloud* **in the** *heavens.*

*The wind has suddenly* **changed**
*It comes* **from the** *west.*
**From which quarter** *does the wind blow?*

*Look* **at** *the weather-cock.*
*I apprehend we shall* **have** *some rain.*
*Perhaps it will pass away.*
*Do you see the rainbow there?*
*It has been raining* **all day.**
*Go* **in-doors.**
*The clouds separate; the wind diſperſes them.*
*The heat is oppressive, annoying.*
*Are we in the dog-days?*

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich erſtícke faſt **vor** Hitze. | *I am almost suffocated* **with** *heat.* |
| Es blitzt und donnert. | *It lightens and thunders.* |
| Was für ein fürchterlicher Donnerſchlag dies war. | *What a dreadful clap of thunder that was!* |
| Es hat **ſtark** gehagelt. | *It hailed* **very much.** |
| Es war ein förmlicher Orkan. | *It was a complete hurricane.* |
| Wie grün und friſch alles nach dem Regen ausſieht! | *How green and fresh everything looks after the rain!* |
| Das Wetter iſt köſtlich; laſſen Sie uns ſpazieren gehen. | *The weather is charming; let us go and take a walk.* |

## LEXICOLOGY.

**ſchlüpfrig, slippery** (Tab. V. 2), fr. ſchlüpfen, ahd. *slupfan*, A. S. *slipan*, Dutch, *slippen*, to **slip,** *to glide.*

**glatt,** *smooth*, ahd. *glat*=**glittering;** Old Engl. **glade,** shining, bright; Engl. **glad,** lit. smooth, then pleased, cheerful. Acc. to others related with **gleiten,** *to* **glide,** where one can move smoothly.

**plötzlich,** *suddenly*, fr. der Plotz, *clap, bounce*; auf den Plotz (vulg. and obs.), *on a sudden.*

**wehen,** *to blow*, fr. which prob. der **Wind, wind,** an old partic. form, prop. the *blowing*, that which blows (see Webster, *wind*).

**Bogen, bow** (Tab. V. 21), fr. biegen, *to bend* (p. 325), what is *bent.*

## WORDS FOR CONVERSATION.

### OF THE EARTH AND THE WATER.

der Erdboden (p. 124), *ground*
der **Fuß** des Berges (p. 232), *the foot of the mountain*
der Gipfel (p. 305) des Berges, *mountain summit*
der Vulcan[vūl-kahn'], *volcano* (prop. a mountain of *Vulcan*, the god of fire)
beben[bā'-bᵉn], *to tremble*
das Erdbeben, *earthquake*
die Inſel (p. 254), *island*
die Halbinſel, *peninsula*
die Landenge (p. 176), *isthmus*
das Vorgebirge (p. 201), *cape, promontory*
der Abgrund (ab=off, without, p. 309, and Grund, *bottom*), *precipice, abyss*
der Abhang (–es, hänge), *slope* (ab =off, hangen, p. 277=*off-hang*)
die Höhle[hēā'-lᵉ] (–n), *cavern* (fr. hohl=*hollow*)
der Bruch[ūch](–es, Brüche), *break, rupture* (fr. brechen, p. 102)
der Steinbruch, *quarry*
der Ocean[ō'-tsĕ-ān"], *ocean*
die Sandbank, *sand-bank*
der Golf [ō] (–es, –e), *gulf* (fr. Gr. *kolphos*=bosom)
die Bucht[būcht] (–en), *bay* (fr. biegen, p. 325, a bending of the shore)
die Hoſe[hō'-zᵉ], *hose, trousers, hollow cylinder*
die Waſſerhoſe, *water-spout*
die Ebbe[ĕb'-bᵉ], *low water*

die Fluth[flut], *flood, high water*
die Ebbe und die Fluth, *the ebb and flood*
die Woge[vō'-g$^{e}$] (–n), *billow, wave* (conn. with bewegen, p. 176)
die Strömung (ſtrömen, p. 406) (–en), *current*
die Brandung, *breakers, surf* (fr. branden, *to break*, lit. *to boil*, Dutch, branden, *to flame, to burn*, fr. the boiling motion of the surf, comp. Brunnen, Born, p. 411)
der Strand[ä] (–es, –e), *strand*
das Geſtade[ah'-$^{e}$] (–es) *beach, shore* (prob. fr. ſtehen, *a standing place*, mhd. *gestat, ge* and *stat*, mhd. *shore*, comp. Stadt, p. 112)
die Untiefe (un, p. 85, tief, p. 111), *shallow, sand-bank* (lit. place over which the water is not deep)
die Klippe[l'-$^{e}$](–n), *cliff* (*a cloven rock*, fr. klieben, *to cleave*, Tab. V. 6, *to split*, and klaffen, *to split open*) [*fall*
der Waſſerfall (–es, fälle), *water-*
der Zapfen[tsä'-pf$^{en}$](–s) *tap* (Tab. V. 2) *plug, cone*
die Eiszapfen, *icicles* (A. S. *ices-gicel*, Dutch, *yskegel, ys*=ice, *kegel*=cone)
die Flocke[flök'-k$^{e}$] (–n), *flake, flock*
die Schneeflocke, *snow-flake* (conn. with fliegen, *to fly*, Lat. *floccus*, a flock of wool).

## [68.] NUMERALS.

*Model Sentences.*

1. **Vier** Augen ſehen mehr als **zwei.** — *Four eyes see more than two.*
2. Er war mit **hundert** und **ein** und **dreißig** Thalern zufrieden. — *He was satisfied with a hundred and thirty one dollars.*
3. Wie viele Häuſer haben Sie? Ich habe nur **eins.** — *How many houses have 'you? I have only one.*
4. Er ſucht Arbeiter; die Hülfe **zweier** oder **dreier** wird genügen. — *He is looking for workmen; the help of two or three will be sufficient.*
5. Er iſt der Diener **dieſer drei** Herren. — *He is the servant of these three gentlemen.*
6. Sie irren; er hat es nur **zweien** und nicht **dreien** geſagt. — *'You are mistaken; he only told it to two and not to three.*
7. Hier ſind die Werke **von zehn** Dichtern. — *Here are the works of ten poets.*
8. Dieſes Buch hat **hundert** und jenes **tauſend** Seiten. — *This book has a hundred and that a thousand pages.*
9. Die franzöſiſche Revolution begann im Jahre **eintauſend** ſiebenhundert neun und achtzig. — *The French revolution began in the year 1789.*
10. Die **Sechs** iſt eine gerade und die **Sieben** eine ungerade Zahl. — *Six is an even and seven an uneven number.*
11. Vier und zwanzig **Zoll** ſind zwei **Fuß.** — *Twenty four inches are two feet.*
12. Dieſes Tuch iſt acht **Ellen** lang. — *This cloth is eight ells long.*
13. **Beide** Füße wurden ihm abgeſchoſſen. — *Both his feet were shot off.*

*Observations.*—1. The **numerals** (Lat. *numero*, to number, count) serve to determine the objects in the relations of number and quantity. This determination is made either in *a precise* or in *a general* manner. In the first case, the numerals are called **definite**; in the second **indefinite.**

2. Among the *definite numerals* are distinguished:

I. **The Cardinal Numerals.**

II. **The Ordinal Numerals.**

3. The Cardinal Numerals (Grundzahlen) are:

| | |
|---|---|
| 0 Null[nŭl] | 21 **ein** und zwanzig[5]* |
| 1 eins (ein) | 22 zwei und zwanzig |
| 2 zwei (*both*, beide) | 23 drei und zwanzig, etc. |
| 3 drei | 30 **dreißig**[6]*[drī'-sĭy] |
| 4 vier | 31 ein und dreißig |
| 5 fünf[fĭnf] | 32 zwei und dreißig, etc. |
| 6 sechs[zĕx] | 40 vierzig[fĭr'-tsĭy] |
| 7 sieben | 50 fünfzig (funfzig) |
| 8 acht | 60 **sechzig**[2]*[zĕy'-tsĭy] |
| 9 neun | 70 **siebzig** (siebenzig) |
| 10 zehn | 80 achtzig[3]*[ăch'-tsĭy] |
| 11 **elf** (eilf)[1]* | 90 neunzig |
| 12 **zwölf**[1]* | 100 hundert, einhundert |
| 13 dreizehn | 101 hundert **und eins** (not ein)[7]* |
| 14 vierzehn | 102 hundert **und zwei**, etc. |
| 15 fünfzehn (funfzehn) | 200 zweihundert |
| 16 **sechzehn**[2]* | 300 dreihundert |
| 17 **siebzehn** (siebenzehn) | 1000 tausend, eintausend |
| 18 **achtzehn**[3]*[ăch'-tsān] | 10,000 zehntausend |
| 19 neunzehn | 100,000 hunderttausend |
| 20 **zwanzig**[4]* | 1,000,000 eine Million[mĭl-yōn'] |

---

*Notes.*—1.* Eilf, an older form, now nearly out of use. Elf and zwölf are probably formed by ein, zwei and *lif*—left, from Goth. *leiban* (see bleiben, p. 187), hence elf or eilf for einlif, *one left*, that is, after counting ten, ten and one; Goth. *ainlif*, ahd. *einlif*, mhd. *einlef*. It is the same with zwölf, Goth. *tvalif*, ahd. *zwelif*, mhd. *zwelef*, lit. *two left*.

2.* s disappears in sechs on account of the following hissing sound z.

3.* In achtzehn and achtzig the letter t is silent.

4.* Zwanzig for zweinzig, mhd. *zweinzec*, *zwenzec*, A. S. *twentig*; c. of zween (formerly the masc. form, while zwo was the fem., and zwei the neuter form) and zig, Goth. *tigjus*, Gr. *dekas*—ten (Goth. *tvai tigjus*,—two decades or two tens).

5.* e i n (not eins) is used before the tens in compound numbers. The accent is distinctly on the first component.

6.* For dreizig, mhd. *drizec*

7.* On eins, see 5.

4. Units are placed before the tens, and connected with them by **und**, as **zwei und** zwanzig, *twenty two.*

5. The German cardinal numbers are indeclinable, except **ein, zwei, drei:**

*a.* **ein,** used adjectively (that is, when followed by a noun) is declined like the indefinite article, but used substantively (when referring to a preceding substantive) or when preceded by an article or pronoun it is declined like other adjectives:

| | *Masc.* | *Fem.* | *Neut.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *N.* | **Ein** Sohn, | **eine** Tochter, | **ein** Kind. |
| *G.* | Eines Sohnes, | einer Tochter, | eines Kindes. |
| *D.* | Einem Sohne, | einer Tochter, | einem Kinde. |
| *A.* | Einen Sohn, | eine Tochter, | ein Kind. |

**Der eine** Sohn meines Freundes ist Arzt. **Das eine** Kind unseres Lehrers ist blind.

*b.* **Zwei** and **drei** when not preceded by an article or a determinative word form the Genitive **zweier, dreier,** and the Dative **zweien, dreien;** M. S. 4, 6.

When preceded by an article or some other determinative word, zwei and drei are not declined: Das Zimmer meiner **zwei** Brüder ist klein, *the room of my two brothers is small*; Karl gab das Geld jenen **drei** Knaben, *Charles gave the money to those three boys*; M. S. 5.

*c.* The other indeclinable cardinal numerals replace the Genitive by the preposition **von**; M. S. 7. In the Dative, when referring to a noun just mentioned, or when used in a substantive capacity, they can add **en**: Haben Sie mit diesen sechs Herren gesprochen? Ich habe nur mit fünfen (or fünf) gesprochen. Er fährt mit **sechs** Pferden or Er fährt mit **Sechsen.**

6. **Eins,** as the neuter of einer, eine, ein(e)s, is used without any reference to a noun, as

*a.* in counting, **eins,** zwei, drei, etc.

*b.* in multiplying, zwei mal **eins** ist zwei.

*c.* in giving the time of the day, when the word Uhr (clock) is omitted; Es ist ein Viertel auf **eins.**

*d.* in talking of an undetermined object: **Eins** will ich dir sagen.

7. **Hundert** and **tausend** are sometives used as collective nouns, and as such take the neuter gender and **e** in the plural:

| | |
|---|---|
| **das Hundert,** | **das Tausend,** |
| die Hunderte. | die Tausende. |

They are not preceded by the indefinite article, hence **a** hundred, hundert; **a** thousand, tausend; but **one** hundred, **one** thousand must be translated **ein**hundert, **ein**tausend; thus in mentioning the date of the year: 1860=**ein**tausend achthundert und sechzig; M. S. 9.

8. **Die Million**[mil-yōn′], die **Billion**[bil-yōn] are declined like feminine nouns taking **en** in the plural: die Millio**nen,** Billio**nen.**

9. Like Million, Billion, all the cardinal numbers when used substantively take the fem. gender and in plural **en**, as **die** Eins, **die** Zwei, plur. die Einſen, die Zweien, etc.; M. S. 10.

10. **Masculine** and **neuter** nouns denoting *weight, measure* and *number* are used in the singular with the numerals, as zwanzig **Pfund** (not Pfunde) Zucker, *twenty pounds of sugar*; zehn **Fuß** (not **Füße**) lang, *ten feet long*; zwei **Dutzend** (not Dutzende) Auſtern, *two dozen of oysters*; acht Paar (not Paare) Handſchuhe, *eight pairs of gloves*; M. S. 11. **Feminine** nouns, however, of the same kind are used in the plural: Sechs Flaſchen Wein, *six bottles of wine*; M. S. 12.

11. **Beide** corresponds to the English **both**, and ought, therefore, to be employed only in reference to two objects, either naturally associated or connected mentally with one another: meine **beiden** Augen; **beide** Arme; M. S. 13. Meine **beiden** Brüder (provided I have only two brothers); but **zwei** meiner Brüder (if I have more than two). It is declined like an adjective: *N.* beide; *G.* beider; *D.* beiden; *A.* beide.

*Take Notice!* The article is never placed *after* it, as it is sometimes in English.

*Note.*—1. The numeral ein has a stronger accent than the indefinite article. To distinguish it in writing from the article, it is either written with a capital: Ein, or marked in some other way.

*Note.*—2. In some compounds zwie is used instead of zwei: zwiefach, *two-fold, double*; Zwieſpalt[ä], *dissension*; Zwieback[ä], *biscuit*; Zwielicht, *twilight*; Zwietracht[ächt], *discord.*

## 107.

Sich aufhalten (halten, p. 293), *to stay, to make a stay*
wenigſtens (wenig, p. 243), *at least*
weit über (p. 231), *much over*
gegen, *about*
der Januar*[yă-nŭ-ahr'] (-es, -e), *January*
der Februar*[fā-brŭ-ahr'] (-es, -e), *February*
der März*[märts] (-es, -e), *March*
der April*[ă-pril'] (-es, -e), *April*
der Juni*[yū'-nĭ] (-s), *June*
der Juli*[yū'-lĭ] (-s), *July*
der Auguſt*[ou-güst'] (-es) *August*
der September*[zep-tĕm'-ber] (-s), *September*
der October*[öc-tō'-ber] (-s), *October*
der November*[nō-vĕm'-ber] (-s), *November*
der December*[dē-tsĕm'-ber] (-s), *December*
der Montag*[mōn'-täk] (-es, -e), *Monday*
der Dienſtag*[dēns'-täk], (-es, -e), *Tuesday*
der Sonnabend* (Sonne, p. 101, Abend, p. 201), *Saturday*
der Samſtag*[zäms'-täk] *Saturday*
das Schaltjahr*[shält'-] (Jahr, p. 236), *leap year*
Statt finden / or / ſtattfinden } *to take place*
[*figure*
die Ziffer*[tsĭf'-fer (-n), *cipher*,
die Jahreszahl (Zahl, p. 400), *number of the year*
der Reſt*[rĕst] (-es, -e), *the rest*
einen Reſt laſſen, *to leave a rest.*

dividieren*[dĭ-vĭ-dē'-rᵉn] *to divide*
addieren*[ăd-dē'-rᵉn], *to add*
übrig bleiben, *to be left*
wegnehmen, *to take away*
ſubtrahieren*[zŭb-trȧ-hē'-rᵉn], *to subtract*
multiplicieren,* *to multiply*
die Jahreszeit (Zeit, p. 182), *season, annual time*
die Secunde*[zᵉ-kŭn -dᵉ] (–n), *second*
das Zahlenſyſtem*[zīs-tām'] (–s), *numerical system*
die Arche*[ăr'-yᵉ], *ark*
lebendig*[lē-bĕn'-dĭy], *alive.*

1. Wie lange wird ſich Ihr Sohn in London aufhalten? 2. Wenigſtens drei Wochen; denn er iſt noch nie dort geweſen, und er kann Vieles in einer Stadt ſehen, die weit über zwei Millionen Einwohner zählt und gegen achthundert Straßen und fünfhundert Kirchen hat. 3. Die Stärke dieſes einen Mannes iſt größer als die jener drei. 4. Wie viele Tage hat das Jahr? 5. Das Jahr hat dreihundert fünf und ſechzig Tage. 6. Wie viele Monate hat es? 7. Es hat zwölf Monate. 8. Nennen Sie mir dieſelben. 9. Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, Auguſt, September, October, November, December. 10. Eine Woche hat ſieben Tage: Sonntag, Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerſtag, Freitag, Sonnabend (oder Samſtag). 11. Welches iſt der kürzeſte Monat? 12. Wie viele Tage hat der Februar? 13. Wann hat der Februar neun und zwanzig Tage? 14. In einem Schaltjahr. 15. Wann findet ein Schaltjahr Statt? 16. Alle vier Jahre, wenn man die zwei letzten Ziffern der Jahreszahl durch 4 ohne einen Reſt zu laſſen dividieren kann. 17. Wieviel iſt 4 und (plus) 6? 18. 4+6=(iſt gleich) 10. 19. Wie viel erhält man, wenn man 10 und 5 addiert? 20. Wie viel bleibt übrig (is left) wenn man 4 von 12 wegnimmt (or ſubtrahiert)? 21. 12 weniger 4=8. 22. Wie heißen die vier Jahreszeiten? 23. Der Frühling, der Sommer, der Herbſt, der Winter. 24. Ein Tag hat vier und zwanzig Stunden, eine Stunde ſechzig Minuten und eine Minute ſechzig Secunden. 25. Wie alt iſt dieſer Herr? 26. Er iſt gegen vierzig Jahre alt. 27. Die Drei iſt bei den Chriſten, die Sieben bei den Juden eine heilige, die Zehn im Zahlenſyſtem eine wichtige Zahl. 28. Wann ſind Sie geboren? 29. Ich bin im Jahre eintauſend achthundert und ſechzehn geboren. 30. Noah ging mit ſeinem Weibe, ſeinen drei Söhnen und den drei Weibern ſeiner Söhne in die Arche, welche dreißig Ellen hoch, ſechzig Ellen breit und drei hundert Ellen lang war. 31. Man kann nicht zweien Herren dienen (Prov.). 32. Wo ſieben eſſen, da ißt auch noch einer (Prov.). 33. Ein Feind iſt zu viel und hundert Freunde nicht genug (Prov.). 34. Der Meiſter einer Kunſt nährt Weib und ſieben Kinder; ein Meiſter aller ſieben Künſte nährt ſich ſelber nicht (Prov.). 35. Ein Vater ernährt eher zehn Kinder als zehn Kinder einen Vater (Prov). 36. Was zweien recht iſt, iſt dreien zu eng (Prov.). 37. Beſſer ein Übel als zwei (Prov.). 38. Hab einen Pfennig lieb wie vier, || Fehlt dir's (dir es or fehlt es dir) an Wein, ſo trinke Bier (Prov.). 39. Auf einem Beine ſteht man nicht gut (Prov.). 40. Beſſer ein lebendiges Wort als hundert todte (Prov.).

## 108.

der Recrut*[re-krūt'](-en), *recruit*
das Contingent[kŏn-tĭn-gĕnt'], *contingent, share, quota*
wohlgewachſen (wachſen, p. 264), *well-shaped*, lit. *well-grown.*
ſchwäbiſch[shvâ'-bĭsh], *Swabian*
das Kreiscontingent, (Kreis, p. 325 here *circuit, district*) *contingent to a district, contributary quota* (of men for soldiers)

## Der Recrut.

von Hebel.

Zum ſchwäbiſchen Kreiscontingent kam im Jahr 1795 ein Recrut, der ein ſchöner wohlgewachſener Mann war. Der Officier fragte ihn, wie alt er ſei. Der Recrut antwortete: „Ein und zwanzig Jahr. Ich bin ein ganzes Jahr krank geweſen, ſonſt wär' ich zwei und zwanzig."

## 109.

bereit (p. 276), *ready*
rücken (p. 344), *to move*
**ins Feld rücken**, *to take the field* (Idiom)
das Eigenthum (eigen, p. 335)(-es), *possession*
Dänemark[dâ'-nᵉ-märk], *Denmark*
das Gefängniß (Gefangene, p. 293) (-iſſes, -e), *prison*
das Elend*[a'-ᵉ] (-es), *misery*
die Steinkohle (Kohlen, p. 376)(-n), *coal*
das Bergwerk (Berg, p. 232, Werk, p. 201), *mine*
ſich belaufen, (laufen, p. 104), *to rise to, to amount*
jährlich (Jahr, p. 236), *annually*
Sterling, *Sterling*
der Gerichtshof (Gericht, p. 389, Hof, p. 156), *court of law, of justice*
die Schriftſprache (Schrift, p. 357, Sprache, p. 171), *language of literature*
mit Recht (p. 331), *justly*
die Poeſie*[pō-ᵉ-zē'](-n), *poetry*
der Glanzpunkt (Glanz, p. 328, Punkt, p. 369), *zenith*
beſonders (p. 401), *chiefly*
der Verfaſſer (faſſen, p. 104) *author*
die Fee*[fa](-n), *fairy*
die Feenkönigin, *Fairy Queen*
der Beſitz (beſitzen, p. 333) (-es), *possession*
Beſitz nehmen von (etwas), *to take possession of*
die Anſiedlung*[ăn'-zēd-lūnᵏ](-en), *settlement*
Jamaika, *Jamaica*
der übrige Theil, *the rest* (p. 317)
der Nachmittag (Mittag, p. 239), *afternoon*
farbig, adj. Farbige, subst. (Farbe, p. 208), *colored*
ſiegreich (p. 294), *victorious*
die Eroberung (erobern, p. 364), *conquest*
das Joch*[yöᶜʰ] (-es, -e), *yoke*
der Muhamedaner[mū-hă-mᵉ-dah'-nᵉr], *Mahommedan.*

1 An army of three hundred and fifty thousand men was ready to take the field. 2. Those castles are the property of three citizens of our town. 3. The books belong to those three boys. 4. The value of

this watch is two hundred and seventy four dollars. 5. Do 'you know what o'clock it is? 6. Can you tell me what o'clock it is? 7. Yes, it is nearly (faſt, p. 138) four o'clock. 8. It is not yet two o'clock. 9. Do 'you know that positively (gewiß, p. 370). 10. I believe it is a quarter to four. 11. It is a quarter past four. 12. It is five minutes past four. 13. It is five minutes to (before) seven. 14. It is not yet late; it is only (erſt, p. 407) half-past five. 15. He possessed at least a thousand dollars. 16. I came with two friends, and he came with three. 17. Shakespeare was only (erſt) fifty-two years old when he died. 18. I shall be with (bei) 'you at (um) a quarter past nine. 19. After (nachdem, p. 293) Mary Stuart had been sent to (auf) the Castle (of) Lochleven, Bothwell,[1] her husband,[1] escaped (entfliehen, p. 358) to Denmark, where he was thrown into (*into the*, contracted) prison and died in (*in the*, contracted) misery about ten years after (nachher). 20. The value of the coal (plural) dug (transl. *which are dug*) from (aus) the English mines amounts (ſich belaufen) annually to (auf) ten millions (of) pounds sterling. 21. In the year thirteen hundred and sixty-two, the English language became the language of the courts of law and soon after of literature (language of l., Schriftſprache), through Chaucer, who has justly been called (nennen, p. 276) "the Father of English Poetry." 22. It reached (p. 240) its zenith under Queen Elizabeth, chiefly through Spenser, the author of the "Fairy Queen," and Shakespeare, who died (in) 1616. 23. In 1655, the English took possession of Jamaica. 24. Cromwell encouraged (befördern, p. 253) the settlement of the island, so that after (nach) a few (einige) years the number of whites amounted (ſich belaufen) to four thousand five hundred. 25. Now Jamaica has four hundred and fifty thousand inhabitants, of whom about forty thousand are whites, the rest colored. 26. This lady has two daughters; both are handsome, but the younger pleases me best. 27. On (an) a Friday, at three (say, o'clock) in the afternoon (use only the Genitive), Godfrey of Bouillon stood victorious on the walls of Jerusalem. 28. Thus about four hundred and sixty years after the conquest of Omar, the holy city was rescued (befreien, p. 395) from the yoke of the Mohammedans.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Januar, January,** Lat. *Jannarius*, fr. *Janus*, the God of the sun, to whom this month was dedicated.

**Februar, February,** Lat. *Februarius*, fr. *Februus*, an Etrurian, infernal deity, to whom this last month of the Roman year (in the second part of which the *februa*, i. e. the Roman festival of purification took place) was dedicated.

**März** (Grimm and other authorities prefer **Merz**), **March,** Lat. *Martius* (supply *mensis*, the month), sacred to the god of war *Mars* (Martis). It was the first month of the Roman year.

**April, April,** Lat. *Aprilis*, for *Aperilis*, fr. *aperire*, to open, i. e. the spring month, that opens the earth to bring forth fruits.

**Juni, June,** fr. Lat. *Junii* (Genitive of *Junius*). fr. the goddess *Juno*, to whom this month was sacred.

**Juli, July,** fr. Lat. *Julii* (Genitive of *Julius*), so-called in honor of C. *Julius* Cæsar, born in this month.

**Auguſt** (accent the *second* syllable, whilst the masc. proper name Auguſt has the accent on the *first* syllable), **August,** Lat. *Augustus*, (i. e. mensis, month), thus called after the deified emperor Octavius *Augustus*.

**September, September,** Lat. *September*, i. e. the seventh month from March ; *septem*=seven.

**October, October,** Lat. *October*, i. e. the eighth month (fr. March) ; *octo* =eight.

**November, November,** Lat. *November*, i. e. the ninth month from March ; *novem*=nine.

**December, December,** Lat. *December*, i. e. the tenth month from March ; *decem*=ten.

**Montag** (for Mondtag, see p. 109), the day sacred to the moon.

**Dienstag** (the orthography Dienſtag is not correct), **Tuesday ;** the n is a later insertion, for *dies=tues* ; *Tyr* (genit. *Tys*), *Tui*, Goth. *Tius*=the god of war, hence *the day sacred to the god of war.*

**Sonnabend,** *Saturday*, for Sonnen abend ; ahd. *sunnun aband.* The eve of Sunday, or the evening preceding the day consecrated to the sun was considered sacred, and from this, its most prominent part, the whole day was called Sonnabend.

**Samstag** (peculiar to Upper Germany Sambstag), ahd. *sambaz-tag*, *sambez—sameztag*, contracted from Sabbathstag, Goth. *sabbats dags*, Lat. *sabbatum*, Fr. *Samedi.*

**Schaltjahr,** *leap* **year,** fr. ſchalten, *to shove, to push* ; Old Sax. *scaldan*, to push forward a ship, then to govern, to rule ; einſchalten, *to put or push into, between, to intercalate*, hence a year with an intercalary day.

**Ziffer, cipher,** *figure, numeral* ; according to Diez, 101 fr. Arab. *ṣifr*(*on*), *ṣi'hron*=entirely empty (fr. which prob. also *zero*), hence=[o], then transferred to any of the nine figures ; according to Adelung and others, from the Arab. *sefrah*, Hebr. *saphar*, to number, to count.

**Reſt, rest,** *remainder*, fr. Lat. *restare*, to remain (*re*, back, and *stare*, to stand), Fr. *rest*, Itl. *resto.*

**dividieren,** *to* **divide,** Lat. *dividere*, to separate, to part.

**addieren,** *to* **add,** *sum up in a total*, Lat. *addere* (*ad*, to, *dere*, fr. dare, to give).

**ſubtrahieren,** *to* **subtract,** Lat. *subtrahere—sub*, under, and *trahere*, *tractum*, to draw away.

**multiplicieren,** *to* **multiply,** Lat. *multus*, much, many, *plicare*, to fold.

**Secunde, second,** i. e. the *second* regular division next to a minute, or a degree, Lat. *secunda* (pars)=the second part; hence in Itl. *minuto*= minute, but *minuto secondo*=second.

**Zahlenſyſtem,** *numerical* **system,** c. of Zahl, p. 400, and Syſtem, anything formed of parts *placed together*; Gr. *syn*=together, *histemi*, to place.

**Arche, ark,** Lat. *arca*, a chest; Tab. V. 16.

**lebendig,** *alive, having* **life,** c. of ig (p. 103) and pres. partic. of leben, *to live*; the accent is here exceptionally not on the root leb, but on end[lĕ-bĕn'-dĭy].

**Recrut, recruit,** fr. Fr. *recrue*=after-growth, fig. youth, fresh men; Lat. *recrescere=re*, again, and *cresco*, to grow.

**Elend,** *misery*, for Ellend, ahd. *elilenti*, Old Sax. *elilendi*, A. S. *elleland, elland*=foreign country, then exile, captivity in a foreign country, fr. Goth. *alis*, ahd. *ali, eli*=other, foreign; Lat. *alius*, Gr. *allos*; then misery, distress, need.

**Poeſie, poesy, poetry,** Lat. *poesis*, Gr. *poiesis—poiein*, to make, to make poetry.

**Fee, fairy, fay** (Plural Feen[fa'-ĕn]); Fr. *fée*=ghostlike enchantress, witch, Lat. *fata*=goddesses of fate, *Destinies*, fr. *fatum*, inevitable destiny, fate, a *prediction*, decision of the gods—*fatus*, spoken, *fari*, to speak.

**Anſiedlung,** *settlement*, fr. anſiedeln, *to* **settle** *down*, ſiedeln (hist. more correct ſideln), *to settle one's self*; ahd. *sidilla, sidella*, mhd. *sidel*, **seat,** chair; **Seſſel, settle;** conn. with **Sattel, saddle,** i. e. a little seat; Lat. *sella*, a seat, contr. fr. *sedalla*, dim. of *sedes*, a seat.

**Joch, Yoke,** Goth. *yuk*, A. S. *joc*, Lat. *jugum—jungo, jugi*, to join, hence Joch=that which joines together.

CONVERSATION.—IV. TIME.

| | |
|---|---|
| Welche Zeit iſt es? | *What time is it?* |
| Es iſt nicht ſehr ſpät (p. 278). | *It is not very late.* |
| Es iſt ſpäter, als ich dachte (denken, p. 114) | *It is later than I thought.* |
| Es wird ſpät. | *It is getting late.* |
| Es iſt noch früh (p. 280). | *It is still early.* |
| Es iſt kaum (p. 294) Tag. | *It is hardly day.* |
| Es iſt **heller, lichter Tag.** | *It is* **broad daylight.** |
| Die Sonne **ſteht** (ſtehen, p. 239) ſchon ſehr hoch. | *The sun* **is** *already very high.* |
| In welchem Monate **ſtehen wir?** | *What month is it?* |
| Iſt dieſes Jahr ein Schaltjahr? | *Is this year a leap year?* |
| **Den Wievielſten** (wie- viel- ſten) **haben wir heute?** | **What is the day of the month?** |
| **Wie viel Uhr iſt es?** | **What o'clock is it?** |

| | |
|---|---|
| Sagen Sie mir gütigſt (p. 357) (gefälligſt, p. 252) wie viel Uhr es iſt. | *Have the goodness (kindness) to tell me what o'clock it is.* |
| Ich weiß es nicht genau (p. 278). | *I don't know exactly.* |
| Sehen Sie auf Ihre Uhr. | *Look at your watch.* |
| Es iſt zwölf Uhr. | *It is twelve o'clock.* |
| Wie viel Uhr ſagen Sie? | *What hour do you say?* |
| Es iſt genau Zwölf **nach** meiner Uhr. | *It is exactly twelve* **by** *my watch.* |
| Es iſt **erſt** ein Uhr (p. 407). | *It is* **but** *one o'clock.* |
| Es iſt nur ein wenig **über eins.** | *It is but a little* **more than one.** |
| Es iſt **höchſtens ein Uhr.** [*over*). | *It is* **but one at most.** |
| Es iſt **Eins vorbei** (vorbei', *past*, | *It is* **past one.** |
| Es iſt zehn Minuten **nach eins.** | *It is ten minutes* **past** (*after*) **one.** |
| Es iſt ein **Viertel auf zwei.** | *It is* **a quarter past one.** |
| Es iſt **halb zwei.** | *It is* **half past one.** |
| Es iſt **drei Viertel auf zwei.** | **It is a quarter to two.** |
| Ein **Viertel auf elf.** | **A quarter past ten.** |
| Vierundzwanzig (vier und zwanzig) Minuten **nach** acht. | *Twenty-four minutes* **past** *eight.* |
| Zwanzig Minuten **vor** neun. | *Twenty minutes* **to** *nine.* [*o'clock.* |
| Es iſt **erſt ſieben Uhr.** | *It is* **not more than** *seven.* |
| **Es fehlen noch** 15 Minuten **an** zwei. | *It wants fifteen minutes* **to** *two.* |
| Es iſt nicht weit von zwei. | *It is not far from two.* |
| Es iſt { bald zwei. / faſt " | *It is* { *almost two.* / *nearly* " |
| Es iſt ungefähr (p. 399) zwei. | *It is about two.* |
| Es iſt nicht ganz zwei. | *It is not quite two.* |
| Es iſt noch nicht zwei. | *It is not yet two.* |
| Es wird bald zwei ſchlagen. | *The clock is going to strike two.* |
| Es hat noch nicht geſchlagen. | *It has not struck yet.* |
| **Es** ſchlägt. | *The clock strikes.* |
| Da ſchlägt es. | *There it strikes.* |
| **Was** hat es geſchlagen? | **What o'clock** *has it struck?* |
| Es hat zwei geſchlagen. | *It struck two.* |
| Die Uhr **geht** viel zu langſam (p. 294). | *The clock* **is** *much too slow.* |
| Die Uhr geht zu ſchnell. | *The clock goes too fast.* |
| Wie **die Zeit** vergeht (p. 247)! | *How* **time** *passes away!* |
| Kommen Sie morgen **zum Frühſtück zu mir.** | *Come* **and breakfast with me** *to-morrow.* |
| Um welche Zeit? | *At what time?* |
| Um wie viel Uhr? | *At what hour?* |
| Er war **dieſen ganzen Morgen** hier. | *He was here* **all this morning.** |
| Er war **bis in die ſpäte Nacht** hier. | *He was here* **till a very late hour.** |
| Es war **Punkt** (p. 140) **zwölf** (Uhr). | *It was* **just twelve** (*o'clock*). |

## WORDS AND PHRASES FOR CONVERSATION.

### VII. Day-time. Hour.

**Vor** einem halben Jahre, *half a year* **ago**
der Lauf (–es), *run, course*, fr. laufen (p. 101)
Im Laufe dieſes Monats, *in the course of this month*
Jede Minute, *every minute*
In einem Augenblicke (p. 246), *in an instant*
Er kommt einmal **alle vierzehn Tage,** *he comes once* **every fortnight**
**heute über acht Tage, this day week**
Er wird **dieſer Tage** hier ſein, *he will be here* **in a day or two**
**neulich** (p. 409), **kürzlich**[ĭ'] (kurz, p. 111), *of late, recently* [**day**
**jüngſt**[ĭ] (jung, p. 84), **the other**
**Geſtern vor drei Wochen, three weeks ago yesterday**
**In vier Wochen** wird er kommen, *he will come* **a month hence**
**heute vor einem Jahre, this day twelve months ago**
**heut zu Tage,** or **heutzutage, now-a-days**
**einen Abend um den andern, every other** *evening*
**gegen Ende** des Monats, *towards* **the end** *of the month*
Ich ſah ihn **geſtern früh,** *I saw him* **yesterday morning**
Sie **iſt** geboren[ō'] am erſten Mai, *she* **was** *born on the first of May*
Er kam **erſt um** Mitternacht, *he did* **not** *come* **till** *midnight*
**zu Zeiten,** *at times* [**long**
**den ganzen Tag, all day**
all mein Leben, *all my life long*
zuletzt, *at last*
ſo lang als, *so long as*
nächſte Woche, *next week.*

### VIII. Remarkable Days.

der Neujahrstag, *New Year's day*
Lichtmeß[līvt'-mĕs], *Candlemas*
der Carneval[kär'-nᵉ-väl"], *Carnival* (lit. farewell to meat, Lat. *caro—carnis*, flesh; *vale*=farewell, a catholic feast just before the fast of Lent)
die Faſtenzeit (faſten, p. 110), *Lent*
Palm Sonntag, *Palm Sunday*
Charfreitag[kahr'-f–], *Good Friday* (Goth. *kara*, A. S. *cear*, **care,** anxiety)
Oſtern[ō'-stᵉrn], *Easter* [*tide*
Pfingſten[pfing'-stᵉn], *Whitsun-*
der Feſttag[fĕst'-täᵏ], *the feast day*
Frohnleichnamstag (p. 88), *Corpus Christi day* [*mas*
Michaelis[mī"-yă-a'-lĭs], *Michael-*
Weihnachten[vī'-näᶜʰ"-tᵉn] *Christ-mas* [*day*
Chriſttag[krĭst'-täᵏ], *Christmas*
die Ferien[fa'-rĭ-ᵉn] (p. 378), *the vacation, the holidays*
ein Jahrestag, *an anniversary*
der Raum (–es, Räume), *room, space* (räumen, p. 208)
der Zeitraum *space of time, era*
der Zeitabſchnitt (–äp'-shnĭt"), *period* (fr. abſchneiden, *to cut off*,
die Epoche[ĕ-pō'-che] *epoch.* [p. 306)

## [69.] II. ORDINAL NUMERALS,

### AND NUMERALS FORMED BY COMPOSITION.

*Model Sentences.*

1. Ein Auge iſt ſchwächer als das **andere.** — *One eye is weaker than the other.*
2. Mai iſt der **fünfte** Monat im Jahre. — *May is the fifth month in the year.*
3. Dieſer Baum iſt dreißig und **drei Viertel** Fuß hoch. — *This tree is thirty feet and three quarters high.*
4. Fünf und vierzig Groſchen ſind **anderthalb** Thaler. — *Forty five groschen* (p. 397) *are one dollar and a half.*
5. Richelieu war Miniſter Ludwigs des **Dreizehnten.** — *Richelieu was the minister of Louis XIII.*
6. New York, **den 20ten** Auguſt. — *New York, August 20th.*
7. Ich gab ihm **einen halben** Thaler. — *I gave him* **half a** *dollar.*
8. Shakeſpeare und Göthe waren große Dichter, der **erſtere** war ein Engländer, der **letztere** ein Deutſcher. — *Shakspeare and Goethe were two great poets, the* **former** *was an Englishman, the* **latter** *a German.*
9. Er wird nicht kommen, denn **erſtens** iſt er unwohl, **zweitens** hat er keine Zeit, und **drittens** hat er kein Geld. — *He will not come, for in the first place he is sick, secondly, he has no time, and thirdly, he has no money.*
10. Mein Bruder war **dreimal** in England. — *My brother was in England three times.*
11. Dieſes Buch hat die **dreifache** Dicke jenes Buches. — *This book is three times as thick as that.*
15. **Je zwei und zwei** gingen ſie. — *Two and two they went.*
16. Sie finden dort **zweierlei** Wein, alten und jungen. — *You find there two kinds of wine, old and new.*

*Observations.*—1. The **Ordinal Numerals** (Ordnungszahlen, p. 344) determine the rank which an object occupies numerically, and anwer to the question, *Which one in the series?* They are formed from the cardinals by adding **t** from two to nineteen, inclusively, and **ſt** to all the rest:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| The first, | der, | die, | das | **erſte** [ars'-te] or ein, eine, ein erſt**er, e, es** | 19th | der, die, das | neunzehnte |
| 2d | " | " | " | zweite | 20th | " " " | zwanzig**ſte** |
| 3d | " | " | " | **dritte** | 21st | " " " | ein u. zwanzigſte |
| 4th | " | " | " | vierte | 22d | " " " | zwei u. zwanzigſte |
| 5th | " | " | " | fünfte | 30th | " " " | dreißigſte |
| 6th | " | " | " | ſechſte | 40th | " " " | vierzigſte |
| 7th | " | " | " | ſiebente | 50th | " " " | fünfzigſte |
| 8th | " | " | " | **achte** | 60th | " " " | ſechzigſte |
| 9th | " | " | " | neunte | 70th | " " " | ſiebzigſte |
| 10th | " | " | " | zehnte | 80th | " " " | achtzigſte |
| 11th | " | " | " | elfte | 90th | " " " | neunzigſte |
| 12th | " | " | " | zwölfte | 100th | " " " | hundertſte |
| 13th | " | " | " | dreizehnte | 1000th | " " " | tauſendſte |
| 14th | " | " | " | vierzehnte | the last but one, | der, die, das | **vorletzte** |
| 15th | " | " | " | fünfzehnte | " " two | " " " | **vorvor-letzte** |
| 16th | " | " | " | ſechzehnte | | | |
| 17th | " | " | " | **ſiebzehnte** | the last, | der, die, das | letzte. |
| 18th | " | " | " | achtzehnte | | | |

*Note.*—I. Der erſte (for eherſte), *first*, superlative of ehe, *before, sooner* (p. 140). Der dritte (for dreite, fr. ahd. *dritto*), and der achte (for achte) are irregularly formed.

*Note.*—II. For der zweite, the older language employed der andere, *the other*. The English *another*, in the sense of *"one more,"* is expressed in German by „noch ein"; see p. 239, Lexic. „noch."

2. In compound numbers only the tens take the suffix (t or ſt), and they are preceded by the units: **twenty**[1] **first**,[2] **ein**[1] und **zwanzigſte**.[2]

3. Their declension and ordinary place is like that of the attributive adjectives, p. 143 [30]: erſter Schüler, *first scholar*; **ein** erſter Schüler, *a first scholar*; **der** erſte Schüler, *the first scholar*.

4. When **erſte** and **letzte** refer to two objects only, they take the form of the comparative; as Karl und Johann ſind Brüder, der erſtere iſt Kaufmann, der letztere Arzt, *Charles and John are brothers, the former is a merchant, the latter is a physician.*

5. The ordinals when used substantively are written with capital initials: der Erſte, der Zweite, der Dritte.

6. The ordinal numerals are employed:

*a.* To indicate the date of the month: der **zweite** April, *the second of April*. The date is placed, either in the *dative* with **am** (an dem), or in the *accusative*: Er reiſte **am** dreißigſten (30ten) Mai von Paris ab, und kam **den** vierten (4ten) Juni hier an. In dating letters the accusative case is exclusively used; M. S. 6.

*b.* To indicate the order of the succession of princes of the same name: Friedrich der Zweite (or Friedrich II), *Frederic the Second*. The ordinal numeral agrees, in this case, with the substantive, which precedes it, and is declined correspondingly, as follows: *N.* Heinrich der Vierte; *G.* Heinrich **des** Vierten; *D.* Heinrich **dem** Vierten; *A.* Heinrich **den** Vierten.

*Take Notice!* In general, every substantive taken in **Apposition**, that is placed after another substantive to explain or determine it (Lat. *ap* [for *ad*, to] *pono, positus*, to place) agrees with the latter in number and case (and often in gender), and is generally accompanied by an article, as die Regierung Eliſabeths, **der** Königin von England, war ruhmreich, *glorious* (p. 308); In Paris (dat.) **der** Hauptſtadt von Frankreich, *In Paris, the capital of France*; die Bewohner Hamburgs, **einer** reichen Handelsſtadt (p. 370).

7. **Ordinal Adverbs** answer to the question, *In what place or order?* They are formed by adding **ens** to the ordinal numerals, as:

| *Ordinals.* | *Ordinal Adverbs.* |
|---|---|
| erſt (e) | **erſtens**, *firstly* (in the first place) |
| zweit (e) | **zweitens**, *secondly* (in the second place) |
| dritt (e) | **drittens**, *thirdly*, etc. |

8. Numerals formed by composition:

*Preliminary Remark.*—The Cardinals allow numerous compositions, while the Ordinals connect themselves only with halb, tel, and ſelb (see p. 308), the latter preceding, the former following the numeral.

*a.* **Halb, half,** compounded with the ordinal into one word, indicates the number expressed by the ordinal, *minus one half.* Thus instead of saying zwei und ein halb, *two and a half*, we say **drittehalb**=three whole ones minus one half; **viertehalb**=3½; fünftehalb=4½; sechstehalb=5½, etc.

*Take Notice!* Instead of zweitehalb, we use the older ordinal form **ander** (see above Note II), and say **anderthalb,** *one and a half.*

*b.* **Fractional** numbers are formed by adding l (prop. tel=Theil, see Note) to the ordinals; as:

| *Ordinals.* | *Fractional Numbers.* |
|---|---|
| dritte, | ein Drittel, |
| vierte, | ein Viertel, |
| fünfte, | ein Fünftel, etc. |

Instead of ein Zweitel, we say ein **Halbes** (adj. ein halber, e, es) from which is derived **die Hälfte** [häl'-te], **a** *half.*

*c.* **Selb,** (p. 390) as the first component in a compound with an ordinal numeral, expresses the person spoken of, as one completing that number; as, **selbdritt** (three together), two and the person himself (spoken of); **selbander** (two together), one and the person spoken of.

*Take Notice!* The article is never used *after*, but always *before* halb; hence translate: **half**[1] **a**[1] pound. **ein**[1] **halbes**[1] Pfund; **die**[1] **halbe**[1] Stadt, **half the**[1] *city.* In the same way you must put fractions of numbers *before* the name of a thing which is numbered; hence translate: three **dollars**[1] **and a half,**[1] **drei** und ein **halber Thaler**; four **pounds**[1] and three quarters[2] of coffee, **vier drei viertel Pfund** Kaffee.

*Note.*—The termination ‚tel' is the contracted form of Theil, *deal, part* (p. 308); thus drittel=dritte Theil, *the third part, deal*; but to avoid the repetition of the same syllable, the final ‚te' of the ordinal is dropped; hence Drittel, for drittetel.

*d.* **Multiplication numbers,** answering the question, *How many fold?* are formed by adding **fach**[fäch] or **fältig** (p. 296) to the cardinal numbers, as:

| *Cardinal.* | *Multiplic. number.* |
|---|---|
| ein(s) | **einfach,** *single, simple* |
| drei | **dreifach,** *triple* |
| vier | **vierfach,** *four-fold.* |

They are declined after the manner of attributive adjectives, p. 143.

*Take Notice!* From ein(s) is only formed **einfach,** and not **einfältig,** which latter means *silly.*

*e.* **Reiteratives,** answering the question *How often?* are formed by adding **mal** (time, p. 182) to the cardinal number:

| *Cardinal.* | *Reiterat. number.* |
|---|---|
| ein(s) | **einmal,** *once* |
| zwei | zweimal, *twice* |
| drei | dreimal, *three times*, etc. |

This form is only used adverbially. The adjective (attributive) form is **malig** (maliger, e, es); as, Sein zweimaliger Besuch, *his reiterated visit*; dieser dreimalige Fehler, *this mistake, made three times.*

*f.* **Distributives** answering the question, *How many at a time?* are expressed by placing **je** (p. 239), *ever, always*, before the cardinal numerals, or else by repeating the cardinal number after the conjunction **und**, or by placing **zu**, *to*, before the cardinal; as:

**je zwei**
**zwei und zwei** } *two at a time, by twos*;
**zu zweien**

**zehn und zehn**, or **zu zehnen**, *ten at a time, by tens.*

*g.* **Variatives** answering the question, *How many kinds?* are formed by adding **lei** to the genitive **plural** of the cardinal numbers:

| *Genit. plur. of the Cardinals.* | *Variatives.* |
|---|---|
| **zweier** | **zweierlei**, *of two kinds* |
| **dreier** | **dreierlei**, *of three kinds.* |

Of the other cardinals, which are not declined (p. 432, 5), the genit. plur. was only preserved in this combination; thus **viererlei**, **fünferlei**, **zehnerlei**, *of four, five, ten kinds*, etc. In the same manner are formed: **allerlei**, *of all kinds*; **vielerlei**, *of many kinds*; **mehrerlei**, *of several kinds.*

*Note.*—I. In mhd. lei appears still separated from the numeral in genit. plural; thus, *aller leige, aller lei; einer leige, einer leie*, for einerlei.

*Note.*—II. **lei**, mhd. *leige, leie, lei*, from the Old French and Provençal *ley*—manner, way, mode, kind; Modern Fr. *loi, law*; Lat. *lex.*

*Note.*—III. Reiteratives, distributives and variatives are indeclinable.

## 110.

der Staatsmann (p. 171), *statesman, politician*
die Vereinigten Staaten, *the United [States*
edel (p. 369, Adel, p. 269), *noble*
überhaupt,* *in general*
erblicken (blicken, p. 396) das Licht der Welt, *to be born*
der Maler*[mah'-lᵉr](-s), *painter*
die Länge[läng'-ᵉ] (lang, p. 101), *length*
erscheinen (scheinen, p. 240), *to appear [pear*
sollen,* *to be said*
der Nomade*[no-mah'-dᵉ], *nomad*
das Nomadenvolk, *nomadic tribe*
das Ereigniß (ereignen, p. 398) (-isses, -e), *event*
verzeichnen, *to register, note down*
christlich[krist'-liy] (p. 174), *Christian*
die Zeitrechnung (p. 182), *era*
das Kameel*[kä-mal'](-es,-e) *camel*
der Kameeltreiber (treiben, p. 263), *camel-driver*
die Wüste*[vêês-tᵉ] (-n), *desert, waste*
auftreten (auf, p. 233, treten, p. 263) *to step forward, to show or present one's self*
die Presse,* *press*; **unter** der P. sein, *to be* **in press**, or *in process of being printed*
fortkommen, *to get on, advance*
kund*[künt], *known*
liederlich[lê'-dᵉr-liy], *loose, dissolute*
ist er auch noch so, *be he ever so*
die Wirthschaft[virt'-shäft] (-en), *housekeeping, domestic economy*
**hinter sich gehen**, *to go backwards, not to succeed*
schwitzen*[shvit'-sᵉn] *to sweat, perspire*
die Brühe*[brêê'-hᵉ], *broth, sauce*

zürnen [tsĭr'-nᵉn] (Zorn, p. 253), *to be angry at*
**nichts darauf geben,** *not to mind it, to make no account of*
die Wiege* [vē'-gᵉ] (–n), *cradle*
der Sarg* [zärᵏ] (–es, Särge), *coffin*
denkwürdig (p. 112), *memorable*
nimmermehr, *never more, never at all*
hinterher [hin-tᵉr-hār'], *behind, following*
die Reue (reuen, p. 421), *repentance*
doppelt* [döp'-pelt], *double*
zögern* [tsēá'-gᵉrn], *to tarry, delay*
herziehen (p. 232), *to draw near, to march hither*
das Jetzt (p. 87), *the present, the moment*
pfeilschnell, *swift as an arrow*
das Mitleiden (leiden, p. 358), *compassion*
die Verarmung (arm, p. 177), *impoverishment*
das Individuum [ĭn-dĭ-vē'-dŭ-ŭm] *individual.*

1. George Washington war einer der weisesten Staatsmänner der Vereinigten Staaten Nord Amerika's, so wie einer der besten und edelsten Menschen überhaupt. 2. Er war zweimal Präsident. 3. Sein Geburtstag war der 22te Februar 1732. 4. Er starb am 14 December 1799, Abends zwischen 10 und 11 Uhr in seinem 68sten Jahre. 5. Friedrich der Zweite (oder auch der Große), König von Preußen, erblickte am 24 Januar 1712 das Licht der Welt. 6. Albrecht Dürer war der größte deutsche Maler des sechzehnten und siebzehnten Jahrhunderts. 7. Die Länge dieses Tuches ist zehn Ellen oder vielleicht zehn und drei achtel Ellen. 8. Vierzig Groschen sind ein und ein Drittel Thaler. 9. Wir erwarten dieses Jahr eine dreifache Ernte. 10. Mein Vetter war anderthalb Jahre in Paris und fünftehalb Jahre in Italien. 11. In der Schlacht bei Waterloo, welche am 18ten Juni 1815 Statt hatte (Statt fand), fanden viele Tausende von Menschen ihren Tod; die Preußen allein, obgleich sie erst gegen halb sieben Abends auf dem Schlachtfeld erscheinen konnten, zählten über siebentehalb tausend Todte und Verwundete, während die Franzosen ein Drittheil ihres ganzen Heeres verloren haben sollen (are said). 12. Die Araber sind immer Nomadenvölker gewesen. Ihre früheste Geschichte ist sehr unvollkommen bekannt. Das erste Ereigniß, welches werth ist verzeichnet zu werden, ist die Geburt Muhameds im Jahre 570 der christlichen Zeitrechnung. Bis zum Alter von fünfundzwanzig Jahren war Muhamed ein Kameeltreiber in der Wüste. Als er vierzig Jahre alt war, trat er als Prophet auf. 13. Der erste Band dieses Werkes wird am 5ten oder 6ten künftigen Monats erscheinen; der zweite und dritte sind auch unter der Presse. 14. Sagen und Thun ist zweierlei (Prov.). 15. Wenn der Blinde den Lahmen trägt, kommen beide fort (Prov.). 16. Es soll Einer neunmal ein Wort im Munde umkehren (p. 305, to turn over), eh' (p. 140) er es sagt (Prov.). 17. Durch zweier Zeugen Mund || Wird allerwärts (p. 281, everywhere) die Wahrheit kund (Prov.). 18. Ist es einfach zu lang, || So nimm's zweifach (Prov.). 19. Sechs mal sechs ist sechsunddreißig; || Ist der Mann auch noch so fleißig, || Und die Frau ist liederlich, || Geht die Wirthschaft hinter sich (Prov.). 20. Wer im dreißigsten Jahre nichts weiß, im vierzigsten nichts ist, im fünfzigsten nichts hat, der lernt nichts, wird nichts und kommt zu nichts (Prov.). 21. Der Eine hat die Mühe, || Der Andere hat die Brühe (Prov.).

22. Der Eine gewinnt ſeine Nahrung mit Sitzen, || Der Andere mit Laufen und Schwitzen (Prov.). 23. Der Zehnte weiß nicht, wo den Elften der Schuh drückt (Prov.). 24. Jeder weiß am beſten, wo ihn der Schuh drückt (Prov.). 25. Es gibt zweierlei Geſchlechter der Menſchen: eins zürnt gern, das andere gibt nichts drauf (darauf) (Prov.). 26. Wo Geld iſt, da iſt der Teufel; wo keins iſt, da iſt er zweimal (Prov.). 27. Es fällt keine Eiche || Vom erſten Streiche (Prov.). 28. Wiege und Sarg ſind die zwei denkwürdigſten Betten, das eine warm, das andere kalt (Jean Paul). 29. Habt Mitleiden mit der Armuth, aber noch hundertmal mehr mit der Verarmung! Nur jene, nicht dieſe macht Völker und Individuen beſſer (Jean Paul). 30. Der Menſch hat hier dritthalb Minuten, eine zu lächeln—eine, zu ſeufzen—und eine halbe, zu lieben; denn mitten (p. 141, mit) in dieſer Minute ſtirbt er (Jean Paul). 31. Iſt das Wort der Lipp' entflohen, du ergreifſt es nimmermehr, || Fährt die Reu' auch mit vier Pferden hinterher (behind, following) (Freiligrath). 32. Doppelt gibt, der gleich (ſogleich, p. 316) gibt, || Hundertfach, der gleich gibt, was man wünſcht und liebt (Göthe). 33. Dreifach iſt der Schritt der Zeit: || Zögernd kommt die Zukunft hergezogen, || Pfeilſchnell iſt das Jetzt entflogen, || Ewig ſtill ſteht die Vergangenheit (Schiller). 34. Des Lebens Mai blüht einmal und nicht wieder (Schiller).

## III.

der Hirſch*[ſ] (–es, –e), *stag, hart*
wohl, *as it chanced*
die Birſch*[ſ] (–en), *deer shooting*
erjagen (jagen, p. 280), *to hunt*
die Tanne*[ä´-e] (-n), *fir*
der Tannenbaum, *fir tree*
huſch[ü], interj., *quick! at once! hush!* (fr. the sound) [*dogs*
das Hundegeklaff[kläf'], *barking of*
brennen (p. 79), here fig. *to shoot, to fire*
**ins Horn** (p. 87) **ſtoßen** (p. 333), *to blow or sound the horn*
vorbei[fôr-bī'], *by, past, near*
davon (da, p. 245 and p. 314), *thereof*, in comp. *off, away*
davon ſein, *to be off, away*
die Tiefe (p. 155), *depth.*

### Der weiße Hirſch.

von Uhland.

Es gingen drei Jäger wohl auf die Birſch, || Sie wollten erjagen den weißen Hirſch;
Sie legten ſich unter den Tannenbaum, || Da hatten die Drei einen ſeltſamen Traum.
Der Erſte.—„Mir hat geträumt, ich klopf auf den Buſch, || Da rauſchte der Hirſch heraus huſch, huſch!"
Der Zweite.—„Und als er ſprang mit Hundegeklaff, || Da brannt' ich ihn auf das Fell piff, paff!"
Der Dritte.—Und als ich den Hirſch an der Erde ſah, || Da ſtieß ich in's Horn trara!"
So lagen ſie da und ſprachen die Drei, || Da rannte der weiße Hirſch vorbei.
Und eh' die drei Jäger ihn recht geſeh'n, || So war er davon über Tiefen und Höh'n.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Abgrund, 429
Abhang, 429
addieren, 434
ähnlich, 421
Anſiedlung, 435
anſiedeln, 438
Arche, 434
Auguſt 435 [435
ſich aufhalten,
auftreten, 444
auszahlen, 425

Baſe, 421
beben, 429
Becher, 421
ſich belaufen, 435
beleidigen, 421
bereuen 421
Bergwerk, 435
beſchwerlich, 427
Beſitz, 435
Birſch, 446
blitzen, 421
Bogen, 427
branden, 429
Brandung, 429
Bruch, 429
Brühe, 444
Bucht, 429

Charfreitag, 440

denkwürdig, 445
Dienstag, 433
dividieren, 434
donnern, 421
Donnerſchlag,
[427
dunkeln, 423

Ebbe, 429
edel, 444
Eigenthum, 435
einfältig, 443
einſchalten, 437
einſt, 423
Elend, 435
entgegnen, 423
Epoche, 440
erblicken, 444
Erdbeben, 429
Erdboden, 429
Ereigniß, 444
erjagen, 446
Eroberung, 435
erſcheinen, 444
erſt, 440

farbig, 435
Februar, 433
Fee, 435
fehlen an, 421
Felſen, 424
Feſttag, 440
Fieber, 421
Flocke, 429
Fluth, 429
förmlich, 427
fortkommen, 444
Funke, 426
funkeln, 422
fürchterlich, 427

Gefängniß, 435
gegen(*about*) 433
Gerichtshof, 435
Geſchmeide, 423
geſchmeidig, 426
Geſtade, 429
gewaltig, 423
glatt, 427
gleiten, 429
Golf, 429
Grabſchrift, 422
Grad, 421

Halbinſel, 429
Hälfte, 443
hauen, 426
Heuſchrecke, 425
Hieb, 421
hinterher, 445
Hirſch, 446
Hitze, 427
Höhle, 429 [446
Hofe, 429
Hufeiſen, 421
Hundegeklaff446

Individium 445
Jagd, 422
Jahreszeit, 434
jährlich, 435
Januar, 433
Joch, 435
Juli, } 433
Juni, }
Jungfrau, 423
jüngſt, 440

Kahn, 424
Kameel, 444
klaffen, 429
Klippe, 429
klopfen, 423
köſtlich, 427
kund, 444
kürzlich, 440

Landenge, 429
Länge, 444
Lauf, 440
Laterne, 421
lebendig, 434
leid thun, 421
liederlich, 444
Löffel, 421

Maler, 444
Mär, 426
Märchen, 423
März, 433
Melodie, 423
merklich, 427
Mitleiden, 445
Mittwoch, 433
Montag, 443
Muhamedaner,
[435
multiplicieren,
[434
Nachmittag, 435
naß, 427
neulich, 440[445
nimmermehr,
Nomade, 444
November, 433

oben, 423
Ocean, 429
October, 433
Orkan, 427
Oſtern, 440

pfeilſchnell, 445
Pfingſten, 440
Platz, 429
plötzlich, 427
Poeſie, 435
Preſſe, 444

Raum, 440
Recrut, 435
Regenbogen 427
regnen, 427
Reſt, 433
Reſt laſſen, 433
Reue, 445
reuen, 421
Riff, 424
Rippe, 426
rücken, 435

Samſtag, 433
Sandbank, 429
Sarg, 445
Sattel, 438
ſchaden, 423
ſchauen, 423
Schloße, 421
ſchlüpfen, 429
ſchlüpfrig, 427
ſchmerzen, 422
Schneeflocke, 423
ſchneien, 421
Schnelligkeit 421
Schreck, 425
ſchrecklich, 421
Schriftſprache,
[435
Schriftſteller 423
ſchuldig ſein, 423
ſchwäbiſch, 435
ſchwitzen, 444
Secunde, 434
September, 433
Seſſel, 438
ſiedeln, 438
ſiegreich, 435
Sinn, 423
das Singen, 424
Sonnabend, 433
ſubtrahieren 434
Syſtem 438[444
Staatsmann,
Statt finden 433
Steinbruch, 429
Steinkohle, 435
Sterling, 435
ſtolzieren, 422
ſtürmen, 421
Strand, 429
ſtreuen, 426
Stroh, 426
Strömung, 429

Tageslicht, 421
Tanne, 446
Temperatur 427
Thau, 427
thauen, 427
Thauwetter, 427
Tiefe, 446
Tracht, 422
traulich, 422

übel, 421
überhaupt, 444
übrig bleiben,
[434
unterbrechen 423
Untiefe, 429

Verarmung 445
veränderlich, 427
Vereinigte
Staaten, 444
Verfaſſer, 435
Vergleich, 427
vergleichen, 424
verſchlingen, 424
verzeichnen, 444
ſich verziehen 427
vorbei, 446
Vorgebirge, 429
vorkommen, 421
Vulcan, 429

wahrlich, 421
Waſſerfall, 429
Waſſerhoſe, 429
wegnehmen, 434
Weh, 423
wehen, 421
Weihnachten 440
wenigſtens, 433
Wetterfahne 427
Wiege, 445
Wirthſchaft, 444
Woge, 429
Wölkchen, 427
wundern, 421
wunderſam, 423
Wüſte, 444
[434
Zahlenſyſtem,
Zapfen, 429
Zeitabſchnitt 440
Zeitraum, 440
Zeitrechnung 444
Zerſtörung, 423
ſich zertheilen427
Ziffer, 433
zögern, 445
zürnen, 445
Zwieback, 433
Zwielicht, 433
Zwieſpalt, 433
Zwietracht, 433
zwölf, 431.

about, 433
abyss, 429
to add, 434
to advance, 444
afternoon, 435
alive, 434
to amount, 435
to be angry at, [445
anniversary 440
annoying, 427
annually, 435
to appear, 444
ark, 434
author, 423, 435

bay, 429
to become, 424
billow, 430
to blow (of the air, wind) 421
boat, 424
to be born, 444
bow, 427
breakers, 430
broth, 444

camel, 444 [444
camel-driver,
cathedral, 424
cavern, 429
changeable, 427
charming, 427
chase, 422
chiefly 435 [427
to be choked,
Christian, 444
Christmas, 440
clap of thunder,
cliff, 430 [427
coal, 435
coffin, 445
colored, 435
to compare, 427
comparison, 427
compassion 445
conquest, 435
to consider, 423
to continue, 424
cordial, 422
costume, 422
court of law 435
female cousin, [421
cradle, 445
current, 430

to darken, 423
daylight, 421
degree, 421
to delay, 445
depth, 446
desert, 444
destruction, 423
dew, 427 [427
to disappear,
dissolute, 444
to divide, 431
dog-days, 426
double, 445
dreadful, 427

earthquake, 429
Easter 440
ebb, 429
epitaph, 422
epoch, 440
era, 444
event 444
evil, 421

fairy, 435
familiar, 422
to fare (well or evil], 421
fever, 421
fir, 446
flake, 430
to flash, 423 [440
Good Friday,
to gaze, 423
in general, 444
to get on, 444
to be glad of, [421
to gleam, 423
goblet, 421
gulf, 429

hart, 446
heat, 427
on high, 423
horse-shoe, 421
hose, 429 [444
housekeeping,
to be hungry,
to hunt 446[421
hurricane, 427

icicles, 430
ill, 421 [445
impoverishment

to be indebted, [423
individual, 445
to interrupt 423
isthmus, 429

jewelry, 423

to knock, 423
known, 444

lantern, 421
leap year, 433
at least, 433
to be left, 434
legend, 423
length, 444
Lent, 440
to lighten, 421
loose, 444 [435
Mahommedan,
melody, 423
memorable, 445
mind, 423 [445
not to mind it,
never mind, 423
mine, 435
misery, 435
Monday, 433
to move 435
to multiply, 434

never more, 445
New Year's day
noble, 444 [440
nomad, 444
to note down, [444
ocean, 429
to offend, 421
once, 423
to owe, 423

to feel pain, 422
painter, 444
to pass by, 424
to pay wages, [423
peninsula, 429
period, 440
to be pleased with, 421
poetry, 435
to take possession of, 435
possession, 435
post coach, 424
powerful, 423
precious, 427
press, 444 [444
to be in press,
prison, 435
promontory 429
to be proud, 422

quarry, 429

to rain, 427
rainbow, 427
recruit, 435
reef, 424
to register, 444
to repent of 421
repentance, 445
to reply, 423
rest, 433, 435
rock, 424
rocky reef, 424
rupture, 429

sand-bank, 430
Saturday, 433
sauce, 444
the second, 434
to seem, 424
to separate, 427
settlement, 435
shallow 430
shore, 430
similar, 421
sleet, 421
slippery, 427
slope, 429
smooth, 427
to snow, 421
snow-flake, 430
to be sorry for,
space, 440 [421
space of time, [440
to sparkle, 422
speed, 421
spoon, 421
stag, 446
stage-coach 424
statesman, 444
to stay, 433
to step forward, [444
to storm, 421
strand, 430
straw, 426
to strew, 426
stroke, 421
to subtract, 434
suddenly, 427
to be suffocated, [427
summit, 429
surely, 421
surf, 430
Swabian, 435
to swallow, 424
to sweat, 444

fairy tale, 423
to tarry, 445
to take away, [434
to take place, [433
to take the field
tap, 430 [435
temperature 427
terrible, 427
terror, 425
to thaw, 427
to be thirsty 421
to thunder, 421
to tremble, 429
tremendous 421
trinkets, 423
Tuesday, 433

vacation, 440
victorious, 435
virgin, 423
visibly, 427
volcano, 429

wages, 423
water-fall, 430
water-spout 429
wave, 430
weather-cock,
wet, 427 [427
Whitsuntide, [440
to withdraw 427
woe, 423
to wonder at 421
wonderful, 423

yoke, 435

zenith, 435.

# KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES.

## 106.

1. Regnet es? 2. Nein, es regnet jetzt nicht; es regnete nur (or erst) heute morgen. 3. Es hat die ganze Nacht geregnet. 4. Ich glaube, es schneit. 5. Hat es schon geschneit? 6. Glauben Sie, es werde bald frieren. 7. Ja, mein Herr, ich denke, es wird heute Nacht frieren. 8. Es ist mir sehr warm 9. Es blitzt; es wird bald donnern. 10. Es donnerte und blitzte heftig. 11. Laßt uns nach Hause gehen; es wird bald zu regnen anfangen. 12. Es freut mich, Sie hier zu finden; aber es thut mir leid, daß ich Sie nicht begleiten kann. 13. Habt ihr nichts zu essen? 14. Es hungert mich sehr; ich habe heute Morgen nicht gefrühstückt. 15. Wie ist das Wetter? 16. Es ist sehr schlechtes Wetter; es regnet; es wird bald schneien. 17. Schneit es? 18. Nein es schneit nicht; es ist viel zu kalt. 19. Hungert es dich? (or Sie) 20. Ja, es hungert und durstet mich sehr. 21. Es wird meinen Bruder sehr freuen, Sie (or dich) zu sehen; er hat von Ihnen (or dir) gesprochen. 22. Wissen Sie, wie spät es ist? 23. Ich denke, es ist vier Uhr. 24. Um wie viel Uhr stehen Sie gewöhnlich auf? 25. Ich stehe jeden Morgen um sechs Uhr auf, und ich gehe jeden Abend um halb elf zu Bett. 26. Wie spät ist es (ist's) jetzt? 27. Es ist noch nicht acht Uhr; es ist fast drei Viertel (auf) acht. 28. Um wie viel Uhr wird Ihr Onkel abreisen? 29. Er wird um ein Viertel auf sechs abreisen. 30. Um wie viel Uhr frühstückt Ihr Freund gewöhnlich? 31. Ich denke, er frühstückt immer um halb zehn. 32. Ihre Vettern werden ungefähr um halb sechs hier sein. 33. Laßt uns (or lassen Sie uns) ins Concert gehen; es wird um drei Viertel auf sieben anfangen. 34. Es thut mir leid, ich habe keine Zeit; ich muß heute Nacht zu Hause bleiben. 35. Es wird kalt bleiben. 36. Es klopfte jemand. 37. Es hat jemand gepfiffen. 38. Was hat es eben geschlagen? 39. Es schlug vier, als wir an der Kathedrale vorübergingen. 40. Es geziemt jungen Damen nicht, so laut zu lachen. 41. Es scheint ein sehr schöner Morgen zu sein; ich hoffe, es wird so schön bleiben. 42. Sehen Sie, wie es blitzt? 43. Es ist nicht sehr angenehm in einem Eilwagen zu reisen. 44. Es thut mir mehr um seine Familie als um ihn leid. 45. Sie werden es bald bereuen. 46. Es ist etwas in meinem Auge. 47. Es war eben jetzt etwas an der Thüre. 48. Es sind zehn Zimmer in diesem Hause. 49. Es sind Sterne am Himmel. 50. Es sind viele schöne Gebäude in dieser großen Stadt. 51. Es schläferte ihn sehr. 52. Es war uns kalt. 53. Es hungerte und durstete sie.

## 109.

1. Eine Armee von dreihundert und fünfzigtausend Mann war ins Feld zu rücken bereit. 2. Jene Schlösser sind das Eigenthum dreier Bürger unserer Stadt. 3. Die Bücher gehören jenen drei Knaben. 4. Der Werth dieser Uhr ist zweihundert und vier und siebzig Thaler. 5. Wissen Sie, wie viel Uhr es ist (or wie spät es ist)? 6. Könnt ihr mir sagen, wie viel Uhr es ist? 7. Ja, es ist fast vier Uhr. 8. Es ist noch nicht zwei (Uhr). 9. Wissen Sie das gewiß? 10. Ich denke (or ich glaube), es ist drei Viertel vier (or auf vier). 11. Es ist ein Viertel auf fünf. 12. Es ist fünf Minuten nach vier. 13. Es ist fünf Minuten zu (or vor) sieben. 14. Es ist noch nicht spät; es ist erst halb sechs. 15. Er besaß wenigstens tausend Thaler. 16. Ich kam mit zwei Freunden, und er kam mit dreien. 17. Shakespeare war erst zwei und fünfzig Jahre alt, als er starb. 18. Ich werde um ein Viertel zehn (or auf zehn) bei Ihnen sein. 19. Nachdem Maria Stuart auf das Schloß Lochleven geschickt worden war, entfloh ihr Gemahl, Bothwell, nach Dänemark, wo er in das Gefängniß geworfen wurde und ungefähr zehn Jahre nachher im Elend starb.

20. Der Werth der Steinkohlen, welche aus den englischen Bergwerken gegraben werden, beläuft sich jährlich auf zehn Millionen Pfund Sterling. 21. Die englische Sprache wurde im Jahre eintausend dreihundert zwei und sechzig die Sprache der Gerichtshöfe, und bald nachher Schriftsprache durch Chaucer, der mit Recht der „Vater der englischen Poesie" genannt worden ist. 22. Sie erreichte ihren Glanzpunkt unter der Königin Elisabeth, besonders durch Spenser, den Verfasser der „Feenkönigin," und Shakspeare, welcher eintausend sechshundert sechzehn starb. 23. Im Jahre eintausend sechshundert fünf und fünfzig nahmen die Engländer Besitz von Jamaika. 24. Cromwell beförderte die Ansiedelung der Insel, so daß sich nach einigen Jahren die Zahl der Weißen auf viertausend fünfhundert belief. 25. Jetzt hat Jamaika vierhundert fünfzigtausend Einwohner, von denen ungefähr vierzigtausend Weiße, der übrige Theil Farbige sind. 26. Diese Dame hat zwei Töchter; beide sind schön aber die jüngste gefällt mir am besten. 27. An einem Freitage, um drei Uhr Nachmittags, stand Gottfried von Bouillon siegreich auf den Mauern von Jerusalem. 28. So wurde die heilige Stadt ungefähr vierhundert sechzig Jahre nach der Eroberung Omars von dem Joche der Muhamedaner befreit.

## 112.

die Wirthin*[vir'-tin] (–en), *hostess, landlady*
ziehen (p. 282), intrans. *to move, to go, march*
einkehren (kehren, p. 308, ein, p. 177), *to turn in*
die Todtenbahre (Bahre, bar, p. 125) (–n), *bier, hearse* [*in*
hineintreten (p. 293, p. 263), *to step*
der Schrein*[1] (–es, –e) *shrine, coffin*
zurückschlagen (p. 222, p. 181), *to throw back, turn back*
zudecken (zu, p. 350, 2; decken, p. 268), *to cover up*
der Schleier[l'-e] (–s), *veil*
die Maid*[mɪt], *maid* [*away*
abkehren (ab, p. 309), *to turn off.*
heben (p. 254), *to lift up*
wieder (p. 138), *again, anew*
bleich (erbleichen, p. 308) *pale, wan.*

### Der Wirthin Töchterlein,

von L. Uhland.

Es zogen drei Burschе wohl über den Rhein,
Bei einer Frau Wirthin, da kehrten[1] sie ein.[1]
„Frau Wirthin! hat sie* gut† Bier und Wein?
Wo hat sie ihr schönes Töchterlein?"‡

„Mein Bier und Wein ist frisch und klar,
Mein Töchterlein liegt auf der Todtenbahr."
Und als sie traten zur Kammer hinein,
Da lag sie in einem schwarzen Schrein.

---

*The third person sing. is sometimes used when aristocratic persons address their inferiors.

†For gutes. The terminations are sometimes omitted in poetry, as in popular conversation.

‡The diminutive of tenderness and familiarity.

Der Erſte, der ſchlug den Schleier zurück
Und ſchaute ſie an mit traurigem Blick:
„Ach! lebteſt* du noch, du ſchöne Maid!
Ich würde dich lieben von dieſer Zeit!“

Der Zweite deckte den Schleier zu
Und kehrte ſich ab und weinte dazu :†
„Ach! daß du liegſt auf der Todtenbahr!
Ich hab' dich geliebet ſo manches Jahr!“

Der Dritte hub ihn wieder ſogleich,
Und küßte ſie an den Mund ſo bleich:
„Dich liebt' ich immer, dich lieb' ich noch heut,
Und werde dich lieben in Ewigkeit!“‡

## 113.

Rheiniſch (Rhein, p. 273), *Rhenish*
der Schoppen[shöp'-pᵉn] (a liquid measure), *chopin, pint*
die Pinte*[pĭn'-tᵉ], *pint*
das Gegentheil (gegen, p. 249, Theil, p. 171), *the contrary* [*reverse*
**im Gegentheile**, *on the contrary*,
die Meile*[mĭ'-lᵉ] (–n), *mile*
fabricieren (p. 296) *to manufacture*
ſeiden[zĭ'-dᵉn], *silk, silken*
die Seide,* *silk*
die Strafe, (ſtrafen, p. 299) (–n), *punishment*
die Belohnung (belohnen, p. 406) (–en), *reward* [*paper*
das Schreibpapier (p. 133), *writing*
das Loth*[lōt] (–es, –e), *half an ounce* [*prefer*
vorziehen (vorzüglich, p. 327), *to*
zumeſſen (meſſen, p. 298), *to allot*
widmen[vĭd'-mᵉn], *to dedicate*
die Erwerbung*[ᵉr-vĕr'-bŭnᵏ](–en), *acquirement*
die Kenntniß (kennen, p. 222)(–iſſe), *knowledge*
zubringen, *to spend*
die Neue Welt, *the new world*
erblicken (p. 396), *to behold*
überſchwemmen*[ü"-bĕr-shvĕm'-mᵉn], *to overflow*
der Einfall (ein, pref., p. 177) (–es, Einfälle), *invasion*
Britan(n)ien[brĭ"-tä'-nĭ-ᵉn] *Britain*
vollenden (p. 278), *to complete*
halten für, *to find, hold, think*
zweckmäßig*[tsvĕk'–] (see p. 253, regelmäßig), *expedient* [*ince*
die Provinz*[prō-vĭnts'](–en) *prov-*
aufgeben, *to give up*
ſichern (p. 361), *to secure* [*session*
die Beſitzung (beſitzen, p. 333), *pos-*
der Überfall, *inroad, surprise*(mil.)
kriegeriſch (Krieg, p. 238), *war-like*
errichten (see richt, p. 233, aufrichtig p. 246), *to erect* (lit. to set upright) [*claim*
ernennen (nennen, p. 276), *to pro-*
der Conſul (–s, –en), *consul*
ſtürzen*[ſtür'-tsᵉn], *to overturn*
geneigt ſein (neigen, p. 399), *to be inclined*
enthaupten (ent, p. 207, Haupt, p. 265), *to behead*
abdanken (ab- p. 309), *to abdicate.*

*Conditional, p. 388, *b*.

†dazu, *at it*, viz. the sad event, p. 314, darnach.

‡Accusative, into, to all eternity.

1. How long is a German elle? 2. Two feet, or two thirds of an English yard. 3. How much does a Rhenish bottle contain? 4. Two schoppen. 5. One schoppen or half a bottle is equal to nine-sixteenths of a pint. 6. How much is an English Gallon? 7. Seven and one-ninth Rhenish bottles. 8. What o'clock is it now? 9. It is a quarter past five. 10. Is it not yet half past five? 11. On (in) the contrary, it is already a quarter to six. 12. When were 'you born? 13. The 16th (of) November, 1816. 14. I am three years and three-quarters younger than my brother Charles. 15. When did 'you arrive here? 16. I arrived the 2d of March, and my family the twenty-fifth of the same month. 17. Time is three-fold: past, present and future. 18. These two chests contain thirty-two pounds and a half (of) coffee. 19. This poor soldier lost (use perf.) both his feet in the battle eleven years ago. 20. He has said it to four (persons). 21. We went two and two into the church. 22. Hartford, the 11th of December, 1877. 23. The town is four miles and a half from here. 24. This man manufactures three kinds of silk ribbon. 25. In (auf) this field are planted four kinds of tobacco. 26. This tree bears pears of three kinds. 27. His punishment was seven-fold. 28. He received a two-fold reward, and I a double reward. 29. Go to Mr. N's store, there 'you can find all kinds of writing paper, ten kinds of steel pens and many kinds of ink. 30. Bring me two pounds and a half (of) good butter, two dozen of eggs, three ounces and three-quarters of black tea, half a bottle (of) wine and four yards and a half (of) silk ribbon. 31. How long is it now, since (daß) 'you left England? 32. About ten years and a half. 33. And how long have 'you been (use pres. tense) in Germany? 34. Nearly eight years, and I travelled two years and a quarter in France and Spain. 35. Which of the four countries do 'you prefer? 36. First, England; secondly, Germany; thirdly, France. 37. Can 'you come at half past four o'clock to-morrow? 38. No, but I can come at a quarter before five. 39. We arrived in New York the twenty-second of May and set out[3] to visit Washington[2] on the first (of) June[1]. 40. How long did 'you remain in Washington? 41. About one month and a half. 42. What did *Omar*, the son of Hassan, say to himself in his twentieth year? 43. "Seventy years," said he, "are allotted to man. 44. I have still fifty remaining (übrig, p. 434). 45. Ten years will I dedicate to the acquirement of knowledge (use plur.). 46. And ten I will spend in foreign countries." 47. It was on Friday, the twelfth (of) October, 1492, that Columbus first (zuerst) beheld the New World. 48. The Nile overflows its banks once a year. 49. The first Roman invasion of (in) Britain took place under Julius Cæsar, in the year 55 before Christ. 50. Agricola completed the conquest of England eighty years after Christ. 51. The Emperor Adrian (Hadrian) afterwards found (halten für) it expedient to give up part (a part) of the conquered provinces, and, to (um . . zu) secure his British possessions from (gegen) the inroads of the war-like Picts and Scots, he erected a solid wall, sixty English miles in length (lange) which is still called "the Roman Wall." 52. On

the tenth of November, 1799, Napoleon was proclaimed First Consul of the French republic. 51. Five years afterwards he overturned the republic and was crowned Emperor of the French. 52. I have read neither the first nor the second volume of this work. 53. I have made the voyage to the United States two or three times and should be glad to make it a fourth time. 54. I have told 'you a hundred times that I am not inclined to lend 'you money. 55. First (or in the first place), I have no money, and secondly, my father will not allow me to lend it. 56. God will reward you ten-fold. 57. Louis the Sixteenth was beheaded; Charles the Tenth and Louis Philippe were driven away. 58. Henry IV of France was murdered in 1610 by Ravaillac, who was torn (zerreißen, p. 187) by horses on the Greve-place thirteen days later.

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Ueberhaupt,** *generally*; in the proper meaning probably as mucn as *over, along the surface*; from the mhd. *über houbet=over the head beyond*; Haupt (p. 265)=the chief, the whole, hence=*along over the whole.*

**Maler,** *painter*; malen, *to paint, depict, delineate*; Goth. *maljan*, to write; from **mal,** *mark, spot,* **mole,** A. S. *mœl*=point, point of time, comp. **maul-stick=Maler-ſtock.**

**ſollen,** is often employed for *people say*, and serves to indicate a rumor, report, or general impression, as ihr Bruder **ſoll** ſehr reich ſein, **they say** *her brother is very rich*; Sein Vater ſoll geſtorben ſein, *his father* **is supposed** *to have died.*

**Nomade, nomad,** Gr. *nomas—nomados*, pasture; *nemo*, to drive to pasture.

**Kameel, camel,** Lat. *camelus*, Gr. *kamelos*, Hebr. *gamal*; prob. fr. Arab. *chamal*, to bear.

**Wüſte, waste,** *desert*; fr. **wüſt, waste**; prop. *empty*, ahd. *wast*, A. S. *weste*, Lat. *vastus*, empty; hence Lat, *vastare*, A. S. *vestan*, to desolate, to lay waste.

**Preſſe, press,** fr. Lat. *premo—pressus*; Fr. *presser*, to squeeze, to press.

**kund, known,** mhd. *kunt*, ahd. *chund*, Old Sax. and A. S. (with the disappearance of n) *chuth, cud*, orig. the pa. part. of können=kennen; see p. 187 and 315.

**Brühe, broth,** *sauce*; fr. brühen, *to scald* (comp. Fr. *bouillon*, fr. *bouiller*, to cook). To the same root belong **brauen,** *to* **brew** (p. 101); Brei (p. 253); **brüten,** *to* **breed; Brut, brood;** braten, *to roast* (p. 294) and perhaps also **Brod, bread** (the better, although not the usual, writing is Brot) (see Webster, *bread*).

**ſchwitzen,** *to* **sweat** (Tab. V. 13 and 8), to give out **Schweiß, sweat** or a moisture from the skin. **Schweiß,** ahd. *sueiz*, A. S. *svat*, akin to Lat. *sudare*, Sans. *svid*, to sweat.

**Wiege,** *cradle*, ahd. *waga* and *wiga*, fr. **wiegen,** *to* **weigh** (p. 277, wichtig), which orig.=to move softly hither and thither, to **wag,** or up and down like a **Wage** (see p. 314, wagen), *a balance.*

**Sarg,** *coffin*, ahd. and mhd. *sarc*; prob. by abbreviation fr. Gr. Lat. *sarcophagus*=coffin, lit. *eating flesh.* Coffins were often made of a certain lime-stone called, *lithos* (stone) *sarkophagos*, i. e. a stone which consumed within a short time (40 days) the flesh of the dead body (*sarx*= flesh; *phagein*, to eat); L. Lat. *sarcus*, Old Fr. *sarcueil*, now *cercueil*, coffin.

**doppelt, double** (the **t** is suff.; comp. above **tund**, and for subst. formed by **t, d, de**, etc.; p. 316, Geſtalt); Gr. *diplous*, Lat. *duplus, duplex* (*duo*, two, *plico*, to fold).

*Take Notice!* doppelt is different from zweifach. doppelt is twice the same thing; zweifach is a thing or action in two different ways; e. g. die **zweifache** Belohnung, is a reward in two ways, as in money and honor; eine doppelte B., is the same reward twice as large, as two hundred Dollars instead of one hundred.

**zögern,** *to tarry*, a frequentative form (see p. 80, flottern) from the obsolete **zogen,** *to* **tug**=ziehen, *to draw* (p. 282) (still preserved in Herzog, *duke*, lit. who marches out with the army, Her=Heer, comp. Hermann, p. 170), to lengthen or draw out in time (comp. the Engl. *protract*; *pro*, out, and *traho*, to draw).

**Pfeil,** *arrow*, ahd. mhd. *phil*, fr. Lat. *pilum*, a javelin or dart; Engl. (obs.) **pile,** the head of an arrow.

**Hirſch,** *stag*, **hart,** ahd. *hiruz*; Dutch, *hert*, A. S. *heorot*, prop. a *horned* animal, Lat. *cervus*, Gr. *kerasos—keras*, a horn.

**Birſch,** *deer shooting*, mhd. *birsen*, fr. Old Fr. *berser*, now *percer*, to **pierce.**

**Tanne,** *fir*, orig.=forest tree, ahd. *tan*=forest.

**Wirthin,** *hostess, landlady*, fem. of der **Wirth,** *landlord, inn-keeper*; Goth. *vairdus*, ahd. mhd. *wirt*=the man who in a certain relation is the head and **ward***en*; fr. Goth. *vair*, ahd. mhd. *wer*; A. S. *ver*, Lat. *vir* =man (see Webster, **were**gild, and **were**wolf).

**Schrein,** *box, chest,* **shrine,** *coffin*; mhd. *schrin*, ahd. *scrine*, A. S. *scrin*, fr. Lat. *scrinium*=a round little case in which esp. sacred things, relics, were deposited; fr. which der Schreiner, *joiner.*

**Maid, maid, maiden,** only poetically used for Magd.

**Pinte, pint,** A. S. *pynt*, measure for liquids; Fr. *pinte*=four-fifths of a Prussian quart; orig. a mark of the measure; Sp. *pinta*, mark, fr. Lat. *pingo, pinctus*, to paint.

**Meile, mile,** mhd. *mile*, ahd. *mila*; orig. *milla*, A. S. *mil*; fr. Lat. *millia* (plur. of *mille*, thousand), i. e. *millia passuum*=one thousand paces or a Roman mile.

**Seide,** *silk*, mhd. *side*, ahd. *sida*, fr. L. Lat. and Itl. *seta*=**silk**; *seta* prop. in Lat.=a big rough hair of animals; hence orig. in L. Lat. *seta serica*, i. e. a hair coming from the *Seres*, a people of Eastern Asia renowned for their silk manufactures.

**Loth,** *half ounce* (historically more correct Lot), mhd. *lot*=**lead** (Tab. V. 11), a sounding **lead,** plummet, then, a **leaden** weight.

**Erwerbung,** *acquisition*, fr. werben, mhd. *werben*, ahd *huerpan*, *werban*; A. S. *hveorfan* (Lat. *orbis*=a circle, a sphere), *to turn round, to revolve* (like an **orb**), then *to apply to, to endeavor, to make efforts for acquiring.* To the same root belong **Wirbel, twirl,** *whirl,* **wirbeln,** *to* **warble.**

**überſchwemmen,** *to overflow*; **ſchwemmen,** the causative of ſchwimmen, =to make **swim** (see p. 276, Säugethier).

**zweckmäßig,** *expedient*, c. of mäßig (p. 253, regelmäßig), and **Zweck,** *peg, tack, pin*, for the most part wooden nail (esp. used by shoemakers), allied to **zwicken,** *to pinch, to* **tweak, twitch** (Tab. V. 8); the nail or peg in the middle of the target, which is aimed at, hence figuratively, *the aim, end, scope, design.*

**Provinz, province,** fr. Lat. *provincia*, territory situated without Italy, prop. so-called, *pro*—for, *vincia*, fr. *vincere*, to conquer, vanquish.

**ſtürzen,** *to overturn*, ahd. *sturzan*; Dutch, *storten*, Old Eng. *stirte, sterte*; Engl. *to* **start,** *to* **startle**; all are prob. conn. with ſtören (p. 88), and orig. express, *to move suddenly, to be precipitated, to rush, dash.* The Engl. *to* **start** has enlarged the meanings=to alarm, to arouse from concealment, as deer, to put suddenly out of place.

## [70.] ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

*Model Sentences.*

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Wir haben **geſtern** einen Brief erhalten. | *We have received a letter* **yesterday.** |
| 2. Komm **herein, herunter.** | *Come* **in, down.** |
| 3. Geh' **hinein, hinunter.** | *Go* **in** (*enter*), **down stairs.** |
| 4. **Wovon** ſprechen Sie? | *Of what do you speak?* |
| 5. **Woran** denken Sie? | **What** *are you thinking* **of?** |
| 6. Dieſe Schrift iſt **ſchlecht.** Er ſchreibt **ſchlecht.** | *This writing is* **bad.** *He writes* **badly.** |
| 7. Er ſchreibt **am beſten.** | *He writes best.* |
| 8. Er empfing mich **aufs höflichſte.** | *He received me with the greatest politeness.* |
| 9. Ich habe einen Brief **an meinen Bruder** geſchrieben. | *I have written a letter to my brother.* |
| 10. Er hat **vor einer Stunde** die Stadt verlaſſen. | *He left the town an hour ago.* |
| 11. Er las **des Morgens** die Zeitung. | *He read the newspaper in the morning.* |
| 12. Er kam **dieſen Morgen** zu mir. | *He came to me this morning.* |

*Observations.*—1. The **Adverb** serves to express circumstances of place, time, manner, cause, etc. It either immediately precedes or follows the word (verb, adjective or adverb) which it modifies; as Hier ſtehe ich; Ich kam geſtern; Wie haſt du das gemacht?

*Note.*—1. The adverb is distinguished from the *conjunction* by an essential characteristic: the adverb may occupy any place whatever in the phrase, whilst the conjunction is necessarily at the beginning of the proposition. Doch, jedoch, indeſſen, deswegen are adverbs, because we can say: er iſt jedoch aufrichtig, *he is, however, sincere;* ich habe es Ihnen deswegen geſagt.

2. According to their signification they may be divided into:

*A.* Adverbs of **Place** and **Direction.**

*a.* The German language makes use of particular means to distinguish the *idea of movement* from *that* of *repose.*

It has been seen (p. 259) that certain prepositions require the accusative if the verb expresses a movement *which is directed* towards a place, and the dative, if the verb does not convey this idea. Now, if this movement is not indicated by a preposition, the two particles **hin** and **her** are used to indicate this direction (comp. p. 245). **Hin** indicates a movement of *receding* from the speaker, or the place he occupies when speaking, and **her** an approach to him. Consequently **hin** is rather joined to the verb **gehen**, and **her** to the verb **kommen**; as Gehen Sie hin; Komme her! Wer hat dich hergeſchickt? Warum legſt du die Feder hin?

*Note.* It is necessary to observe that the verbs ſtellen, *to stand;* legen, *to lay;* ſetzen, *to sit,* are regarded as expressing a movement. The use of the adverbs hin and her is indispensable after these verbs, if the direction is not indicated by any other complement. We say: Lege die Feder auf den Tiſch, *lay the pen on the table,* but not lege die Feder (without any direction), we must say: lege die Feder hin.

*b.* Conforming to the principle just shown, the adverbs of place are divided into two classes:

The adverbs of *Repose* and the adverbs of *Movement*; compare:

| *Adverbs of Repose.* | *Adverbs of Movement.* |
|---|---|
| oben (droben*), *above* (*there above*) | hinauf, herauf, *up thither, up hither* |
| unten (drunten), *below* (*down there*) [*side*) | hinunter, herunter, hinab, *down thither, down hither* |
| außen (draußen), *outside* (*there out-* | hinaus, heraus, *out thither, out hither* |
| innen, darinn (drinnen), *within, therein* (*there within*) | hinein (for hinin, p. 177), herein (for herin, p. 177), *in thither, in hither* |
| drüben (for darüben), *over there, beyond, across* | hinüber, herüber, *over thither, over hither.* |

Dein Freund iſt unten, ſage ihm, daß ich oben bin, *your friend is down stairs, tell him that I am upstairs*; Ich kann nicht hinuntergehen, ſage ihm, er ſolle heraufkommen, *I cannot go down, tell him to come up.* Dein Bruder ſpielt draußen, *your brother is playing outside*; gehe hinaus und ſpiele mit ihm, *go out and play with him.* Hier iſt der Fluß; ich ſehe Ihren Vater drüben, *here is the river*; *I see your father across* (*it*): er könnte vielleicht

*The words placed in the parentheses are less used, and belong to familiar language. All those which begin with dr. are contracted demonstrative adverbs: droben—daroben, drinnen—darinnen (p. 314).

zu uns herüberfahren, *he might perhaps ride across to us.* Wer iſt im Zimmer? Es iſt niemand darin, *Who is in the room? No one is there.* Kommen Sie doch herein, *do come in.*

*Note.*—1. It will be seen from these examples that the verbs, *to enter, to go out, to ascend, to descend,* are rendered in German by gehen and kommen with an adverb of movement of the 2d group. The choice of the compounds of hin and her depends upon the place of him who speaks. Thus we say to a person whom we wish to enter a dwelling: gehen Sie hinein, if we are without, and kommen Sie herein, if we are within the dwelling.

2. Gehen and kommen may be replaced by other verbs of motion, if any other motion than walking is indicated. Thus, *we ascend* can be translated by wir gehen, kommen, ſteigen, fahren, reiten, etc., hinauf or herauf.

3. Hin and her may like the separable prefixes be detached from the adverb united to the verb; as Wohin gehen Sie? or Wo gehen Sie hin? Woher biſt du gekommen? or Wo biſt du hergekommen?

*c.* Adverbs which may indicate the direction without the use of hin and her, such as:

links, *to the left*
rechts, *to the right, on the right hand*

fort, weg } *away*
nieder, *down*

and all those which end in **wärts** (p. 281); as vorwärts, *forward*; rückwärts, *backward*; himmelwärts, *heavenward.*

Gehen Sie rechts und nicht links, *go to the right and not to the left.* Die Reiterei ſtand voran, die Infanterie weiter rückwärts, *the cavalry was in front, the infantry farther back.* Die Truppen marſchierten vorwärts, *the troops marched forward.*

The idea of direction is expressed so well by these particles, that the verb may be understood, if it is employed in the past participle after the auxiliary ſein, or in the infinitive after the auxiliaries of mood; as Er iſt hinauf (for hinaufgeſtiegen), *he has ascended.* Du willſt fort (for fortgehen)? *you are going away?* Wir konnten nicht hinein (for hineintreten), *we could not enter.*

*B.* Adverbs of **Time:**

heute, *to-day*
morgen, *to-morrow*
geſtern, *yesterday*
vorgeſtern, *the day before yesterday*
übermorgen, *the day after to-morrow*
immer, *always*
jemals, je } *ever*
jetzt, nun, *at present, now*
damals, *at that time*
dann, *then*
bisweilen, zuweilen } *sometimes*

einſt, *once, one day*
endlich, *at last, at length*
ehedem [a'-he-dām'], ſonſt [ō] } *formerly*
vormals [ō'-ah]
kürzlich [ĭ'], *not long ago, lately*
bisher [bis-hār'], *hitherto*
neulich, *the other day*
früh, *early*
ſpät, *late*
ſogleich, ſofort } *immediately*
bald, *soon*, etc

*C.* Adverbs of **Manner and Quality:**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ſchnell, *quickly* | ſchriftlich, *by writing* | als, } *as* |
| langſam, *slowly* | öffentlich, *publicly* | wie, } |
| plötzlich, *suddenly* | ernſtlich, *seriously* | gerade (ſo), *exactly* |
| ſo, *so* | heimlich, *secretly* | eben (ſo), *just as* |
| anders, *otherwise* | blindlings, *blindly* | ſchön, *beautifully* |
| leiſe, *gently* | treulich, *faithfully* | gut, *well* |
| laut, *loud* | umſonſt, *in vain* | ſchlecht, *badly*, etc. |

*D.* Adverbs of **Number and Order.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| einmal, *once* | oft, *often* | zuerſt, *at first* |
| zweimal, *twice* | ſelten, *seldom* | zuletzt, *at last.* |

*E.* Adverbs of **Interrogation, Affirmation, Negation and Doubt.**

| | |
|---|---|
| wo? *where?* | kaum, *scarcely* |
| wann? *when?* | ſchwerlich, *hardly* |
| wie? *how? in what manner?* | wahrlich, *truly* |
| ja, *yes* | gewiß, *certainly* |
| nein, *no* | wirklich, *indeed* |
| freilich, *of course* | in der That, *indeed* |
| vielleicht, *perhaps* | keineswegs[ī'-e-ā"-e], *by no means* |
| wahrſcheinlich, *probably* | ſicherlich, *surely*, etc. |

*F.* Adverbs of **Intensity.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ſehr, *very* | nur, *only* |
| gar, *very, even,* | höchſt[éā], *highly* |
| ſogar, *even,* | äußerſt, *extremely* |
| vorzüglich[éé'], *particularly* | weit, *far* |
| überaus[éé-ous'], *exceedingly* | bei weitem, *by far* |
| ziemlich, *tolerably* | noch, *yet* |
| zu, *to* | gänzlich, *entirely* ner, [etc. |
| beinahe, *almost* | dermaßen[a'-ah"], *in such a man-* |

*G.* Adverbs of **Cause, Means** or **Instrument** are for the most part compounds of **da** (dar), **wo** (wor) and **hier** with prepositions (p. 314); as:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| wodurch? *whereby?* | dadurch, *thereby* | hierdurch, *hereby* |
| woran? *whereupon?* | daran, *thereupon* | hieran, *hereupon* |
| wofür? *why (what for)?* | dafür, *therefore* | hierfür, *for this* |
| wovon? *from what?* | davon, *from that* | hiervon, *from this*, etc. |

3. With regard to their form, the adverbs are divided into:

**Primitive** adverbs; as ja, nein, jetzt, doch; also most prepositions, which for the most part (p. 241, 1, Note) originally were adverbs prefixed to the verb, and even now, when serving as prefixes in compound verbs, assume the force of adverbs.

**Derived** Adverbs.

*a.* Such as derived from **demonstrative** and **interrogative pronouns**; as da, davon, hier, wo, wann, etc.

*b.* Adverbs derived from **adjectives.** Most adjectives may be employed as adverbs of manner, without any change of form; as ſchön, *beautiful* and *beautifully*; gut, *good* and *well*; ſtark, *strong* and *strongly*; ſchwach, *weak* and *weakly*, etc.

*c.* Adverbs derived from **substantives**, either by means of the suffix **lich** or **lings**; as jährlich (Jahr), *yearly*; mündlich (Mund), *orally*; ſtündlich (Stunde), *hourly*; täglich (Tag), *daily*; köpflings [ü'] (Kopf), *headlong*; rücklings (Rücken), *backward*, etc.; or by means of the termination **s** or **ens**; as theils, Abends, Morgens, höchſtens, meiſtens (comp. p. 272, 7).

*Note.*—1 By lich adverbs are also formed from adjectives and participles; as bitterlich (bitter) *bitterly*, neulich (neu), *lately* (lit. *newly*), weislich (weiſe), *wisely*; flehentlich (flehend, for the change of d into t comp p. 402 hoffentlich); wiſſentlich (wiſſend), *wilfully* (lit. *knowingly*) Some writers (especially *Goethe*) are fond of forming adverbs in lich (Engl *ly*). In general however, lich has preserved its adverbial force only in a few cases; as freilich, *certainly*, gänzlich, *entirely*, höchlich, *highly*; kürzlich, *recently*, neulich, *the other day*; ſchwerlich, *hardly*; wahrlich, *verily*; ziemlich, *tolerably*, *rather*, *pretty much*. These words cannot be employed otherwise than as adverbs.

*d.* Adverbs formed by composition; as vorbei (vor—bei), *past*; überall, *everywhere*; fürwahr, *in truth*; bergauf (Berg—auf), *up hill*. In adverbs compounded of substantives and adjectives, or adj. pronouns, the genitive form is of very frequent occurrence; as in: keineswegs, *by no means*; großentheils, *for a great part*; meiſtentheils, *for the most part*; mittlerweile, *in the meantime*; einerſeits, *on the one hand*; unterwegs, *on the way*; glücklicherweiſe,* *luckily*; natürlicherweiſe,* *naturally*; tropfenweiſe,* *in drops*, *by drops*.

### Comparison of Adverbs.

4. Adverbs are indeclinable, but many of those expressing manner can be compared. The comparative is formed in the same way as that of adjectives. The superlative has two forms: When comparison between several objects is expressed, the preposition **an** is used, which coalesces with the definite article into **am**, and takes the dative termination **en**; as Er lieſt **am** ſchnellſten, *he reads the fastest.*

The absolute superlative is expressed either by the simple or compound superlative without inflection; as Er grüßt freundlichſt, *he salutes in the most friendly manner*, or by the neuter substantive form of the superlative with preceding **aufs** (=auf das); as Er grüßt **aufs freundlichſte.**

*Note.*—1. The following superlatives in ſtens are used in peculiar significations:

erſtens, *in the first place*
letztens *in the last place*
eheſtens, *at the soonest*
früheſtens, *not before*
wenigſtens, mindeſtens } *at least*
ſpäteſtens, *at the latest*
längſtens, *at the longest*
nächſtens, *shortly*, *very soon*
höchſtens, *at the most*
meiſtens, *for the most part*
beſtens, *in the best manner*
ſchönſtens, *in the finest manner.*

Take notice especially of the complimentary phrases: ich empfehle mich beſtens, *give my best regards*; er dankt ſchönſtens, *he thanks very much.*

2. For adverbs irregularly compared, see p. 235.

*Adverbs compounded with Weiſe, *a way* or *manner*, are also written separately; as natürlicher Weiſe.

### 5. The Position of the Adverb.

*a.* Adverbs of time generally precede the object, excepting the object be a personal pronoun; as M. S. 1, 10, 11, 12; but Ich habe **ihn** geſtern geſehen. Er hat **ihm** heute geſchrieben.

*b.* Adverbs of place and manner follow the object; as Ich habe heute **ſeinen Bruder auf der Straße** geſehen; Sie ſang das Lied ſehr ſchön; Er ſchickt den kranken Sohn aufs Land.

*c.* Adverbs of time precede adverbs of place; as Ich habe ihn **heute überall** geſucht. Er ſtarb **voriges Jahr in London.**

*d.* The qualifying adverbs (adverbs of manner, intensity, affirmation, negation) are in general placed before the word which they modify; as Wir fahren **ſehr** langſam.

*e.* Of two or more adverbs of the same kind, the more particular usually follow the more general; as Sie werden **morgen Abend um acht Uhr** ankommen, *they will arrive to-morrow evening at eight o'clock.* Wir können das Buch **nirgends im Hauſe** finden, *we can find the book nowhere in the house.*

*f.* Adverbs of time and place precede adverbs of manner; as Sie hat **geſtern Abend vortrefflich** geſungen, *she sung admirably yesterday evening.*

*Note.* For idiomatical adverbial expressions, see Second Course.

## 114.

ſich finden (p. 240) *there is (are), to be found*
vollkommen (p. 334), *perfect*
hinunter, *down*
drüben[ēē'], *on the other side*
die Muttertreu (Treue, *fidelity*, p. 84), *maternal fidelity*
der Beutel (s), *bag, purse*
feig,* *coward, dastard*
das Geſchwätz*[ä'] (-es), *prattle*
verrathen (rathen, p. 293), *to betray, to show*
die Völkerſchaft (Volk, p. 70), *tribe, nation*
die Elſter[ĕl'-stĕr], *magpie*
die Redlichkeit (redlich, p. 329), *honesty*
der Stand (ſtehen, p. 239) (-es), *standing, position, situation*
freien (unzufrieden, p. 372), *to woo, to make love*
der Feldbrunnen (Feld, p. 100, Brunnen, p. 407), *spring in a field*
plaudern, *to chat, prattle*
rinnen (p. 315), *to run, flow*
der Wanderer, *traveller* (p. 248)
die Sitte* (-n), *manners, morals*
erfahren, *experienced, expert* (p. 277).

1. Gute und böſe Menſchen finden ſich überall, vollkommene nirgends. 2. Der Freund iſt unten, ſage ihm, daß ich oben bin. 3. Ich kann nicht hinuntergehen, ſage ihm, er ſolle heraufkommen. 4. Hier iſt der Fluß; ich ſehe Ihren Vater drüben; er könnte vielleicht zu uns herüberfahren. 5. Muttertreu' || Wird täglich neu (Prov.). 6. Was lange währt, wird gut (Prov.). 7. Die Mittelſtraße iſt ſtets die beſte (Prov.). 8. Ein voller Beutel findet immer Freunde (Prov.). 9. Denke heute, und ſprich morgen (Prov.). 10. Feige Hunde bellen am meiſten (Prov.). 11. Jeder ſpricht

am liebſten von ſeiner Kunſt (Prov.). 12. Durch Geſchwätz verräth die Elſter ihr Neſt (Prov.). 13. Neue Schuhe drücken am meiſten (Prov.). 14. Tag's ein Bettler, Nacht's ein Dieb (Prov.). 15. Am längſten behält man, was man in der Jugend gelernt hat (Prov.). 16. Wie die Saat, ſo die Ernte (Prov.). 17. Unter den Unglücklichen beklagt man die am wenigſten, die es durch ihre Schuld (p. 389) geworden ſind; ſie ſind aber am meiſten zubeklagen (p. 405, 7). Der Troſt (p. 253) eines guten Gewiſſens fehlt ihnen (E. von Kleiſt). 18. Unter allen Völkerſchaften haben die Griechen den Traum des Lebens am ſchönſten geträumt (Göthe). 19. Alles wiederholt ſich (to be repeated, p. 293) nur im Leben (Schiller). 20. Redlichkeit gedeiht in jedem Stande (Schiller). 21. Hier wird gefreit, anderswo begraben (Schiller). 22. Wer nicht liebt Wein, Weib und Geſang, der bleibt ein Narr ſein Leben lang (Luther).

23. Wie auf dem Feld nur die Frucht gedeiht,
Wenn ſie Sonne und Regen hat,
Alſo die Thaten des Menſchen nur,
Wenn er Glück und Segen hat! (Bodenſtedt, Mirza-Schaffy.)

24. Nicht immer am beſten erfahren iſt,
Wer am älteſten an Jahren iſt—
Und wer am meiſten gelitten hat,
Nicht immer die beſten Sitten hat!
(Bodenſtedt, Mirza-Schaffy.)

25. Im Winter trink' ich und ſinge Lieder (p. 201)
Aus Freude (for joy, p. 325), daß der Frühling nah iſt.
Und kommt der Frühling trink' ich wieder (p. 138)
Aus Freude, daß er endlich da iſt (Bodenſtedt, Mirza-Schaffy).

## Der Feldbrunnen.

von E. Kuh.

26. Immer rinnet dieſe Quelle,
Niemals plaudert ihre Welle.
Komm Wandrer hier zu ruhn!
Komm,' lern' an dieſer Quelle
Stillſchweigend Gutes thun.

### 115.

droben[ō'] (see p. 456),
die Kapelle*[kă-pĕl'-lᵉ], *chapel*
drunten[ŭ'] (see p. 456),
die Wieſe, *meadow*
hell*[ĕ], *clear, bright*
der Hirtenknabe]ī'-ᵉ] (Heerde, p. 181), *shepherd's boy*
tönen,* *to sound*
niedertönen (p. 347), *to sound down*
ſchauerlich (ſchaudern, p. 126), *awful, horrid, dreadful*
der Chor[kōr] (–es), *choir* [*choir*
der Leichenchor (p. 208), *funeral*
lauſchen,* *to listen, hearken*
empor*[ĕm-pōr'] *up, upward*
emporlauſchen, *to listen to something above*
zu Grabe bringen, *to carry to the grave, to bury*
einkehren (kehren, p. 308), *to turn in, to put up (at an inn)*
die Einkehr, *putting up (at an inn)*
der Wirth (Wirthſchaft, p. 444)(–es, –e),
wundermild, *wonderfully mild* (p. 281 and 84)

zu Gaſte (p. 155) ſein (bei Einem), *to be one's guest*
das Schild (Schilderung, p. 371, (-es, -er). *sign-board, sign*
die Koſt (p. 248), *food, fare*
der Schaum,* *foam, froth, scum*
die Schwinge,* *wing,*
ſchwingen,* *to wave, to swing*
leichtbeſchwingt, *light-winged*
der Schmaus, *feast, banquet* [126)
die Matte[ä'], *mat* (Matroſe, p.
zudecken (zu, p. 350), *to cover up*
die Schuldigkeit (=die Schuld, p. 389), *debt,* here *bill*
ſchütteln,*[ï'], *to shake* [*head*
den Kopf ſchütteln, *to shake one's*
der Wipfel[ï'], *top, tree-top*
die Wurzel*[ü'], *root*

## Die Kapelle.

von L. Uhland.

Droben ſtehet die Kapelle,
Schauet ſtill in's Thal hinab,
Drunten ſingt bei Wieſ' und Quelle
Froh und hell der Hirtenknab.'

Traurig tönt das Glöcklein nieder,
Schauerlich der Leichenchor;
Stille ſind die frohen Lieder,
Und der Knabe lauſcht empor.

Droben bringt man ſie zu Grabe,
Die ſich freuten in dem Thal.
Hirtenknabe! Hirtenknabe!
Dir auch ſingt man dort einmal.

## Einkehr.

von L. Uhland.

Bei einem Wirthe wundermild,
Da war ich jüngſt zu Gaſte;
Ein goldner Apfel war ſein Schild
An einem langen Aſte.

Es war der gute Apfelbaum,
Bei dem ich eingekehret;
Mit ſüßer Koſt und friſchem Schaum
Hat er mich wohl genähret.

Es kamen in ſein grünes Haus
Viel leichtbeſchwingte Gäſte;
Sie ſprangen frei und hielten Schmaus
Und ſangen auf das Beſte.

Ich fand ein Bett zu ſüßer Ruh
Auf weichen, grünen Matten;
Der Wirth, er deckte ſelbſt mich zu
Mit ſeinem kühlen Schatten.

Nun fragt' ich nach der Schuldigkeit,
Da ſchüttelt er den Wipfel;
Geſegnet ſei er alle Zeit
Von der Wurzel bis zum Gipfel.

### 116.

verächtlich[ächt'] (verachten, p. 406), *contemptible* [*ful*
hinterliſtig[hin'-ter-liſt"], *deceit-*
verſchieben (=aufſchieben, p. 347), *to defer*
ſchrecklich (p. 421), *dreadfully*
erbärmlich[ä'] (erbarmen, p. 412), *miserably*
bewaffnen (Waffe, p. 377), *to arm*
ſchönſtens danken, *to return one's kindest thanks*
der Advocat,* *lawyer*

das Document*[dŏc'-ü-mĕnt'](-e), *document*
genau (p. 278), *minutely*
der Anführer (p. 209), *leader*
ſich beſſern, *to improve*
ſich ſtürzen,* *to rush*
fortſchreiten (p. 240), *to advance*
unglücklicher Weiſe (or unglücklicherweiſe), *unfortunately*
begegnen (with dat.), *to meet* [*tally*
zufällig (or zufälligerweiſe) *accidentally*
ſchlechterdings,* *by all means*
ärmlich, *scantily*
die Unart[ŭn'-ahrt'](-en) (see Art, artig, p. 344), *offence*
beſchäftigt ſein (beſchäftigen, p. 183), *to be engaged*
durchprügeln (p. 279), *to thrash*
derb (p. 302), *soundly* [*hurry*
ſich beeilen (p. 397), *to be in a*
geduldig (Geduld, p. 370), *patient*
der Junge (p. 389), *youth.*

1. Among all the subjects (p. 209) of the king there was scarcely (p. 294) one who lamented (p. 358) his death; so contemptible had he made himself by his weak and deceitful character. 2. You (thou) know hardly (p. 294) a single (p. 348) word of your (thy) lesson, you must learn it again at home. 3. Never defer till to-morrow what you (thou) can do to-day. 4. Some time ago our uncle visited us daily, but now we see him very seldom. 5. The ship was daily expected, when (als) the weather became dreadfully tempestuous (p. 88). 6. The peasants were most miserably armed. 7. My mother returns her kindest thanks for 'your valuable (p. 406) present. 8. His lawyer has examined (p. 201) the documents most minutely. 9. Who can run quickest? 10. The leaders knew the character (Natur) of the people right well. 11. His health improved again, but exceedingly slowly. 12. He rushes blindly into every danger. 12. We advance very slowly. 13. He was once a preacher (the article is not to be translated), but afterwards he became (a) merchant. 14. I drink coffee in the morning. 15. In the afternoon I generally read the newspaper. 16. He who (wer) believes the most easily is the most easily deceived (p. 331). 17. Be here at six the latest. 18. He is nowhere to be seen (p. 405, 7). 19. Unfortunately I do not know where he is to be found. 20. I did not find him where I sought (for) him, but afterwards met him accidentally in the street. 21. Anne must by all means have a rich husband (Mann). 22. This girl is dressed scantily, but her mother is clothed still more scantily than she. 23. A teacher asked one of his pupils: "How cold is it near the (am) North pole." "So cold"—said the boy—"that the answer freezes on my tongue (that to me the answer freezes on the tongue) when (ſo wie) I think of it (daran, p. 314, darnach)." 24. "Benjamin,"—said a father to his son one day, who had committed (p. 365) an offence,—"now I am engaged, but as soon as I have time, I will thrash thee soundly." "Don't be in a hurry (hasten you yourself not) dear father,"—said the patient youth,—"I can wait."

## LEXICOLOGY.

**Feige,** *coward, dastard,* A. S. *fæge,* timid, to withdraw for fear.

**Geſchwätz,** *prattle,* fr. ſchwatzen, *to* **tattle,** *to* **twaddle,** *to* **twattle,** Dutch, *zwetzen,* conn. with Lat. *suadere.*

**Sitte,** *custom, usual way, good manners, morals,* **ethics,** Goth. *sidus,* A. S. *sidu,* habit, custom; conn. with Gr. *ethos,* habit, customary law.

**Kapelle, chapel,** L. Lat. *capella,* a hood; *capa,* a cloak, hence lit. the *covering* over the altar; Fr. *chapelle,* old Fr. *capele.*

**hell,** *clear,* mhd. *hel,* sounding, fr. hallen, *to sound,* conn. with **halloo! howl,** etc.; orig. of sound, then transferred to light, clear, distinct.

**tönen,** *to sound,* from **Ton, tone,** Lat. *tonus,* Gr. *tonos,* a sound, prop. the sound from a *stretched* string, fr. Gr. *teino*=to stretch.

**lauſchen,** *to listen*; conn. with loſen, *listen,* A. S. *hlosnian.*

**empor,** *up, upward,* mhd. *enbor,* ahd. *in por,* mhd. *bor*=hight, hence in the hight or into the hight, upward.

**Schaum,** *foam,* **scum,** Ice. *skum* (derivation obscure).

**Schwinge, wing,** fr. **ſchwingen,** *to* **swing;** A. S. *svingan,* to sway or wave to and fro.

**ſchütteln,** *to shake,* ahd. *scutjan,* mhd. *schutten,* Old Saxon *scuddian,* A. S. *scudan,* to move tremblingly, to run, hasten away; thus Engl. to **scud,** to run quickly (from a ship); Dutch, *schudden,* to shake; Sw. *skutta,* to run quickly. Of the same root, to **shed,** Germ. **ſchütten,** *to pour.*

**Wurzel** (prop. Wurz-el), *root,* **wort,** A. S. *wirt, wart*; Goth. *vaurts,* a root; Tab. V. 8.

**Advocat,** *lawyer,* **advocate,** fr. Lat. *advocatus, ad*—to, *voco—vocatus,* to call, hence one *called* on *to* aid in a suit.

**Document, document,** fr. Lat. *documentum*=something taught, fr. *doceo,* to teach.

**ſtürzen,** *to rush, to move suddenly,* of the same root are: *to* **start,** *to* **startle,** and *to* **stir.**

**ſchlechterdings,** *by all means,* originated from ſchlechter Dinge and ſchlecht, here in the original meaning=ſchlicht, **sleek,** *plain, smooth* (see p. 121).

## CONVERSATION.—Of the Age.

| | |
|---|---|
| Wie alt ſind Sie? | *How old are you?* |
| In welchem Alter ſtehen Sie? | *What is your age?* |
| Wie alt iſt Ihre Frau Mutter? | *How old is your mother?* |
| Sie iſt älter, als Sie glauben. | *She is older than you think.* |
| Wie alt iſt wohl Ihre Tochter? | *How old may your daughter be?* |
| Sie iſt erſt fünfzehn Jahre alt. | *She is but fifteen years old.* |
| Meine Tochter iſt noch nicht ſechzehn. | *My daughter is not yet sixteen.* |

Ich bin von Ihrem Alter. *I am of your age.*
Sind Sie ſo alt? *Are you so old?*
Sie ſehen nicht ſo alt aus. *You do not look so old.*
**Bald** bin ich vierzehn. *I am* **near** *fourteen.*
Sie ſehen älter aus. *You look older.*
Für wie alt halten Sie mich wohl? *How old would you take me to be?*
Er iſt ein Mann **von etlichen** [ĕt'-lĭ-yen] (etlicher, –e, –es, plur. etliche, *some, several*) **ſechzig Jahren.** *He is a man* **of sixty and upwards.**
Er iſt wenigſtens fünfzig. *He is at least fifty years old.*
Es iſt ein **hohes Alter.** *It is a* **great age.**
Mein Bruder iſt noch nicht **volljährig.** *My brother is not yet* **of age.**
Er wird nächſtes Jahr volljährig. *He will be of age next year.*
Meine Schweſter **geht** gerade **ins dreizehnte Jahr.** *My sister has just* **entered into her teens.**
Sie iſt groß für ihr Alter. *She is tall for (of) her age.*
Dieſe Dame iſt in **ihren beſten Jahren.** *This lady is in* **the prime of life.**
Sie iſt ein Frauenzimmer (p. 142) **von mittleren Jahren.** *She is a woman* **of middle age.**
Er fängt an (p. 241, anfangen) **zu altern.** *He begins to* **grow old.**
Er hat ein ſehr **hohes Alter erreicht** (erreichen, p. 240). *He has* **lived to a great age.**
Er ſcheint ſehr **gealtert.** *He appears very* **aged.**
Er fängt an, alt zu werden. *He begins* **to get in years.**
Ziemlich (p. 238) **bejahrt.** **Well stricken in years.**

## WORDS AND PHRASES FOR CONVERSATION.

Das ſchöne Geſchlecht (p. 326), *the fair sex*
ein kleines Kind, *a baby*
das Kindesalter, *childhood (infancy)*
das Knabenalter, *boyhood*
ein Junge, *a lad*
ein Jüngling [yĭng'-lĭng], *a youth*
ein Junggeſell*(–en)
ein Hageſtolz* [hah'-gᵉ-stölts"] } *a bachelor*
eine alte Jungfer* [yŭng'-fᵉr], *an old maid (spinster)*
die Mannbarkeit, *puberty*
die Vernunft* [fᵉr-nünft'], *reason*
die Jahre des Verſtandes (or der Vernunft) *the years of discretion*
die Jünglingsjahre, *the years of adolescence*
das reife (p. 126) Alter, *the age of maturity*
kindiſch werden, *to become childish*
**ein hohes Alter erreichen, to live to a great age.**
Sein Großvater **iſt noch am Leben,** *his grandfather is still living*
**Wie hoch ſchätzen Sie ſein Alter?** *How old do you think he is?*

ein Greis*(–es, –e), *an old man*
das Greiſenalter, *old age* [*age*
die Mündigkeit[mün'-dig-kit"], *full*
mündig,* *of age, of full age*
ein Unmündiger, *a minor*
unmündig,* *under age, minor, non-aged*
Unmündigkeit, *non-age (minority)*
volljährig, *of age, of full age*
minderjährig (p. 253), *under age, minor*
altern, *to grow old*
gealtert[ge-äl'-tert], *aged*
**an Jahren zunehmen** [ü'-ä"-e], **to get in years**
er iſt **hoch bei Jahren**, *he is* **of great age**
**ziemlich bei** Jahren, **stricken in** *years*
in den beſten Jahren, *in the prime of life*
in der Blüthe der Jahre, *in the bloom of life*
ein Wittwer (p. 344), *a widower.*

**117.**

verirren (p. 395), *to go astray*
an'treffen (p. 299), *to meet with*
die Waſſergrube (p. 233), *cistern*
die Traurigkeit (p. 133), *sadness*
ledern[ä'-e], *leathern*
an'fühlen (p. 198), *to feel, touch*
die Dattel[ä'-e] (–n), *date*
erquicken*[e-i'-e], *to refresh*

## Der hungrige Araber.

Ein Araber war verirrt in der Wüſte. Zwei Tage hatte er nichts zu eſſen und war in Gefahr vor Hunger zu ſterben. Endlich traf er eine von den Waſſergruben an, aus denen die Araber ihre Kameele tränken und ſah auf dem Sand einen kleinen ledernen Sack liegen. „Gott ſei gelobt!" ſagte er, als er ihn aufhob und anfühlte, „das ſind, glaube ich, Datteln; wie will ich mich an ihnen erquicken und laben!"—In dieſer ſüßen Hoffnung öffnete er den Sack, ſah, was er enthielt, und rief voll Traurigkeit aus:—„Ach, es ſind nur Perlen."

### LEXICOLOGY.

**Jungfer,** a corruption of Jungfrau, bestowed on *maid-servants* and the like, while Fräulein (p. 421), is a title given to young *ladies.*

**Hageſtolz,** *bachelor*, c. of Hag, now poetical for **Hecke, hedge,** *fence*, and ſtolz for *stalt*; mhd. *hagestalt*, Goth. *staldan*, to possess, hence orig. an unmarried man settled on a place hedged in or enclosed.

**Junggeſell,** c. of jung (p. 84) and Geſell=Ge-ſell; ahd. *gisalljo—selljo*; related with **Saal,** *saloon*, Fr. *sal*on, fr. ahd. *sal*=house, or large room in it, hence Geſell, a person who lives with others in the same room, then associate, companion; comp. Kamerad, p. 254.

**Greis,** *an old*, prop. **gray** *man*, **grizzled.**

**mündig,** *of age*, fr. die Mund=protection (see p. 296); hence mündig=being in the age of (self) protection.

**erquicken,** *to refresh*; fr. ahd. *quec*, qued. *living*; comp. Queckſilber (p. 84, and in Engl. **quicken**).

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indicative, First and Second Person.* | *Imperfect Indicative.* | *Imperfect Subjunctive.* | *Imperative.* | *Past Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| backen, *to bake* | backſt (bäckſt), backt (bäckt) | buck (backte) | bücke (backte) | backe | gebacken |
| bedürfen, *to need* | vgl. dürfen | — | — | — | — |
| befehlen, *to command* | befiehlſt, befiehlt | befahl | beföhle | befiehl | befohlen |
| befleißen (ſich), *to apply one's self* | befleißeſt, befleißt | befliß | befliſſe | befleiße | befliſſen |
| beginnen, *to begin* | beginnſt, beginnt | begann | (begänne), begönne | beginne | begonnen |
| beißen, *to bite* | beißeſt, beißt | biß | biſſe | beiße | gebiſſen |
| beklemmen, *to press* | beklemmſt, beklemmt | beklemmte | beklemmte | — | beklommen |
| bergen, *to conceal* | birgſt, birgt | barg | bärge, bürge | birg | geborgen |
| berſten, *to burst* | berſteſt, berſtet / birſteſt, birſt | borſt / barſt } berſtete | börſte / bärſte } berſtete | berſte / birſt | geborſten |
| bewegen,[1] *to induce* | bewegſt, bewegt | bewog | bewöge | bewege | bewogen |
| biegen, *to bend* | biegſt, biegt | bog | böge | biege | gebogen |
| bieten, *to bid* | bieteſt, bietet | bot | böte | biete | geboten |
| | beutst, beut | | | beut | |
| binden, *to bind* | bindeſt, bindet | band | bände | binde | gebunden |
| bitten, *to beg* | bitteſt, bittet | bat | bäte | bitten | gebeten |
| blaſen, *to blow* | bläſeſt, bläſt | blies | bliſe | blaſe | geblaſen |
| bleiben, *to remain* | bleibſt, bleibt | blieb | bliebe | bleibe | geblieben |
| bleichen,[2] *to lose color* | bleichſt, bleicht | blich | bliche | bleiche | geblichen |
| braten,[3] *to roast* | brätſt, brät | briet | briete | brate | gebraten |
| brechen, *to break* | brichſt, bricht | brach | bräche | brich | gebrochen |
| brennen, *to burn* | brennſt, brennt | brannte | brennte | brenne | gebrannt |
| bringen, *to bring* | bringſt, bringt | brachte | brächte | bringe | gebracht |
| denken, *to think* | denkſt, denkt | dachte | dächte | denke | gedacht |
| dingen, *to bargain, hire* | dingſt, dingt | (dang) dung* | dünge | dinge | gedungen |

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS AND ALL THEIR FORMS.—CONTINUED.

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indicative, First and Second Person.* | *Imperfect Indicative.* | *Imperfect Subjunctive.* | *Imperative.* | *Past Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| dreſchen, *to thrash* | driſcheſt, driſcht | draſch,* droſch | dräſche, dröſche | driſch | gedroſchen |
| dringen, *to urge* | dringſt, dringt | drang | dränge | dringe | gedrungen |
| dünken, *to seem, to think* | dünkſt, dünkt | deuchte* | deuchte* | dünke | gedeucht |
| dürfen, *to be allowed* | ich darf, du darfſt, etc. | durfte | dürfte | — | gedurft |
| empfehlen, *to recommend* | empfiehlſt, empfiehlt | empfahl | empföhle | empfiehl | empfohlen |
| erkieſen } *to choose* | erkieſeſt, erkieſet | erkor | erköre | erkieſe | erkoren |
| erküren } | | | | | |
| erlöſchen[a] *to become extinct* | erliſcheſt, erliſcht | erloſch | erlöſche | erliſch | erloſchen |
| erſchaffen, *to create* | erſchaffſt, erſchafft | erſchuf | erſchüfe | erſchaffe | erſchaffen |
| erſchallen,* *to sound* | erſchallſt, erſchallt | erſcholl* | erſchölle | erſchalle | erſchollen* |
| erſchrecken,[b] *to be frightened* | erſchrickſt, erſchrickt | erſchrak | erſchräcke | erſchrick | erſchrocken |
| erwägen, *to consider* | erwägſt, erwägt | erwog* | erwöge | erwäge | erwogen |
| eſſen, *to eat* [*vehicle* | iſſeſt, ißt | aß | äße | ß | gegeſſen |
| fahren,[1] *to drive, to go in a* | fährſt, fährt | fuhr | führe | fahre | gefahren |
| fallen, *to fall* | fällſt, fällt | fiel | fiele | falle | gefallen |
| fangen, *to catch* | fängſt, fängt | fieng | fienge | fange, fang | gefangen |
| fechten, *to fight* | fichtſt, ficht | focht | föchte | ficht | gefochten |
| finden, *to find* | findeſt, findet | fand | fände | finde | gefunden |
| flechten, *to twist* | flichtſt,* flicht* | flocht | flöchte | flicht | geflochten |
| fliegen, *to fly* | fliegſt, fliegt | flog | flöge | fliege | geflogen |
| | fleuchſt, fleucht | | | fleuch | |
| fliehen, *to flee* | fliehſt, flieht | floh | flöhe | fliehe | geflohen |
| fließen, *to flow* | fließeſt, fließt | floß | flöſſe | fließe | gefloſſen |
| freſſen, *to devour, eat* | friſſeſt, frißt | fraß | fräße | friß | gefreſſen |
| frieren, *to freeze* | frierſt, friert | fror | fröre | friere | gefroren |
| gähren, *to ferment* | gährſt, gährt | gohr* | göhre* | gähre | gegohren |
| gebären, *to bring forth* | } gebierſt, gebiert<br>} gebärſt, gebärt | gebar | gebäre | } gebier<br>} gebäre | geboren |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| geben, *to give* | gibſt, gibt | gab | gäbe | gib | gegeben |
| gebieten, *to command* | see above bieten | | | | |
| gedeihen, *to thrive, prosper* | gedeihſt, gedeiht | gedieh | gediehe | gedeihe | gediehen |
| gehen, *to go* | gehſt, geht | gieng | gienge | gehe, geh | gegangen |
| gelingen, *to succeed* (impers.) | gelingſt, gelingt | gelang | gelänge | gelinge | gelungen |
| gelten, *to be worth* | giltſt, gilt | galt | gölte, gälte | gilt | gegolten |
| genesen, *to recover* | geneſeſt, geneſet | genas (geneſete) | genäſe | geneſe | geneſen |
| genießen, *to enjoy* | genießeſt, genießt | genoß | genöſſe | genieße | genoſſen |
| | geneussest, geneust | | | geneuss | |
| geſchehen, *to happen* (impers.) | geſchiehſt, geſchieht | geſchah | geſchähe | — | geſchehen |
| gewinnen, *to gain, win* | gewinnſt, gewinnt | gewann | gewänne (ö) | gewinne | gewonnen |
| gießen, *to pour* | gießeſt, gießt | goß | göſſe | gieße | gegoſſen, |
| gleichen, *to be alike, resemble* | gleichſt, gleicht | glich | gliche | gleiche | geglichen |
| gleiten, *to slide* | gleiteſt, gleitet | glitt | glitte | gleite | geglitten |
| glimmen, *to shine faintly* | glimmſt, glimmt | glomm* | glömme* | glimme | geglommen* |
| graben, *to dig* | gräbſt, gräbt | grub | grübe | grabe | gegraben |
| greifen, *to seize* | greifſt, greift | griff | griffe | greife, greif | gegriffen |
| halten, *to hold* | hältſt, hält | hielt | hielte | halte, halt | gehalten |
| hangen,[a] *to hang* | hängſt, hängt | hieng | hienge | hange | gehangen |
| hauen, *to hew* | hauſt, haut | hieb | hiebe | haue | gehauen |
| heben, *to lift* | hebſt, hebt | hob, hub, huben | höbe, hübe | hebe | gehoben |
| heißen, *to be called* | heißeſt, heißt | hieß | hieße | heiß | geheißen |
| helfen, *to help* | hilfſt, hilft | half | hälfe, hülfe | hilf | geholfen |
| kennen, *to know* | kennſt, kennt | kannte | kennte | kenne | gekannt |
| kieſen, *to chose* | kieſeſt, kieſt | kor | köre | — | erkoren |
| klimmen, *to climb* | klimmſt, klimmt | klomm* | klömme* | klimme | geklommen |
| klingen, *to sound* | klingſt, klingt | klang | klänge | klinge | geklungen |
| kneifen, *to pinch* | kneifſt, kneift | kniff* | kniffe* | kneife | gekniffen |
| keifen, *to scold* | like kneifen | | | | |
| kommen, *to come* | kömmſt, kömmt / kommſt, kommt | kam | käme | komm | gekommen |
| können, *to be able, can* | ich kann, du kannſt | konnte | könnte | — | gekonnt |
| kriechen, *to creep* | kriechſt, kriecht, kreucht | kroch | kröche | krieche | gekrochen |

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indicative, First and Second Person.* | *Imperfect Indicative.* | *Imperfect Subjunctive.* | *Imperative.* | *Past Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| laden, *to load* | ladeſt (lädſt), ladet (lädt) | lud[9] | lüde | lade | geladen |
| laſſen, *to let* | läſſeſt, läßt | ließ | ließe | laß | gelaſſen |
| laufen, *to run* | läufſt, läuft | lief | liefe | lauf | gelaufen |
| leiden,[10] *to suffer* | leideſt, leidet | litt | litte | leide | gelitten |
| leihen, *to lend* | leihſt, leiht | lieh | liehe | leihe | geliehen |
| leſen, *to read* | lieſeſt, lieſt | las | läſe | lies | geleſen |
| liegen, *to lie, to be situated* | liegſt, liegt | lag | läge | liege | gelegen |
| lügen, *to lie, utter a falsehood* | lügſt, lügt (leugt) | log | löge | lüge | gelogen |
| mahlen, *to grind* | mahlſt, mahlt | mahlte | mahlte | mahle | gemahlen[11] |
| meiden, *to avoid* | meideſt, meidet | mied | miede | meide | gemieden |
| melken, *to milk* | melkſt, melkt | molk, melkte | mölke, melkte | melke | gemolken |
| meſſen, *to measure* | miſſeſt, mißt | maß | mäße | miß | gemeſſen |
| mögen, *to be allowed* | ich mag, du magſt, etc. | mochte | möchte | — | gemocht |
| müſſen, *to be obliged* | ich muß, du mußt, etc. | mußte | müßte | — | gemußt |
| nehmen, *to take* | nimmſt, nimmt | nahm | nähme | nimm | genommen |
| nennen, *to name* | nennſt, nennt | nannte | nennte | nenne | genannt |
| pfeifen, *to whistle* | pfeifſt, pfeift | pfiff | pfiffe | pfeife | gepfiffen |
| pflegen,[12] *to foster* | pflegſt, pflegt | pflog | pflöge | pflege | gepflogen |
| preiſen,[13] *to extol* | preiſeſt, preiſt | pries | prieſe | preiſe | geprieſen |
| quellen,[14] *to spring forth* | quillſt, quillt | quoll | quölle | quill | gequollen |
| rächen, *to revenge* | — | — | — | — | gerochen[15] |
| rathen, *to advise* | räthſt, räth | rieth | riethe | rathe | gerathen |
| reiben, *to rub* | reibſt, reibt | rieb | riebe | reibe | gerieben |
| reißen, *to tear* | reißeſt, reißt | riß | riſſe | reiße | geriſſen |
| reiten, *to ride* | reiteſt, reitet | ritt | ritte | reite | geritten |
| rennen, *to run* | rennſt, rennt | rannte | rennte | renne | gerannt |
| riechen, *to smell* | riechſt, riecht | roch | röche | rieche | gerochen |
| ringen, *to wrestle* | ringſt, ringt | rang | ränge | ringe | gerungen |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| rinnen, *to coagulate* | rinnſt, rinnt | rann | ränne | rinne | geronnen |
| rufen, *to call* | rufſt, ruft | rief | riefe | rufe | gerufen |
| ſalzen, *to salt* | ſalzeſt, ſalzt | ſalzte | ſalzte | ſalze | geſalzen |
| ſaufen, *to drink like brutes* | ſäufſt, ſäuft | ſoff | ſöffe | ſaufe | geſoffen |
| ſaugen, *to suck* | ſaugſt, ſaugt | ſog | ſöge | ſauge | geſogen |
| ſchaffen,[16] *to create* | ſchaffſt, ſchafft | ſchuf | ſchüfe | ſchaffe | geſchaffen |
| ſchallen,[17] *to sound* | ſchallſt, ſchallt | ſcholl | ſchölle | ſchalle | geſchollen |
| ſcheiden, *to separate* | ſcheideſt, ſcheidet | ſchied | ſchiede | ſcheide | geſchieden |
| ſcheinen, *to appear* | ſcheinſt, ſcheint | ſchien | ſchiene | ſcheine | geſchienen |
| ſchelten, *to scold* | ſchiltſt, ſchilt | ſchalt | ſchölte | ſchilt | geſcholten |
| ſcheren,[18] *to shear* | ſcherſt, ſchert | ſchor | ſchöre | ſchere | geſchoren |
| ſchieben, *to shove* | ſchiebſt, ſchiebt | ſchob | ſchöbe | ſchiebe | geſchoben |
| ſchießen, *to shoot* | ſchießeſt, ſchießt | ſchoß | ſchöſſe | ſchieße | geſchoſſen |
| ſchinden, *to flay* | ſchindeſt, ſchindet | ſchund* | ſchünde* | ſchinde | geſchunden |
| ſchlafen, *to sleep* | ſchläfſt, ſchläft | ſchliefe | ſchliefe | ſchlafe | geſchlafen |
| ſchlagen,[19] *to beat* | ſchlägſt, ſchlägt | ſchlug | ſchlüge | ſchlage | geſchlagen |
| ſchleichen, *to sneak* | ſchleichſt, ſchleicht | ſchlich | ſchliche | ſchleiche | geſchlichen |
| ſchleifen,[20] *to grind* | ſchleifſt, ſchleift | ſchliff | ſchliffe | ſchleife | geſchliffen |
| ſchleißen, *to slit* | ſchleißeſt, ſchleißt | ſchliß | ſchliſſe | ſchleiße | geſchliſſen |
| ſchließen, *to shut* | ſchließeſt, ſchließt | ſchloß | ſchlöſſe | ſchließe | geſchloſſen |
| ſchlingen, *to twine* | ſchlingſt, ſchlingt | ſchlang | ſchlänge | ſchlinge | geſchlungen |
| ſchmeißen, *to fling* | ſchmeißeſt, ſchmeißt | ſchmiß | ſchmiſſe | ſchmeiß | geſchmiſſen |
| ſchmelzen,[21] *to melt* | ſchmilzeſt, ſchmilzt | ſchmolz | ſchmölze | ſchmilz | geſchmolzen |
| ſchnauben,[22] *to snort* | ſchnaubſt, ſchnaubt | ſchnob | ſchnöbe | ſchnaube | geſchnoben |
| ſchneiden, *to cut* | ſchneideſt, ſchneidet | ſchnitt | ſchnitte | ſchneide | geſchnitten |
| ſchrauben, *to screw* | ſchraubſt, ſchraubt | ſchrob* | ſchröbe* | ſchraube | geſchroben* |
| ſchrecken, *to frighten* | ſchreckſt, ſchreckt | ſchrak* | ſchräke* | ſchrick* | geſchrocken* |
| ſchreiben, *to write* | ſchreibſt, ſchreibt | ſchrieb | ſchriebe | ſchreib | geſchrieben |
| ſchreien, *to cry* | ſchreiſt, ſchreit | ſchrie | ſchriee | ſchreie | geſchrieen |
| ſchreiten, *to stride* | ſchreiteſt, ſchreitet | ſchritt | ſchritte | ſchreite | geſchritten |
| ſchroten, *to rough-grind* | ſchroteſt, ſchrotet | ſchrotete | ſchrotete | ſchrote | geſchroten |
| ſchwären, *to fester* | ſchwärſt, ſchwärt | ſchwor | ſchwöre | ſchwäre | geſchworen |
| ſchweigen, *to be silent* | ſchweigſt, ſchweigt | ſchwieg | ſchwiege | ſchweige | geſchwiegen |
| ſchwellen,[23] *to swell* | ſchwillſt, ſchwillt | ſchwoll | ſchwölle | ſchwill | geſchwollen |

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indicative, First and Second Person.* | *Imperfect Indicative.* | *Imperfect Subjunctive.* | *Imperative.* | *Past Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ſchwimmen, *to swim* | ſchwimmſt, ſchwimmt | ſchwamm | ſchwämme, ſchwömme | ſchwimm | geſchwommen |
| ſchwinden, *to vanish* | ſchwindeſt, ſchwindet | ſchwand | ſchwände | ſchwinde | geſchwunden |
| ſchwingen, *to swing* | ſchwingſt, ſchwingt | ſchwang | ſchwänge | ſchwinge | geſchwungen |
| ſchwören, *to swear* | ſchwörſt, ſchwört | ſchwur, ſchwor | ſchwüre, ſchwöre | ſchwöre | geſchworen |
| ſehen, *to see* | ſiehſt, ſieht | ſah | ſähe | ſieh, ſiehe | geſehen |
| ſein, *to be* | see above p. 123 | | | | |
| ſenden, *to send* | ſendeſt, ſendet | ſandte* | ſendete | ſende | geſandt* |
| ſieden, *to boil* | ſiedeſt, ſiedet | ſott | ſötte | ſiede | geſotten |
| ſingen, *to sing* | ſingſt, ſingt | ſang, sungen | ſänge | ſinge | geſungen |
| ſinken, *to sink* | ſinkſt, ſinkt | ſank | ſänke | ſinke | geſunken |
| ſinnen, *to meditate* | ſinnſt, ſinnt | ſann | ſänne, ſönne | ſinne | geſonnen |
| ſitzen, *to sit* | ſitzeſt, ſitzt | ſaß | ſäße | ſitze | geſeſſen |
| ſollen, *shall, to be obliged* | ich ſoll, du ſollſt, etc. | ſollte | ſollte | — | geſollt |
| ſpalten, *to split* | ſpalteſt, ſpaltet | ſpaltete | ſpaltete | ſpalte | geſpalten |
| ſpeien, *to spit* | ſpeieſt, ſpeit | ſpie | ſpiee | ſpei | geſpieen |
| ſpinnen, *to spin* | ſpinnſt, ſpinnt | ſpann | ſpänne, ſpönne | ſpinne | geſponnen |
| ſpleißen, *to split, to cleave* | — | ſpliß | ſpliſſe | — | geſpliſſen |
| ſprechen, *to speak* | ſprichſt, ſpricht | ſprach | ſpräche | ſprich | geſprochen |
| ſprießen, *to sprout* | ſprießeſt, ſprießt | ſproß | ſpröſſe | ſprieße | geſproſſen |
| ſpringen, *to spring* | ſpringſt, ſpringt | ſprang | ſpränge | ſpring (e) | geſprungen |
| ſtechen, *to sting* | ſtichſt, ſticht | ſtach | ſtäche | ſtich | geſtochen |
| ſtehen, *to stand* | ſtehſt, ſteht | ſtand[24] | ſtände[24] | ſteh, ſtehe | geſtanden |
| ſtehlen, *to steal* | ſtiehlſt, ſtiehlt | ſtahl | ſtähle, ſtöhle | ſtiehl | geſtohlen |
| ſteigen, *to mount* | ſteigſt, ſteigt | ſtieg | ſtiege | ſteige | geſtiegen |
| ſterben, *to die* | ſtirbſt, ſtirbt | ſtarb | ſtürbe | ſtirb | geſtorben |
| ſtauben / ſtieben, *to fly like dust* | ſtäubſt, ſtäubt / ſtiebſt, ſtiebt | ſtob | ſtöbe | ſteub / ſtiebe | geſtoben |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ſtinken, *to stink* | ſtinkſt, ſtinkt | ſtank | ſtänke | ſtinke | geſtunken |
| ſtoßen, *to push* | ſtößeſt, ſtößt | ſtieß | ſtieße | ſtoße | geſtoßen |
| ſtreichen, *to stroke* | ſtreichſt, ſtreicht | ſtrich | ſtriche | ſtreiche | geſtrichen |
| ſtreiten, *to contend* | ſtreiteſt, ſtreitet | ſtritt | ſtritte | ſtreite | geſtritten |
| thun, *to do* | ich thue, du thuſt, er thut | that | thäte | thue | gethan |
| tragen, *to carry* | trägſt, trägt | trug | trüge | trage | getragen |
| treffen, *to hit* | triffſt, trifft | traf | träfe | triff | getroffen |
| treiben, *to drive* | treibſt, treibt | trieb | triebe | treibe | getrieben |
| treten, *to tread* | trittſt, tritt | trat | träte | tritt | getreten |
| triefen, *to drop* | triefſt, trieft<br>treufſt, treuft | troff, triefte | tröffe* | triefe | getroffen* |
| triegen } *to deceive*<br>trügen } | } triegſt, triegt<br>} trügſt, trügt | trog | tröge | } triege<br>} trüge | getrogen |
| trinken, *to drink* | trinkſt, trinkt | trank | tränke | trinke | getrunken |
| verderben,[25] *to be spoiled* | verdirbſt, verdirbt | verdarb | verdürbe | verdirb | verdorben |
| verdrießen, *to vex* | verdrießeſt, verdrießt | verdroß | verdrüſſe | verdrieße | verdroſſen |
| vergeſſen, *to forget* | vergiſſeſt, vergißt | vergaß | vergäße | vergiß | vergeſſen |
| verhehlen* *to hide, conceal* | | verhehlte | verhehlte | verhehle | verhehlt, verhohlen |
| verlieren, *to lose* | verlierſt, verliert | verlor | verlöre | verliere | verloren |
| wachſen, *to grow* | wächſeſt, wächſt | wuchs | wüchſe | wachſe | gewachſen |
| waſchen, *to wash* | wäſcheſt, wäſcht | wuſch | wüſche | waſche | gewaſchen |
| wägen, *to weigh* | wägſt, wägt | wog* | wöge* | wäge | gewogen |
| weben, *to weave* | webſt, webt | wob* | wöbe* | webe | gewoben* |
| weichen, *to yield* | weichſt, weicht | wich | wiche | weiche | gewichen |
| weiſen, *to show* | weiſeſt, weiſt | wies | wieſe | weiſe | gewieſen |
| wenden, *to turn* | wendeſt, wendet | wandte* | wendete | wende | gewandt* |
| werben, *to sue* | wirbſt, wirbt | warb | würbe | wirb | geworben |
| werden, *to become* | ſiehe, see p. 131 | | | | |
| werfen, *to throw* | wirfſt, wirft | warf | würfe | wirf | geworfen |
| wiegen,[26] *to weigh* | wiegſt, wiegt | wog | wöge | wiege | gewogen |
| winden, *to wind* | windeſt, windet | wand | wände | winde | gewunden |
| wiſſen, *to know* | ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, etc. | wußte | wüßte | wiſſe | gewußt |

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS AND ALL THEIR FORMS.—CONTINUED.

| *Infinitive.* | *Present Indicative, First and Second Person.* | *Imperfect Indicative.* | *Imperfect Subjunctive.* | *Imperative.* | *Past Participle.* |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wollen, *to will, wish* | ich will, du willſt, etc. | wollte | wollte | wolle | gewollt |
| zeihen, *to accuse* | zeihſt, zeiht | zieh* | ziehe* | zeihe | geziehen |
| ziehen, *to draw* | ziehſt, zieht<br>zeuchst, zeucht | zog | zöge | zieh<br>zeuch | gezogen |
| zwingen, *to compel* | zwingſt, zwingt | zwang | zwänge | zwinge | gezwungen. |

*This list comprises only the Simple Verbs and Compounds whose radical words are either not in use or conjugated otherwise. Those forms which according to modern usage are also weak, are given or denoted by *. Those in English type are used by poets.

1. bewegen, when it means *to move*, is regular.
2. bleichen, when it means *to bleach* or *to whiten*, is regular.
3. braten can be used regularly as a transitive; the participle, however, is always gebraten.
4. löſchen and auslöſchen, *to extinguish*, are regular.
5. erſchrecken as transitive—to frighten, terrify, is regular.
6. gegeſſen for geeſſen (p. 297).
7. The compound willfahren, *to yield, to comply with*, is regular.
8. The transitive hängen—aufhängen (p. 277), *to hang, to hang up*, is regular, sometimes, however, its imperfect is hieng.
9. laden—einladen, *to invite*, has in imperfect ladete, but also strong lud.
10. verleiden, *to give one a disgust for, a sickening of*, is regular.
11. malen, *to paint*, is regular.
12. pflegen, is strong only in the phrases Rath pflegen, *to consult with*, Umgang pflegen, *to have intercourse with*, otherwise reg.
13. lobpreiſen, *to praise, to give glory to*, is regular.
14. quellen as intransitive, strong, as transitive, to cause, to swell, to soak, is regular.
15. And gerächt.
16. ſchaffen—erſchaffen, *to create*, is strong, otherwise regular.
17. ſchallen, now mostly regular.
18. beſcheren, *to give* (p. 302, 311), is regular.
19. rathſchlagen, *to consult with, to deliberate*, is regular.
20. ſchleifen, *to grind* (p. 306), is strong, otherwise regular.
21. ſchmelzen, *to melt*, as intransitive strong, as transitive regular.
22. Now mostly regular.
23. The transitive ſchwellen, *to cause to swell*, as die Segel, *the sails*, is reg.
24. More correct ſtund, ſtünde.
25. verderben, as transitive, *to spoil, to cause to decay* and *perish* is regular.
26. wiegen, *to be heavy*, is strong, otherwise reg.

## QUESTIONS AND EXERCISES FOR REVIEW.

1. Give the 3d pers. sing. of the pluperfect indicative of the following verbs: fliegen, eſſen, gedeihen, gehen, pfeifen, backen, gelten, nehmen, riechen, ſterben, weichen, zwingen, ſpinnen, ſchweigen, ſaugen, meſſen, pflegen, rinnen, ſaufen, dreſchen, heißen, lügen, liegen, rufen, gähren, finden, bergen, ſitzen, wenden, waſchen, verdrießen, ſchreiben, laden, rathen, graben, hangen, laſſen.

2. Give the past participles of the same verbs.

3. Give the third pers. sing. of the imperf. indic. of the same verbs.

4. Form the 3d pers. sing. of the imperf. subj. of the following verbs: backen, betrügen, dürfen, mögen, befehlen, braten, gehen, finden, müſſen, nehmen, wiegen, ziehen, wenden, ſenden, ſchelten, kriechen, gleiten, empfehlen, bringen, fahren, freſſen, melken, reißen.

5. Form the 2d and 3d pers. sing. and the 2d pers. plur. of the present indic. and subj. of the following verbs: bewegen, blaſen, ſitzen, dürfen, backen, dreſchen, fangen, empfehlen, ſprechen, ſaufen, erſchrecken, eſſen, geben, rathen, geſchehen, laſſen, meſſen, mögen, müſſen, quellen, ſehen, ſtehen, ſtehlen, wiſſen, fangen, halten, helfen, können, leſen, freſſen, hangen, laden, rennen.

6. Translate: 1. We met (begegnen) one another this morning. 2. Children, you (2d plur.) must not hate one another. 3. Friends, we shall see one another in Berlin again (to see again, wiederſehen). 4. Charles has blue paper, and Henry has white (paper). 5. The boys to whom these books belong, are very diligent. 6. We shall have fine weather to-morrow. 7. His brother amassed (to amass, an'häufen) a large fortune (Vermögen). 8. He has not been able (können) to do it. 9. I have heard him speak. 10. Value (ſchätzen) the friendship of those who sometimes blame you.

7. 1. We saw the boat sink. 2. The father himself taught his children drawing (to draw, zeichnen) and painting. 3. She whose husband has lost all his property, has left this place. 4. With what can I console (tröſten) 'you? 5. Whose works do 'you read? 6. Schiller and Goethe whose works I read, were really (wirklich) great poets.

8. 1. His conduct (Betragen) is to be praised. 2. Her laziness (Faulheit) is much to be blamed. 3. He laid the boy on the bed. 4. He laid him on it (the bed). 5. Lay my staff (der Stab) upon the child.

9. 1. The fisherman took us over (ü'berſetzen). 2. I did not translate this sentence. 3. I endeavored to avoid (vermeiden) those mistakes. 4. We have made a mistake (ſich irren). 5. You make a mistake very often. 6. Have you enjoyed yourselves at (auf) the ball? 7. Mr. Schmidt, have 'you already accustomed yourself (ſich gewöhnen) to (an) the fashions (Sitten) of this country? 8. He was glad (impers.) to see me. 9. They are very sorry (leid thun) to have offended your brother. 10. Charles writes best of all. 11. We thank'you most heartily. 12. We have not seen 'your brother to-day. 13. I received this letter already in the morning. 14. Out of what are tables (Tiſche) made? 15. The weather is to-day milder than it was yesterday. 16. I praised my friend, because he deserved it. 17. With what can I serve 'you? 18. In what have I done wrong (to do wrong, fehlen). 19. From whom have 'you received this present? 20. Of (auf) what is she so proud? 21. Two-thirds are wanting. 22. It is a quarter past one. 23. No time is to be lost. 24. I cannot go out, until I have finished my day's work (Tagewerk).

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF WORDS OCCURRING IN THIS LETTER.

### GERMAN-ENGLISH.

Abdanken, 451
abkehren, 450
Advocat, 462
das reife Alter, [465
altern, 466
anfühlen, 466
Anführer, 463
antreffen, 466
ärmlich, 463
aufgeben, 451

sich beeilen, 466
begegnen, 463
bejahrt, 465
Belohnung, 451
bergauf, 459
beschäftigt sein, [463
Besitzung, 451
sich bessern, 463
Beutel, 460
bewaffnen, 462
bisher, 457
bisweilen, 457
bleich, 450
blindlings, 458
Brittannien, 451
Brod, 453
Brut, 453
brüten, 453

Consul, 451
Chor, 461

Dattel, 466
derb, 463
dermaßen, 458
Document, 463
draußen, 456
drinnen, 456
droben, 456
drüben, 460
drunten, 456
durchprügeln, [463
ehedem, 457
ehestens, 459
einerseits, 459
Einfall, 451
Einkehr, 461
einkehren, 450
Elster, 460
empor, 461
emporlauschen, [461
enthaupten, 451
erbärmlich, 462
erblicken, 451
erfahren, 460
ernennen, 451
ernstlich, 458
erquicken, 466
errichten, 451
Erwerbung, 451

fabricieren, 451
feig, 460 [460
Feldbrunnen, sich finden, 460
flehentlich, 459
fort, 457
fortschreiten, 463
freien, 460
freilich, 458
fürwahr, 459

zu Gaste sein 462
geduldig, 463
Gegentheil, 451
im Gegentheil, [451
genau, 463
geneigt sein, 451
das schöne Geschlecht, 465
Geschwätz, 460
Gesell, 466
zu Grabe bringen, 461
Greis, 466
Greisenalter 466
großentheils 459

Hag, 466
Hagestolz, 465
hallen, 464
halten für, 451
heben, 450
Hecke, 466
hell, 461
hinauf, 456
hinaus, 456
hinein, 456
hineintreten, 450
hinterlistig, 462
hinüber, 456
hinunter, 460
Hirtenknabe, 461
hohes Alter, 465

Junge, 463
alte Jungfer 465
Jungfrau, 466
Junggesell, 465
Jünglingsjahre, [465

Kapelle, 461
Kenntniß, 451
Kindesalter, 465
kindisch werden, [465
Knabenalter 465
köpflings, 459
Kost, 462
kriegerisch, 451

langsam, 458
längstens, 459
lauschen, 461
ledern, 466
Leichenchor, 461
leichtbeschwingt, [462
letztens, 459
links, 451
losen, 464
Loth, 451

Maid, 450
malen, 453
Malerstock, 453
Mannbarkeit
Matte, 462 [465
Meile, 451
meistentheils 459
minderjährig [466
mindestens, 459
mündig, 466
Mündigkeit, 466
mündlich, 459
Muttertreu, 460

Neue Welt, 451
niedertönen, 461

Pinte, 451
plaudern, 460
Provinz, 451

rechts, 457
Redlichkeit, 460
Rheinisch, 451
rinnen, 460
rücklings, 459

Saal, 466;
schauerlich, 461
Schaum, 462
Schild, 462[463
schlechterdings,
Schleier, 450
Schmaus, 462
schönstens danken, 462
Schoppen, 451
schrecklich, 462
Schreibpapier,
Schrein 450 [451
Schreiner, 454
Schuldigkeit 462
schütteln, 462
den Kopf schütteln, 462
schütten, 464
schwatzen, 464
Schweiß, 453
schwemmen, 455
Schwinge, 462
schwingen, 462
Seide, 451
seiden, 451
sicherlich, 458
sichern, 451
Sitte, 460
sofort, 457
sollen (people say), 453
spätestens, 459
Stand, 460
Strafe, 451
stündlich, 459
stürzen, 451
sich stürzen, 463

Todtenbahre 450
Ton, 464
tönen, 461
Traurigkeit, 466
tropfenweise 459

Überfall, 451
überschwemmen, [451
umsonst, 458
Unart, 463
unglücklicherweise, 463
unmündig, 466
Unmündiger 466
Unmündigkeit, [466
unterweges, 459

verächtlich, 462
verirren, 466
Vernunft, 465
verrathen, 460
verschieben, 462
Völkerschaft, 460
vollenden, 451
volljährig, 466
vollkommen, 460
vormals, 457
vorziehen, 451

Wage, 454
wahrlich, 459
Wanderer, 460
Wassergrube 466
werben, 455
weg, 457
widmen, 451
wieder, 450
wiegen, 454
Wiese, 461
Wipfel, 462
Wirbel, 455
wirbeln, 455
Wirth, 461
Wirthin, 450
Wittwer, 466
wundermild 461
Wurzel, 462
wüst, 453

ziehen (intr.) 450
zubringen, 451
zudecken 450, 462
zufällig, 463
zumessen, 451
zunehmen an Jahren, 466
zurückschlagen, [450
zuweilen, 457
Zweck, 455
zweckmäßig, 451
zwicken, 455.

ENGLISH-GERMAN.

to abdicate, 451
accidentally 463
acquirement, [451
to advance, 463
of age, 466
great age, 464
full age, 466
under age, 466
to allot, 451
anew, 450
to arm, 462
to go astray 466
awful, 461

baby, 465
bachelor, 465
bag, 460
balance, 454
to behead, 451
to behold, 451
to betray, 460
bier, 450
blindly, 458
boyhood, 465
to breed, 453
bright, 461
Britain, 451

certainly, 458
chapel, 461
to chat, 460
childhood, 465
choir, 461
chopin, 451
cistern, 466
clear, 461
companion, 466
to complete, 451
consul, 451
contemptible, [462
contrary, 451
on the c., 451
to cover up, 450
coward (adj.), [460
dastard, 460
date (fruit), 466
debt, 462
deceitful, 462
to dedicate, 451
to defer, 462
document, 463
down, 460
dreadful, 461
dreadfully, 462 [463
to be engaged,
to erect, 451
ethics, 464
exactly, 458
exceedingly 458
expedient, 451
experienced [460
by far, 458
fare, 462
to feel, 466
foam, 462
formerly, 457
to be found, 460

generally, 453
gently, 458
to give up, 451
to carry to the grave, 461
to be one's guest, 462

hardly, 458
hearse, 450
hedge, 466
hereby, 458
hitherto, 457
honesty, 460
horrid, 461
hostess, 450
to be in a hurry, [463
to be inclined,
indeed 458 [451
to improve, 463
inroad, 451
invasion, 451

knowledge, 451

lad, 465
landlady, 450
at last, 457
lately, 457 [459
at the latest,
lawyer, 462
leader, 463
at least, 459
leathern, 466
to listen, 461

magpie, 460
maid, 450
an old maid 465
an old man, 466
to manufacture,
mat, 462 [451
maternal fidelity, 460
meadow, 461
by all means, [463
to meet with,
mile, 451 [466
a minor, 466
minutely, 463
miserably, 462
morals, 460
at the most, 459

New World 451

offence, 463
to grow old, 466
once, 457
otherwise, 458
to overflow, 451
to overturn, 451

pale, 450
particularly 458
patient, 463
perfect, 460
pint, 451
possession, 451
prattle, 460
to prefer, 451
to proclaim, 451
province, 451
puberty, 465
publicly, 458
punishment 451
purse, 460
putting up, 461

quickly, 458

reason, 465
to refresh, 466
reward, 451
Rhenish, 451
root, 462
to run (flow) 460
to rush, 463

sadness, 466
scantily, 463
scum, 462
to secure, 451
the fair sex, 465
to shake, 462
shepherd's boy, [461
shrine, 450
sign-board, 462
silk, 451
silken, 451
soon, 457 [459
at the soonest,
to sound, 461, [464
soundly, 463
to spend, 451
spinster, 465
standing, 460
to step in, 450
surely, 458
surprise (milit.) [451
to swing, 462

to thrash, 463
to throw back, [450
at that time 457
top, 462
to touch, 466
traveller, 460
tribe, 460
truly, 458
to turn in, 450
to turn off or away, 450 [463
unfortunately,
upwards, 461

invain, 458
van, 462
veil, 450

wan, 450
war-like, 451
waste, 453
to wave, 462
widower, 466
wing, 462
to woo, 460 [451
writing paper,

youth, 463.

# INDEX.

The numbers in the Index refer to the pages.


Aber and ſondern, 108.
Accentuation, 12 ; Primary and secondary accent, 12, (2).
Accusative, 166, 197, expressing time, measure, weight, price, age, 236.
Active voice, 404.
Adjective sentences, 362.
Adjectives, 75 (3) ; their declension, 173 (5); used as substantives, 171 (der Faule) ; comparison of adjectives, 227 ; attributive relation of adjectives, 152.
Adverbial sentences, 362.
Adverbs, 234, 455.
Adverbs (ordinal), 442.
Adverb (position of), 460 ; primitive and derived adverbs, 458 ; comparison of adverbs, 459.
Alphabet, 9.
als, after a comparative=than, 229 ; its derivation, 232 ; used after a positive, 232.
als and wie, 232 (Note) ; als ob and als wenn, 275 (6).
am, before a superlative, 229 (8).
andere (der), formerly employed for der zweite, 442 (Note II).
ant–, prefix for ent–, 207 (antworten).
Articles, 85 ; their original use, 86 (6, Note) ; contracted with a preposition, 265.
Attribute, 142.
auch, its derivation, 84 ; joined to interogative, relative pronouns and adverbs, 372.
auf in the superlative of adverbs, 459 (4).
auf daß, 363 ; in adv. clauses of purpose, 375.
Auxiliary verbs of mood, 340. [131.
Auxiliary verbs of tense, 197, 118,
bald, its derivation, 135 ; its degrees of comparison, 235.
–bar, suffix, 125 (eßbar).
be–, prefix ; it changes intransitives into transitives (beendigen), 140.
beide, 433 (11). [344.
bis, conjunction, 363 ; its derivation,
Cardinal numerals, 431.
ch, its pronunciation, 16.
–chen, suffix, 104 (Mädchen).
chs, its pronunciation, 16 (3. *c*).
Classification of the strong verbs 283.
Clauses, co-ordinate and dependent ; see sentences.
Comparative degree of adjectives, 228 (3).
Compound letters, 15 (3).
Compound substantives, 92 (20; 1, 2); their gender and accent, 20 (3), 92 (1 and Note).
Compound verbs, 245.
Conditional mood, 388.
Conjugation of strong verbs, 284 ; of strong verbs belonging to the weak conjugation, 284. [338.
Conjugation of the mixed verbs, 334.
Conjunctions, 362.
d or de suffix of substantives, 155 (Erde), 282 (Take Notice).
da (dar), with a preposition annexed, 314 (darnach).
Dative, 166, 203, called personal case, 203 (Note).
Declension of Substantives, 209–215; S-Declension, 166 ; N-Declension,
Declension of Adjectives, 216. [172.
Demonstrative pronouns, 147, 148.
der, die das (see Article) ; used as demonstrative pronouns, 147 (7, 8); used as relative pronouns, 367, 368.
deutſch, its derivation 116.
Deutſche Sprache (German Language), divided into two branches, 116.
dieſer, 143, 148 (9, *a*, *b*, *c*).
diesſeit and diesſeits, 272 (7).
Diphthongs, 10.
Distributive Numerals, 444.
doch, after an imperative, 357 ; as an expletive, 275.
drei, its declension, 432 (5, *b*).
durch, prefix, 346 (3).
dürfen, 340 ; its conjugation, 341.
e, thrown out in the inflection, 106 (7), 118 (1), 216 (18), 228 (46).
e (final obscure [e]), forming an exception in Substantives, 201 (Ende ; Take Notice).

ein, indefinite article, 86 (6); numeral, 432 (5, *a*).
einander, 394 (8).
einſt, its derivation, 426.
-el, suffix, 203 (Flügel).
elf, its derivation, 431 (Note 1).
-eln and -ern, 80 (ſtottern).
-emp, prefix, 303 (empfehlen).
-en, and ern, suffix of adjectives, 202 (golden).
-ens, termination of adverbs, 459 (*c*)
ent-, prefix, 207 (antworten); expressing intensity, 371 (enthalten).
er-, prefix, 206 (erzählen).
-er, suffix, 103 (Lehrer).
erſte, its derivation, 442 (Note 1); when referring to two objects, 442 (4).
es, Grammatical subject, 420 (5).
Fractional numerals, 443 (*b*).
Future and Future Perfect, 136
g, ge, disappear in English, 58.
ge-, prefix, 112 (glücklich).
ge-, augment in the pa. part. 118 (1), [119.
Gender, 81, 89.
Gender of substantives beginning with ge-, 91 (u), 201 (Ende).
Gender of Compound substantives, 92 (20, 1, 2).
Genitive, 166 (4); used attributively, 165, 166, 167; in an adverbial sense, [236.
Grammatical subject, 420 (5).
haben, 118, 123; 285 (Take Notice).
-haft, suffix, 385 (zweifelhaft).
halb, 443 (*a*) and (*c*, Take Notice).
-heit, suffix, 135 (Sparſamkeit).
her, 181 (umher), 245 (dahin), 456 (2, A. a.), 457 (Note, 1, 2, 3). [(c).
hier, with a preposition annexed (458,
hin, see her.
hinter, prefix, 346 (3).
hoch, its declension and comparison, 216 (19).
Hours of the day, 438—439 (convers.).
hundert, used as a collect. noun, 432
-icht, suffix, 178 (thöricht). [(7).
ieren, requires accentuation, 22 (10); drops the augment ge-, 119 (2).
ig-, suffix, 103 (hungrig).
-igen, termination forming frequentative verbs, 140 (beendigen).
immer, joined to relative pronouns and adverbs, 372 (Take Notice).
Imperative mood, 356—357.
Imperfect tense, 113, of ſein, haben, and werden, 123, 131.
Impersonal verbs, 419.
-in, suffix, 170 (Nachbarin).
Indefinite numerals, 149, 431 (1).
Indefintie pronouns, 149.
Indicative mood, 355 (1).
Indirect speech, 374 (1—2). [339
Infinitive, with zu, 339; without zu,
Infinitive, used for pa. part. 339; with passive meaning, 405 (7); its place in the sentence, 119. [*a*).
Inseparable compound verbs, 345 (2,
Insertion of letters, 63—65.
Interrogative pronouns, 148.
-iſch, suffix, 88 (ſtürmiſch), 269 (ſindiſch)
Inversion, 277. [Notice).
Ja, 83; used as expletive, 372 (Take
je, in connection with imperat. 357; as an expletive, 372; before Cardinal numerals, 444 (*f*); in a question or negative proposition, 239.
je-deſto, 302.
jeder, used in the sing. only, 149 (13).
jener, 148 (9, *a*, 10),
kein, 147 (6); its derivation, 252.
-keit, suffix, 135 (Sparſamkeit).
können, 340.
l is wanting in English, 61; its conjugation, 341.
lang, denoting a high degree, 276.
laſſen, 340. [(Note II).
-lei, joint to numerals, 444 (*g*);
-lein, suffix, 104 (Mädchen).
Leute, plur. for Männer, 337; its derivation, 182. [459 (*c*).
-lich, 104 (häßlich); suffix of adverbs,
-ling, suffix, 233 (Frühling),
-lings, suffix of adverbs, 459 (*c*),
Lipsounds, 47; changes according to Grimm's Law, 47—49.
Liquids, 57.
man, 105; its derivation (Ibid. *).
mancher, 149.
mehr, compares two qualities, 229; not declined, 400 (viel Mühe).
die Meinigen, 379.
miß-, prefix, 411 (mißtrauiſch).
Mode of addressing a person, 106 (8), 402 (Note).
Modification of vowels, 10 (6).
Moods of the verbs, 355.

mögen, 340 ; its conjugation, 341.
Multiplication numbers, 443 (*d*).
müſſen, 340 ; its conjugation, 341.
Mutes, 45,
n, disappears in English. 60.
nicht, 78 (4).
-niß, suffix, 275 (Hinderniß).
Nominative, 132, 166.
noch, 239 (Take Notice).
Numerals, 430.
nur, joined to relative pronouns and adverbs, 372.
Object, 142.
Objective sentences, 361 (3).
Ordinal numerals, 441.
Participle (past), 118.
Participle (present), with preceding zu, 405 (7) ; their place in the sen- [tence, 119.
Parts of speech, 74—76.
Passive voice, 404.
Perfect tense, 118.
Personal pronouns, 105, 217—219.
Pluperfect, 123.
Plural of nouns, 99.
Possessive pronouns, 146—147, 219 (Note).
Predicate, 74, 83,
Prefixes, 11 ; separable and inseparable, 345 (2. *a. b*).
Prepositions, 241 ; governing the Dative, 242 ; gov'g the Accus., 248 ; gov'g. the Dative and Accus., 259 ; contracted with the article, 265 ; governing the Genitive, 270 ; annexed to adverbs, 314 (darnach) 337 [(woran).
Present tense, 105.
Pronouns, reciprocal and reflective, 393 (2), 394 (7, 8).
Pronouns and adverbs, relative, 367.
Pronunciation of the vowels, 14—15 ; of the consonants, 15—22.
Proper names, 86 ; their formation of genitive, 176 (5, 6, 7, 8, 9).
r, is wanting in English, 61.
Reading exercises of Vowels, 24—43.
Reading exercises of Consonants, 47 [—66
Reciprocal form, 394 (7).
Reflective pronouns, 393 (2).
Reflective verbs, 393.
Reiterative numerals, 443 (*e*).
Rejection of Consonants, 59—63.
s, termination of adverbs, 459 (*c*).
-ſam, suffix. 126 (ſparſam).
-ſchaft, suffix, 177 (Freundſchaft).
ſein, used as auxiliary in conjugation, 285 (Take Notice).
ſelbſt, ſelber, 394 (8, 9, 10).
Sentences, princ. and dependent, 362.
ſolcher, 148 (11). [say," 453
ſollen, 340 ; employed for "people
ſt, suffix of substantives and adjectives, 176 (Fürſt). [(5).
Subject, 73 ; gramat. and logical, 420
Subjunctive mood, 373.
Substantives denoting meas., weight, number, with numerals, 433 (10).
t, is wanting in English, 61. [tice).
-t, -te, suff. of nouns, 282 (T. No-
Tabular View of Grimm's Law, 66,
Tenses, 113. [67.
-thum, suff., 171 (Kaiſerthum).
um, prefix, 181 (umher). 349 (umbringen); with deg. of comparison, 373.
un-, prefix, 85 (unwohl).
-ung, 177, (Hoffnung).
Varietive numerals, 444 (*g*),
ver-, prefix, 141 (vergebens), 248 (Verbindung).
Verbs, their kinds, 197.
Verbs derived from adjectives modify the vowel, 201.
Verbs (alphab. List of strong), 467.
viel, not declined, 400 ; its degrees of comparison, 229.
Verbs made causative by vowel change, 276 (Säugethier).
von, used instead of the gen., 167 (9).
Vowels, long and short, 13, 21.
Vowels (two) by contraction, 21.
wann and wenn, 144 (†).
was, pronoun interrog., 81, (3); relat., 368 (6) ; annexed to a prep., 337.
welcher, pron. interog. 148 (12); relat., wenig, not declined 400. [367 (2).
wenn, condit. conjunct. 387 (4); omitted 389 (5).
wer, interrog. and relat. pron. 81, 368.
wo, annexed to a prep., 337 (woran).
wohl, expressing probability, 344.
zer-, prefix. 187 (zerreißen).

END OF FIRST COURSE.

JUL 31 1922

8 - 1

8 - 2

AUG 8 1922

AUG 7 1922

10 - 36

11 - 1

11 - 7

11 - 14

11 - 17

11 19

11/20/22

11 - 22

NOV 26 1922

12 - 3

DEC 6 - 1922

12 - 7

DEC 6 1922

DEC 9 - 1922

12 - 10

12 -

DEC 12 1922

12/17-22

DEC 16 1922

DEC 18 1922

12 - 20

DEC 20 1922

12 - 21

DEC 21 1922

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

SEP 29 1915
JUL 13 1922
JUL 17 1922
JUL 19 1922
JUL 22 1922
JUL 27 1922
JUL 28
11/11/22
NOV 30
DEC 13 1922

Form 419

JUN 24 1911